

D  
0003  
0050  
119  
3  
9



UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



THE LIBRARY  
OF  
THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA  
LOS ANGELES







A  
N E W S Y S T E M  
O F  
G E O G R A P H Y :

IN WHICH IS GIVEN,

A General Account of the SITUATION and LIMITS, the  
MANNERS, HISTORY, and CONSTITUTION, of the  
several KINGDOMS and STATES in the known World ;

And a very particular Description of their *Subdivisions* and *Dependencies* ; their  
*Cities* and *Towns*, *Forts*, *Sea-ports*, *Produce*, *Manufactures* and *Commerce*.

By A. F. BUSCHING, D. D.

Professor of Philosophy in the University of GOTTINGEN, and Member of the  
Learned Society at DUISBURG.

Carefully Translated from the last Edition of the GERMAN Original.

To the Author's Introductory Discourse are added three *Essays* relative to the Subject.

Illustrated with Thirty-six *Maps*, accurately projected on a new Plan,

I N S I X V O L U M E S .

VOLUME the FIRST.

C O N T A I N I N G ,

D E N M A R K , N O R W A Y , G R E E N L A N D , S W E D E N ,  
R U S S I A and P O L A N D .

L O N D O N :

Printed for A. MILLAR in the Strand.

M D C C L X I I .



---



---

# P R E F A C E.

THE Author has divided this System of Geography into four \* volumes, and to every volume has prefixed a preface. In that to the first he has given an account of the work in general; and likewise of the method he pursued, and the sources from which he drew his materials. But as this *English* edition does not consist of an equal number of volumes with the *German* original, and the countries described are differently arranged in some of them, the Author's preface must be adapted to the translation. I shall therefore extract only such passages as relate to the volume before us, and the work in general; omitting such particulars as have an immediate relation to the first *German* edition, and the manner of publishing it, which would swell this preface to an immoderate length. M. *Busching* gives us the following account of his undertaking, &c.

‘ My design is to give an accurate and useful Description of the Earth  
 ‘ as far as it is known, from the best helps that could be procured on  
 ‘ the subject. For this end, I was under an indispensable necessity of  
 ‘ setting about the Work, as if no System of Geography had been extant  
 ‘ before. I am very sensible that there are many treatises of that nature  
 ‘ published: However, I could not implicitly depend upon, nor safely copy  
 ‘ after any of them; but was obliged carefully to examine every particular,  
 ‘ and to have recourse to the first and best sources. My predecessors in  
 ‘ this Science, indeed, generally copy from each other; and such as have  
 ‘ not copied from other Systems of Geography, have used such helps as  
 ‘ are universally known, and open to every one's perusal, if we except  
 ‘ some few particulars. And it is evident they either had not, or could  
 ‘ not have recourse to the best sources; or, which has generally been the  
 ‘ case, did not use them with a proper degree of care and impartiality.

\* It is to be observed that each of those volumes contain two parts, so that the four may more properly be considered as eight. We thought it necessary to mention this, lest it should be imagined that we have increased the bulk of this work unnecessarily, for our own interest.



Hence a person who has the least skill in geography, or knowledge of the Terraqueous Globe, has reason to complain, that the Systems of Geography hitherto published are of very little service. These were my motives for not blindly following my predecessors who have written on this subject; on the contrary, I had recourse to the same originals from which they derived their materials, and likewise to other sources which they could not have access to; or if they had, which they made no use of. Now as I can truly aver, that I have neither retailed, new-modelled, nor made the labours of my predecessors on this subject the ground work of mine; but proceeded as if no such books had been extant, and I myself had been the first who wrote on the subject, I leave it to the determination of any competent judge, whether my Geography can admit of any improvement from the labours of former geographers? At least when I compared their works with the Description which I had finished, I found nothing to add, which was either necessary, or useful to be known. And if they happen to mention some circumstances, about which my helps were silent, I have scrupled to admit such particulars into my account, and, I think, with reason reserved them for a future enquiry. This I look upon as the only means to bring Geography to a greater degree of perfection than it has hitherto acquired; and I hope the Learned will allow that by this method I have laid a good foundation for it. I am well convinced that others who shall write on this subject after me, will, by experience, find what I have here advanced to be true; and it is my earnest request that they would, in the manner I have done, examine every particular as far as it is possible, without trusting to others.

The rules which I have observed in the prosecution of this work are the very same that I recommended as rules of conduct for a Geographer in §. 3. of the Introduction\*. However, I must add, that though I think it both a necessary and useful direction, with regard to any particular country, to follow the accounts written on the spot, as they generally exhibit a more accurate and just description than any other geographical or topographical treatise extant, and are drawn from the proper sources: Yet it is always proper, in the use of such helps, to proceed with circumspection, and, at the same time, to join our own enquiries with them. For instance, in *Szafzky's Introduction in Orbis hodierni Geographiam*, there is nothing that can be of use to a Geographer but the chapter which treats of *Hungary*; for that article, on account of the care employed by the Author who was an *Hungarian*, may serve for a short chorographical description of that Kingdom, and consequently may be reckoned among the genuine sources of that part of Geography.

\* See page 7.

## P R E F A C E.

‘ It is my design, that the System of Geography shall be neither too  
‘ short and concise, nor too tedious and circumstantial; and I purpose  
‘ to bring together into one view the best chorographical and topographical  
‘ descriptions extant; and to select many historical and physical remarks  
‘ and observations which are to be met with in a great number of printed  
‘ books and manuscripts. I shall also continue to carry on an extensive  
‘ correspondence by Letters, not without a considerable expence, with men  
‘ of learning and politeness in different parts of the world, in order to gain  
‘ a more exact knowledge of the present genuine state of countries and  
‘ places, than it is possible to acquire from printed accounts. And indeed  
‘ I have had the good fortune, hitherto, to find almost every person to  
‘ whom I applied for this purpose, inclined to promote my design; besides  
‘ some hundreds who have voluntarily contributed to it. I have transmitted  
‘ my original sketch to several places, in order to be improved and cor-  
‘ rected. Besides, I apply to persons of all ranks who are capable of  
‘ being serviceable to my design, on whom I make modest demands of  
‘ assistance; and my travels have turned out to very good account, as  
‘ they gave me an opportunity of making immediate enquiries and obser-  
‘ vations on the spot in several kingdoms.

‘ In describing the various countries in the known world I observe  
‘ the following method. In the first place, I treat of their Polity or civil  
‘ constitution, in an authentic and concise manner, with impartiality and  
‘ circumspection. I have, with regard to the constitution or form of go-  
‘ vernment of several countries, had the good fortune, hitherto to pro-  
‘ cure important and authentic accounts, and such as rarely fall into the  
‘ hands of the Learned. Those who are competent judges in these matters  
‘ will find them scattered with no sparing hand in this first volume. The  
‘ plan I have laid down, and the necessary caution and prudence to be observed  
‘ on these occasions, forbid me to communicate any more of those anec-  
‘ dotes to the Public. I have candidly pointed out all the advantages which  
‘ every country enjoys, or at least, such as have come to my knowledge;  
‘ and there is not a single country on the Globe which cannot boast of  
‘ some peculiar advantages. It would be highly absurd and blameable in a  
‘ Geographer, to despise any country because it has not some particular  
‘ advantage or conveniency with which, perhaps, another region is blessed.  
‘ Such a writer pours contempt on the works of God, and the several do-  
‘ mains of his extensive kingdom; and finds faults with Divine Providence,  
‘ which deals out the good things and commodities of the Earth with  
‘ the most consummate wisdom and benevolence, and imparts to every  
‘ country what is indispensably necessary for its inhabitants. I wholly avoid  
‘ giving the characters of nations, it being not only a very difficult task in itself,  
‘ but such general characters are also, at best; uncertain, and for the most-  
‘ part ill-grounded and partial. I refer to what I have written on this

‘ head:



head in §. 70. of the Introduction. As the extending and increasing of commerce is now one of the principal objects which most nations have in view, I have given an exact account of the present state of trade in those countries where it flourishes most. The reader will find this article, with regard to the Northern Countries, accurately described in this volume.

Next to the general account of the Polity of States and Kingdoms follows the particular geographical description of every country, in which I lay down the usual political divisions into greater and smaller districts as the basis of it, including, at the same time, the Ecclesiastical Polity of every country. I do not designedly omit one natural or artificial curiosity that deserves notice in any place which I have described: but touch on it at least, if I cannot give a circumstantial account of it. The principal cities and towns in every country I describe according to the ichnographical plans we have of them, and that pretty largely, as they contain several things worthy of notice. I have not used the expressions, *great, small, handsome, eminent, inconsiderable, mean, &c.* indifferently or partially; but employed them according to the Knowledge I had acquired of every particular place. I could wish we had, in this respect, a certain rule to go by; but such a standard is difficult to be found. A town is large, handsome, and well-built; or little, mean, and inconsiderable, only as considered with respect to other towns in the same country; but when compared with those of other countries, may deserve different epithets. For what is called a large and beautiful place, and really is so in one kingdom, may be justly called little and inconsiderable, or a place of no great note, in another. However, there are towns, &c. in every country, which may in general be called large and elegant. I have set down the probable number of inhabitants in several countries and great cities, or inserted an account of their births and burials from the annual Bills of Mortality; but this could not be done for all. In describing others, I have also shewn how the Names of places are properly pronounced, a necessary information in a System of Geography; but this I cannot pretend to have done in all in a satisfactory manner. Upon the whole, I must observe that it is not possible to describe every country with equal accuracy and authenticity, the same helps, and vouchers of equal credit, cannot be procured for them all. My descriptions, however, will be found tolerably uniform and of a piece in proportion to the extent and importance of the countries described; and what is still wanting in my account of several places may possibly be supplied hereafter.

To write a System of GEOGRAPHY, or, in other words, to give a Description of the Earth, is a very difficult, laborious, and important task, and requires the united efforts of whole Societies: what an arduous undertaking must it then be for a single person? I doubt, whether

'ther any one has bestowed more pains on the subject, or treated with  
 'greater application and more unwearied diligence than myself; and  
 'this is the only merit I assume. Whoever expects a perfect work of  
 'this kind, does not understand wherein the perfection of it consists.  
 'Those who are competent judges of the subject will consider whether  
 'the whole performance is good in its kind; for errors in some particulars  
 'are unavoidable when we treat of a subject that admits of gradual  
 'improvement. I hope I may without vanity call my System of Geo-  
 'graphy *new* and *more perfect* than any book of the kind yet published;  
 'but I do not pretend to impose it on the Public as a work absolutely  
 'perfect in itself, being well apprized that a great number of additions and  
 'corrections are requisite to render it such, and consequently that it falls  
 'far short of perfection.

'It was, at first, my design to annex to every volume some critical  
 'observations on the books which I made use of in describing every  
 'country; but this I must defer to some other opportunity. In the In-  
 'troduction however, to the description of every State or Kingdom I shall  
 'give a list of most if not of all the Authors of note who have treated  
 'of that country, and set down the titles of the books, &c.

'This first volume begins with the Northern States of *Europe*. It has,  
 'indeed, been usual for several years past to begin books of Geography  
 'with *Portugal*: But that method was neither necessary nor regular, and,  
 'probably, owes its origin to the following trifling circumstance. The  
 'map of *Europe*, in order to assist the memories of children, has been  
 'represented under the figure of a Woman who was to be described  
 'from head to foot; and therefore Geographers began with *Portugal*, which  
 'was supposed to be the head-dress of this imaginary Lady. On the con-  
 'trary, the Geographers of the sixteenth and the first part of the seven-  
 'teenth century, as namely, *Mercato*, *Ortelius*, *Hondius*, *Jansson*, &c. begin  
 'with the Northern parts of *Europe*. I have followed their example  
 'rather out of chance than design; Providence having, for some years,  
 'placed me in those parts; and therefore I begin with the description of  
 'them. The Northern Parts have been, hitherto, generally the least  
 'regarded by foreigners, and described with far less care and accuracy  
 'than the southern and western countries of *Europe*, though their im-  
 'portance and extent deserve more particular notice. For this reason I  
 'have allowed the Northern kingdoms more room in my System of Geo-  
 'graphy than other Authors have done in books on this subject. Before  
 'I enter on the description of these countries, I have premised something  
 'by way of Introduction to every State, &c.

'In the first place, I have, shewn the UTILITY of Geography; and  
 'particularly recommended the necessity and usefulness of this science, as  
 'it serves to display the power and wisdom of GOD, and promotes his glory.



‘ In the next, I have subjoined a short INTRODUCTION to Geography, in which I have given and explained the Definition of that science, taken notice of the maps drawn by the geographers of the ancient, middle, and modern ages; and treated of the Mathematical and Physical part of Geography. In explaining these heads I have avoided prolixity as much as possible, and touched merely on such particulars, as serve to facilitate and promote the study of Geography; and consequently the reader ought previously to be well acquainted with them. I hope too I may, at least, be entitled to the approbation and thanks of many of them, for having with great labour and assiduity collected the most important, useful, and entertaining accounts and observations, which, before, lay scattered in a great number of volumes.

‘ Lastly, I have treated pretty largely on the surrounding and intercurrent SEAS in the several parts described in each volume, and collected the most important remarks and observations that were to be met with concerning the nature and qualities of them.

‘ Next to this comes a general view of EUROPE; and then follow the Kingdoms and States contained in it. Among these that of DENMARK presents itself first to the Reader’s view. In describing this country, I had no account of it which had been taken on the spot to serve as the ground work of my description; but was obliged to describe it after a new method. My helps in print were the following;

- ‘ HOLBERG’S *History of Denmark.*
- ‘ PONTOPPIDAN’S *Ecclesiastical History.*
- ‘ *Theatrum et marmora Dancia selectiora.*
- ‘ BERUTSEN’S *Glory of Denmark and Norway in German.*
- ‘ HERMANSEN’S *Deliciae regnorum Daniae, Norwegiae, &c.*
- ‘ VERNON’S *Relation d’un voyage fait en Danemarck.*
- ‘ *The Danish Vitruvius.*
- ‘ *The Danish Library.*
- ‘ *Scripta Societatis Hafniensis, bonis artibus promovendis deditæ.*
- ‘ *The Danish Magazine.*
- ‘ THURA’S *Idea Historiæ Literariæ Danorum.*
- ‘ ANCHERSAN’S *Prefat. ad Fab. Geogra. synopt.*
- ‘ *The Religious State of Denmark and Norway.*
- ‘ Colonel THURA’S *Hafnia Hodierna.*
- ‘ RESENIUS’S *Descriptio Samsœ.*
- ‘ AAGARDI’S *Descriptio Othinia.*
- ‘ *Observations on the Islands of Faalster and Laaland.*
- ‘ ERICKSON’S *Description of the Village of Viborg.*
- ‘ TERPAGER’S *Descriptio Urbis Ripensis.*
- ‘ DANKWERTII’S *New Chronographical Description of the Dutchies of Sleswick and Holstein.*



- ‘ WESTPHALEN’S *Monumenta inedita rerum Germanicarum, precipuè Cimbricarum*, &c.
- ‘ NOODT’S *Supplement to the history of the Dutchies of Sleswick and Holstein*.
- ‘ MOLLERI *Ifag. ad Hist. Ducat. Sleswick and Holstein*.
- ‘ LASS’S *Collection of the accounts of the towns of Hufum*.
- ‘ KRAFTEN’S *Ecclesiastical and Literary History of Hufum*.
- ‘ Besides these authors, I have compared my account of *Denmark*, after I had corrected and improved it, with HUBNER’S *Large, and Small System of Geography*, translated into *Danish*. With regard to the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, I have made the short Description of it, which I published in 1752, the ground-work; but at the same time, I new-modelled and greatly improved it. I have not only described several parts of the Kingdom of *Denmark* from my own personal observations; but was also favoured, in that article, beyond any of my predecessors on this subject, by the assistance of several persons of great abilities and distinguished characters.
- ‘ In describing *NORWAY* I consulted the following books.
- ‘ CLAUSSON’S, WOLF’S, and JONAS RAMUS’S Descriptions of that country.
- ‘ PONTOPPIDAN’S *Natural History of Norway* \*.
- ‘ MULLER’S *Description of the town of Tonsberg*.
- ‘ SCHRODER’S *Description of the town of Frederickshald*.
- ‘ HOLBERG’S *Description of the town of Bergen*.
- ‘ All these treatises are written in the *Danish* language.
- ‘ The Description of the islands of *Faroe* is almost entirely taken from DEBES. In describing *Iceland*, I have made use of the following books.
- ‘ ARNGRIM JONAS’S *Chrimogæa*.
- ‘ OLAVII *Enarrationes Hist. de natura & constitutione Islandicæ*.
- ‘ ANDERSON’S *Description of Iceland*, with that of HORREBOW, who refuted the account given by the former.
- ‘ THORLACII *Dissertatio de Islandia*. THORLACII (who was another writer of the same name) *Dissertatio de ultimo montis Heclæ incendio*.
- ‘ SAMUNDSEN’S *Account of the eruption of Krabla*, in *Danish*.
- ‘ Lastly, in describing *Greenland* I consulted TORFÆI *Gronlandia antiqua*; EGEDE’S *Account of the rise and progress of the Greenland Mission*; and *The new Perlustration of ancient Greenland*. I am likewise obliged to some learned men for several historical accounts relating to these countries. My description of *Iceland*, I may venture to recommend as more accurate and complete than any that was extant before.
- ‘ I have been enabled to acquaint the reader with many important particulars concerning the constitution of *SWEDEN*, which were hitherto but little known. For the Geographical description of that Kingdom, I make

\* An elegant translation of this curious work was published at *London* in 1755, by A. Linde. That beautiful edition is illustrated with copper-plates, and an accurate map of *Norway*.

‘ *Erick Tuneld’s* excellent treatise, entitled *The Geography of Sweden*, my  
 ‘ ground-work. Besides, I have borrowed many curious remarks from the  
 ‘ following authors.

‘ BRING *de Etymo Sueciæ.*

‘ BENZELIUS *de Propagat. Rel. Christ. in Suecia.*

‘ *The Description of Sweden, published at Ratisbon in 1707.*

‘ ROBINSON’S *Etat present de la Suede.*

‘ LOCCENII *Antiq. Sueco-Gothia.*

‘ BRING *de comitiva Dignitate, præsertim in Sviogothia.*

‘ *The Dissertations of the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden.*

‘ STROMWALL’S *Dissertatio Apologetica contra Johannem Hubnerum.*

‘ HARLEMANN’S *Travels through several provinces of Sweden.*

‘ BRING *de Origine urbis antiquæ Sviogothiæ, & de Hallandia in genere.*

‘ RYDELIUS *de Blekingia.*

‘ BRING *de Blekingia.*

‘ FRONDIN *de Helsingia:*

‘ SERENIUS *de Uplandia.*

‘ BIOERNER *de Stockholmia antiqua.*

‘ ASP *de Nycopia.*

‘ BRONWELL’S *Historia linguæ Dalecarliæ.*

‘ HERMANSSON *de Prefectura Næsgardensi Dalecarliæ.*

‘ HAGSTROM’S *Description of the province of Jemtland.*

‘ TORNER *de origine ac religione Fennouum.*

‘ HARTMANN *de primis initiis Biorneburgi.*

‘ OUTHIER’S *Journal d’un voyage au Nord.*

‘ In my Description of *Lapland* I have consulted *Peter HOGSTROM’S*  
 ‘ Description, compared with *SCHEFFER’S Lapponia* and *SCHELLER’S*  
 ‘ Travels, as the ground-work. As Count *DAHLBERG’S* pompous and  
 ‘ valuable Work, entitled *Suecia antiqua & hodierna*, is scarce, I have par-  
 ‘ ticularised those towns and castles of which he has inserted draughts and  
 ‘ perspective views in his *Suecia*.

‘ Next follows the *RUSSIAN EMPIRE* with all its ancient and new con-  
 ‘ quered countries in *Europe* and *Asia*. I have given this vast Empire in  
 ‘ one view, as it lies naturally connected; and consequently have described,  
 ‘ at the same time, a considerable part of *Asia* in this volume. As Geo-  
 ‘ graphers have, hitherto given but very imperfect accounts of that power-  
 ‘ ful Empire, my attempt may be considered as the first essay towards an  
 ‘ accurate and authentic description of it. In 1745, *A compendious treatise*  
 ‘ *of Political Geography* was published at *Petersburg*. That work gives  
 ‘ a circumstantial description of the *Russian Empire*, but is extremely faulty  
 ‘ and defective: However, it contains some authentic historical accounts.  
 ‘ Besides that treatise, I have made use of the following books in describing  
 ‘ *Ingria*, and *Livonia*, &c.

‘ *The*

- ‘ *The historical, political, and geographical Description of Sweden.*  
 ‘ K<sup>E</sup>LCHEN’S *History of Livonia.*  
 ‘ *Description de la Livonie.*  
 ‘ STRUBYCZII *brevis descriptio Livoniæ.*  
 ‘ *The Chronicle of Livonia, published by GRUBER and ARND.*  
 ‘ JETZEN’S *Account of the white hares in Livonia.*  
 ‘ *The Monument of DORPAT.*  
 ‘ Peter von HAVEN’S *New Account of the Empire of Russia, written in*  
 ‘ *Danish, and improved.*  
 ‘ WEBER’S *Russia metamorphosed.*  
 ‘ *A collection of the Russian History by MULLER and BAYER.*  
 ‘ MARTINI’S *Account of Russia.*  
 ‘ *The Moscovite Letters, as they are called, with remarks. The text is*  
 ‘ *in many places erroneous and absurd, and the remarks are not to be*  
 ‘ *depended on.*  
 ‘ HEGELMAYER’S *Impartial Account of the several remarkable things in*  
 ‘ *Russia.*  
 ‘ STRAHLENBERG’S *Northern and Eastern parts of Europe and Asia.*  
 ‘ GMELIN’S *Flora Siberica, and his Travels through Siberia, with his re-*  
 ‘ *marks on L’ Histoire genealogique des Tartars.*  
 ‘ *The present state of Russia* written by SALMON, and published with  
 ‘ great alterations by Reichard, may very well supply the place of *Weber,*  
 ‘ *Haven’s Travels in Russia, Strahlenberg, Martini, and the Collection of*  
 ‘ *Russian historical pieces*; as the substance of them is to be found in  
 ‘ *Reichard’s* performance; but of this I made no use in my description of  
 ‘ *Russia.* During my stay at *Petersburg,* I collected several good accounts  
 ‘ of the Empire of *Russia,* and made proper enquiries into many particu-  
 ‘ lars myself. The *Russian* Imperial Academy also caused my description  
 ‘ of that Empire to be carefully revised and improved by professor *Muller.*  
 ‘ My short Introduction to *Russia* contains a more accurate, just, authen-  
 ‘ tic, and impartial account of the constitution of that Empire than many  
 ‘ other voluminous works.  
 ‘ I come in the next place to the Kingdom of PRUSSIA; and in describ-  
 ‘ ing this country, Bock’s *Introduction to the state of Prussia*; *Prussia dis-*  
 ‘ *played*; the *Acta Borussica,* and *the Remarkables of Prussia*; have been  
 ‘ of greater service to me than ABEL’S *political Geography of Prussia and*  
 ‘ *Brandenburg,* with its continuation. I have myself made several observa-  
 ‘ tions in my travels through *Prussia*; and a learned *Prussian* also sent  
 ‘ me authentic accounts of *Prussia* and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania,*  
 ‘ for which I take this opportunity of making a due acknowledgement.  
 ‘ After *Prussia,* I describe POLAND and LITHUANIA, and for that pur-  
 ‘ pose, I consulted the following books.



- ‘ *Gabriel RZACZYNSKI’s Historia naturalis curiosa regni Poloniæ.*  
 ‘ *PISTORII Corpus Historiæ Poloniæ.*  
 ‘ *CROMER’s Description of the Kingdom of Poland.*  
 ‘ *STARAVOLSCI Polonia.*  
 ‘ *Casim. Aloys. HOLOWKA’s Compendium Geographiæ.*  
 ‘ *CELLARII Descript. Regni Poloniæ.*  
 ‘ *HARTKNOCH de republica Polona.*  
 ‘ *LENGNICH de jure publico regni Poloni.*  
 ‘ *Pacta Conventa Augusti tertii cum Lengnichii Commentario.*  
 ‘ *KRZISTANOWITZ’s Curious Description of the Kingdom of Poland.*  
 ‘ *Duglessi; Historia Polonica.*  
 ‘ *LENGNICH’s Polish History.*  
 ‘ *DANOZKI’s Lexicon of the learned men now living in Poland, &c.*  
 ‘ With *Poland* I have connected the description of *Polish Prussia*, which  
 ‘ I look upon as a far more just and commodious method, than the common  
 ‘ way of describing it with the Kingdom of *Prussia*; for, at present, it has  
 ‘ no manner of connection with the latter. My helps in this part were as  
 ‘ follows.  
 ‘ *LENGNICH’s History of Regal or Polish Prussia.*  
 ‘ *The Prussian Collection of Records*, and manuscript accounts which have  
 ‘ never been published.  
 ‘ *HARTWICH’s Description of the three Werders lying in Polish Prussia.*  
 ‘ *CELLARII Descriptio regni Poloniæ, & privilegium civitatum minorum*  
 ‘ *Prussiæ occidentalis, commentario illustratum.*  
 ‘ My own observation and experience have also supplied me with several  
 ‘ useful hints in describing this country.  
 ‘ Lastly, under the article of *Poland*, I have described the Dutchies of  
 ‘ *Courland* and *Semigallia*. I am persuaded that the description I have given  
 ‘ of these countries will sufficiently recommend itself to all impartial judges,  
 ‘ as a new, authentic, and accurate account. The true state of this country  
 ‘ is, at present, but little known. In my journey through *Courland*, I care-  
 ‘ fully informed myself about its constitution from persons of great skill  
 ‘ and political knowledge; and likewise made use of the following printed  
 ‘ accounts.  
 ‘ *NETTELBATT’s Fasciculus Rerum Curlandiæ.*  
 ‘ The same author’s *Anecdota Curlandiæ*, and  
 ‘ His Treatise which clearly shews the right of electing a Duke to be  
 ‘ derived to the *Courlanders* from their ancestors.  
 ‘ *Privilegia & Jura præcipua ducat. Curlandiæ & Semigalliæ*, besides  
 ‘ other public acts.  
 ‘ *TETSCHS’s Essay towards an ecclesiastical History of Courland.*  
 ‘ *Description de la Livonie*, which also treats of *Courland*.  
 ‘ *The Life of Ernest John, Duke of Courland.*

‘ *The short geographical account of the Dutchies of Courland and Semigallia, inserted in The Cosmographical Accounts and collections for the year 1748.*

‘ HARTNOCH’s *Dissertatio de Caronum & Semigal. Republ.*

‘ I thought myself obliged to point out these authors as vouchers of the truth or credibility of my accounts of these different countries; and I found it as difficult to procure them, as it was laborious and irksome to peruse them all. From this the candid reader may form some idea of the difficulty of this undertaking; which will appear still more arduous, when he has carefully perused this work.’





---

# C O N T E N T S

TO THE

## F I R S T V O L U M E.

Of the UTILITY of GEOGRAPHY. page 1

### INTRODUCTION to GEOGRAPHY,

#### C H A P. I.

OF Geography in general. page 6

#### C H A P. II.

Of Mathematical Geography 12

#### C H A P. III.

Of the Natural State of the Earth,  
or Physical Geography. page 36

Of the Earth's Atmosphere *ibid.*

Of the Earth in general 39

Of the Water 49

### A NEW SYSTEM of GEOGRAPHY.

Of Europe in general 57

Of the Seas, by which the countries

described in this volume are en-

compassed, or separated from each

other 59

### D E N M A R K.

Introduction 67

Seeland 84

Funen 114

North Jutland 123

Wiborg 129

Aarhuus 131

Ripen 136

Sleswick 142

### N O R W A Y.

Introduction 171

Christiana 184

Christianfand 193

Bergen 197

Drontheim 201

Norwegian islands 212

Faroe *ibid.*

Iceland 215

Greenland 231

The

# C O N T E N T S.

## The KINGDOM of SWEDEN.

Introduction	page	249		Hallingland	page	331
Gothland		273		Medelpad		333
East Gothland		274		Jamtland		334
Smaland		278		Harjedalen		336
Oeland		283		Angermannland		337
Gottland		284		West-Bottn		338
West Gothland		286		Lapland		341
Warmeland		293		Jamtland-Lapmark		355
Thal-land		295		Afele-Lapmark		356
Bohus-Lehn		296		Umea-Lapmark		357
South-Gothland		299		Pite-Lapmark		358
Schonen		ibid.		Lulea-Lapmark		ibid.
Halland		304		Tornea-Lapmark		359
Blekingen		306		Kiemi-Lapmark		360
Sweden, properly so called,		309		Finnland		361
Upland		ibid.		Finnland, properly so called,		363
Sudermannland		319		Aland		366
Nerike		323		East-Bothnia		ibid.
Westmannland		324		Tawaftland		369
Swedish Thal-land		327		Nyland		370
Nordland		330		Sawolax		372
Gastrickland		ibid.		Kymmenegards-Lehn		ibid.

## The R U S S I A N E M P I R E.

Introduction		377		Smolensk		457
European part of the Russian Empire		411		Kiew		458
Livonia		414		Bielogorod		464
Riga		422		Woronefh		466
Reval		425		Asiatic part of the Russian Empire		469
Narva		427		Russian Tartary		475
Ingermannland		428		Astracan		477
Wiburg		441		Orenburg		479
Nowogrod		443		Kasan		480
Archangel		446		Siberia		483
Moscow		450		Tobolsk		501
Nishnei-Novogrod		456		Yenifei		511
				Irkutsk		517

P R U S S I A.

# CONTENTS.

## P R U S S I A.

Introduction	page 527	Little Lithuania	page 558
Konigsberg	538	Polish Governments	562
German Samland	544	Oletzko	ibid.
Old Natangen	548	Rhein	563
Oberland	553	Johanneberg	564

## POLAND, LITHUANIA, POLISH PRUSSIA, and COURLAND.

Introduction	567	Lithuanian Russia	620
Great Poland	588	Woiewodztwo Inflantkie	624
Cujavia	592	Zmuyds	625
Masovia	594	POLISH PRUSSIA	626
Polish Prussia	597	Pomerellia	632
Little Poland	ibid.	Culm	638
Cracow	ibid.	Marienburg	647
Podlachia	606	Ermeland	652
Red Russia	607	COURLAND	654
Podolia	610	Courland, properly so called,	662
Kiow	612	Semigallia	664
Volhinia	ibid.	Pilten	666
LITHUANIA	614		



---



---

# ENQUIRIES and CONJECTURES

## CONCERNING

# MEASURES of LENGTH.

1. **T**HE *Measures of Length*, on which all others depend, were, for want of a more fixt standard, taken from the human body: as the denominations of *Fathom*, *Pace*, *Cubit*, *Foot*, *Span* and *Digit*, evidently shew. Multiples of these make the higher denominations of *Stadia* and *Miles*; and grains of *Barley* and *Wheat*, or *Hairs-breadths*, were used for their subdivisions.

2. In the Eastern Nations, the first seats of arts and magnificence, even in the ante-diluvian age \*, their standard measure was a *Cubit*. In *Greece*, *Italy*, and other western countries, where racing and manly exercises were more cultivated, a *Foot*, with its multiples and aliquot parts, were found the most convenient measures.

But a *Foot* not being an aliquot part of a *Cubit*, wherever the one was the *Standard*, the other was in a manner excluded as a *Measure*. And this seems to have been one great source of the diversity we find in the ancient measures, or rather in the accounts authors give of them. The *natural* standard of a *Cubit*, or of a *Foot*, would every where be nearly the same, if some singular affectation or caprice did not interfere; the dimensions of *Egyptian* mummies, and of their repositories, shewing the human stature to have continued much the same from the earliest ages. But when authors give us eastern measures in the language of the west, or the contrary, we may generally suspect some inaccuracy in the reduction of the one to the other: the *Greek* and *Latin* writers commonly calling  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a *Foot*, a *Cubit*, which in its natural dimension is really  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a *Foot* †; and, thence, the *natural* cubit being to the *nominal* as six to five, greater by  $\frac{1}{6}$  of the former, or by  $\frac{3}{10}$  of a foot.

\* Gen. VI. 15.

† Sir Isaac Newton on the sacred cubit.



3. A greater variety still arose from both standards being admitted together; as happened among the *Arabs*. A *Cubit* was their original *local standard*; the *Foot*, *Stadium*, and *Mile*, they took from the *Greeks* and *Romans*: and these, mixed and combined, produced the different estimates they give of the same distances, and *four*, if not *seven*, different sorts of *Cubits*. \*

Yet this variety, as well as the proportions of some of those cubits to one another, may be partly accounted for from the oriental custom of a *Royal Cubit*, exceeding the *mean* cubit by three *digits* †; and from the *commercial* or *mundinary* measures being, for the most part, less than the *mean*, not only in the *East*, but every where else. The former probably had its name from being the measure, which despotic Princes exacted in the construction of their buildings and public works; while a cubit somewhat short of the *mean* was allowed of in private bargains, and when skilful artists were to be paid for their labour.

From these two considerations, but especially from the *natural* proportion of the *Cubit* and *Foot*, we may form some consistent notion of the ancient measures, the changes they have undergone, and their relations to one another, as well as to the principal standards of modern times.

As for the *secondary* and *provincial* measures used in different states or cities, or in the several provinces of the same country, it were endless to enumerate them, and impossible to account for differences arising from so many different causes; from *accident*, perhaps, or *design*, from the *indolence* of magistrates, the *errors* or *caprice* of artists, the gradual *alterations* of time, from *fraud*, *exaction*, or *policy*, and even from the *quality* of the *subjects* measured. Nor does such diversity of weights and measures much disturb the ordinary course of commerce; although it were to be wished that a greater uniformity could be established, at least among all the subjects of the same Prince. Merchants can always compare their own measures with those of foreign nations; and are not often mistaken in valuing the precious metals, or in the just *par* of exchange.

4. In the sciences, the case is very different; in *Geography*, *Astronomy*, and in all *Physical* enquiries: which cannot be managed, or even understood, without more exact rules of actual mensuration than either vulgar use requires, or the ancients could attain; in a word, without some *fixed universal Standard*, to which every observation and experiment may be referred.

And such a Standard only those sciences *themselves* could furnish: *The length of a pendulum beating seconds at a particular place, as London or Paris*; or, *The length of a degree of some terrestrial meridian, measured at*

\* See Mr. Bernard de mensuris veterum, and the authors by him quoted.

† Herodot. Clio.



a particular latitude. These may always be compared with each other, and every other measure of length with either of them.

5. If *Eratosthenes*, *Posidonius*, *Marinus Tyrius*, or *Ptolemy* had measured an arc of the meridian in *Stadia*, with the same care and success as the *French* mathematicians have done in *Toises*, we could compare their measures to the modern with great certainty. But we find no operation of this kind which can be depended on, till the revival of Astronomy under the *Caliphs*, when *Almamon* ordered some skilful mathematicians to measure a degree in the plain of *Singara* in *Mesopotamia*. From their determination indeed, founded on an actual survey, with the difference of latitude carefully taken, we may not only fix the proportion of their *foot-measure* to *ours*, but form a probable conjecture concerning the *Standard* used in *Greece*, and the derivation of the other principal Standards, the *Roman*, *French* and *English* from it. For it seems reasonable to suppose, and has been admitted by the best writers on this subject, “ That a nation subduing, or settling in, another more polished and civilized than themselves, will learn their arts, and adopt their customs; as a more civilized nation will introduce good regulations where there might be none before.”

Now the *Athenian* weights and measures had been fixed by an express law to the Standards first established by *Solon* \* : and these were the principal standards in *Greece*, in their *Islands* and *Colonies*, and in the neighbouring countries of *Asia Minor*. They were probably adopted by the later possessors of those countries, the *Arabs*: and it will appear presently that the foot measure of the *Arabs*, was exactly, or very near, the same as the *Pied du Roi*, or standard foot of *Paris*.

How the one or the other may have been brought into *France* we may easily imagine: the colony of *Marseilles* might introduce the *Grecian* measures; † or, if that date is thought too ancient, why might they not be borrowed from the *East*, at second hand, in the time of the *Croisades*.

6. The astronomers commissioned by *Almamon* found a degree of the earth's meridian to contain  $56\frac{2}{3}$  miles of 4000 cubits, or 6000 feet, each ‡. The degree therefore was  $56666\frac{2}{3}$  *Arabian* fathoms or *Toises*; and if we suppose these equal to *French Toises*, the error of their operations was only  $516\frac{1}{3}$  *Toises*, which their degree wants of 57183, the degree of *M. Picart*, corrected; and this—the earth being Spherical.

But if it is a *Spheroid*, whose axis is to the equatorial diameter as 230 to 231, the *Arabians* measuring their degree at  $49\frac{1}{2}$  latitude instead of about  $34^{\circ}$ , must have given it 56860 *toises*; and the difference would now

\* *Andocidis* Orat. apud Budæum de Assle. Lib. v.

† *Strabo* informs us that the *Gauls* owed their learning and the arts of civil life to the academy of *Marseilles*; whose high reputation, in his time, drew the *Roman* youth to study there, instead of going to *Athens*, Geogr. Book IV. and their form of government seems to have been the model of several Aristocracies, afterwards established in *Europe*.

‡ *Bernard de Menf. Vett.*

be reduced to 323 toises, answering to an angle of about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of one minute of a degree. Which error being of the quantity that might be expected from the skill of the artists on the one hand, and the difficulty of their task on the other, we may conclude *the Arabian Measures of Length to have been very nearly if not altogether the same as the French.*

7. There are two other *Arabian* measurements mentioned by their writers \*. In one, the degree is found to be 68 miles, agreeing with the former determination of  $56\frac{2}{3}$  miles: only that in the one a mile is 5000 feet, according to the *Roman* way of reckoning; in the other it was 6000: these numbers being reciprocally as 68 and  $56\frac{2}{3}$ . An agreement so very precise that one would suspect it was not owing to an actual measurement of the sixty-eight miles.

In another *Arabian* estimate of a degree of the terrestrial meridian, it is said to contain  $66\frac{2}{3}$  miles; and this likewise will nearly coincide with the former determination, if we can suppose the authors of this last to have imagined they could compensate the shortening their mile one sixth part, by lengthening their foot measure a sixth part. For  $\frac{7}{6} \times \frac{5}{6}$  or  $\frac{35}{36} = \frac{66\frac{1}{3}}{68}$ : or  $\frac{7}{6} \times 56\frac{2}{3} = 66\frac{1}{3}$ . Supposing this, if we take a mean between  $66\frac{2}{3}$  miles and  $66\frac{1}{3}$  (thus deduced from the  $56\frac{2}{3}$  miles) the *mean* length of a degree, according to the *Arabians*, will want but seventy two toises of the quantity assigned to it by the *French*; the earth being a homogeneous *Spheroid*.

And if we compute upon the  $66\frac{2}{3}$  miles alone, they will give to the degree 57379 toises; exceeding M. *Picart's* degree by 196 toises, and Mr. *Norwood's* by 79.

In any case, supposing the operations of the *Arabian* astronomers to have been performed with due care, which their near coincidence may well justify, it follows that the difference, if any, between the *Arabian* and the *French* foot is too small to be by any means verified or determined.

8. This is further confirmed by the measurement of † *Fernelius*, giving to the degree near *Paris* 68.095 miles *French* measure, or 56746 toises; less than what the astronomers of *Almamon* would have made it by between 120 and 130 toises. Father ‡ *Riccioli*, indeed, suspects this determination, as if *Fernelius* had accommodated it to the numbers of the *Arabians*: but the suspicion is groundless, that author having very fairly described his method of proceeding, and his measure having been verified by all the subsequent surveys. The truth is, *Riccioli* was not aware of the equality of the *Arabian* and *French* measures of length; and wanted chiefly to establish the result of his own enquiries.

9. The *Roman* foot, copied probably, with other *Athenian* institutions, by the *Decemviri* ||, might, originally, be the same as the *Attic*: but it was afterwards, whether designedly or by a gradual alteration, diminished in the

\* See Dr. *Bernard*. † See his *Cosmography*. ‡ *Almagest*. || *Liv.* III. 31.

ratio of 25 to 24, or near half an inch; *Censorinus* \* informing us that they gave 625 feet to the *Stadium*, which contained but 600 feet *Attic* measure; and *Polybius*, in *Strabo* †, says they reckoned  $8\frac{1}{3}$  *Stadia* to the *mile*; which comes to the same thing:  $8\frac{1}{3}$  multiplied into 600 being the same as 8 into 625. Their *mile* was 8 *stadia* of 600 *Attic* feet, and is always so rated in *Pliny* and other ancient writers; but using their own foot measure, they found there wanted  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a *stadium* of 600 feet to complete the *mile*.

10. This foot seems to have been the more general standard of the *Roman Itinerary* measures. But the architects and artificers, in imitation of the *Greeks*, used one somewhat less; which from antient monuments, and from some standards that have been preserved in metal, is to the *English* foot, as 967 to 1000: others says as 970 to 1000. That is, the *English* foot exceeds the *lesser Roman* by  $\frac{1}{32}$  or by half a *digit*; for 31 is to 32 as  $968\frac{1}{2}$  to 1000.

And indeed, excepting as far as accident or inaccuracy may have intervened, we shall generally find the differences of measures to proceed by the simplest fractions of a *digit*, or of an inch, that is by bisection, sometimes combined with trisection.

11. The *Palmo* of 9 inches, or  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a foot, used by the modern *Roman* architects, is taken from this *Standard*, but somewhat increased. *M. Auzout* ‡ found it in proportion to the *Paris* foot as  $988\frac{1}{2}$  to 1440; and the *Paris* foot being to the *English* as 114 to 107, the *English* foot will exceed the foot whereof the modern *Palmo* is  $\frac{3}{4}$  by no more than  $\frac{1}{40}$ ; whereas it exceeds the foot of the ancient architects by  $\frac{1}{32}$ ; the difference of these being  $\frac{1}{80}$  of a foot *English*, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch of the ancient foot of the *Roman* artificers.

12. The *Roman* foot seems to have varied occasionally; as indeed they were not over exact in such matters, especially in their *itinerary* measures ||. The *Rhinland* foot taken from the remains of a *Roman* foot in *Germany*, and which *Scaliger* and *Snellius* held to be the true standard, is to the *English* as 1033 to 1000. And thence the *English* foot is an arithmetical mean between it, and the foot of the ancient architects: 967. 1000. 1033.

13. The celebrated *Peiresc* † had, in his collection, weights of 1, 3, 10, 30 *Roman* pounds, which, compared very carefully with standard weights sent him from *Paris*, gave 10 *Paris* ounces nearly equal to twelve *Roman*. And if the *French* and *Roman* weights and measures of capacity, bore a like analogy to their measures of length, the *Paris* foot will be to that upon which the *Roman* ounce was adjusted as the cube root of 12 to the like root of 10, or as 17 to 16; exceeding it by one *digit*:

\* *De die natali*, cap. 13.

† *Lib. VII. p. 322.*

‡ *Bernard*, p. 201.

|| See the instances given by *Cassini* in *Mensures de l'Academie*.

‡ *Gassend*, in *Vitâ*, p. 120.



and the *Paris* foot exceeding the *English* by much the same difference, that *Roman* foot must have been nearly equal to the *English*.

*Gassendus* indeed, who gives us this account, tells us that from his own experiments on the contents of *Vespasian's Congius* preserved in the Capitol, he found 120 *Roman* ounces equal to  $111\frac{3}{4}$  *Paris* ounces: whence it would follow that the foot upon which the *Congius* was fashioned wanted but  $\frac{1}{48}$  of the foot of *Paris*. But such experiments are so slippery, and the conclusions which different authors have drawn from the contents of this *Congius* are so various, that they are not much to be depended on: especially as the proportions of the *Roman* and *English* measures to the *French*, which *Gassendus* deduces from the same source, are certainly none of the exactest. We may see however, in general, it was intended that this vessel should contain the eighth part of a cubic foot; and that the foot by which it was made was not much different from the ancient *Roman* foot.

But Mr. *Greaves*, by weighing many ancient well preserved coins, found the *Attic Drachm*, which is the hundredth part of an *Attic Mina*, to be to the *Roman Denarius* or the eighty-fourth part of the *Roman Libra*, as 67 to 62 \*. The weight of the former being at a medium 67 grains, or  $\frac{67}{100}$  of a pound *Troy*; and that of the latter 62 grains.

Hence the *Roman Libra* is to the pound *Troy* as 217 to 240; and the linear measures analogous to these weights are as the cube roots of 217 and 240, that is as  $969\frac{3}{4}$  to 1000, nearly as 30 to 31. Or, allowing about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a grain which Mr. *Greaves's denarii* may have lost of their just weight; the cube roots, or the measures proportional to them, will be exactly as 31 to 32; as the foot of the *Architects* to the standard foot of *England*. The foot of the *Roman* architects therefore was the same which they used in their mint.

Again, the *Attic Mina* is by Mr. *Greaves's* experiments to the pound *Troy* as 335 to 288. And the *pes monetalis* † of *Athens* to a foot *English* nearly as 20 to 19, in a ratio less than of 114 to 107, which we gave for that of the *Attic* foot to ours; and therefore we must either conclude this ratio to have been assumed too great; or, which is more probable, that the *Attic* foot used in their mint was less than their itinerary foot; the difference being about  $\frac{1}{100}$ , or  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a digit; allowing somewhat for the wear of the coins.

14. The foot of *Bologna* is to the *English* as 1686 to 1350, according to the Abbé *Picart* ‡, or as 1.249 to 1. And *Riccioli* makes the same foot to the *Roman* as 5 to 4. He finds likewise the distance

\* See his treatise on the *Denarius*.

† This epithet is found in *Hyginus*, and is understood by the commentators to arise from the division of a foot, as of the *As* (and every other integer) into *Unciæ*: but I should rather translate it, the *Standard foot of the mint*.

‡ *Mesure de la Terre*.

between *Bologna* and *Modena*, which, in the *Itinerary*, is always marked 25 miles, to be 20 miles *Bolognese* measure, inverfely as 4 and 5. And therefore the *Roman* foot, by which that distance was measured, is very nearly the same as the *English*. If *Riccioli's* distance is more strictly  $19\frac{2}{3}$  miles, that *Roman* foot will want of the *English* about  $\frac{1}{64}$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a digit.

15. The distance from *London* to *Verulam*, by the *itinerary*, is 21 miles; the same distance measured \* is 20.37 miles of 5000 feet *English*. Whence this *Itinerary* foot was less than the *English* by  $\frac{1}{32}$ , or half a digit. But perhaps the terms from which these distances were anciently reckoned are not very well ascertained.

16. The mole which joined the *Pharos* at *Alexandria* to the main land is, in *Strabo* and *Ammianus*, 7 *Stadia*, which *Cæsar* † values at 900 paces, or 4500 feet. Whence the *Roman* foot is to the *Alexandrian* as 42 to 45 shorter by  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the former. But if we suppose this *Alexandrian* foot to have been the same as the *Attic*, the 7 *Stadia* will make 4375 *Roman* *itinerary* feet, which are to 4500 as 35 to 36. The foot therefore by which *Cæsar* measured is shorter than the *itinerary* foot of *Strabo* and *Censorinus* in the same proportion. And thus we may understand him in his descriptions of bridges, encampments, lines, and military engines.

17. From these, and many other examples that might be given, it appears how various the *Roman* measures of length have been; especially under the Emperors, and in the decline of the Empire. But all those variations are confined within the limits of the ancient *Itinerary* foot, and that of the *Architeëts*, to the space of about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an inch; so that we may always make a near enough estimate of the distances which occur in the *Roman* history and geography: observing only not to trust too much to the *Itineraries* without some collateral proof.

18. Let us now suppose the *Attic* foot equal to that of *Paris*, and either of them to be  $\frac{5}{8}$  of the true *Cubit* used in the Eastern Nations, and the consequences will perhaps justify our supposition.

The *Roman Itinerary* foot being to the *Attic* as 24 to 25, and this to the *English* as 114 to 107; the *Itinerary* foot will be to the *English* nearly as 45 to 44, greater by a little more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch.

And the *English* foot being to the lesser *Roman* as 32 to 31, the *Roman Itinerary* foot will be to this last nearly as 19 to 18; that is, nearly as the *pes monetalis* of *Athens* to the *English*, see §. 13. Where it is remarkable that these numbers are nearly in the inverse ratio of 5000, the number of feet in a *Roman* mile, to 5280, the feet *English* in a *Statute* mile.

Anciently the inhabitants of *Britain* had no other way of marking the distances of places but what had been common to all nations, which is still used in *Germany*, and every where in speaking of sea-voyages; namely, by

\* *Bernard*, pag. 133. † de Bello Civili, Lib. III. sub finem.



the time of travelling or sailing from the one to the other. They probably took the *Extent*, as well as the *Name* of a *Mile*, just as the *Romans* gave it them: but having at the same time adopted the lesser *Roman* foot for their common *Standard*, they found about 5280 such feet in the mile. And when, afterwards, the length of a mile came to be fixed by *Statute*, the same number of feet was retained, although the foot itself was now increased in the *Ratio* of 31 to 32. By which means, although the number of feet in our *Statute* mile exceeds the number of feet in the *Roman* mile, in the same proportion as the *Itinerary* foot exceeds that of the ancient *Architec̄ts*, yet the *Extent* of our mile is to the *Roman* mile only as 32 to 31; as our foot is to the foot of the *Architec̄ts*.

Half a quarter of this mile is a *Stadium*, or furlong,  $\frac{1}{4}$  of which is a *Perch* of  $16\frac{1}{2}$  feet, or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  yards.

19. Mr. *Greaves* \* says he found the side of the square basis of the great *Egyptian* pyramid to be 693 feet *English*; and the side of the square space which terminates it a-top 13.28 feet. From these, compared with the dimensions taken within the pyramid by the same gentleman, and giving to the side of the base 400 cubits, Sir *Isaac Newton* concludes the cubit of *Memphis*, according to which the pyramid was built, to have been nearly 1.73 of a foot *English*. And  $\frac{5}{8}$  of this being  $\frac{2}{3}$ , the *Memphitic* foot (if they had used that measure) would have wanted but half an inch of our foot; that is, their cubit was the *Cubit of a Man*; taken from his mean stature, 5 foot 9 inches *English* †.

The side of the same base is, in *Diodorus*, 700 feet; wanting of  $\frac{2}{3}$  of 400, only 20 feet.

The same distance *Strabo* makes less than a *Stadium*, of 600 *Grecian* feet. That is, his reduction proceeds upon the supposition that a *Cubit* is to a *Foot* as 3 to 2; and (which is true) that the foot of *Memphis* was less than the *Attic*.

In *Herodotus* the side of the base is 800 feet; with him, the cubit of *Memphis* (like that of *Babylon*) makes two feet; or having actually measured by the standard of his own foot, he might find that number.

*Pliny* extends it to 883 feet. But from what author he copied this is uncertain, as he names no fewer than twelve who had written on the subject of the pyramids. Mr. *Greaves* suspects the passage in *Pliny* to have been corrupted: the area of the base being, there, no more than 8 *jugera*; whereas, if the side is 883, it wants not much of 28. But *Pliny* might perhaps take the linear dimensions from one author, and the superficial from another; without examining whether they were consistent.

\* See his *Pyramidegraphia*, and the authorities there quoted.

† It happens that the mean cubit (1.732) is to the foot *English* (1) as the side of an equilateral triangle to the semidiameter of the circumscribed circle, nearly.

However this be, a foot, which should be to the *English* foot as 693 to 883, certainly falls too far short of the natural standard. And the number 883 either comes from an author who had never seen the pyramid, and wanted to magnify its dimensions; or, some author having given that number of feet for the longest line that could be drawn in the base, from angle to angle, *Pliny* might understand him to mean the length of the side. For if the side is taken to be a *Stadium* of 625 *Roman* feet, the diagonal will be 883.88.

20. Sir *Isaac Newton*, from a passage in *Purchas's* travels, deduces a *Babylonian* cubit equal to two feet *English*. This was of the cubits called *Royal*,  $\frac{5}{8}$  of it being  $1\frac{1}{8}$  of an *English* foot. And from several authorities mentioned by Dr. *Bernard* and Sir *Isaac*, 10000 cubits of the *East* are held equal to 18000 *Attic* feet: the *Attic* foot therefore is  $\frac{5}{9}$  of that cubit. And putting the *Attic* foot equal to the *Pied du Roi*, which is  $\frac{1\frac{1}{2}}{1\frac{1}{2}}$  of a foot *English*, the cubit of the *East* will be to this last as 1026 to 535, nearly the double: that is, nearly as was found from Mr. *Allen's* measures in *Purchas*.

21. *Pliny*, in Book VI. Ch. 26. writes thus of *Babylon*: “Chaldaicarum gentium caput diu summam claritatem obtinuit in toto Orbe, propter quam reliqua pars Mesopotamiæ Assyriæque Babylonia appellata est, sexaginta milia passuum amplexa muris, ducenos pedes altis, quinquaginta latis, in singulos pedes ternis digitis mensurâ ampliore quam nostra.”

This passage may admit of two different meanings.

1. The *Babylonian* foot being  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the *Roman*, and the cubit being  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the foot; the *Babylonian* cubit will be to *Pliny's* foot as 171 to 80, more than its double; which seems too great a proportion in a building of such antiquity: for in the first ages, the deviations from the standard of nature were not excessive; as we have seen in the instance of the pyramid.

Or, 2. If *Pliny* according to the inaccurate estimate of his country, by a *Babylonian* foot meant not  $\frac{5}{8}$  but  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the *Babylonian* cubit; then  $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{2}{3}$  or  $\frac{4}{9}$  being nearly equal to  $\frac{1}{2}$ , we may reckon the difference he makes between the *Babylonian* foot and the *Roman*, to arise chiefly from the difference between the *Natural* and *Nominal Ratios* of the foot and cubit. Thus, suppose *Pliny* to have learned from one of his authors, that the wall of *Babylon* was 200 *Roman* feet high, which in his way of reckoning make  $133\frac{1}{3}$  cubits; and to have been assured by another that its height was  $111\frac{1}{3}$  cubits; he might easily be led to think the *Babylonian* cubit (and foot) to be to the *Roman* as  $133\frac{1}{3}$  to  $111\frac{1}{3}$ , or as 6 to 5, nearly as 19 to 16.

22. But indeed, with respect to the measures anciently used in the east, our *data* are so few, and so uncertain, that no very positive conclusion can be drawn from them. *Strabo* in his XI and in his XVII Book tells us, that when he sailed up the *Nile*, the length of the Egyptian *Schænus* varied at every town he pass'd; a greater number of *Schæni* often giving a less

distance, and the contrary. And *Pliny* \* informs us that, though *Eratofthenes* gave 40 *Stadia* to that measure, others reckoned only 32. The case was the same with the *Parasang* of *Persia*, which was rated at from 30 to 60 *Stadia* \*. But the value of the one and the other was, by the most ancient and authentic account of *Herodotus*, 30 *Stadia* of *Greece*, making, as was said above, the *Attic* foot equal to  $\frac{5}{9}$  of the eastern cubit.

23. How various the measures of length have been in the eastern nations appears likewise from the different *Cubits* in use, at one time or other, among the *Arabians*; most of which probably had the authority of some ancient example, or were founded in some rule, such as it might happen to be: the *Archetype* of all, being no doubt, the same in the *East* and *West*; the *human Body*; of a stature above the common; yet not gigantic, even for the larger measures. For, if *ex pede*, or, *ex mensura pedali Herculem*, he must have been about  $\frac{1}{5}$  of 6 English feet high, or 6 feet,  $4\frac{3}{4}$  inches. Such was the foot which seems to have been most universally used in the ancient Geographical measures. In other cases, a foot approaching more to the mean natural length was substituted for it: such as the *lesser-Greek*, the *Roman*, and *English* are; being of more convenient and ready use in business. The foot of a full grown man was then nearly of that length, bearing a greater proportion to his stature than now when it is cramped by modern fashions: as we may see in the best antique statues and sculptures, and in the paintings which have been done in that taste.

24. The *Arabs* having, at their first settling in the lesser *Asia*, accustomed themselves to reckon by *Feet*, and by *Cubits* of  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a foot, found afterwards that their cubit was thus shortened of its *due* length. And that, even when they had corrected this by increasing it in the ratio of 5 to 6, it still wanted of some ancient standards of the East, they increased it farther in the ratio of 14 to 15. All this was very well. But if, instead of thus increasing their *first* cubit, which was  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an *Attic* foot, their successors came, by whatever means, to increase the *Attic* foot itself in the same ratio, there would then be produced measures exceeding their just dimensions as 9 exceeds 7.

Such the *Hafemæan* cubit, in *Dr. Bernard* pag. 218, seems to have been. From an *Arabian* Author by him quoted, the height of *S. Sophia* from the cupola to the ground is 78 *Hafemæan* cubits,  $\frac{2}{3}$  of which is 140.4 *Hafemæan* feet: and the same height, according to *Evagrius*, is 180 *Grecian* feet. The *Hafemæan* measures therefore are to the *Grecian* as 9 to 7.

Put the measures of *Greece* to the *English* as 114 to 107, and the height of *S. Sophia* will be 192 feet *English*. Now there is preserved in an *Arabian* MS. at *Oxford*, a draught of the *Hafemæan* cubit, which is 28.9 inches *English*: whence the *Hafemæan* cubit is to the *English* foot as  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 1; and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  into 78 is  $187\frac{1}{2}$ ; wanting but  $4\frac{3}{8}$  of the 192 feet *English*; which difference, making a reasonable allowance for the shrinking of

\* *Strabo* XI. pag. 518.



the MS. vanishes altogether. So that we may suppose the foot in *Eva-grius* to be no other than the *Attic*, which we have all along made nearly the same as  $\frac{4}{5}$  of the *English*.

25. A degree of the meridian being, according to the *Arabians*,  $56\frac{2}{3}$  miles of 6000 feet each; if these are the same as *Attic* feet, it will follow, that the whole circumference is 204000 *Attic Stadia*; less than the famous determination of *Eratosthenes* (252000) by  $\frac{4}{7}$ , near a fourth part: which might at first view, create a suspicion, that either we have not the true number of *Eratosthenes*, or that he reckoned by a *Stadium* very different from the *Attic*; which would contradict, or confound every thing in the ancient Geography.

That his numbers have not been altered we are assured from many passages in *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and in all the ancient writers who mention him: and still more from his own determination of the distance between *Rhodes* and *Alexandria*; which, *Strabo* says, he found to be 3725 *Stadia*; this number being very nearly to 252000, as the difference of latitude of those cities (supposed to lye in the same meridian) is to 360 degrees.

The account given, in gross, by *Cleomedes* \* and others, is this: That *Eratosthenes* finding by a gnomon the difference of the latitudes of *Alexandria* and of *Syene*, under the tropic, to be  $\frac{1}{36}$  of the circle, and 5000 *Stadia* being given him for the terrestrial distance, it followed that the circuit of the earth was 250000: and *Balfour*, who translates and comments on *Cleomedes*, wonders why *Pliny* and so many others should add 2000 *Stadia* more.

But this account is not exact; and *Eratosthenes*'s computation had been faultless but for the error of the terrestrial distance. In his time the obliquity of the *Ecliptic* was held to be  $23^{\circ} 51'$ , and the latitude of *Alexandria*  $30^{\circ} 58'$ . Increase this only by  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , and the difference of latitude of *Alexandria* and *Syene* will be  $\frac{1}{50\frac{1}{5}}$  nearly  $\frac{2}{7}$  of a degree, or  $7^{\circ} 8\frac{1}{2}'$  of the circle: and if this gives 5000 *Stadia*, the whole circle will be 252000. The fractional part of the denominator  $50\frac{2}{5}$  was neglected by *Cleomedes*, but the result remains in all the other authors.

The account which *Cleomedes* gives of *Pofidonius*'s estimate is less tolerable still. He says that *Pofidonius* having observed the star *Canopus* (the next to *Sirius* in magnitude) just to appear in the horizon of *Rhodes*, and, at *Alexandria*, to have its meridian altitude  $7^{\circ} \frac{1}{2}$ , or  $\frac{1}{48}$  of the circle, the distance of those cities, supposed under the same meridian, being 5000 *Stadia*; he thence concluded the earth's circumference to be 48 into 5000, or 240000 *Stadia*.

But is it probable that *Pofidonius* could so far mistake either the difference in latitude of *Rhodes* and *Alexandria*, or their distance? *Eratosthenes* having determined the former by observation, and thence deduced the distance of 3725 *Stadia*, in proportion to his own estimate of the circumference.

\* *Meteor. Burdigalae*, 1605.



*Strabo* indeed says, that distance had been rated at 5000 *Stadia*, that the seamen reckoned it 4000, but that *Eratosthenes* found it as above, to be no more than 3725.

If therefore *Pofidonius's* numbers have not been altered, he must, probably, have rated the difference of latitude at  $6^\circ$ , or  $\frac{1}{50}$  of the circle, and taken the distance to be 4000 *Stadia*; 60 into 4000 giving the same result as the 48 into 5000 of *Cleomedes*.

But why may we not suppose *Pofidonius*, who had all the skill and the opportunity necessary for an exact determination, to have hit on the truer number of 204000 *Stadia*? which might, afterwards, be altered into 240000, by the mistake or the officious care of some astronomical compiler; especially as this would bring it nearer to the received estimate of *Eratosthenes*.

26. However this be, there arises a question, which, though not belonging to the present subject, we shall take this opportunity to mention, leaving it to the consideration of Astronomers: "How *Canopus* should, in the times of *Eudoxus*, *Pofidonius*, and *Geminus*, be seen just to touch the horizon of *Rhodes*, while it is now seen considerably elevated above it?"

*Strabo's* account (translated) is this. "*Pofidonius* refert se de excelsâ quâdam domo in urbe ab iis locis" (*ubi dies longissima horarum 14  $\frac{1}{2}$* ) "ad 400 stadia distante, stellam vidisse quam existimaverit (*τερυξιπέσθαι*) esse *Canopum*, et qui inde versus meridiem ex Hispania progressi sunt, fateri se eum cernere. Quod etiam historia *Cnidia* testatur: est enim in *Cnido* *Eudoxi* specula, non multo domibus sublimior, ex quâ is fertur *Canopum* spectasse: esse autem *Cnidum* in *Rhodiaco* climate, in quo et *Gades* et ora maritima ejus." And *Geminus* \*, (*Element. Cap. 2.*) says, "Insignis stella quæ sita est in summo gubernaculo navis *Argûs Canobus* dicitur; atque hæc *Canobi* stella in *Rhodo* difficulter videri potest, aut in locis planè excelsis apparet, at *Alexandriæ* prorsus videri potest, nam ferè quartâ parte signi *Canobus* ab horizonte elevatus apparet." Which is copied by *Pliny* (*Lib. II. 70.*) "ut *Canopus* quartam ferè partem signi supra terram eminere *Alexandriæ* intuentibus videatur, eadem a *Rhodo* terram quodammodo ipsam stringere."

Now supposing *Eudoxus* to have observed 360 years before the birth of *Christ*, the annual *Præcession* to be  $50''$ , the obliquity of the *Ecliptic*  $23^\circ \frac{1}{2}$ , the latitude of *Canopus* (as in our tables) A. D. 1720, to have been  $75^\circ 51'$ , and his longitude  $11^\circ 9'$  of *Cancer*, it will follow that in the age of *Eudoxus*, his longitude was  $1^\circ 6' \frac{2}{3}$  of *Gemini*; and his declination  $52^\circ 47' \frac{1}{3}$ . He touched the horizon therefore in the latitude  $37^\circ 12' \frac{2}{3}$ , considerably to the north of *Rhodes*, or *Cnidos*; and by the refraction must have been sensibly elevated above it.

*Pofidonius* was old when *Cicero* visited him, so that we may place the time when he observed the stars about 80 years before the birth of *Christ*;

\* *Apud Petav. in Uranologia.*

making the declination of *Canopus*, at that time,  $52^{\circ}. 37'$ . And the star, by refraction, might be seen a whole degree north of the parallel of *Rhodes*. Yet *Pofidonius*, 400 *Stadia*, more than  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a degree, to the south of that parallel, could only conjecture the bright star he saw on the horizon to be *Canopus*.

*Ptolomy* observed about A. D. 136. So that in his time, the declination of *Canopus* was nearly  $52^{\circ}. 31'$ . And he might (with the refraction) be seen in N. Latitude  $37^{\circ}. 29'$ .

*Note.* The præcession from *Ptolomy's* time to A. D. 1720, being  $22^{\circ}$ , the star was then  $10^{\circ}. 51'$  on the other side of the solstitial Colure, that is in  $19^{\circ}. 9'$  of *Gemini*; whereas *Ptolomy* in his *Almagest* makes it  $17^{\circ}. 30'$ , less by  $1^{\circ}. 39'$ .

*Proclus* is thought to have composed his Book on the Sphere about A. D. 500. At which time *Canopus* was in the solstitial colure, or nearly so: and his distance from the S. Pole  $37^{\circ}. 29'$ : Yet he says, according to *Balfour's* account in his comment on *Cleomedes*, that "the star was hardly to be seen at *Rhodes*. " *Proclus* — fatetur videri, ægre tamen, atque ex editis tantum locis:" but this seems plainly to be copied from *Geminus*.

Upon the whole, it is submitted to the Astronomers whether we ought to ascribe to this star a particular motion, besides the change of declination from the præcession of the Colures? Or, if we may not reconcile, or rather account for, the above-cited passages, by saying they have probably been copied one from another; and all of them from some ancient observation, when *Canopus* was actually seen on the horizon of *Rhodes*? — *horizontem ipsum stringere*.

If we put the latitude of *Rhodes*  $36^{\circ}. 20'$ , we shall find that 50 years before *Christ*, *Canopus* just touched its horizon, and might by the refraction, be seen near an hour and a half. And this falls nearly in the time of *Pythagoras* and other ancients, who had travelled, and begun to cultivate Astronomy.

As to the difference in the declination of this star observed by *M. de la Coudamine*, in *Peru*, (1738) from that which is marked in the *British Catalogue*, (*Phil. Transf.*) it is sufficiently accounted for from the *Præcession* alone.

## II.

*Of the SPHEROID-FIGURE of the EARTH;*

With Tables serving to compare the observations concerning it.

OUR author having touched but lightly on the subject of the true *Figure of the Earth*, we have thought proper to add the following articles; containing a short account of the ground and determination of that figure, and the uses to which the knowledge of it may be applied.

§. 1. *Of the difference of the methods wherein M. Huygens and Sir Isaac Newton treat this subject.*

Monsieur *Richer* having found, by repeated experiments, that bodies, near the equator, lose somewhat of the actual gravity which they had in higher latitudes; M. *Huygens* attributes this diminution of gravity *solely* to the centrifugal forces arising from the earth's diurnal rotation; which lessens the force of gravity, in different latitudes, in the ratio of the semi-diameters of the parallels of latitude, and that of the cosines of the latitudes, conjunctly: and thence by a calculation equally ingenious and accurate concludes the equatorial diameter of the earth to be to its axis as 578 to 577\*.

But Sir *Isaac Newton*, agreeable to his principle of universal gravitation, adds to the diminution of gravity from the diurnal rotation, another arising from the figure of the earth itself; and from these two causes combined, he computes the diameter of the equator to be to the Axis as 230 to 229: the earth being supposed of the same figure that a homogeneous fluid would take, whose velocity of rotation round its axis was the same as that of the earth †.

It was necessary to take notice of this difference between the two methods, because even very good writers seem not to have properly distinguished them ‡.

§. 2. *That a homogeneous fluid revolving equably round its axis will take the figure of an oblate Spheroid, generated by a Conical Semi-Ellipsis turned round its lesser axis.*

This proposition, having been left undemonstrated by Sir *Isaac*, was for some time contested by several eminent mathematicians; and demon-

\* *Huygen. de causâ gravitatis.* + Princip. Lib. III. Prop. 19.

‡ See *Don Juan* in his preliminary discourse.



strations were produced, that the figure of such a fluid would not be that of a geometrical spheroid, but only approaching to it.

The fault of those demonstrations was, that they depended on *infinite series*, of which the terms that were thought inconsiderable had been rejected: a liberty which should be cautiously used, when the quantity to be determined is itself but small; for, in the present case, it was this very rejection which created the difference those authors found between their spheroid and a geometrical one.

At last Mr. *Mac Laurin* gave a just *synthetical* demonstration of the proposition, in his treatise of fluxions: and its truth may still more easily be shewn as follows; taking for granted only the common doctrines of centripetal forces, and of the pressure of fluids, one or two propositions of the *Principia*, and this plain *Axiom* in *Statics*:

That “ Any number of powers being in *æquilibrio*, if they are all increased (or diminished) in the same ratio, they will remain in *æquilibrio* still, provided their directions are not altered.”

A fluid at rest, and undisturbed by any external force, forms itself into a sphere. In the *figure* annexed, let Pp be the diameter of such a spherical fluid, C its Centre, PDpd a section of it through the centre; and imagine the whole sphere to be divided by parallel planes into circular *Laminæ* of equal thickness, perpendicular to the axis Pp, whose common sections with the plane of the circle PDpd are represented by Kx, Ny, &c. which shall likewise represent *columns* of the fluid communicating with a canal in the axis.

Then seeing particles of a given magnitude, in the axis, as at P, N, K, gravitate to the centre C in proportion to their distances from it, PC, NC, KC (by princip. I. 70) the sums of these gravitations, or the pressures of the fluids in the canals PC, NC, KC, on the centre, will be as the squares of those distances. And thence, the pressure of the fluid in the canal PN, at N, which supports the perpendicular column Ny, will be to that of the fluid in PK, which balances Kx, as PCq—NCq is to PCq—KCq, or as the square of Ny to that of Kx: that is, *the pressures or weights of the columns Ny, Kx, on the axis, are as the squares of their heights.*

Let now the sphere begin to revolve on its axis Pp, till, by indefinitely small accelerations, it acquires any given velocity of rotation, the fluid which rises between the planes being supplied by syphons, at the poles P p; then, if we suppose it to have risen according to the ordinates NY, KX, of an ellipse whose lesser axis is Pp; when the acceleration ceases, *the fluid will remain in æquilibrio, as before it began to revolve.*

For if we conceive the perpendicular pressure of any canal, as NY, upon the fluid in the axis, to consist of two parts, one, the pressure of the column Ny, while the sphere was at rest, the other that *additional weight* it has now acquired, this last is manifestly equal to the *additional weight*



in the canal PN added to the sum of the centrifugal forces in the column NY. But (by *Princip.* I. 91. Cor. 3.) the ratio of the weight of PN to that of any other canal in the axis, as PK, is the same in the spheroid as in the sphere; and therefore, by division, the differences of the weights in the sphere and spheroid, or the *additional* weights of the fluid in the canals PN, PK, at N and K, will be as the squares of Ny, Kx, or by the property of the ellipse, as the squares of NY, KX.

Again, let the fluid in the columns NY, KX be divided into the same number of particles proportional to their distances from the axis, as  $f$  and  $F$ . And the *Momenta* generated by the centrifugal forces being every where as the rays of circumvolution and the magnitudes of the particles jointly; the centrifugal *Momenta* of the particles  $f$ ,  $F$ , and *componendo*, the sums of those momenta in the columns NY, KX, that is the weights in those columns that are supported by the centrifugal forces, will be as the squares of NY, KX; in the same ratio as the *additional* pressures of the canals were found to be. And thence the sums of these, or the *additional* weights in the columns NY, KX, which those sums balance, are as the squares of NY, KX, or of Ny, Kx. The weights therefore in the columns perpendicular to the axis, and the forces that sustain them, having been all along increased in the same ratio, the fluid will remain in equilibrium, by the *Axiom*. And the adequate effects of the rotation being thus found in the geometrical spheroid only, all other figures are of consequence excluded, so long as the fluid continues to be homogeneous, and its parts to attract one another according to the received law\*.

### §. 3. Of the figure of the Earth.

There are two ways of determining this question; one, that of Sir *Isaac Newton*, which supposes only that we know the actual gravity of bodies at a particular place, as deduced from the *Huygenian* doctrine of Pendulums; the quantity of centrifugal force at the equator, inferred from its semidiameter nearly known; and the time of a diurnal revolution, which is about 23 hours 56': and thence the quantity that must be added to the actual gravity of bodies to compensate what is taken off by the centrifugal force at a given parallel of latitude. His own theory gave him the attractive forces of a homogeneous spheroid at its pole and equator: and his conclusions are, that the centrifugal force at the equator is about  $\frac{1}{289}$ th part of the force of gravity, as *Huygens* likewise had computed it; and that, the earth, taking the form of a homogeneous fluid, must have its equatorial diameter to its axis as 230 to 229 †. Others, from

This analytical demonstration the learned Mr *Knefler* seems to think all one as the *synthetical* by Mr. *Mac Laurin*. See a note of his to his translation of *Luloff's* book on the *Earth* from *Low Dutch* into *German*.

† *Princip.* III. 19.

more exact determinations of some of the *Data*, and by a more rigorous *Calculus*, make it as 231 to 230; and the ratio upon which the following tables are computed is very nearly the same as this last, being that of 8789 to 8751; the length of a *Second Pendulum*, at *Paris*, taken from Mr. de *Mairain's* experiments, being of 440  $\frac{1}{3}$  *Lines*, or 12th parts of an inch, *French* measure. \*

The other way of determining the earth's figure is by *actual mensuration*; and that, either of two *degrees* of the meridian, or of two *second Pendulums*, in distant latitudes. For the comparison of the arcs, or of the lengths measured, will (by a *rule* in the *note* subjoined †) give the ratio of the earth's diameters; on the *Hypothesis*, however, that its figure is that of a geometrical spheroid.

\* In *Phil. Transf.* Vol. XLVIII. Part. 1. N<sup>o</sup> 2. The ratio of the diameter is said to be 226:225; probably from having assumed the length of a *second pendulum* somewhat too great.

† The semidiameter of the equator (and radius) being 1; write S, s, for the sines of the given latitudes, C, c, for their cosines, and L, l, for the lengths of the *Isochrone* pendulums, Or, for the cube roots of the number of toises in the degree measured: So shall the semiaxis

be the square root of  $\frac{c^2 l^2 - C^2 L^2}{S^2 L^2 - s^2 l^2}$ .

E X A M P L E S.

The degree measured at the polar circle (corrected for the refraction) is 57422 *Toises*; that of M. *Picard* (corrected) is 57183; and, taking a *mean* of the observations made by the French and Spanish gentlemen, the degree at the equator is 56754. Let these three measurements be denoted by the letters A, B, C; and the results will be as follows:

	Lat.	Toises.	Combin.	Ratio.		Lat.	Lines.	Combin.	Ratio.
A	66°.20	57422	A B	189:188	a	66°.48'	441.17	a b	204:205
B	49°.22	57183	A C	215:214	b	48. 50	440 $\frac{1}{3}$	a c	187:186
C	0°. 0'	56754	B C	229:228	c	0°. 0'	439.2	b c	179:178

In the same tablet are marked the ratios of the earth's diameters computed from the lengths of three *second-pendulums*, a, b, c. All which differ from one another, as the former did. And the like will happen whatever observations you compute from.

We make no use of Mr. *Norwood's* degree of 57300 toises, on a twofold account (1<sup>o</sup>) His *English* measures have been reduced into *French* upon Mr. *Greaves'* proportion of 1068 to 1000; whereas if they had been, more truly, reduced as 114 to 107, Mr. *Norwood's* degree would have been 57441 toises. Nor (2<sup>o</sup>) are *London* and *York* under the same meridian, as he supposed; the latter having in some maps 1<sup>o</sup> longitude west, in others 50'. Call it 1<sup>o</sup>: then the difference of latitude being 2°. 28', if we suppose the ratio of the earth's diameters to be 231 to 230 (as it nearly is) a degree in the middle of that arc will be 57226 toises; which increased in the ratio of 2°. 28' to 2°. 32  $\frac{1}{3}$  (the arc joining the two cities) amount to 58901, exceeding Mr. *Norwood's* measure of 57441, by 1460 toises. If we make the difference of longitude only 50', the error will still be greater than we can impute to so accurate an artist as Mr. *Norwood*. To take it wholly away that difference must not exceed 21  $\frac{1}{4}$ . And therefore till our maps are corrected, by an exact meridian drawn thro' the island, we may suspect an error of about half a degree in its position with respect to the cardinal points.

Mr. *Bouguer*, wanting to correct the inaccuracy of supposing the *species* of the figure already known, which in strictness may seem a begging the question; proposes to investigate a figure which should answer to any number of observations given. And it is plain that such a figure may be found, either in his way, or by applying the *differential method*. But this would be presuming a far greater exactness in the observations than can in reason be allowed, and sacrificing all elegance of solution to an advantage purely imaginary: for the errors of the observations will generally be greater than what can arise from the difference between the earth's figure and that of a true spheroid. Besides, the adding or taking away but one observation would, in *M. Bouguer's* method, alter the *species* of the figure found, and leave us bewildered in the same uncertainty as before.

If therefore we would use, or examine any observations, to see how far they agree with the theory, we must retain the hypothesis of a homogeneous earth, and compute by some rule like that in the foregoing note. We shall indeed arrive at different conclusions in almost every operation; as appears from the examples there given: and ratios of the earth's diameters might perhaps result, more differing from one another than either of them does from that assigned by Sir *Isaac*: though all of them will conspire in confirming his Theory, and in exploding the Hypothesis of Monsieur *Cassini*, "that the earth is elevated towards the poles."

The truth is, we may not only assume, without scruple, the spheroidal figure of the earth in general, but even that proportion of its diameters which results from the theory; nearly that of 231 to 230. For if, by the following tables, thence computed, we compare the several observations with one another, we shall better reconcile them, on this Hypothesis, than on any other that can be devised. And the differences between the Theory and the Observations will be no greater than what may in reason, by the allowance of the most approved writers \*, be ascribed to the errors in observing and measuring: especially, if we attribute, as we ought to do, some part of those differences to particular *physical* causes, either probable, or perhaps altogether unknown.

By the observations of Mr. *Colin Campbell* in the island of *Jamaica*, the *Second-pendulum* is there considerably shorter than the theory of a homogeneous earth requires. This, Mr. *Stirling* thinks †, may be owing to "the vicinity of a great quantity of water, which being specifically lighter than land, attracts less in proportion to its bulk." He computes likewise that the odds in the pendulums is not greater than what may be

\* *M. Clairaut* says there may have happened an error of 60, or as far as 80, toises, in the degree measured in *Lapland*. *Fig. de la Terre*, pag. 300. And *Don Juan* allows the error in his astronomical observations may amount to 6 or 8 seconds. *Liv. VII. Chap 5.*

† *Phil. Trans.* N<sup>o</sup> 438.



accounted for on that supposition. And if the subject be thought worth further enquiry, his conjecture will suggest an experiment, easily made, and decisive as to this point; “namely, to observe with an invariable pendulum, of Mr. George Graham’s construction, first in an island, and then in the inmost places of the continent, under the same parallel of latitude.”

But not only may we adopt the *Newtonian* spheroid as the *natural* figure of the earth; as the most *convenient* and best *suiting the observations*: we are even forced into this hypothesis, by the theory and the observations themselves.

Ever since the figure of the earth became a subject of mathematical enquiry, authors have been disposed to attribute to the observations and measurements a higher degree of accuracy than they could well have: and thence, finding a sensible disagreement between *Theory* and *Experiment*, they were led to frame various hypotheses of the internal constitution of the earth, by which that disagreement might be explained and adjusted.

The late Mr. *MacLaurin*, and the celebrated *Alexis Clairaut*, chiefly distinguished themselves in this difficult enquiry; the former in his immortal work on the *method of fluxions*; the latter in the *Philosophical Transactions*, and, afterwards, in a particular treatise printed in the year 1743. These skilful analysts examined all the hypotheses they could reasonably imagine; and altho’ they missed of their first aim, *the reconciling theory and experience, from the internal constitution of the earth*, yet they have established two propositions, which will bring us nearer the truth than any hypothesis they could frame.

1°. That in a homogeneous spheroid, revolving on its axis, the degrees of the meridian, and the lengths of an isochrone pendulum, will always increase together, from the equator to the poles; and that in stated assignable proportions.

2°. That unless we would run into very unnatural and extravagant suppositions, any hypothesis of a heterogeneous earth, that increases the degrees above their stated proportion, will diminish the due length of the pendulum; as whatever hypothesis lengthens the pendulum above its due proportion, will bring the degrees below theirs\*.

And such consequences being manifestly inconsistent with all the best experiments; which generally increase or diminish, above or below their just proportions, the length of a degree and of a pendulum together; we must return to whence we set out, the hypothesis of Sir *Isaac Newton*. And what disagreement may happen, between the theory and the observations, we may impute to the causes just now mentioned; and, in part, even to some latent prepossessions of the observers, which might a little affect their operations, without their suspecting any such thing.

\* See *Fluxions* art. 667, &c. and M. Clairaut, *Fig. de la Terre*.



The gentlemen who executed the arduous undertaking of measuring the earth, appear to be men of strict honour and integrity, as well as of consummate skill: and the world is greatly indebted to them, and to the Princes who patronized and employed them. Yet may we not, without offence, subject them to some degree of a weakness common to all mankind? instances of which have been seen in almost every dispute, tho' purely speculative; and particularly in the controversy concerning the earth's figure.

M. *Cassini* was a follower of *des Cartes*, whose world Sir *Isaac Newton* was born to destroy. Was it any wonder that *Cassini* should incline to give the earth a figure opposite to Sir *Isaac's*? or, that he should lead after him a few *Leibnitian Germans*?—The gentlemen who went to the north were genuine disciples of *Newton*; and we see they give him more than he wants; even after Mr. *Picard's* degree is corrected. M. *Bouguer* seems shy to accept of any assistance from his predecessors: and it is perhaps for this reason that, when his operations are finished, he hesitates about the conclusion; whether he should rate the increments of degrees by the squares, or the cubes, or the fourth powers of the sines of latitude.—On his return, however, he yields, I am told, to the established authority, and is willing to let the ratio of the earth's diameters be that of 179 to 178.—Don *Juan*, on the contrary, lays aside his terrestrial measures, which had cost him so dear, because his degree, compared with others measured elsewhere, gave him, every time, a different conclusion; and trusting wholly to the length of the pendulum, thence brings out the difference of the semidiameter of the equator and the semiaxis to be  $\frac{1}{600}$ ; precisely the same as that assigned by his friend M. *Clairaut* in *Phil. Transf.* N. 449—Now may not the authority, as well as the theorems of M. *Clairaut*, have had some part in this determination? other instances might be given.

But, passing this, we have to observe further, that altho' the constitution of the earth were so far from being uniform, as sensibly to affect the observations; yet rules and tables adapted to the *primary hypothesis* of a *homogeneous* earth, would still be necessary; as a *fixt standard* for readily comparing and weighing all those observations; and by which indeed any student of geography, who is master of common arithmetic and trigonometry, may reap all the fruits that can be expected from this grand enquiry; which has so long exercised the heads and hands of the learned, and has filled so many volumes, in almost all the languages of Europe.

§. 4. The Construction and Use of Table I. Of the semidiameters of the parallels of latitude.

### CONSTRUCTION.

In the scheme annexed, if ZT be a tangent line to the meridian of any place Z, meeting the diameter EQ of the equator, produced, in T, and ZG perpendicular to it cut EQ in G; the angle ZGT will be the latitude of the place Z; and ZL, parallel to EQ, is the semidiameter of its parallel of latitude.

The numbers in Tab. I. are those semidiameters ZL; CE being unity; and are thus computed:—Cp, the semiaxis, being denoted by  $m$ , to the Log. tangent of the Co-latitude add the log.  $\frac{1}{m}$  ( $= 0.0018818$ ) So shall the sine of the angle, whose tangent the sum is, be the semidiameter sought.

### USE.

1°. Let the latitude of Z, for example, be  $56^\circ$ ; then ZL will be .560858; exceeding the cosine of  $56^\circ$  which is .559195, by .001665, or nearly  $\frac{1}{336}$  part. That is, the parallel of  $56^\circ$  on the spheroid exceeds that on the sphere by no more than  $\frac{1}{336}$ . And every where else, similar arcs of the same parallel of latitude, on the sphere and spheroid, will be so nearly equal, that in the practice of sailing their difference may be neglected.

2. The semidiameters ZL, (zl), being every where given, we can, by a very obvious process, measure the right line which connects any two given points Z, z, in the surface of the spheroid; whether those points lye in the same or in different meridian planes.

§. 5. The Construction and Use of Table II. Of the lengths of an isochronous pendulum; its length at the pole being unity.

### CONSTRUCTION.

The numbers in this table are proportional to the lines ZG perpendicular to the tangent ZT, and terminated by the greater axis of the generating ellipse: the actual gravity of bodies, and the length of the pendulum which measures it, being, by Mr. Mac Laurin's theorems\*, proportional to those lines.

They are thus easily computed: To the logarithm of the Semidiameter of the parallel of lat. (in Tab. I.) add 2 log.  $m$ . ( $-1.9962364$ .) and from the sum take the log. cosine of the latitude, so shall the remainder be the logarithm of ZG.

### USE.

1°. The lengths of pendulums, that have been any where observed, are hereby compared with the lengths which a homogenous spheroid requires; and the difference between theory and experience immediately found.

\* Fluxions §. 640.

Thus

Thus the number in the table for the latitude of *Paris* ( $48^{\circ} 50'$ ) being .9981195, and in lat.  $66^{\circ} 48'$ , at *Pello*, .999326, and the former being to the latter as  $440 \frac{7}{10}$  lines (*M. de Mairan's* pendulum) are to 441.099, this is the pendulum's length due to a homogeneous earth at lat.  $66^{\circ} 48'$ . And *Mr. de Maupertuis*, with *Mr. Graham's* excellent instrument, makes it but 441.170, exceeding the former by about  $\frac{1}{170}$  of an inch.

Again, by the experiments of the *French* and *Spanish* gentlemen at the equator, the mean length of a second pendulum was there about 438.79 lines, which reduced to the level of the sea they rate at 439.2 The number in the table for lat.  $0^{\circ}$  is .995677, and .9981195 is to it as  $440 \frac{7}{10}$  lines to 439.484. The theory therefore exceeds the observation by somewhat more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a line.

2°. The same table serves for comparing the terrestrial measures; only the cubes of the numbers must be used, not the numbers themselves: the ray of curvature at any point *Z* being proportional to *ZG* cub\*.

The numbers for the latitudes  $66^{\circ} 20'$  and  $49^{\circ} 22'$  are .999300 and .9981595; and their cubes are as 1.00000 to .9965805, or as 57422 toises (the degree measured by *M. de Maupertuis*) to 57225.6; exceeding *Mr. Picard's* degree corrected (57183) by 42.6 toises; equivalent to an error in the astronomical part of about  $2 \frac{2}{3}$  seconds.

And the same cube is to the cube of .995677 (belonging to lat.  $0^{\circ}$ ) as 1.000000 to .989163, or as 57422 is to 56800 toises; exceeding the degree at the equator, as measured by the *French* and *Spanish* gentlemen †, by 46 toises.

But if we say as the cube of the number belonging to  $49^{\circ} 22'$ , to the cube of .995677, so 57183 to  $56757 \frac{4}{10}$  toises this number will exceed the equator-degree only by  $3 \frac{4}{10}$  toises.

Upon the whole, we find the differences between the best observations and the theory, to be no greater than what may arise from errors which no observer, with his utmost care, and with the best instruments, can altogether avoid. We see likewise what an unmanageable *Proteus* the earth would prove, were we to take its figure from the observations alone; without correcting and comparing them.

3°. We have been told that the knowledge of the earth's figure is of importance in levelling, and in conveying of water; how far it is so will be seen by an example.

Suppose an aqueduct is to be carried sixty minutes or miles from lat.  $48^{\circ}$  to lat.  $49^{\circ}$ , and that the effect proposed requires, that the cistern or reservoir should be *M* feet high at lat.  $48^{\circ}$ . the earth being supposed to have no diurnal rotation, and consequently, a second-pendulum to be every where of the same length. Then seeing by Tab. II. the decrement of

\* See de *Mairan's* Miscell. Analyt. and *M<sup>r</sup> Laurin* §. 657.

† *F. Frisi Disquisitio Milan* 1752.



gravity from  $49^\circ$  to  $48^\circ$  is but  $\frac{7}{98132}$ , to balance it, we need only add to the height  $M$  about  $\frac{1}{13108}$  of itself; which, if  $M$  be a statute mile of 5280 feet, does not amount to five inches.

4°. To find the radius of a circle *æquicurve* to the meridian, at any given latitude, from thrice the logarithm of the number in Tab. II. take 4 times the logarithm of  $m$  (which is  $-1.9924728$ ) the remainder shall be the log. of the radius sought\*.

And hence the distance of two places whose latitudes and difference of longitude are given, may be nearly found. Find their distance as if they lay in the surface of a sphere, whose semidiameter is the same as that of the equator  $CE$ ; and increase or diminish that distance in the ratio of  $CE$  to half the sum of the rays of Curvature at the given latitudes.

5°. If the moon's horizontal parallax at the equator, (or more strictly, the tangent of that angle) is represented by its semidiameter  $CE$ , her horizontal parallax at any latitude  $ZGE$ , will be  $Zg$ ; that is,  $ZG$  produced till it meets the diameter  $OH$  drawn parallel to the tangent  $ZT$ .

The lines  $Zg$  are computed either by taking the logarithms of the numbers in Tab. I. from the Log. cosines of the latitudes; or, by taking the logarithms of the numbers in Tab. II. from the logarithm of  $m$  ( $-1.9981182$ .) In either way the remainder will be the logarithm of  $Zg$ , the measure of the moon's horizontal parallax for the latitude  $ZGE$ .

Thus in *lat.*  $52^\circ$ . The logarithm of  $Lg$ , will be  $-1.998833$ : and thence, if at a certain distance of the earth and moon, the parallax at the equator is  $60'$ , adding the log. of  $60$ , there will be produced the log. of  $59'.839$ , and the parallax is lessened by  $9\frac{1}{3}$  seconds. But this equation of the moon's parallax can never exceed  $\frac{1}{17}$  of the greatest parallax ( $61'7''$ ) and at the pole would not rise to  $16''$ .

6°. To find the parallax of the moon's *Azimuth*; take from  $ZG$  (in Tab. II.  $\frac{1}{131}$  of itself, to reduce it to radius  $CE$ , in parts of which  $Zg$  is express'd; and subtract the remainder from  $Zg$  found by the rule in N° 5. So shall their difference  $Gg$  be given. Say then as radius to the tangent of *lat.* so  $Gg$  to  $Cg$ , the parallax sought.

In *lat.*  $52^\circ$  we found just now that  $Zg$  is  $.997320$ , (the number whose log. is  $-1.998833$ ) and  $ZG$ , reduced as above, is  $.994032$ :  $Gg$ , therefore, their difference is  $.003288$ ; and  $1 : \text{tang. } 52^\circ : : .003288 : .00420845 = Cg$  in parts of the equator. Which multiplied by  $61'.7''$ , gives it  $15\frac{2}{3}$  seconds for the greatest parallax of *Azimuth*, at  $52^\circ$  *lat.* And this is to be diminished, on either side of the prime vertical, in the ratio of the cosine of the moon's distance from it †.

\* The radius of curvature becomes equal to  $CE$ , or unity, at *lat.*  $54^\circ 47\frac{1}{2}'$ .

† Whether such equations of the moon's place are worth the notice of practical astronomers, themselves can best judge.

## Of the SPHEROID-FIGURE of the EARTH.

### §. 6. The Construction and Use of Table III.

The numbers of this table were computed from a *series*, which converges very quickly to any degree of exactness; the difference of the earth's diameters being so small. Its use is plain from the table itself, which, in *navigation*, is but inconsiderable; the greatest difference of the elliptical and spherical arcs (at  $54^{\circ} 47\frac{1}{3}$ ) being but  $17'6.15$  *minutes* of the equator. And therefore it was thought sufficient to compute for every 5th degree.

### §. 7. The Construction and Use of Table IV.

The meridional parts of the spheroid are calculated as follows.

The semidiameter of the equator (and the radius of the tables) being *unity*, write  $m$  for the *semiaxis*,  $q$  for  $1-m^2$ ,  $s$  for the sine of the given latitude: and let  $A$  be the arc whose *log. sine* is  $\frac{1}{2} \log. q - \log. s$ . Then, *the logarithm of log. co-tangent of half the compliment of A, added to the sum of  $\frac{1}{2} \log. q$  and the constant log. 3.8984895, will be the logarithm of the excess of the meridional parts on the sphere above those on the oblate spheroid, at the lat. whose sine is s.*

The improvement of navigation having been looked on as the chief motive to the laborious and expensive undertakings of the French academicians, no sooner had M. de *Maupertuis*' book appeared, than *nautical tables* for the *spheroid* were published in a treatise which, the year after, was translated into French, and published with additions, by the late M. de *Bremont* \*.

The truth is, there was then some appearance of use for such tables: it was possible to devise a ship's course in which the difference between the sphere and spheroid might not be insensible. But the earth having, since that time, much contracted her equatorial diameter, so much that we can scarce do better than take her up in the shape in which Sir *Isaac* left her; the numbers in this table only shew that seamen may do very well without them.

## GENERAL CONCLUSION.

Altho' the effects of the earth's spheroid figure are thus inconsiderable in practical arts; yet are not the speculations concerning it altogether useless, nor the pains that have been taken for its exact determination, labour lost.

\* Those tables were computed upon the comparison of the degree in *Lapland* ( $57438$  T.) with that of *M. Picard* ( $57060$ ); making the diameter of the equator to the axis nearly as  $89$  to  $88$ .

1°. Had the French academy of Sciences, and the rest of the learned world, acquiesced in M. *Cassini's* determination so speciously exhibited, the errors in *navigation* would have been really of dangerous consequence; as the late Professor *Celsius* has shewn: And as any one may satisfy himself by constructing from a rule of Mr. *Maclaurin's* † table of meridional parts for *Cassini's* earth, and comparing the results.

2°. Theory and experience agreeing to make a very sensible difference between the spheroid of Sir *Isaac Newton* and that of *Huygens*, Sir *Isaac's* theory of attraction, in conformity to which that difference arises, receives an undoubted confirmation.

3°. It is from the figure, and internal construction of the earth, that the quantity of the equinoctial precession, and of the nutations of the earth's axis are computed.

4°. This scurf of the earth which we inhabit, and into which we can penetrate but a little way, is composed of an endless variety of substances, differently concreted, and of different specific gravities. And hence we are easily led to imagine a like variety of density throughout the whole mass of the Earth. But there seems to be little ground for this notion, either in experience or in Philosophy. All the best observations suit very well to a homogeneous earth: and supposing them perfectly exact, the whole difference between them and the theory, might fairly be ascribed to an excess or defect of attraction, from particular accidental causes:

A variety of substances of different qualities and densities was absolutely necessary in the superficial parts; for by their *elemental strife* all things are *generated, preserved, and destroyed*. But this reason ceases in the dead mass below: to which it will be difficult to assign any other use than to serve as a basis for the surface to rest on, and to receive and exert the quantities of attractive force necessary to keep the earth and her satellite in their destined courses. Ends which can be as well effected, and with more simplicity, in a homogeneous mass, than in any other that can be assigned. And *God and nature do nothing in vain*.

We may therefore, for the present, safely set aside the hypothesis of a variable density in the internal parts of the earth, with the conclusions drawn from it. Particularly we may hold for suspected at least, any astronomical calculations that are partly founded in that hypothesis.

† Fluxions §. 895, &c.



## T A B L E I.

Of the Semidiameters of the Parallels of Latitude,  
Rad. of the Equator being 1.00000.

Lat.	Semid.	Lat.	Semid.	Lat.	Semid.
1 <sup>o</sup>	.999849	31	.858150	61	.486418
2	.999396	32	.849077	62	.471059
3	.998641	33	.839746	63	.455553
4	.997585	34	.830158	64	.439907
5	.996227	35	.820317	65	.424124
6	.994569	36	.810226	66	.408209
7	.992610	37	.799886	67	.392167
8	.990351	38	.789303	68	.376004
9	.987793	39	.778477	69	.359723
10	.984936	40	.767414	70	.343331
11	.981781	41	.756115	71	.326831
12	.978330	42	.744585	72	.310230
13	.974583	43	.732826	73	.293532
14	.970541	44	.720842	74	.276742
15	.966205	45	.708637	75	.259867
16	.961576	46	.696215	76	.242911
17	.956657	47	.683578	77	.225878
18	.951448	48	.670731	78	.208775
19	.945951	49	.657677	79	.191607
20	.940167	50	.644421	80	.174376
21	.934098	51	.630967	81	.157097
22	.927746	52	.617318	82	.139766
23	.921112	53	.603478	83	.122391
24	.914198	54	.589452	84	.104977
25	.907020	55	.575244	85	.087531
26	.899540	56	.560858	86	.070058
27	.891800	57	.546299	87	.052563
28	.883788	58	.531571	88	.035051
29	.875508	59	.516678	89	.017528
30	.866961	60	.501626	90	0

## TABLE II.

The lengths of an Isochronous Pendulum ;  
its length at the Pole being 1.00000.

Lat.	Length.				
0°	.995677	Lat.	Length.	Lat.	Length.
1	.995678	31	.99681	61	.998978
2	.995681	32	885	62	.999042
3	687	33	953	63	104
4	697	34	.997022	64	164
5	709	35	092	65	223
6	723	36	164	66	281
7	740	37	236	67	337
8	759	38	309	68	390
9	781	39	382	69	442
10	806	40	456	70	492
11	833	41	530	71	539
12	862	42	605	72	584
13	894	43	680	73	628
14	928	44	755	74	670
15	964	45	831	75	709
16	.996003	46	907	76	745
17	044	47	982	77	780
18	087	48	.998057	78	812
19	132	49	132	79	842
20	179	50	207	80	869
21	228	51	281	81	894
22	280	52	354	82	.999917
23	333	53	427	83	36
24	387	54	499	84	52
25	443	55	571	85	67
26	502	56	642	86	79
27	563	57	712	87	88
28	625	58	780	88	95
29	688	59	847	89	99
30	752	60	913	90	1.000000

T A B. III.

Arcs of the Meridian in minutes of the equator to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Lat.	Spheroid.	Sphere.	d.f.
0	9956764	1000000	0.
1	59.49	60	0.54
5	297.27	300	2.73
10	596.50	600	3.50
15	892.49	900	7.51
20	1190.27	1200	9.73
25	1488.24	1500	11.76
30	1786.49	1800	13.51
35	2085.00	2100	15.00
40	2383.85	2400	16.15
45	2683.03	2700	16.97
50	2982.54	3000	17.46
55	3282.39	3300	17.61
60	3582.56	3600	17.44
65	3883.02	3900	16.98
70	4183.75	4200	16.25
75	4484.69	4500	15.31
80	4785.81	4800	14.19
85	5087.04	5100	12.96
90	5388.33	5400	11.67

T A B. IV.

Meridional Parts on the Sphere and Spheroid to every fifth degree of Latitude.

Sphere.	Spheroid.	d.f.
0.	0.	0
60.00	59.49	0.51
300.38	297.80	2.58
603.07	597.92	5.15
910.46	902.78	7.68
1225.14	1214.96	10.18
1550.00	1537.47	12.53
1888.37	1873.53	14.84
2244.29	2227.26	17.03
2622.69	2603.60	19.09
3029.94	3008.94	21.00
3474.47	3451.71	22.76
3967.97	3943.62	24.35
4527.37	4501.62	25.75
5178.81	5151.86	26.95
5965.92	5937.97	27.95
6970.34	6941.64	28.70
8375.19	8345.90	29.29
10764.62	10734.99	29.63
∞	∞	29.752



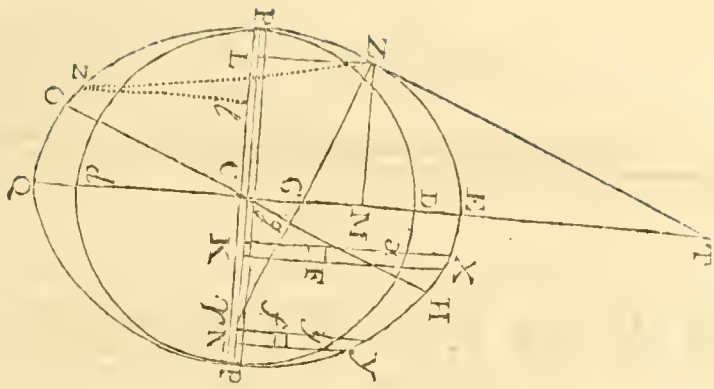
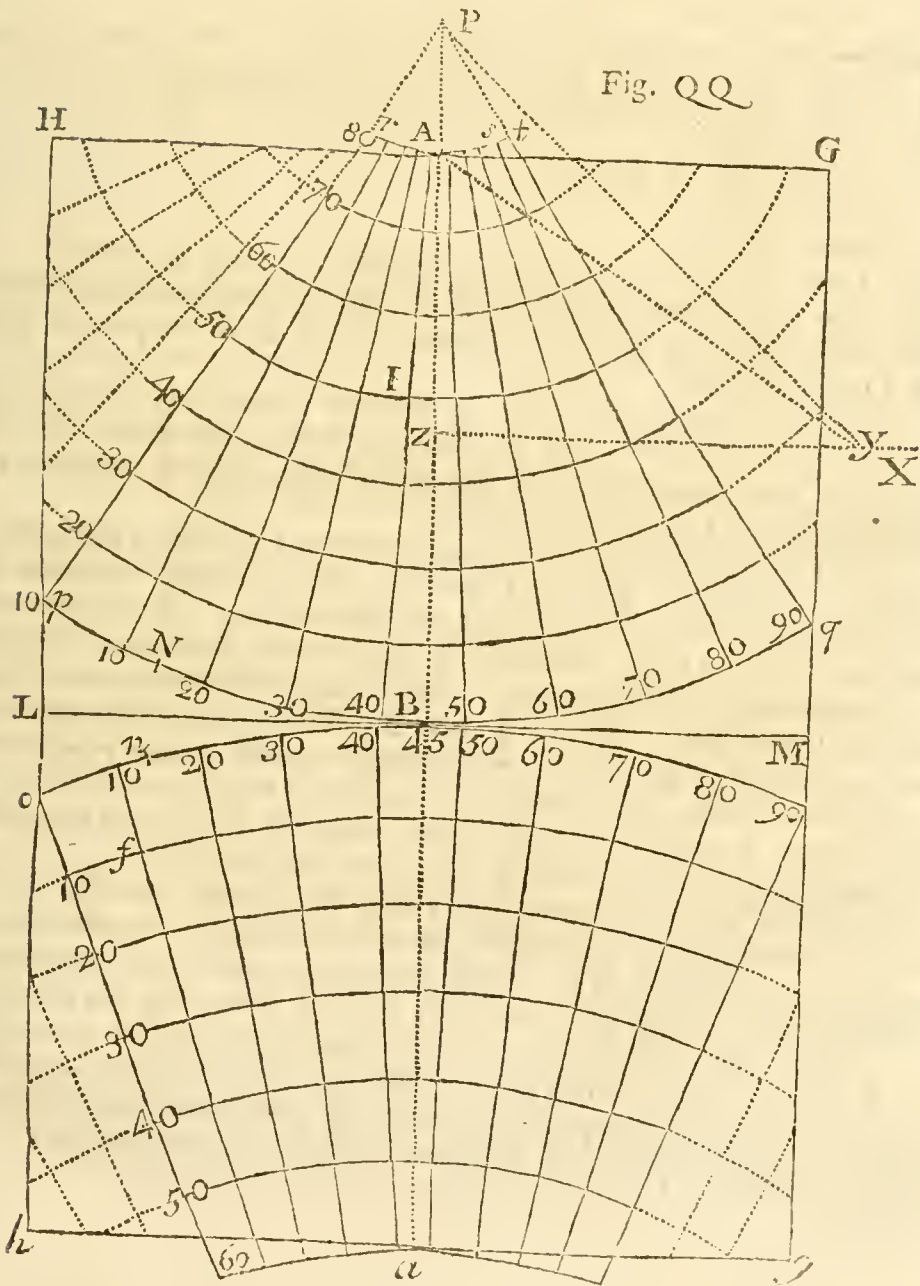


Fig. QQ



## III.

*Of the best Form of a Geographical Map.*

**T**HERE are *Six* things that claim a place in the construction of a map, and which ought all to be represented, as nearly as possible, in their just dimensions.

- 1°. The *latitudes* of places.
- 2°. Their *longitudes*.
- 3°. Their *distances*:
- 4°. Their *bearings*, or the *Rumb*-line from one place to another.
- 5°. The *angles* in which the *meridians* intersect the *parallels* of latitude.
- 6°. And lastly, the *superficial* content of any *Zone*, or part of a zone, that is to be described.

To exhibit all these on a plane, in the just quantity they have on the globe, is impossible: but that construction which represents the greatest number of them *accurately*, and the others very *nearly* so, may be called the best form of a geographical map.

In the *Philos. Transact.* of the year 1758, §. LXXIII, a method of description is proposed, by which the first, second, fifth, and sixth of the above conditions are strictly satisfied, and the *bearings* and *distances* are likewise very near the truth, unless the breadth of the given zone be excessive.

The method is founded in this; that a *conical* surface is a *mean* between a *convex* surface and a *plane*. In one direction, it accommodates itself to the curvature of a globe, and consequently receives a truer projection than a plane surface can; after which it is capable of being extended on a plane, the distances between any two points remaining the same as they were on the conical surface, that is nearly the same as on the globe.

From this principle several rules may be derived; which the reader may see in the above *transact.*, and the *addenda*. But the following may be recommended as the easiest in practice, and at the same time sufficiently exact; as any one may satisfy himself by making the comparison.

1. The artist having fixt upon the depth he can give his map from north to south, let him draw the line AB (Fig. QQ.) equal to it; and divide this line into as many equal parts as there are degrees between the extreme latitudes. As if the extreme latitudes are  $10^{\circ}$  and  $80^{\circ}$ , the line AB is to be divided into 70 equal parts.

2. From

2. From Z, the middle latitude, raise the perpendicular ZX, and from the point A draw AY meeting AX in Y, and making the angle ZAY equal to the complement of half the difference of latitude. Thus in our example, half that difference being  $35^\circ$ , the angle ZAY will be  $55^\circ$ . Then draw YP making the angle AYP equal to the complement of the greater latitude, and cutting AB produced in P, so shall the point P be a common centre from which all the parallels of latitude are to be described as in the figure.

Or, if you had rather use numbers; multiply the co-tangent of half the difference of the extreme latitudes by the co-tangent of the middle latitude, and the product by half the depth of your map, in inches; so shall this last product be the number of inches from the middle of the map to the centre of the parallels.

Thus the depth of the map being 50 inches, and the extreme latitudes being  $10^\circ$  and  $60^\circ$ , half the diff. of lat. is  $25^\circ$ , and the mean lat.  $35^\circ$ ; whose co-tangents are 2.144507 and 1.428148; their product is 3.06267; and this multiplied by 25 gives, for the distance sought, 76.567 inches.

3. Take the angles of longitude, as BPP, BPQ, and their subdivisions, in proportion to the angles on the globe, which they are to represent, as the sine of the middle latitude is to radius; and through the points of division draw the meridians P10, P20 &c. Thus if pBq is to represent  $90^\circ$  of longitude. The middle latitude in our example being  $35^\circ$ , whose sine is .7071, to Rad. 1.0000; the angle pPq will be  $90^\circ \times .7071$  or  $63^\circ 38'$ , and any angle of  $10^\circ$ , will be about  $7^\circ 4\frac{1}{4}'$ .

4. If it be required that the map should serve likewise for a sea-chart; to the common pole P, from as many centers as is necessary, draw as many logarithm-spirals as are necessary; and they will be so many rumb lines on the map, each of them cutting all the meridians in the same angle; and directing a ship's course to as great a degree of exactness as is attainable in the practice of sailing.

These may be described mechanically, by a rule deduced either from one of Mr. Cotes's propositions, or from a case of Mercator-sailing.

5. Hitherto the whole map has been supposed to lye on the same side of the equator. If it does not, there arise two cases.

First, when the zones, to the north and south of the equator, are of a small breadth and nearly equal: then we may, without sensible error, extend the lesser to an equality with the greater, and project on a Cylindric surface cutting the globe in the two circles of mean latitude.

Secondly, if the zones differ much in breadth, we are to describe the northern as above directed (the arc pBq, in our figure, now representing  $90^\circ$  of the equator) and by the same rules, the southern zone is to be described on the other side of the tangent LM.

Only it is to be observed, that the distance of two places (F, f,) that lye on different sides of the equator, cannot, on this map be measured immediately,



diate. We must first find the point N in the equator where a great circle through F, f, cuts it; which is done by an easy construction; or by the following analogy.

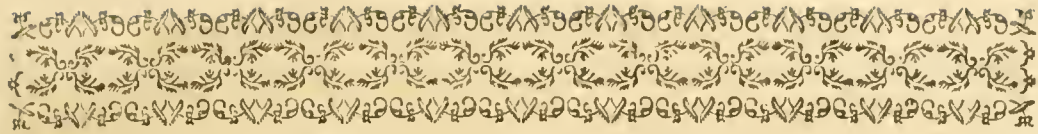
*As the sum of the tangents of the two latitudes is to their difference: so is the tangent of half the difference of longitude to the tangent of an angle, which added to half the difference of longitude will determine the point N.*

Thus F being in N. lat.  $50^{\circ}$ , and f in S. lat.  $10^{\circ}$  and their diff. of longitude  $30^{\circ}$ , the arc found will be  $26^{\circ}\frac{1}{4}$ ; which are to be counted off on the equator from the meridian of F, to find the point N. After which the right lines FN, fn, join'd and added, will give the distance from F to f near enough to the truth, unless the zones are very broad.

Note, *Ptolemy*, or whoever wrote the last chapter, Book I. of his geography, proposes to describe the then known world, from the *Parallel of Thule* in  $63^{\circ}$  north, to the parallel opposite to that of *Meroe*, with  $180^{\circ}$  of longitude; and his method so far resembles this, that the meridians are right lines drawn through a centre of the parallels.

But it must be owned, that as his rule is not general, being adapted only to that particular purpose; so neither is it so accurate as it might have been, from principles well known to *Ptolemy*. The zone, particularly, which lies beyond the equator, is delineated in plain contradiction to the rules of art.

Sensible of those defects, the author gives, in the sequel of that same chapter, a rule which he prefers to the other; as indeed it might suit his purpose better. But this preference seems to have been one cause why geographers have so long copied *Ptolemy* and one another, to the neglect of a method which, in most cases, is more easy and elegant, as well as more exact. Some of our best artists have, for more than a century past, seen the advantages of it; and the ingenious Mr. *Kitchin* hath generally used it, in the maps with which the following volumes are enriched.



OF THE  
U T I L I T Y  
O F  
G E O G R A P H Y.

**T**HE Utility of GEOGRAPHY is very considerable, and deserves a particular discussion; but this, according to the plan I have laid down, must not be too long. What I shall chiefly dwell upon is, its principal use, by observing ‘ That the knowledge of ‘ God, the Creator and Preserver of all things, is eminently ‘ promoted by this Science.’—Our Earth, indeed, is but a small, yet no contemptible, part of his glorious works; and as the whole Universe taken together demonstrates the Existence of a GOD, so the Earth in particular exhibits the most indisputable proofs of that great Truth. For wherever we turn our eyes, we cannot but observe evident traces of the power, wisdom, and goodness of the Supreme Being. Such an attentive observation of the wonders that surround us is more incumbent on us, and the more to our advantage, as we cannot so perfectly view and admire those parts of the Creation that are detached from the Earth we inhabit; I mean the shining orbs that strike the admiring eye, on viewing the heavens with all their magnificent apparatus; which are at too great a distance for us to have any perfect knowledge of them, or to discover their nature and symmetry, so as to enlarge our conceptions of the great Creator. Our Earth, however, is at present sufficient to impart to us that knowledge of GOD which is attainable by considering the works of nature; for it is so full of the stupendous works of GOD, that even after the most assiduous enquiries and most careful observations, we have a thorough insight but into the least part of them; nay, properly speaking, we have not a perfect knowledge of any single part of the Creation. We may therefore justly conclude that if this terraqueous Globe, which is but a very small portion

of the *WHOLE*, is stored with so many glorious instances of the Divine wisdom and power that even a general survey of it proves so laborious, so difficult and extensive a task; we might say infinitely more, could we but attain such a general knowledge of the Universe, as we have gradually acquired of this our Earth.

*God* made the Earth and every thing that is in it. It was not his design to leave it 'empty and void;' but he stocked it with animate and inanimate Beings. The former, indeed, exceed the latter in excellence; but all of them taken together are admirable, and astonishingly glorious. On every side we see great and stupendous works, either of nature or art, or both at the same time. *God* is indisputably the author of both. The beauty, lustre, pomp, and magnificence of Nature display his creating and preserving power; and even the skill of man in various arts and sciences, is the gift of *God*. The nature or constitution of the several parts and regions of the earth is far from being every where the same, but is wonderfully diversified; every country having a different temperature of air, with different plants, fruits, and animals. All these things exist for the sake of Men, who, according to the wise appointment of *God*, are descended from one common Father, whose numerous posterity are spread over the whole face of the Earth, and between whom, in process of time, a wide difference is arisen, with respect to their outward form and manner of life. Now as innumerable families descended from one pair, and from these again many and great nations and people derive their origin, *God* allotted to each of them the 'bounds of their habitations;' for the limits and extent of their countries are grounded neither on chance, nor on the choice of the nations themselves, but on an almighty and all-wise-Providence, of which persons of attention and reflection may very soon be convinced.

The different political constitutions and all their changes and revolutions are likewise owing to *God's* sole appointment; which, as King and Lord of the Universe, he regulates by the most unerring wisdom, and determines the mutual relation, which, from time to time, they bear to each other. By his all-wise, governing Providence also, the most distant parts of the known world are connected by a mutual commerce. One Nation has been of great service to another towards attaining the knowledge of the true *God*, and our Saviour Jesus Christ; has instructed it in arts and sciences; and directed its progress in learning and knowledge. The superfluity of one country abundantly supplies the wants of another: And there is not a single country which produces such plenty of every thing as to supply its own necessities, conveniences, and pleasure, and to be able entirely to subsist without the rest of the world. On the contrary, one country may stand in need of another, either to supply its wants, or to take off its superfluities: And as every Nation is concerned for its own welfare, the common and general advantage of all is promoted, whether they design it or no.



It was undoubtedly by the direction of Providence, that men took occasion, both in ancient and modern times, to send out greater or smaller colonies from among them into the most distant countries, in order to get subsistence, or to raise their fortunes. The mixture of people arising from such transmigrations has produced a similitude of manners and a closer union among them; which indeed gave occasion to the propagation of many vices, but at the same time of many virtues.

Let us in the next place consider, how various nations have improved and cultivated their native land, or conquered provinces; what impregnable towns and fortresses, what magnificent and surprizing edifices they have built; what elegant gardens and other embellishments they have planned, and we must be astonished at the intellectual powers, the noble talents, and amazing skill, which God has graciously imparted to men. How few and inconsiderable were the cities and towns in *Denmark*, *Germany*, and other kingdoms a thousand years ago? But, without going so far back, if we look into the annals of modern times; we shall find that about two hundred, or a hundred, or even fifty years since, here stood a desolate and waste region, there an extensive dreary wood; here rugged and desert rocks, and there an inaccessible fen or morass, in places which are now adorned with a populous and elegant town, a magnificent palace, a strong castle, or other place of defence. Nature has been thus so far subdued and constrained by art and indefatigable industry, as to make all this appear next to a wonder in the eyes of the intelligent and experienced spectator. With what admiration and surprize must we view these great and sumptuous works? Are they to be considered merely as the effects of human efforts?—By no means: They have only lent their hands to the work; by which instruments GOD, who has girded them with strength, and furnished them with wisdom and skill, produced these wonders. Had these things been contrary to his supreme will, how easy had it been for infinite power to have defeated all human endeavours; and how often indeed has such an intervention actually happened? As for many famous cities founded in ancient, middle, and modern ages, we may now ask with astonishment where are they?—Consumed with fire from heaven, laid waste by cruel enemies, swallowed up by the earth or the sea; covered by mountains, or buried in the vast abyss. All this hath the LORD done, the GOD who made the heavens and the earth. But from whence do we learn this truth?—It is from the following consideration. The overthrow of several renowned and populous cities appeared to the inhabitants and the rest of the world, and even to those who were employed as instruments to destroy them, altogether improbable and incredible. But God had foretold and expressly threatened, that he would accomplish the destruction and desolation of some of those cities. That the fate of *Babylon*, *Tyre*, *Jerusalem*, &c. happened in consequence of such predictions, we are well assured.

And though God did not by his prophets foretel the downfall of other cities, that have been destroyed in a signal manner; yet from these instances we must acknowledge his all-governing Providence to have been the efficient cause of such events. I might indeed enlarge on this important subject, which would, probably, be both useful and entertaining, if my plan would admit of it: But this short sketch is sufficient to prove the proposition which I would chiefly inculcate to my readers, namely, That a good system of Geography exhibits evident proofs of, and arguments for the doctrine of God's Providence; and that consequently it ought to be ranked among the most useful and necessary books, as of equal importance with any theological treatise written on that subject. It is much to be lamented that Geography has hitherto been so little considered in this light, and so seldom, if at all, inculcated, on the minds of youth in particular, with that view. On the contrary, the stupendous works of God displayed in the Creation, are too much disregarded by the generality; though they contain the first principles by which we attain the knowledge of a God, and to which we are so often referred in the holy Scriptures. The rational and serious consideration of the Creation supplies us with exalted ideas of God; and if to this we join the comfortable doctrine of God's Reconciliation to guilty man by the mediation of Christ, he will appear to us an object so highly deserving of our love, as necessarily to produce the strongest affiance in him, and make us resolve to conform our lives to his sacred will from a principle of gratitude. It is therefore my desire and request that all, who shall in these sheets read the description of the kingdoms, states, and cities of the world, would reflect, that it is not an account of the works of men, but rather of the works of God, the Creator and Preserver of the world; and, indeed, of the smallest part of the Universe or amazing WHOLE. In particular, I could wish that the instructors of youth would labour to inspire their pupils with an awful conception of that transcendently glorious and infinitely wise Being, of whose immense domain this Earth constitutes so inconsiderable a part, and whose vassals Princes, Kings, and Emperors are; a conception, I say, suitable to his grandeur, and fit to inspire us, his creatures, with admiration, complacency, and delight.

Moreover, the Utility of Geography is still more extensive. It is in general entertaining, useful, and necessary to bring us acquainted with the Earth on which we live. It must be very disagreeable, not to say worse, to be ignorant of the situation, &c. of foreign Countries when, in conversation, or perusing histories, we hear of battles, sieges, travels by land, voyages by sea, and other remarkable occurrences. For, without a competent knowledge of Geography, it is impossible for us to form to ourselves a just or useful idea of such things. Even many learned men are strangers to their own country and native place, not to mention foreign countries; and how mortifying a circumstance is this? Were children, instead of the  
idle

idle ridiculous tales of ghosts and fairies, early instructed in the knowledge of the Earth we inhabit, how great would be the advantage arising from such instructions? In short, Geography is a science not only useful for all, but indispensibly necessary to some persons. A Sovereign must needs be acquainted with the state of his own and of foreign countries; particularly of the neighbouring kingdoms: And the more accurate his knowledge of them is, the greater advantage he will reap from it. None can pretend to be a Statesman without a competent skill in Geography: For, how should he come to the knowledge of the weakness and strength of the dominions of his sovereign, and of the princes with whom he is connected by alliances, without a treatise on political Geography? Such books are the most necessary and indispensable in his library. But it may, perhaps, be objected against this science, That descriptions and maps are betrayers of the countries they represent, by supplying ministers of state and Generals of armies with a knowledge, which often proves very prejudicial to those countries. This pretended objection has no appearance of reason, unless such descriptions are too explicit and circumstantial; but in general is groundless and trifling. For never was a country conquered by means of a treatise on political Geography; but power and conduct are generally necessary for the conquest or defence of a state, though a just knowledge of the Geography of the country to be attacked must be of use to the assailant. When an enemy has once conquered a country, he will hardly be at a loss to force it to contributions, nor to acquire an exact knowledge of its ability or riches, though he be not furnished with a geographical treatise in which these particulars are accurately described. But supposing that geographical descriptions should serve the enemy as a guide into the dominions which they intend to attack, they may be of the same service, not only to one or two, but to all sovereigns and commanders; so that this advantage is general, and does not cause, or promote, wars and invasions. However the safety or danger of countries is far from depending on the political descriptions of them, which in other respects, are of great use and advantage to mankind. The Divine can neither fully understand nor justly explain the holy Scriptures, nor have his mind duly impressed with a sense of God's power exhibited in his glorious works, nor make a proper display of those works to others, if he be wholly unacquainted with Geography. The natural Philosopher may likewise employ this science with uncommon advantage for his philosophical purposes. To the Merchant, whose commerce is of so extensive a nature, the knowledge of Geography must be of indispensable necessity. Lastly, what benefit may not a Traveller derive from a well written system of Geography? It will inform him of all the remarkable objects in every city and country, and consequently will point out to him all those places that are worthy of his notice and observation. In a word, Geography will prove an useful amusement to every curious and inquisitive mind.



# I N T R O D U C T I O N

T O

# G E O G R A P H Y.

---

## C H A P. I.

### *Of G E O G R A P H Y in General.*

§. I. **B**Y G E O G R A P H Y we understand ‘ An authentic and accurate account of the natural and civil state of the known parts of the Earth.’ This definition contains two distinguishing characteristics of Geography.

§. 2. One of these characteristics relates to the object of Geography, which is, ‘ The natural and civil state of the known world.’ Now as the Earth constitutes but a part of the Universe, so Geography is properly but a part of Cosmography, with which it is intimately connected, and is very much illustrated by it. Geography treats of the terraqueous Globe as far as it is known to us: For towards the north and south Poles are countries either unknown\*, or of which we have scarcely any further knowledge than that they merely exist. The existence of other countries besides the known parts of the Earth is bare conjecture, as no certain account of them has been given, to this day. The known parts of the Earth are to be considered as well in their ‘ natural as civil state.’ In the *natural* description is comprehended, *first*, either the mathematical consideration of the Earth as it constitutes a planetary orb, and under this head we examine its figure, magnitude, situation and proportion, &c. to the other bodies that constitute the Universe; or, *secondly*, the knowledge of what is moveable and immoveable upon and under the surface of the Earth, which we may denominate the proper *physical* Geography. Of both these I shall hereafter treat more at large in distinct chapters of this Introduction. As for the *civil* or political state of the Earth, we shall consider its many and various civil constitutions; which we shall not only examine in general, so as to give the reader a just notion of the extent, strength, institutions, forms of government, inhabitants, &c. of it; but also to describe what is peculiar to each mode of polity and government, with its ecclesiastical state; and likewise the cities, towns, forts, castles, villages, and other places and foundations that claim any attention.

\* These unknown parts are called by Geographers *Terra incognita Australis, Borealis, &c.*

This is the principal design of my GEOGRAPHY or Description of the Earth ; and therefore any further preamble is unnecessary.

§. 3. The other distinguishing characteristic in the above definition of Geography is, that it gives an ‘ authentic and accurate account’ of all these particulars. Such an account may be either more concise, or more diffuse, according to the several plans laid down by different authors ; but must every where exclude all uninteresting and trifling particulars, which might swell Books of this kind to an uncommon and unweildy size, lest more useful and important accounts be precluded by trivial subjects, mere empty words, indecent abuse, irony, sarcasm, and religious disputes. Hence it appears that the more significant, expressive, grave, and simple the author’s manner of writing, or the diction is, consistently with perspicuity and elegance, the better and the more serviceable his geographical treatise may be deemed. But his endeavours to write in a concise and expressive manner must not derogate from the authenticity and accuracy of the accounts ; for a system of Geography ought to contain more than a chart or map, with a bare list of names. The exactness and authenticity of the accounts also require a proper arrangement or disposition, which must not be arbitrary, whimsical or capricious, but adapted to the constitution of the several countries, and the situation of their several parts and divisions, so as to facilitate the knowledge of them to the reader. But the principal head of Authenticity consists in the geographer’s not framing designedly any fictitious accounts, nor credulously taking up any fables on trust ; but, as well in the choice of the sources from whence he draws his accounts, as in the use of them, proceeding with caution and deliberation, so that his system of Geography may be as just and authentic as possible. His sources must not be other general systems of Geography, but accurate descriptions of single countries and provinces, and his own assiduous enquiries. Among the chorographical and topographical descriptions he ought to give the preference to such as have been executed on the spot in those several countries, by persons of abilities and impartiality, with a proper degree of care ; and indeed he should not use any other accounts but these, whether they be printed or communicated to him in manuscript. And among these the later accounts are more serviceable than the old ; but the latter should at the same time be consulted and made use of. In examining these helps many tedious and irksome critical enquiries must be undertaken with unwearied patience, and unremitting care and assiduity ; either for discovering truth amidst the darkness, obscurity, and doubt in which it may happen to be involved ; or, where the helps prove contradictory, to come as near it as possible. The author’s own diligent and cautious enquiries are likewise of great use ; and the opportunities for making such enquiries are to be as advantageously employed, as they are eagerly to be sought after.

§. 4. Ichnographical descriptions of the Earth, which we call Maps, are an important and necessary help to the knowledge of Geography. These exhibit to the eye either both hemispheres of the Earth, or the four principal parts, or certain districts of it. A collection of these maps is called an *ATLAS*. That such maps may be exact and serviceable, the situation of countries with respect to the cardinal points, their extent, and the distance of places from each other should be accurately determined in them, by astronomical observations carefully made, and by just admeasurements and scales, which should be accompanied with authentic historical accounts, as the basis of the whole. The method of projecting or delineating maps ought likewise to be just and rational, so as to exhibit a true representation of the Earth, and its greater and smaller parts. According to the Institutes of the *Cosmographical Society*, the stereographic projection on the horizontal plane is the best adapted to that purpose, as it bears the greatest resemblance to the sphere. When maps are delineated in great and small according to these rules, they are engraven on copper plates, printed off on paper or parchment, and carefully and neatly painted with various bright colours, to mark the limits and confines of adjoining countries that they may the better strike the eye. This manner of illuminating maps is called the *methodical*, and was first attempted by *John Hubner* the elder, and afterwards improved by *Dr. E. D. Hauber*, to whom we owe the first illumination of the four parts of the world, according to the different religions and languages of the inhabitants, and also of *Germany*. Lastly, this art was farther perfected by *M. Schatz*.

It is not known for certain who was the first inventor of geographical tables or maps. *Eustathius* relates, that *Sesostris*, King of *Egypt*, caused the countries he passed through to be delineated in a chart, which must have been the most ancient map of any we read of. There seem, indeed, to be some traces of a map in the holy Scriptures, namely, in *Joshua*, chap. xviii. ver. 8, 9. In succeeding ages the ancients, particularly the *Greeks* and *Romans*, delineated several other maps or charts. Antiquity has handed down to us only those maps which *Agathodæmon* made, to illustrate *Ptolemy's* Geography, and the celebrated *Peutinger's* Table or map, which was found by *Conrad Celtes*, and purchased by the learned *Conrad Peutinger* a Burgomaster of *Augsburg*, from whom it derives its name. This ancient map was published and explained by the celebrated *Beatus Rhenanus* and *Marcus Vellferus*. The last survivor of the *Peutinger* family disposed of the original to *Paul Kubze*, a bookseller at *Augsburg*, in lieu of payment for some books; and *Kubze* sold it to Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, after whose death it came into the Emperor's library at *Vienna*, together with the prince's collection of books. *Francis Christopher* von *Scheyb* has delineated it more accurately than had been done before, on twelve copper-plates, which he published in 1753; and this is the newest and best edition of that

curious



curious piece of antiquity. This Table is a map or delineation of a journey through *Europe* and *Asia*, beginning at *Hercules's* pillars, and ending at the ocean which terminated the conquests of *Alexander the Great*. This map seems to have been first delineated in the fourth century after Christ: But that of *Vienna* is not the original draught, as some antiquarians imagine; for the shape of the letters resembles the *Longobard* or Monkish hand, and the human figures are like those we see in old glass windows, &c. so that it is very probably of a more modern date than that mentioned above. It appears to be the very same which the author of the *Annales Colmarienses* delineated in the year 1265.

Upon the revival of Arts and Sciences in the sixteenth century, the method of delineating geographical tables or maps was cultivated among the rest. Those maps, which were inserted in the Manuscript of *Ptolemy's* Geography, are the basis and foundation of all that have been executed since that time. *Sebastian Munster* laid these down as the ground-work, and by that means furnished others with a plan for delineating separate maps of different countries, which *Abraham Ortelius* and *Daniel Cellarius* afterwards collected, and *Gerhard Mercator* reduced to a system. This collection *William* and *John Bleau*, *John Jansson* and others, adopted as a foundation for maps; till *Sanfon* delineated new maps, which were improved by *Francis de Wit* and the younger *Vischer*, whose maps the *German* geographers copied, till more lately *de l'Isle* in *France*, and *Hermon Moll* in *England* delineated new maps. The former began to pay a greater regard to astronomical observations in his maps, and to use a better method of delineating than *Sanfon* and his successors, which, however, is far from being the best method, nor is it the same in all his maps. Besides this inaccuracy, he had not sufficient knowledge of the historical accounts of countries. In *Moll's* maps the paper exceeds the workmanship: However, he, as well as *de l'Isle*, very much improved this art, for they both took quite a new and laborious method in delineating their maps. *J. M. Hase* successfully prosecuted, and rendered the reformation of maps, which *de l'Isle* had already began, more perfect. In delineating all his maps he has kept to the stereographic projection which coincides with the Horizon, so that the eye is supposed to be in the centre of the map, and all the remarkable places in a country directly opposite to it. On his principles the *Cosmographical Society* at *Gottingen* now proceed, whose maps, published by *Homann*, may justly dispute the preference, in point of accuracy, with any that are extant, and therefore are the best and most serviceable. *M. D'arville* contributes much to the improvement of maps in *France*. Since Maps or Geographical tables have been published, the several sorts of general and particular maps are supposed to amount, at least, to 16,000; but of these not above 1700 are originals, all the rest being only copies. And as the former, for the most part, are executed on a wrong plan, or are become useless by reason of their ancient date; it

appears from hence how few accurate and serviceable maps have been hitherto published. To be convinced of this, let any one but read *Homann's* proposals for the necessary improvement of Cosmography, and for a new Academy to be erected on his plan, with the cosmographical accounts and collections for the year 1748, p. 348 & *seq.* As to the history of general Maps, as well as those of particular countries, there is no better extant than M. HAUBER's *essay on a circumstantial history of Maps*, his useful *Discourse on the present State of Geography*, and his *Thoughts on, and proposals for the best and properest method of compiling a history of Geography*.

§. 5. The most ancient geographers, whose books are still extant, are *Dionysius Periegetes*, *Strabo*, and *Ptolemy*. The first has written a *Greek* poem on Geography. The seventeen books of the second on Geography contain many valuable historical accounts and useful extracts of the best historical books of antiquity. The eight geographical books of the third are more concise and dry, but more accurately determine the situation of the places therein mentioned, though not without a great many faults, which for the most part are justly to be attributed to the copiers of his work.

Among the ancient *Greek* books on Geography, the following may also be reckoned: *viz.* that of *Eusebius Pamphilus*, of *Cæsarea in Palestine*, on the names of the places mentioned in the holy Scriptures; the Geographical Lexicon of *Stephanus Byzantinus*, with *Hermolaus's* abridgement of it; the twelve books by *Cosmas Indopleustes*, as he is called, of the Christian Geography of the whole world; and other smaller books and treatises, published in four volumes by *John Hudson*.

Among the ancient geographical books written in *Latin* the most useful are the following: *POMPONIUS MELA de situ orbis*; *JULII SOLINI polyhistor*, *sc. Collectanea rerum memorabilium*; *PLINII SECUNDI historia naturalis*; the Itineraries ascribed to the *Emperor Antoninus*, and to *Æthicus of Istria*; *VIBIUS SEQUESTER de fluminibus, fontibus, lacubus, nemoribus, paludibus, montibus, gentibus*. In the middle ages the following are the most remarkable, *viz.* *ADAMANNUS de situ Terræ sanctæ & quorundam aliorum locorum*; The Travels of the Monks *John de Plato Carpini*, *Ascelinus*, and *William de Rubruc* or *Rubruquis* into *Asia* in the 13th century; *de regionibus orientabilibus, lib. 3.* by *MARCUS PAULUS*, of *Venice*; *JAC. DE VITRIACO historia orientalis & occidentalis*; and the Travels of *William de Baldensel*, *Rud. de Framenysperg*, *Anselmus*, *Ludolph de Suchem*, *Breitenbach*, *John de Dusseldorp*, and *John de Hese*, to *Palestine* or the *Holy Land*.

The most famous *Arabian* geographers are *Abu Abdallah Mukammed*, *Ismael Abu'l Feda*, *Safieddin Abdalmumen Ebn Abdalbakki*, *Nassir Eddin*, and *Ulug Beig*. The *Jewish* Geographers, are, *Rabbi Benjamin Ben Jona* of *Tudela*, *R. Mosche Petachia*, and *R. Abraham Ben Mordechai Perizol*.

In short, several books of travels were written about the close of the 15th century: As those by *John de Mandeville*, both in *English* and *French*,  
*Jos.*



*Jof. Barbarus, Ambr. Contareus, and Nic. di Conti in Italian, John Tucher, and Felix Faber in German.*

From the beginning of the 16th century Geography put on a better form, and was cultivated with greater care by several persons of great skill and abilities. Among these we have,

1. Modern Authors who have treated of the ancient Geography, as ABRAHAM ORTELI *Parergon*, sc. *tabulæ veteris Geographiæ*; PETRI BERTII *Geographia vetus*; GEORGII HORNII *accurat. orbis antiqui delineatio*; CHRISTOPH. CELLARII *Geographia antiqua, & notitia orbis antiqui*; KOLER'S *Descriptio orbis antiqui*, and his Introduction to the Geography of the ancient and middle ages.

2. Others have attempted to connect the ancient and modern Geography together. Such are those who have illustrated *Ptolemy's* geographical book with new maps and explanatory notes. Among these *Servetus* was one of the first and the principal author, and *John Ant. Maginus* one of the latest; whose *Commentarius in Geographiam & tabulas Ptolemæi*, or the *Geographia vetus & nova* are by some, through mistake, supposed to be two different treatises. In this class may be ranked the following books: CLUVERII *Introductio in Universam Geographiam, tam veterem quàm novam*; JOHAN. LUYTS *Introd. ad Geographiam novam et veterem*; JOHN BAPT. D'AUDRIFFET'S *Geographie ancienne, moderne, & historique*; NOBLOT'S *Geographie universelle*; LENGLET DU FRESNOY'S *methode pour etudier la Geographie*, particularly the eighth book, in 4 volumes; SEB. MUNSTER'S *Cosmography, or description of all countries*; PETER D'AVITY'S *Estats, empires, roy-aume, & principautez du monde*; JOHN LUD. GOTTFRIED'S (i.e. *Abelin*) *Archontologia cosmica*; DR. PETER HEYLIN'S *Cosmography*, HENRY WILSON'S *Compleat universal history of the several dominions of the known world*; PAULI MERULÆ *Cosmographia generalis & particularis*; SAM. PURCHAS'S *Pilgrimage, or Relations of the world*; JOHN CASP. FUNKEN'S and CHRIST. BENJ. HACKHEL'S *Universal new Cosmography*; and the *Introduction to ancient and modern Geography, exhibited in 37 maps by the Jesuit F. W.*

3. Others have treated of modern Geography only, either

In large volumes, among which the principal are these, viz. *Joh. Boters des Benefers's Universal Cosmography*, translated from the *Italian*; LUCÆ DE LINDA *descriptio orbis & rerum publicarum*; SANSON D'ABBEVILLE'S *sphere du monde*; JOH. CHRISTOPH. BECMANNI *Historia orbis terrarum geographica & civilis*; DENYS MARTINEAU DU PLESSI'S *Nouvelle Geographie*, which is the ground-work of the *Abbe Lenglet du Fresnoy's Methode pour etudier la Geographie*; JACQ. ROBBE'S *Methode pour apprendre facilement la Geographie*; CHRISTIAN WIGAND'S *Political Geography*; MELISSANTES (i.e. *Joh. Gottfr. Gregorii*) *Geographia novissima generalis, specialis & specialissima*; The compendious political description of the world; JOHN CHRISTIAN VON KOLICHEN & RISCHTERN'S *Description of the whole world*; JOHN CHRISTIAN



MARTINI'S *Introduction to the modern political Geography*; JOH. HUBNER'S the younger *Compleat Geography*, which is also inserted in JOH. HÄGER'S *System of Geography*; JOH. JAC. SCHATZEN'S *Atlas Homannianus illustratus*; JO. TOMKA SZASZKY'S *Introductio in orbis hodierni Geographiam*; and the new *Political and itinerary Geography of Europe*.

Or in *smaller volumes*, or abridgments, the principal of which is that by CLUVERIUS, who in the former part of the last century was almost the only one who reduced Geography into a System. The following Authors also wrote compendiums of Geography: *Peter Bertius, Jo. Matth. Meyfart, Abrab. Goelnitzen, Eberh. Schult, Tob. Wagner, Job. Buno, Christoph. Cellarius, Pietro di Valle, Job. Jac. Martin, Nic. de Fer, John Hubner, Job. Dav. Koeler, Gottbilf Werner, Hier. Freyer, Job. Jac. Schatzen, &c.*

4. Lastly, we must not omit the geographical Dictionaries; as ABRAH. ORTELIJ *Tthesaurus geographicus*; PHIL. FERRARIJ *Lexicon geographicum*; MICH. ANT. BAUDRAND'S *Geographia ordine literarum disposita*; FRANC. THOM. CORNEILLE'S *Dictionaire Universel, géographique & historique*; ALPH. LAZORIS A VAREA *Universus orbis terrarum scriptorum calamo delineatus*; AUGUSTIN BRUZEN LA MARTINIÈRE'S *Grand Dictionaire géographique & critique*; and *The complete Lexicon of the ancient, middle, and modern Geography*, published at *Leipsick* in 1729. To these may be added the *Lexicon*, published with a preface by *Hubner*, entitled *The Real Geographical and Political Lexicon*.

The number of Travels, and chorographical and topographical Descriptions is so considerable, as not to admit of a place here. These are daily increasing, as, in this century, a peculiar taste for Geography prevails; and such a reigning taste is highly necessary and advantageous for the improvement of this Science.

## C H A P. II.

### Of MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

§. 6. **M**athematical Geography considers the Earth as one of the bodies that constitute the Universe, and investigates its figure, magnitude, and situation in the system of the World, with other particulars belonging to it.

§. 7. Scarce any figure can be thought of, which has not been ascribed to the Earth: But that it is round, or nearly resembling a globe, the lunar eclipses plainly demonstrate. For these being caused by the Earth's shadow, whose section on the disk of the moon is in all positions round or circular, we may conclude that the Earth itself must be of that form; since none but a spher-

a spherical body is capable of throwing or projecting a round shadow on a surface directly opposed to it, in all the different positions of the light which produces that shadow. The great number of high mountains on the surface of the Earth are no obstacle to its being of a spherical figure, as their bulk is very inconsiderable when compared to the magnitude of the terraqueous globe; nor can they be any impediment to the roundness of the Earth's shadow in the eclipses of the moon.

§. 8. In confirmation of this figure of the Earth, a variety of appearances might be alledged, which at the same time are illustrated and rendered intelligible by that supposition. If we travel from north to south the southern stars rise above the Horizon, and the northern stars sink under it. The same thing happens, *vice versa*, when we travel from south to north; and is first observable in the polar star, which rises about a degree above the Horizon, on approaching 15 *German* or geographical miles \* from the Equator towards the north Pole. If we travel 15 geographical miles from west to east under the Equator, we also find that the sun and stars rise there an hour sooner than at the place from which we set out; and in general, experience teaches us that those people who live towards the east see the sun and stars rise sooner than those to the west, the reason of which can be no other than the spherical figure of the Earth. This is also further confirmed by the experience of navigators and travellers, who see the tops of high towers, mountains, and masts of ships at a considerable distance, while the lower parts of such objects are still hid under the Horizon. It is also owing to this orbicular figure of the Earth that the eclipses and other phenomena in the heavens answer to the time calculated beforehand. Lastly, we may hence conclude that it is possible to sail round the world; an attempt which has already been several times undertaken.

The first who undertook such a voyage was *Ferdinand Magellan*, a *Portuguese*: And though he was killed on the island of *Sebu*, one of the *Philippines*, in a skirmish with the *Indians*, before he completed his expedition; yet one of the five ships, with which he sailed from *Seville*, *Aug.* 10, 1519, returned again *Sept.* 7, 1522, into the harbour of *St. Lucar* near *Seville*, after having finished the voyage round the world in three years and twenty-eight days.

The second who performed a voyage round the globe was *Sir Francis Drake*, an *Englishman*, who set sail from *Plymouth* *November* 15, 1577; but being obliged to put back again by a storm, he set sail a second time *Dec.* 13, and arrived at the same harbour, after he had completed his voyage, *Sept.* 16, 1580.

\* The Author means one degree of Latitude which is equal to 15 *German*, which we shall call *geographical* miles.

The third was *Thomas Cavendish*, who was likewise a native of *England*: He set sail on *July 21, 1586*, from *Plymouth*, and returned thither again *Sept. 9, 1588*.

The fourth was *Simon de Cordes*, a *Hollander*, who undertook this voyage in *1590*.

The fifth was *Oliver van Noort*, who was also a *Hollander*: He set sail from *Rotterdam Sept. 13, 1598*, and returned to the same place *Aug. 22, 1601*.

The sixth was *George Spielbergen*, a *German*, who set sail *Aug. 8, 1614*, and returned again to *Holland July 1, 1617*.

The seventh was *William Cornelius Schouten*, a *Hollander*, who left the *Texel, June 14, 1615*, and came into it again in *July, 1617*.

The voyage round the world was undertaken the eighth time by the *Dutch Admirals Jac. l'Hermitte* and *Job. Hugo Schapenbam*, who set sail from *Goeree in South-Holland, April 29, 1623*, and arrived in the *Texel* on *July 9, 1626*.

The ninth who made this voyage was *William Dampier*, an *Englishman*, who set sail in *1689*, and returned to *England* in *1691*.

The tenth was *Giovanni Francesco Gemelli Carere*, an *Italian*, who embarked *June 13, 1693*, and returned in *1698*.

The eleventh was *Edward Cooke*, an *Englishman*, who was on the voyage from *1708, to 1711*.

The twelfth was *Woodes Rogers*, an *Englishman*, who sailed from *Bristol June 15, 1708*, and returned in *1711*.

The thirteenth was *Gentil de la Barbinais*, who was on his voyage round the world from *1715 to 1718*.

*Clipperton* and *Shelvocke* who left *England*, their native country, *Feb. 13, 1719*, undertook this voyage the fourteenth time. The former arrived at *Galloway in Ireland* about the beginning of *June*, and the latter at *London, Aug. 1, 1722*.

The fifteenth was *Roggewein*, a *Dutchman*, who sailed out of the *Texel, July 16, 1721*; and returned to the same place, *July 11, 1723*.

The sixteenth and last that we know of was *George Anson*, an *Englishman*, who set sail from *St. Helen's, \* Sept. 18, 1740*, and arrived at *Spit-head, June 15, 1744*. All these voyages were performed southwards, round *America*, through the *South-Sea*, and round the *Cape of Good Hope*.

§. 9. But, notwithstanding these voyages, the exact figure of the Earth was not accurately known: For about the close of the last century the Learned began to dispute, whether it was depressed, or elevated, towards the Poles. *Huygens* and *Sir Isaac Newton* maintained the former, and

\* The Author through mistake says *St. Helena*; whereas *Lord Anson* sailed from *St. Helen's* road near *Portsmouth*.



*Eisenschmid* and *Cassini* insisted on the latter hypothesis. This dispute continued for above fifty years; and at length proper persons were sent by the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, at the *French* king's expence, some to the north Polar Circle, and others to the Equator, in order to decide this affair by measuring at each place a degree of the Meridian; so that by comparing one of these degrees with a degree in *France*, and the two former with each other, the figure of the Earth might be determined as accurately as was possible. The Party which went to the north consisted of Mess. *Mauvertuis*, *Clairaut*, *Camus*, *Le Monnier*, and *Outhier*, who were joined by M. *Celsius* a professor of the university of *Upsal*. They set out from *Paris*, April 20, 1736, and arrived at *Tornea*, June 20. They set about their mensurations in the neighbourhood of the latter, and returned to *Paris*, August 19, 1737. The company which went to *Quito* in south *America* consisted of Mess. *Godin*, *Bouguer*, and *de la Condamine*, who were natives of *France*; and these were joined at *Carthagera* by two *Spaniards*, namely, *Antonio de Ulloa*, and *George Juan*. The *French* Academicians set sail May 16, and the *Spaniards* May 26, 1735, and finished their observations in 1744. The company that went to the north, set out, indeed, after the latter; but completed their observations before them. Accordingly they informed the Public, that a degree of the Meridian, intersecting the Polar Circle is much greater than a degree of the Meridian in *France*; the former containing 57,437 rods, and the latter, according to *Picard's* determination, but 57,060; that the gravity of bodies increases considerably towards the Polar Circle; and that we dwell on a *spheroid* which is depressed at the Poles. This was confirmed by the admeasurements of the *American* company, who found, that a degree of the Meridian under the Equator contained 56,753 rods; and Mess. *Bouguer* and *de la Condamine's* computation differed but 18 *toises* \* from that made by the *Spanish* officers along with M. *Godin*. The observations of both companies were also at length confirmed by the discoveries which M. *Cassini de Thury*, and the *Abbé de la Caille* afterwards made. The latter measured the 36th degree of south Latitude at the *Cape of Good Hope*, and found it greater than an Equatorial degree, but less than a degree at the north Polar Circle. These laudable attempts, it is true, were attended with some disappointments and difficulties; however, we now know so much for certain, that the Earth is higher at the Equator than it is at the Poles, and that the Diameter of the Equator to the *Axis* of the Globe is as 178 to 177 nearly. Sir *Isaac Newton* computed the *ratio* to be as 230 to 229; so that according to that Philosopher, the Earth under the Line is higher by about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  geographical miles, than it is under the Poles; but by later discoveries the difference amounts to something more than 10 geographical miles. †.

\* A *toise* is equal to six feet.

† What the Author calls a geographical, is a common *German* mile, 15 of which are equal to a degree of the Equator, as I observed above.

§. 10. This discovery of the true figure of the Earth is attended with great advantages. It exhibits a fresh proof of the Earth's turning or revolving upon its *Axis*; sets the Theory of Gravity in a new light; serves to improve the art of Levelling; greatly contributes to the determining of the moon's *Parallax*, and is of great importance to Geography and Navigation. To mention only the two last; in Geography as well as Navigation, the principal thing is, to know the exact situation of different countries and sea-coasts with respect to each other, and the place of a ship on the vast Ocean. And for this purpose it is necessary that we should be provided with accurate maps and sea charts, exhibiting the true situation of places with their north or south Latitude, and east or west Longitude. These particulars cannot be known, without being acquainted with the length of every degree of the Parallel Circles in miles, or leagues, which must be calculated according to the true magnitude and figure of the Earth. *Andrew Celsius*, in the Memoirs of the *Swedish* Academy of Sciences, has shewn by several Instances, that such incidents may happen in Navigation, when for want of the necessary knowledge of the true figure of the Earth, life and goods may be in danger of being lost. For example, on sailing east or west of a certain place in  $45^{\circ}$  of Latitude, some rocks, shoals, or sand-banks are to be avoided, about  $8^{\circ} 30'$  from that place; but if we follow *Cassini's* table of degrees (who at the 45th degree of Latitude makes every degree of Longitude shorter by 645 toises than it really is) we might imagine ourselves at the distance of a *Swedish* mile from a rock, at the instant we were going to be wrecked upon it. In the same manner when we would sail north or south on a certain Meridian from a place that lies under the Equinoctial Line (where *Cassini* makes the first degree of Latitude 1395 toises larger than it really is) we know from the chart that in the 8th degree of Latitude we are to steer westward in order to make a certain harbour or bay: But by *Cassini's* tables we should imagine ourselves to be just before the harbour, when we were two *Swedish* miles short of it; and by altering our course, run foul of land and rocks, at the time we apprehended that we were in the mouth of the harbour; especially if the weather should be so cloudy as to give us no opportunity of observing the sun or stars.

§. 11. Before we can determine the circumference of the Earth, we must previously describe certain measures which are used in different parts of the world. The most remarkable and best known among these are the *Rhinland*, the *English*, and the royal *French* foot; the mutual *ratio* or proportion of which to each other is as follows: 29 *French* are equal to 30 *Rhinland* feet; 15 *French* are equal to 16 *English* feet; and 225 *Rhinland* feet are equal to 232 *English* feet. Hence it appears that the *French* is the largest, and the *English* foot the least of all the three. A geometrical, or rather a geographical pace contains  $5 \frac{6712}{7430}$  *Rhinland* feet, or  $6 \frac{1042}{2373}$  *English* feet. As the Earth is spherical (§. 7.) we may imagine a circle going quite round

round it, which like all circles in Geometry we may divide into 360 equal parts or degrees, every degree into 60 minutes, and, consequently, the whole circle into 21,600 minutes. That distance on the Earth, which constitutes such a minute, contains 1000 geometrical paces.

§. 12. The Curious from the earliest ages have attempted to determine the circumference of the Earth; but among the moderns

<i>Norwood</i>	found it to be	132,190,560	<i>English</i>	feet
<i>Picard</i>	— —	131,466,240,		
<i>Cassini</i>	— —	132,000,768.		

By *Cassini's* calculation, which has gained the greatest credit among geographers, the diameter of the Earth is 42,017,145  $\frac{3}{4}$   $\frac{2}{3}$   $\frac{2}{3}$  *English* feet. Now as we generally reckon a degree in a great circle of the Earth to be equal to 15 *German*, or rather geographical miles\*; the whole circumference of the circle which we suppose to encompass the earth must amount to 5400 such miles. To a geographical mile, we must allow 24,444  $\frac{4}{5}$  *English* feet, which are equal to 23,611 *Rhinland*, or 22,824 royal *Paris* feet. The diameter of the Earth according to the common calculation is 1720 geographical miles, and consequently the whole surface of the Earth is 9,288,000 square geographical miles, and its solid contents 2,662,560,000 cubic geographical miles. According to the new discoveries made of the true figure of the Earth (§. 9.) these calculations are somewhat deficient.

§. 13. As to the situation of the Earth with respect to the other bodies that constitute the Universe there are three principal opinions concerning it. *Ptolemy* imagined its place to be exactly in the centre of the Universe, where he supposed it to be fixt and immoveable. Next to the Earth he placed 1. The Moon. 2. *Mercury*. 3. *Venus*. 4. The Sun. 5. *Mars*: 6. *Jupiter*. 7. *Saturn*, and lastly the fixt stars, in crystalline orbs. This opinion is very absurd, and proved contradictory to experience. True Astronomy shews us a quite different situation and disposition of the parts of the Universe; and the comets, which in their course intersect the orbits of all the planets, plainly demonstrate that the circles in which the planets perform their revolutions, and that wherein the fixt stars seem to move, do not consist of any solid matter. *Tycho Brake* attempted to improve the *Ptolemaic* System. He left the Earth immoveable in the centre of the World. Round it he made the Moon and Sun to perform their revolutions; but supposed that *Mercury*, *Venus*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn* moved round the Sun as their centre. Lastly he made the Earth, not the Sun, the centre of the fixt stars. But from this intricate and absurd system we can assign no reasons for the celestial phænomena; and therefore Astronomers justly reject it. *Nicolas Copernicus* revived an ancient Hypothesis concerning the System of

\* We shall use these Geographical miles, as the author calls them, in the Translation, since they will render calculations easier, than if they were reduced to *English* miles.



the World, which he proposed in a more distinct and clear manner than the *Pythagoreans* had done before, and compared with the celestial appearances. This Hypothesis has been adopted, improved, and confirmed by the greatest and most judicious of the modern Astronomers. According to *Copernicus* the Sun, indeed, does not occupy the very centre of the system, since this luminary, as well as all the planets, moves round the common centre of gravity\*; yet it is placed so near that centre that it may very properly be supposed to be fixed in it. It takes up between 27 and 28 days in revolving about its *axis*. The planets move round the sun, and those which lie near it, having but a small space to run through, finish their period sooner than those that are at a greater distance from it. During their revolutions they also turn constantly about their own *axes*. Next to the Sun is *Mercury*; then follows *Venus*; then the Earth, round which the moon, as a secondary planet, performs its revolution; then comes *Mars*; after this *Jupiter* with its four moons or *satellites*; and last of all *Saturn*, with five moons revolving about it. The fixt stars are immoveable, being placed far above the planets in the expanse † of heaven; but we may reasonably conclude that they turn round their own *axes*. From this regularly disposed system, every phænomenon, with regard to the revolutions of the planets, may be easily accounted for. As the Earth revolves on its *axis* in 24 hours, the sun, planets, and fixt stars seem to move round the Earth; become successively visible on our Horizon; and are observed to rise and set. This may serve as an answer to an ill grounded objection, which some make against the *Copernican* System from such expressions being used in the holy Scriptures ‡. The Earth in the space of a year revolves in the Ecliptic round the Sun, which makes the sun seem to move in the same space of time through the twelve celestial Signs, into which the Ecliptic is divided. For farther particulars on this subject the reader must have recourse to Astronomy.

§. 14. Notwithstanding the *Copernican* hypothesis concerning the System of the World has so much probability on its side; yet in explaining the principles of Geography we suppose the Earth to be placed in the centre of the Universe and of all the celestial circles. In this supposition we are guilty of no great error: For though the Earth is not fixed in the centre of the

\* Astronomers suppose that the centre of the solar System does not coincide with the centre of the Sun; but that the former is, however, in the body of that luminary.

† The word *firmament* in the original is rendered *expanse* here, as the former conveys an idea of firmness or solidity, was invented by false Philosophy, and might mislead the learner. The LXX. in translating the *Pentateuch* rendered the Hebrew word עֲרֶבְיָה an Expanse, by στερεωμα a firmament in conformity to the erroneous philosophy of the *Greeks*. But such a word is inconsistent with true Astronomy, and should not be used in such treatises as this.

‡ We say in common conversation, and even in theological and historical books, the sun, or the moon, rises and sets, &c. in compliance with the common conceptions of mankind; and indeed it would be ridiculous to express ourselves otherwise, unless it be in philosophical treatises.

Universe, yet its distance from it, in comparison to the astonishingly immense distances of the other bodies that constitute the Universe from the Earth, is to be looked upon as very inconsiderable. To which we may add, that on any part of the Earth, we may always see two stars at the same time which are diametrically opposite to each other, being placed at the distance of 180 degrees, or a semi-circle. When we thus suppose the Earth to be in the centre of the Universe, and that the whole heavens perform a complete revolution about it once in 24 hours (which, on viewing the heavens, they actually appear to do) there must be two opposite immoveable points in the heavens about which they revolve. These are called the Poles of the Heavens; and as there is a star to be seen near each pole; hence they derive the name of Polar Stars. That at the north is called the North-Pole, or, from a constellation standing near it, the *Arctic* \* Pole; but the star at the south is termed the South-Pole. In our hemisphere we see the north polar star only, the south polar star being always invisible to us. Neither of these stars ever rises or sets. Now if we farther imagine a right line drawn from one of these Poles to the other, the *axis* of the heavens must pass through the centre of the Earth, which we here suppose to be placed in the centre of the concave sphere of the heavens. The two points, where the said line or axis makes its ingress and egress on the surface of the Earth, are also denominated Poles; but to distinguish them from the Poles in the heavens, they are called the Poles of the Earth. These also stand diametrically opposite at the distance of 180 degrees from each other. That part of the *axis* of the heavens, which passes through the terraqueous Globe is called the *axis* of the Earth.

§. 15. On any part of the surface of the Earth I can imagine to myself a right line drawn from the centre of the Earth through the middle of my head quite to the utmost extent of the heavens. The point which this imaginary line marks out in the heavens is called the *Zenith*, the Vertex, or Vertical point of the place on which I stand; and the opposite point to which I imagine this line to pass under my feet through the lower half of the Earth quite to the heavens underneath, is called the *Nadir* of the place. Hence it follows that every man has not only his peculiar *Zenith* and *Nadir*, but also gains new ones, as often as he changes his place. By reason of the immense magnitude of the sphere of the Universe, in comparison of which the Earth is very small and inconsiderable, we generally allow a whole city but one *Zenith*.

§. 16. When we stand on the surface of the Earth, we always see one certain part of the heavens, which proves large when that part of Earth on which we happen to be, is level; on the contrary, when the spot on

\* The Author means the Bear, called in Greek *ἀρκτος*. The South Pole is also called the *antarctic* from its being diametrically opposite to the *arctic* or North Pole.

which we stand is encompassed with mountains, buildings, or trees, that part of the heavens which is within our view is but small. But we will suppose ourselves placed on an extensive perfect level or plain, or on the surface of a calm sea; then the heavens will appear like a large round vault resting on the surface of the Earth or Sea, by which it will seem to be intersected all around. The great circle which thus appears to intersect the sphere of the heavens, is called the visible Horizon\* of the place where we happen to be, and constitutes the limits between the visible and invisible part of the heavens. When a star becomes visible above this circle or boundary, we say it rises; but when it becomes invisible, or sinks under it, we say it sets. If we suppose the globe of the Earth to be cut through the centre, parallel to the Horizon, into two equal parts, and the upper half removed, we have a large, round, plane surface, in the middle of which is the centre of the Earth. This centre we reckon, in Astronomy, as the point of view from which we are to calculate the appearances as they would affect the eye were it placed there. The place where this imaginary central surface of the globe of the Earth intersects the concave sphere of the heavens is called the true or rational Horizon. The true Horizon of a place is every way 90 degrees distant from the place where the observer stands, but exactly parallel with the sensible Horizon, and at the distance of about a semi-diameter of the Earth from it. The true Horizon divides the globe of the Earth into two equal parts; one, directly over which the *Zenith* (§. 15.) stands, being called the upper, and the other which lies towards the *Nadir*, the lower half or Hemisphere. But as it is impossible for us to stand in the centre of the Earth, it may be said that we never see the true Horizon; so that we must be contented with the apparent or sensible Horizon; and *imagine* the former to ourselves, as we do all the points and lines on the Globe both straight and curve. Lastly, we generally call the extent of ground which we can see on the Earth from an eminence, the geographical Horizon; which is the more extensive, the higher the observer's station is, and the more level the country.

§. 17. The Equator or equinoctial line is a Circle which goes round the whole terraqueous Globe at the distance of 90 degrees from either Pole, and divides it into two equal parts, namely, the northern and southern Hemisphere. This like all other circles is divided into 360 degrees.

§. 18. The Meridian of a place is a Circle which surrounds the Earth, passes through both the Poles, crosses the Equator twice, and divides the entire concave sphere of the heavens, above the Horizon of the place, into two equal parts; namely, into the eastern, in which the sun rises, and the western where it sets. It is, like all other circles, divided into 360 degrees; and only one half of it is usually denominated the Meridian. Every

\* It is called by others the sensible Horizon, to distinguish it from the rational or true Horizon.



place has one Meridian, which passes directly over many other places on the surface of the Earth. The sun appears in the Meridian of a place when it is noon there; being equidistant from the place where it rose, and where it is to set.

§. 19. By the first Meridian we understand that particular one, among the other innumerable Meridians, from which we begin to reckon the degrees on the Equator from west to east. Nature has indeed fixed no particular Meridian for this purpose, all of them having an equal right to this honour; so that it is left entirely to our choice to fix upon any one of them for the first Meridian: However, it were to be wished that all geographers were agreed in this point. Though they are so far agreed as to begin to reckon westward from *Europe*; yet one draws the first Meridian through the island of *St. James* in the *Pacific Ocean*; another through the island of *St. Nicolas* near the coast of *Africa*; a third through *Flores*, or *Elcorvo*, two islands among the *Azores*; a fourth through the island of *Teneriffè*, one of the *Canaries*, in which stands a high mountain called *Pico*; a fifth through the western coast of *Ferro*, another of the *Canary* islands; and a sixth again through the island of *Palma*, which is also one of the *Canaries*. The *Hollanders* and many others fix their first Meridian at *Pico* on the island of *Teneriffè*; as, on the contrary, the *French*, ever since the year 1634, by order of *Lewis XIII.* draw the first Meridian through the island of *Ferro*, and in this they are generally followed by modern geographers; particularly by the *Cosmographical Society* at *Nuremberg*, and by the authors of the *Berlin Sea-Atlas* published in 1749. The *Swedes* draw their first Meridian through *Upsal*.

§. 20. The Latitude of a place is nothing but the distance of it from the Equator towards either Pole. If the place be situated between the Equator and the north Pole it is called North Latitude, but if it be between the Equator and south Pole it is termed South Latitude. It is measured on an arc of the Meridian of any place, and is always equal to the elevation of the Pole in that place; so that when we have found the latter we cannot be ignorant of the former\*. If you deduct the degrees of any given Latitude from  $90^{\circ}$  you have the distance of that place from the nearest Pole, and, at the same time, the height, or elevation of the Equator above the true Horizon of that place. For instance, if you subtract the north Latitude, or elevation of the Pole, at *Copenhagen*, which is  $55^{\circ}, 40', 59''$  from  $90$  degrees, the remainder will be  $34^{\circ}, 19', 1''$  the height of the Equator; which is, at the same time, the distance of that city from the north Pole. Places lying under the Equator have no Latitude, and consequently no elevation of the Pole; for both the Poles are on their Horizon: On the contrary, a place that lies under either of the Poles has the greatest Latitude and elevation; for there the Equator and the Horizon coincide.

\* And *Vice versa*.

§. 21. The Longitude of a place is the distance of its Meridian from the first Meridian. (§. 18, 19.) It is determined by the number of degrees in the arc of the Equator which is included between both Meridians. The easiest and most accurate method hitherto known of finding out the Longitude of a place is, to observe the beginning and end of the eclipse of the first *satellite* of *Jupiter* with the help of *Cassini's* table, and to compare that time, when known, with the time of the Meridian of *Paris*, in order to reduce the difference of the hours to degrees and minutes of the Equator: And as the Longitude of *Paris* is known, which, according to *Cassini* is  $22^{\circ} 30'$ , add the difference of the Meridians to the Longitude of *Paris* when the place lies to the east of *Paris*, and consequently the beginning of the eclipse of the *satellite* happens sooner there than at *Paris*: On the contrary, when the place lies to the west of *Paris*, and the beginning of the eclipse is observed later than at *Paris*, subtract the difference of the Meridians from the Longitude of *Paris*. By this operation you will find the sought Longitude of either place.

§. 22. Hence it is evident, that when the Longitude and Latitude of a place are given in numbers, or degrees, its situation on the Earth may be very accurately determined; on which account great pains have been taken to find out those of the principal places on the Terraqueous Globe. Such knowledge is of very great importance to persons that are driven out of their course by a storm at sea, and know not whereabouts they are; who, upon finding the Longitude and Latitude of the place where they happen to be, marked in a chart, may avoid places of danger, and with safety proceed on their voyage. Persons at sea may pretty well make out the Latitude by taking an observation of the sun or a known fixt star; but the finding out of the Longitude is attended with very great difficulty. This induced the *English*, *Dutch*, and *French*, many years since, to promise a very considerable reward to any person who shall invent a Method of finding the Longitude at sea with dispatch and accuracy.

§. 23. The Parallel Circles, so called because they run parallel with the Equator, have the north or south Pole for their centre, and decrease in circumference the nearer they approach to the Pole. Hence the 360 degrees into which every one of these circles is divided grow less and less; the degrees on the Equator being the largest. Now as it is often a matter of importance to know with dispatch the proportion of the degrees in every Parallel Circle to those of the Equator in geographical miles, the following table is inserted for that purpose, in which a geographical mile\* is divided into 60 minutes, or parts.

\* Fifteen geographical miles, as mentioned above, are equal to one degree or 60 minutes on the Equator; it were therefore to be wished the Author had called the parts of a mile by any other name, to avoid confusion.

Degr.of Lat.	Geogr.Mil.	Min.	Degr.of Lat.	Geogr.Mil.	Min.	Degr.of Lat.	Geogr.Mil.	Min.
0	15	0	31	12	51	61	7	16
1	14	59	32	12	43	62	7	2
2	14	59	33	12	35	63	6	48
3	14	58	34	12	26	64	6	34
4	14	57	35	12	17	65	6	20
5	14	56	36	12	8	66	6	6
6	14	55	37	11	59	67	5	52
7	14	53	38	11	49	68	5	38
8	14	51	39	11	39	69	5	23
9	14	48	40	11	29	70	5	8
10	14	46	41	11	19	71	4	53
11	14	43	42	11	9	72	4	38
12	14	40	43	10	58	73	4	23
13	14	37	44	10	47	74	4	8
14	14	33	45	10	36	75	3	53
15	14	29	46	10	25	76	3	38
16	14	25	47	10	14	77	3	23
17	14	21	48	10	2	78	3	8
18	14	16	49	9	50	79	2	52
19	14	11	50	9	38	80	2	36
20	14	6	51	9	26	81	2	20
21	14	0	52	9	14	82	2	5
22	13	54	53	9	2	83	1	50
23	13	48	54	8	49	84	1	34
24	13	42	55	8	36	85	1	18
25	13	36	56	8	23	86	1	3
26	13	29	57	8	10	87	0	47
27	13	22	58	7	57	88	0	31
28	13	15	59	7	44	89	0	16
29	13	7	60	7	30	90	0	0
30	12	59						

This table serves for calculating the distances of places on general maps or-charts, and is a far more accurate method than that of measuring them by the scales commonly annexed, which cannot safely be depended upon. When I want to measure the length of any country, I first reckon the number of degrees included between its two outermost or extreme Meridians: Then I enquire how many degrees the Parallel Circle between them is distant from the Equator; and in this table I look for the number of miles equal to a degree in that Parallel. Lastly, I multiply the number of de-



degrees included between the two extreme Meridians by the number of miles contained in such a degree, and the product shews the greatest length of that country. For example, the two extreme Meridians of *France* include 13 degrees of Longitude between them; the Parallel that intersects them is distant 49 degrees from the Equator, and one degree of this Parallel according to the foregoing table is 9 geographical miles 50 minutes; so that by multiplying these 9 miles 50 minutes by the 13 degrees just mentioned, the greatest length of *France* appears to be 128 geographical miles\*. The two extreme Meridians of the Empire of *Russia* are 160 degrees from each other, and the Parallel Circle between them is 60 degrees distant from the Equator; consequently by the foregoing table one degree of it is  $7\frac{1}{2}$  geographical miles. By multiplying the 160 degrees by 7 miles 30 minutes, I find that the greatest length of the *Russian* empire from east to west amounts to 1200 geographical miles. By this table we may also calculate how many miles and parts of a mile any particular place runs over in a certain time by the diurnal motion of the Earth round its *axis*. For as all the 360 degrees of the Equator and Parallel Circles perform a complete revolution in 24 hours, they must move at the rate of 15 degrees every hour. But as the degrees of the Parallel Circles are less than those of the Equator; so a place situated under the latter runs over a greater space in an hour, than a place that lies under any of the former; and consequently under the Poles, where the Parallels end in a point, there can be no such motion. Hence it appears that a place situated just under the Equator must in an hour run over 15 times 15, or 225 geographical miles; whereas *Petersburg*, where the elevation of the Pole is 60 degrees, on account of the distance of its Parallel from the Equator, runs over but  $112\frac{1}{2}$  geographical miles in an hour.

§. 24. The proportion that the miles, most generally known, bear to a degree of the Equator, and likewise to each other, may be seen in the following table.

\* It is but 127 $\frac{1}{2}$  when multiplied according to the method prescribed by the Author, and consequently wants  $\frac{1}{2}$  or 10 minutes, of 128 miles.

A degree of the Equator is equal to

Miles placed according to their length.	In alphabetical order.
10 $\frac{1}{2}$ <i>Swedish</i> miles.	<i>Arabian</i> miles — — — 56 $\frac{2}{3}$
13 $\frac{1}{3}$ <i>Hungarian</i> miles.	<i>Chinese</i> miles — — — 250
15 Common <i>German</i> , or geographical miles.	<i>English</i> miles — 69 $\frac{4}{5}$ , or 70
17 $\frac{1}{2}$ <i>Spanish</i> miles.	<i>French</i> great miles or leagues 20
20 Great <i>French</i> miles or leagues.	<i>French</i> small miles or leagues 25
22 $\frac{2}{3}$ <i>Persian</i> miles, or <i>Parasanga's</i> .	<i>German</i> miles — — — 15
25 Small <i>French</i> miles or leagues.	<i>Hungarian</i> miles — — — 13 $\frac{2}{3}$
30 <i>Indian</i> miles.	<i>Indian</i> miles — — — 30
56 $\frac{2}{3}$ <i>Arabian</i> miles.	<i>Italian</i> miles — — — 60*
60 Common <i>Italian</i> miles*.	<i>Persian</i> miles — — — 22 $\frac{2}{3}$
66 $\frac{2}{3}$ <i>Turkish</i> miles, or <i>Berri</i> .	<i>Russian</i> miles — — — 104 $\frac{1}{2}$
69 $\frac{4}{5}$ or 70 <i>English</i> miles.	<i>Swedish</i> miles — — — 10 $\frac{1}{2}$
104 $\frac{1}{2}$ <i>Russian</i> miles, or <i>Wersts</i> .	<i>Spanish</i> miles — — — 17 $\frac{1}{2}$
250 <i>Chinese</i> miles, or <i>Li</i> .	<i>Turkish</i> miles — — — 66 $\frac{2}{3}$
60,000 Geometrical paces.	

§. 25. The Sun has apparently two different motions: For, in the first place, it seems to move once round the Earth in 24 hours; and this is called its *diurnal* motion, which is from east to west. The Sun does not stand always at an equal height in the Meridian of any place, but, with respect to the Horizon, it is sometimes higher, and sometimes lower. About the beginning of the Spring it comes to the celestial Equator, or Equinoctial Circle, when the day and night are of an equal length. After the vernal Equinox it ascends higher every day at noon, and approaches towards the north Pole, till it comes to a certain Parallel Circle, distant 23°, 30' from the Equator, which is called the Tropic of *Cancer*, or the north Tropic. At this time, when the sun is in its Solstice, we, who inhabit that part of the Earth which lies between the Equator and north Pole, have the longest day. After the summer Solstice the Sun returns, and daily approaches to the Equator, where it arrives in Autumn, at which time the day and night are of an equal length; and then it daily advances further southward, till it comes again to the winter Solstice in a certain fixt Parallel Circle, which is also at the distance of 23°, 30' from the Equator, and is called the South Tropic, or Tropic of *Capricorn*. At this time, those who inhabit that part of the globe lying between the Equator and south Pole have the longest day; but we who are to the north of the Equator have then the shortest

\* The Author makes an *Italian* mile longer than an *English* mile; whereas 76 of the former are generally reckoned equal to a degree of the Equator.

day. After the winter Solstice the Sun returns, and comes again to the Equator the following Spring. This motion of the sun, which is performed from west to east, is called its *annual* or proper motion; and is in a quite contrary direction to the *diurnal* motion. The path in which the annual motion of the sun seems to be made is called the Ecliptic, or the Sun's Way; which we may imagine to ourselves to be a circle which intersects the Equator at an angle of  $23^{\circ}, 30'$  in two opposite points, which are called the Equinoctial Points. This circle is not only divided into 360 degrees, but also into 12 equal parts; every one of which contains 30 degrees, and derives its name from the constellation which in ancient times lay near it. These 12 celestial signs, as they are called, are, in their order from west to east, as follows:

<i>Aries.</i>	<i>Taurus.</i>	<i>Gemini.</i>	<i>Cancer.</i>	<i>Leo.</i>	<i>Virgo.</i>
$\gamma$	$\tau$	$\text{II}$	$\text{♋}$	$\text{♌}$	$\text{♍}$
<i>Libra.</i>	<i>Scorpio.</i>	<i>Sagittarius.</i>	<i>Capricornus.</i>	<i>Aquarius.</i>	<i>Pisces.</i>
$\text{♎}$	$\text{♏}$	$\text{♐}$	$\text{♑}$	$\text{♒}$	$\text{♓}$

If you suppose a great circle to be drawn from the Poles through the equinoctial and solstitial Points, the former is called the equinoctial Colure, and the latter, the solstitial Colure.

§. 26. Two of the Parallel Circles (§. 23.) which the Poles of the Ecliptic describe round the Poles of the Equator are called Polar Circles. That nearest the North Pole is called the north Polar Circle, and that nearest the South Pole, the south Polar Circle. Each of these circles is distant from its respective Pole  $23^{\circ}, 30'$ .

§. 27. That space of the Earth which lies between two certain Parallel Circles (§. 23.) is called a Zone, of which there are reckoned five.

§. 28. That space of the Earth lying between the two Tropics (§. 25.) which is divided into two equal parts by the Equator, and is  $47^{\circ}$  in breadth, is called the Torrid Zone; because the heat, on account of the solar rays falling for the most part perpendicularly on that Zone, is continually very intense. The superficies of the Torrid Zone amounts to  $3,842,008\frac{2}{7}$  square geographical miles. Those who inhabit the parts of the Earth which lie under either of the Tropics, have the sun but once a year directly over their heads. This happens to those under the Tropic of *Cancer* on *June 21*, when the sun enters into *Cancer*, and causes the longest day; but to those under the Tropic of *Capricorn* on *December 21*, when the sun enters into *Capricorn*, and makes the shortest day with us. Those who live within the Torrid Zone have the sun twice a year vertical, or directly over their heads, *viz.* when it moves from the north Tropic down to the south, and again when it returns from the south to the north Tropic; consequently they have also two summers, and only one winter in a year. But those who live under the Equator, have yearly two summers and two winters. The days and nights in the Torrid Zone are nearly equal throughout the



the year; and as, in the night, the sun is depressed a great way below their Horizon, the nights are pretty cool: The great heat of the sun is also in some measure tempered by the constant easterly breeze which blows in this Zone. Every place whose Latitude is less than  $23^{\circ}, 30'$  lies in the Torrid Zone.

§. 29. By the temperate Zone we understand that part of the Earth, which lies between a Tropical and a Polar Circle, of which there are two; and the superficies of each is about  $2,335,032\frac{487}{775}$  square geographical miles. All places, whose Latitude exceeds  $23^{\circ}, 30'$ , but is under  $66^{\circ}, 30'$ , lie in the temperate Zones. The sun is never vertical to the inhabitants of these Zones, but is less or more distant from their Zenith or Vertex, as they live nearer to, or farther from either of the Tropics. They have yearly but one summer and one winter. When it is summer in the northern temperate Zone it is winter in the southern; when the days increase in one they decrease in the other; and when it is the longest day in the former it is the shortest day in the latter, and *vice versa*.

§. 30. We call that space of the Earth the Frigid Zone, which is included within either of the two Polar Circles, and in the Centre of which the Pole stands. Of these there are also two; and the area of each is reckoned at  $384,921\frac{63}{775}$  square geographical miles. All those places which have a greater Latitude than  $66^{\circ}, 30'$  lie, in the Frigid Zones; and as the sun is always at a great distance from these Zones, it is generally very cold in those parts of the Earth. The Frigid Zones have this peculiarity above the other Zones, namely, that the sun every year, for some days at least, never sets, and afterwards never appears above the Horizon for as many days. It is day for one half of the year, and night the other half at the Poles; but the dark night is hardly of two months duration there, as for some months together the evening and morning twilights prevent it. Besides, the darkness of the nights is lessened by moon-light and the *Aurora borealis*, so that we may justly affirm, that there is less dark night under the Poles than in other parts of the Globe.

§. 31. The farther you remove from the Equator towards the Poles, the greater will be the inequality of days and nights; and every place in those parts has once a year its longest day, and as often its shortest day. But the longest days in different parts are not of the same duration; and therefore a Parallel (§. 23.) is drawn through those degrees of Latitude, where the duration of the longest day in the year increases about half an hour; and the space included between two such Parallels is called a climate. The following table exhibits the number of climates, the degree of Latitude where they begin, and the hours of the longest day in every climate.

## INTRODUCTION to GEOGRAPHY.

Climate	Latitude Degr. min.		Longest day Hours.
1	0	0	12
2	8	25	12 $\frac{1}{2}$
3	16	25	13
4	23	50	13 $\frac{1}{2}$
5	30	20	14
6	36	28	14 $\frac{1}{2}$
7	41	22	15
8	45	29	15 $\frac{1}{2}$
9	49	1	16
10	51	58	16 $\frac{1}{2}$
11	54	27	17
12	56	37	17 $\frac{1}{2}$
13	58	29	18
14	59	58	18 $\frac{1}{2}$
15	61	18	19
16	62	25	19 $\frac{1}{2}$
17	63	22	20
18	64	6	20 $\frac{1}{2}$
19	64	49	21
20	65	21	21 $\frac{1}{2}$

Begins {

Climate	Latitude Degr. Min.		Longest day Hours.
21	Begins {	65 47	22
22		66 6	22½
23		66 20	23
24		66 28	23½

At the end of the 24th Climate under 66°, 31' the longest day is 24 hours in length; and consequently there can be, at that time, no night there. The Climates, properly speaking, are but 24 in number. The six following Climates are improperly so called.

Climate	Latitude Degr. Min.		Longest day Months.
25	Begins {	67 30	1
26		69 30	2
27		73 20	3
28		78 20	4
29		84 0	5
30		90 0	6

The length of a day is reckoned from the true rising to the real setting of the sun; and consequently the morning and evening twilights must not be taken into the account. On knowing the Latitude of a place, we may easily find to what Climate it belongs. For example, the Latitude of *Copenhagen* is 55°, 40', 59"; consequently that city lies a little beyond the middle of the 11th Climate. The following is still an easier method of finding what Climate any place is in, *viz.* when you know how many hours the longest day in a place consists of, if you deduct 12 from it and double the remainder it will give you the number of the Climate. For instance, the longest day at *Copenhagen* is 17½ hours, on deducting 12 from this



this number the remainder will be  $5\frac{1}{2}$ , which I double; and the number 11, or twice  $5\frac{1}{2}$ , shews that *Copenhagen* is in the 11th Climate.

§. 32. Those people who live under the Equator have a Right Sphere, as the celestial Equator with its Parallels are perpendicular to the Horizon, and the sun and stars rise in the same direction. Hence they have no elevation of the Pole, as, with respect to them, both Poles lie in the Horizon. At noon also, when the sun is in the Equator, and consequently directly over their heads, they cast no shadow; on which account they are called Ἀσκηιοι or *Ascii* \*. At other times of the year their shadow extends either northward or southward; hence they are also called Ἀμφισκηιοι or *Ambiscii* †.

§. 33. Under the Poles the Sphere is Parallel; for there the Equator coincides with the Horizon; one Pole is in the Zenith, the other in the Nadir; and consequently the Equator and its Parallels are parallel with the Horizon; and the sun, stars, &c. move in the same direction. In a Parallel Sphere also the same hemisphere is always above the Horizon, and the other hemisphere is invisible; the stars never rise or set, and only one half of their number is seen. Lastly, in such a Sphere there is the greatest elevation of the Pole possible, which is 90 degrees. If there are inhabitants under the Pole, their shadow, when it is day with them, describes an entire circle in the space of 24 hours (as the sun for one half of the year moves quite round them every 24 hours) hence they are called Περισκηιοι or *Periscii* ‡. The same thing also happens to such as inhabit those parts of the Earth which lie from  $90^{\circ}$  to  $66^{\circ}$ ,  $30'$  north or south Latitude, during the days in which the sun does not set with them.

§. 34. All the other inhabitants of the Globe from the first degree of Latitude to the 90th have an oblique sphere, the Horizon and Equator intersecting each other obliquely. Hence the sun and stars appear to them to rise and set obliquely, and some of the celestial bodies are always below, and others always above their Horizon. The shadow of those who inhabit the Temperate Zone, falls at noon, during the whole year, always on one side, namely, with us in the northern Hemisphere towards the north; and that of the inhabitants of the southern Hemisphere towards the south. Hence they are called Ετεροσκηιοι, or *Heteroscii* ||.

§. 35. Those inhabitants of the Earth who have their feet opposed to ours are called our *Antipodes*, or *AntiEthones*. They live in opposite parallels, and that part of the same meridian circle which is directly opposite to us. They have the heavens over their heads and the Earth under their feet as we have: On the contrary it is summer with them when it is winter with us, and *vice versa*. They have day when we have night, and

\* *i. e.* Without shadows.

‡ *i. e.* Casting shadows all round.

† *i. e.* Having shadows on both sides.

|| *i. e.* Casting shadows one way.

night, when we have day. When the sun rises with us it sets with them, and when it sets with us it rises with them. Whoever considers that the Earth is spherical; that men and other things on its surface have, by divine appointment, a perpendicular direction, or gravitate to the Earth's centre; and that voyages have often been performed round the Globe (§. 8.) can have no manner of doubt about the existence of *Antipodes*. Indeed the opposite points of the Globe to several particular places are in the ocean; however, ships often fail in those parts.

§. 36. The inhabitants of those places that lie in the same half of the Meridian (§. 18), and consequently have the same Longitude, and are also equidistant, towards the north or south Pole, from the Equator, are called *Antioeci* \*. These are therefore distinguished as having quite contrary seasons; for when it is summer in one of these places, it is winter in the other. Those who live under the Equator have no *Antioeci*.

§. 37. Those who live in the same Parallels, and consequently in the same northern or southern Latitude, but in opposite parts of the same Meridian, or whose Longitude differs just  $180^{\circ}$  are called *Perioeci*. They are in the same Zone and Climate, and their seasons and length of days are exactly the same; but they reckon their hours differently. For example, when in one of these places it is 12 at noon, in the other it is midnight; and when in the former it is 3 in the afternoon, in the latter it is 3 o'Clock in the morning. If there are any inhabitants under the Poles, they have no *Perioeci*.

§. 38. That part of the Horizon where the sun rises, is called the East, and that part where it sets is termed the West; where the sun is at noon is called the South, and that part opposite to the last, we call the North. These are the four principal or cardinal Points of the World, which by the *Hollanders* are called *Ost*, *West*, *Sud*, and *Nord*. They are best pointed out by drawing an accurate Meridian-Line, *i. e.* a line, one extremity of which points due South and the other due North; but they are commonly found by the Compass. On account of the variety of winds, and for the convenience and improvement of navigation, smaller divisions have been made between these cardinal points, which are called *collateral*, and have their names from the two principal adjoining points; but of the latter the south and north are first named. These are called *South-East*, *South-West*, *North-West*, *North-East*. The arches of the Horizon lying between these 8 points are sub-divided into 2 equal parts; and in the middle are placed these eight collateral points, *viz.* *South-South-West*, *West-South-West*, *West-North-West*, *North-North-West*; *North-North-East*, *East-North-East*, *East-South-East*, *South-South-East*. And lastly, the arches of the Horizon between these 16 equal parts are once more bisected, which constitute the

\* From ἀντι and οἰκω, *i. e.* dwelling over against each other.

16 following collateral points; viz. *South-by-West*, *South-West-by-South*, *South-West-by-West*, *West-by-South*, *West-by-North*, *North-West-by-West*, *North-West-by-North*, *North-by-West*; *North-by-East*, *North-East-by-North*, *North-East-by-East*, *East-by-North*, *East-by-South*, *South-East-by-East*, *South-East-by-South*, *South-by-East*. These 32 points are best known from the Mariners Compass.

§. 39. As Geographers, when they have maps lying before them, always turn their faces to the North, they call the East the right side of the Earth, and West the left side of it. When they want to point out the right or left side of a river, they turn their faces towards its source; and then they denominate that bank of the river which lies to their right, the right side and that to the left, the left side of the river. This is what they mean when, for example, they say *Hamburg* lies on the left, and *Meissen* on the right side of the *Elbe*.

§. 40. As the Earth is spherical (§. 7.) it may be very easily represented in miniature by an artificial round ball. The spheroidal figure of the Earth (§. 9.) cannot conveniently be exhibited by such a ball or Globe; and therefore it is made exactly round or spherical. Who the first inventor of a Terrestrial Globe was, we are not certain. The accounts of artificial Globes given by ancient authors are collected by *J. A. Fabricius* in his *Biblioth. Græca lib. iv. c. 14*; with which the reader may compare *D. Hauber's History of Maps*, p. 57, and the Appendix to it, p. 38, where many historical hints about Terrestrial Globes are to be met with. If the conjecture advanced by both these Authors (namely, that the chapters of the two pillars in *Solomon's temple* mentioned in *1 Kings ch. vii, v. 16—20*, were Globes) be probable, those must have been the most ancient of which we have any account. According to *Diodorus Siculus*, *Atlas King of Mauritania* was the first who constructed a Sphere. This gave rise to the fictitious story which was related of that monarch, namely, that he bore up the Heavens on his shoulders, and that he was metamorphosed to a high mountain of the same name. As to the Terrestrial Globes made in more modern times, the first are those executed by *Mart. Behaim* and *Fracastorius*. The Globe made by the former is still to be seen in the *Behaim* family at *Nuremberg*, and is but little regarded at present. The next after these were made by *Jod. Hondius* the elder, *Will. Bleau*, and *P. Coronelli*; but those made by *Gerh. Valken* were the most common. After these, other Globes that were far more accurate, were published by *De l'Isle* and *Moll*. *Erhard Weigel*, *Joh. Beyer*, *J. L. Andre*, and *J. G. Dopplemayer* have published new terrestrial globes in *Germany*, which were delineated by *Joh. Geo. Puschner* \*. At this time Professor *Lowitz* at *Gottingen* is making a pair of

\* It is a wonder the author passes over in silence our ingenious countryman, the late Mr. *Senex*, whose Globes are so much admired for their beauty and correctness.



Globes, three *Paris* feet in diameter, which will be more accurate than any thing of that kind that has hitherto appeared in the world. At *Elbing* in *Prussia* *J. P. Enderfb* has been employed for some time on a pair of beautiful new Globes. Some Terrestrial Globes of an extraordinary size and value have been made by ingenious artists from time to time. The first among these was that made by the heirs of *W. Bleau* between the years 1645 and 1650, which is 7 *Englisch* feet in diameter, and is now to be seen at *Petersburg*. The next to this was a Globe begun by *Andr. Bush*, at the command of *Frederic III.* duke of *Holstein Gottorp* in 1654, under the inspection of *Ad. Olearius*, which was not finished till 1664. These extraordinary Globes are described in this Work under the articles *Gottorp* and *Petersburg*. After this Cardinal *d'Etrees* caused a pair of Globes to be made by *P. Coronelli* for *Lewis XIV.* which are 12 *Paris* feet in diameter. They were begun in the year 1683, and are still to be seen in the *French* king's library at *Paris*. The earl of *Castlemain* and *E. Weigel* also caused large Globes of an uncommon size to be made.

§. 41. A Terrestrial Globe exhibits on its surface not only the dry Land, the seas, the most extensive lakes, principal rivers, cities and towns, in proportion to their magnitude, with their situation and distance from each other; but also the several Points and Circles, which mathematicians have imagined on the Earth, and have been described above. Whoever therefore would form a distinct notion of the Earth, and rightly understand the mathematical part of Geography explained above, must procure a good Terrestrial Globe. In and upon the surface of such an artificial Globe he will find the terrestrial *Axis* and Poles (§. 14), the Equator (§. 17), a Meridian Circle divided into 4 Quadrants, which is commonly made of brass; besides a Meridian line drawn (§. 18) on the Globe itself at every 5 or 10 degrees of Longitude, and also a Parallel Circle (§. 23) at every 5 or 10 degrees of Latitude; the Ecliptic (§. 25), the Tropics (§. 25), the Polar Circles (§. 26), and the Horizon (§. 16). The last is commonly made of wood, and is supported by four feet. The globe stands in this wooden Horizon, in which the brazen Meridian is inserted. The Zones (§. 27—30), the Climates (§. 31), the Right, Parallel, and Oblique Spheres (§. 32—34), the *Antipodes* (§. 35), *Antioeci* (§. 36), *Perioeci* (§. 37), and several other particulars are best explained by such an artificial Globe. Round the North-Pole there is a small horary Circle of brass, divided into twice 12 hours, with an index which may be turned round the *Axis* of the Earth and fixt at any particular hour. On the wooden Horizon are also to be seen the 32 Points of the Compass and a Calendar. In order to place the Terrestrial Globe according to the Cardinal Points a Compass is necessary, or when there is none affixed to the pedestal of the Globe we draw a Meridian Line on the table, by the help of a pair of compasses, and set the Terrestrial Globe in such a manner over it, that the brazen Meridian

Circle may coincide with that line; and then the Globe stands in a right position. I shall here adduce the chief problems which may be solved by the Terrestrial Globe.

§. 42. In order to find the Latitude (or the elevation of the Pole) of any given place on the Terrestrial Globe, you must bring it under the brazen Meridian; and on the degrees of the latter you will find the distance of the place from the Equator, which is the thing sought for (§. 20). By reckoning on the Equator the number of degrees from West to East between the first Meridian (§. 19) and the brazen Meridian, you have also the Longitude of the place.

§. 43. In order to rectify the Terrestrial Globe according to the actual Horizon of any place, we first find out the Latitude of the place (§. 42); then we reckon as many degrees as it comes to, on that quarter of the brazen Meridian which is on the other side of the North Pole\*, and fix the degree of Latitude, when found, at the northern edge of the Horizon. After this we bring the place under the brazen Meridian; and the wooden Horizon shews the actual Horizon of the given place.

§. 44. As on the wooden Horizon of the new Terrestrial Globes the days and months according to the new stile † are set down as well as the course of the sun; in order to find the sun's place in the Ecliptic (§. 25) for any given day, we need only look for that day of the month on the wooden Horizon, and observe what degree of the celestial Sign stands over against it, and it will shew the place of the sun for that day, which was the thing required. For example, to day being the 2d of *April*, I look for it on the wooden Horizon; and I find over against it the 14th degree of *Aries*, which is the sun's place in the Ecliptic for that day. If it happens to be leap year, after the 24th of *February* we must always add one to the day of the month.

§. 45. In order to find when the sun rises and sets, on any given day, you rectify the Globe according to the Horizon of the place (§. 43); or, which is the same thing, you give it its proper elevation of the Pole, and bring the place under the brazen Meridian. Then you seek for the sun's place in the Ecliptic for that day on the wooden Horizon (§. 44), and when you have found the same in the Ecliptic on the Globe, bring it under the brazen Meridian. After this you must hold the globe steady, and place the index of the horary circle at XII. but it must not be the inferior XII. or that which lies below the North Pole, but that above it towards the Zenith. Then you set your finger or a pin at the sun's place in the Ecliptic, and turn the Globe round till it comes down to the wooden Horizon on the east, and west side of the Globe; and the index of the horary

\* It is here supposed that the globe is placed according to the cardinal points (§. 41) and that your face is turned towards the north.

† The calendar of the *English* globes exhibits both the old and new stile on the wooden Horizon.



Circle shews, by the former the rising, and by the latter, the setting of the sun. If you double the hour of the sun's rising, you have the length of the night, and if you double the hour of its setting, you have the length of the day in the given place.

§. 46. By knowing the hour of the day in any given place, in order to know what o'clock it is in other parts of the world, you bring the given place under the graduated edge of the brazen Meridian; then hold the Globe steady, and set the index of the horary Circle to the hour of the day at the given place. After this you must bring the other places required under the brazen Meridian, and observe what hour the index points out at each place, which will give you the hour of the day at those several places.

§. 47. In order to find in what places the sun on any given day is vertical at noon, you must first seek the sun's place on the wooden Horizon (§. 44), and then in the Ecliptic delineated on the Globe; which you must bring under the brazen Meridian, and mark the degree standing over it on the graduated edge: After this you must turn the Globe round, and the places sought are all those which pass under the degree you have marked on the brazen Meridian.

§. 48. The hour of the day at any place being known, you may find all those places on the Globe where it is noon at the same instant by bringing the given place under the brazen Meridian, then placing the index on the hour of the day at the given place, and afterwards turning the Globe till the index points to 12 o'clock. This being done, you will find all those places, where it is noon at that instant, lying under the brazen Meridian:

§. 49. To find the opposite point on the Globe to any place, you bring the given place under the brazen Meridian, and set the index at the superior XII. or noon. Then you turn the Globe round, till the index points at the inferior XII. or midnight. After this you must reckon on the brazen Meridian from the Equator towards the south an equal number of degrees to the Latitude of the given place; and at the end of these degrees under the meridian, you have the opposite point to the given place; and consequently the *Antipodes* of its inhabitants\*.

\* The Author supposes the given place to be in a northern Latitude. On the contrary, if the given place be south of the Equator, its opposite point is to be found as many degrees north of the Equator, as the Latitude of the given place comes to.



## C H A P. III.

*Of the NATURAL STATE of the EARTH, or  
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.*

§. 50. **T**HE description of the natural state of our Earth is of great importance, and attended with no small pleasure, but as yet is very imperfect. I shall, however, briefly describe it according to the most accurate discoveries that have been hitherto made; which may serve to give a general idea of what is moveable and immoveable, both upon and under the surface of the Earth; and also to explain what physical remarks may be met with in the description of particular countries in the following sheets.

*Of the EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE.*

§. 51. The Earth is encompassed with the Air; but this is not so pure and subtle as *Æther*; for it is charged with vapours, or heterogeneous particles detached from the land, but principally from the water, which renders it denser, and less pure than the latter. Hence it is called the Atmosphere of the Earth; and is supposed to extend 9 or 10 geographical miles in height, as it ceases to refract the solar rays at that distance from the Earth. The density of the Atmosphere decreases in proportion to its height. It is divided into three Regions. The lowest Region extends from the Earth's surface as far as that part of it where the air is not warmed by the solar rays, reflected from the Earth. This Region is consequently the warmest; but we do not know exactly to what distance from the Earth's surface this Region extends. The middle Region reaches from the lowest Region to the summits of the highest mountains; or even as far as the highest clouds, which may be seen floating in the air several fathoms lower than the tops of some very high mountains, as the *Cordilleras* in *Peru*. The middle Region is much colder than the lowest, as it is only warmed by the direct rays of the Sun passing through it. The third and highest Region extends from the middle Region to the extremity of the Atmosphere; but its limits are as uncertain as those of the Atmosphere itself. It is, probably, far colder than the two other Regions, as the reflected solar rays have still less influence on it than they have on the two former.

§. 52. The particles exhaled from the Earth into the Atmosphere are of various species; some being aqueous, some terrene; others metallic, others again sulphureous, and others saline, &c. Now, in some parts of the Earth one sort, and in others another species of particles are more copiously

ously exhaled; hence arises a great difference in the temperature of the Air, often observable in places at no very great distance from each other. A dense heavy air is more conducive to health than a rare or light air; for, in the former, the circulation of the blood and the imperceptible perspiration are more easily performed than in the latter. When the air is heavy it is generally clear; but a light air is always accompanied with fogs, rain, or snow, so that it is at the same time moist. The exhalations help to increase the weight or pressure of the Air; and in very hot weather, when they mount to a great height, the Air, notwithstanding the aqueous vapours with which it is charged, is very dry. Too great a degree of dryness very much wastes the juices in the human body, and consequently is extremely prejudicial to its health: This, indeed, happens only in very dry and sandy deserts. A moist Air is very hurtful to the human body; as it relaxes the fibres, obstructs insensible perspiration, and, if it be warm at the same time, renders the juices liable to putrefaction. The warmth of the Air rarefies and expands the fluids in the human body, and promotes sweat: Hence proceed lassitude and sleep. Too great a degree of cold in the Air braces up and contracts the solids too much, and at the same time condenses and inspissates the fluids in the human body: Hence obstructions and inflammations frequently arise. But by exercise, warm clothing, and custom, such bad consequences may be prevented. Hence we may conclude that temperature of the Air to be the best, which is rather heavy than light, neither too dry nor too moist, and is charged but with few, or no noxious exhalations. The inhabitants of *Quito* in *America*, who dwell on the highest part of our Earth hitherto known, breathe the purest Air. The western parts of *Africa*, under the torrid Zone, have the greatest degree of heat of any place on the Globe.

§. 53. The Atmosphere is the cause of clouds, rain, snow, dew, thunder, lightning, and various other phenomena in the air. The rays of light are also refracted by the Atmosphere, so that we have the rays of the Sun sooner, and enjoy them longer, than we do the sight of the Sun itself. Hence it comes to pass, that we have morning and evening twilights; so that the glare of day does not break in upon us at once, but gradually advances, and retires in the same manner; and to the same cause it is owing that inhabitants of the two Polar Circles enjoy the Sun for several days in winter, even while it is below their Horizon.

§. 54. Where the Air is charged with vapours, it is heavier than where it is free from such aqueous exhalations; hence the former is more elastic, and consequently its pressure is greater than that of the latter. This causes a motion in the Air which we call Wind. The Winds are divided according to the points of the compass (§. 38); and as the places from whence they happen to blow are warm, cold, or moist, the Winds partake of the same quality. The Winds have a great influence on the health of the human species.

species, and serve to purge the Atmosphere of the noxious exhalations wherewith it is impregnated; which are either dissipated by Winds or discharged on the Earth by the rain. A cold and moist Wind is the most pernicious of all the rest.

§. 55. It has been found, by repeated experiments, that the velocity with which the Wind moves is never above 50 feet in a second. We call that a Gust or squall of Wind which suddenly begins to rage with a great degree of violence, is again soon laid, and continues to do so, as it were, by fits. The Wind generally blows parallel with the Horizon; but when its direction is perpendicular to the Horizon it causes a Whirlwind. The course of the Wind is more direct at sea than it is on land; for on the former, it has a free and uninterrupted passage; but on the latter, mountains, woods, cities, and other impediments intercept its current. The Sea-Winds or breezes also blow stronger and more constant than those at land. Those Winds which blow from the East, or either of the Poles, are stronger at sea than those that blow from the West and the Equinoctial Line: Whereas, at land, according to the different situation of places, the West and the South Winds are sometimes stronger, and sometimes weaker than the East and North Winds. The Winds are more violent, both at sea and land, in spring and autumn than in summer and winter. On eminences, and in narrow defiles formed between ranges of hills or contiguous buildings, the Winds are more boisterous than on a plain or level country. Under the Equator and between the Tropics, the Wind blows constantly during the whole year in one direction, which is caused by the heat of the sun, and moves the same way with it, namely from East to West; so that they have a continual easterly Wind there. However, at different seasons of the year, it blows from different points between the Tropics; for it generally comes from the South-East from *April* to *November*, and from *November* to *April* it blows from the North-East points. It is likewise observable that the Wind on this side the Equator blows mostly from the North-East, and on the other side of it from the East-South-East.

§. 56. The Weather, or temperature of the air, depends much more on other circumstances than on the distance of a place from the Pole, or its proximity to the Equator. All those places which are situated between the Tropics are not the hottest on the Globe, nor are all the places included within the Polar Circles so intolerably cold, as is generally imagined. Two places may be in the same Latitude, and yet one of them may be very hot, or cold, and the other temperate. In many places situated far to the North, as at *Peterzburg* for example, the heat is far more intense at certain times than it is between the Tropics. The Weather, in a great measure, depends also on the Wind, to which the variableness or change of it is for the most part owing. It has, however, been observed in general, that places lying far to the

the



the East are colder than those which lie under the same Parallel, or Latitude; more towards the West.

*Of the EARTH in general.*

§. 57. The *Terra firma*, or dry land, as far as it is hitherto known, does not take up a third part of the surface of the Terraqueous Globe. I shall here treat in particular of the Land, and afterwards of the Water.

§. 58. On looking around us on dry Land, we see a great inequality of hills and valleys, a great diversity of soils, with a surprizing variety of countries. Mountains may be reckoned among the most striking proofs of the Divine power, wisdom, and goodness. They are an ornament to the Earth, affording the most beautiful prospects; contain in their bowels large stores of metals, precious stones, and other minerals; and give rise to cooling springs, brooks and rivers\*. On the Mountains we also find refreshing breezes and wholesome air, good pasture for cattle, salutary herbs, medicinal simples, vines, shrubs, trees, &c. In a word, they render the Earth a commodious habitation for men and beasts. They appear indeed at first sight as if they were interspersed at random on the surface of the Earth; but, upon a nearer view, we find, that in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, the vast ranges of huge Mountains for the most part extend from East to West; whereas in *America* they stretch mostly from North to South. The shape or figure of the Mountains in various parts of the Earth differs extremely. Some of them form high ridges, the height of which, for a long tract of land, is pretty equal; others are separated asunder by very deep valleys. Some have a circumference that is tolerably regular; that of others is very irregular: and sometimes we see a mountain standing by itself, or detached in the middle of a vale or plain. The Mountains that are situated between the Tropics are higher than those in the Temperate Zones; and the latter are higher than those in the Frigid Zones. Hence it appears, that the nearer we approach to the Equator, the greater inequalities we find on the surface of the Earth. The *Cordilleras* in *America*, which lie under the Equator, are reckoned the highest Mountains on the Globe; and one of them, which is called *Cbimborasso*, is the highest hill hitherto known, its height being computed at 19,300 *Paris* feet. Formerly the *Pico* on the island of *Teneriffa* boasted of that pre-eminence. The *Swiss* look upon the *Titlisberg* to be the highest hill in their country; and *Canigou* is reckoned the highest among the *Pyrenees*. In several Mountains and Rocks there are large and remarkable caverns.

§. 59. Many of the Mountains on the surface of the Earth exhibit fiery eruptions. These *Volcano's*, at certain times, emit, at the aperture on the summit of them, smoke, fire, ashes and stones; and sometimes discharge a

\* The Author might have added, fruitful showers, as the mountains, in part, are the cause of them by condensing the vapours, &c.

stream of fire, resembling ignited or melted metal. The most remarkable burning mountains in *Europe* are *Vesuvio* in the kingdom of *Naples*, *Ætna* in *Sicily*, *Stromboli* on the island of the same name, *Hecla* and *Krabra*, with some other mountains, in *Iceland*. There are *Volcano's* also in *Kamtshatka* in *Asia*, on an island not far from it, and on the island *Ternate* one of the *Moluccas*; on *Fuego* one of the *African* islands, and in *Peru* and other places in *America*. The cause of these *Volcano's* is to be attributed to the kindling of sulphureous vapours under the Earth. When this subterraneous fire finds no such spiracle or vent as *Volcano's* are, it shakes the Earth, or even tears it asunder; and this is called an Earthquake, which is commonly accompanied with a dreadful rumbling noise, or loud explosion, caused by the rarefaction and expansion of the imprisoned air by the subterraneous heat. Earthquakes every day become more common than they were heretofore.

§. 60. Vallies are the necessary consequence of Mountains; but I have nothing particular to observe concerning these. Uninhabited Wilds, and uncultivated places are called Deserts. I shall only observe, that some of these remain uninhabited on account of their sandy wastes, damp morasses, and barren soil; others are uncultivated because of their vast distance from any inhabited country. The sandy Deserts of *Africa* and *Arabia* are the most remarkable on the Globe. In the north of *Asia* there are also many uncultivated places which are commonly called *Steppen*, being of the same nature with what we call Heaths.

§. 61. As Natural Philosophers divide the external and internal produce of the Earth into certain general classes, which they call KINGDOMS, I shall briefly recount the principal of these natural Kingdoms. The MINERAL KINGDOM stands first in order, and contains all those bodies which are produced in the Earth, but have neither life nor any visible juices contained in tubes or veins. Minerals may be divided into four principal *Genera*.

§. 62. To the *first* principal *Genus* belong the different species of EARTHS (*Terræ*), or those Mineral bodies which consist of parts that have little or no cohesion, are not soluble in oil or water, tho' they may be in some measure malaxable in the latter, and from which stones derive their origin. Under this *Genus* four principal *species* are included, which are as follows:

1. The *species* of dust, Earth, or Mould, (*Humus*), including black or garden mould, red mould or *English* Earth; Umber or brown Earth; black flaky Earth or *Indian* ink; peat or turf, and animal Earth, derived from putrid animals.

Chalk, (*Creta*), the species of which are, white chalk; *English* white chalk; pale chalk; *Lac Lunæ*; *Gubr*; *Calx*, or *Terra alkalina*; brownish-red chalk, and green or *French* chalk.

2. The *species* of Clay (*Argilla*), which is stiff, firm, unctuous, &c. are a whitish-blue variegated Clay, fullers Clay, Clay that will bear the fire; seven species of Bole (which, when formed into small round cakes, is called *Terra*

*Sigillata*, or Sealed Earth, because it is marked with a stamp); loose, and stone Clay.

Marl, (*Marga*) the species of which are, genuine porcelain-earth, tobacco-pipe-clay or bastard porcelain-earth, chalky-marl, fullers-earth, marl used for manuring a barren soil, stone-marl, and casting-marl.

3. The *species* of Earth mixed with ores, which properly belong to the third principal class of the Mineral Kingdom; and are either mixed with salt, as Vitriol, Alum, salt-petre, common salt, and alkaline salt mixed with earth; or with sulphur, as the bitumenous and fossile sulphur; or with metals, as Calamine, iron ore, and Verdigrise.

4. The *species* of Sand, as dry sand, *arena pulverulenta*, quicksand, clayey sand, and *Tripoly* of various kinds, of which the yellow sort is used for polishing; Stone-sand (*arena petrosa*) or properly sand; Ore-sand, as iron, tin, and gold sand; and lastly Animal-sand.

§. 63. To the *second* principal Genus belong the species of STONES. These are firm, compact bodies, which are not malaxable in water or oil, and of different degrees of hardness. Stones are divided,

1. Into the *species* of *Calx*, which are reducible to powder by fire, but being mixed with water, or any other liquid, acquire a great degree of hardness again, and are of so loose a texture as not to strike fire with steel. To this class belong Lime-stone; and Marble, which consists of fine particles, admits of a beautiful polish or lustre, with strong, vivid colours, and, after lying for a long time exposed to the air, crumbles to pieces. Some sorts of Marble are of one colour; as the white, black, grey, red, yellow, dark-brown and green marbles. Others are Variegated with the different colours just mentioned, intermixed in spots or veins. Others again are Picturesque, or marked with all manner of figures, &c.

*Gypsum*, the *species* of which are Alabaster, which admits of a polish, but has not the same lustre as marble; crystal *gypsum*; *Selenites* which consists of pure transparent *laminæ* or flakes; radiated *gypsum*, transparent *gypsum*; shining or *Bononian* stone, and *Lapis Nephriticus*.

*Spat*, or Spar, the *species* of which are cubic, flaky, granular *Spat*, and transparent *Spat*; *Double-stone*, or *Iceland-crystal*, which exhibits every object that is seen thro' it double; crystal *spat*; *swine-stone*, which, when rubbed, smells rank; glass *spat*, and field *spat*.

2. The *species* of *Glass-stones* (*Terræ vitrescentes*), under which are comprehended those stones which, when melted in the fire, vitrify or turn to glass, and which are generally so hard as to strike fire with steel. To this class belong

*Schiefer*, or a kind of slate which breaks in layers, flakes or *laminæ*; and Sand-stone, which breaks in rough square pieces.

Flint-stones, or *Achate*, which are all hard, produce fire when struck with Steel, and vitrify in the fire. There are opaque and coarse flint-stones, as



well as coloured and *semi-transparent*, which are properly call'd *Achate*. To the latter species belong the

*Dendrachates*, which is white; *Cornelian*, which is mostly red; *Chalcedony*, which is of a light-gray colour; the *Onyx*, which consists of circular *laminae* of different colours laid one upon another; the *Opal*, which changes its colour according to its different positions with regard to the light, and is inimitable; *Oculus mundi*, which by polishing receives a beautiful lustre, and is partly spotted or striped, partly picturesque; and the mineral *Lapis Chelidonium*, or Swallow-Stone, which is no bigger than lin-feed.

*Jasper*, which in polishing does not acquire a strong lustre: There are opaque *Jaspers* as well as those of a vivid colour. The latter are properly called *Jasper*, and when polished acquire a perfectly beautiful lustre, but are not transparent. These are either of one colour, *viz.* green; or blue, as *Lapis lazuli*; or spotted *Jasper*; or red, as the *Jasponyx* and *Porphyry*.

*Quartz*, or a species of flint which is extremely hard.

*Crystals*, or genuine precious stones, which are quite hard, transparent, and pellucid. These are either

Hexagonal, which are properly called Crystals, namely, *Rock-Crystal*, *bastard-Ruby*, *bastard-Sapphire*, *bastard-Topaz*, *bastard-Emerald*, and *brown-Crystal*;

Or *polygonal*, all which are called genuine Precious Stones, being remarkably clear and without spots, are polished with great difficulty, and then acquire a surprising lustre. These are

The *Diamond*, which is the hardest of all stones, and is, like water, without colour.

The *Ruby*, which is of a beautiful red colour.

The *Sapphire*, which is of a lively blue.

The *Topaz*, which is of a vivid golden or yellow colour.

The *Smaragdus*, or *Emerald*, which is of a lively green.

The *Chrysolite*, which is of a greenish yellow hue.

The *Amethyst*, which is of a violet colour.

The *Granite*, which is of a dark-red.

The *Hyacinth*, which is of a yellowish-red; and

The *Beryl*, which is of a faint, or sea-green colour.

3. Fire Stones, which bear the fire without turning to glass or *calx*, and for the most part are so soft and rough that they will not strike fire with steel. To this class belong Friable Stones, which are mostly soft, and may be crumbled to pieces by rubbing or grinding, and feel something unctuous. Of this species are

*Muscovy-glass*, or *Lapis-specularis*, which consists of flexible and entirely clear, transparent *laminae*; *Cats-gold*, which is semi-transparent, &c.

*Talc*, which is soft, smooth and unctuous like tallow. Of this sort there are white, gold colour, and green *Talc*.

*Tophus*,

*Tophus*, which feels unctuous, and may be beat small, turned or ground with iron instruments. To this species belongs the *serpentine* marble; the close, lax, and coarse-grained *Tophus*.

*Horny-stone*, which is something hard, but may be rubbed or beaten to pieces.

*Amiantus*, which is the softest and lightest kind of Stone, and may be spun and weaved. It undergoes no other change in the fire than that it grows whiter and something harder, but becomes friable at the same time. To this species belong *Rock-flax*, *Rock-leather*, *Rock-flesh*, and *Rock-cork*.

*Asbestos* is something hard and friable, will not float in the water, and acquires a greater degree of hardness in the fire. Of the ripe *Asbestos*, paper, thread, and linen may also be made; but it must be previously beaten small and well worked together.

4. Rocks, which are large masses composed of the abovementioned species of stones.

§. 64. In the *third* principal Genus the different species of ORES are included, which are species of Earths or stones, impregnated either with salt, sulphur, or metal.

1. The species of Salts, which dissolve in water, melt in the fire, evaporate without burning, and have a pungent taste on the tongue, are

*Vitriol*, which has a rough, nauseous taste. In this class are, a blue or copper-vitriol; a green or iron-vitriol; a white-vitriol, which is also an iron-vitriol; a mixt vitriol; a vitriolic earth; and *Atrament* or vitriol-stone.

*Alum*, which has a very astringent taste. In this class are native alum, an alummy Earth, flaky alum, an alummy calx, and alum-wood.

*Saltpetre*, which tastes salt and bitter. Saltpetre derives its origin from a nitrous earth; for we know of no other cause that produces it.

*Common Salt*. This is either Fossile Salt, which is dug out of the Earth; or Rock-salt, which is hewn from Rocks; or *Sal Gemmæ*, which is as white and transparent as crystal; or lastly is extracted from the sea-water, either by the heat of the sun, or by the fire; or else boiled from salt-springs.

*Alcaline Salt*. This has either a hot taste or a fetid smell; it is either mixt with earth or spring-salt, and issues out of old walls.

*Acid Salt*. This has an acid taste, and is properly a sulphureous exhalation or steam.

*Neutral Salt*. This has a bitterish nauseous taste. The *English*, *Sedlitz*, *Egra* Salt, &c. are of this species. It is called *Neutral* Salt because it occupies the medium between the alkaline and acid salts.

*Sal-armoniac*. This has a bitter, urinous, and unpleasent taste. The common *Sal-armoniac* comes from *Egypt*, where it is prepared from soot, collected from dried dung burnt in furnaces or on hearths.

*Borax* is of an acid and bitter taste. Its *species* are a bluish kind called *Tinkal*, and the proper *borax*, which is a purified *Tinkal* and appears white.

2. The *species* of Sulphur; which burn and evaporate in the fire, and are soluble by oil, but not by water. These are as follows:

*Bitumen*, which is either liquid, soft, or hard; and generally of a black colour. The *species* of *Bitumen* are *Naphta*, an inflammable oil; *Petroleum*, which is found either floating on springs, or distils thro' the clefts of rocks and cliffs, near the water; *Mineral Tar*, which is black and thick; *Mineral* or *Jews Pitch*, resembling the common pitch; *mineral pitchy-earth*, or *mineral peat*; *Coals* or *jet*, which is a black mineral pitch of the hardness of stone, of which snuff-boxes, buttons, &c. are made.

*Amber*, which burns and melts in the fire, and emits an agreeable smell: It is either transparent, or opaque, and coloured.

*Ambergrise*, which is soft but tough, yields an agreeable smell in the fire, and is mostly of a dark colour.

*Brimstone*, or *Sulphur*, which, when pure, is of a yellow colour, burns with a blue flame, and yields an acid fetid spirit.

3. Semi-metals are heavy fossile bodies, which may be ignited, and glow in the fire, but are not at all, or in a very small degree, malleable. In this class are

*Mercury* or *Quicksilver*, which is quite fluid and of an argentine lustre, is next to gold in weight, and adheres to, and penetrates other metals. Its *species* are *Native Quicksilver*; and *Cinnabar*, which is of a red colour.

*Arsenic* is quite friable and brittle, of a white colour; or is of the *Glassy Species*, and dissolves in any liquid. Its *species* are native *Arsenic*, yellow *Arsenic*, black *Arsenic*, *Orpiment*, testaceous *Cobolt*, *Mocklead*, arsenical earth, &c.

*Cobolt*, which is almost a species of earth, but hard and of a pale colour. The *species* of it are *Cobolt-ore*, *speculum Cobolt*, &c.

*Antimony*, which is a brittle whitish substance, is ignited with difficulty in the fire, and is used in purifying gold from other metals.

*Bismuth*, which is a kind of imperfect metal, of a yellowish colour.

*Zink*, or *Spelter*, which is the most malleable and ductile of all this class, and of a white colour.

4. Metals are the heaviest earthy substances; they fuse and ignite in the fire; are also malleable and ductile; and retain their fixidity in the fire for a longer or shorter time before fusion. There are six sorts belonging to this class; and these are divided into **BASE** metals which are *less malleable*, and *less fixt* in the fire; and **NOBLE** metals. Of the former sort are reckoned *Iron*, *Copper*, *Lead*, and *Tin*; and to the latter sort belong *Silver* and *Gold*. The baser Metals, with regard to smelting, are divided into

1. Such as are *hard*, and *difficult to fuse*. Of this sort are,

*Iron*,



*Iron*, which is the least ductile but the hardest and most elastic of all metals, and the toughest, except Gold. We are not yet certain whether there be any *native* Iron: For it is the common opinion that Iron cannot withstand acid vitriolic spirits, by which it is supposed to be soluble. When Iron is deprived of its natural sulphureous unctuousness it grows hard, and becomes what we call *Steel*. Steel mines are, indeed, sometimes found, tho' very rarely. There is one in *Alsace*, near the little town of *Dambach*, in the *Wasgau* mountains, and another in *Switzerland* in the high mountains of *Sargans*. The *Load-stone* or Magnet belongs also to this Mineral. The Magnet, with regard to its internal structure, or to the form and figure of its pores or interstices, differs from all other stones. Its virtue of attracting iron is well known. There are also artificial Magnets, which have this quality. *Ocre* also belongs to the species of Iron-ores, and *Emery* is the hardest of that sort.

*Copper*, which is more malleable but less elastic than Iron. It is not so hard as Iron, and comes next to Silver in toughness. It ignites before it fuses. In an intense and constant fire it partly dissipates into fume, and partly vitrifies or becomes a brown or pale-green glass, or slag. Among the *base* metals, Copper retains its fixidity the longest in the fire next to Iron. This metal, however, is found in different forms, as native Copper, that which is produced by vitriolic springs, &c.

2. Or *soft* metals, which are *easily fused*. These melt before they ignite, and are very soft and flexible. Of this sort are,

*Lead*, which is the basest and softest of all metals. It is next to quicksilver as to its weight, and is easily fused. There is a Native a Lead, Lead-ore, &c.

*Tin*, which is less ductile than Lead, and next to the latter is the softest and most flexible of metals. It is also the lightest of all metals, but heavier than any other bodies, and is soon fused in the fire. The *English* Tin is the best.

The **NOBLE** metals are bodies of the greatest Malleability, and have the greatest purity and fixidity in the air, as well as in the water and fire. They also fuse as soon as they are ignited. These are

*Silver*, which, next to Gold, is the most ductile of all metals. It is harder than Gold, Tin, or Lead, but not so tough as Gold or Iron; and heavier than Copper, Iron or Tin. It retains its fixidity so long in the fire, that it loses no more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  part of its weight when put in the most intense fire for two months. None of the above metals are found pure, in less quantities than Silver, in proportion to its ore.

*Gold* is the heaviest of all bodies, and the most valuable and toughest among metals. It loses nothing of its weight in the most constant and intense fire, and is ductile and malleable to an uncommon degree of subtilty or fineness: So that from one grain of it a thread of 500 feet (or accord-  
ing

ing to others, ells) in length has been drawn. *Native* or pure Gold is found in various sorts of stones, ores, earths, and sand. The two last sorts are found in rivers and brooks. The rivers that contain Gold among their sand are the *Rhine*, the *Danube*, the *Elbe*, the *Sale* near *Halle*, the *Eder* in the County of *Waldeck*, the *Schwartze* in the county of *Schwartzburg*, and the *Bober* in *Silesia*, in GERMANY; the *Aar* in SWITZERLAND; the *Rhône*, *Garonne*, *Doux*, *Ceze* and *Gardon* in the *Cevennes*, the *Ariège* and the *Salat*, which rise in the *Pyrenees*, and the small brooks *Ferrit* and *Benagues* near the castle of *Pamiers*, in FRANCE; the *Po* in ITALY; the *Tagus* in SPAIN and PORTUGAL; the *Hebrus* in THRACE; the *Pactolus* in LYDIA; the *Phasis* in COLCHIS; and the *Ganges* in INDIA. A whitish sort of Gold, called *Platina del Pinto*, is imported into *Spain* from the *West-Indies*, which some look upon as a seventh species of Metal.

§. 65. Lastly, the *fourth* principal Genus of Minerals contains LAPIDEOUS CONCRETIONS, composed of minerals, earths, stones, and ores, which, being mixt after the dissolution of their parts, adhere together, or are generated anew in an uncommon manner, &c. These are,

1. Lapideous Concretions generated as well in the fire, namely, *Pumice Stone*; as in the water, namely, *kettle-stone* or *Tophus*; *stalactical* substances or sparry icicles, &c.

2. PETRIFACTIONS of various sorts, as Petrified Vegetables, whether plants, wood, roots, stalks, or leaves; or vegetables imprinted on stone; also Corals of different species.

Petrified animals, as human bones and entire limbs, bones of animals, birds, fishes, &c.

Petrified shells, the number of which class is very considerable.

3. PICTURED, FIGURED, and uncommonly shaped STONES, which are called *Lusus Naturæ*.

4. RESEMBLANCES OF STONE, such as the *calculus* generated in animals, &c.

§. 66. The VEGETABLE KINGDOM comprises all the *Genera* and *species* of Plants. The vegetable growing on the Earth are divided into *Trees*, among which are also reckoned shrubs; and *Herbs*. None of these are produced without their own proper seed. They do not derive their nourishment from the Earth, but from the Water. It is not consistent with my plan to enlarge on the Vegetable Kingdom, as I shall seldom touch upon it in my System of Geography: But the few curiosities of this sort that occur shall be described briefly in their proper places.

§. 67. The ANIMAL KINGDOM comprehends all the *Genera* and *species* of Creatures endued with sense and motion. Of this Kingdom I cannot here give any sketch, as it is surprisngly large and extensive; but the rarest animals in every country shall be described where they occur. I shall therefore briefly take a general view of the Human Species only, as they are the noblest



blest and most important Creatures on the Earth; and are appointed by God to acquire the knowledge of, and dominion over it.

§. 68. In order to form a probable conjecture of the number of men that may be living at the same time, and of the proportion between the yearly births and burials, the following particulars, which are derived from experience, deserve our observation.

The number of births is almost always greater than the number of burials; and consequently, the Human race is in a continual state of increase. Were the case otherwise, and the latter were to exceed the former, a country, in the common course of things, would in a few centuries be quite depopulated; especially if war and pestilence concurred with this cause. If in one and the same country the number of burials be half as much, or double to what it was before, half as many, or double the number of living inhabitants must then be found in that country\*.

Among the impediments to the increase of Mankind, the plague is one of the greatest: hence the return of it is not very frequent; for, in that case, it would sweep away all the inhabitants of a country. The other impediments, next to the plague, are war, famine, and the single state or celibacy. *Roman-catholic* countries, on account of their great number of convents, suffer the greatest detriment by celibacy. To these may be added the obstacles to a married life, and whatever renders Mankind less prolific, or tends to shorten the lives of those who are already born. Lastly cities, especially the most populous, are an impediment to the increase of Mankind; for in towns and cities the burials are, at least, equal to the births, and generally exceed them; which is owing chiefly to the irregular manner of living in such places, and to the unhealthfulness of the situation, and quality of the air, of many cities and populous towns.

Three thousand millions of inhabitants might commodiously live at the same time on the Earth; but there is scarce the third part of this number, or 1000 millions actually living at the same time. Now, if with the ancients we reckon 33 years to a generation, 1000 millions will be born, and as many die, during that space of time. Hence it appears that above 30 millions of the Human Species die in a Year, above 82,000 every Day, above 3,400 every Hour, about 60 every Minute; and consequently to every Second we may reckon one. The list of baptisms shews, that the number of males that are born exceeds that of the females: So that the proportion of the former is to the latter as 91 to 86, 364 to 344, 1050 to 1000, 105 to 100, or 21 to 20; that is, supposing there are 1050 males born, there are but 1000 females born in the same space of time. However, diseases and other accidents take away this odds by death, and reduce the sexes to an equality. It is thought that there are more women than men in *Spain*, but this must

\* We must, in this case, suppose the place to be always equally healthy and free from the devastations of war, &c.



be owing to their great number of Monasteries; for there are seven ecclesiastics and monks, in that kingdom, to two nuns. In towns there are usually more women than men living; but in the country the reverse happens. This proportion of the Sexes to each other is a strong argument against polygamy, or a multiplicity of wives. The increase and decrease of the inhabitants of a city, or a whole country, may be known by the Bills of Mortality; and from this we may also determine the number of the living. For in very large and populous towns we must reckon from 24 to 28 living, to one that dies; in middling and small towns the proportion is from 30 to 32 to one; but in the country it is about 40 or 42 to one. Hence some, taking the towns and villages of a country collectively, reckon that one person out of 32 or 33 dies every year, and in some countries but one out of 37.

§. 69. Men differ externally chiefly in colour or complexion; hence they may be divided into White, Black, and a Middle sort which are either red, brown, or olive colour. In the White class we reckon almost all *Europeans*, and many of the inhabitants of the temperate Climates of the other parts of the world. The Black class properly comprehends the *Moors* of *Africa*, and the *Mulatto's*. The Middle sort includes whole nations, and many individuals, in all the four parts of the world; but particularly in *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*. The Inhabitants of *Cape Verde* in *Africa*, and the island *Goree*, are the blackest of all the human species; for their skin is of a glossy shining black, like ebony. This difference in colour or complexion is principally to be ascribed to the difference of climate, diet, and manner of living. The inhabitants of the temperate Climates have the whitest or fairest complexions. But whether these are the most beautiful among the species, or whether a well proportioned *Moor* or Black may not be reckoned as beautiful, I leave to the impartial determination of others.

§. 70. Men also differ greatly in their make, size, method of living, and in their manners. But as to the difference in their intellectual faculties, we are not to look for that in their nature, or climate, but in the greater or less opportunity they have of improving and exercising their mental powers. An inhabitant of *Greenland* or *Lapland*, a *Moor* or a *Hottentot*, is in his way as intelligent as one among the more civilized nations; and if the former had the same opportunities of improving his understanding and regulating his passions as the latter enjoys, he would not be at all inferior to him. Almost every nation have their own peculiar manners and customs: And as the notions of what is decent and becoming differ as much as the people who observe them do, it is unreasonable and absurd for one nation to ridicule another, on account of their difference in this particular. Many nations and individuals, who pretend to rank themselves among the civilized part of their species, have so many odd and absurd customs as might justly expose them to the ridicule of those, who are called Barbarians and uncivilized.

civilized. It may be observed in general, that among all people and nations of the Earth, there are some men of a reasonable, and others of an unreasonable disposition or turn of mind; as there are also in every country graceful and awkward, candid and disingenuous, virtuous and vicious, mild and austere, polite and ill-bred, noble and ignoble persons.

### *Of the WATER.*

§. 71. It remains, lastly, that we treat of the Water on the surface of the Earth; and this branch of Geography is by some termed Hydrography. Dr. *Wallerius* was the first who made accurate enquiries into the AQUEOUS KINGDOM, or Hydrology, and classed it among the other Kingdoms of Nature. We may divide the Water into two principal *Genera*, namely, into COMMON and MINERAL Water. COMMON Water, or that which is called sweet or fresh Water, has no particular taste, smell, or colour, and falls either in dew, rain, or snow from the air, whither it was conveyed from the Earth in vapours and exhalations; or else it is found on the Earth in its proper channels and cavities. Running Water is the lightest among the latter sort, and is also called living Water; of which, Spring-Water, which springs naturally out of the Earth, and continually keeps running, is a species. Springs, in all appearance, owe their origin to mountains, on which the vapours exhaled from the Earth fall in dew, rain, and snow; which, penetrating into the mountains, are collected together, and break out in springs below. Those springs which arise in sandy eminences produce the purest Water. Most springs are perennial, or flow constantly; others begin to run in spring, on the melting of the snow or ice, and cease again towards autumn, and are called temporal Springs. Others again flow only for certain hours of the day, and some of these only in summer, which must be owing to certain subterraneous cavities in the mountains from which they are supplied. Many springs emit Water as cold as ice, and yet bubble up and make a noise, like a pot boiling over the fire; which seems to be owing to the rarefied subterraneous air. Some springs rise and fall as if they were regulated by the ebbing and flowing of the sea. In many places Wells are also dug in which water is collected for use.

§. 72. Running Springs produce Brooks; and a conflux of several Brooks form a Rivulet, or Stream; and many Streams or Rivulets uniting together make one great current, called a River. Rivers have a steep or shelving bottom; and the greater the slope or declivity, the more rapid and stronger is their current. If the bed or channel of a River be very wide, its rapidity is not so great as when it is narrow. The water of Streams and Rivers often falls down from a precipice; and as the Rivers which form them happen to be smaller or greater, so are the cascades smaller or greater in proportion. Several Rivers also, at certain seasons of the year, being increased



or swelled by the melting of ice or snow, and rain-water, overflow their banks, and lay the adjacent country under water. It is observable that Water, especially when its current is rapid, has a great degree of force, so as to demolish bridges, dams, and the like obstacles, and carries along with it masses of surprising weight and bulk. The greater the number of mountains there are in a country, the greater also will be the number of rivers there. There are some rivers whose currents stop suddenly in the middle of their course, as has been observed of the *Motala* in *Sweden*, which is owing either to a great flux and reflux, or to the wind which repels the stream, or to a sudden keen frost in winter. Whether there are actually any rivers, which, in their course are swallowed up by the Earth, and emerge again at other places, I have not yet been able to gain sufficient information. As for rivers which have gold dust, we have treated of them above (§. 64). Many entertain a doubt whether there be any rivers that produce silver sands; but iron is found in several, and copper and lead in some rivers.

§. 73. To the class of COMMON Water also belongs Stagnant or standing Water; this is heavier than the running Water, and is found either in Ponds or Lakes. Some Lakes are supplied with water by melted snow or rain, and are dried up in summer. Several Lakes receive, and discharge considerable rivers; and, indeed, most Lakes are of this kind. There are also Lakes which receive rivers, but discharge none; and these must lose their water by evaporation. Other Lakes receive no river, and yet a stream runs out of them; so that these are to be considered as large springs, which have this superfluity of Water from huge mountains, near which they are always situated. We also meet with bubbling lakes that overflow their banks, and others that rise and fall regularly with the ebbing and flowing of the sea.

§. 74. MINERAL Water has commonly some degree of smell, a particular taste, and generally differs in colour from pure water. It is also seldom or never congealed into ice. There are Cold, as well as Hot Mineral Waters. The Cold includes three sorts: 1. A species which contains some light and volatile mineral particles that evaporate only by a gentle heat. To this species belong *volatile-vitriolic-acid* Waters, which emit either a salubrious, or a suffocating vapour; and *volatile-alkaline* Waters. 2. There is another species of mineral cold Water which is more turbid and contains a great quantity of terrene matter, which either incrusts with a rind whatever substance is laid in it, or lodges its earthy particles in the pores of bodies, and renders them as hard as stone; or even petrifies or converts them to stone. Another sort of this species is *vitriolic*; to this belong those called *Cement-Waters*, that contain the vitriolic copper; and on laying clean iron in them they corrode its particles, and substitute others of copper in their places. The *vitriolic* iron Water, the *Zink-vitriol-Water*, and Waters im-



pregnated with Alum, which is found in the Alum-pits; or with common Salt, as Sea-Water and Salt-Spring-Water, alkaline-salt, a neutral salt, *sal-armeniac*, *Bitumen* (of which sort are the mineral oily waters, mineral bituminous, and red or sanguine waters) *sulphur*, or lastly with *Arsenic*. 3. A third species of cold Mineral Waters is the acid Spring-Water, which is either ferruginous, or impregnated with common, alcaline, or a neutral salt.

As to the hot Mineral Waters, which spring with a greater or less degree of heat out of the Earth, there are 1. Clear Baths, which contain nothing of a gross mineral; and of this sort are the pure and the subtile bath Waters. 2. Turbid Baths, which by the grossness of the mineral particles immediately discover their nature, and are either ferruginous, alkaline, or contain a neutral salt. From whence these waters derive their warmth, is uncertain; there being various, and some improbable conjectures formed about it: However, there can be no doubt that it is owing to a subterraneous fire. The waters of several springs are so hot as to boil flesh fit for the table; of which sort there are some in *Iceland* \*.

§. 75. Rivers and large streams at last disembogue themselves into the Sea, which is the general receptacle of Water. The Sea constitutes about two thirds of the surface of the Terraqueous Globe, and may properly be divided from North to South into two large, but unequal parts. One part comprehends the Sea which flows between *Europe* and *Africa* on the one, and *America* on the other side; and in the other part is included the Sea between *America* and *Asia*. The *Terra firma*, or dry land is quite environed by the Ocean. The bottom of the Sea is of the same nature with the *Terra firma*, being only a continuation of it under the Water. For there are in the Sea mountains, rocks, vallies, caverns, plains, sand-banks, all sorts of ores and stones, springs and rivers, vegetables and animals. The Sea is not unfathomable in any part, and its depth is very unequal; for in some few places it amounts to a whole geographical mile, but in most parts it is not near so deep. Mariners found the Sea with the Plummet, which is a cylindrical piece of lead, usually weighing twelve pounds, and sometimes more. The lower end of the Plummet is greased with tallow; and when it is let down at the end of the Plumb-line something sticks to it at the bottom of the Sea: This serves as a specimen by which they may form a judgment of the nature of the soil at the bottom. But in order to sound the deepest parts of the Sea where no Plumb-line can reach †, a set of instruments are used to which a bladder or any light sub-

\* I boiled an egg in the shell, in the space of 20 minutes, in a hot spring near *Aix la Chapelle*; and the Inhabitants of the village assured me that they scalded their hogs, washed their dishes, &c. in the water pumped out of that hot spring, without heating it over the fire.

† Though a line of a proper length were made for this purpose, the Lead would never sink to the bottom when fixt to it; for according to the laws of Hydrostatics it would float at a certain depth.

stance is fastened. The instrument no sooner touches the bottom but the bladder is disengaged from it, which, leaving the instrument behind comes up again to the surface of the water \*; and from the space of time in which this happens, the depth of the place may be found †. The islands in the Sea may be considered as the summits of extensive huge mountains, the roots of which are covered with Water. The tops of other mountains are nearly on a level with the surface of the Water; and others again lie concealed under it. The Sea is better stocked with animals, and more fertile than the dry land; and the number of the *Genera* and *Species* of Sea-animals and vegetables is astonishingly great.

§. 76. The Sea-water is salt every where; but is so in a greater degree towards the Equator than it is towards the Poles: It is also saltier at the bottom than at the surface; however, this last circumstance is not hitherto sufficiently proved by experience, or, at least, appears not to be so general. The cause of this saltness of the Sea-water, is something difficult to investigate. The Sea-water is likewise found to be bitter as well as salt.

§. 77. In calm weather, when no wind blows, the surface of the sea is as smooth as glass; but no sooner does a breeze spring up than the Sea begins to curl, and as the gale grows stronger, Waves arise: A single wave never exceeds six feet in height: But when a great number of waves clash together and break, they rise much higher. The motion of the waves is always up and down, or perpendicular to the Horizon. The Sea is incessantly in motion from East to West; and this motion is most observable in the Torrid Zone or between the Tropics. This seems to be occasioned by the Easterly wind which constantly blows there (§. 55). There are many Currents besides this in the Sea, of which it is difficult to assign the cause. Another still more remarkable motion of the Sea is the ebbing and flowing of it, or the Tides; for it is observed on the sea-coast, that the Water rises and falls twice in 24 hours, and that every day in a regular manner. It generally flows for six hours, during which time the Water gradually rises, which is called the Flood: Then it continues at its greatest height for about a quarter of an hour, almost invariably. After this the Water falls or decreases for six hours, which is called the Ebb; and after pausing for a quarter of an hour, at low-water, the Tide begins to flow again. This motion of the Sea is not observable in every place, and is more considerable between the Tropics than in other parts of the Globe. It has been discovered by

\* One of these Instruments must be left at the bottom at every trial; but an Instrument has been invented in *England* which is not attended with the inconveniencies mentioned by the Author. This is made of cork, or some light wood, to which a stone or weight is fastened by a spring; and the latter is disengaged as soon as it touches the bottom; but the instrument comes up to, and floats on the surface.

† This is known by computing how many minutes or seconds this instrument takes in sinking and rising in a known depth, and comparing the depths according to the times.

the moderns, that the vicissitudes of Ebb and Flood are exactly regulated by the motion of the moon, and also in some measure by the position of the sun \*: Hence we are enabled to set down the time of high-water in the calendar with the same certainty that we do the celestial Phænomena. Lastly, in certain parts of the Sea, a circular motion or *Vortex* has been observed, called a Whirlpool. In describing these Whirlpools in the following sheets, I shall shew, that they are not occasioned by the Water's being absorbed in the bottom of the Sea; but that they are owing to a quite different cause, and are far from being so dangerous as is commonly imagined.

§. 78. Lastly, I shall only farther remark, that the Sea, indeed, has every where its bounds, within which it lies confined; but that from time to time it often shifts those bounds by incroaching on the land in some places, and by receding from and consequently adding to the dry land in others. To treat more fully of the Sea is not consistent with my plan; and therefore I shall here conclude the INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY.

\* The Tides are chiefly owing to the attraction of the moon; and sometimes rise higher, when the attraction of the sun acts upon the ocean in the same direction with the former, as in new moons, when both those luminaries are in conjunction: These we call *Spring Tides*. But when the Attraction of the sun acts in a different direction from that of the moon, as in the quadratures, the Tides do not rise so high; and these are termed *Neap Tides*. Those Tides are generally the greatest when the moon is nearest the *Zenith* of a place, which happens with us, when the moon is in the northern Signs, and passes our Meridian; but as she is nearest the *Nadir*, when in the southern Signs, the tides rise to the greatest height there, when the moon passes the opposite Meridian (below our Horizon) in the southern Signs.





A

N E W S Y S T E M

O F

G E O G R A P H Y:

O R, A

D E S C R I P T I O N

O F T H E

E A R T H.





A

## N E W S Y S T E M

O F

## G E O G R A P H Y.

*Of EUROPE in general.*

§. 1. **E**UROPE is situated between the 36th and 71st degree of North-Latitude, both the extreme degrees included. To the south it is bounded by the *Mediterranean*; to the west by the *Atlantic*, or *Western Ocean*, to the north by the *Northern Ocean* and *Ice-Sea*, or *Mare glaciale*, and to the east by the continent of *Asia*. Geographers are not agreed in determining the proper limits between EUROPE and *Asia*: Neither can a political boundary take Place, as the *Russian* empire extends a great way into *Asia*.

§. 2. *Bochart* is of opinion, that the name of EUROPE is of *Phœnician* original; for the *Phœnicians* called this principal division of the Earth, *Ur-appa*, 'the land of the people with fair faces', in contradistinction to the fallow and black complexion of the *Africans*. This derivation is far more probable than any of the other etymologies usually assigned to the word.

§. 3. Though EUROPE is the smallest of the principal divisions of the Earth, yet it deserves to be preferred to the other three; and *Europeans* may justly claim a peculiar pre-eminence over the rest of the inhabitants of the Globe, if we consider, 1. That EUROPE for many ages past has been the chief seat of the Arts and Sciences. 2. That with regard to military power it surpasses the other three principal parts of the World taken together.

3. That the *Europeans* have made themselves masters of the greatest part of the rest of the World, and sent thither numerous colonies. 4. That their commerce and navigation extend over the whole Terraqueous Globe, and serve, as it were, to unite together the principal parts of the Earth. 5. That the knowledge of the true GOD, and of the SAVIOUR of the World, is by their means diffused over the face of the whole Earth.

§. 4. The first inhabitants of EUROPE undoubtedly came out of *Asia*; but the history of the peopling of this quarter of the world is very dubious and obscure. Probably, the descendants of *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Japhet's* eldest sons, supplied this principal division of the Earth with its original, and the greatest part of, its inhabitants. The *Celtæ* are supposed to be the descendants of *Gomer*; and the *Scythians* of *Magog*: The European *Sarmatæ* were a branch of the latter. The *Phœnicians* also peopled several regions and countries of EUROPE by their colonies.

§. 5. The number of inhabitants in *Europe* is by some computed at 100 millions only; but by others, with greater probability, at near 150 millions. EUROPE might afford subsistence to a far greater number, if every part of it was duly cultivated.

§. 6. With respect to Religion, the inhabitants of EUROPE are, for the most part, Christians. There is also a considerable part of them who profess the Jewish, and others who are of the Mahometan religion; and lastly some who still adhere to Heathenism.

§. 7. The *European* States, considered with respect to the greatness of their extent of land in square geographical miles, are ranged in the following order.

The <i>Russian</i> Empire.	All the Territories belonging to the King of <i>Sardinia</i> .
The Kingdom of <i>Poland</i> .	The Republic of <i>Switzerland</i> .
The Kingdom of <i>Sweden</i> .	The <i>Ecclesiastical</i> State.
<i>Germany</i> .	The Dominions of the Republic of the <i>United Provinces</i> .
The Kingdom of <i>France</i> .	The Territory of the Republic of <i>Venice</i> , in the northern part of <i>Italy</i> .
<i>Turkey</i> in <i>Europe</i> .	The Great Dutchy of <i>Florence</i> .
All the Territories belonging to the House of <i>Austria</i> .	The Territory of the Republic of <i>Genoa</i> .
The <i>Spanish</i> Monarchy.	The Countries of the Infant Don <i>Philip</i> .
<i>Denmark</i> and <i>Norway</i> .	The <i>Modenese</i> Territory.
<i>Great-Britain</i> and <i>Ireland</i> .	
All the Dominions of the King of <i>Prussia</i> .	
The Kingdom of <i>Portugal</i> .	
The Kingdom of <i>Naples</i> and <i>Sicily</i> .	

*Of the S E A S, by which the Countries described in this Volume are encompassed, or separated from each other.*

I. The GERMAN OCEAN, *Mare Germanicum*, is that Sea which flows between *Great-Britain*, the *Netherlands*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*. As it lies to the north of *Holland* and *Germany*, it has been from thence called the NORTH-SEA. On account of its situation with regard to the *Baltic* or *East Sea*, it has also the name of the *West-Sea*, and on the coast of *Jutland* it is called the *Cimbrian Sea*. This Sea is observed to ebb and flow: The flux is from West to East, and the reflux from East to West. On the coast of *Norway* the tide, at high-water, commonly rises from four to six feet, and at spring-tides about eight feet: But on the coast of *England* and the *Netherlands*, where the Sea is confined in a channel, it rises much higher. The opinion that the water of this sea always appears of a bluish colour, is without foundation. It is saltier than that of the *Baltic*; insomuch that salt is found in the fissures of the rocks, into which it flows; and in some parts of *Norway* salt is extracted from the sea-water. *Wallerius* assures us, that, where but few rivers fall into the *North-Sea*, Salt constitutes a seventh, and sometimes a tenth part of the sea-water. The water of this sea is also unctuous, and in the night appears lucid like *Phosphorus*. I shall in the next place take some notice of the aquatic plants that grow in the *North-Sea*.

The *Alga*, or sea-weed is of a green, or a brown colour: It has either a narrow and flat leaf like grass, and between two and three ells long; or is narrow and round, and often near ten ells in length. Some species of it have leaves two or three inches broad growing on a short round stalk; others again have leaves four or five ells long and one broad. There are also other sorts which for brevity's sake I here omit. The *Norwegians* that live on the Sea-coast use the *Alga*, which they call *Tarre*, to manure their lands; and in the northern provinces they dry it for winter provender for their cattle. In *England* and *Scotland* the poor people who inhabit the sea-coast burn it in great quantities to a substance called *Kelp*, which they sell to those who make glass. From the *Kelp*, or ashes of the *Alga*, potash also may be extracted, and what remains after the process is a good manure. There are also other large marine plants, which we may call sea-trees; these grow at the bottom of this sea at the depth of 100 or 200 fathoms and upwards, and therefore cannot easily be drawn up entire out of the water. However, large branches are sometimes taken up, from which we may form an idea of the size of the entire plant or tree: For some are full seven inches in diameter, but others only two inches, and some still less. The *North* or *German Sea* has for several ages back been remarkable for dreadful desolating



inundations, which have generally happened either a little before, or during the winter Season, or soon after it. At such times when the sea is agitated by stormy winds, it has risen several feet above the highest dams or dykes, which, in some places, were above thirty feet high.

II. The Sea that flows between the north part of *Jutland*, the islands *Funen* and *Seeland*, and the coasts of *Sweden* and *Norway*, being properly a bay or part of the *German Ocean*, is called *Sinus Codanus* or *Gotbanus*, and *Sinus Scagenfis*, the *CATTEGAT*, and *SKAGERRAK*. The last appellation it has from the north point of *Jutland* called *Skagen*, from which a dangerous sand-bank runs a great way into the Sea. In this bay there is a noble herring-fishery. From the *Cattegat* you pass through either of the three streights, viz. the *Oresund*, or *Sound*, the *Great Belt*, and the *Little Belt* into

III. The *BALTIC*, *Mare Balticum*, called by the *Germans* and *Hollanders* the *East Sea*, which is properly a large bay, and lies between *Denmark*, *Germany*, *Prussia*, *Courland*, *Russia*, and *Sweden*. This Sea is not observed to ebb or flow: It seems, however, to discharge itself towards the *Sound*; but this current may be obstructed by a strong continued North-west wind, which may also force in a great-quantity of water from the *German Ocean*, and cause the water in the harbours of the *Baltic* to rise. When the North wind blows, the water of the *Baltic*, which is otherwise salt, becomes almost fresh, so as to be in some measure fit for domestic uses: However, it is not very salt at other times; for a great number of rivers run into it. Its greatest depth does not exceed fifty fathoms. *A. Celfus* in the *Transactions* of the *Sweedish Academy of Sciences*, T. 5. has demonstrated, that the water in the *Baltic* decreases daily; and, according to his calculation, it has sunk about 45 geometrical inches in 100 years. The waves are not so high and long in the *Baltic* as they are in the *German Ocean*, but fall shorter, quicker, and in greater numbers, after each other. The fishery in the *Baltic* is considerable, especially the herring fishery. When this sea is agitated with storms it throws on the coast of *Prussia* and *Courland*, particularly on the former, the so much celebrated *Amber*, of which more will be said in the description of *Prussia*. On the coast of *Sweden* the *Baltic* forms two bays, called in the *Swedish* language *Hafs-Botnar*. One of these runs northwards and is called the *Bothnian Gulph*, in *Latin*, *sinus Bothnicus*, and is 80 geographical miles long and 30 broad. The other runs to the East, and is called the *Gulph of Finland*, in *Latin* *Sinus Finnicus*, and is 60 geographical miles long and 15 broad. In several places in this gulph the variation of the magnetic needle is very extraordinary. In one place particularly it points between the South-West and West, and in another part it points to the North-West. Lastly, the *Baltic* forms a bay near *Livonia*, which is called the gulph of *Livonia* or *Riga*.

IV. Farther towards the North lies the *NORTHERN OCEAN*, *Oceanus septentrionalis*, which abounds with a surprising quantity of fish both of the large

large and small species; and about the beginning of *June* the herrings come in prodigious shoals from the *Northern* into the *German Ocean*. A great quantity of floating wood is also found in this Sea. The *White Sea*, called in the *Russian* language *Bieloe More*, is a bay of the *Northern Ocean* near *Archangel*. From *Novaja Semlia*, or *Nova Zembla*, to the point of land called *Tschuketschoi Nofs*, the *Northern Ocean* is called the *Ice Sea* or *Frozen Sea*, in which there is ice almost all the year round. This sea is frozen at furthest by the beginning of *October*, and generally before that time: It commonly thaws about the middle of *June*. In the *Ice-Sea*, as well as in the rivers that disembogue themselves into it, a flux and reflux are perceptible, but not a great way above the mouths of the rivers. There are many traces remaining which shew that the *Ice-Sea* formerly extended much farther south than it does at present; so that hence it is no wonder, we find at a distance from the *Ice-Sea* the remains of sea-animals buried in the earth. No person has hitherto sailed farther in this Sea than to the 80th degree of North Latitude.

After the many fruitless attempts made by the *Hollanders*, about the close of the sixteenth century, to find a passage through the *Ice-sea* into the *Eastern Ocean*, and from thence to the *East Indies*, the Czar *Peter the Great* attempted the passage once more. He sent out two ships from *Archangel*, which entered the *Frozen Sea* through the *White Sea* and *Northern Ocean*, one of which, on account of the large flakes of ice it met with, could not proceed a great way to sea, but stuck in the ice; and the other was never after heard of, so that probably it sunk to the bottom among the ice. The Czarina *Anne* caused this passage to be attempted anew. For this purpose she ordered two ships to sail from *Archangel* along the coast of the *Frozen-Sea* to the mouth of the river *Ob*, and another ship to sail from *Tobolsk*, out of the *Irtisch* and *Ob*, along the sea-coast, as far as the *Jenisei*. Lastly, two other small vessels had orders to sail down the *Lena* into the *Ice-Sea*; one of which was to steer westward to the mouth of the *Jenisei*, and the other eastward, along the coast of the *Ice-sea*, and to sail from thence by the mouths of the rivers *Jana*, *Indigirka* and *Kolyma* quite into the Ocean, and so to *Kamtschatka*. These several voyages were undertaken in the year 1735; but only the last mentioned expedition in any measure succeeded. For Lieutenant *Owzin* advanced with the small vessels as far as the *Kolyma*, and proceeded from thence, partly by land, and partly by sea, quite to *Anadirskoi Ostrog*, surveyed the whole coast so far, and ended his voyage in 1740.

In these attempts there appears to have been a great oversight committed, *First*, by not sailing early enough in the Season; and, *secondly*, by their keeping too near the shore; for there is a greater quantity of ice, and the cold is more severe near the coast than farther North towards the Pole, where perhaps there is little or no ice, and the cold is less piercing than towards the land. *Gerhard de Veer* assures us, that he did not perceive the air near so  
cold



cold in the 80th degree of North Latitude as it was in  $76^{\circ}$  near *Novaja Semlia*. He farther adds that in  $80^{\circ}$  North Latitude he saw green trees, fine grafs, and feveral animals, as roes, hinds, &c. in the month of *June*; whereas he observed neither animals nor vegetables in Latitude  $76^{\circ}$  even in *August*. This tract of land which he saw was probably a part of *Spitzberg*.

In the archives of *Jakutzka* accounts have been found, which inform us that, towards the clofe of the laft century, voyages were made almoft every year from the mouth of the *Lena* to *Kolyma*, in fmall veffels, by illiterate people who were quite ignorant of navigation. One in particular proceeded in a fmall boat, not much bigger than a canoe, along the coaft of *Kolyma* by the *Tſchuketſkoi Noſs* or point, quite to *Kamſchatka*. Nay the *Hollanders*, who are employed in the whale-fiſhery, have taken whales in the *Northern Ocean* with *Japanese* harpoons ſtuck in their bodies.

Laftly, it is obfervable, that in the *Ice-Sea*, the coaft is covered with a great quantity of wood which floats thither from fome other parts, though no woods are to be ſeen growing for thirty geographical miles up the country. In many places on that coaft large high piles of ſuch float-wood, conſiſting of larch and fir-trees, are to be met with. Perhaps this wood floated thither from thoſe parts which *de Veer* ſaw, as mentioned above, or, poſſibly, from more diſtant regions near the North Pole.

V. The EASTERN OCEAN, *Mare orientale*, joins the *Ice-Sea*, and divides *Aſia* from *America*: It is called by the *Ruſſians* *Tiſkoe More*.

VI. The ſea of *Kamſchatka* derives its name from the peninſula of *Kamſchatka*, for it flows between it and the continent or country called *Ochotſkoi*, and joins with the *Eastern Ocean* of which it may be looked upon as a large bay. Towards the north it runs a great way into the land and forms the gulf of *Penſchinska*, ſo called from the river *Penſchina*, which difembogues itſelf into it. This Sea is very boiſterous and often agitated with ſtorms. It appears by experiments tried with the Barometer that it ſtands higher, with reſpect to the centre of the Earth, than the *Ocean*, the *Mediterranean*, or *Caspian ſea*. The ſurface of the water is alſo higher at the fort *Bolſcheretzkoi*, than at the harbour of *Ochotſkoi*.

VII. The CASPIAN SEA, *Mare Caſpium*, or *Mare Hyrcanum*, called by the *Persians* *Koſſum*, by the *Turks* *Babri Gaſe*, by the *Ruſſians* *Chwalinſkoi More*; but from the adjoining provinces it is denominated the Sea of *Georgia*, *Tabriſtan*, *Gbilan*, *Dilem* and *Baku*. It is entirely encompassed with land, and extends 150 geographical miles in length from North to South, and between 60 and 70 in breadth from Eaſt to Weſt. Some are of opinion, that the *Caspian Sea* about the middle is almoſt unfathomable; but others affirm that the depth of it does not exceed 70 fathoms in any part. The bottom is not rocky, being rather a kind of quickſand, with feveral ſhoals interſperſed in different parts, eſpecially on the North-Weſt ſide of it. Over againſt *Xilan*, a province of *Persia*, two large whirlpools have been obſerved



D E N M A R K.

Vol. I.

K

A N



A N

## I N T R O D U C T I O N

T O T H E

## D E S C R I P T I O N O F D E N M A R K .

§. 1. **A** *Andrew Bureæus de Boo*, principal architect to the King of *Sweden*, was the first who delineated an accurate map of the Northern Kingdoms. His map was, indeed, properly designed for *Sweden* only; but, at the same time, it comprises all the Northern countries, and is the original from which all the maps of *Scandinavia*, which have been since published, are copied. Those by *Herman Moll*, *Homann*, and *Witten* claim the preference among the latter.

§. 2. *Christian IV.* caused a map of *Denmark* to be drawn by *John Meyern*, which is the ground-work of all the new maps of that Kingdom; only the latter have received some few alterations and additions. Those published by *Homann* are the most common and useful maps of *Denmark*. In *Pontoppidan's Theatrum Daniæ* there is also a map; which, for geographical accuracy, claims, indeed, the preference to, but is not so beautiful engraved as some other maps of that country. We could wish, however, that a speedy improvement were made in the maps of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

§. 3. Among the many etymologies assigned to the name of *Denmark* by different historians, there are but two which deserve our notice. Some derive it from that of an ancient king called *Dan*, and alledge, that *Denmark* denotes the *field* or *land* of king *Dan*. But it is uncertain whether ever any such king existed; unless *Dan Mikillati*, *i. e.* 'The haughty,' who is mentioned by the historians of *Iceland*, and placed in the year of Christ 146, be the person they mean. Others pretend, that the river *Eider*, which separates this kingdom from the Empire of *Germany*, was formerly called *Don*, *Dana*, or *Dena*; and that all the country now called *Jutland*, which was inhabited by the ancient *Danes*, was, from that river, called *Dania*, or *Denmark*, which name was also applied to the conquered islands. The con-



tures of *Eckhardt* and *Goldast* on this head may be seen in *M. Von Westphalen's Monumenta inedita*, T. 1. p. 878, & seq.

§. 4. *Denmark* lies exactly to the North of *Germany*, and is separated from it by the *Leven* and the *Eider*. The latter has, from time immemorial, been acknowledged to be the boundary between *Denmark* and *Germany*; which occasioned the following Pentameter verse to be cut on the *Holsteingate* at *Rendsburg*, which stands close by the *Eider*.

*Eydra Romani terminus imperij.*

To the west *Denmark* is washed by the *North Sea* or *German Ocean*; to the north it has the *sinus Codanus*, otherwise called the *Cattegat*, or *Schagerack*; and to the east it is bounded by the *Baltic* or *East Sea*. Between the continent and the islands *Funen* and *Seeland*, are the famous Straits, called the *Little Belt*, the *Great Belt*, and the *Oeresund* or *Sound* which divides *Denmark* from *Sweden*. The *Sound* is about 1331 fathoms, or half a geographical mile, broad at *Helsingoer*, and is the common passage out of the *North Sea* into the *Baltic*. This, as well as the other two Straits mentioned above, is reckoned part of the king of *Denmark's* dominions; and consequently all ships that pass that way are obliged to pay a toll, according to the value of the cargoes they are laden with, of which we shall say more in §. 20.

§. 5. *Denmark*, properly so called, consists of two large, and several small islands, together with the peninsula of *Jutland*. The kingdom of *Norway*, with the islands *Faroe*, *Iceland* and *Greenland*, one half of the Dutchy of *Holstein*, with the counties of *Oldenburg* and *Dalmenborst* in *Germany*, the town of *Tranquebar*, with its territory, and the islands of *Nicobar* on the coast of *Coromandel* in *Asia*, the citadel of *Christiansburg* on the coast of *Guinea* in *Africa*, and the islands of *St. Thomas* and *St. John*, with some of the *Caribbe* islands, and *St. Croix* are also subject to the King of *Denmark*.

We are here only to consider his *Danish* majesty's northern dominions; but as for those in *Germany*, and other parts of the world, they will be described in their proper places.

§. 6. The extent of the whole kingdom of *Denmark* cannot be exactly determined, because its parts are not contiguous to each other; but that of every part singly will be hereafter specified under their proper heads. The air in *North Jutland* is pretty cold and piercing. On the east side, in *South Jutland*, and in the islands *Funen* and *Seeland* it is milder and more temperate; but in the low marshy part, and in the isle of *Laaland*, the air is thick, moist, and unhealthy. The shifting of the winds, indeed, renders the weather somewhat variable, but, at the same time, purges the air of fogs and vapours. The west wind is the most violent, and very frequently blows

in

in these parts. *Denmark* lies mostly low and on a level, and, excepting the tract of land about the middle of *Jutland*, is very fertile; so that the country maintains its inhabitants in plenty, and yields a rich provision of every thing necessary for the support of human life. It can better dispense with its horned cattle and horses than with the corn, for exportation. The sea-coasts, lakes, ponds, rivers, and brooks in this country yield abundance of fish. *Denmark* produces no wine, metals, or salt, the small quantity of salt which is made in *Jutland* being very inconsiderable. Most of the provinces are supplied with a sufficient quantity of wood to answer their necessary occasions; however, the *Danes* burn a great deal of turf.

§. 7. *Denmark* is pretty well peopled: But some are of opinion, that the number of inhabitants in this kingdom was formerly more considerable than it is at present. The *Danes* are divided into *Nobles*, *Burghers*, and *Peasants*; and the Noblesse is distinguished by the appellations of the *higher* and *lower* Nobility. There never were any Princes or Dukes, besides the King's Sons, in *Denmark*, excepting only one nobleman, namely, *Knut Pors*, who was created Duke of *Holland* by *Christopher II.* So that in the rank of *higher* Nobles are included only Counts and Barons, which titles were introduced into *Denmark* by *Christian V.* who first created them on *May 25, 1671.* The privileges of Counts are specified in an ordinance of the year 1688. They have the right of primogeniture. Their younger sons and daughters are stiled Barons and Baronesse, and enjoy the privileges annexed to that rank. In their Counties they have the right of patronage, and of appointing a judge and secretary, from whose sentence there lies no appeal, but only to the Supreme Court of judicature. They pay no contributions or tithes for their estates in chief, and are allowed 300 acres of land, over and above, free from all impositions. All suits carried on against them must commence in the Supreme Judicatory. They bear a coronet over their coat of arms. The reader may see the other privileges belonging to the *Danish* Nobility in *Holberg's* political history of *Denmark* and *Norway*, p. 272, & seq. The rights and privileges of the Barons in *Denmark* is much the same with those of the Counts. The principal difference is, that the Baron's enjoy only 100 acres of land free from tithes and contributions, and are something inferior to Counts in rank and title. No person is made a feudal Count or Baron, who is not able to purchase so much land, as may be erected into a feudal County or Barony: But this qualification is not necessary for other Counts and Barons. The privileges of the *lower* Nobility are, that in matters of life and honour, they must be cited before the King's supreme Court, unless they have a post in the militia by land or by sea; and then this exception only extends to the superior officers. Those who have equal privileges, and rank with the Nobility, also enjoy this prerogative. No inferior judge can execute a sentence passed upon any of these; for that must be done only by the judge of the province, or his commissary:

fary: Hence it is that an appeal from the sentence of the inferior judge may be lodged in the court of the province. A lord of a manor, who, besides the produce of his manor, together with the mills and tithes, has 200 acres of land in farm estate, lying within two miles of his manor, is free from contribution. Lords of a manor have also the privilege of hunting and fishing; that of appointing a judge and secretary; the strand-right, or right of *trover*, if the proprietor of the goods found does not make his claim in one year and six weeks; and the right of patronage or presentation to their own churches. But these, as well as other privileges belonging to those who are possessed of manors, are seldom enjoyed by them unless they are Gentlemen, or upon a footing with that rank. If a person has a manor, which, together with the estate subject to it, amounts to 400 acres of land, he may set up as head of a family, provided he is qualified in every other respect. The Nobles that are properly *Danish*, that is, such as have been born and enobled in *Denmark*, are, in comparison to other kingdoms, not very numerous: And therefore we may affirm in general, that the Noblemen in this country are, at present, for the most part of foreign extraction. Formerly the *Danish* Nobility, who were such strictly speaking, enjoyed extraordinary privileges, and in the reign of *Frederic III.* their power rose to the highest pitch: But in the same reign, after the monarchy became absolute, it fell so low, that they had nothing left but the privileges mentioned above; and these were only granted to them out of royal grace. The Nobility of *Sleswick* have the same rights and privileges as those of *Holstein*.

I have nothing particular to observe with regard to the Burghers. They here enjoy greater or less privileges, according to the cities of which they are members, and their own deserts. However, the *Burghers* of *Copenhagen* enjoy the pre-eminence above the rest: For on the 10th of *August*, 1658, they obtained very extraordinary and extensive privileges, which were confirmed to them, and considerably enlarged, in the year 1661. The *Danish* Peasants are of different classes. Some of them are possessed of a spot of land as their own property, for which they make the lord of the manor only some inconsiderable acknowledgment; otherwise they are free from all imposts and exactions, excepting the general contribution. In the *Danish* language, these are called *Selveyerbonder*, *i. e.* land-owners. Others have only a farm for which they pay a certain rent, and are termed in *Danish*, *Fastebonder*. These pay yearly to the proprietors of their farm the rent agreed upon in money, cattle, or corn, and do inferior services at the manor of their lord. There are others who are Servants to these two classes of Peasants. Slavery, or the state of servitude was entirely abolished in *Denmark* in the year 1702, by *Frederic IV.* and is continued only in some parts of the Dutchy of *Sleswick*.



§. 8. The *Danish* language is only a dialect of the *Swedish* and *Norwegian*; and the inhabitants of these three northern kingdoms understand each other's language, excepting some few words and phrases. The modern *Danish* is a mixture of the ancient *Gothic*, *Frisian*, and *German* languages. With regard to the pronunciation, it has a great affinity with the *English*, with which it has many words in common, and is well adapted for poetry.

§. 9. In the times of Heathenism the *Danes* paid religious worship chiefly to the Gods *Freyer*, *Tbor*, *Tbyr*, *Odin*, and *Freya*; and four days in the week still retain the names of the four last mentioned, in the *Danish* language. *Odin* was the chief of these deities. In the middle ages several attempts were made, at different times, to convert the *Danes* to Christianity. In the year 822, *Ebbo*, bishop of *Rheims*, preached the Gospel in *Denmark*. King *Harald Klag*, who fled for refuge to the emperor *Lewis*, consented to be baptized, and was attended back to his kingdom by several monks. These monks founded churches in several places in *Denmark*, particularly at *Haddebye* in the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, where the very first *Danish* church was erected, which was committed to the care of the Bishop *Ansgarius*. But the succeeding kings proved inveterate enemies to the Christians, and persecuted the new converts among the *Danes* in the most cruel manner; however, after various vicissitudes of fortune they obtained at length a free and uninterrupted toleration, about the year 1000, from King *Sueno*. When *Luther* began to restore in *Germany* the doctrine of the Gospel in its genuine purity, it was favourably received in *Denmark* by *Christian II.* where it still gained more ground under *Frederic I.* In the reign of *Christian III.* it was made the established religion at the Diet held at *Copenhagen* in 1537; and a new body of ecclesiastical laws was drawn up by *John Bugenhagen*, who also made several other good regulations. Hence it appears that the *Evangelical* or *Lutheran* religion is the prevailing doctrine in this kingdom. Other religious sects, *viz.* the *Calvinists*, the *Roman-catholics*, and *Jews* enjoy the free exercise of their religion in *Copenhagen*, *Fredericia*, and *Frederickstadt*. *Arminians*, *Menmonites*, and *Quakers* are also tolerated at *Frederickstadt*; and on the island of *Nordstrand* the *Roman-catholics*, enjoy the public exercise of their religion. By the laudable endeavours of the Kings of *Denmark* the light of the Gospel has likewise been displayed with good success in *Finmark*, *Greenland*, and among the *Malabarians* on the coast of *Coramandel*; and in 1714 a Society was instituted for this purpose, which is entitled, *Collegium de cursu Evangelii promovendo*.

Those who have the chief ecclesiastical jurisdiction in the kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway* are the Bishops; of which there are six in *Denmark*, four in *Norway*, and two in *Iceland*. Two Bishops, namely, those of *Seeland*, and *Christiania* have the precedency of all the rest. The former is also third Professor of Divinity in the University of *Copenhagen*, and consequently

quently is obliged to reside in that city. The title of Archbishop is abolished in *Denmark*; and *Sleswick* and *Holstein* are under a general *Superintendent*. In former times the power of the Bishops was very considerable in *Denmark*; for with the other principal prelates they formed the third State of the Kingdom: But at this day they enjoy no other power, but what the general *Superintendents* in *Germany* are invested with, being only stiled *Superintendents* in law. The Bishops are always appointed by the King. They visit the churches and schools in their respective dioceses or *Superintendencies*, (which they are obliged to do once in three years;) examine, and ordain new preachers; and, together with their Provosts, at stated times, hold provincial synods, where they preside in conjunction with the Governour of the Diocese or province. Their revenue arises from lands, tithes, and the *Cathedraticum*, as it is called, or a small sum which they receive from every church in the diocese. In every cathedral there is a small college consisting of four or five canons, who enjoy certain lands, tithes, &c. They meet twice a year in the chapter-house, in order to sit as judges on matrimonial and other causes, which were formerly decided by the Canon law. Their court, in which the Governour of the Diocese presides, is called the *Tamperrecht*, and the days of their meeting, *Tampertage*. There was formerly a divinity Lecturer, who read public lectures weekly in every cathedral; but these were, in time, laid aside. Next to the Bishops are the *Provosts*; and of these there are 160 in the whole Kingdom. They annually visit the preachers and schoolmasters within their jurisdiction; decide disputes between the preachers and the vestries or parishes, when they are cognizable by the ecclesiastical law; and appear at the provincial synod twice a year. The Provosts have a Rix-dollar \* yearly from every church in their jurisdiction, and in their visitations are entertained *gratis*. Next to these are the *Preachers*, whose assistants are called *Chaplains*. The revenues of the *Danish* clergy, which arise partly from tithes, and partly from the liberality of their respective flocks, are more considerable, perhaps, than in any other country. Confession-money is, indeed, abolished in *Denmark*; but, in lieu of it, the Preachers enjoy the offerings, which their congregations make at *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Whitsuntide*. A Preacher's widow in *Denmark* receives half the benefit of the first year, and the eighth part of the income every year after, from the successor of her deceased husband. In the principal town of every diocese there is also a widow's box, in which every Preacher puts a certain sum; and his widow, if she survives him, enjoys an annuity, in proportion to what he has contributed.

§. 10. The number of learned men in *Denmark* is as considerable as in any other country in *Europe*, of the same extent, and where the sciences are in a flourishing state. There is scarce any branch of Literature, in which men of genius in this kingdom have not acquitted themselves with honour.

\* 4s. 6d. Sterling.

Besides the University at *Copenhagen*, which consists of four colleges, the Academy at *Soroe*, and the *Gymnasium* or Seminary at *Odense*, there are several schools well endowed in country-towns, where the masters are not only liberally provided for, but also the scholars are instructed, and partly maintained *gratis*. By virtue of an Ordinance made by *Christian VI.* in the year 1739, there were six public Grammar-schools ordered to be erected in the Diocese of *Sceland*, besides those at *Friedericksburg* and *Herluffsholm*; namely, one at *Copenhagen*, another at *Roschild*, a third at *Slagelse*, a fourth at *Helsingoer*, a fifth at *Kioge* and *Wordinborg*, and a sixth at *Ronne*, on the island of *Bornholm*. In the Diocese of *Funen*, schools were founded at *Odense* and *Nyborg*, at *Naskow* on the island of *Laaland*, and at *Nykiching* on the island of *Falster*. In *North-Jutland* eight schools were erected in the following places, *viz.* in the Diocese of *Ripen*, at *Ripen*, *Friedericia*, and *Kolding*; in the Diocese of *Aarhuus*, at *Aarhuus*, *Randers*, and *Horsens*; in the Diocese of *Wiburg*, at *Wiburg*; in the Diocese of *Aalburg*, at *Aalburg*. In *Norway*, only one school is founded in every Diocese, namely at *Christiania*, *Christiansand*, *Bergen*, and *Drontheim*. In *Iceland* there are two, and in the Dutchy of *Sleswick* eleven Grammar-schools. In 1742, a royal Academy of Sciences was instituted at *Copenhagen*, with a Royal Society, for the improvement of the Northern History and Languages. Societies for the improvement of the useful arts and manufactures, and of the several branches of Physic, and, in 1736, the *Theatrum anatomico-chirurgicum*, and several libraries were erected. There is also an Academy for Painting, Sculpture, and Architecture at *Copenhagen*, and the polite arts are in high esteem there.

§. 11. In the last century there were scarce any manufactures carried on in *Denmark*; for they were first introduced by *Frederic IV.* and *Christian VI.* and may possibly, in time, be farther improved. There are artists of extraordinary skill at *Copenhagen*; and, at present, every branch of the mechanic arts is well executed in *Denmark*. Gold and silver lace, silk stuffs, and velvets, cloths, cotton and woollen stuffs, stockings, tapestry, hats, bastard and genuine porcelain, and fire-arms are also manufactured in this Kingdom. Here are, besides, paper and copper-mills, different sorts of iron-wares made, one silk and two cotton printing-houses, with manufactories of soap, steel, starch, glue, lacker, tobacco, sugar, &c. The lace of *Tondern*, and the gloves of *Randers* and *Odense* are well known to be excellent in their kind. No foreign manufactures are allowed to be imported into *Denmark*; and, since the year 1736, the wearing of jewels, gold and silver stuffs, and foreign lace, has been also prohibited. In 1738, a general warehouse or magazine was opened at the Exchange in *Copenhagen*, to which manufacturers bring all the wares which they cannot dispose of in other towns, and are paid ready money for them; and from this warehouse the goods are delivered out on credit to retailers.



§. 12. *Denmark* enjoys the most commodious situation for navigation and commerce, and might be made the centre of the important trade of the North, and in particular that carried on in the *Baltic*, if a staple was established at *Copenhagen*. Formerly all the commerce to *Denmark* was carried on by the *Hanse-towns*, which were afterwards supplanted by the *Dutch* and *English*; but for the most part by the former. In the reign of *Christian III.* the *Danes* began to carry on their own trade, which was encouraged by *Christian IV.* and in the reign of *Christian V.* was carried on in their own bottoms. But *Frederic IV.* may be called the real founder of the *Danish* commerce; which *Christian VI.* powerfully supported, and *Frederic V.* by his royal munificence and bounty endeavoured to carry to the utmost pitch. The strict and constant application of the *Danes*, at this day, to navigation and commerce appears, partly by the great number of ships, which yearly pass through the *Sound* (those of the year 1752 amounting to 850 sail,) and partly from the several opulent Companies, which have been, from time to time, established at *Copenhagen*, every one of which has its own president, directors, and other officers.

The principal among these is the Royal *Asiatic* Company, first erected with his *Danish* Majesty's approbation in 1616, confirmed by a royal charter in 1698, which was renewed, with proper regulations, in 1732 and 1744. This Company trades to *Tranquebar*, on the coast of *Coromandel*, where they have a governor, and to *Canton* in *China*; and carry on their commerce almost entirely with current specie or bullion. In return they have chints, cottons of all sorts, muslins, pepper, salt-petre, tea, with other *Bengal* and *China* wares. For these commodities they receive considerable sums of money, to refund the specie carried out of *Denmark*, from foreigners; who take them off their hands, particularly great quantities of tea: Besides, they supply their own Country with all these merchandises. This Company sends two ships every year to *Canton*, which return richly laden, and two or three more to *Tranquebar*. Their *Actions*, or stock, being in high credit, is an evident proof of their flourishing state. In 1755, an addition of 300,000 Rix-dollars \* was made to their fund or capital.

The *West-India* and *Guinea* Company, formerly established by charter, was dissolved in 1754, and the trade to *America* laid open to all adventurers who are natives of *Denmark*, *Norway*, or *Sleswick*; and the monopoly of sugar is no longer in being. In the year 1755, the king established an *African* Company, with a capital of 500 *Actions*, every *Action* consisting of 500 Rix-dollars, which are divided between thirteen adventurers.

The *General Trading* Company, established by a royal charter, was instituted with a design to carry on such branches of trade, as no private adventurers are able to undertake, and, at the same time, to serve as a sort of

\* A *Danish* Rix-dollar is 4 s. 6 d. sterling.

Academy for young merchants. This company was incorporated in 1747, and enjoys considerable privileges. Its *Actions* are 1000, each of which consists of 500 Rix-dollars; but of this sum only 300 Rix-dollars are paid down; so that their fund amounts to 300,000 Rix-dollars. The remaining 200 Rix-dollars of every *Action*, may be demanded on any emergency. This Company trades to *Spain*, *France*, the *Mediterranean*, the *Baltic*, and also to *Greenland*, by sending ships to the Whale-fishery.

The *Iceland* and *Finmark* Company, established by a royal charter, have monopolized the trade to *Iceland* and *Finmark*, for a term of years which is to expire in 1771, and obtained their last charter in 1746. I shall take notice of the commodities sent to *Iceland*, and imported from thence in return, in my description of that country.

Besides these trading Companies, other *Danish* adventurers trade to different ports of *Europe*. The imports always exceed the exports in *Denmark*: But in the kingdom of *Norway* it is quite the reverse.

The *Assignment-Exchange* or *Loan-Bank*, at *Copenhagen*, was erected *October* 29, 1736. The Bank-notes are drawn for 100, 50, or 10 Rix-dollars, and pass in all the king's dominions, and the public offices belonging to the crown, as current specie. Great, or small sums, but not under 100 Rix-dollars, are lent out of this Bank, on depositing a sufficient pledge, at four *per cent*. The capital Stock is 500,000 Rix-dollars; and though their circulating notes amount to much more, they are in very good credit, as appears by the high price of the Company's *Actions*.

There is also in *Copenhagen* an office of Insurance for ships at sea, established by charter. The number of ships that come annually into the port of *Copenhagen* is very considerable; for it appears that above 3000 ships and smaller vessels, laden with all sorts of merchandises, especially provisions, timber, and materials for building, were entered at the Custom-house in the year 1752.

§. 13. The right of coinage has been entirely vested in the Crown since the reign of *Frederick III*. The current coins in *Denmark* are,

A *Fyrk* of copper, two of which make a *schilling*; and two of the latter are equal to one *schilling lub*, or a *stiver*.

A *Dutgen*, which is equal to three *stivers*, or six *skillings Danish*.

A *Mark Danish*, which is equal to 16 *skillings*, or half a *Mark lub*.

A *Half-crown*, which is also called one mark-piece, is two marks *Danish*, or one *Mark lub*.

A *Crown*, equal to two half-crowns. There are also double crowns in *Denmark*. *Rix-dollars* and *Ducats* pass at the usual value, excepting the new current *Ducats*, which scarce make two *Rix-dollars*, and commonly do not exceed 11 *Marks*. Five *Danish* Rix-dollars \* (but according to the

\* A Rix-dollar *Danish*, according to *Paraire's* Table, is equal to 4*s*. 6*d*. so that they generally amount to more than a pound sterling.

course of Exchange, sometimes more, sometimes less) are equal to one pound sterling. As to the intrinsic value of the silver coin, from 1 mark, which is 8 ounces of pure Silver, 34 current *marks lub* are coined.

§. 14. The Post-office was put on its present regular footing in *Denmark* by *Frederick III.* In all towns the couriers for letters go out and come in twice a week. As for the weekly travelling post carriages, one takes its route from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Falster*, and *Laaland* to the town of *Naskow*; and the other, from *Copenhagen* through *Seeland*, *Funen*, *Sleswick* and *Holstein* to *Hamburg*. A new travelling post carriage was set up in *Jutland* in the year 1753, which goes from *Hadersleben* to *Aalborg* once in a fortnight. In every town in *Denmark* a person may have a carriage for himself at a reasonable fixed rate. The roads are measured all over the kingdom, and at every quarter of a *Danish* mile the ground is a little raised, and a stone erected on it.

§. 15. We cannot pretend to ascertain, who were the first inhabitants of these northern parts of *Europe*. That the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, in the time of the ancient *Romans*, inhabited the present *Jutland* and Dutchy of *Sleswick*, may be easily demonstrated. As for the other islands, and their forms of government, we have none, or but very obscure and uncertain accounts. However, it is probable that *Denmark* was divided between several petty sovereigns; that king *Worm*, and *Godfrey the Great* who in the days of *Charlemagne* considerably enlarged his dominions, were only Lords of *Jutland*; and that the tyrannical power of such ambitious princes compelled others to seek for new habitations. This gave occasion to those extraordinary expeditions of the *Normans* into *Neustria*, *England*, *Italy*, and *Sicily*. These conquests paved the way for *Sueno the Great* to the *English* throne in the eleventh century, which, together with the kingdom of *Norway*, his successors afterwards lost. The succeeding ages were no less infested with commotions, wars, and assassinations even of kings and princes; till at length *Margaret* daughter of *Waldemar III.* by her marriage obtained the kingdom of *Norway*, and by her prowess conquered *Sweden*, about the close of the 14th century; and united the three Northern kingdoms by the Union of *Calmar*, in the year 1397. Her descendants, however, enjoyed this happiness but for a short time. For, notwithstanding this Union was confirmed by *Erich* of *Pomerania* in the year of Christ 1436, yet he was afterwards deposed; and *Christopher* of *Bavaria* died in 1448 without heirs. The latter was succeeded by *Christian*, Count of *Oldenburg*, who had the Dutchy of *Holstein* by hereditary right, and mounted the throne in 1449. *John*, his son and successor, first dismembered the Dutchies of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, and *Christian II.* the son of *John*, lost both his crown and liberty; and *Sweden* entirely shook off the *Danish* yoke. *Frederick I. Christian* the second's uncle by the father's side, began the Reformation, which *Christian III.* who obtained the crown by election, completed. The latter united *Norway*



to the kingdom of *Denmark*, and dismembered *Sleswick* and *Holstein* from the latter a second time. *Frederick* II. in concert with the Duke of *Holstein*, conquered *Ditmarsch*, rendered his kingdom and family very powerful by the treaties of *Roschild* and *Stettin*; and obtained of the Emperor *Maximilian* II. the reversion of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenborst*. This monarch's son, the brave *Christian* IV. indeed, extended his dominions in the *East Indies*; but was unsuccessful in a thirty years war. *Frederick* III. his son and successor, on account of the factions and growing power of the nobility, was very unfortunate in his war with the *Swedes*; but, in 1660, beyond the expectation of all, he became an absolute hereditary Monarch. *Christian* V. after a tedious dispute, obtained the Counties of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenborst* by a convention; and he, as well as his son *Frederick* IV. contended a long time with the Ducal house of *Holstein*, and waged war with *Sweden*, by which means at length *Sleswick* was again united to the *Danish* crown. After these troubles *Denmark* enjoyed a series of peaceable and happy times under *Christian* VI. which are still continued in the reign of *Frederick* V. the august Monarch who now sits on the throne of this Kingdom.

§. 16. His *Danish* majesty's title at full length is as follows: ' *Frederick* V. by the grace of God, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, of the *Vandals* and *Goths*, Duke of *Sleswick*, *Holstein*, *Stormarn*, and *Ditmarsch*, Count of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenborst*.'

The royal Arms are parted by the *Danebrog*-crosses into 4 principal quarters. In the 1. *Or*, three lions passant gardant *azure*, surrounded with nine hearts *gules*, for *Denmark*. In the 2. *Gules*, a lion rampant crowned *or*, holding a *Danish* battle-ax *argent*, for *Norway*. In the 3. *Azure*, three crowns *or* 2 and 1, for *Sweden*. In the 4. *Or*, a lion leopardized *azure*, with nine hearts *gules*, for ancient *Gothland*. The inescutcheon quarterly, in the 1. *Or*, two lions passant *azure*, for the Dutchy of *Sleswick*. In the 2. *Gules*, three nettle leaves *argent* pierced with three nails of the cross; these leaves are charged with a small escutcheon *argent*, for the Dutchy of *Holstein*. In the 3. *Gules*, a cygnet *argent* gorged with a crown *or*, for *Stormarn*. In the 4. *Gules*, a cavalier armed *argent*, holding a sword, pommelled *or*, for *Ditmarsch*. Upon all an inescutcheon in the centre party per pale *or*, two bars *gules*, for *Delmenborst*; and *azure*, a cross pattee *or*, for *Futland*. The supporters are two savages armed with clubs.

§. 17. The principal order of knighthood in *Denmark* is that of the *Elephant*, or the blue ribband, which is supposed to derive its origin from *Canut* VI. in the 12th century. Its ensign or badge is a white enamelled Elephant appendant to a blue ribband, worn over the left shoulder to the right side. On the left breast these knights wear a silver star of eight rays, with the *Danebrog*-cross in the middle of it. The second order of knighthood in this kingdom is the *Danebrog* order, or the white ribband, which was first instituted by *Waldemar* II. The badge of this order is a cross of gold, enamelled

melled and set with eleven diamonds. This hangs at a watered white ribband with a red border, which is worn over the right shoulder to the left side. On the right breast these knights wear a silver star of eight rays, in which a cross is to be seen, with the word *Restitutor* thus divided, RE-STI-TV-TOR, and the name of *Christian V.* in the middle. Both these orders were revived by *Christian V.* and have their particular statutes, collars, and motto's.

§. 18. Whether *Denmark* was anciently an elective or hereditary kingdom, is a disputable point; some historians maintaining the former, and others affirming the latter. Though we should allow that the *Danish* crown was not hereditary, it is, however, certain, that the States did commonly make their choice out of the royal family; and that they also sometimes departed from that custom. The kings of the *Oldenburg* branch were elected by the States, till the reign of *Frederick III.* who made the crown hereditary in the male and female line of the royal family in 1660, and, by the free consent of the whole nation rendered *Denmark* quite an absolute monarchy. Upon this, the fundamental laws of the kingdom were abolished; and the Regal Law, subscribed by that monarch on *November 14,* 1665, and published by *Frederick IV.* on *September 4,* 1709, was established in their place. This was called *Lex Regia*, because *Frederick III.* prescribed it as the standing rule for his successors on the throne of *Denmark*, which they were inviolably to observe. To this, indeed, he had a right, as being the founder of absolute monarchy in this kingdom. The order of succession is so clearly pointed out and determined in these Institutes, that it is not more exactly regulated in any kingdom in the world. The king of *Denmark* is invested with an absolute power in his kingdoms; acknowledges no superior, either in spirituals or temporals, but God; and is not accountable to his subjects for his conduct\*. The anointing or inauguration, in *Denmark*, is now no more than a religious ceremony.

§. 19. The *Supreme College* was instituted in 1676, and is the privy council, or council of state. It consists at present of four members; and the king himself is President. There is no Great Chancellor at this time. Under the *Supreme College* there are two Chanceries, namely,

1. The *Danish* Chancery, which was instituted on its present footing in 1660, and consists of a Protonotary, a Master of Requests, several other Secretaries one of which is a feudal Secretary, two Chancery Solicitors, Notaries, Registers, &c. In this Chancery all petitions for places in the Courts of judicature in *Denmark* and *Norway*, as also for ecclesiastic and civil employments,

\* The *Danes* have no great reason to revere the memory of *Frederick III.* who acquired absolute power at the Expence of his subjects Liberty, though the Author here speaks of this fatal change in their form of Government, and of the happy times that succeeded it, in too favourable terms.

&c. are presented. The Protonotary together with the principal Secretaries, and two other persons, as assistants, constitute a Chancery-College.

2. The *German Chancery*, which was instituted in 1688, and consists of a Protonotary, a Chancery Solicitor, and several Secretaries. All petitions relating to the affairs of *Sleswick, Holstein, and Oldenburg* are given into this Court. It also carries on the correspondence by dispatches, with foreign Courts and Ambassadors; and all treaties and alliances concluded with foreign powers, are dispatched by this College. The members of the weekly Chancery-Session are the Protonotary, some other Secretaries, and two foreigners, as assistants.

The other Colleges are as follows :

1. The *Military Chancery for the land service*, which consists of a Protonotary, a keeper of the Archives, or Recorder, a Chancery-Solicitor, several Chancery clerks, or Curfitors, notaries, &c. This College has the care of the military promotions, regulations in the army, and in general the direction of whatever relates to war. But the peculiar military oeconomy or management is committed to the *General Commission* for the land service, whose province it is to provide for the king's military forces by land. These Commissioners pay, maintain, and recruit the army, fill the magazines, keep the fortifications in repair, and have the care of the artillery in the two Kingdoms, the Dutchies, and the Counties. To this College are subject all General Commissaries of war, all officers that have the care of provisions, arsenals, and building materials; and magistrates, and other civil officers are under their jurisdiction, as far as they have any concern in the marching and quartering of the army. The money expended by this College is issued out by the Deputies of the Finances; and it is immediately under the king's command. The officers of this College are, a Book-keeper, three Commissary-clerks, who belong to three distinct offices, namely, the *Danish, Norwegian, and German* office; and a Register.

2. The *military Chancery for the sea-service*, which consists of a Protonotary and Chancery-Solicitor, and has the care of the naval promotions, and likewise the ordering or directing what concerns the Marine and harbours. But the peculiar management of naval affairs is under the *General Marine Commission*, which has been united with the College of Admiralty since the year 1746. The Admiralty-college was instituted in 1660, and is to be considered partly as a College, as it has the command over the fleet, and every thing relating to it, and partly as a superior court of judicature; since all the sentences passed by the inferior court of admiralty, come before this Court. The inferior Court of admiralty has power over all civil and military subaltern officers in the Navy. The members of the Admiralty-college, together with the civil Assessor, sit in the high court of Admiralty. The *Marine Commission* provides necessaries for building ships, and every thing that relates to the fleet.



3. The *Rent-Chamber* or Treasury, and the *College for the Finances*. These were formerly neither so important, nor so well regulated as they are at present. *Frederick IV.* first instituted the Treasury; for he abolished the College of Treasurers, and in their room appointed a single Treasurer and Vice-Treasurer. He also introduced the *College for the Finances*, which consists of Deputies for the Finances, and Commissioners of the College of Finances. The Deputies, indeed, in concert with the Commissioners, direct all affairs relating to the Finances; but the former have the sole management of the public money, make disbursements according to the state of the specie or ready money in the treasury, and subscribe all contracts, &c. The Commissioners are intrusted with the care of every thing else that relates to the revenues, and of the imposts in money and corn. They likewise farm the public revenues, and have the inspection of every thing that may tend to the improvement or augmentation of them. They also subscribe all representations, which the Chamber makes to the king, &c. The Chamber of Finances has two Chanceries; namely, the *Danish* or Northern, which has a Secretary and two Agents; and the *German* Chancery, which consists of a Secretary and an Agent. The *Chamber Court of judicature* is provided with a Justiciary and an Agent; who are to manage the judicial proceedings of the Chamber. The correspondence of the *Chamber-college* is carried on, and the accompts of the Collectors are inspected and adjusted by 17 *Clerks of the revenues*. These clerks have their respective departments and offices, which include all the king's dominions; namely, seven offices and as many clerks for *Denmark*, five for *Norway*, and five for the *German* dominions: There is also an Agent in every one of these offices. This being premised, I shall treat more particularly of his *Danish* Majesty's revenues in §. 21.

4. The *General College for the improvement of manufactures and commerce* was instituted *December 30, 1735*, and consists of Deputies and Commissioners for the domestic and commercial departments, and of a *Danish* and *German* Secretary. This College has the direction of every thing that may promote the increase of domestic trade, manufactures, fisheries, and all new foundations or establishments. By virtue of a royal ordinance issued in the year 1753, every Deputy has his particular department; but is under the controll or check of the *General College*.

5. The *General Ecclesiastical College of Inspection* was instituted by *Christian VI.* in the year 1737. It ordinarily consists of six members, namely, three laymen and as many Divines, who are all called *General Ecclesiastical Inspectors*. The third Lay Inspector is also Secretary of the College, and has one or two Secretaries or Cursitors under him. This College has the general direction of all ecclesiastical affairs in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and inspects into the behaviour of the clergy and the state of the Universities and Schools, in their jurisdiction; pass their censure on all theological treatises and

books

books on religious controversies. This college is also under the king's immediate jurisdiction.

6. The sixth and last College is that of the *General Post-office*, which has the direction of the posts in the two kingdoms, the Dutchies, and Counties; audits the accounts of the Post-masters, and in general inspects into their conduct. This Office has its Directors, Treasuries, and *Revision Chamber*. They make their representations to the king by the Chanceries.

§. 20. Every *Stifts-Amt*, *i. e.* Diocese or General Government, has its *Stifts-Amtmann* or General Governor, who always is a person of distinction, and generally a knight of one of the Orders. His power is very great, and extends to spiritual as well as temporal and judicial matters. He has authority likewise over the revenues, towns and country within his proper jurisdiction. Under the *Stifts-Amtmann* are the *Amtmanner*, *i. e.* Prefects, who are also noblemen and knights of some Order, or at least persons of distinction. The Prefects have no power in the towns within their jurisdiction, for it extends only to the open Country: They also inspect into judicial affairs and the revenues. In every *Amt* or Prefecture there is a Collector, who is immediately subject to the *Rent Chamber* at *Copenhagen*. These are stiled either Solicitors or Secretaries; but they have no manner of concern with judicial affairs. The civil government in the cities and great towns is lodged in a *Burgomaster* and council; but in smaller towns in the *Byevogt*, or king's Headborough. Many towns have a royal President besides, and several of them have the right of holding courts of justice; so that their sentence is not confirmed by the common Provincial court, but is referred directly to the *Supreme College* at *Copenhagen*.

The *Codex Christianus*, or the body of *Danish* Laws, which excellent work was published in 1683 by *Christian V.* is the only law observed in *Denmark*, and no foreign laws are of any force there.

Besides the Town-courts of judicature, and those held by the nobility in their own manors, there are three other Courts; *viz.* the *Ting-Court*, *Land-Court*, and the *Supreme Tribunal*. The *Ting-Court* is commonly the court before which causes are first brought, as well in towns as in the Country; and every *Herred*, (*Nomarchia*, *Prepositura*, *Provincia minor*) or small district consisting of 40 or 50 villages or hamlets, has its Head-borough or Judge, and a Secretary. Eight peasants, who are called the *Stockemanner*, assist at these courts as witnesses. These courts are held weekly, and in the trial of criminal causes, the Headborough of the *Herred* or district is assisted by the said *Stockemanner* or *Medomsnanner*. From this inferior Court an appeal lies to the *Land* or *Provincial* Court, or *Affizes*, which commonly consists of two judges called *Landdommere*, and a Secretary. Such a Provincial Court is held once every month in *Seeland* at *Ringstedt*, in *Funen* at *Odense*, in *Jutland* at *Wiborg*, and in *Laaland* at *Marieboe*. The last

refort, and from which lies no appeal, is the *Supreme Tribunal* at *Copenhagen*, which is held almost all the year round at the place where the king resides, and is opened by the king in person every year, about the beginning of *March*. As to the judicial proceedings in the *Dutchy of Holstein*, an account will be given of them in their proper place.

§. 21. The royal Revenues arise,

*First*, from the taxes paid by the *Farming-Peasants* for *odels* or freeholds, and contributions of provisions, in *Norway*; from duties on corn, oxen, and bacon in *Denmark*; and from redeemed estates, &c.

*Secondly*, from the customs, particularly those of the *Sound*, *Kolding*, and *Norway*. A toll in passing from the *Northern Ocean* into the *East Sea* or *Baltic*, and *vice versa*, is paid in all these *Straits*, viz. at *Helsingoer*, *Nyborg*, and *Fridericia*; but the principal customhouse is at *Helsingoer*, in the *Oeresund* or *Sound*. For several years past between 4 and 5000 ships have sailed annually through the *Sound*; but in 1752, above 6000 ships, a number unheard of before, passed through these *Straits*. In general, the toll is on an equal footing with respect to all nations, except the *Hamburgers*, who are obliged to pay more than others for passing through the *Sound*. The *English*, *Dutch*, *Swedish*, and *French* ships are not searched, when they are provided with proper passes, according to treaties: They also pay down only one *per cent.* for such goods as are not specified in the *Tariff*. All other nations are obliged to pay one and a quarter *per cent.* and submit to be searched; and, if they are unprovided with particular papers, they must pay a *Rosenobel*, or two, besides. With regard to the *Hanse-towns*, that lie on the *Baltic*, there is a great variety in the toll they pay; for almost every one of those towns is treated with in particular. It must be observed, in general, that the tolls are now either farmed out, or collected by officers appointed for that purpose; and that there are controllers appointed, by the king, over the farmers and officers.

*Thirdly*, from the excise and consumption.

*Fourthly*, from fines, the post-office, dispensations and stamp paper. The revenues arising from the post-office are appropriated for pensions, and for carrying on the foreign missions.

*Fifthly*, From the capitation, or Poll-tax, which, however, is never imposed but upon extraordinary occasions.

*Lastly*, from the portion of tithes which formerly belonged to the bishops, but after the Reformation were annexed to the Crown; hence they are called the royal tithes. In the *Dutchy of Sleswick*, and his majesty's *German dominions*, the king's revenues arise either from those above-mentioned, or from additional Sources: They amount to 6,000,000 of *Rix-dollars*.

§. 22. The king's military forces in the kingdom of *Denmark*, the *Dutchies*, and *Counties*, consist of the horse life-guards; 1 regiment of *Cuirassier-*



Cuirassier-guards, and 1 regiment of Dragoon-guards; 9 other regiments of Cuirassiers; 2 regiments of foot life-guards, one of which consists entirely of Grenadiers, and is called the *Grenadier corps*; the King's own regiment, the Queen's regiment, and the Prince-royal's own regiment; besides 9 regiments of infantry enlisted, 7 national regiments of infantry, and a regiment for garrisons. In *Norway* there are 5 national regiments of Cavalry, 2 enlisted, and 13 national regiments of Infantry, and the *Skjelober*, or light troops, consisting of 5 or 6 hundred men. An enlisted regiment of cavalry consists of 8, and an enlisted regiment of infantry of 12 companies; but the National regiments are more complete than the enlisted. The Artillery is not included in the above account. The King of *Denmark's* whole military force amounts to 59,289 men.

§. 23. The *Danes* have from ancient times, and particularly since the time of *Christian IV.* been very powerful and successful at Sea. *Christian V.* and *Frederick IV.* have performed great exploits with the *Danish* fleet. It consists of 34 ships of the Line, 16 frigats, and a number of gallies, which usually amount to 50. Since the year 1755, the seamen which are in constant pay consist of 4 divisions: Each division contains 10 companies, with a company of artillery; and they amount all together to 4400 men. The number of registered seamen, with which the fleet may be manned upon an emergency, is about 24,000; which in *Denmark* are distributed in six districts, and in as many in *Norway*, being under the direction of certain officers appointed for that purpose. *Prabmen* or floating Block-houses are used, upon occasion, with great success in the *Baltic*. The fleet is laid up at *Copenhagen*; and the naval stores and materials for ship-building are in great plenty on the old and new *Holm*, and in the Magazine which is kept in very regular order. But of this and other edifices belonging to the Navy, more will be said in the account of *Copenhagen*. There is also a company of Sea-Cadets in *Denmark*, which was instituted by *Frederick IV.* in the year 1701.

T H E

D A N I S H I S L A N D S :

A N D F I R S T,

The D I O C E S E, O R G E N E R A L G O V E R N M E N T O F

S E E L A N D.

**T**HIS *Stifts-amt* or Diocese is the first in order, and comprises, besides the island of *Seeland*, the islands *Amack*, *Moen*, *Bornholm*, *Christiansoe*, *Samsoe* in the *Cattegat*, and other smaller islands.

*The Island of* S E E L A N D.

*Seeland* or *Zeland* (*Seelandia*) in Danish *Saland*, or *Sialland*, is encompassed by the great *Belt*, the *Baltic Sea*, the *Sound*, and the *Cattegat*. Its name, according to some, signifies a country abounding with corn, and fit for tillage. Others derive it from *Sio*, the Sea (for, in the old *Islandish* monuments it is called *Sioland*), and are of opinion that it denotes a maritime country, or an island. *Seeland* is the largest of all the *Danish* islands, being 16 or 17 geographical miles \* in length, and from 13 to 14 in breadth. The soil is very fertile, and produces extraordinary fine barley, of which good malt is made; and a great quantity of the latter is exported from this island. It also yields plentiful crops of fine oats; but the rye that grows here is sufficient only for home consumption. Here are fertile meadows of a beautiful verdure, and woods of oak and beach; especially in the Prefectures of *Fredericksburg*, *Wordingburg*, *Soroe*, and *Anderkow*: But in the country lying between *Copenhagen* and *Roschild*, and between the former and *Kioge*, there are no woods to be seen: Hence the inhabitants of these parts chiefly use turf for fuel. The lakes in this island are, *Tirsoe*, which lies a few miles south of *Kallundberg*, the *Vinstrup*-lake, between *Soroe* and *Nestwed*, the three lakes near *Soroe*, &c. Some of these lakes are pretty large; and they are all well stocked with fish. The

\* The Author does not specify what miles he reckons by in this and several other places in this work, I render them geographical or *German* miles, which I presume he means by miles in general.

rivers,

rivers, which are in every part of *Seeland*, abound also in fish. The largest of these rises above *Ringstedt*, and falls into a bay of the *Baltic* below *Nestwed*. The largest bay is that of *Ifsefjord*, which runs out of the *Cattegat* into the land and divides into two arms, one of which extends to *Holbeck*, the other to *Roschild*. *Copenhagen* is the best harbour in *Seeland*; and next to that, the port of *Kallundborg*. In the Diocese or Government of *Seeland*, exclusive of *Copenhagen*, the number of burials amounts annually to about 6000. The whole island is divided into sixteen *Amts*, or Prefectures, which are,

I. The Prefecture of COPENHAGEN, which consists of three *Herreds* or districts, viz. 1. The *Herred* of *Soebelund*, in which there are twelve churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Oelstyke*, containing eight churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Smorum*, containing fourteen churches.

Within this Prefecture are the following places of note.

COPENHAGEN, which is the place where the court resides, and the Capital of the kingdom of *Denmark*. This city is called in *Danish*, *Kiobenhavn*, anciently, *Kiobmandshavn*, i. e. the *Merchants harbour*, on account of its beautiful harbour and commodious situation for trade, and in *Latin* HAFNIA. It lies on the *Baltic* or *East-Sea*, in  $55^{\circ}$ ,  $40'$ ,  $59''$  North Latitude, about five geographical miles from *Oeresund* or the *Sound*. Its situation is marshy and low; but on the land side there are several beautiful lakes, which furnish the inhabitants with plenty of fresh water. The adjacent country, or *environs*, is very pleasant; and directly opposite to the city lies the fertile island of *Amack*, which forms the harbour: But this island shall be more fully described in its proper place. The city makes a magnificent appearance at a distance, and extends, from the West-gate to the *Norway-gate* in the citadel, 4140 *Seeland* ells \* in length, and from the North-gate to the *Amack-gate* it is 3120 ells in breadth, so that its circuit must be 12,600 ells, or a geographical mile and 600 ells. The *Gotheer-street*, which runs in a strait line across the whole city, and divides the *Old* from the *New Town*, is above 4200 feet long, the breadth of the king's market and the area about the new harbour included. This metropolis contains 4 royal castles, 10 parish and 9 other churches; a considerable number of public and private palaces, above 4000 *Burgher's* houses, several of which are inhabited by 10 or more families; 11 markets and public places, areas, or squares, 186 streets, and 100,000 Inhabitants. Since the year 1746, the annual list of births has amounted, at least, to 2592, and in some years to 2813. During the same period the number of burials at the lowest, has amounted annually to 2594, and, at the highest, to 3386, without including the sickly

\* It were to be wished the Author had made use of some measure better known than the *Seeland* ell; or had acquainted the reader with the exact length of it, as ells vary in every country.



year 1750, when the burials amounted to 4317. *C. Bartholin*, and *R. S. Henrici*, have demonstrated the salubrity of the air at *Copenhagen* in particular dissertations wrote on that subject. This city is divided into three principal parts, *viz.* *Old-Copenhagen*, *New-Copenhagen*, and *Christians-bafen*. The two last being more modern than the first, are laid out in broad streets running in a strait line. In *Old-Copenhagen*, indeed, most of the streets, since the last great fire, are of a sufficient breadth; but the old windings could not entirely be avoided. The expence the city is at in keeping the streets clean amounts yearly to 10 or 12,000 Rix-dollars. In the night the city is illuminated with lanthorns. The houses in the principal streets and areas are almost entirely built with brick; but in the lanes most of the buildings are of timber: However, they make a fine appearance in general; so that *Copenhagen* may be looked upon as one of the most beautiful and magnificent cities in *Europe*. In some parts of the city there are deep canals, into which large ships may enter, and, to the great conveniency of sea-faring and trading people, may lade and unlade quite close to the houses and warehouses. Besides the above three general divisions, the city is divided into 12 Quarters, and the Burghers into as many Companies, which have all their particular Colours. It is to be observed, that the West and East Quarter of *St. Anne* make only one Company; and that the Fire-Company constitutes the twelfth. Of these I come now to speak more particularly.

The *Old Town*, consists of the following Quarters, *viz.*

1. The North Quarter, the places of note in which are,

The *German* church, dedicated to *St. Peter*, which at the time of the Reformation, was the principal parish-church. It was afterwards converted into a foundery; but in 1585 it was given to the *Germans*, and made a Parish-church again in 1618. The damage this church sustained in the great fire, was soon repaired. The structure is very old, and of a middling size.

The *Walkendorf* College in *Peter's* street, which was formerly a *Carmelite* monastery, but was by the Lord Steward *Christopher Walkendorf* converted into a College for 16 students, in the year 1595. Every one of these students enjoys a yearly pension of 30 Rix-dollars in money.

2. The West quarter, in which place of note are,

The Hay-market.

The great *Wartow*-hospital, one of the noblest foundations for the poor in the city. This foundation is very ancient; but the edifice is new, and very spacious; and the endowment is so considerable, that some hundreds may be maintained in this hospital. It contains at present above 300 beds for the sick and poor; and every one of them, besides his lodging *gratis*, has weekly half a Rix-dollar allowed him. A small, commodious, neat church,

church, stands close to the hospital, which is so contrived, that the sick and bed-ridden may hear divine service, and sermons in their beds.

The *Place* or area near the water-engine, as it is called.

The City-Prison, called the *Schliefferey*, which has its particular church.

The Orphan-house, which takes up one entire side of the *New-market*, and is a considerable ornament to the *Place*, or square. Formerly there stood on this area a palace belonging to the family of the *Counts of Friis*, which *Christian V.* purchased, and, in 1691, turned into an Academy, which was opened the year following: But, in the year 1712, it was converted into a military school for the Land-Cadets. As these Cadets were afterwards removed to the edifice called the *Opera-house*, this structure was rebuilt, and appropriated for the education of orphans. After this the late great fire destroyed the new edifice before it was quite finished; and the present large building was begun in 1731, and finished in 1734. In this Orphan-house 100 poor children, namely, 60 boys and 40 girls, have been heretofore maintained, educated, and instructed; but at present the number is increased to 108. A particular Church, Dispensary, bookseller's shop, printing-house, and Library belong to this foundation. In this edifice also two colleges hold their ordinary meetings, namely, the *General Ecclesiastical College of Inspection*, and the *Collegium de Cursu Evangelii promovendo*.

The Council-house, which is a new structure and stands quite detached from other buildings. It also separates the *Old* from the *New Market*. In the *Old Market* is a fine fountain, which was begun in the year 1634; and in the *New*, there is a walled place for the execution of malefactors.

The Royal Palace, which is situated near the citadel of *Christiansburg*. Here formerly stood the *Wigand-House*, which was so called from the owner, a considerable merchant, who likewise built the best part of the adjoining street, which is also called by his name. When *Frederick IV.* began to rebuild the old palace, he bought this house for the Prince Royal, for whose residence it was fitted up and enlarged; and in 1743 and 1744 it was embellished with a very elegant new front.

The West Gate, which was rebuilt in 1668 by *Frederick III.* This is more frequented than any of the other City Gates.

3. The Clothiers Quarter, in which are the following places of note.

St. *Mary's* Church. This is the Collegiate Church, and was rebuilt from the foundation after the great fire. Here the Bishops of both kingdoms are usually consecrated. The tower of this church is 380 feet high, and has a fine ring of bells in it. This is reckoned the noblest tower in *Copenhagen*, and stands on the highest spot in the whole city.

The Grammar-School, which consists of five classes or forms.

The University. King *Erich* of *Pomerania* first obtained of Pope *Martin V.* by a bull, the liberty of erecting an University in his kingdom. But as

this design proved abortive, an University was afterwards founded by *Christian I.* with the consent of Pope *Sextus V.* in the year 1478, which was liberally endowed by the succeeding kings of *Denmark.* *Christian III.* restored the University from its decaying condition, and his Successors greatly improved it; but it is chiefly indebted to *Christian VI.* for its present flourishing state. The University Building includes the *Royal Community*, or the *Cloister* in which formerly 100 poor Students had two meals a day provided for them; but, at present, they receive a certain pension in lieu of provision. In this Edifice they hold their daily disputations. It likewise comprises the Rector's house and other buildings, with the Consistory, the Auditories or halls, &c. To the University also belong four spacious colleges, which are well endowed for the maintenance of the young students *gratis.* The *Walkendorf-college* has been mentioned already in the North Quarter. The other three are,

The *Regency*, or the Royal College, which *Christian IV.* founded, in 1618, and allotted for 120 Students; but at present not above 100 students reside in it. It is governed by a Provost and several Inspectors.

The *Collegium Elerianum*, which was founded by *George Elers* for 16 Students, who endowed it by will with 30,000 Rixdollars.

The *Borrichian College*, otherwise called *Collegium Medicum*, is the most elegant and best endowed of all the private foundations. The celebrated and learned *Olaus Borrichius* erected this college in 1689 for 16 *Danish* and *Norwegian* Students. Every Student has apartments *gratis* for five years, and an annual pension of 60 Rixdollars. The *Library*, and the Cabinet of Curiosities which joined to this college were burnt down in 1728, but have been since, in some measure, restored.

The Coal-market.

The North Gate, which is the most elegant of all the gates, and was erected in 1671, and the *Friderichsburg* or *Schieden* market are also in this Quarter.

4. The Freeman's Quarters, in which are

The *Gray Friars Market*, or *Ublefeld's-Place*, where formerly stood the palace of Count *Ublefeld*; and after that palace was razed to the ground a stone monument of infamy, in the form of a pyramid, was erected on the spot, as appears by the inscription on the four sides of it.

The *Amack-market*, where the peasants of the isle of *Amack* expose their goods to sale.

The church of the Holy Ghost, or rather the church of the *Holy Guests*, which derives its name from a large hospital or *Guest-house*, that formerly stood near it, and was converted into a House of Correction by *Christian IV.* This Church was rebuilt after the fire of 1728.

5. *Snarren's-Quarter.*

6. The *Strand-Quarter*, in which the places of note are

The



The magnificent new royal Palace of *Christiansburg*. Several old mean buildings formerly stood on the spot where this palace is erected. In 1168 the celebrated Bishop *Absolon* built a castle or palace in this place, which, after his family name, he called *Axel-houfe*. This castle was afterwards inhabited and improved by the Kings of *Denmark*. *Christian III.* *Christian IV.* and *Frederick IV.* enlarged and embellished it. However, though it was very irregularly built, *Christian VI.* caused the whole building, and the adjoining Burghers houses which had been purchased, to be pulled down in 1731; and the following year laid the foundation of the present spacious and magnificent palace, which was finished in the year 1740. The first floor is called the *Ladies Story*, because most of the Ladies and Gentlemen belonging to the court, who are in waiting, have their apartments there. The royal treasury and private cash office are also kept here; and in other apartments the king's Court of justice, and the Burghers-court are held. The office of the General Superintendence of the Buildings has also an apartment in this story. In the second or *Royal Story*, the apartments are adorned with all the magnificence and elegance imaginable. The Supreme Court of Judicature is also held in this story. The *Prince Royal's Story* is so called, because his Highness and the princesses royal have their apartments in it, which are extremely elegant and well contrived. The royal chapel in the palace is very beautiful and magnificent within. In short, the whole palace makes a noble appearance, and yields a most enchanting prospect every way. The parade is in the area or court of the old palace.

The Chancery joins with the Palace by means of a *Corridor*, or covered gallery, and is a very magnificent structure: It was erected by *Frederick IV.* In the lowest story, which is vaulted, the archives of the kingdom are kept. In the second story is the apartment where the king's privy Council meet. In this story also the Chanceries of both kingdoms, and of the *German* dominions, the military Colleges, and the College of the Finances generally meet. The third story is for the most part occupied by the offices and officers belonging to the Rent-Chamber, or Treasury.

The Edifice, in the first story of which is the Arsenal; and in the second, the king's library, which is above 200 feet long, and contains about 60 or 70,000 volumes, is also in this Quarter. The arrangement of the books in this library resembles that of the *Biblioteca della Minerva* at *Rome*. In the third are the royal Cabinet of Curiosities, the picture-gallery, and the cabinet of medals; and in the fourth story is the cabinet of models.

The magazine for Provisions.

The Post Office.

The Exchange, which is a grand edifice in the Gothic taste. This structure is 406 feet in length, 66½ in breadth, and, for the greatest part, was built in the year 1624 by *Christian IV.* The lowest story is laid out

in ware-houses, which are very commodious for the merchants; for, on both sides of the Exchange, there are canals, where the ships may lie close to the ware-houses, so that the goods may be commodiously laded or unladed from them. In the second story, in the north side, is the place where the merchants usually meet. In the middle, and down the whole length, on both sides, is a range of shops; and in one wing of the south side is the Royal Bank, and in the other the Royal Magazine, where most of the cloths, silks, stuffs, &c. which are made in the City, are deposited, and from thence are sold in the gross to merchants and dealers.

The fish-market lies also in this quarter.

7. The *Rosenburg-Quarter*, in which the places of note are, *Trinity-Church*, which *Christian IV.* caused to be built in 1637 for the benefit of the Students only; but, in 1683, it was made a parish church. It is commonly called the *Round Church* on account of its round tower. The arched roof of it, which is pretty high, is supported by two rows of octangular pillars, which are extremely slender, so that the church seems to be a very light building. This edifice suffered less than the other churches in the great fire in 1728, and was soon repaired. The greatest loss hereabouts was the noble collection of books belonging to the University, which were kept in a large room over the arched roof of this church. This library was remarkable for the great number of books and curious manuscripts it contained; but it was entirely destroyed by the fire. However, a new library has been since collected, in which there are several very valuable manuscripts relating to the Northern History. The tower of this church is a master-piece in its kind, and was designed by the celebrated astronomer *Christian Logomontan*. It is round, 115 feet in height, and 54 feet in thickness, being flat on the top and surrounded with an iron ballustrade. The ascent is spiral, and so spacious and easy, that a coach and horses may go up and come down again with ease; which experiment was tried by *Peter the Great*, in 1716. This tower is designed for an observatory. The curious astronomical and mathematical instruments, invented by *Tycho Brahe*, *Olaus Romer* and others, which were kept here, were all consumed by the great fire in 1728. The large, valuable celestial globe was the most remarkable thing in this observatory, being one of the most curious instruments constructed by *Tycho de Brahe*. This globe, after that great astronomer was obliged to fly from thence, was brought from the island of *Hueen*, was carried to *Denmark*, and from thence to *Prague* in *Bobemia*. From *Prague* it was carried to *Benatica*, from *Benatica* again to *Prague*; from thence it was conveyed to *Neisse* in *Silesia*; and, in 1632, it fell into the hands of Prince *Ulrick* of *Denmark*, at the plundering of that town, and was brought to *Denmark* a second time, and deposited at first in the hall of the Academy. It was afterwards removed to the Round Tower, where it remained till it was consumed to ashes. This extraordinary globe cost 5000 Rixdollars.

After

After the fire *Christian VI.* made a present to the library of a great number of valuable books, and was at the expence of procuring the most curious and valuable mathematical and astronomical instruments to supply the place of those that were burnt. This collection has been since considerably increased by presents of books, &c. and is still kept over *Trinity Church*: it is open five days in the week for the benefit of the Curious. On the tower there is to be seen a semi-hieroglyphical inscription, the meaning of which is as follows :

*Doctrinam & justitiam dirige, Jehova, in corde coronati Christiani quarti.*  
1642.

The church of the Reformed, or *Calvinists*, in which the ministers preach in *French* and high *Dutch*, is a small neat edifice.

8. The *Manufacturers Quarter*.

9. The *East Quarter*, in which the places of note are,

The *Church of St. Nicholas*, which is the largest in the city, next to *St. Mary's*, and the best ornamented both inside and outside. It was finished in 1517, and the roof is covered with copper. The tower was blown down, in 1628, by a violent storm; but was rebuilt in three years, namely, from 1663 to 1666: It is the highest and most elegantly built in *Copenhagen*, excepting that of *St. Mary's*. There are several curious monumental inscriptions in this Church.

The *Bremer Holms-Church*, which is also called the *Admiralty-Church*; for it was at first allotted for the use of the persons, belonging to the navy; but afterwards a large congregation of *Burghers* was added to them. It was first built in 1601, and altered into the form of a cross in 1640.

The *General Commission-office*, which is a large edifice, and was erected in 1704, by *Frederic IV.* Here the united colleges of the *Admiralty* and *General-Commission* meet. Besides this structure, the following edifices also belong to the naval department, *viz.* the *Old* or *Bremer-Holm*, and the *New-Holm*, where the naval stores, &c. are deposited, and the slaves were formerly confined: But the latter, now, are distributed in the citadel, and *Stockhaus* or prison.

*Christiansholm*, where the *Naval arsenal* is, which far exceeds that of *Venice*. Here the royal fleet usually lies.

The *New Town* consists of two *Quarters*,

1. *St. Ann's East-Quarter*, in which are,

*Charlottenburg*, which is a pretty large regular structure, and commodiously built. It was begun in 1672, and completed in the succeeding years; it derives its name from queen *Charlotta Amelia*, consort of *Christian V.* The situation of this castle or palace is extremely pleasant, as its principal front faces the area, called the king's *New-market*, which is embellished



with an equestrian statue of *Christian V.* of lead, gilt, on an elegant pedestal. This statue is bigger than the life, and was erected in 1688: It was cast by *L'Amoureux*, in 1681. On this beautiful area or square are also the great Guard-house, the Foundery, and the *Danish* Play-house.

The Naval-hospital, or *Quetjck-haus*.

The *Lord of Zebasth*, or the Garrison's Church, which was built in 1704.

The *Frederickstadt* is the spot where the *Amalienburg* palace formerly stood, with its gardens and parade, and is adorned with several elegant new palaces.

*Frederick's* Church, which now stands on the spot where the princess *Charlotta Amelia's* gardens were formerly laid out. This church is built in imitation of *St. Peter's* at *Rome*.

The grand Academy of the Royal Cadets. This structure *Frederic IV.* first built for an Opera-house, but, in 1720, he assigned it for the Land-Cadets; and five or six years after, his majesty removed the company of Sea-Cadets to this edifice. Each company has its separate apartments and exercising rooms. These young men are not only supplied with lodging, clothing, fire and candles, and a monthly pension sufficient to find them diet; but are also instructed at the king's expence in all the sciences, by able masters appointed for that purpose. Each company is under the inspection of its proper officer, who likewise lives in the Academy. These two companies are, as it were, the nursery for the army and navy.

The General-hospital, as it is called.

The Toll-booth, or Custom-house.

2. *St. Ann's West-Quarter*, in which the most remarkable place is,

The Royal Palace called *Rosenburg*. This is a small edifice, and was erected in 1604, by *Christian IV.* It is built in the Semi-Gothic taste; however, it is a grand structure, and adorned with one large and two small towers. It is surrounded with a ditch and a sort of fortification, and has its own Commanding-officer; but the guard is sent hither from the garrison of *Copenhagen*, being daily relieved. The adjoining gardens are very extensive, and embellished with a great number of ornaments. In summer it serves the inhabitants for a public walk; and the royal family, at times, continues for some days in this palace. The third story of the palace is the most remarkable, as it contains a treasure of inestimable value. In the great hall, which is in this story, and takes up the whole extent of the palace, are five pieces of painting by the celebrated *Danish* Virtuoso *Krogk*; twelve valuable pieces of tapestry, which represent the achievements of *Christian V.* and three silver lions, as big as the life, which are placed round the throne at the king's inauguration. In two cabinets, adjoining to the hall, the old and new *Regalia* and other valuable jewels, and a whole service of gold are kept. Another cabinet contains a collection of all man-  
ner

ner of curious and valuable drinking-glasses, and other glass vessels. In another apartment the royal throne, which is used at the inauguration, stands. The East-gate is also in this Quarter.

*Christianshafen* consists of one Quarter only. *Christian IV.* founded this town on the island of *Amack*, in the year 1618. *Christianshafen* formerly had its own magistrates; but at present is under the jurisdiction of those of *Copenhagen*. Remarkable places in this suburb are as follows:

St. *Saviour's* church, which is the most magnificent and elegant of all the churches at *Copenhagen*. Its foundation was laid in the year 1682, and the whole edifice was completed in 1694. One may go up to the top of the beautiful steeple belonging to this church by a spiral ascent on the outside of it.

The *German*, or *Frederick's* Church, the first stone of which was laid in 1755.

The Orphan-house, for the education of 200 poor boys.

The large House of Correction in the market-place, where above 600 loose persons of both sexes, but mostly women, are confined. It has a neat little church adorned with a tower.

The great *West-India* Sugar-house.

The *East-India* Company's house.

The fine Dock-yard, where the ships of war are refitted: And lastly, The *Christianshafen* gate.

*Lutheranism* is the prevailing religion in *Copenhagen*, and throughout the whole kingdom. The *Calvinists* have a church to themselves; the *Papists* frequent the chapels of foreign *Roman-Catholic* ministers, and the *Jews* have their synagogues, in this city. The magistracy consists of a President, three Burgo-masters, with Vice-burgo-masters and common-council-men, and is appointed by the king himself. *Frederick III.* in 1658, granted the burghers of *Copenhagen* the honours and privileges of noblemen, which he confirmed in the year 1661; whereupon, with the consent of the magistrates, they chose two-and-thirty deputies, or representatives, who take care of their interests. Besides the Supreme and other Colleges, Literary Societies, Academies of Painting and Drawing, the *Theatrum Anatomico-chirurgicum*, trading Companies, the Bank, and the Office of Insurance for ships, of which I have treated above in the Introduction to the Description of *Denmark* (§. 18) I shall here take notice of the following, *viz.* the Fire and Water-Offices; the Insurance-Office for Cash; and the different Manufactories in which silk and woolen stuffs, cloths, fine linen, gold and silver lace, porcelain, &c. are made. This City has the staple right or privilege, and is frequented by a great number of ships, as appears from what I have observed above in §. 12.

Between *Copenhagen* and *Christianshafen*, there is a high pillar erected in the middle of the water, on which is a statue representing a naked female; and



and on her left side stands the figure of a swan, which extends its long neck behind her back, and bringing its head over the right shoulder of the statue, sticks its bill in the mouth of it. This pillar and statue are looked upon as a symbolical representation of the city of *Copenhagen*: They were found during the war in 1611 near *Calmar* in *Sweden*, and from thence conveyed to this city.

That *Copenhagen*, is well fortified by nature and art, the three long and severe sieges which it sustained under *Frederick I.* *Christian III.* and *Frederic III.* are a sufficient proof: But its fortifications at those periods, compared with its present strength, were very inconsiderable. The strong citadel called *Fredericksbafsen* was erected between the harbour and the East-gate in 1663. There is a small church in this citadel for the use of the garrison. The noble harbour of *Copenhagen* is formed by the Straits of *Kal-leboe*, between the islands *Seeland* and *Amack*.

Lastly, as to what relates to the history of this city, it is observed, that in the 11th century it was only a mean fishing place, and that from a small town it increased to a city in 1254. It was only an episcopal See till 1443; and in that very year it became the royal seat, and from that time the kings of *Denmark* have constantly resided at *Copenhagen*. In the same year also this city obtained its peculiar charter of privileges, which was renewed in 1581. In 1360 and 1372, it was taken and plundered by the *Vandal* Hanse-towns; and in the years 1306, 1428, 1523, 1535, 1658 and 1659, it was closely besieged. When the *Swedes* laid siege to this city the last time, it held out almost two years. In 1251, 1425, 1614 and 1619, ecclesiastical Synods, and in 1258, 1445, 1533, 1551 and 1660, Diets were held at *Copenhagen*. It has been often visited with the plague, namely, in the years 1546, 1571, 1583, 1601, 1629, 1637, 1659 and 1711, which swept away great numbers of the inhabitants. In 1626, this city was considerably enlarged. In the year 1700, it was bombarded by the combined fleets of *Sweden*, *England*, and *Holland*. On the 20th day of *October* 1728, a fire broke out in the evening in a mean house not far from the West-gate, which spread with such fury and violence, that in eight and forty hours the most elegant and greatest part of the city was consumed to ashes. Twenty-four streets, and *Places* or areas, 1650 dwelling-houses, five churches, the University Edifice, with the four colleges belonging to it, the Council-house, and several other public buildings were burnt down to the ground. The anniversary of this fatal accident is observed in a religious manner on the 23d of *October*: However, the city has been since rebuilt with much greater elegance and beauty.

As *Christiansbafen*, which is a part of *Copenhagen*, lies on the island of *AMACK*, we must here also take notice of the latter. This island is joined to the city, and consequently to *Seeland*, by means of two bridges. The finest of these, which, however, is most frequented, is called *Knippels-bridge*;



bridge; but the largest has the name of *Long-bridge*. *Amack* is a geographical mile and half in length, and above half a mile in breadth; or according to the common calculation 6000 paces in length, with the breadth in proportion as above. It is quite level, and has no woods, excepting a few thickets. As the soil is uncommonly rich and fertile, it is looked upon as the kitchen-garden and store-house of the City: For the inhabitants carry twice a week all sorts of esculent or garden vegetables, and also milk, butter, and cheese, in great quantities to the city for sale. The present inhabitants of this island were, for the most part, invited hither in 1516, from the province of *Water-land* in *North-Holland*, by *Christian II.* at the desire of *Elizabeth* his queen who was a native of the *Netherlands*. This colony was settled in the village of *Maglebye*, to which they gave the name *Hollanderbye*. The whole island is peopled by about 800 families; and is divided into two parishes.

The first, which is the largest, includes the western part of the island, and is called *Taarnebye*. It contains nine villages, and is inhabited by *Danes*, with a mixture of *Hollanders*.

The second parish, which comprehends the east part of the island, and was peculiarly allotted for the *Dutch* Colony, is called *Hollanderbye*. To this parish belongs the village of *Dragoe*, which has the appearance of a little town, and is inhabited by more than 150 families; which are partly *Danes*, and partly *Hollanders*, and maintain themselves by navigation, fishing, and pilotage.

The dialect of the *Amackers* is a medley of the *Low-Dutch*, *German*, and *Danish* languages; on which account their ministers preach in *Low-Dutch*, as well as *Danish*. They have a peculiar mode of dress, method of living, manners, &c. Their magistracy or inferior court consists of one Bailiff or headborough, assisted by four Justices. In the second the king's *Amtman* or Prefect, who presides over the Prefecture of *Copenhagen*, sits as judge; and last of all the Supreme College or Court of Judicature, from which lies no appeal. The inhabitants drive their cattle to pasture for most part of the summer to a small island in the neighbourhood, called *Saltholm*. There are excellent quarries of stone for lime and building on this island. In *Resenius's Atlas* there is a map of the island of *Amack*.

*Fredericksberg* is a magnificent royal palace, situated on a hill, about half a geographical mile west of *Copenhagen*. This structure derives its name from *Frederick IV.* who was the founder of it, and has been since greatly enlarged by *Christian VI.* This edifice is very spacious and magnificent on every side, and has an exceeding fine prospect. The garden, which lies below the hill is very extensive, and contains a great number of pleasant walks, several groves, a labyrinth, a theatre, a great many statues, fountains, and summer-houses. Here is, in particular, an extraordinary cascade just fronting the palace, but not yet finished. You descend from the  
palace

palace by two flights of broad stone steps to the garden. The menagery, which is in the garden, is stocked with several uncommon animals, among which are lions, tygers, &c. The orangery, and the yard for pheasants and falcons are also worth seeing. From this palace a pleasant avenue planted with a double row of trees extends about half way to *Copenhagen*.

*Sorgensfrey* is a small royal palace about a geographical mile and half to the north of *Copenhagen*. This seat was built by Count *Charles of Alefeld*, at a great expence, and was purchased by *Frederick IV.* of the Count of *Holstein* the Great Chancellor. Afterwards the prince's royal *Sophia Hedewig* resided in it; and his present majesty has allotted it for the prince's dowager of *East-Friesland*, who makes it her summer residence.

*Jagersburg* is a royal hunting-seat, which the present king caused to be rebuilt and improved. Near this seat formerly stood the noble palace of *Istrup*; but the edifice which now stands on the spot was built by *Christian IV.* and improved by the succeeding kings of *Denmark*. Here the hunting-officers reside, and this place is the repository for all hunting implements. From hence you come through a straight avenue to

The noble park of *Charlottenlund*, which is so called from *Charlottenlund*, the king's pleasure-house, which stands in it. At the distance of a quarter of a geographical mile from this park lies

The *Jagersburg* park, which is rather a very pleasant wood or forest. It is extensive, and affords a great deal of game. About the middle of it stands a new edifice called the *Hermitage*, which is 30 ells in length, 20 in breadth, and is very elegantly adorned both within and without. In the lowest story is a curious machine, by means of which the victuals, &c. are conveyed up and down, to and from the king's table in the second story, when his majesty dines there. From hence, over a small piece of arable land, you come to

*Freudenlund*, which is a small octagonal edifice, adjoining to which is a pleasure and kitchen garden. This place formerly belonged to the Count of *Reventlau*, Great Chancellor; but when it fell into the hands of *Frederick IV.* he caused all the old buildings to be pulled down, and this pleasure-house to be built on the spot.

II. The Prefecture of *HIRSCHHOLM*, in which the places of note are,

The castle of *Hirschholm*, a royal palace, which lies about a geographical mile from *Freudenlund*. This castle was formerly known by the name of *Hiortholm*, and being fortified according to the custom of those times, was a place of considerable strength: However, Count *Christopher of Oldenburg* besieged and took it in the year 1535. Nothing remains of the old castle at present but the name; for it was quite demolished, and the very situation of the place has been entirely altered by art. *Christian VI.* took possession of it as Prince Royal, and caused the foundation of a new edifice to be laid on the spot where the old castle stood; and his queen, after his



accession to the throne, continued the building; the king having made her a present of it. In 1737 all the old building was quite pulled down, in order to render the new edifice as regular as it was possible; and in 1739 it was finished, though every year since new improvements and embellishments have been continually made in it. The outside has a very magnificent appearance; nor is it less elegant within. The great hall deserves particular notice; for it takes up the height of two stories, and has a noble fountain in the middle, that throws up a column of water one or two and twenty feet high, which falls down again into a copper basin. The chapel is elegant and well adorned, and the garden very magnificent, and at the extremity of it, directly opposite to the palace, a new beautiful summer house is erected. On one side of the garden is an eminence covered with trees, on which stands the *Norway-house* as it is called, because it is built in the *Norwegian* taste. In this castle *Christian VI.* died *August 6, 1746.* The little town of *Hirschholm*, to which *Christian VI.* in 1739, granted the privileges of a city, lies a little below this castle.

*Sophienberg* is a royal pleasure house something above half a geographical mile from *Hirschholm*, and stands on an eminence near the sea. It was built a few years ago by the Queen dowager *Sophia Magdalena*, and has a fine prospect towards the sea. The house is very commodious, and elegantly furnished.

III. The Prefecture of *FREDERICKSBURG* contains,

1. The *Herred* or district of *Liunge-Fredericksburg*, in which are seven country churches, besides the following towns.

*Hillerod* is a pleasant town lying near the castle of *Fredericksburg*, with a commodious hospital, which was erected in 1726, by the king, for the maintenance of thirty infirm persons. This hospital was burnt down, together with the whole town, in 1733; but was rebuilt in the following year. The school in this town was founded and endowed by *Christian IV.* in the year 1633; and by an ordinance of *Christian V.* every person that is created a knight of the order of the Elephant is obliged to contribute something towards this school.

*Slangerup* is a village situated not far from the bay of *Ifesford*. King *Erick Ejegod* was born here. This made him very fond of the place; and in 1102 he granted it some particular privileges, and built a convent and a church in it. In the reign of *Frederick II.* it was in a pretty flourishing state, but afterwards fell to decay, (which was principally owing to the town of *Fredericks-sund*;) and in 1724 it was consumed by fire. Close to this village is the place where king *Sven Estrisön* defeated *Knut* with a great slaughter.

*Fredericks-sund* is a town which lies about a geographical mile from *Slangerup*. It stands close by the sea, and is better situated for navigation than the latter; so that it has engrossed all the trade by which *Slangerup* subsisted, which was chiefly by exporting corn.



2. The *Herred of Stroe*, which contains eleven churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the famous castle of *Fredericksburg*, which stands at the distance of four geographical miles from *Copenhagen*, and one from *Friedensburg*. *Christian IV.* caused the old building, which stood on this spot, to be pulled down, and the present magnificent castle of *Fredericksburg* to be built by the ablest and most celebrated architects in *Europe*. It stands in a fresh water lake, and consists of three principal parts, each of which is surrounded with water; but they are all joined together by bridges. The first division, to which you pass over a bridge, resembles a horn-work, the front of which is quite round, and faced with stone. On both sides are several buildings lying in a strait line, which serve either as dwelling houses for the artificers and other officers of the castle, or stables for horses, &c. From hence you come over a stone-bridge to a grand high tower, which stands over the gate that leads into the second court of the castle. On each side of this court, to the right and left, stands a magnificent building, in one of which are the king's kitchen, the Governor's house, and several apartments for the noblemen belonging to the Court; and in the other the *Amtman* or chief magistrate of this Prefecture resides. Out of this second court a fine stone bridge built over a deep canal leads to the grand portico of the principal entrance of the castle, which is built with free stone, and decorated with sculpture and gilding. The principal building consists of a *corps de logis* and two wings, four stories high, which are all covered with copper, and adorned with several towers, of which the church tower is the highest. Both the wings are joined to the front by a low building of one story. Upon the first entrance into the inner court of the castle, the magnificence of the structure, the beauty of the marble, the elegance of the sculpture, and the costliness of the gilding fills the beholder with wonder and astonishment. But what chiefly strikes the eye, is a noble imitation of the ancient architecture, which are the two grand arcades, one over the other, in the front of the building. They consist of seven arches below, and as many above, which are built with free stone, and embellished with statues that stand either in niches, or detached from the wall, with many other ornaments. Near one of the wings is a beautiful fountain; and which way soever you turn your eyes in this inner court, curious sculpture and a variety of other ornaments present themselves to your view. In the church belonging to this castle the eye is almost dazzled by the glittering of gold, silver, curious marble, and other things of value with which it is embellished. The altar is of black marble, and the front of the table of the purest silver and ebony; and the pulpit is made of the same materials. From the gallery you have a view of the large pictures, with which the pilasters between the windows are decorated. In the windows and on the walls of this church the escutcheons of the knights of the *Danebrog* order, with their arms, names, and motto's are to be seen. The gallery

lery leads to a spacious place behind the altar, where the royal throne is erected; and on the walls, which are hung with crimson velvet, are seen the arms of all the knights of the order of the Elephant. The grand organ in this apartment is a fine toned instrument, and is curiously embellished with sculpture and gilding. Formerly a fine organ of silver and ebony likewise stood here. Both the royal closets in the church are very beautiful and magnificent. The kings of *Denmark* are always anointed in this church. In the tower there is a fine ring of bells. All the apartments of the castle are very magnificent, especially the knights ball-room, which is over the church in the third story: it is quite as broad, and something longer than the latter. In this grand apartment, which was designed for festivity and all manner of diversions, there is also a noble organ. The gardens are very elegant, and at the extremity of them, *Christian VI.* caused a spacious summer-house to be built in the year 1745.

IV. The Prefecture of *Kronburg* consists,

1. Of the *Herred* or district of *Liunge-Kronburg*, which contains 3 churches.

2. Of the *Herred* of *Holboe*, consisting of 13 churches. The parish of *Soeborg* is remarkable for an island in a fresh water lake on which formerly stood the town of *Soeborg*, a place of great antiquity, where a great number of state-prisoners were confined. Not far from it the old ruinous castle of *Gurre* is to be seen. The parish of *Tibirke* is famous for a fine spring called *Helena's Well*, which was held in great veneration in times of popery. In this district is also the king's demesne called *Esferum*, which is a very pleasant woody spot, watered by rivers and lakes abounding with fish. A stud of horses is kept here at present. Before the Reformation, a very rich and famous convent of *Bernardines* stood in this place. It was founded in 1150, and was the principal monastery of that order in *Denmark*, from which all the Northern kingdoms were supplied with monks. Lastly, not far from this place, near the Village *Tbiesvelde*, a triangular pillar with *Latin*, *Danish*, and *German* inscriptions was erected in 1738, in honour of *Frederick IV.* and *Christian VI.* for having put a stop to the progress of the *Flying Sand*, which, like a rapid stream, overwhelmed one tract of land and village after another, and threatened the best part of *Seeland* with desolation. But for a long time no means could be devised to put an end to this devastation, till at last, in the reigns of the two monarchs above mentioned, a remedy was found out for this evil, and executed under the inspection of the Prefect *Frederick von Gram*, by the address of *John Ulr. Rohl*. At present this sandy waste is covered with verdure, and looks like a fine meadow.

In this Prefecture are the following towns and castles.

*Helsingoer* or *Elfinore*, *Helsingora*, a town situated on the *Oeresund* or *Sound*, directly over against *Helsingburg* in *Schonen*, on the declivity of a hill. It derives its name from the *Helsingers*, an ancient *Gothic* colony. This place



was but a small town, till king *Erick* of *Pomerania* bestowed on it the privileges of a city, in the year 1425. This is the richest and most elegant town in *Seeland*, except *Copenhagen*. It has two churches, in one of which, *viz.* *St. Peter's*, the ministers preach in the *German* language; a grammar school, in which 33 poor scholars are educated and maintained *gratis*; and a good hospital, which was formerly a convent, but converted to this use in 1541. *Helsingoer* is a town of considerable trade, and famous, as well on account of its being the place by which the *Swedes* and *Norwegians* usually pass into *Denmark*, as for the toll, which is here paid by every ship that sails through the *Sound*. On this account, every nation that trades to the *Baltic* has its Consul here, who appears for his countrymen at the Toll-booth, and defends their privileges on other occasions. The king's custom-house at *Helsingoer* is a fine new edifice. In the year 1311 this city was laid waste and plundered by the inhabitants of *Rostock* and *Wisnar*, and was sacked a second time in 1522 by the combined fleet of the *Hanse-towns*. *Christian II.* would have given this town up to the *Dutch*, but the inhabitants opposed it; on which account they incurred that monarch's displeasure, and the toll or custom-house was removed to *Copenhagen*: However, it did not continue there long. The king was not concerned, or displeased, when *Helsingoer* was reduced to ashes in the year 1522.

On the north side of this city stands the famous castle and important fort called *Kronburg*, *Cronaburgum*, which was erected by *Frederick II.* between the years 1574, and 1585. It is built with large blocks of hewn stone in the most durable manner, and makes the best appearance of any of the old castles in *Denmark*, excepting *Fredericksburg*. It is adorned with several turrets and a variety of sculpture, and has a church or chapel. The fortifications or works of this castle are in excellent condition. Not far from *Kronburg*, near *Helsingoer*, and without the *Red Gate*, lies the royal pleasure-garden, which is pretty extensive, and encompassed with a wall. A summer-house was built in it by *Frederick II.* which has been since improved by *Christian V.* On this spot stood formerly a convent of *Carmelite* monks, which was founded in the year 1430. The *Sound* is half a geographical mile or 1331 fathoms broad, opposite to this castle. There has always been a strong castle on this spot, to defend the *Sound*, before the town of *Helsingoer* was built. The most ancient of these, that we have any account of, was called *Fluuderburg*; and the last of them was called *Kroge* or *Oerekrog*. In 1659 the present fort was besieged by the *Swedes*, and taken by stratagem.

*Fredensborg*, or *Friedensburg*, is a royal palace pleasantly situated about two geographical miles from *Kronburg*. *Frederick IV.* was invited to build this palace by the charming situation, on the spot where formerly stood a farm called *Oelstrup*, and stables for breeding horses. As the edifice was completed in the year 1720, when the treaty of peace (*Friedens-tractat*) was concluded.



concluded with *Sweden*, the king gave it this name. *Frederick IV.* was extremely fond of this place, and often made it his residence; especially about the latter part of his reign. In order to render it in every respect elegant and agreeable, whatever nature was wanting in, he endeavoured to supply by art. The inner court is a regular octagon, which is formed by seven wings one story high, and the main building, which is directly opposite to the principal entrance, makes the eighth side. There is a fountain in the middle of the court which is adorned with a marble statue representing Peace, made at *Florence*, in the centre of it. The *corps de logis*, or main building, is in the form of a parallelogram; it is covered with copper, and has a spacious, light and elegant square hall in the middle. The other apartments in both stories are furnished in the most elegant manner. The garden is not very extensive; but well laid out, and embellished with several statues, vases, and other ornaments. It is surrounded with a large wood in which several vistas are cut, and affords plenty of game. From the palace there is a charming prospect, as the eye commands almost all the vistas at once; and at the end of them appears an extensive lake called the *Esseromer*-lake, on which is a beautiful yacht, that in winter lies under cover in a house built for the purpose. Near the palace is also a fine orangery which is joined to it by a covered passage, and an elegant church. In the wood adjoining to the garden is the menagery, which is stocked with a variety of beautiful tame and wild fowl.

V. The Prefecture of *JAGERSPREIS* contains only the single *Herred* or district of *Horn*, in which are ten Churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from *Jagerspreis*, a royal hunting seat, which is a very ancient structure. It was formerly called *Abrahamsstrup*, under which name mention is made of it in an instrument dated as early as the year 1382.

*Frederick IV.* and *Christian VI.* have enlarged this palace with new and elegant buildings, and also much improved and embellished the old. The garden is neat and elegant, and the adjacent country is, in general, extremely pleasant.

VI. The Prefecture of *ROESKILD* consists,

1. Of the *Herred* or district of *Somme*, including 13 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Tbune*, containing 12 churches.
3. The *Herred* of *Ramsøe*, in which are 13 churches.
4. The *Herred* of *Woldborg*, including 12 churches.

Within this Prefecture are the following towns and castles.

*Roeskild* or *Rosbild*, in Latin *Roeskildia*, or *Roefontes*, is an ancient and famous city, situated about a quarter of a geographical mile from the extremity of the bay of *Ifseford*. This city derives its name from *Roe*, the eleventh king of *Denmark*, who was the founder of it, and the word *kilde*, which

which signifies a spring; for there are several excellent springs on the spot where it stands. Hence it appears that *Roeskild* was built between the years of the world 3320, and 3630. But waving this particular, which I shall leave undetermined, it is certain, that it was first surrounded with a rampart and ditch in the year of Christ 1150; and that in 1268, or 1278, it obtained the privileges of a city. As the bishops of this see were in possession of *Roeskild*, it increased to such an extent, as to contain 27 large churches and convents within its walls. Some of the churches of the neighbouring villages were formerly included within its circuit, and the streets extended quite to the sea shore. The kings of *Denmark* were formerly elected and crowned in this city, and also made it the place of their residence. The great decay into which this city afterwards fell was partly owing to frequent fires, partly to the intolerable tyranny of the bishops who resided here, and partly to the flourishing state of *Copenhagen*, which is but four geographical miles from it. Lastly, the Reformation must have been, in a great measure, the cause of it; for in consequence of the change in Religion, the monks and clergy, who spent their large revenues in this place, were obliged to quit the country. *Roeskild* consists, at present, only of an inconsiderable number of houses, which, for the most part, are meanly built; and the inhabitants support themselves by trade and industry; but their chief employment is agriculture and the planting of tobacco. There are two remarkable springs at *Roeskild*, viz. the *Roe's-well* at the end of *Olufs-street*, and the *Holy-cross-spring*, at the extremity of the town, from which water is carried every week to *Copenhagen* for the use of the Court; it being reckoned very wholesome and pleasant to drink.

The cathedral church, if there were no other, is a standing monument of the ancient grandeur of this town. It is inferred from a monumental inscription in memory of king *Harald Bloatand* which is to be seen in the choir, that this church was built with timber by that monarch about the year 980; but that the foundation of a large stone edifice being afterwards laid, it was finished about the year 1084, and was dedicated to St. *Lucius*, and after that to the holy Trinity. This church was thrice consumed by fire, namely, in 1282, 1443, and 1525; but was not built in so magnificent a manner after these accidents, as it had been before. However, it is still a very handsome light church, and is partly covered with copper, and partly with lead. In 1635 it was adorned with two high towers by *Christian IV.* Its greatest ornaments are the burying place and monuments of the kings of *Denmark*. In the church are to be seen the superb marble monuments of *Christian V.* and *Frederick IV.* inclosed in a square area; and in a vault under them the remains of the children belonging to the royal family are interred. From hence you come to the monument of the famous *Queen Margaret*, who presented this church formerly with a fine altar, on which  
stood

stood the images of the twelve Apostles, each as big as a child of three years old, of massy gold; which king *Erick* of *Pomerania* carried away with him when he left *Denmark*. This monument stands behind a rich altar, which represents the history of our Saviour in *Basso rilievo* finely gilded. It was brought hither in the time of *Christian IV.* from *Fredericksburg*, and is opened only on certain days every year, and in time of divine service; but is shewn to strangers at other times. To the right is a vault divided into three parts, in which *Christian IV.* *Frederick III.* their queens, and several of their children are interred. Over this vault is a chapel, in which the bodies of the kings and queens of *Denmark* are deposited till they are buried\*; and at present the bodies of *Christian VI.* and *Louisa* the late queen, consort of *Frederick V.* lie in magnificent mausoleums. Here is to be seen a capital piece of painting representing *Frederick III.* lying on a bed of state. Opposite to this, on the left side of the church, is the chapel of the three *wise Men*, or *Magi*, which *Christian I.* caused to be built in 1464. Here the superb marble monuments of *Christian III.* and *Frederick II.* are erected; but the remains of these two monarchs and their queens, and, as is supposed, those of *Christian I.* *Christopher* of *Bavaria*, &c. lie in the vault under the monument. Near this chapel is that of *St. Lawrence*, in which a curious font, with several old pictures, &c. are to be seen. There are in this church a great number of epitaphs of persons famous for their dignity, or learning. Of the latter *Saxo Grammaticus*, and *Nic. Hemming* lie buried here. A royal Palace, which is not very large, was built here in 1733, out of the materials of the old palace, which had been pulled down. It has a communication with the church by means of a covered passage. On the other side of the church stands an edifice in which, at present, the Provosts, belonging to the See of *Seeland*, meet twice a year under the Bishop and general Governor of the Province. Not far from this building is the *Regency*, in which the Con-Rector, and 20 students are maintained *gratis*. In the Cathedral school six masters and forty scholars are maintained and educated: this is the best endowed of any school in *Seeland*. Here is also an hospital for six poor widows, with an alms-house, which, in 1570, was richly endowed by *Frederick II.* who joined three others to it for that purpose. In 1699 *Margaret Ublefeld*, and *Bridget Schuel* founded a convent in this town for one and twenty ladies of quality and a Prioresse. Each of these ladies has a yearly pension of 80 Rixdollars, besides an apartment, board, &c. *Christian V.* also endowed this convent with 500 Rixdollars, arising from a mine in *Norway* and the tithes of two parishes. The other church, which stands at one end of the town, is dedicated to the virgin *Mary*. Money was formerly coined in this church, and a vast num-

\* This custom is also observed in *France*; where *Lewis XIV.* still lies unburied at *St. Denis* till his successor dies.



ber of reliques were kept here in popish times. About the middle of the 12th century a fraternity was instituted here which was partly ecclesiastical, and partly a military order. The members of it were called *Milites*, or *Fratres Roschildenses*, who, afterwards, spread themselves all over *Seeland*. They defended the sea-coast against the insults of the idolatrous *Vandals*. In 1012 this place was erected into a bishop's-see; in 1291 a great synod was held, and in 1658 the famous peace of *Roschild* was concluded, in this city.

*Lethbrørg* is a considerable castle belonging to Count *John Lewis Holstein*, at the distance of a geographical mile from *Roschild*. Here are still to be seen some remains of the ancient *Lethra* or *Leyre*, which was originally a royal palace; but afterwards *Rollo Krakus* built a fine city on the spot, where the ancient *Danish* kings resided; hence they were called *Reges Lethra*. Here is also a large stone, not unlike a chair; and, as the kings used to receive homage in this seat, it was called *Kongstolen*, i. e. the king's chair. In the dark ages of Heathenism 99 men, and as many horses, dogs, and cocks were slain and offered here to the gods once in nine years, in the month *January*; and it was looked upon as the most sacred place in *Seeland*. *M. J. P. Ancherfen*, in his learned treatise, entitled *Hertbedal ved Leyre i Siaeland*, thinks it very probable, that the famous *Hertbedal*, where the goddess *Hertba* was worshipped, stood on this spot.

*Kiøge*, in Latin *Coagia*, is a small town situated in a fertile country, at the mouth of the little river *Koogaae*, on the *Baltic*. It is still in a pretty flourishing condition, and carries on some trade in the *Baltic*; but was formerly a considerable trading city. In the market-place, which is a handsome large area, stands the council house, a well built edifice. Here are also an elegant church, a grammar school, and a good hospital, or alms-house, which, before the year 1531, was a monastery of *Gray Friars*. The fine tapestry with which the palace of *Fridericksburg* is hung, was made in this town. In 1633 *Kiøge* was greatly damaged by a great fire. In 1659 *Charles Gustavus*, king of *Sweden*, fortified it with ditches and ramparts. In 1677 the *Danish* admiral *Niels Juel* defeated the *Swedish* fleet in the bay of *Kiøge*.

In this district lies also the County of *Bregentveck*, which belongs to the Count of *Moltre*.

VII. The Prefecture of *HOLBECK* consists,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Tutze*, which includes 13 Churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Mehrlose*, containing 20 Churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the little town of *Holbeck*, which lies in a fertile soil on an arm of the *Ifesford* gulf, and has a good harbour, from which a great quantity of corn is exported every year. In 1290, this town was plundered and destroyed by the *Norwegian* fleet. In 1317, *Birger*, the exiled king of *Sweden*, took refuge here; and *Erick*, his brother-in-law, put him in possession of the town of *Holbeck* for life.

VIII:

VIII. The Prefecture of DRAXHOLM consists only of the single *Herred* or district of *Odd*, including nine churches, and is a fertile peninsula. In this Prefecture lie the following places of note.

*Nyekiöbing* is a middling town; but was formerly a considerable city, and still enjoys the privileges of one, with the advantages of navigation and a good harbour.

*Draxholm* is an old castle, to which a considerable estate belongs. It was formerly a fief of the Crown, and a place of considerable strength, in which several state-prisoners were confined; in particular the wicked Earl of *Bothwell*, husband of the unfortunate *Mary Queen of Scotland*. He did penance for his atrocious crimes from the year 1576 by a long confinement in this castle.

IX. The Prefecture of KALLUNDBORG consists,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Artz* including 9 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Schipping* containing 11 churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the city of *Kallundborg*, in Latin *Callunda*, one of the most flourishing towns in *Seeland*. It has the best harbour on the island except *Copenhagen*. The inhabitants carry on a considerable trade, and a great quantity of malt is annually exported from hence. *St. Mary's Church*, which has four high spires, makes a good appearance. From this town the passage to *Aarhuus* in *Jutland* is usually performed in 12 hours: for which purpose a certain number of *smacks* sail twice a week from one town to the other. In the castle, which was formerly very strong but now fallen to decay, *Christian II.* died in his confinement. *Albert*, king of *Sweden*, was also confined here; but, in 1658, the *Swedes*, out of revenge, blew up the castle. This town was built in the year 1171; and in 1249, and 1314, ecclesiastical synods were held here.

In the territory belonging to this town lies also the castle of *Oestrup*, which at present belongs to Count *Lerch* of *Lerchenfeld*.

The island *Samsøe*, or *Sams*, in Latin *Samsøa*, lies about eight geographical miles from *Kallundborg*, and four from *Aarhuus* in *Jutland*, over against *Funen*, where the *Great Belt* is separated from the *Little Belt*. This island, as to spirituals, is subject to the Bishop of *Aarhuus*; but in temporals it is under the Prefect of *Kallundborg*, and therefore must be described here. It is three geographical miles long, and one broad: It has several hills and eminences, three of which are capes or promontories. The soil, for the most part, is fertile, and in particular yields plenty of good pease: hence most of the Inhabitants are in good circumstances, and carry on a considerable trade with their small craft. *Samsøe* consists of five parishes, namely, *Bodzer*, *Onsberg*, *Kaalbye*, *Nordbye* and *Frandberg*. In the last are still to be seen the ruins of the ancient castle of

*Bratingsborg*, which stood upon an eminence, and was encompassed with a treble rampart and ditch ; but in 1288 was razed to the ground. -In the parish of *Kaalbye* formerly stood the castle of *Visborg*. On the east side of this island lie the small islands *Hiortholm* (which was formerly fortified with a castle) *Kibolm*, *Lindbolm*, and *Veyeroe*. These form three harbours, two of which, *viz.* *Langoe* and *Gammelbolm* are fit to receive vessels of a middling size only, but that of *Veyeroe* is a good harbour for large ships. On this side of the island also is that dangerous place called the *Bott-sack*. On the west side lies the little island *Tbunoe*, which is mostly covered with wood. It consists of one parish, and was bequeathed in 1216 to the Cathedral church near *Aarbuus*. Lastly, near the south end of *Samsfoe* lies the Island *Endelau* or *Endoe* : Between *Samsfoe*, *Endoe* and *Tbunoe* there are several sandy shoals. In *Resenius's* Atlas, and likewise in his description of *Samsfoe*, there is a map of this island.

X. The Prefecture of *SABYEGAARD* consists of the single *Herred* of *Lowe*, which contains 15 churches.

XI. The Prefecture of *RINGSTED* consists of the *Herred* of the same name, which includes 17 churches. At *Harrested*, in this Prefecture, Duke *Knut*, who was called the *Saint*, was basely murdered by his uncle king *Magnus*. This Prefecture derives its name from

*Ringsted*, in Latin *Ringstadium*, which was built by, and called after the name of *Ring* king of *Denmark* ; so that next to *Roschild*, it must be the most ancient town in *Seeland*. *Ringsted* lies in the middle of *Seeland*, and was anciently a large city ; but by several fires, especially in the years 1692, 1716, and 1747 it has been greatly reduced ; so that at present it is but a small town, built since the last fire. The great church was erected in 1475, and was famous for several popish reliques. In it lie buried several kings, queens, &c. as *Waldemar I.* *Waldemar II.* *Erick the Saint*, Duke *Knut the Saint*, and other persons of distinction. This church, like the convent in this town, has been called by different names, *viz.* *St. Mary's*, or the *Virgin's Church*, *St. Knut's the Martyr*, and *St. Benedict's*. The said convent was built towards the close of the 11th century, and dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*. It was inhabited by *Benedictine* monks, and afterwards called *St. Knut's* convent. The edifice, which is close to the church, being still entire, is sold to a private person, together with the estate with which it was endowed. Of *St. John's* church there is but little remaining besides the church yard. This town is still famous for the court of judicature, to which an appeal lies from all the courts of *Seeland*, except *Copenhagen* and some other towns ; whereas from this court there is no appeal but to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*. It is held once every month in one part of the church.

XII. The Prefecture of *SOROE* contains the *Herred* of *Alsted*, to which belong 16 churches. It derives its name from



*Soroe*, in Latin *Sora*, which is a noted little town situated in a pleasant country. It is surrounded by three fresh-water lakes, called the lakes of *Sor*, *Thule*, and *Petersburg*, and these again are almost encompassed with fine woods. This town is remarkable for the Royal Academy, which lies at the south-end of it, the history of which is as follows: The sons of *Skialmo Hvide*, in the 12th century, founded a monastery in this place, in which the famous archbishop *Absalon Hvide* placed some *Cistercian* Monks in 1161. This convent was extremely rich; but in 1580, after the Reformation, it was dissolved, and the noble endowment annexed to it fell to the Crown, upon which the king placed his Prefects over it. *Frederick II.* in 1586, founded a school in this place, in which 30 children of persons of Quality, and 30 other children born of reputable parents are educated and maintained *gratis*. After this *Christian IV.* in 1613, converted it into a public Academy, which he nobly endowed from the revenues of the ancient monastery and those of a convent at *Marieboe* in *Laaland*, and improved and enlarged with elegant new buildings. The Academy flourished for forty years, and was very much frequented by persons of distinction, both *Danes* and foreigners. *Charles Gustavus*, afterwards king of *Sweden*, had studied here; on which account he abstained from committing any hostilities against this place in 1659. But as the number of the students greatly decreased, and the revenues of it were much exhausted by the war, the few that remained were, in 1665, removed to other places; and some of the professors were invited to *Copenhagen*, whilst others withdrew elsewhere. However, *Frederick III.* founded a school here for a certain number of noblemen's and burgher's children, which was continued till the year 1734, when *Christian VI.* dissolved it quite, for some time. But as he had formed the design of renewing the former Academy for the Nobility, he caused the present magnificent and elegant building to be erected for that purpose. But this monarch dying soon after, *Frederick V.* completed the design, and founded the Academy a second time. He also endowed it with a large revenue, which the famous baron *Holberg* considerably encreased, by bequeathing his whole estate to it. To this Academy belong a Grand-Master, an Inspector, Professors in all the sciences which relate to civil or political employments, a Master of the *French* language, and a Riding-Master, with proper Masters for fencing, dancing, and drawing. There is also a printing-press set up in this Academy. The Academists have their apartments in a large and commodious stone building. The Grand-Master, as Prefect of the Prefecture of *Soroe*, has the same authority in the town of *Soroe* as the General-Governors of provinces have in the other towns. The Academy is under the jurisdiction of its own officers; and in all causes the Grand-Master presides as judge, assisted by the Inspector and Professors. This Academy also enjoys several

other privileges, which may be seen in its statutes of the year 1747. The great church is at present the only remains of the old monastery, and in it lie buried several kings and princes, as *Waldemar III. &c.* with several persons of distinction and learning. It serves for the town and Academy-church, and the professor of Divinity is the preacher. In the lake of *Soroe* a large fish is often taken, called in Danish *Malle*, and in Latin *Silurus*, or *mustela maxima*. Some of this species are above four ells in length; but they are found no where else in *Denmark*.

The Barony of *Holberg*, which was the property of the famous and learned Baron of that name, who bequeathed it to the academy of *Soroe*, consists of two estates; one of which, called *Terstose*, lies in the Prefecture of *Holbeck*, and the other called *Brorup*, in the Prefecture of *Anderskow*.

XIII. The Prefecture of *KORSOER*, consists of the *Herred* of *Slagelse*, which includes 13 country churches. In this Prefecture are the following towns.

*Korsøer*, in Latin *Crucifora*, a small town situated on a point of land in the *Great-Belt*, opposite the town of *Nyeborg* in *Funen*. The distance between these towns is about four geographical miles; and this is the usual passage across the *Great-Belt*. In 1661, this town obtained the staple-privilege, and carries on a considerable trade by sea. Its harbour is one of the best in *Seeland*, being very commodious for such vessels as do not draw above nine feet water; but the buildings are mean and irregular. The parish church is a very indifferent structure, and contains nothing remarkable but a good piece of painting, which was a present from the University of *Copenhagen*, and represents the women bringing their young children to Christ. On the sea-shore, near the town, stands an ancient royal palace, surrounded with a ditch and rampart; in part of which the Commandant and some other persons have apartments, and the other part serves for a granary, and commands the harbour.

*Slagelse*, in Latin *Slaglosia*, is a pretty large and populous town; but, for the most part, consists of mean houses. It was built by the ancient hero *Slag* or *Slaw*, one of the ancestors of Bishop *Abfalon*, about the close of the 10th century, and originally belonged to his family, but afterwards fell to the crown. Here are two parish churches, a well endowed hospital which has a chapel, and a grammar-school in which twenty scholars are maintained and educated. The inhabitants apply themselves chiefly to planting tobacco, and agriculture, for the territory belonging to the town is very extensive; as for trade there is but little stirring here. *Slagelse* was greatly damaged by fire in 1652 and 1740. Many strange miracles are related, which the pretended holy monk *Andrew*, who died here in 1203, is said to have wrought.

*Andwort-*

*Andwortschow*, or *Anderstow*, a large royal palace, stands on an eminence at a small distance to the east of *Slagelse*. It was formerly a very grand monastery belonging to the monks of the order of St. *John*, and erected by *Waldemar II.* in 1220; but after the Reformation, it was converted into a palace. Here *Frederick II.* who was very fond of this place, out of his extraordinary zeal threw the *Concordat* into the fire, in 1580. He also considerably enlarged and embellished this palace, where he ended his days; and *Frederick IV.* in 1720, repaired the church belonging to it. At this day, however, it makes no extraordinary appearance. In 1546, a national synod was held here by all the Bishops of *Denmark*.

XIV. The Prefecture of *ANDERSKOW* contains the *Herreds* of *West* and *East Flackeberg*; the former including 18, and the latter 13 country churches. Places of note in this Prefecture are,

*Skjelskior*, or *Skjelskior*, which is a small town, but better built than *Korsøer*. It carries on a middling trade by sea. Near the parish-church there was formerly a convent of *Carmelites*, which was founded in 1418. There is a profitable fishery hereabouts, particularly of eels.

The County of *Holsteinburg*, with a castle of the same name, which belongs to the Counts of *Holstein*.

*Herlufsholm*, which is a free-school situated at the distance of a quarter of a geographical mile from *Nestwed*. The first inhabitants of this place were some *Benedictine* monks, who, in 1261, deserted their convent near St. *Peter's* church at *Nestwed*, that had been burnt, and removed to a neighbouring wood, which they called *Skov-kloster*, *i. e.* the convent in the wood. This monastery was richly endowed; but at the time of the Reformation, the revenues of it were confiscated, and an *Amt-man* or Prefect set over the place in the king's name. But after the famous admiral *Herluf Trolle* gave *Hillerodsholm* (the place where *Fredericksburg* now stands) to *Frederick II.* in exchange for this convent in the wood; he founded the present free-school in 1564, and endowed it with the whole estate, which brings in yearly about 3000 Rix-dollars. He likewise called the place *Herlufsholm*, after his own name, and ordered that a super-inspector and super-administrator, for the management of the school and the endowment annexed to it, should be elected alternately from the *Trolles*, his own family, and the *Goeses*, his wife's family. After his death, which happened in 1665, his widow was no less indefatigable in carrying on the building than the admiral had been; but it was not quite completed till after her decease. At present, twenty youths are instructed and provided with all necessaries on this foundation. The old monastery is still the principal building belonging to the school. It is situated in a charming pleasant country; and is watered by the river which runs through *Nestwed*, and surrounded with a wood. In the small, but elegant church belonging to this place are some valuable monuments of many famous men; among which



which we shall only take notice of those of the founder of the school, and the *Danish* Historian *Arild Hvitfeld*.

XV. The Prefecture of *WORDINGBORG* consists,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Tyberg* including 14 churches.
2. The *Herred* of *Hammer* containing 11 churches.
3. The *Herred* of *Baarfe*, which has 13 churches. From the village of *Kallebauge*, is the usual passage to the island of *Moen*. Within this Prefecture are the following places.

*Nestwed* is a pretty large town but meanly built, situated on the river *Nes*, in a pleasant and fertile spot. This river divides the town into two unequal parts, which are called *Great* and *Little Nestwed*, and then runs into the *Baltic*: This gives the inhabitants an opportunity of carrying on some little trade. Here are two parish churches, namely, *St. Peter's* and *St. Martin's*. In the former, among the remains of the popish superstition, an image of the royal Saint *Knut*, curiously cut in wood and finely gilded, and a crucifix which is well executed are to be seen. There were formerly several convents in this town; and there is a piece of money still extant, which was coined here. In the year 1259, a bloody and decisive battle was fought near *Nestwed*; and in 1271, the town was much damaged by fire.

*Wordingborg*, in Latin *Orthunga*, is a small town situated on the most southern point of *Seeland* on a bay called the *Gronfund*. This place is looked upon as the most delightful and pleasant spot in the whole island. This town has a grammar-school; and the inhabitants live partly by agriculture, and partly by using the sea. As for the ancient castle that stood near it, which *Waldemar I.* built in 1066, and intended for a place of great strength; nothing but the ruinous remains of it are now to be seen. *Waldemar III.* who was exceedingly fond of this place, resided here for the most part, and, in derision of the *Hanse-towns*, built the well known tower, which, from a golden goose erected on the top of it, he called *gans*, *i. e.* the *Goose*. In this tower he purposed to confine the prisoners of the *Hanse-towns* that should fall into his hands in the war he intended to carry on against them. As the old castle gradually fell to decay, Prince *George*, who was brother to *Christian V.* and married to *Anne* Queen of *England*, built here an entire new castle, which *Frederick IV.* afterwards enlarged; but that edifice, not long since, was pulled down. The usual passage to the islands *Falster* and *Lolland* is from this place. In 1240, at a famous Diet held here, the old *Jutische Low-buck*, or *Codex legum Juticarum* was compiled and promulged: This body of laws is still in force in *South-Jutland*. In 1256, another Diet was held, and in 1658 preliminaries for a peace between *Denmark* and *Sweden* were treated of in this town.

*Prastoe*, in Latin *Presbyteronesus*, is a middling town, and has a commodious harbour, from which a good deal of corn is exported. Formerly a convent  
of

of the *Fratres Calendarii*, and another monastery stood here. In 1750 this town was destroyed by fire.

*Giffelfeld* is a considerable estate, which Count *Guldenlowe* bequeathed to a convent of nuns, one half of the number to be the daughters of persons of Quality, and the other half the daughters of citizens.

XVI. The Prefecture of TRYGGEVELDE consists,

1. Of the *Herred* of *Biefverskow*, which includes 12 churches. In the village of *Herfogle* Queen *Anna Sophia* founded a hospital for the maintenance of twenty old men, and the instruction of ten children who are here taught by a master.

2. The *Herred* of *Faxoe*, which contains 11 churches, exclusive of that at *Wemmeltofte*.

3. The *Herred* of *Steven*, which is a peninsula, and has 10 churches. Places of note in this Prefecture are the following.

The County of *Walloe*, with a large and royal palace of the same name, lies near the little town of *Kioge*. The castle was at first built by the famous *Peter Oxe* and his consort *Mette Rosenkranz* in the year 1575: But it was afterwards considerably enlarged; and *Frederick IV.* particularly, made great additions to it, when the castle together with the County fell to the Crown. *Christian VI.* made a present of both to his consort, queen *Sophia Magdalena*, who instituted a religious Foundation here for women of noble families, and endowed it with the whole revenue of the County and the estates annexed to it. She also provided apartments for them in one of the four sides of the building. The consecration of the new convent was performed with great solemnity in 1738, and the princess *Frederica* of *Wurtemberg-Neustadt* was appointed the first Abbess of it.

*Wemmeltofte* is a very ancient seat, which formerly belonged to prince *Charles*, brother to *Frederick IV.* and his sister *Sophia Hedewig*: that prince generally resided, and at last ended his days in this seat. Both the prince and princess laid out vast sums in embellishing this palace, which is pleasantly situated, and bequeathed it by will, together with all the estate belonging to it, for a convent for ladies of Quality; which was founded in 1735. This Foundation has two *Curators* and two *Preachers*, one of which is a *Dane* and the other a *German*. Every Lady of this community is obliged to maintain and educate one orphan. This convent lies in the *Herred* of *Faxoe*.

*Store-Heddinge*, *i. e.* Great *Hedding*, or simply *Hedding*, is a very ancient but mean town. There are several good lime-kilns in the territory belonging to this town: It lies in the *Herred* of *Steven*.

*Tryggevelde*, in Latin *Tuta vallis*, is an ancient famous castle, near which, on an eminence, a pyramidal stone with a *Runic* inscription was formerly to be seen; but it stands now in *Walloe* at one end of the bridge.

The

The high and rocky promontory called *Steven's Klint*, which may be seen at a great distance, is remarkable, as well as the adjacent parts, for good stone-quarries.

XVII. The island of MOEN, *Mona*, or *Virginia Danica*, lies directly over against the little town of *Praetoe*; and between the latter and the island are the straits called the *Wolffund*. This island is four geographical miles in length from east to west, and two in breadth. The high chalky cliffs towards the *Baltic* may be seen a great way off at sea. One of them at a distance resembles a throne, and is therefore commonly called the *King's Chair*. Stones of an uncommon figure or shape are no where in greater plenty than on this coast. The soil is fertile in every part of the island, and yields great quantities of pease. It consists of one *Amt* or Prefecture, and one *Herred*, and contains seven rural parishes and the little town of *Stege*. The latter lies in the middle of the island, and was formerly a place of strength; for, in 1510, it successfully maintained a siege against the *Lubeckers*. It had also a fine castle called *Elmelund*, which the burghers in their fury demolished in the year 1534. Some years since, a free Marine Academy, or school for teaching navigation, was founded here by *Christian V.* but this foundation afterwards fell to decay. In *Resenius's Atlas* there is a map of this island. Between *Moen* and *Falster* lies the little island of *Boog* or *Bogoe*.

XVIII. The island of BORNHOLM, *Bornbolmia*, or *Boringia*, lies in the *Baltic*, about 16 geographical miles from the extreme point of *Seeland*, and 6 from *Ystad* in *Schonen*. It extends from North-North-West to South-South-East, about seven geographical miles in length, and is four in breadth. The soil is fertile and produces all kinds of grain, particularly oats. Here is also good pasturage or meadow-land; and a great quantity of butter is exported from this island. It likewise affords good lime-stone, marble quarries, and pit coals; and cement is also made in *Bornholm*. The coast, on account of many dangerous rocks or shoals, is inaccessible almost on every side: But in those places where there might be any danger of an enemy's landing, great guns are planted. Persons of quality, and other criminals, are usually banished to this island by way of punishment; and this was the fate of the infamous *Dippel*. In popish times this island belonged to the Archbishop of *Lund* in *Schonen*; and several disputes have from time to time arisen about it. In 1522 the *Lubeckers* made themselves masters of it, in whose hands it continued a long time. At the peace of *Roschild* it was ceded to the *Swedes*: But the inhabitants being treated with great severity by their new masters, took up arms in the same year (1658); and recovering their liberty under the conduct of *Jens Koefod*, they delivered up the island to the king of *Denmark*. By this means they greatly ingratiated themselves with his *Danish Majesty*, who sent them a letter of thanks; and in a second letter  
he



he graciously promised to take them under his immediate protection, which engagement the succeeding kings have ever since confirmed from time to time. Since that time *Bornholm* has been an hereditary Country belonging to the kings of *Denmark*. In 1678, 5000 of the *Swedish* troops, in their passage from *Pomerania* to *Sweden*, were stranded on this island; and those that escaped the fury of the waves were made prisoners of war tho' they were provided with *Danish* passes. The inhabitants keep up their own Militia, for the defence of the island; so that the king of *Denmark* is at no expence on that account. There is a Governor, Deputy Governor, *Amtman* or Prefect, and other officers, in this island; it consists of one Prefecture which contains about 100 villages, 16 rural churches, and the following places of note.

*Ronne*, or *Ronde*, is a little town on the south-west side of the island. Here the king's Governor or Commandant generally resides; there is also a grammar school in this town. The harbour is well fortified and sheltered from certain winds; but it is not very deep.

*Hafle*, *Svannike*, and *Nexoe* are little towns on the sea-coast which have harbours for small vessels.

*Aakirke* lies in the middle of the island, and has the privileges of a city. Here the provincial court and the synod are held.

*Hammerbius* is an old ruinous castle situated on the north angle of the island, and was formerly a strong fortress.

There is a map of this island in *Resenius's* Atlas.

Two geographical miles to the East of *Bornholm* stands a little fort known by the name of *Christiansøe*. It is built on five rugged rocks called *Ertolmen*, between which ships may lie commodiously at anchor in the middle of the sea. There are a few other inhabitants on these rocks besides the garrison. *Christian V.* erected this fort in the year 1684, and had a medal struck on the occasion.

## The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

## F U N E N.

THIS Diocese is the second in order, and includes *Funen*, *Langeland*, *Laaland*, *Falster*, and other smaller islands. It has two Governors; and under one of these are *Funen* and *Langeland*; and *Laaland* and *Falster* are subject to the other.

The island of FUNEN, in Danish *Fyen*, in Latin *Fionia*, lies between the *Great* and *Little Belt*. It is ten geographical miles in length from *Bogen-see* to *Swenborg*, and nine in breadth from *Affens* to *Nyborg*. Its name denotes a fine country, and indeed the whole island is fertile and very pleasant. On this account most of the noble families of the kingdom have for many years resided here; so that it is not easy to find in any other country of an equal extent so many noblemen's seats as there are in this island. The soil yields such plentiful crops of all sorts of grain, that the inhabitants may annually export above 100,000 barrels of rye, barley, oats and pease to *Norway* and *Sweden*, exclusive of their home consumption. It also produces a vast quantity of buck-wheat; and this sort of grain is chiefly cultivated by the inhabitants. They employ a great deal of time and care in breeding bees, and make a great quantity of fine mead or hydromel, which is exported to all parts of the kingdom. The apples that grow in *Funen* are also greatly admired; and it produces plenty of esculent herbs, and hops. In order to prevent too great a consumption of wood, the inhabitants use turf mostly for fuel. In the district of *Affens* there are two mountains of a considerable height, namely, the *Faustenbergr* and the *Ochsenbergr*; and near *Middelfabrt* there is also another hill. Here are several fresh-water lakes, and rivers abounding with fish; but none of them are navigable. In the bays, and all along the coast, a great quantity of sea fish, particularly cod, herring, eel, turbot, &c. are taken. The whole island is divided into five *Amts* or Prefectures, which are as follows:

I. The Prefecture of NYBORG, which consists,

1. Of the *Herred*, or district, of *Biergr*, in which 12 rural churches are included, with 10 noblemen's seats, and the Barony of *Scheelshorg*, formerly called *Eskieldshorg*, which belongs to Baron *Brockdorf*.

2. The *Herred* of *Winding*, which includes 16 rural churches, 10 noblemen's seats, and the Barony of *Holkenhavn*, with a noble castle which belongs to Baron *Holk*.

3. The

3. The *Herred of Aasum*, in which are 11 rural churches, and 5 noblemen's seats.

4. The *Herred of Gudme*, which contains 13 rural churches, and as many noblemen's seats.

5. The *Herred of Salling*, in which are 24 rural churches, 20 noblemen's seats, and the Barony of *Brabe-Trolleborg*, which belongs to the Counts of *Reventlau*. It was formerly a monastery belonging to the *Cistercian* order, and called *Holmekloster*, or *Holme* in *Funen*, in Latin *Insula Dei*; but *Henry Ranzau* purchased it of *Frederick II.* for 55,000 Rix-dollars in 1561, and called it *Ranzaubolm* after his own name. It was afterwards in the possession of the unfortunate *Key Lykkes*, and confiscated to the crown in 1661, in the reign of *Frederick III.* who granted it to *Manderup Brabe* and *Birgitte Trolle* his wife; hence it derives its present name, *Brabe-Trolleborg*.

6. The *Herred of Sund*, in which are 18 rural churches and 13 noblemen's seats. In the village of *St. Jurgen* there is an hospital for 30 poor persons, which was formerly a rich convent. The pleasant and fertile island of *Taastrup* lies over-against the town of *Swenborg*; it is two geographical miles long and one broad, and has three churches and several good villages. On the south-east end of the island, *Christian IV.* in 1629, built the castle of *Waldemarsburg* on a delightful spot; but, in 1677, *Christian V.* gave the whole island to the admiral *Niels Juul*, whose descendants are still in possession of it.

Within this Prefecture are the following towns.

*Nyborg*, in Latin *Neoburgum*, is a strong town on the *Great-Belt*. It is not, indeed, very large; but has a commodious situation, and is well built.

The parish-church, and the council-house are the best in the island. There is a grammar-school at *Nyborg*, and a harbour, which, indeed, is large, but neither deep enough, nor sheltered from some winds. The inhabitants subsist partly by accommodating the passengers who daily cross over from hence to *Korsør* in *Seeland* (which is a passage of four geographical miles) or return hither from thence; and partly by commerce. The ships, that pass through the *Great-Belt* are obliged to pay toll here; for which purpose a man of war is always stationed in the *Belt*. All that remains of the ancient royal palace, where *Christian II.* was born in 1481, and, when an infant, carried up to the top of it by a monkey and brought down again without receiving any hurt, is only a large wing with a flat tower a little higher than the roof. It serves, at present, for a magazine and arsenal. This city was first built in 1175, and in the 13th and 14th centuries most of the assemblies of the states and courts of judicature, particularly the remarkable Diet in 1256, were held here. In 1659, the *Swedes* were totally defeated almost under the guns of its castle.



*Kierteminde*, in Latin *Cartemunda*, *quasi gratum fluminis ostium*, is a town situated on a large bay at the mouth of a river; which forms a very commodious harbour for the exportation of grain, to the great profit of the inhabitants. Formerly, the traders of *Odense* had warehouses in this town. Off the harbour lies the small island of *Ramsøe*, which, a few spots excepted, is quite covered with trees.

*Faaborg* is a town situated on the southern coast in a low and very fertile country. It has a considerable trade in grain and all sorts of provisions, though its harbour is but very indifferent, and a well-endowed hospital. In 1535, this town was sacked and burnt; and in 1612, 1715, and 1728, it also suffered extremely by fire. Not far from hence, namely, in the parish of *Horne* in the village of *Beutzen* is the usual passage to the island of *Alsen*; and in the bay, near the town, lie several little islands, the two largest of which, *viz.* *Avernack* and *Lyoë*, have each a church erected on it.

*Svenborg* or *Svendborg* stands in a woody country, on the most southern point of land in *Funen*. It has two churches, and the best harbour in the island; yet it carries on little or no trade. In the 13th century this town was the residence of a branch of the royal family, descended from king *Abel*. In 1288, a convent of *Gray Friars* was founded here; and in 1433, a congress for a peace between king *Waldemar IV.* and the *Hanse-towns* was held at *Svenborg*. This town has sustained several sieges in which it suffered greatly.

*Sproe* or *Sprogøe*, is a small island in the middle of the *Great-Belt* about two geographical miles from *Nyborg*, and the same distance from *Korsør*. It is about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a geographical mile in length, and a musket-shot in breadth. There is only one farm on this island; which, however, contains arable land sufficient for sixteen barrels of seed-corn, besides some pasture for cattle. This island is continually decreasing by the gradual incroachments of the sea. In winter, vessels sailing through the *Great-Belt* are often obliged to put in here.

II. The Prefecture of ODENSE contains,

1. The *Herred* of *Scham*, which includes nine churches and three manors.

2. The *Herred* of *Lunde*, with nine churches and seven manors.

3. The *Herred* of *Odense*, with eleven churches and eight manors. Among these are the convent and Prefecture of *St. Knut*, and the convent and Prefecture of *Dalum* or *Christianbal*. The convent lies near the town of *Odense*, in which, indeed, it was first founded in the year 1183; but the Society was soon after removed hither. There were in this convent both monks and nuns; and it was one of the best Foundations on the island.

This

This Prefecture derives its name from

*Odense*, or *Odinsee*, in Latin *Othinia*, *Ottinium*, or *Othencæ*, which is a city of great antiquity, and the capital of the whole Dioceſe. It is pretty large and populous, and the new part of the town is well built; but moſt of it is old and decayed. *Odense* is ſuppoſed to have been built before the Chriſtian *Æra*, and to derive its name from the northern idol *Odin*, and not, as ſome imagine, from the emperor *Otbo* I. who never was in this city. It is ſituated in a fine plain, on a river which yields a plentiful variety of fiſh, and, about a quarter of a geographical mile below the town, runs into the gulf of *Stegeſtrand*. The length of the city is about a quarter of a geographical mile, and the breadth is about half as much. It has four churches. The cathedral is the moſt remarkable, the inſide of which has been lately repaired and beautified; but the architecture is very old and mean. In a vault behind the altar the remains of the royal martyr king *Knut*, the founder of this church, who was put to death in 1086, or 1087, is ſaid to be interred in a coffin of copper, gilt. In the *Gray Friars* or *Franciſcan* church are interred king *John* and *Chriſtina* his queen, with their ſon *Francis*; and alſo king *Chriſtian* II. The table of the altar, which was the gift of the above-mentioned queen *Chriſtina*, is extremely beautiful. Near this church a ſtately hoſpital was built in the year 1540, which has a reſectory, and a chapel, with a particular Preacher to officiate in it. In the times of popery there were four other churches and convents in this city. The king's palace, which is built on the ſpot where the ancient convent of *St. John* formerly ſtood, is neither large, commodious, nor elegant; for it was built only as a lodging for *Frederick* IV. in his occaſional progreſſes through *Funen*. That excellent *Prince* died in this palace in the year 1730. Anciently there was a caſtle on an eminence without the town. In 1621, king *Chriſtian* IV. erected, and liberally endowed a *Gymnaſium* or college in this place, in which are four profeſſors; and this is the only one remaining of many ſuch *Daniſh* ſeminaries of learning. This edifice is but mean. Here is alſo a large cathedral-ſchool conſiſting of ſix claſſes, where all the ſcholars, beſides their inſtruction, receive a ſmall penſion; and 36 of the poorer fort are here boarded, and provided with all neceſſaries. This ſchool, which is one of the beſt in the whole kingdom, was founded in the 14th century by queen *Margaret*, and improved and liberally endowed by ſome of her royal ſucceſſors and ſeveral private benefactions. In 1716, a lady of the name of *Brabe* founded a convent for young ladies of noble families, in this place. The Provincial Court is held in this city every month in the great hall; and, among other privileges, it appears from ſeveral ancient coins that *Odense* had alſo that of coining money. The bay lies about  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a geographical mile from the city; however, it carries on ſo conſiderable a trade as to employ 34 large ſhips, beſides above 100 ſmaller veſſels; and the like number arrive here annually. *Odense* ſupplies

plies the greatest part of the army, and especially the cavalry, with all their leather accoutrements; and is particularly famous for gloves. A considerable cloth manufactory has been lately erected here, near the river, and likewise a sugar-house, and another for soap-boiling. It is not only the residence of the General-Governour and the Bishop of *Funen*, but has also several noble and opulent families among its inhabitants. The *Danish* language is, by many, thought to be spoken here in its greatest purity. The See of *Odense* was erected by king *Harald Blaaland*, before the year 980. And, after it had been abolished during the persecution of *Sueno*, it was restored by *Knut the Great* in 1020. A Synod, or assembly of the Clergy, was held here in 1205, and a Diet in 1527. At another Diet held here in 1538, a solid foundation was laid for the Reformation of the whole Kingdom, and the hierarchy and discipline of the *Danish* church was settled. In 1580, the grand ceremony of the investiture of the three Princes of *Sleswick* was performed here by king *Frederick II.* In 1657 another Diet was held in this city, which was the last but one of those assemblies of the States in *Denmark.* In 1701 a subsidy-treaty was concluded here betwixt the king of *Denmark, England* and *Holland.* In 1724 a trading Company was established at *Odense* by a very favourable royal charter.

III. The Prefecture of *RUGAARD* consists of the *Herred* of *Schoubye*, and contains ten parish churches, a like number of manors, and the following places of note.

*Bovense*, which is a small town. Its inhabitants carry on some trade to *Norway*; and both in the town and the adjacent country, which is called *North Sletting*, blankets and rugs are manufactured, and a great quantity of cummin-seed is sown. The passage from hence to *Klackring* in *Jutland* is two geographical miles.

The County of *Guldenstein*, with a fine seat of the same name, belongs to the heirs of *Count Knut.* It is also known by the name of *Engaard.*

IV. The Prefecture of *HINDSGAVEL* consists of the *Herred* of *Wend*, and contains 19 rural churches, 9 manors, and the following places of note.

*Hindsgavel*, which was anciently a royal palace, stands not far from *Middelfabrt* on a small promontory in the *Little Belt.* It was granted by king *Frederick III.* together with some lands annexed to it, to *Erick Banner*, who caused most of the buildings to be pulled down. Near it, in the *Little Belt*, lies a little island called *Fanoe*, which has good pasture land and woods, and is inhabited by several substantial peasants.

The County of *Wedelsborg*, formerly called *Iversnas*, and a castle of the same name, belong to *Count Wedel.*

The Barony of *Putbus*, which consists of the two manors of *Einsjedelsburg* and *Kiorup-Gaard.*

In this district also lies *Middelfabrt*, a small town on the *Little Belt*, which is not above a quarter of a geographical mile in breadth in this place,  
and



and is called the *Middlefabrt-sund*. This is the place where they usually ferry over to *Snogboj*, which is directly opposite to it in *Jutland*. In 1290 *Middlefabrt* was entirely consumed by fire.

About half a geographical mile from hence, opposite to *Fredericia*, is another ferry into *Jutland*, which is called *Striebsfarge*, or *Striebsfabr*, where *Frederick III.* designed to build a town which was to be called *Sophienodde*; but that project was never put in execution.

V. The Prefecture of *Assens* consists of the *Herred* of *Boog*, which contains 21 parishes and 10 manors. It derives its name from *Affens* or *Afnes* (i. e. *Promontorium sanctum*, or holy promontory) a town situated on the *Little Belt*, and which was formerly a place of great note. In 1535 it was dismantled and plundered; but in 1628 it was not only rebuilt, but surrounded with a wall and moats; of these, however, there are no remains at present. The buildings in this town, for the most part, are but mean. The great church is supposed to have been built in 1486. Before the Reformation *Affens* was famous for a convent of *Franciscans*. Its harbour is none of the best; yet they export a great quantity of corn and other commodities. The usual passage from hence to *Aaroesundffarge*, in the Prefecture of *Hadersleben*, over the *Little Belt*, is about two geographical miles. At *Oxenberg*, about half a geographical mile from hence, *Christian III.* defeated Count *Christopher* of *Oldenburg* with his whole faction in 1535.

#### The Island of LANGELAND.

This island is seven geographical miles in length from north to south, and one in breadth. It is very fertile in every part. In the 13th century it was an appenage to some of the princes of the blood and was called a principality: But now it is only a County; the greatest part of it being annexed to *Tranekiar*, a seat belonging to Count *Ablefeld*. However, it is one of the best Counties in the Kingdom. It is under the same General Governor as the island of *Funen*, and contains only the royal Prefecture of *Tranekiar*, which includes the *North* and *South Herreds*, each consisting of seven churches or parishes.

*Rudkiobing* is the only town on the island, and is of the middle size. It carries on a considerable trade in corn and provisions. There is but one church, and one school, in this town: The latter was founded in 1619 by a wealthy lady. On the three sides towards the land *Rudkiobing* is fortified with a wall and a ditch.

*Tranekiar*, Count *Ablefeld's* castle, was formerly one of the strongest places in the Kingdom. It is an ancient structure surrounded with a very thick wall, and stands on a steep high mountain.

In the *South-Herred* is a high promontory called *Fackebierg*.

*The Island of LAALAND, or LOLLAND.*

This island is on the east side separated from *Falster* by the straits called *Guldborgsund*, and on every other side is surrounded by the *Belt* and the *East Sea* or *Baltic*. It is four geographical miles distant from the island of *Femern*. *Laaland* is seven geographical miles and a half in length, three in breadth, and is the most fertile spot in the king of *Denmark's* dominions. This island produces plenty of all sorts of grain; particularly very fine wheat, and excellent pease. It is also famous for a kind of red fruit called *Manna*, which resembles sweet almonds in taste, and grows on a long slender stem; and abounds with all sorts of apples, &c.

*Laaland* is not without woods, which, however, are more frequent on the east than on the west side of the island. The inhabitants make little account of grazing, as they find that agriculture turns out to greater advantage. But notwithstanding all these conveniencies, as the country lies low and the soil is damp, the air is very unhealthy. Of all the inhabitants of this island the clergy are the best provided for according to their rank. The nobility are numerous here; and many of them have very fine seats and considerable estates. This island, like *Falster*, has a particular Governor; but in spiritual affairs both are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Funen*. It contains three Prefectures, viz.

I. The Prefecture of HALSTED, which comprehends the *North* and *South Herreds*. In the latter are 16 churches, and 11 in the former.

II. The Prefecture of AALHOLM, which consists of the *Herreds* of *Fuglse* and *Moesse*. In the former are 19, and in the latter 18 churches. In the village near the church of *Radsted* there is a good hospital.

III. The Prefecture of MARIEBOE-KLOSTER, which consists of the estates that formerly belonged to the Convent of *Maricboe*. Other places of note on this island are the following towns.

*Naskow*, in Latin *Nascovia*, the capital of the island, was anciently well fortified; but is now only encompassed with a wall. It is a town of the middling size, and handsomely built. The inhabitants are wealthy, and trade in the produce of the country which is very fertile. The *Jews* are here allowed the public exercise of their religion, and have a synagogue for that purpose. In this town are an hospital and a grammar-school, both well endowed. Here is also a pretty good harbour. In 1420, *Naskow* suffered extremely by fire; in 1570, it was plundered by the *Lubeckers*; and in 1659, it surrendered to the *Swedes* after a vigorous resistance of thirteen weeks.

*Rodbye*, in Latin *Erythropolis*, is a market town with a commodious harbour. A great quantity of corn of the growth of *Laaland* is exported from hence.

The passage from *Redbye* to the island of *Femern*, and from thence to *Heiligenhafen* in *Holflein*, is about four geographical miles over.

*Marieboe*, in Latin *Habitaculum Mariæ*, anciently called *Skirminge*, is situated by a large lake abounding with fish. The inhabitants have a considerable home trade. Here the Provincial court is held for *Laaland* and *Falster*, and the clergy assemble every year to hold the ecclesiastical court. The *Marieboe* Convent, a very grand structure which lies at the west end of the town, was founded in 1416 and 1417 for a religious society of nuns: But, in 1623, its large revenues were sequestered for the use of the Crown.

*Nystad*, in Latin *Neostadium*, is not large, but a flourishing town. It was formerly of a much larger extent; but in 1560, and 1700, it suffered greatly by fire. This town carries on a considerable trade to the dutchy of *Mecklenburg* and other provinces of *Germany*. Here are still some remains of the stately monastery built at *Nystad* in the year 1286.

*Saxkiöbing* is an old small town, situated on a large fruitful plain. A good deal of corn is exported from hence in flat-bottomed vessels.

In this island are also the following Counties and Baronies:

The County of *Christiansfode*, which of late has been called *Christiansburg*, belongs to the Counts of the *Reventlau* family:

The County of *Christiansholm*, formerly called *Aalholm*, belongs to the *Rabee* family. The castle, which stands near *Nystad*, was in ancient times the usual residence of the Princes of *Laaland*, and is well fortified.

The County of *Knuthenburg* belongs to Count *Knuth*.

The Barony of *Juelinge*, formerly called *Halsted-kloster*, which belongs to Baron *Juelwind*, lies at a small distance from *Naskow*.

The Barony of *Wintersburg* belongs to Baron *Gedde*.

The Barony of *Christiansthal*.

Lastly, it is also to be noted, that the islands *Faoe* and *Femoe*, which belong to the *Herred* of *Fuglse*, lie about a quarter of a geographical mile from each other; and that the former is about the same distance from the village of *Kragnes* in *Laaland*, and lies between *Laaland*, and the island *Vairoe* which belongs to the church on *Faoe*. These islands are not properly placed in the maps.

### *The Island of FALSTER, in Latin Falstria.*

This island resembles those described above as to its soil, &c. and is subject to the same General Governor; but in ecclesiastical matters it is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Funen*. It lies at the distance of two leagues from *Seeland*; and the promontory called *Gedfers Odde*, which extends a great way to the south, is six geographical miles from *Warnemunde* in *Mecklenburg*. The length of the island is six geographical miles; but its breadth



towards the north end is not above three, and towards the southern extremity hardly one geographical mile. *Falster* may be called the Orchard of *Denmark*, for it yields abundance of fruit: all sorts of game are also in great plenty here. This island is commonly the dowry of the Queens of *Denmark*. It consists of the single Prefecture of *Nyekiobing*, which contains two *Herreds*. In the *South Herred* there are thirteen rural churches, and fifteen in the *North Herred*. The latter comprehends the island of *Bogoe*, which lies between *Seeland* and *Falster*; and the church and village of *Kipping*, which is famous for a medicinal spring. The church of *Kipping* was remarkable for its reliques, &c. in popish times.

The towns on this island are,

*Nyekiobing*, in Latin *Neapolis Danica* or *Nicopia*, which is one of the most ancient towns in the whole Kingdom. It is situated on the straits called *Guldborgsund*, and is a pretty large well built town. However, it is not in so flourishing a condition as it was formerly when the Queens Dowager, and other royal personages constantly resided here. On the land side it is fortified with a wall and a ditch; and carries on a considerable trade. Here is a free grammar school of four classes, and an hospital which is one of the best endowed in the whole kingdom. The royal palace, built in 1589 by Queen *Sophia*, Dowager of *Frederick II.* and which, according to others, is still more ancient, is a great ornament to the town. This old castle, next to *Fredericksburg* and *Kronenburg*, is the largest and most magnificent of all the royal palaces; and its situation is likewise extremely pleasant and delightful. Queen *Sophia* resided in this palace from 1588 till 1631, as did also her grandson Prince *Christian*, his Consort *Magdalena Sybilla*, and the Dowager of *Christian V.* *Charlotta Amelia*, who died here in 1714. Since that time the castle has been neglected, and some of the apartments are unfurnished and uninhabited. The garden, which lies not far from the palace, is pretty large; and kept in good order. In 1288 *Nyekiobing* was plundered; and in 1507 a remarkable congress was held here between king *John* and those *Hanse-towns* which lie on the *Baltic*.

*Stubbekiobing*, a pretty ancient but mean little town. The inhabitants carry on some trade by sea through the *Grunensund*, or Straits which run between *Falster* and *Moen*.

## The PENINSULA of

## J U T L A N D.

THE peninsula of JUTLAND, in Danish JYDLAND or JYLLAND, in Latin *Jutia*, was called *Cymbria* or *Cbersonesus Cimbrica* by the Ancients, to whom it was sufficiently known, as appears from *Tacitus* and *Pliny*. We learn from *Homer*, that the ancient *Greeks* conceived a dismal idea of the state of the inhabitants of this country. For they erroneously supposed that the sun never gladdened them with its beams. This large peninsula, from time immemorial, has lost its ancient name, and is no longer called *Cimbria*, but *Jutland*, in common discourse. It lies betwixt the *Baltic* and the *North Sea*, and is separated from *Holstein* by the *Eider* and the *Lewen*. From the river *Eider* to its northern extremity at *Skaunborn* or *Cape Skau*, it is computed to be fifty-two geographical miles in length; and from *Bouberg* to *Nasset* it is twenty-four geographical miles in breadth. As it is divided into *Norre* and *Sonder Jylland*, i. e. *North* and *South Jutland*, the latter of which is commonly called the *Dutchy of Schleswig* or *Sleswick*; I shall treat of each division separately: And, First, of

## NORTH JUTLAND.

This part of the peninsula is commonly called by the general name of JUTLAND, and is bounded by the sea on three sides; but on the fourth or south side it is divided from *South Jutland* or *Sleswick* by the rivers *Kolding* and *Skotburg*. It is thirty-eight geographical miles in length, from fifteen to twenty in breadth; and of all the territories belonging to the crown of *Denmark*, it is the largest and yields the greatest revenue. The middle part of it, excepting a few spots of arable land, is nothing but heaths and moors, which, however, afford good pasture for oxen, sheep, and goats. But the other parts (which are of a greater extent) are exceeding fertile, as appears from the large quantity of all sorts of grain annually exported from hence to *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Holland*; and from the considerable sums accruing to the inhabitants from the sale of oxen, horses and hogs. Hence *Jutland* is commonly said to be 'The land of bacon and rye-bread.' Here is also a great plenty of sea and fresh-water fish of all kinds; but the largest fresh water lakes, and which yield most fish, are near the palace of *Skanderburg*. The chief bays and gulfs are on the east side of this peninsula; and of these

the principal is the gulf of *Lym*, called *Lymfurt* or *Lymfiorden*, in Latin *Sinus Lymicus*, which runs from the *Cattegat* twenty geographical miles into the land, and widening gradually, forms several islands. It is navigable and abounds with fish; and, on the west side of *Jutland*, is separated from the *North-sea* only by a narrow tract of land. The other gulfs in *North Jutland*, which also form good harbours, are those of *Mariager*, *Randers*, *Kalloe*, *Ebeltoft*, *Horsens*, *Weile*, and *Kolding*, on the east side; and on the west side those called *Lyster* and *Graae-Dib*, *Nyminds-Gab* and *Torskminde*. Here are a great number of small streams; but *Guden* is the largest river, from which *Jutland* is said to derive its name. It runs through the Diocese of *Aarhuus*, in which it also rises on the borders of the Diocese of *Ripen*. This river receives above forty smaller streams; becomes navigable near *Randers*; and, after a course of about twenty-five geographical miles, falls into the *Cattegat*. Next to this the most noted rivers are the *Skiern* or *Lonburg*, the *Holsterbroe*, *Warde*, and *Nyps*. I have been informed by a very ingenious and learned correspondent, that large pieces of amber have been found on the northern and western coasts of this peninsula.

*Jutland* is every where interspersed with hills and eminencies, and, on the east side, with fine woods of oak, beach, fir, birch, &c. but the west side is not so woody; so that the inhabitants are obliged to use turf and heath for fuel: Here is also great plenty of all kind of game. The air is somewhat keen and cold, especially towards the *North-sea*, in the Diocese of *Ripen*, and in the *Syffels* of *Mors*, *Tye*, and *Wend*. The *Jutlanders* are of a robust, vigorous constitution, and resolute temper; and seem to have raised themselves to a state of freedom superior to that of the other inhabitants of *Denmark*. Many of the *Jutland* peasants have freeholds, for which they pay only a small acknowledgment to the Lord of the Manor, and the public taxes. The *Danish* language is spoke with less purity and elegance in *Jutland* than in the other provinces; and the *Jutlanders* have also a particular accent. *Fredericia* is the only place where the exercise of any religion besides *Lutheranism* is tolerated. The *Codex Christianicus*, or the new and complete *Lowbuch*, has superseded the old *Jutland* law, and now takes place here as well as in the other provinces of *Denmark*.

*North Jutland* was formerly divided into nine *Syffels* or large districts, namely, *Wend*, *Himmer*, *Cimmer* or *Cimber*, *Salling*, *Har-Lovet*, *Aabe*, *Ommer*, *Jelling*, and *Almind* or *Baring*: But this ancient division is abolished by the royal Courts of Judicature, and *North Jutland* is now composed of four Dioceses or General Governments. Each of these has its Bishop and General Governor; and they derive their names from the four chief Cities. In describing this country we shall follow the modern, and at the same time take some notice of the ancient division.



## The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

## A. A. L. B. O. R. G.

THIS Diocese comprehends the most northern part of *Jutland*, and is divided from the other provinces by the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and would be an island were it not for a narrow isthmus which lies between the *North Sea* \* and the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and joins the districts of *Tye* and *Har-Syssel* together. The length of this Diocese, from *Tyebolm* to the extreme point of the promontory of *Skagen*, is something above eighteen geographical miles, and its greatest breadth, from the small fort of *Hals* to the village of *Torup*, in the Herred of *Hundborg*, which lies on the *North Sea*, is nearly equal to the length of it. The soil in this Diocese is of different qualities and goodness, as I shall shew in the sequel. *Aalborg* was erected into a bishop's see in the year 1065. This province was by the ancients sometimes called *Wendel*, *Wandal* or *Wansal Syssel*, from the district or *Syssel* of *Wend*, and sometimes *Borghlum* from the ancient castle of *Borghlum*. The ancient bishops resided at *Aggersborg* on the *Lymfurt*, where at present the ferry called *Aggersfunds-febre* is. The chief manors in this Diocese are thirty-six in number. Nature has divided it into four parts or districts, which are subdivided into a certain number of Prefectures.

I. WENDSYSSEL, in Latin *Vandalia*, *Vinilia*, or *Venulia*, is the largest and most remarkable district of the four abovementioned, being ten geographical miles in length, and eight in breadth towards the south; but at the north-east extremity the land ends in a point resembling a horn †.

The Prefectures in this district are,

1. AALBORGUUS, which contains the *Herreds* of *Horn*, consisting of fourteen parishes; *Kiar* of thirteen, and *Hvetboe* of seven parishes.

2. SEIGLSTRUP. The parishes belonging to this Prefecture are scattered in several *Herreds* among other districts.

3. AASTRUP, which comprehends the *Herred* of *Wenneberg* with twelve churches, and that of *Ferlef* with the like number.

4. BORGLUM, which consists of one *Herred* of the same name, including fourteen churches or parishes.

\* The Author calls it the *West Sea* in describing *Jutland*, because it lies west of that province; but I have given this *Sea* the name it is usually known by to avoid confusion. The same may be observed of the *Baltic*, which our Author commonly calls the *East Sea*; a name little known in *England*.

† This point of land or cape is called a horn in *Danish*.

In the WEND-SYSSEL or district are the following towns and remarkable places.

*Skavn* or *Skagen*, in Latin *Skavenia*, is a small town which, not long since, obtained the rights and privileges of a city. It stands on the extremity of the land, in the *Herred* of *Horn*. The inhabitants subsist partly by fishing; and partly by carrying on a little trade, and piloting ships about these dangerous coasts to and from the *Baltic*. The sand-bank, called *Skager-Rack*, extends itself from *Cape Skagen* a great way into the sea, on which account a large coal fire is constantly kept up there in the winter nights, as a mark for ships to avoid it. For this laudable purpose, in the year 1751, a new tower sixty-four feet high was erected opposite to this sand bank, on the spot where the former light house stood, which had been demolished by the violence of the sea.

*Fladstrand* is a mean market town, but of some note for the passage from hence to *Norway*. Here is a pretty good harbour defended by three forts built on rocks which lie in the sea; but it is not secured from all winds. Most of the inhabitants live by fishing.

*Hiorring*, in Latin *Hioringum*, is a small country town, and was formerly a Bishop's See, before it was removed by *Frederick II.* to the city of *Aalborg*. Here a Synod of all the Provosts of the Diocese of *Aalborg* is held annually in the month of *May*. This was once a large town and had three churches; but in the year 1693 it was almost entirely destroyed by fire. *Hiorring* and *Fladstrand* lie in the *Herred* of *Wenneberg*.

*Sabye*, in Latin *Sæboium*, is a small ancient town, situated on a river of the same name, which here falls into the sea and forms a small commodious harbour. It carries on a considerable trade. In the year 1160 a convent was erected in this town, and in 1469, *Mariestad*, another convent belonging to the order of *St. Bridget*, was also founded here.

*Borglum* was the castle where the popish bishop formerly resided, and from which the whole Diocese derived its name. In the year 1537 it was dissolved, and the revenue of it sequestered. It is now a manor, from which the Prefecture of *BORGLUM* takes its name. The town of *Sabye*, mentioned above, lies in this Prefecture.

*Hals-Schanze* defends the entrance into the gulf called *Lymfurt*, and with its fort makes a village, or small town.

*Aalborg*, in Latin *Alburgum*, the capital of this Diocese, lies on the south side of *Lymfurt*, just on the borders of the Diocese of *Wiborg*. It is a large, populous, ancient city, and next to *Copenhagen* the most opulent and best built in the whole Kingdom. Its situation is very low, and two rivers run through it, which are called the *East* and the *West River*. It has two parish churches, an hospital with a chapel, and two alms houses. Here is also a Cathedral School of six classes, founded by *Christian III.* in 1553, adjoining to which is the *Convent-haus*, as it is called, where the clergy reside.

side. An episcopal palace was built here by *Christian V.* in 1684; and a royal palace stands near the water-side called *Aalborg-buus*, where the General Governor resides. *Aalborg* has an Exchange for merchants, and likewise a deep and safe harbour; but the entrance or mouth of it at *Hals* is something difficult. A great quantity of herrings and grain is exported from hence, as also muskets, pistols, saddles, and gloves, for which this city is famous. King *John* died here in the year 1512. In 1530 *Aalborg* was greatly damaged by fire; and in 1534 it was taken by the famous pirate *Clement*, who committed great violences in it. In 1546 it obtained most of its valuable privileges. In 1554 it was dismembered from the Diocese of *Wiborg*, and erected into a bishop's See. Lastly, in 1643 and 1658, the *Swedes* made themselves masters of this city.

*Hirzbolmen* are three small islands lying in the *Cattegat*, at the distance of a geographical mile from *Fladstrand*, and inhabited by fishermen. These islands make a parish, which belongs to the *Herred* of *Horn*. They are very famous for fisheries: For the whole large fleet of fishing-vessels which arrives annually at *Copenhagen*, and supplies both the city and all the adjacent country with dried fish, comes from these islands.

II. HAN-HERRED lies west of *Wendsyssel*, and is about ten geographical miles in length. This District is a peninsula, and joins to *Wendsyssel* by a narrow isthmus which lies between the *Lymfurt* gulf and the *North-sea*. On the other side it has the district of *Tye*; and towards the north and west of it lie the great sand-banks called *Klinte*. There is no town of note, nor one good harbour in *Han-herred*; however, the inhabitants get a comfortable subsistence by fishing. This district is divided into *East* and *West Han-herred*; the former having ten and the latter twelve churches. *St. Jurgen's* hill, near *Aagard*, is famous for an obstinate battle fought there in the year 1441, in which 25,000 of the peasants who had taken arms were killed on the spot. *Han-herred* belongs to the Prefecture of *Aalborgbuus*.

III. TYE, is a District of seven geographical miles in length, and two in breadth. It lies between *Han-herred* and *Har-syssel* in the Diocese of *Ripen*, to which it is joined by a very narrow isthmus which runs between the *North-sea* and the gulf of *Lymfurt*, and is called *Harboe-Oere*. This District is destitute of wood, but has excellent pastures, and breeds the finest horses in *Denmark*. It is divided into two Prefectures, namely,

1. *Oerum*, to which belong the *Herreds* of *Hundborg* with 10 churches; *Hillerlef* with 14; *Hassing* with 15; and *Ref* with 12 churches or parishes.

2. The Prefecture of *Westerwiig*, which has no *Herreds*.

The chief places in this District are as follows.

*Tysted* is a town of good trade, situated on a river which runs into the gulf of *Lymfurt*.



*Hesøer* is a village, to which indeed in 1533 *Christian III.* granted the privileges of a city: But it has not reaped any advantage from them yet.

Near the village of *Siroing* in the *Herred* of *Hundborg* the walls and ditches of the ancient celebrated castle of *Sicingburg* are to be seen. -

*Hoxøe* is a sea-port in the parish of *Oesterild* in the *Herred* of *Hillerlef*.

*Westerwiig* in the *Herred* of *Ref* was formerly a famous convent, but has been since converted into a nobleman's seat.

*Ottenfund* is a little town, where there is a ferry, in the same *Herred*.

IV. *MORS*, a small but fruitful District, lies between *Tye* and *Salling*, and is quite environed by the gulf of *Lymfurt*. It is three geographical miles in length and two in breadth. It consists of the *South-Herred*, containing 16 churches, and the *North-Herred* including 15 parishes. Both these *Herreds* in civil matters are subject to the Prefect of *Hald* in the Diocese of *Wiborg*; but in religious affairs are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Aalborg*. The Prefecture of *Durbolm* has no *Herreds*, but consists of the lands that once belonged to a convent; which were sequestered at the Reformation, and converted into a royal Fief. On this island, in the *South-Herred*, lies

*Nyekiøping*, a small but thriving town, which has a good harbour and carries on a considerable trade. There are three towns of this name in *Denmark*.

*Note.* The Prefect of *Aalborg-huus* presides in civil affairs over the following *Herreds*, though they lie in the Diocese of *Wiborg*, and constitute the *Syssel* of *Himmer*.

*Flefkum-Herred*, which contains 12 churches. In the parish of *Gunnerip* is a remarkable tomb of the Pagan king *Snio* and his queen *Tufu*, who lived about the end of the 4th century; and in whose reign the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* set out from *Denmark* on their expeditions in search of new settlements.

*Hornum-Herred*, containing 15 parishes, and the town of *Nibe* which is situated on the *Lymfurt* gulf, and is well known for its great herring-fishery. This town is in the Barony of *Lindenwold*, an estate belonging to the Count of *Dannefskiold*.

*Slet-Herred* with 15 churches. The town of *Logstor* or *Lyxtoer* on the gulf of *Lymfurt* reaps great advantage from its herring-fishery. Here the *Lymfurt* or gulf of *Lym* being full of shallows is not navigable for ships of burden. In this *Herred* also lies the fine Manor of *Biørnskolm*, where *Waldemar I.* in 1158, founded a rich *Bernardine* convent called *Vitæ Schola*, *Vitfskyld*, *Vidskiol*, or *Vitskol*, with a church which surpassed most churches in the North in magnificence, but at present is all in ruins. When this convent was dissolved, *Frederick II.* exchanged it in 1573 with its re-

venues for *Stenalt*, with *Biorn Anderfen*, a privy-counsellor, who gave it the name of *Biornsholm*.

*Hellum-Herred*, which contains fourteen churches or parishes.

*Aars-Herred*, which includes fourteen churches. And, lastly,

*Hinsled-Herred*, consisting of fourteen churches or parishes.

The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

W I B O R G.

THIS Diocese is bounded to the North by the Gulf called *Lymfurt*, by the *Cattegat* to the East, by the Dioceses of *Aarhuus* and *Ripen* to the South, and by the latter also to the West. It is ten geographical miles in length, twelve in breadth, and, on account of its great losses, is reckoned the least of the four Dioceses into which *North Jutland* is divided. It formerly consisted of three *Syffels*, namely,

1. *Himmer-Syffel*; whose six *Herreds* have been spoken of in the Diocese of *Aalborg*.

2. *Ommer-Syffel*, which contained the *Herreds* of *Stefring*, *Odensild*, *Hald*, and *Gelo*; and likewise those of *Rind*, *Norlyng*, *Middelfom* and *Fiend*, with the towns of *Wiborg*, *Randers*, *Mariager*, and *Hobroe*.

3. *Salling-Syffel*, which included four *Herreds*, and the town of *Skive*. But at present only half of *Ommer-Syffel* and *Salling-Syffel* belong to the Diocese of *Wiborg*. Its western side, for the most part, consists of barren wastes; but the northern parts, especially *Salling-Syffel* or the Prefecture of *Skivehuus*, are very fertile, and famous for breeding horses. The *Herred* of *Rind* is remarkable for the fine rye it produces. *Wiborg* was erected into a bishop's See in 1065, by *Sveno II.* and the name of the first bishop of it was *Heribert*. This Diocese is divided into two Prefectures and contains forty-seven fine manors.

I. The Prefecture of *HALD*, so called from an ancient castle built on a lake, which formerly belonged to the popish \* bishops of *Wiborg*, who also made it their *Asylum*. The two *Herreds* of the isle of *Mors* in the Diocese of *Aalborg* belong to this Prefecture, and likewise the following *Herreds*, viz. *Norling* with twelve churches; *Middelfom* with sixteen churches;

\* It is surprising that the author and several other protestant writers use the words *Catholic* and *Papist* as synonymous terms. Though the former is generally used by the author, I have rendered it by the latter; or restrained the sense by adding *Roman* to it.

*Søndeslyng* with fourteen churches; *Rind* with eighteen, and the *Herred* of *Fiend* with eighteen churches.

II. The Prefecture of SKIVEHUUS, which is the other part of the District or *Syssel* of *Salling*, is five geographical miles in length, and three in breadth. It is a peninsula, surrounded on three sides by the Gulf of *Lymfurt*, and contains, 1. The *Herred* of *Harre*, which includes ten churches. 2. The *North-Herred* with nine churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Rodding* with the like number. 4. The *Herred* of *Hinborg* with eight churches.

In this Diocese are the following places of note.

*Wiburg* or *Viborg*, in Latin *Viburgum*, is the capital of this Diocese and of all *North Jutland*. It stands, almost in the centre of the latter, on the lake of *Asmild*, which abounds with fish. It is one of the most ancient cities in the whole kingdom, if not prior to all the rest. It was formerly so large and opulent, that before the Reformation it contained twelve churches and six convents. Its circuit at present is near half a geographical mile, and includes three parish-churches, three market-places, six gates, and twenty-eight streets and lanes. *Viborg* is still the residence of a General-Governor, and a Bishop's See. The cathedral was founded in 1169, and the *Augustine* college contiguous to it was built at the same time. It was visited with great devotion, on account of the body of St. *Kield* or *Kettil* who was formerly Bishop of this See, and a great number of other reliques. Behind the altar, in a leaden coffin, lies king *Erick Glipping*, who was murdered in the year 1286. This church was burnt down in 1726; but proper measures were immediately taken for rebuilding it. Close to the *Gray-Friars* church, which is also newly rebuilt, stands the hospital. The episcopal or cathedral school which was founded here a little before the Reformation by *George Friis*, the last popish bishop of this See, has six masters with handsome salaries, and a royal foundation for poor scholars. Here is also a stately edifice where the provincial Court is held monthly for all *North-Jutland*. As *Viborg* was the place where the States of *Jutland* formerly used to hold their Diets and other solemn assemblies, it was more frequented and richer than it is at present: However, the monthly provincial Courts, and the great *Easter-Snappling* or Fair, which begins on the 26th of *April* and lasts a fortnight, are no small advantages to this city. The territory belonging to it is two geographical miles in circumference. Here the ancient kings of *Denmark* received the homage of the States; and in 948, a Diet was convened at *Viborg* by king *Harald Blaataud*. *Pepo* laid hold of that opportunity to preach the Gospel of Christ, and his endeavours were crowned with uncommon success. In this city the States paid homage to *Christian II.* in the year 1523; and, in 1528, here was begun the Reformation in *Denmark*. In the year 1606, this city was entirely destroyed by fire, and in 1726 the best and largest part of it was burnt



burnt a second time; but the damages it then sustained were soon repaired.

*Asmind*, or rather *Asmild*, a celebrated *Augustine* convent, stands on the other side of the lake, directly opposite to *Viborg*. It was founded in 1164; but is now converted into a royal Fief. In the neighbourhood of this place are two remarkable vallies known by the names of *Little* and *Great Nordmand-Dal*, the place of rendezvous of the warlike *Normans*, when they emigrated to *Germany* and *France* in the ninth century.

*Skive*, in Latin *Schiwa* or *Schevia*, is a very old, small, and ill built town, in the *Herred* of *Hinborg* and district of *Salling*. It carries on a pretty good trade in horses, horned cattle, and corn, by means of the gulf of *Lymfurt*, and the rivers which run into it. The old royal palace of *Skivehuus*, which at present belongs to a noble family, stands on the river that waters this town. *Skive* suffered extremely by fire in 1715 and 1725.

*Lessøe* is an island in the *Cattegat*. Though it is but three geographical miles from *Sabye* in the Diocese of *Aalborg*, yet it belongs to the Diocese of *Viborg*, and is a part of *Norlyng Herred* in the Prefecture of *Hald*. It is a pretty fertile spot, three geographical miles in length and one in breadth. There are three churches on this island; and the greatest part of its revenues goes to the Chapter of *Viborg*. At a little distance from *Lessøe* lies the dangerous rock called *Niding*, which is much frequented by the fishermen.

The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

A A R H U U S.

THIS borders on the Diocese of *Viborg* near the gulf of *Mariager*, and extends itself along the *Cattegat* about fifteen geographical miles in length, and from eight to nine miles in breadth. This Diocese is preferable to any other in *Jutland*, and the extraordinary fertility of its soil enables the inhabitants to export very large quantities of grain every year. It is diversified with a great many woods, commodious bays, and lakes abounding with fish. It is also watered with several brooks and rivers, among which the *Guden* is the principal; and the manors of note in this Diocese are about seventy in number. The See of *Aarhuus* is not so ancient as those of *Sleswick* and *Ripen*; for it was not founded till the year 948, or 950.

The name of the first bishop was *Rimbrand*, *Rembrand*, or *Regimbrand*; but this See being suppressed during the persecution of the Christians in 980, the district belonging to it was annexed to the Diocese of *Ripen* till the year 1065, when the See of *Aarhuus* was restored by *Sveno II.* This Diocese or General Government consists of the following Prefectures and *Herreds*.

I. The Prefecture of *MARIAGER*, which contains 1. The *Herred* of *Onsild* with nine churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Gislum* with twelve churches; but the latter is in the Diocese of *Viborg*, to which, indeed, formerly the whole Prefecture belonged.

II. The Prefecture of *SILKEBORG* takes its name from the famous castle of *Silkeborg*, which was formerly a place of great strength. It comprises the *Herreds* of *Giern* with thirteen churches; *Hid* with eight; and *Lysgaard* with fourteen churches, among which that at *Karup* was frequented by a great number of pilgrims in the popish times; and the *Herred* of *Wrad* including ten churches or parishes.

III. The Prefecture of *AAKJAR* consists only of one *Herred*, viz. *Had*, which contains sixteen parishes, among which are the islands of *Alroe* and *Endelave*, in the bay of *Horsens*.

IV. The Prefecture of *DRONNINGBORG* contains, 1. The *Herred* of *Rougsad*, with five churches. 2. The *Herred* of *Stoffring* containing eight churches, and *Stoffringgaard* a convent for ladies of noble families. 3. The *Herred* of *Hulberg* with twelve churches. 4. The *Herred* of *Galthen* with a like number. 5. The *Herred* of *Gierlev* with ten. And 6. The *Herred* of *North-Hald* with twelve churches, among which that at *Glenstrup* is the most remarkable; because a *Benedictine* convent called *Norre-Kloster*, which was one of the most ancient in *Denmark*, formerly stood on the same spot.

V. The Prefecture of *KALLOE*, so called from an old castle now converted into an hospital, contains the *Herreds* of *East-Lisberg* with twelve churches; *Mols* with eight churches; *South-Herred* with fourteen churches; *North-Herred* with sixteen, and *South-Hald-Herred* with twenty-five churches, among which that at *Essenbeck* is the most ancient church in the country that we have any certain account of; for it was built, together with a convent adjoining to it, in the year 1040.

VI. The Prefecture of *HAUERBALLEGAARD* including three *Herreds*, namely, that of *Haste* with nine churches; *Ning* with twelve; and *West-Lisberg* containing six churches.

VII. The Prefecture of *SCANDERBORG*. The *Herreds* in this Prefecture are, 1. *Tbyrsting* or *Torsling Herred*, containing nine churches. 2. *Sabroe Herred* with eight churches. 3. The *Herred* of *Woer* with fourteen churches. 4. That of *Wabre*, remarkable for being the burial-place of the unfortunate *Peter Schumacker* Count *Greifenfeld*, who was secretary of State.

State. 5. The *Herred* of *Hielmslef* including eleven churches. 6. The *Herred* of *Framlef* containing twelve churches.

VIII. The Prefecture of *STIERNHOLM* consists of the *Herreds* of *Bierge* with seventeen churches; *Hatting* with nine churches; and that of *Niim* containing five churches and the village of *Hausfad*, where *Dorothea Tomboe* a charitable lady founded an hospital for twenty-four disabled persons, about the beginning of the present century.

In this Diocese are the following towns.

*Mariager*, in Latin *Ager Mariæ*, is a little town situated on a gulf called *Mariagerfiord*. The latter is four geographical miles in length and half a mile in breadth, and is convenient for the inhabitants to carry on a little trade, which mostly consists in stones and lime. The convent of *St. Bridget*, to which the church of *Mariager* formerly belonged, but now converted into a nobleman's seat, was founded in the year 1420; but gradually rose to be the principal in the whole country for largeness and opulency. And, indeed, the church is exceeded by very few at present. Between the church and the tower there is a low building, which has a communication with both and is called the cathedral. The church and convent stand on an eminence without the town.

*Hobroe*, in Latin *Hobroa* or *Hopontum*, is a small market-town. The inhabitants live chiefly by agriculture; but carry on some little trade on the *Mariagerfiord*, or gulf of *Mariager*.

*Note*, Both these towns are in ecclesiastical matters under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Aarhuus*, but are properly subject to the General-Governor of *Viborg* in civil affairs. They lie in the *Herred* of *Onsild*, in the Prefecture of *Mariager*.

*Randers*, in Latin *Randrusia* or *Randrusium*, is a well known trading town of a middling bigness, situated on the river *Guden*. The houses are high and strongly built, according to the old taste. This town had formerly four churches and two convents: But at present it has only one parish-church, a grammar-school, a well endowed hospital, and a chapel which stands a little way without the town. The castle of *Dronningborg*, which stood here, is frequently mentioned in history. The town is now famous for its leather gloves, fine salmon, earthen ware, and strong beer. It was formerly extremely well fortified. The first time that *Randers* is mentioned in history, is in the year 1247, when it was burnt by the enemy. In 1587, a full Diet of all the States was held here. *Randers* lies within the Prefecture of *Dronningborg*.

*Clausholm* is a fine palace, and stands in the *Herred* of *Galtben*. It was the constant residence of queen *Anna Sophia* as long as she lived.

*Grinov*, *Grenaa*, or *Grine*, is a mean little town which was formerly called *Mols*, in *North-Herred*.

*Ebeltoft*,



*Ebeltoft*, in Latin *Ebeltoftia* or *Pomagrium*, is a little town on the bay of *Ebeltoft*, which forms a very good harbour for ships of a middling size; so that the inhabitants carry on some trade by sea. It lies in the *Herred* of *Mols* and the Prefecture of *Kalloe*. Not far from it is the famous cape of *Hellenes*, or *Helgenas*, *i. e.* of the Saints.

*Aarhus*, in Latin *Aarbusia*, *Aarbusium*, or *Remorum domus*, the capital of this Diocese, lies low in a fine plain between the sea and a lake. From the latter the water runs in a pretty wide channel through the city, and divides it into two unequal parts. *Aarhus* is a large populous town, and much frequented. It has six gates, two market places, two churches and a chapel of ease, an episcopal palace, a cathedral-school of six classes, and a well endowed hospital. The cathedral is a large structure, one hundred and fifty paces long, ninety-six broad, and near forty-five *Dutch* ells in height. It was begun in 1201, and is adorned with several superb monuments. Before the Reformation here were two Convents and one Nunnery. The Provosts of the diocese hold an assembly twice a year in the chapter-house. This city carries on a considerable trade; and the harbour, which lies at the mouth of the abovementioned channel that runs through the town, is indeed convenient and safe, but none of the largest; and sometimes has not a proper depth of water. The passage from hence to *Kallundborg* in *Seeland* is about twelve geographical miles. In the eleventh century this place was but a bare harbour, with only a few mean huts built near it; and the old city of *Aarhus* stood about half a geographical mile up the country, on the spot where the village of *Lisberg* now stands. But, probably about the close of the eleventh century, the present city was built for the conveniency of the harbour; and accordingly it has flourished beyond expectation. It lies partly in the *Herred* of *Hafse*, and partly in that of *Ning*, and in the Prefecture of *Hauerballegaard*.

*Skanderborg* is a very ancient palace, and magnificent enough according to the taste of the age in which it was built. It stands in a pleasant country, being surrounded on every side with woods and water. The kings of *Denmark*, ever since the Christian religion was introduced into the kingdom, have resided here more or less. *Frederick II.* has often spent the summer at this place: *Christian IV.* generally made it the residence of the young princes; and in *Frederick* the fourth's time the apartments were made more commodious and embellished with new ornaments, and a garden was laid out near it. On one side of this palace lies the little town of the same name, which carries on some trade in the produce of the country; but the chief employment of the inhabitants is agriculture. As the parish church lies at some distance from the town, the inhabitants attend divine service in the palace-chapel. In the year 1751 some works were set up here for refining brown, red, and yellow oker, all which *Species* of earth are very common in *Jutland*. *Skanderborg* town lies in the *Herred* of *Hielmslof*.

*Rye*, in Latin *Rus Regis*, is an ancient market town in the *Herred* of *Thyrsting*. It was formerly a place of some consequence, but at present is reduced to a village. Here the Nobility elected *Christian III.* to the throne of *Denmark* in the year 1534. The church at *Rye*, in the times of popery, was reputed to be a very sacred place.

*Horsens*, in Latin *Horsnesa*, or *Hothernesium*, i. e. *Hotber's* promontory, is a healthy town of a middling bigness. It stands on the *Baltic*, and has two churches; in one of which the pulpit is made of ebony and *Brasil* wood, and said not to have its equal in all *Denmark*. Here are also a grammar school and an hospital, both very well endowed. As the harbour is too shallow for vessels deeply laden, they come to an anchor in the road, about a quarter of a geographical mile from it; and the goods are carried on board and landed in *Prabms* or lighters up the river which runs along the south side of the town. The old castle of *Stierubolm*, which gives name to the Prefecture, formerly stood at the mouth of the harbour. In 1534 *Christian III.* received the homage of his subjects, being seated in the open air near this palace.

The Counties in this Diocese are,

*Friesenburg*, which lies between *Randers* and *Aarhuus*, with a castle of the same name. It belongs to the Counts of *Friis*.

*Loenbolm*, which is in the Prefecture of *Kalloe*.

*Scheel*, in the same Prefecture, which belongs to Count *Scheel*.

The Baronies are,

*Hogbolm*, which lies in the Prefecture of *Kalloe*, and belongs to Count *Daneskiold* the younger, of *Samsøe*.

*Marsillesburg*, which lies in the *Herred* of *Ning*, belongs to Vice-admiral *Daneskiold*, Count of *Samsøe*.

*Wilhelmsburg*, which lies in the same *Herred*, and in the Prefecture of *Hauerballegaard*; it belongs to Baron *Guldencron*.

The Manor of *Rosenbolm*, which lies in the parish of *Hornslet*, in the *Herred* of *East Lisberg*, and Prefecture of *Kalloe*, is celebrated for having been the residence of the learned *Holger Rosencranz* and his son *Erick*, in whose time it was the seat of the Muses. In *Hornslet* church are several fine tombs belonging to the *Rosencranz* family, and also a library.

The island of *Anbolt*, which lies in the *Cattegat*, about eight geographical miles from *Jutland*, ten from *Seeland*, and seven from *Holland*, belongs to the *North-herred* of the Prefecture of *Kalloe*. There is a lighthouse on this island, on account of the dangerous sands with which it is surrounded. *Anbolt* makes a small parish, and the inhabitants chiefly subsist by fishing. What they mostly catch is the *canis marinus*, or dog-fish.

*Note*, The island of *Samsøe*, in religious affairs, is under the jurisdiction of the bishop of *Aarhuus*; but, with regard to civil matters, it is included in the Diocese or Government of *Seeland*, where it has been already described.

*The*

The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of  
R I P E N.

THIS Diocese is bounded by the gulf of *Lymfurt* on the North, by the Dioceses of *Wiborg* and *Aarkuus*, and the *Little-Belt* on the East: It joins to the Dutchy of *Sleswick* (part of which belongs to it) on the South; and to the West it is washed by the *North-Sea*. It is thirty geographical miles in length, and from eleven to twelve in breadth; and is the most extensive, but not the most fertile or populous of the four Dioceses in *North-Jutland*. It is interspersed with large barren wastes; particularly that called *Aal-Heath* which lies between *Kolding* and *Skive*, being seven geographical miles long, and almost one continued barren desert. In several parts of this Diocese, however, the soil is very fertile; especially in the Prefecture of *Kolding*. The See of *Ripen* was founded in 946, by the Emperor *Otho I.* who after a successful war against *Harald* king of *Denmark*, prevailed on him to embrace the Christian religion. The name of the first Bishop of this See was *Liefdagus* or *Leofdagus*. This Diocese was at that time very extensive and considerable; and the learned Mr. *Moller* has, in a particular treatise, proved the See of *Ripen* to have been for a long time the only one, as well as the most ancient of all the Sees in *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Iceland*, *Greenland*, *Sweden*, and *Livonia*. The principal manors in this Diocese are fifty-six in number; it contains four Prefectures, which are as follows.

I. The Prefecture of *BOFLING* comprehends the north part of the Diocese, and includes the *Herreds* of *Wanfuld* with nine churches; *Schodborg* with sixteen; *Ulsborg* with four; and *Hind* with twelve churches.

The most remarkable places in this Prefecture are the following:

*Lemwig*, in Latin *Lemovicum* or *Lemviga*, is a very ancient but small market-town. It is meanly built, and stands on the gulf of *Lymfurt*: The inhabitants are chiefly sea-faring people. In 1680, part of this town was consumed by fire.

*Wellerwig* is a large structure, which was formerly a very famous convent, and appears to have been founded in the year 1110. In the court the walls of the church are still remaining, with the monument of the Princess *Lieden Kirsten*, who was so celebrated by the ancient *Danish* poets for her beauty.

*Boberg* is a high promontory, near which the coast is very dangerous and has proved fatal to many ships.

*Torsk-*



*Torskminde* lies to the south of *Boberg*. Here the *North-Sea* runs into the land and forms a large bay, in which are several islands; but, on account of the sand-banks and shallows, it is of little advantage to navigation.

*Holstebro*, in Latin *Holstebroa* or *Holzepontum*, is a middle sized town and stands on a river, which yields plenty of fish and empties itself into the abovementioned bay, but has not a sufficient depth of water for trading vessels. The inhabitants chiefly subsist by dealing in corn, oxen, and horses. Within this century *Holstebro* has several times suffered by fire. It lies in the *Herred* of *Ulfborg*.

*Ryssenstein* is a large Barony belonging to Baron *Juel*: It lies between *Holstebro* and *Ringkiöbing*.

*Ringkiöbing* is a town of great trade situated on a large bay. The inhabitants almost entirely employ themselves in trading to *Holland* and *Norway*. The voyage to the former with a fair wind may be performed in thirty hours. Several traders who traffick with *Wiborg* and other inland towns have their warehouses here. The bay affords plenty of good fish, particularly oysters. It is of a good depth and secure, except at *Nyminds-Gab* near the entrance, where there is some danger on account of the sand-banks thrown up by the sea, particularly that called *Gladlep*. Large white hills of sand are to be seen on the south-side of *Nyminds-Gab*.

II. The Prefecture of *LUNDENAS* contains these *Herreds*, viz. *East-Herred* with six churches; *North-Herred* with ten churches; *Bolling* with twelve churches; *Ginding* with nine churches; *Hierum* with fifteen, and *Hammerum-Herred* with eighteen churches.

This Prefecture derives its name from the famous ancient castle of *Lundenas*, which is at present a nobleman's seat. The conflux of the rivers *Lundenas* and *Lomborg* forms the *Skiern*, which yields plenty of salmon. There is a bridge of 180 feet in length over this river.

III. The Prefecture of *KOLDINGHUUS* comprehends the *Herreds* of *Ferlef* and *Slags* with eight churches; *Tyrild* with nine churches; *Holmand* with six churches; *Norwang* with seventeen churches; *Eldboe* with four churches; *Brusch* with nine, and *Andst* with ten churches.

The most remarkable places in this Prefecture are as follows.

*Felling*, a large village with a church, in the *Herred* of *Tyrild*. It was formerly a city, and is said to have been the residence of several of the ancient kings. The tombs of the Pagan king *Gormo* and his virtuous consort queen *Tyra*, to be seen here, are worth notice. These are two hillocks or *Tumuli* within the church; and betwixt them is a stone with hieroglyphical figures and a *Runic* inscription, which *Harald*, the first Christian king of *Denmark*, erected in memory of his abovementioned ancestors in the year 960. Near queen *Tyra's* grave there is a deep well.

*Weile*, *Wedle*, or *Wedel*, in Latin *Vejella*, *Velleja*, or *Vedelia*, is a small town situated in a very pleasant country betwixt two hills, which are covered with woods. A little river, that runs between the hills, is here divided into three streams, one of which runs through the town, and the other two encompass it. These three branches unite again and run into the large gulf, called *Wielcfjord*. In this river, at some distance from the gulf, there is a good salmon-fishery. The town-house at *Weile* was formerly a *Dominican* convent, which was founded in the year 1227. The sides of the neighbouring hills are covered with beautiful hop-grounds. In 1256, a great Synod of all the *Danish* bishops and prelates was held in this town, when they passed the famous Decree, which begins with these words: *Cum Ecclesia Daciana adeo persecutioni tyrannorum subiecta, &c.* This constitution was afterwards confirmed by Pope *Alexander IV.* and the *Danish* bishops often made use of it as a sanction for making an unreasonable opposition to their sovereigns. Another Synod was held here in 1278; and *Christian II.* received the homage of the Nobility in this town.

*Engelsholm*, a seat belonging to the *Lichtenberg* family, lies in this Prefecture.

*Fridericia*, the only fortified place in all *North Jutland*, is a modern town situated in a fertile country, on the *Little-Belt*. The circuit of this town is large; but it is far from being sufficiently stocked with inhabitants and buildings. It was first begun, in 1651, by *Frederick III.* but the fortifications were scarce completed and the town built and properly inhabited, when the *Swedes*, in the year 1657, took it by storm, and burnt a great part of it. At the conclusion of the war both the fortifications and the town were repaired; and in order to increase the number of its inhabitants, king *Christian V.* in 1682, granted a charter which rendered *Fridericia* an *Asylum* for all bankrupts whether natives or foreigners, and allowed the *Calvinists*, *Papists*, and *Jews* the free exercise of their religion there. - This town was formerly exempt from the Excise, which it now pays; but the king applies the money towards completing the buildings of the town. Its fortifications, though in good condition, are of so large compass that they would require a numerous garrison to defend them. *Fridericia* has also several commercial privileges; but as it wants a good harbour it cannot improve them to the best advantage. Here are two *Lutheran* churches (in one of which, namely, *St. Michael's*, the service is alternately performed in the *Danish* and *German* languages) a *Calvinist* church, a popish \* church, a synagogue, a grammar-school, and a good arsenal. A considerable quantity of tobacco is planted both within and without the walls. This is the place where all vessels passing through the *Little-Belt*, pay a toll for their

\* This, the author is so complaisant as to call a *Catholic* church; but I cannot see how it can be called so with any propriety; especially in this place.



lading. This town was at first called *Frederickfodde*; and lies in the *Herred* of *Eldboe*.

*Kolding*, in Latin *Coldinga*, a small town, stands on the river *Truetb*, or *Kolding*, which here empties itself into a bay that runs about a geographical mile from the *Little-Belt* into the land, as far as this town. It lies low between two hills, and is one of the oldest towns in this country; though no mention is made of it in history till the year 1247. It has one parish-church, a rich hospital with a particular church belonging to it, and a grammar-school founded and well endowed by *Dorothea*, *Christian* the third's queen. The harbour is choked up, which is a great disadvantage to the trade of this town. On an eminence to the north-west of *Kolding* stands the castle of *Coldinghuus*, formerly called *Oernsborg*, *i. e.* 'Eagle's-castle,' which was first built by duke *Abel* in the year 1248; but great alterations and improvements were made in it by *Christian* III. *Christian* IV. and *Frederick* IV. One of its greatest curiosities is the *Giant's Tower* built by *Christian* IV. which is flat on the top, with a stone balustrade, and at each of the four corners stands a stone image seven feet high. This castle has its particular church or chapel. The air here is reckoned very mild and healthy; this induced king *Christian* III. to make it his usual residence till his death, which happened in the year 1559. In 1712, when *Copenhagen* was visited with the pestilence, *Frederick* IV. retired to this place with the whole royal family. *Kolding* is chiefly remarkable for the royal custom-house, which stands over the water on the bridge, in order to receive a duty for all foreign commodities which are brought in carriages that way, and likewise for oxen and horses going into the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, &c. The number of oxen passing this way one year with another is computed at 20,000; and for every head two rix-dollars are paid. At a Diet assembled here in 1547, the privileges of the *Hanse-towns* were confirmed; and in 1614, a Synod of all the bishops of the kingdom was held in this town.

IV. The Prefecture of *RIBERHUUS* contains the *West-Herred* including twelve churches; the *Herred* of *Giorring* with eight churches; *Malt-Herred* with eight, and the *Herred* of *Schad* with eighteen churches.

Remarkable places in these districts are as follows.

*Warde* or *Warda*, in Latin *Varinia*, was formerly a considerable city; but as the depth of its river (which abounds in fish, particularly salmon) is so much decreased, as to be no longer navigable for ships of burden, it is fallen to decay. However, it has two churches and a large parcel of land belonging to it, which the inhabitants very industriously cultivate, and carry on some little trade besides. An assembly of all the Provosts of the Diocese of *Ripen* is held here annually in the month of *October*, in which the General-Governor and the Bishop jointly preside.



*Jetting* or *Hierting*, a handsome well-built country town, lies about two geographical miles from *Warde*, where the river *Warde* empties itself into the *North-Sea*. Its harbour, which is called *Graae-Dyb* is the best in all *North-Jutland*.

*Ribe*, or *Ripen*, in Latin *Ripæ Cimbrica* or *Ripæ Pbundusorum*, the capital of this Diocese, is said to derive its name from the Latin word *ripa* and the river *Nibs-Aa*, on the banks of which it stands. It appears to have been built about the time when Christianity was introduced into this kingdom, and, next to *Wiberg*, is reckoned the most ancient town in *North-Jutland*. *Ripen* was formerly one of the most celebrated and flourishing cities in the North: For it had, four parish-churches and five chapels, besides the cathedral; four convents with their churches, a strong castle, and between six and seven hundred free Burghers. A considerable number of ships traded to *Norway*, *France*, *England*, *Holland*, &c. from this port; and the city had the privilege of coining money. But an end was put to all this grandeur and opulence partly by several conflagrations, (particularly the dreadful fire in 1580) and partly by inundations and the ravages of war; so that this once flourishing city gradually fell into decay. The city and suburb are separated by the *Nibs-Aa*; and the former is entirely surrounded by that river, which sometimes lays it under water. Here are two churches and the cathedral, which is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and stands on an eminence called *Lilienberg*. It is a large structure, and contains the monuments of king *Erick III.* and *Christopher I.* On one side of the choir is the chapter-house, in which the consistory is held, and the Provosts meet annually on *Midsummer-day*. Here are also the effigies of all the bishops of *Ripen* since the Reformation, the first excepted, and two iron chests full of instruments, as Diploma's, Bulls, Statutes, Wills, &c. with bones and other reliques of saints, missals, vestments and the like. *St. Catherine's* church is also a large edifice, and is said to have been built in the thirteenth century by the *Dominican* monks whose convent was contiguous to it. The grammar-school here is the most ancient of any in *Denmark*; for it is said to have been founded in the year 1298. It consists of six classes, has seven masters, and a library which was built in 1720. The *Dominican* convent is converted into a commodious hospital; but the forty-six dwellings, which were built here for widows and orphans to live in rent-free, are fallen into decay, so as to become untenable. The merchants old Exchange is now converted into a town-house. Here is still some little trade carried on in grain, horned-cattle, horses, &c. but the shallowness of the river will admit of none but small vessels to come up to the city, and these only at high-water. The most remarkable historical particulars concerning this city are as follows. In the year 860, a church was built here which was accounted the second in the kingdom. A provincial Synod was held in this city in the year 1246, and two national Synods, one in

1441, and the other in 1542. The well-known gold and silver *Ripcan* pieces were coined here under *Frederick III.* in the year 1533.

*Fanoë* is an island lying in the *North-Sea*, about a geographical mile and half in length. It contains two parishes; and the inhabitants are mostly seafaring people and fishermen. This island belongs to the *Herred* of *Skads*.

*Note*, In the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, are the following places belonging to *North-Sutland*.

1. The county of *Schackenburg*, which belongs to Count *Schack*, and contains

The parish of *Mogel-Tunder*, with a large village of the same name. The inhabitants of this district are chiefly employed in making fine laces, little inferior to those of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, for which they have a considerable vent. Near the village of *Mogel-Tunder* lies the feat called *Schackenburg* where the Count resides. Among the villages belonging to this parish is also that of *Gallbus*, where, in the year 1639, a country girl of *Osterby*, found the famous golden *Horn of Tunder*, which is at present kept in the king's *Museum* at *Copenhagen*, by stumbling on the point of it which stuck out of the ground. The horn including the curvature is about a *German* ell and a quarter, but measured in a strait line is only an ell in length. Its diameter at the thickest end is five inches. It is of the purest gold, and weighs near 100 ounces, or, according to the *Descriptio Musei Regii*, seven pounds five ounces and ten penny-weights; and is valued at 1200 rix-dollars. The explanation of the emblematical figures, with which this horn is embellished within seven circles, is a matter of such difficulty as to have occasioned several disputes among the Learned. *Christian IV.* made a present of this horn to his son prince *Frederick*.

In the year 1734, a peasant dug up such another horn in this district, which was embellished with several figures, and a *Gothic* or *Runic* inscription, which *Graver* has rendered thus: *Muhltonners Helligdomshorn in to pipen, or die stunden anzuzeigen*, which signifies, that it was a sacred horn to give notice of the time by sounding it every hour. Concerning the inscription on the former, I refer the reader to *M. A. H. LACKMANN'S Einleitung zur Schleswig-bolsteinischen Historie, Tb. vi. §. 64—72*. And concerning that on the last mentioned horn, he may consult a treatise entitled, *Unvorgreifliche Gedanken bey Gelegenheit des 1734 den 21 April abermals ausgegrabenen goldenen horns. Hamburg, in quarto*.

2. The parishes of *Dabler* and *Ballum*, with the manor of *Troyburg*, which includes the parishes of *Visbye*, *Randenip*, *Mealden*, and *Josterup*.

3. The south part of the island of *Rom*.

4. The north angle of the island of *Sylt*, which is called *Lyst*.

5. The island of *Amrom*, which is a parish by itself.

6. That half of the island of *Fobr* which lies towards the west, and constitutes a parish.



*The* D U T C H Y *of*  
S L E S W I C K.

In Latin, *Ducatus Slesvicensis*.

**I**N DANKWERTH'S *Description of the Dutchies of Sleswick and Holstein*, besides a general map of the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, are two others exhibiting the north and south parts of it separately, four maps of the ancient *North-Friesland* which was included in *Sleswick*, and fifteen topographical maps accurately exhibiting the single Districts of this Dutchy. *Vischer, Homann*, and others have copied the general map, to which they have made some additions from those of particular Districts. But, not to mention smaller errors, these gentlemen have not represented *Nord-Strand* as it is at present, but according to the state it was in before the year 1634; and have entirely omitted the island of *Arroe*, which lies in the *Baltic* or *East-Sea*.

This Dutchy derives its name from *Schleswig* or *Sleswick* its capital; but is frequently termed *South-Jutland* in history, especially by ancient writers. Some have erroneously described it as a part of *Germany*, and annexed it to *Holstein*. For though *Sleswick* has, for some centuries, been intimately connected with the Dutchy of *Holstein*, so as to be under the same government, and in the department of the *German Chancery*\*; and though the inhabitants of the former are in a very extraordinary manner so blended with those of the latter in common life, that no mention is ever made of *Sleswickers*, who generally call themselves *Holsteiners*: Yet *Sleswick* in reality is a part and Fief of *Denmark*, as I shall presently more plainly demonstrate. It is divided from the Dutchy of *Holstein*, and consequently from the *German* empire, by the *Eider* and the *Lewens*, both these rivers being its south boundaries. To the East it has the *Baltic*: the rivers *Kolding* and *Skotburg* separate it from *North* or proper *Jutland*; and to the West it is washed by the *North-Sea* †. It extends from *Rendsburg* to *Koldingen* about eighteen geographical miles in length; but its breadth is unequal, being in general eight, nine, or ten, and about fourteen geographical miles in the broadest part; in which, however, the two small islands of *Arroe* and *Helgeland* are not included. Providence has plentifully sup-

\* See page 79 of this volume.

† This is called in *Denmark*, and by the Author, the *West-Sea*, on account of its situation with respect to that country.



plied this country with corn, cattle, and fish. There are no high mountains in *Sleswick*, but only some eminences which hardly deserve to be called by that name. The highest hills are near the towns of *Sleswick* and *Apenrade*. The chief rivers in this Dutchy, most of which direct their course from East to West, are, the *Eider* which divides *Denmark* from *Germany*, and will be taken notice of in my account of *Holstein*; the *Treen* which falls into the *Eider* near *Frederickstadt*; and the *Nips-Aa* which runs close by *Ripen*. To these may be added the smaller streams of *Lobbeck*, *Widau*, *Gronau*, *Suderau*, and *Sobelmau*. In some parts of the west-side of the Dutchy lying between the islands and the continent, which are overflowed by the tides, are a great many oyster-dredges. These belong to the crown-lands, and are farmed out by the royal *Rent-Chamber*; but the county of *Schackenburg* claims a right of fishing for oysters in some of them.

The inhabitants of the Dutchy of *Sleswick* are a mixture of *Danes* or *Juts*, *Lower-Saxons*, and *Friesians*. Besides these, there are *Hollanders* settled in *Frederickstadt*, and *Flemmings* in *Nordstrand*; which occasions a variety of Dialects in this country. In the Prefecture of *Husum*, the District of *Bredstedt*, in the *Harde* of *Bocking* and *Widding*, in some parts of the *Harde* of *Kar*, and in *Pekworm*, *Febr*, *Sylt*, *Anrom* and all the other little islands the *Friesian* is the common language; but Divine-service is performed in these places in *High-Dutch*, and likewise in the parish of *Viol*, where they speak the *Danish* language. The *German* language is spoken in the towns of *Sleswick*, *Eckernforde*, *Husum*, *Frederickstadt*, and *Tonningen*; in the Districts of *Eiderstedt*, and *Stapelholm*; in those *Harde*s of the Prefecture of *Gottorf*, which lie south of the gulf of *Sley*; in the *Danish Forests*, and the island of *Femarn*. In some of the other towns both the *German* and *Danish* languages are used: In others only *Danish* is spoken by the inhabitants, excepting some people of fashion, who affect to distinguish themselves from the commonalty by speaking *German*. In the Prefecture of *Tunder*, the above-mentioned places excepted where the *Friesian* language obtains, Divine-service is universally performed in *Danish*, as it is also up the country farther north. At *Flensburg* and other towns in the northern part of *Sleswick*, some *Danish* preachers are settled, on account of the great number of *Danes* among the servants and labourers in these parts, to whom a sermon is preached every *Sunday* in the *Danish* language. The *German* alone obtains in great schools in the towns; but in those places in the country where the *Danish* language only is spoken, *Danish* school-masters are appointed.

*Lutheranism* is the prevailing religion in this Dutchy, except at *Frederickstadt*, where, besides *Papists* and *Jews*, several particular sects are tolerated. On the island of *Nordstrand* the Roman-Catholics have a parish-church and a chapel to perform their devotions in. The *Calvinists* are also indulged

indulged in the exercise of their religion in this Dutchy, by an edict issued out in the year 1734; but they are not very numerous here. The Nobility of *Sleswick* have the same privileges with those of *Holstein*; excepting, that they are not subject to the same Governor, but acknowledge the King only for their sovereign, and are under the jurisdiction of the royal Provincial Court at *Gottorf*, which will be spoken of in the sequel.

This country has from time immemorial been united to the kingdom of *Denmark*; and as a part of that monarchy had the same sovereign and constitution till the year 1085, when king *Knut the Pious* created his brother *Oluf* duke of *Sleswick*; a political error in which several of his successors have copied after him to the irreparable damage of the kingdom. King *Niels* invested *Knut* the son of king *Erick* with this Dutchy as a Fief; and from that time it has been almost continually held by a prince of the Blood, under the title of a Dutchy; but not without numberless contests, in which it has often been warmly disputed whether the Fief was personal or hereditary. At last, the Dukes formed a design of entirely dismembering *Sleswick* from the *Danish* dominions. But in the year 1424, the affair was referred to the arbitration of the Emperor *Sigismund*, who adjudged the Dutchy to king *Erick* as a part of his kingdom. As Duke *Adolphus* died without issue in the year 1459, King *Christian I.* claimed the vacant Dutchy as a Fief of the *Danish* crown; but in order to strengthen his claim by the affections of the people, and to gain *Holstein* also, he condescended to be elected Duke of *Sleswick* and *Holstein* by the Nobility, and, at the same time, granted the states several important privileges. King *John* was the first who unfortunately planned the partition of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, in the year 1490. He reserved to himself in both Dutchies the following places, and revenues, namely, *Segeberg*, the customs or toll at *Oldesto*, the port of *Kaden*, together with *Rendsburg*, *Hanrow*, *Hafeldorp*, *Femarn*, *Alsen*, *Sunderburg*, the island of *Arroe*, and the territories of *Flensburg* and *Appenrade*. To his brother, Duke *Frederick*, he assigned *Gottorf*, the parish of *Kampen*, *Little-Tundern*, *Hadersleben*, *Eckernforde*, *Rundbof*, *Steinburg*, *Eiderstedt*, *Trittow*, *Oldenburg*, *Plon*, the castle of *Tylen*, *Itzeboe*, *Osterbof*, *Hobensfeld*, *Neumunster*, *Lutkenburg*, *Kobovede*, *Neustadt*, *Kiel*, and the island of *Nordstrand*. The convents lying in the two Dutchies were also divided; the king reserving to himself those of *Rbeinfeld*, *Arensbof*, *Preetz* and *Ruge*; and investing the Duke with those of *Bordisholm*, *Cismar*, *Reinbeck*, *Uetersen*, and *Lugum*. Besides all this, the king invested his brother with the title of heir apparent to the kingdom of *Norway*, which the succeeding Dukes of *Sleswick* and *Holstein* have carefully kept up. King *Christian III.* made another division of these Dutchies between himself and his brothers, reserving for his own share *Flensburg*, *Sonderburg*, *Alsen*, *Arroe*, *Sundewit*, the convent of *Ruge*, *Segeberg*, *Oldesto* with half the toll, *Reinfeld*, *Arensbof*, *Plon*, *Steinburg*, *Itzeboe*, *Krempe*, *Wilstermarsch*, *Heiligenhafen*, and

Great-



*Great-Brode.* To *John* he assigned *Hadersleben*, *Dorning*, *Little-Tundern*, with *Osterharde*, *Rendsburg*, and three villages; the island of *Femarn* and the convents of *Bordesholm* and *Lugum*. But *Adolphus* had for his share *Gottorf*, the seat and Prefecture of *Hutten*, *Husum*, *Apenrade*, *Wittensee*, *Morkirchen*, *Stapelholm*, *Eiderstedt*, *Kiel*, *Neumunster*, *Oldenburg*, *Trittow*, *Reinbeck*, *Cismar*, and *Neustdt*. *Frederick*, the fourth brother, being provided for as bishop of *Hildesheim* and *Sleswick*, was excluded from having any share in this partition. This second division of *Sleswick* and *Holstein* among the princes of the Blood was attended with more fatal consequences than the first. The King, indeed, acted with prudence, and established the *Union* and *Communion*, as they are called, in these principalities. The former related only to an obligation of reciprocal assistance; the latter to their common form of government in matters pertaining to the Nobility, Contributions, and some other articles. His design was by these precautions to prevent any discord among the princes, or a total disjunction of the Dutchies or any parts of them, which might render them independent of each other. But as these instruments of *Union* and *Communion* were, according to the simplicity of those times, drawn up in very plain artless terms; each party afterwards was for wresting the meaning of the words to favour its private views. Duke *John*, the second brother, dying without heirs in the year 1580, his share was again divided. King *Frederick II.* took the seats, Prefectures and towns, with all the prerogatives and revenues thereto belonging of *Hadersleben*, *Dorning*, and *Rendsburg*; and to Duke *Adolph* were assigned *Tundern*, *Nordstrand*, and *Femarn*; also the convents of *Lugum* and *Bordesholm*, with all their dependencies. The third part, namely, the customs of *Gottorf* were shared betwixt the King and the Duke. As for the division of *Dithmarsch*, the crown was invested with the hereditary and sole property of the south part of it; and the north part was settled on the Duke. In the year 1609, the Duke obtained of *Christian IV.* as Lord paramount, the right of primogeniture. The succeeding Dukes acknowledged, and conformed to the annexation of the Dutchy of *Sleswick* to the crown of *Denmark* as a Fief, which had been solemnly ratified in 1579 by the Convention of *Odense*, till Duke *Frederick's* daughter was married to *Charles Gustavus* king of *Sweden*, in the year 1654. For then the Duke began to aspire after an independent sovereignty with regard to his moiety of *Sleswick* and the isle of *Femarn*; which *Frederick III.* on account of the bad situation of his affairs, was obliged to grant: But the Duke lost this prerogative, in 1675, by the treaty of *Rendsburg*. And though some alteration in the Duke's favour was made in this affair, in the year 1679, by the treaty of *Fontainbleau*; yet the King sequestered to himself the Duke's part of the Dutchy of *Sleswick* in 1684; and it was not till the treaty of *Altena*, in 1689, that his *Danish* majesty again gave up the sovereignty. But, in 1714, king *Frederick IV.* re-assumed it; and it was confirmed to him by the treaty of



*Stockholm* which was concluded in 1720. As the whole Dutchy was then incorporated with the kingdom of *Denmark*, his majesty ordered the two lions, which are the arms of *Sleswick*, to be expunged out of the *Holstein* escutcheon, and to be inserted in that of the kingdom of *Denmark*. The Emperor, and the Kings of *England*, *France*, *Sweden*, and *Spain*, together with the republics of *Holland* and *Poland* were guarantees to his *Danish* majesty for his new acquisition. As for the small principalities of *Augustenburg* and *Glucksburg* we shall speak of them in the sequel. The Dutchies of *Sleswick* and *Holstein* are, at present, governed by a *Statthalter*, appointed by the king: And this high Post is now filled by the Margrave of *Brandenburg-Culmbach*.

The whole Dutchy is divided into cities, Prefectures, Districts, *Hardes*, *Birkes*, Parishes, Manors, and *Koges*. The cities have their particular magistrates, who are quite independent of the Prefectures, though they trade with the Districts of the latter. The *Statthalter* for the time being is president or chief judge in all the towns of the Dutchy. The *Amts* or Prefectures are governed by Prefects, and over the Districts and *Harde Landvogte* and *Hardevogte* are appointed for the maintenance of order, and administration of justice. The District of *Eiderstedt* is governed by its particular laws called *Viti Dinggericht*, and certain magistrates who are distinguished by the title of *Oberstaller* and *Staller*. In some Prefectures the *Amtman* or Prefect alone judges at the first hearing of a cause. But in others the *Hardevogt* or chief magistrate of the *Harde* is joined with him. From their sentence, before the execution of it, there lies an appeal to the court called *Ding*. In some Prefectures the *Hardevogt* pronounces a definitive sentence alone in his own *Harde*; whereas in others eight colleagues called *Sandmannern*, or twelve *Bonden*, sit on the bench with him, and have an equal vote. In case of an appeal from such a sentence, he must justify it before the supreme court, if required. The Prefect of every Prefecture may sit as president in the courts of judicature called *Dinge* and *Bonden* courts; but has no voice in such courts. The common law of this country is contained in the old *Jutische Lowbuck*, or *Codex legum Juticarum*, instituted by king *Waldemar II.* in a Diet held at *Wordingborg* in the year 1240. Some towns, however, have their particular municipal laws. The supreme court of judicature for this Dutchy is held at *Gottorf*, and has four sessions in a year to determine all causes that are brought before it. In *Gottorf* castle the provincial court is held annually in *Easter-week*, where, as in the former, all verdicts and sentences are passed in the king's name. It consists of the *Statthalter* or Governor, four Noblemen, four Counsellors learned in the law, and a Recorder, with a Notary and Secretary. Next to these is the chief Consistory, the members of which are the counsellors of the Dutchy or provincial Court, the general Superintendant, who is the chief consistorial Counsellor, with two other consistorial counsellors, who are ecclesiastics.

The

The three last have also a seat in the Supreme Court of Judicature during the sessions of the chief Consistory. The towns, Prefectures, and manors are divided into a certain number of *Pflug* or *Ploughs* \* of land, according to which the taxes are imposed. The newly enclosed *Koges* are assessed according to their number of *Demates*, a land-measure which in *Eiderstedt* is equal to 216 square rods, allowing sixteen feet to the rod; but in the Prefecture of *Tundern* is no more than 180 square rods, at eighteen feet the rod. The taxes in the country are sometimes levied by the stewards or clerks of the Prefectures, and sometimes by the magistrates of the *Harde*, and by them paid to the king's receiver at *Rendsburg*, whither the towns and manors remit their assessments as soon as they are collected. In every Prefecture there is also a Steward, or Administrator, who takes care of the royal revenues, the repairs of the roads, the preservation of the woods, &c. King *Christian VI.* established a *Brandgild* or Fire-office † in every Prefecture and *Harde*; and these are under the direction of the General-College for the improvement of manufactures, &c. ‡ But the towns have their particular *Brandgilds*.

The Prefectures and Districts in this Dutchy are as follows:

I. The Prefecture of *HADERSLEBEN*, which is separated from *North-Jutland* by the river *Kolding*, extends in length from the *Baltic* to the *North-Sea* above nine geographical miles, and from four to five in breadth. As to the number of Plough-lands and revenues, it exceeds any Prefecture in this Dutchy. The largest rivers in *Hadersleben* are the *Schodtburg*, the *Nips-Aa*, and the *Lobbeck*. The soil is very fertile, especially in the eastern parts of this Prefecture, which are also very woody. It takes its name from the town of

*Hadersleben*, in Latin *Hatterslebia*; which lies in a low, open plain. It is of a middling bigness and carries on some commerce; and part of its trade arises from its being the usual thoroughfare to *Funen* and *Jutland*, and part from the shipping which belongs to this port. But the latter is not very considerable; for the entrance into the harbour is so shallow, that they are obliged to carry the goods on board the ships in *Prabmes* or lighters. The town is divided by a narrow stream into two unequal parts, which are called *Old* and *New Hadersleben*. In the former, which is but meanly built, stands the parish-church of *St. Soren* or *Severin*, which being reckoned a rural church belongs to the Prefecture. In the latter, which can no longer be properly called the *New-Town*, are some

\* A Plough of Land is a certain number of acres of arable land. We also call it a *Hide* in *England*, which is as much as one plough can cultivate in a year.

† This seems to be an Office for receiving the duty on wood, &c. for fuel, or perhaps what we call *Hearth-money* in *England*; or it may be an *Insurance-office*; but the Author leaves us in the dark in this particular.

‡ See Introduction to *Denmark*, §. 19. Art. 4.

handsome houses, which, indeed, suffered by the ravages of the Imperialists; and the large parish-church of St. *Mary's*. There was formerly a Cathedral at *Hadersleben*. The school and the well endowed alms-houses were founded in the year 1569, by Duke *John*, brother to *Christian III.* and the former, in 1584, received a considerable benefaction from king *Frederick II.* There was anciently a large castle or palace on an eminence without the town. *Hadersleben* obtained a charter of privileges in the year 1292. In 1534, king *Frederick II.* was born in this town, as was king *Frederick III.* in 1609.

The Prefecture of HADERSLEBEN consists of seven *Hardes*; two of which are fertile in every part; but the other five contain a great many barren spots. These *Hardes* are as follows, *viz.*

1. *Hadersleben* consisting of eleven parishes, among which is included *Aroesunds-Fekre* in the *Little-Belt*.

2. *Thylstrup* with fourteen parishes.

3. *Gram* with ten parishes.

4. *Fros* with six parishes.

5. *Kalssund* with five parishes.

6. *Hvidding* with twelve parishes.

7. *Norder-rangstrup* with five, and the *Vogtey* of *Bollerleben*, the Ploughlands of which lie dispersed in the Prefectures of *Appenrade* and *Tundern*. Twenty-nine of the rural churches are under the jurisdiction of the bishop of *Ripen*, and the rest are under the Provostship of *Hadersleben*. In the *Harde* of *Gram* lies *Torning*, which was formerly a famous strong castle, but now only a royal manor. Some who dwell in the Fief of *Torning*, as it is called, are under the jurisdiction of the *Birke* of *Ripen*, which was erected in the year 1735.

II. The Prefectures of APENRADE and LYGUM Convent.

The Prefectures of ABENRADE, properly *Abenraae*, and LYGUM Convent are both under the same Prefect.

That of APENRADE is very mountainous, and yields plenty of game and fish. It derives its name from

*Apenrade*, one of the best and most flourishing towns in the country, which, within these three centuries, has been greatly enlarged, and still continues to improve both in beauty and extent. It lies at the bottom of a deep open bay which runs from the *Baltic* a good way into the land. It is environed on three sides with high mountains; and has a safe and commodious harbour, but not deep enough for ships of burden to come up close to the bridge. Most of the inhabitants are in good circumstances; for they are noted for ship-building, and have of late been constantly employed. This town has frequently suffered by fire; namely, in the years 1148, 1247, 1576, 1616, 1629, and 1707. But the industry of its inhabitants has repaired all the losses it sustained. The castle or *Amt-house* of *Brunlund*,



*lund*, a mean small edifice, lies a little way to the east of *Apenrade*. Queen *Margaret*, who built this palace in 1411, intended to have enlarged it, had she not been prevented by death in the following year. It is at present the residence of the Prefect.

This Prefecture contains,

1. The *Harde* of *Ries* consisting of four parishes. In one of these, namely, the parish of *Jordkier*, lies the village of *Tollsted*, near which is the place called *Urnebovet*, where the ancient *Sleswick* Nobility used to hold their Diets or assemblies of the States in the open air.

2. The *Harde* of *Suder-rangstrup*, containing four parishes.

3. The *Birkvogtey* of *Warnitz* which is a large village with a church in it.

The Prefecture of *LYGUM* or *LOHM-KLOSTER*, in Latin *Locus Dei*, was formerly a rich *Bernardine* convent, said to be founded in the year 1152, but is now converted into a mansion-house for the Prefect. In the convent-church, which is a spacious handsome structure, lie five of the bishops of *Ripen*. The inhabitants of this District make a great deal of lace. This Prefecture consists of one *Birkvogtey* which includes three parishes.

III. The Prefecture of *TUNDERN* is above five geographical miles in length; its greatest breadth is about eight; and the soil is rich and fertile in most parts of it. The inhabitants chiefly speak the *Jutland* and *Friesian* dialects, but generally understand the *Low-Saxon*. The *Harde*s of *Bocking* and *Widing*, with the islands *Sylt* and *Fobr* are under the jurisdiction of the *Dreybarder* Court. This Prefecture consists of these *Harde*s, namely,

1. *Bocking*, which consists partly of heaths, and partly of marshland. The former is called *Riesmabr* and contains four parishes. The marshland was formerly a cluster of islands, which were gradually joined to, and became a part of the main land. However, *Galmsbul* may, in some measure, still pass for an island, as in spring-tides this little eminence is surrounded by the water. The inhabitants of *Galmsbul* subsist by using the sea, and the profit arising from a small salt-work. This *Harde* contains three parishes.

2. The *Harde* of *Horsbul* or *Widing*, which is all marshland, and was formerly an island, consists of six parishes.

3. The *Harde* of *Karr*, which is about three geographical miles long and two broad. The soil here is mostly sandy and barren, with a very little marshland. It contains ten parishes, and the large village of *Leck*, said to have been formerly a considerable town.

4. The *Harde* of *Lundtoft*, which contains four parishes. The manors belonging to it also include two parishes.

5. The *Harde* of *Schlaux* or *Schlux*, for the most part, consists of sandy, marshy, and barren soil, and contains six parishes.

6. The *Harde* of *Tunder*, consists of a fertile soil and fine marshes, and contains two parishes.

7. The *Harde* of *Hoyer*, is which pretty fertile, and has some rich marshes: It consists of three parishes, and the following places of note.

*Hoyer*, which is a pretty market-town; *Tondern*, a sea-port, which is pretty much frequented, and is very famous for its oysters; *Emerlef*, which indeed, belongs to the County of *Schackenburg*; but as there are several persons in it that are subject to this *Harde*, I have inserted it here.

8. The island of *Sylt* lies about one geographical mile and a quarter from the *Harde* of *Widing*, and is four geographical miles in length, but very unequal in its breadth. The soil cannot be said to be fertile, neither does it produce wood or turf; so that the inhabitants are obliged to supply themselves with fuel from the continent. They subsist chiefly by agriculture, grazing, knitting, and navigation; and are such expert seamen, that other trading towns are glad to employ them on board their ships. But as they are very sensible of their abilities, few of them will serve as common sailors, but expect the pay of masters or mates. Both sexes are very tenacious of their ancient dress on this island, *Sylt* contains four parishes, and is governed by a *Land-Vogdt*. The north-angle of this island which is called *Lysl* had formerly a harbour; but at present it is quite choked up with sand. It belongs to the Diocese of *Ripen*.

9. The island of *Fobr* is a fertile spot about three geographical miles in circuit. The east-side which constitutes two parishes, and where a *Land-Vogdt* presides, belongs to the Prefecture of *Tundern*; but the west-side which contains but one parish is subject to the Diocese of *Ripen*. The inhabitants in their manners, &c. perfectly resemble those of *Sylt*. On this island stands the village of *Wyck*, which is built after the *Dutch* manner; and as it has a safe rode for ships, the inhabitants carry on some trade by sea.

The places worthy of notice in this Prefecture are as follows.

The town of *Tundern*, in Latin *Tundera*, is next to *Sleswick* one of the most ancient in this Dutchy. It was endowed with the privileges of a city so early as the year 1243, is well built, but not very large, and carries on a considerable trade in corn, cattle, and the fine lace which is made here. This town has the same privileges as *Lubeck*. Its church, which was built in 1591 and 1592, makes a grand appearance. A school was founded here in 1612. The old palace which stands in this town was never very large; but was formerly well fortified. In the course of 500 years it has undergone several vicissitudes. For one while, it was enlarged and improved, and soon after taken by storm. After this it was mortgaged, and held out a vigorous siege; but not long after it was entirely dismantled, and still continues in ruins.

Several *Koege* and Districts, which have been separated from the main land by the sea, have had particular privileges granted them by the king, and collectively make a very fine and fruitful tract of marsh-land. These are the

the *Dagebullen-Koeg*, those of *Old and New Christian*, and *Albert-Koeg*, the *Klegfeer-Frederick* and *Rutebull-Koegs*, the *Botshjift* and *Bluemen-Koeg*.

IV. The Prefectures of SONDERBURG and NORBURG, on the islands of ALSEN and ARROE.

The island of *Alsen* lies in the *Baltic* near the continent, and is between three and four geographical miles long, and from three fourths to one half in breadth. The soil is very fertile in every part of it, and yields great plenty of fruit and all kinds of grain, except wheat. It is a pleasant island, and is sheltered with several fine woods abounding in game. Here are also several fresh lakes which are stocked with variety of fish; especially in the northern parts. It is divided into *South* and *North-Harde* called *Sonderburg* and *Norburg* Prefectures.

The Prefecture of SONDERBURG is in the south part of the island and contains the following places of note, *viz.*

The town of *Sonderburg*, in Latin *Sonderburgum*. As for the time when this town and castle were built, history makes no mention of it. However, they are at least of 500 years standing. *Sonderburg* is of a middling bigness, and stands on the acclivity of a very rugged hill, which makes the streets very uneven. This town has of late years been much improved as to its buildings. Here is but one church, which stands almost without the town, on an eminence; and adjoining to it is an alms-house built out of the ruins of an old convent. Most of the inhabitants are mariners. *Sonderburg* harbour is looked upon as one of the best in *Denmark*. The king's palace, which stands on the west-side of the town at the entrance of the harbour, is both spacious and strong. It is a quadrangular structure fortified after the old method with round bastions. On the east-side of this castle is a round tower, in the lower part of which king *Christian II.* was confined as a prisoner for twelve years. King *Frederick IV.* restored this castle to its present good condition, when it was falling to decay. It is the residence of the King's Prefect; and has a beautiful chapel, where several of the princes of *Sonderburg* are interred.

*Augustenburg* is the place where the Princes of *Sonderburg* reside. It stands at the distance of half a geographical mile from *Sonderburg*, in the parish of *Ketting*. It was built by Duke *Ernest Gunther*, grandson to Duke *John II.* about the middle of the last century; and is a handsom structure. Near the castle lies a small village, consisting of about forty houses, which is mostly inhabited by persons belonging to the Prince's court. The manors of *Augustenburg*, *Gammelgaard*, and the village of *Gundstrup* in the parish of *Ketting*, *Evelgunde* in the parish of *Nottmark*, the manors of *Rumobrslof*, *Gravenstein*, and the fine seats of *Kielstrup* and *Abrup* also belong to the Dukes of *Sonderburg*.

The Prefecture of NORBURG consists,

1. Of the north part of the isle of *Alsen*, which contains five parishes.

The



The ancient castle of *Osterholm* in this Prefecture lies in ruins, so that all that is worthy of notice here may be reduced to *Tundost* or *Norburg* church with the fine seat called *Norburg*, lately built by Duke *Augustus*. The castle that formerly stood on the same spot, which was one of the most ancient in the country and well fortified by art and nature, and had been several times besieged and taken, was consumed by fire in the year 1665. The present edifice, though it is neither large nor magnificent, is admired for its elegant simplicity, and pleasant situation. The village of the same name that lies near it was formerly called *Kopping*: It stands in a pleasant situation, and is continually improving.

2. The island of *Arroe*, which lies at the distance of half a geographical mile from *Funen* and two miles and a half to the North-East of *Alsen*. It is three geographical miles in length, and from one-half to two-thirds of a mile in breadth. This island was formerly very woody; but the soil has been almost totally cleared, in order to render it fit for tillage. There are no deer in *Arroe*; but it abounds in hares and wild-fowl. Here are two good harbours, namely, that in the large bay, at the entrance of which two castles formerly stood, one on each side; and that of the little town of *Arroes-Kiøping*, which is sheltered by the little island of *Deyeroe* that lies opposite to the harbour. The inhabitants are a mixture of peasants and sea-faring people. Here is a great plenty of all kinds of vegetables; especially cabbage, onions, and *Danish* cummin. Duke *John II.* bequeathed this island to his son *Christian*; but the latter dying soon after without issue, it devolved to his brother *Frederick*, who sold the middle part of the island to his brother *Philip* of *Glucksburg*. The rest of it devolved to the house of *Ploen*, and afterwards to the king, who, in 1749, purchased the middle part, of the *Glucksburg* family; and thus became sole proprietor of the whole island. It contains the Prefecture of *Grafenstein* (which consists of the two manors of *Wuderup* and *Grafenstein*;) the little town of *Arroeskøping*, which stands on a level and has a parish-church and a pretty good harbour; and also five parishes, in one of which the little town of *Marstal* lies. As to spirituals, this island is in the Diocese of *Funen*; but with regard to civil affairs it is included in the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, and is under a particular court of judicature by virtue of an edict published in the year 1750.

V. The hereditary estate of the Duke of GLUCKSBURG.

It is well known that king *Frederick II.* assigned some parcels of land to his brother *John*, from whose third son Duke *Philip*, the line of *Glucksburg* is descended; and the present Duke *Frederick* is a great grandson of the said *Philip*. The Duke has both the higher and lower jurisdiction over his hereditary dominions, with the right of hunting, and pardoning of criminals. However, he cannot alienate his hereditary lands without the king's consent; it being a patrimonial *Fidei-Commissum*. It consists,

1. Of

1. Of the little Prefecture of *Glucksburg*, which lies within the *Harde* of *Huesbeyer* in the Prefecture of *Flensburg*. *Glucksburg*, the Ducal palace, stands in a delightful country, and is environed with a moat and a fine wood. In this place stood formerly a rich convent of *Bernardines*, which was called *Rube-Kloster*, and at the Reformation was sequestered to the crown. But, in 1581, king *Frederick II.* conferred it as a Fief on his brother Duke *John II.* who ordered the present fine palace to be built out of the materials of the convent. Near the palace is a pretty village called by the same name, and inhabited by officers and tradesmen belonging to the Duke's court. Besides the palace-chapel, which is the burial-place of the Dukes, it contains also the churches of *Munckbrarup* and *Nien-kerken*.

2. The *Harde-Vogty, Broacker*; and the little territory of *Sundewit* (i. e. *Wittharum vel futorum australium regio*) which is one *Danish* mile \* in length, almost as much in breadth, and consists of six parishes, four of which, viz. *Broacker, Nubel, Satterup, and Ulderup* are included in the district of *Glucksburg*. In the first of these the *Glucksburg* manors of *Krammark, Sheelgaard, Freyleben, and Schottsbullhoff* or *Nienhoff* lie. In the others the Ducal estates of *Lundgaard* and *Phillipsburg*, together with three other manors, are situated.

In *Sundewit* lies the county of *Reventlau*, to which besides the mansion-house which was formerly called *Sandberg*, and the parish of *Duppel*, several other detached parcels of land belong. Count *Christian Detlev* is the proprietor of the Baronies of *Brabe-trolleburg* and *Brendegaard* in *Funen*, the estates of *Krenkrup, Rosenlund* and *Norregaard* in *Laaland*, and *Frisenwold, Kalbe, Loistrup* and *Brusgaard* in *Jutland*.

VI. The Prefecture of *FLENSBURG* extends from the *North-sea* to the *Baltic* seven *Danish* miles in length; but the breadth is unequal being about three miles and a half in some places, and more in others. Its soil also varies in different parts of the prefecture; the middle of the country being nothing but moors and barren wastes, and the skirts tolerably fertile and pleasant. Here the river *Sabohn* rises, which, after receiving the *Wybbeck* and *Leckau*, empties itself into the *North-sea*. The *Treen*, which abounds with fine fish, and falls into the *Eider* near *Frederickstadt*, has its source also in this Prefecture; which derives its name from the town of

*Flensburg*, in Latin *Flensopolis* or *Flensburgum*, which is a pretty large, well built town. Its situation is low; and it is surrounded on three sides by mountains: But on the fourth lies the famous gulf called *Flensburger-wieck* which runs twenty miles from the *Baltic* into the land. The hills on both sides of the bottom of the gulf form a secure harbour with a depth of water sufficient for the largest ships, which at present are unloaded at the key; but formerly this was done close to the warehouses. The trade of this town was then, indeed, very considerable, but is at present greatly

\* Ten and a half *Danish* miles are equal to a degree of the Equator.



decayed. The commerce of the *Flensburghers* to *Norway* has been clogged with great difficulties, and that to *Copenhagen* and other parts of *Denmark* entirely lost; for they are prohibited from exporting thither any cloths, silk, woollen stuffs, wines 'or brandy, of which, with other commodities, they used to make very extraordinary profits. A severe blow was also given to their trade by the last peace concluded at *Aix-la-Chapelle* betwixt *France*, *England*, and *Spain*; so that this town has further calamities to apprehend. *Flensburg* is a long narrow town, and extends above a mile in length from the North gate to St. *John's* gate. It has twelve lanes besides the high street, and five gates exclusive of the *Mill-Gate*. It is divided into twenty-two quarters; and most of the houses are spacious and strongly built. Here are three *German* parish-churches, one *Danish*, and a good school founded by *Ludolph Naaman*, who was a *Franciscan* monk of a convent of *Minims* in this town. This school has since been enriched by several benefactions. Here is an alms-house, with a chapel, that was formerly a convent of *Grey-Friars*, and in which fifty poor persons are comfortably maintained; and also an orphan-house. There is a sort of an Exchange with warehouses for merchants, &c. by the water-side. The South and North Market-places are both spacious areas, and the latter is adorned with a fountain of free-stone. Without St. *John's* gate directly facing the harbour is a pleasant suburb, called St. *Jurgen*, the greatest part of which belongs to the alms-house, and but a small part of it to the town. An old ruinous castle stands on a mountain which lies west of the town, and not far from it is a paper-mill. The Prefecture and town of *Flensburg*, and also the territory of *Bredstedt*, in ecclesiastical affairs, are subject to the consistory of this District. With regard to the historical particulars of this town, it first occurs in history in the year 1232, when, probably, it was only a village, on occasion of a convent which was then founded here. In 1284, it obtained the privileges of a city from Duke *Waldemar*, and had another more advantageous charter of Police from *Christian IV.* but the principal articles in both charters have been since revoked. In 1412, the famous queen *Margaret* died on board a ship in this harbour, in her passage to *Sweland*. In 1427, it baffled the combined forces of the *Holsteiners*, the *Lubeckers*, and the *Hamburgers*, who warmly pressed it by land and by sea; but at present it is a place of no strength at all. Several remarkable Diets have been held here; particularly that of 1648, when all the states paid homage to king *Frederick III.* In the same year the Chancery or Supreme Court both for *Sleswick* and *Holstein* was established here; but in 1649 it was removed to *Gluckstadt* in *Holstein*. In 1646, king *Christian V.* was born in the ancient castle that stood in this town, which is now in ruins. In the year 1655, when the plague raged at *Copenhagen*, the Court and all the public offices removed to this town.

The *Hardes* belonging to the Prefecture of *FLENSBURG* are,

1. *Wies*, which consists of six parishes.

2. *Huesby*,



2. *Huesby*, which is two *Danish* miles and a half in length, and one in breadth. It contains five parishes.

3. *Nie*, which is above two *Danish* miles in length, and seven in breadth, consists of five parishes.

4. *Uggel*, which is three *Danish* miles long, but of an unequal breadth. It contains six parishes.

*Note.* The famous tract of land called ANGELN, which is five *Danish* miles in length and four in breadth, lies between the gulf of *Flensburg* and that called the *Sley*. It includes the *Hardes* of *Huesby*, *Nie*, with a great part of that of *Uggel* in the Prefecture of *Flensburg*; part of the territory of *Glucksburg*, the Provostship of *Gettingen*, and the *Hardes* of *Struxdorf* and *Schliefs* in the Prefecture of *Gottorf*. In the fifth century the ancient inhabitants of this country, in company with the *Saxons* and *Jutes*, their neighbours on both sides, emigrated into GREAT BRITAIN, where having repelled the invasions of the *PICTS*, they made themselves masters of the country, to which they gave the name of ENGELAND or ENGLAND from that of their former habitation.

VII. The District of BREDSTEDT, which was formerly called *Norgos-Harde* (as that of *Husum* was called *Sudgos-Harde*) is two *Danish* miles in length and as many in breadth, and contains a great many acres of marshland. It had formerly its particular *Landvogt* and Secretary; but is now subject to the Prefect of *Flensburg*. Since the year 1741, a college of Regulation, and a particular Police have been established here. In ecclesiastical affairs it is subject to the consistory of *Flensburg*. In this District are the following places of note.

*Bredstedt*, an ancient large market-town, well built and populous. South-west of this place the Count *des Mercieres* inclosed a *Koeg* of 1100 *Demates* of land, and gave it the name of *Sophice Magdalena-Koeg*.

Eight parishes, among which the *Stifts-vogtey* of *Bordelum* is a part of the old District of *Schwabsted*. The Secretary is also *Stifts-vogt* or Governor of them.

VIII. The Prefectures of HUSUM and SCHWABSTEDT.

The Prefecture of HUSUM alone is not above two *Danish* miles in length and as many in breadth; but the soil is fertile and well cultivated. It consists of heaths and marshland; and on the former all the churches and villages are built. It also includes part of the Prefecture of *Schwabstedt*, which, during the minority of the prince, the government dismembered and parcelled out among the neighbouring Prefectures about the beginning of this century. The territories of *Schwabstedt* and *Rodemis* were annexed to the Prefecture of *Husum*; those of *Treya* and *Fusing* to the Prefecture of *Gottorf*, and those of *Bordlum*, *Bredstedt*, and *Colstrup* were incorporated with the Prefecture of *Apenrade*.

The Prefecture of HUSUM is so called from

*Hufum*, in Latin *Hufumum*, a pretty large town, and well built with stone. It lies on the *Hever* where the heaths and marshland are separated from each other. It cannot boast of its antiquity, as it was only a large village in the year 1372; but from that time to 1398, it increased so as to make the two villages of *East* and *West-Hufum*, which were incorporated with the parish of *Milstedt*. In 1432, the inhabitants built a chapel for their own use, and in 1448, detached themselves from *Milstedt*, and became an independent parish. After this *Hufum* began to flourish in a surprising manner, and was made a market-town. In 1498, a convent of bare-footed *Gray-Friars* was founded here; but at the Reformation it was converted into the alms-house and chapel which are still to be seen in *St. George's* church-yard. In the year 1500, the parish-church of *Hufum*, one of the largest and handsomest in the country, was built. In 1521, a mint was established in this town, where a great number of rix-dollars were coined; but it was soon after removed to *Sleswick*. The school, which by the liberalities of private persons is now endowed with a fund of 14,000 *Lubeck* marks, and has five classes, was built in 1531; and Duke *Adolphus*, in 1577, began to build a palace on the situation of the old convent, which he had the satisfaction of seeing completed in the year 1582. It is a spacious and convenient structure, and has frequently been the residence of the Dowager Dutcheffes. In 1582, this town obtained a charter of Police and jurisdiction within itself; and in 1601, a noble town-house was built here. In 1603, *Hufum* was constituted a city, with suitable privileges, by Duke *John Adolphus*, and in 1608, a new charter was granted it. The famous *Antoinette Bourignon* lived in this town in 1673, and had a press set up in her house, where she used to print her own works, till the government put a stop to her publications. The inundations of *Nordstrand* have been of great detriment to *Hufum*, by the absolute ruin of its trade with that island; and the terrible flood which happened in 1717, has reduced the people of *Hufum* to a low condition. The ravages and calamities of war have also further loaded it with very heavy debts, under which it still groans. Formerly this city was famous for exporting great quantities of malt, which found the inhabitants a profitable employment. They also employed above forty large vessels in commerce; and the oyster-trade was almost entirely in their hands; but they are now deprived of all these advantages. The oyster-dredges suffered extremely by the hard frost in the year 1740; and, at present, the chief trade of this place consists in beer, cattle, and horses; some thousands of oxen being annually fed by the *Hufumers* in the south-marshes, and in autumn, driven from thence for sale to *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*. But notwithstanding the great decay of its navigation, it still employs the indigent, and supplies the place with the chief necessaries in trade. *Hufum* has a Consistory; but an appeal lies from it to the superior Consistory of *Gottorf*.



To the Prefectures of HUSUM and SCHWABSTEDT belong eight parishes, in which are the following places of note.

*Mildstedt*, which is the mother-church of the *Husum* parishes, and three ministers still belong to it. Near *Mildstedt* on the river *Milda* formerly stood the town and castle of *Mildesborg*, which were built in 1145, and destroyed by an inundation in the year 1300.

*Schwabstedt*, which is an old and ill built, but pleasant and populous town. Its castle was formerly the residence of the Bishops of *Schleswick*, who had also a palace in that city.

To the Prefecture of HUSUM belong also some small islands, among which are the island of *Pekworm*, and what remains of the island of *Nordstrand*, with the Downs or Sandbank which is still called by the same name. *Nordstrand* lies in the *North-Sea*, and was formerly three *Danish* miles long, and, in most parts, above one mile broad. It was inhabited by savage *Friesians*, contained twenty-two parishes, and by its extraordinary fertility abounded in cattle and corn. For some centuries this island had suffered great damages, from time to time, from the violence of the sea, particularly in the years 1300, 1483, 1532, and 1615. But the most terrible inundation of all began about ten at night on the 11th day of *October*, in the year 1634, when the whole country was entirely overflowed; and the impetuosity of the waves was so great that 6408 persons, 1332 houses, thirty windmills, six steeples, and 50,000 head of cattle were swept away by the sea. In *Eiderstedt*, besides 664 houses, involved in the same ruin, 2107 persons, 6100 head of cattle and 6738 sheep and hogs, perished at the same time. Of all *Nordstrand* nothing is now remaining but the small parish of *Pekworm* which owed its safety to the height of its situation; and the *Brabanderkoeg* or little island of *Nordstrand*, which by the assistance of some *Flemmings* has with inexpressible labour and at a vast expence been drained and rendered habitable. Since this dismal catastrophe the small island of *Nordstrand*, and the neighbouring *Nordstrand-Downs* belong to the above-mentioned *Flemmings*, and particularly to the *Fathers of the Oratory at Mecblin*. There is a *Lutheran* church and a popish chapel in *Nordstrand*. In *Pekworm* there are two *Lutheran* churches; and one on each of the little islands which lie about it, namely, *Groed*, *Hoog*, *Langenes*, *Nordmarsh*, and *Oland*; which are all within the Prefecture of *Husum*.

IX. The District of EIDERSTEDT, which is a very fertile and rich country, lies between the *Hever* and the *Eider*. It extends in length, from East to West, above four *Danish* miles; but the breadth is unequal from three-fourths to one and-a-half *Danish* mile, and its circumference is about fourteen. It is for the most part a kind of marshland, and produces plenty of wheat, barley, beans, and excellent pease; and but little rye. It is particularly famous for esculent herbs, and cattle. A great quantity of butter and cheese is also exported from hence. The sheep here have



have larger fleeces of wool than in other places; and likewise give a greater quantity of milk. The horses are strong and of a large size; but the greatest part of the horses they employ here are bought in *North-Jutland* and *Ditmarsh*. *Eiderstedt* is supplied with wood from the higher countries at the distance of several miles. Here is some fresh-water fish, but these are in no great plenty; the country being liable to the irruptions of the sea, which soon proves fatal to those species of fish. Its low and damp soil renders the air very unhealthy, especially to strangers. The inhabitants are all plebeians, without one noble family amongst them; and the wealthiest of these are of *Friesian* extraction. They have great privileges and particular laws and customs of their own. The Dykes on the north and south-side are kept in repair by incredible labour, and at a great expence. The government of the country is lodged in two officers called *Oberstaller* and *Staller*, who are appointed by the king; and sixteen inferior counsellors, and two secretaries are joined with these in the *Viti Ding Gericht* or court of Judicature. This District is divided into *East* and *West-Eiderstedt*.

In *East-Eiderstedt* the only town of note is

*Tonningen*, in Latin *Tonninga*, which is the chief town in the country; and obtained the privileges of a city in the year 1590. In 1644, it was fortified by Duke *Frederick* at a vast expence\*. This town is elegant, but neither large nor populous. In 1613, the harbour was widened and improved by the Duke at the expence of 30,000 rix-dollars; so that *Tonningen* had a considerable trade by exporting yearly large quantities of the commodities of the country, which every *Monday* were brought hither to market from every part of *Eiderstedt*. In 1675, during the war with *Sweden*, the Duke, pursuant to the treaty of *Rendsburg*, was obliged to cede this town to the King, who caused the fortifications of it to be demolished. But when the Duke recovered the town and the whole country, in 1679, they were repaired, and improved with additional works; so that when king *Frederick IV.* besieged it he was not able to make himself master of it. In 1713, *Steinbock* the *Swedish* General having by the Duke's consent been admitted into the town, the king of *Denmark* with the assistance of his Allies plied it so vigorously, that the *Swedes* were obliged to surrender themselves prisoners of war; and in 1714, the king having got possession of the town, the fortifications were demolished a second time. *Tonningen* has been in a defenceless condition ever since that time. It had once a noble castle; but that was likewise demolished by the King's orders in the year 1734.

Besides this town there are seven parishes in *East-Eiderstedt*, and the town of *Oldenswort*.

\* The author says thirty-six Tons of gold; but I cannot pretend to determine what he means by a *Ton of Gold*.

*West-Eiderstedt* contains the following Districts.

1. *Everschop*, or *Heverschop*, which is so called from the river *Hever*. It consists of six parishes, besides the little town of

*Garding*, which obtained the privileges of a city in 1590.

2. *Utholm*, which consists of four parishes. On the *West-Hever* about the year 1670, stood a castle called *Wogensmannesburg*; which was inhabited by pirates. The inhabitants of *Everschop* and *Utholm* laid siege to it, and owed their success chiefly to a brave young woman, who posted herself on the Salley-bridge and gave the besiegers time to force their way into the castle, of which, after some resistance, they made themselves masters.

X. The Prefecture of *GOTTORF* or *GOTTORP* is about seven *Danish* miles in length and six in breadth, and consists of the following *Harde*s.

1. The *Harde* of *Hobner*, so called from the village and parish of *Hohn*, is nearly surrounded by the *Eider* and *Sorg*; and is about two *Danish* miles in length and as many in breadth.

2. The *Harde* of *Krop* is about two *Danish* miles long and one-and-a-half broad. It mostly consists of heaths and moors; and *Lobside* one of the former is famous for many battles which were formerly fought there. The only parish in this *Harde* is that of *Krop*, from which it takes its name.

3. The *Harde* of *Arens* is something less than two *Danish* miles in length, and almost as broad; and the soil is but little better than that of *Krop*. In this *Harde* lies the greatest part of the celebrated *Dannewerk*, or great wall which, in the beginning of the ninth century, *Gotric* king of *Denmark* built, to prevent the incursions of the *Saxons* and *Slavens*. It runs across the whole country, from *Hollinstedt* to the gulf of *Sley*, about eight or nine *Danish* miles in length; and a great part of it is still remaining. In this *Harde* lie the parishes of *Hollinstedt* and *Haddeby*, or *Haddebue*. The church belonging to the latter, which was built in the year 826, is the most ancient in the Dutchy, and, I may add, in all *Denmark*: But on the relapse of the people into Paganism, it has been several times destroyed. It lies opposite to the city of *Sleswick* on the south-side of the *Sley*, in which the first Christians in this country were baptized. The name of this parish is written eight different ways; and some will have it to signify a sea-port town, others the Capital: For it is conjectured that a city stood formerly in this place; which is very probable, as the church seems to be the remains of it.

4. The *Harde* of *Struxdorf* is four *Danish* miles in length, and contains twelve parishes.

5. The *Harde* of *Schlies* lies on the *Sley*. The inhabitants of this *Harde* are chiefly employed in the fishery in the bay, where they catch great quantities of herrings, &c. It consists of five parishes.

6. The

6. The *Vogteys* or little territories of *Fusing* and *Treya*. The former of these once belonged to *Angeln*, and the latter to the Prefecture of *Schwabstedt*.

7. The small Prefecture of *Mobrkirchen*. This was formerly a convent of monks of the order of *St. Antony*, and erected towards the close of the 14th century. It includes the *Vogteys* or territories of *Langstedt* and *Carlsweaa*. In the year 1752, this *Amt* was invested with a Judicature of its own in commercial differences; from which there lies an appeal to the Superior Court of *Gottorf*. But in causes of another nature it is under the Jurisdiction of the Inferior Consistory of *Gottorf*; and the Governor of *Gottorf* also presides over *Mobrkirchen*.

Within the Prefecture of *GOTTORF* are the following places of note.

The castle of *Gottorf*, or *Gottorp*, stands in the *Harde* of *Arens* between *Lollflus* and *Fredericksberg*, which are two parts of the city of *Sleswick*, in a most delightful country. Some derive the name of this place from *Gottesdorf*, i. e. 'God's village;' for it originally belonged to the bishops of *Sleswick*, and was appropriated to a pious use. The most ancient bishops of *Sleswick* resided in a castle that stood about half a *Danish* mile to the north-west of that city, not far from the place on which an inn called *Rugekrog* now stands, where some of the ruins of it are still to be seen. That old castle, however, was demolished in the year 1059. Afterwards Bishop *Occo* built a new palace on the spot where the castle of *Gottorf* now stands, which continued in the possession of the bishops of *Sleswick* till the year 1268, when Duke *Erick* procured it for himself by an exchange. It was at that time a strong fortress; and the Dukes of *Sleswick* resided in it till the year 1713, when king *Frederick IV.* got possession of it, and united it to the crown of *Denmark* in the year 1721. It had, from time to time, been improved, altered, and rebuilt by the Dukes of *Sleswick*; and king *Frederick IV.* and *Christian VI.* also laid out considerable sums in furnishing and embellishing it with fine pictures, &c. In this palace are held both the Superior and Provincial Courts of Judicature, and also the Superior and Provincial Consistories. It once had two gardens; but the *Old Garden*, as it is called, which lies south of the palace is entirely gone to decay, and now sold to a burgher. The *New Garden*, to the north of the palace, is beautifully laid out. It has an elegant summer-house, in which was formerly kept a large globe of eleven feet diameter, the outside of which represented the Earth, and the inside the Heavens studded with all the known stars of silver, gilt. Ten or eleven persons might sit conveniently round a table within it. The whole machine revolved round its axis once in twenty-four hours, being put in motion by water; and was so contrived that it might be easily kept in constant rotation from within by means of an *Archimedes's* screw. In 1713, this noble Globe was presented to the Czar *Peter I.* who ordered it to be conveyed to *Petersburg*; and therefore



we shall give a farther account of it in describing that city. The *Gottorf* library was first begun, in the year 1606, by Duke *John Adolphus*; but in 1749, the books were removed from hence to *Copenhagen*. Opposite to the castle of *Gottorf*, on the south-side of it, stands a palace of a very elegant structure, which was erected at a great expence by Count *Natt*. When his *Danish* majesty became master of the place, he bestowed this palace on the *Statthalter* or Governor of *Sleswick-Holstein*.

*Schleswig* or *Sleswick*, in Latin *Slesvicum*, is the capital of the Dutchy, and said to derive its name from the *Wiecke* or gulf of *Schley*. It was formerly called *Huddebue*; and the above-mentioned church, which stands without the city of *Sleswick*, still retains that name. From the year 808, when the city of *Mecklenburg* was demolished, and the richest merchants were removed hither by king *Gotrick*, *Sleswick* gradually increased and rose to great prosperity: But in the eleventh century it was pillaged, burnt, and razed to the very ground by *Harald* king of *Norway*, and also by the *Holsteiners*, *Vandals*, &c. Though it recovered itself pretty well after those calamities; yet has it several times since met with the same fate; and, in the year 1447, it was entirely destroyed by fire. However, it was a flourishing town, after all these misfortunes, till the year 1713, when the Ducal Court being removed from *Sleswick* it fell to decay. And though the Governor and the State Officers still reside here, yet these advantages are not an equivalent for the above-mentioned loss: Neither is it capable of carrying on any great foreign trade, the mouth of the *Sley*, which is about five *Danish* miles below the town, being choked up; and at present a great number of houses in this city stand empty for want of inhabitants. *Sleswick* lies in a most charming pleasant country. Its form is very irregular; but something resembling a crescent; it being about half a *Danish* mile in length. The city is divided into three parts, namely the *Old* or proper *Sleswick*, *Lollfufs*, as it is called, which is a long street leading from the town to the castle of *Gottorf*, and *Fredericksberg*, formerly called *Kratzenberg*, which lies at the south extremity of the town towards *Rendsburg*. In the *Old Town* there is but one church, which is the cathedral and dedicated to *St. Peter*. It is a grand structure and makes a good appearance both within and without: However, it has no steeple, or tower, though a very superb foundation of hewn stone has been laid for one. This church was built in the year 1260; and about 200 years after, was almost totally destroyed by fire; upon which the Council held at *Basil*, in 1441, granted Indulgences to all who should contribute towards the rebuilding of it. Of the fine altar in this church I shall speak in the account of *Bordesholm*, from whence it was removed hither. In the choir are the tombs of *Frederick I.* and his two queens, with those of the Dukes of *Sleswick* of the *Oldenburg* branch, and several bishops. Not far from the cathedral is the Orphan-house, which was founded in the year 1714; and

on the great market-place stand the town-house and the *Grey-Friars* convent. On the north-side of the town on St. *Michael's* hill stands a church called by the name of that Saint; and in *Fredericksberg* is *Trinity* church, which was built in 1651. There were formerly seven parish-churches and six convents in this city; but now one can scarce trace out the places where many of them stood. On the east-side of the town on the other side the *Fish-bridge* lies the *Holm*, as it is called, where the famous convent of St. *John*, which was founded for ladies of noble families, stands. There are ten nuns now resident in it, the Abbess included. This convent was probably begun in 1194, for nuns of the *Benedictine* order; for it was never inhabited by monks, as some affirm: Neither does it stand on the *Gull* or *Guldenholm*, being at the distance of a *Danish* mile from it. In the gulf, opposite to the city lies *Mew-island*, so called from the incredible multitude of Sea-Mews which make it their summer abode. In former times a mole or causey leading from the west-end of the key to *Mewenburg*, and from thence to *Hadebye*, lay on the south-side of the town. This was the usual road into *Holstein*, and was defended by the strong castle of *Jurgensburg*, which stood in *Mewenburg* but is now in ruins. At the end of this mole, near the key, the castle where king *Abel* resided when Duke of *Sleswick* stood on the main land. When that monarch came to the crown by the murder of his brother *Erick*, he bestowed this castle on the *Augustine* monks, who converted it into a convent, which stood on the spot where the Orphan-house now stands. The mole has been so sapped and washed away by the sea, that none of the remains of it are discernible at present, but at low-water:

XI. The little District of *STAPELHOLM* lies between the *Eider* and the *Treen*, and is computed to be about two *Danish* miles in length, and from three-fourths to two miles in breadth. It is governed by a *Landvogdt* who is subordinate to the Prefect of *Gottorf*, and is a particular provostship consisting of three parishes.

In this District lies

*Frederickstadt*, which is not a large, but regular and well built town, and of a square form after the *Dutch* manner. It is situated between the rivers *Eider* and *Treen*: Its streets are kept very clean, and in some of them fine rows of lime-trees are planted. Some *Dutch Arminians*, who quitted *Holland* immediately after the synod of *Dort*, were the founders of this town, and called their settlement by the name of *Frederick IV.* who was then Duke of *Sleswick*. In 1632, *Frederickstadt* increased considerably. Half of the Magistracy is of the *Arminian* and the other half of the *Lutheran* persuasion: The *Calvinists* also assemble in the *Arminian* church. The *Lutheran* church was consecrated in the year 1650. The most substantial traders and merchants in this town are *Mennonites* \*. Here are also some *Quakers*

\* These were a sort of *Anabaptists*, and derive their name from *Mennon Simon* of *Frisia*, who lived in the 16th century.

---

N O R W A Y,

With the I S L A N D S of

F A R O E, I C E L A N D,

A N D

G R E E N L A N D.

---



---

Y A W R O H

Q Z S T A B T H O

---

A N

## I N T R O D U C T I O N

T O T H E

## D E S C R I P T I O N of N O R W A Y.

§. 1. **W**ITTE and Homann have given us maps of *Norway*, which, however, are far from being correct, and stand in need of many amendments. In *Blaeu's Atlas* there are particular maps of the several provinces of *Norway*; and *Homann* also has published others of the same kind. Lastly, *Keulen* has favoured the Public with some accurate charts of the *Norwegian coast*.

§. 2. NORWAY, by the *Danes* and *Norwegians* called *Norge*, was known to the ancients by the names of *Norrike*, *Norrige*, *Nerigon*, *Norwegia* or *Norrigia*. It is bounded to the West and South by the *North-Sea*, to the North by the *Northern Ocean*, and to the East by *Russian Lapland* and *Sweden*. It is separated from the latter by a chain of mountains, the highest parts of which are called *Kolen*, in Latin *Juga montis Suevonis*. The length of the whole curvature formed by the coast of *Norway*, from *Svin-sund* to the *North-Cape*, is about 350 *Norway miles*\*; but in a strait line, or through the air, from *Lindenaas* which lies in  $57^{\circ}$ ,  $47'$  latitude to the *North-Cape* in  $71^{\circ}$ ,  $30'$ , its length is  $202 \frac{1}{2}$  *Norway miles*. The breadth is very unequal, being about fifty *Norway miles* from the frontiers of *Sweden* to *Cape Statt* near *Sundmoer* on the western coast; but in some places it is only thirty, and in others not above six *Norway miles*.

\* The author does not tell us how many *Norwegian miles* are equal to a degree. It were to be wished he had used more precision in determining the length of miles, ells, &c. which he often mentions in general terms, without specifying what miles, &c. he means. A *Norway mile* is at least equal to five or six *English miles*.

§. 3. The air in most parts of *Norway* is pure and salubrious, but more so in the middle and east-side than in the western parts: For in the latter the air is damp, and the weather extremely variable; hence scorbutical disorders are very common among the *Norwegians*. The cold in winter is tolerable enough to the inhabitants, so that they feel no manner of inconvenience from it. Providence has also, for their security against the cold, bestowed on them not only plenty of wood, and, in many places, turf for fuel; but likewise wool, the skins of wild beasts, and feathers of wild-fowl for beds and clothing: Besides, those who live in the vallies are sheltered by the high mountains from the cold piercing winds.

In the eastern parts the winter sets in about the middle of *October* and continues till the middle of *April*. The cold during that season is very intense; and so great a quantity of snow falls in the northern parts, that the high mountains and vallies which are exposed to the North are entirely covered with it year after year. Sometimes enormous masses of snow roll down from the steep mountains and precipices with such impetuosity, that they demolish houses and trees, and kill the cattle and the peasants in the vallies underneath. However, the snow does not lie long, nor fall in such quantities on the sea coast; and when the winter's cold is very severe in the east and north parts of the country, the weather is commonly moderate and open on the western coasts: So that when the inhabitants of the eastern parts have by means of the ice and snow the convenience of bringing their commodities in sledges to the market-towns, those of the western side on the sea-coast, at the same time, are employed in their profitable fisheries.

In summer the heat is often excessive; which is partly owing to the high mountains contracting and strongly reflecting the sun-beams, and partly to the length of the days. Hence it happens, that in some places only nine weeks intervene between seed-time and harvest; but on the middle of the continent it is usually twelve weeks, and in the southern parts sixteen or eighteen after sowing-time before the corn be thoroughly ripened.

§. 4. The western coast of *Norway* is surrounded with a great number of islands and *sheers* or rocks. Some of the former are three, six, or nine *Norway* miles in length, and pretty fertile; but most of them are small, and inhabited only by a few fishermen and pilots. The rocks, which rise several fathoms above the surface of the water, are a kind of rampart and defence to the coast, and amount to some hundreds of thousands. There are abundance of good harbours, which are formed by the rocks, on this coast; and in many places large iron rings are fastened to these rocks, for mooring ships where there is not sea-room, or a fit bottom to anchor in. As the water is generally calm and smooth between these shelves or rocks and the main land, they are of great service to coasters; the violence



of the waves being broken against these barriers, whilst the open places on the coast are very dangerous, and every year prove fatal to many small vessels which are driven ashore in stormy weather. The *Norway* shore is in very few places level or gradually ascending; in some places it lies low, but is generally steep or perpendicular, and smooth; so that close to the rocks, on both sides, the depth of the sea is from an hundred to two, three, or four hundred fathoms. On the other hand the bottom is higher or more sloping on the long uneven sand-banks, which are called by different names; as *Stor-eggen* by some, and by others *Hav-broen*, i. e. 'Sea-breaks'. Those banks, like the *sbeers* or rocks, extend from North and South along the coast. Some of them are between four and six *Norway* miles, others from twelve to sixteen, distant from the continent; and in these places vast quantities of fish are usually caught.

From the sea several gulfs and creeks run six, eight, or ten *Norway* miles into the land; and in some of them which are but from fifty to a hundred fathoms in breadth, runs a narrow channel four hundred fathoms deep; but on the sides of these channels, which are called *Tief-Runnen*, the depth is not above a hundred fathoms. The particular qualities of the *North-Sea* near the coast of *Norway*, have been already specified in the general account of the Seas by which the countries described in this volume are bounded\*.

§. 5. Besides innumerable brooks and rivulets, *Norway* is watered by several large rivers, or streams, which are called by the general name of *Elven*. These are the *Nied*, *Sule-Elv*, *Gaulen* or *Gulen*, *Otteraa*, *Syre*, *Nid*, *Skeen*, *Tyrefjords-Elv* or *Drammen*, *Loven* or *Laven*, *Glaamen* or *Glommen*, &c. The following lakes abound with fish and are navigable, namely, *Ryfs-vandet* in *Nordland*, *Schmaafen*, *Selboesee*, the greater and lesser *Mios*, *Slire-wasser*, *Sperdillen*, *Rand*, *Vesten*, *Saren*, *Modum*, *Lund*, *Norsoe*, *Hvidsøe*, *Fares-wasser*, *Oeye-wasser*, and *Femmund-see*. On some of these lakes are seen little floating islands about thirty or forty ells in length. The rivers of *Norway* are not navigable for vessels of any burden, on account of the great number of rocks in them by which the navigation is obstructed, but much more by the cataracts or water-falls where the stream precipitates itself from a height of six, eight, ten, forty, fifty, and even a hundred fathoms.

For stopping the timber which is floated down these water-falls, and generally without receiving any damage, *Lenzes* or booms, strongly fortified with iron-bars are, at certain places, laid across the rivers. The expence of keeping up such a *Lenz* or boom in many places amounts to no less than three or four hundred rix-dollars a year; but, in return, it annually brings in one thousand or eleven hundred rix-dollars to the proprietor of it. Near these water-falls some hundreds of sawing-mills are erected.

\* See Page 59.

## I N T R O D U C T I O N T O

The bridges over the rivers in *Norway* are all of timber.

In the winter when the rivers are frozen to a great depth they form the best roads in the country; for in less than an hour one may travel a *Norway* mile on these icy roads.

The fresh-water in *Norway* is generally palatable and salubrious, and is impregnated with a great quantity of ferruginous particles. Here are also several kinds of medicinal springs.

§. 6. The *Norway* mountains are either *Juga montium concatenata*, extending themselves in a long continued chain from *North* to *South*, or stand single and detached from each other and surrounded with a level country. Among the former the *Kolen* in *Finmark* may be reckoned the principal, of which I shall give a further account in describing the Diocese of *Drontheim*. It is accounted the longest chain in *Norway*, and divides itself into two main arms or ridges of hills; one of which is the boundary between *Norway* and *Sweden*, and in its course is called by the several names of *Rud-field*, *Sule-field*, *Skars-field*, or in general *Sevebierge* or the Seven Mountains. The other branch of the *Kolen* chain also changes its name, and runs at first from East to West about sixteen *Norway* miles, as far as *Romsdal*; but from *Romsdal* and *Guldbrandsdal* it extends itself towards the South for seventy *Norway* miles, and terminates at *Lindenaas*. The former ridge of mountains, from the manor of *Dofre* which lies on the south-side of it, is called *Dofrefield*, and is nine *Norway* miles in breadth between *Tofte* on the south-side, and *Opdal* on the north. The latter ridge which lies in a southern direction is from twelve to fourteen *Norway* miles in breadth, and is in general called *Langfield*; but in particular parts from the adjacent countries it has the names of *Loms-field*, *Sogne-field*, *Fiele-field*, *Halne-field*, *Hardanger-field*, *Jogle-field*, *Bygle-field*, *Hekle-field*, and *Lang-field*. *Dofrefield* is reckoned the highest mountain in all *Norway*. On *Dofrefield* are four, and on *Fiele-field* two *Field-stuvers*, or *Mountain-stoves*. These are resting-places kept up, and provided with fuel and other necessaries at the public expence, for the conveniency of travellers. In the year 1685, king *Christian V.* rode all the way over *Dofrefield* on horseback, though all his attendants frightened at the rocks and precipices were not ashamed to alight and walk along this dangerous road. On the summit of the mountain his Majesty was saluted by Major General *Weib* with a discharge of nine pieces of ordnance, which expedition the King commemorated by causing a pyramid to be erected on the spot.

These mountains, which stand single, lie betwixt Cape *Lindenaas* and Cape *Statt*, and generally in a north and south direction; but those that lie farther north, winding towards the sea-coast, extend, for the most part, from North-East to South-East, and several of them from East to West. The summits of these mountains yield excellent pastures; the sides of them are covered with woods and inclosures; and the vallies between them are finely watered

watered with brooks and rivers. Besides, their bowels contain inexhaustible treasures of silver, copper, iron, and other metals. Many of these mountains are remarkable for their singular form; and in several of them are cavities of a vast length and depth. *Tind* and *Gule* in *Tellemark* are reckoned the highest mountains in that part called *Sonden-fields*. *Floy-field* near *Bergen*, which is supposed to be but half the height of *Hornelen* in *Nordfield*, or *Snee-hornet* on *Sundmoer*, has by a trigonometrical mensuration been found to be above two hundred fathoms or six hundred ells high; so that *Obrikken*, which lies close by it, cannot be less than eight hundred ells in height.

The inconveniences and disadvantages arising from these mountains, are as follows: The want of fertility in the soil; the demolition of the peasants houses, some of which are dangerously situated on steep acclivities; the many difficult, perilous, and even dreadful roads occasioned by them; the shelter they afford to great numbers of wild beasts of prey in their clefts and cavities; the loss of many lives when the peasants venture down the steep precipices of the rocks after their sheep or goats; and, lastly, the danger, and even the actual calamities to which the inhabitants are exposed by the sudden disruptions of the mountains, when huge masses of the rocks roll down into the adjacent vallies with great impetuosity. The advantages that counter-balance these inconveniencies are the many excellent springs and fine rivers issuing from the mountains; which also afford good pasture, contain in their bowels inexhaustible treasures of minerals and metals, and are a kind of natural fortresses to defend the country against the irruptions of an enemy. Add to this, that they yield the most extensive and amazing prospects.

§. 7. As *Norway* is for the most part full of rugged rocks and high mountains, and has also many morasses, barren wastes, and sandy deserts, there is but a small part of it arable or fit for tillage; so that if it were not for the profitable fisheries carried on by the inhabitants of the sea coasts, the timber trade in the highlands, the sale and carriage of charcoal to the mines, with the employments of grazing and hunting; it would not afford subsistence to one half of the inhabitants.

The corn sowed in this country is also subject to miscarry by many casualties, being often nipped by unexpected and sudden frosts: In dry summers it is often destroyed by the great heats reverberated from the rocks, and in wet seasons washed away by torrents pouring down with surprising rapidity from the hills. The fertile parts, and which produce most corn, are, *Indberred* and *Numedal* in the Diocese of *Drontheim*; *Sogne-fjord* and *Vaas* in the Diocese of *Bergen*; *Federen*, *Ryefylke*, *Raabigdelag* and the Fief of *Nidenas* in the Diocese of *Christian-sand*; *Hedemarken*, *Hadeland*, *Toten*, *Romerige*, *Ringerige*, and *Guldbrandsdalen* in the Diocese of *Aggerbuus*. All these Districts, in most years, not only afford a sufficient quantity of



grain for their respective inhabitants, but also yield enough to supply their neighbours. The other provinces, and, indeed, the greatest part of the country, stand in need of a yearly supply of rye, barley, pease and the like; and what is worse, in many places the third or fourth part of the inhabitants are not able to purchase a necessary quantity of grain: But this deficiency is made up to them in other things. It is remarkable that though the soil never lies fallow, but is plowed and sowed every year; yet it never fails to produce all kinds of grain, especially barley and oats, six, eight, or ten fold, and sometimes with a greater increase. The corn also grows higher in *Norway*, and the ears are fuller, than what is imported from *Denmark* and *Germany*.

All kinds of grain are sown in *Norway*; but not every where to equal advantage.

Rye thrives best in *Hedemarken*, *Toten*, and *Guldbrandsdalen*. It is sown where woods have been burnt down, and the ashes left as manure: But in *Sweden* this custom has been found to be attended with very bad consequences, and therefore prohibited.

Barley is produced in every part of the country, but chiefly in *Nordland*, the Diocese of *Aggerbuus*, the manor of *Nidenas*, the Diocese of *Christiansand*, and in *Sognefjorden*: But the best malt is made of that kind of barley which is called *Dauids-Gerste* or *Himmels-korn*, i. e. *David's* barley, or Heaven's corn.

Oats are the grain most generally sown in *Norway*; but in many places the good grain is destroyed by a kind of wild or spurious oats\*.

Grey, white, and green pease are sown not only in the south, but in the north part of *Norway* where the soil is clayey, though in no large quantities.

Buckwheat, flax and hemp grow likewise here, though not in many places.

When the season for sowing, &c. turns out bad, and, its necessary consequence, a scarcity ensues, hunger has taught the inhabitants to pound the bark of trees, and by mixing it with meal, to make bread of it. The same necessity, it may be presumed, also put them upon baking the *Fladenbrodt* or *Flat-bread*, which is made of barley, oat, or rye-meal, in large, round, and very thin cakes †. These are baked on round iron plates, and

\* These are called by the French *Folle avoine*, and are very difficult to be extirpated. Of this mischievous weed *Virgil* complains in the following verse:

*Infelix lolium, & steriles dominantur avenæ.* Ecl. v. ver. 37.

‘ Wild oats and darnel choke the rising corn.’

DRYDEN.

† Such cakes are well known in *Wales*. As they are generally made of oat-meal, they are called *Oat-bread*. They are baked on round plates of cast-iron, which are called *bake-stones*, and then hardened before the fire. The inhabitants in some counties in *Wales*, live chiefly on such bread, which will keep a considerable time without spoiling.

if put in a dry place will keep for many years without moulding. The occasion of their making the bread in cakes, is, that few places produce a sufficient quantity of rye; and bread made of barley and oat-meal bakes sooner, is more palatable, and goes the farther when rolled thin, than in loaves baked in the common way.

§. 8. That there are good pastures in *Norway* appears by the exportation of tallow, butter, &c. from thence to foreign parts. The best and most nutritive pastures are in *Lofoden*, *Vesteraalen*, *Vaas*, *Walders*, *Hallingdal*, *Tellemark*, and the manor of *Nidenas*. *Norway* also affords most kinds of esculent and garden vegetables, though they are not much cultivated by the inhabitants; nor is it without salubrious and medicinal plants, as *Gentian*, *Radix Rosea* or Rose-root, *Nasturtia*, or Cresses of several kinds, *Trefoil*, *Cochlearia* or Scurvy-grass, and that excellent anti-scorbutic *Angelica* which is so very serviceable to the inhabitants. A great variety of wholesome berries also grow in this country, some of which are common to other places, as strawberries, blackberries, raspberries, and the like; others are peculiar to *Norway* and *Sweden*, as the *Oexel* or *Afald-bar*, *Tege* or *Teye-bar*, called in Latin *Uvæ Norwegicæ*, *Trane-bar*, in Latin *Myrtillus repens*, *Krykke-bar*, *Aaker* or *Ager-bar*, *Tyte-bar*, *Molte-bar*, in Latin *Chamæmorus Norvegica*, &c.

§. 9. The trees which are natives of *Norway*, are elm, ash, yew, birch, and pine-trees, which grow here in vast quantities; also beech and oaks, but these are not very common, with alder, juniper, aspen, and fir-trees which grow in every part of the country. Here are also ebony, and lime-trees, of which, in many places, there are great numbers, maple, willows, &c.

§. 10. With the wood of these trees the inhabitants carry on a vast trade, which, with the fisheries, make them some amends for the scarcity of grain they labour under. They export annually to several parts of *Europe* immense quantities of masts, beams, balks, and deal boards, with other timber for house and ship building. The fir-trees alone bring the country in a million of rix-dollars annually. The timber trade is chiefly carried on in the eastern parts of *Norway*; namely, at *Moss*, *Drammen*, *Larvigen*, *Langesund*, &c. as the largest trees are produced in those Districts; and most of the inhabitants subsist by that branch of trade and by sawing the timber.

In the Dioceses of *Bergen* and *Drontheim*, the inhabitants are supported mostly by the fisheries; vast quantities of all kinds of fish being caught on that coast, and either salted, or sent away fresh to the city of *Bergen*; from whence they are exported to foreign countries. The fishery is carried to the greatest perfection in the Diocese of *Drontheim*; so that the herrings annually exported from the north part of this Diocese amount to several thousands of lasts. The inhabitants of *Nordland* subsist entirely by

fishing. Here they particularly catch a fish called *Dorſch*, and cod, of which stock-fish is made: This kind of fish is not ſalted; but is ſplit and dried in the air, and then ſent away in large veſſels to *Bergen*, which bring back in return, malt, hops, ſalt, meal, cloth, linen, iron, &c. The fiſh caught every year at *Karſund* near *Stavanger*, and *Tromſen* in *Nordland*, are ſold, at leaſt, for a million of rix-dollars. From *Nordland* are alſo exported the *Raf* and *Reckling*, ſo well known in *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, where the peaſants in a manner live upon them. Theſe are parts of a fiſh called *Holybutt*, the former being the back fins cut out deep along with the fat; and the latter long ſlices of the ſkin and fat cut longitudinally from the tail to the head. Both are ſprinkled with a little ſalt, and afterwards dried in the air. From thence alſo train-oil, extracted by boiling from the blubber of whales which the inhabitants are very dextrous in driving aſhore, is exported. There are many ſalmon-fiſheries in the large rivers of *Norway*, ſo that they likewiſe export great quantities of pickled and dried ſalmon. The moſt conſiderable ſalmon-fiſhery is near *Mandal*, in the river called *Mandals-Elv*, which is ſaid to abound in that kind of fiſh beyond any river in *Norway*.

§. 11. The *Norwegians* keep a great many cows, which in general are but ſmall, and yield no great quantity of milk. The horſes are ſtrong, well made, and full of mettle. The woods alſo abound in deer and game.

§. 12. Some parts of *Norway* contain ſuch vaſt quarries of marble, which is not inferior to the foreign, that they could ſupply all *Europe* with it; and there are even huge rocks and whole mountains conſiſting entirely of this ſort of ſtone. *Lapis Lydius* or Touch-ſtone, alabaſter, ſeveral ſhining ſtones, which are a kind of Spar, called *Katzenſilber*; chalk, lime-ſtone, and ſtucco-ſtone; ſlate, ſand-ſtone, mill-ſtones, and *Veeg-ſteen*, particularly that fine ſort of the laſt called Talc-ſtone, and another ſpecies called *Kloverſteen* \*, which may eaſily be ſplit, ſawed, and cut, and in *Guldbrandſdal*, ſerves for making pots, pans, kettles, &c. are dug up in this country; as are alſo the Loadſtone, the *Lapis Suillus* or Swine-ſtone, which emits a fetid ſmell, *Albeſtos*, which is found in *Sundmoer*, and ſome ſhining *Quartz* †, but not a ſingle flint. In *Syndford*, *Juſtedalen* and other places is found a glittering writing ſand, of which great quantities are exported. Some parts of *Norway* afford cryſtals, which are either found in the rivers and lakes, or ſuſpended in cluſters on the mountains, where they emit a dazzling luſtre when the ſun ſhines upon them. Some pieces of theſe

\* In the *Memoires* of the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris* for the year 1752, this ſtone is called *Lapis Ollarius*, and ſaid to be found only in *Switzerland* and *Canada*, but this is a miſtake.

† The *Quartz* or *marcaſſia* is a kind of *Pyrites* or Fire-ſtone, and is of near affinity to the *Norway* cryſtal. It is not reducible to a *calx* in the fire, but becomes fluid, and is therefore uſed in the glaſs-houſes.



crystals weigh near five pounds, and are twelve inches long and seven in thickness. Here are also found, *Marienglas*, or *Russian glass*; Granite at *Kongsberg*; Amethysts in *Guldbrandstal*, *Osterdal*, and other places; Calcedonies of the bigness of a hazel-nut in the islands of *Faroe*; Agate of an extraordinary hardness; with fine Jasper and several sorts of figured stones. In the country about *Drontheim*, and in several rivers of the Dioceses of *Bergen* and *Christiansand*, are pearl-fisheries, the profits of which are appropriated to the Queen; and in the year 1750, the produce of them was as great as it has ever been known to be.

§. 13. Lastly, what *Norway* is most famous for is its vast subterraneous treasures of metals and minerals. The *Norway* mines were first worked in the reign of king *Christian III.* and were considerably improved under *Christian IV.*

Some gold of an extraordinary purity has indeed been found intermixed with the silver and copper ores; but the charges of separating and refining it proved too great to gain any thing by the process.

The silver mines were formerly more numerous in this country than they are at present; being reduced to two, namely, the *Kongsberg* mine, and that in the county of *Fjarlsberg*. The copper ore dug up in some of the mines also contains a mixture of silver.

The copper mines lie chiefly in *Nordenfelds*, and are, at present, five in number.

The profits arising from the iron mines, of which there are fifteen in *Norway*, are said to amount yearly to three or four hundred thousand rix-dollars.

The *Fjarlsberg* lead is accounted harder and inferior in goodness to that of *Kongsberg*. There are lead mines at *Eger* not far from *Kongsberg*, and in the *Vogtey* of *Soloers*. Sulphur is also found among the *Norway* mines; but the melting and depurating of it is too chargeable to make it answer. *Strata* of allum have been found below *Egeberget* near *Christiania* in a slate quarry. A boiling-house has been built to separate the allum from its sediment. Several parts of this country yield oker; and *Wardekuus* is famous for a fossile of a most beautiful blue or sky colour. There is a saline spring near *Frederickstadt*; but no salt has hitherto been made of it; so that it turns to no advantage. Salt is also found in the clefts of the rocks in the *North-Sea*. On *Nordmoer* in *Hardanger*, and several other places, especially in the Diocese of *Drontheim*, the inhabitants boil it from the sea-water; but as this causes too great a consumption of wood, the laws of *Norway* forbid the boiling of any more than what is sufficient for their own private use. Not far from *Tonsberg* is a royal salt-work; but this is so far from answering the necessary demand, that every year above sixty large ship-loads of *Spanish* and *French* salt are imported into *Norway* for the fisheries and other occasions.

§. 14. The *Norwegians* were anciently so turbulent and rebellious, that their kings were incessantly engaged in factions and domestic broils; and many of the ancient sovereigns lost their lives in civil wars and intestine commotions: But within these two or three centuries, especially since this country has been annexed to the crown of *Denmark*, they have been more civilized; so that no tumults or insurrections are heard of amongst them. Foreign nations are fond of having *Norwegian* mariners in their service, as they are a hardy, bold, and active people; and it is computed that some thousands of them are thus employed in different parts of *Europe*. Nor are they wanting in skill and ingenuity for the mechanic arts and trades, though they never bring them to any high pitch of perfection. There is not a peasant in *Norway*, who, of his own head, cannot make many utensils and artificial curiosities, for use and ornament. The *Norwegians* in general have a great inclination for commerce; especially the inhabitants of *Bergen*, who traffick considerably with all the trading cities in *Europe*. As to their genius for literature, though *Norway* has no universities or large libraries, yet is it not without learned men among its natives.

*Lutheranism* is the established, and almost the only religion in *Norway*, except in the province of *Finmark*, where are still no inconsiderable number of Pagans; but no hardship, expence, or labour is spared for the conversion of those unhappy people. The first measures for the Reformation of religion in *Norway* were taken in the year 1528, which was in a great measure completed in 1537; and, in 1607, a new Hierarchy or Church-government was established in this Kingdom. In every See there is a Bishop; and among these the Bishop of *Christiana* is the principal, and takes place of all the rest. Under the Bishops are the Provosts, the Preachers, and the Chaplains or Curates, with the inferior church-officers. A parish generally contains more churches than one, so that the parochial incumbent has often the care of many of them. King *Olav* is said to have been the first legislator in *Norway*; for that monarch instituted the law called *Graagaas*, to punish robbery, fraud, and assaults. King *Christian IV.* published a new Body of laws for *Norway*, which were in force till the reign of *Christian V.* who caused a new *Lowbuch* or Digest to be drawn up; and these are the only laws now observed in this kingdom. This *Lowbuch*, as it is called, was printed in quarto at *Copenhagen* in 1687; and the substance of it is taken from that of *Denmark*, with only a few alterations suitable to the difference of circumstances in the two kingdoms.

We may observe farther with regard to the inhabitants of *Norway*, that some of the peasants are stiled *Odelsbonder*, who are free both in their persons, and estates, and may dispose of the latter as they please\*. They pay

\* The *Odels-right* consists in having, from time immemorial, the *Jus primogenituræ*, and the *Jus relictionis*, or the right of Primogeniture and power of Redemption. No *Odels-goods*, or freehold can be alienated by sale, but may be redeemed by the *Odels-mann* or right heir, to the second or third generation.



no acknowledgments or tax but to the king only; and a *Norwegian Odelsmann* has the vanity to think himself a kind of petty nobleman. It is a reigning, and not altogether groundless opinion among the *Norwegian* peasants that they are descended from the ancient Nobility of *Norway*: This renders them in general of a more assuming deportment than the peasants of other countries. As for the class of Burghers, I have nothing particular to observe concerning those of *Norway*.

Formerly there were many noble families in this kingdom; but most of them are now extinct, or degenerated into peasants; so that in the whole kingdom there are but the Barony of *Rosendal* in the Diocese of *Bergen*; and the Counties or Earldoms of *Larwigen* and *Jarlsberg*.

§. 15. In ancient times *Norway* was divided into a great number of little Lordships; but to these the warlike king *Harald Haarfager*, who was descended from the royal family of *Sweden*, put a period about the year of Christ 875, and united them into one kingdom. And though not long afterwards *Norway* was annexed to *Denmark*, and paid tribute to that crown under Count *Hako*; yet the *Norwegians* soon recovered their liberty and independency. In the year 1000, their liberties were again in great danger; but were preserved by the valour and conduct of *Oluf the Saint*: and though he lost the kingdom in 1019, being overpowered by the *Danish* prince *Sueno*; yet were the *Danes* again expelled in 1034, by his son *Magnus*, and the kingdom enjoyed a series of prosperity for some centuries. In the year 1319, *Magnus Smek*, son of the unfortunate Duke *Erick*, was king of *Sweden* and *Norway*; and his grandson *Oluf III.* king of *Denmark*, on the demise of his father *Hagen*, also got possession of the kingdom of *Norway* in 1380. At *Oluf's* death the direct royal line of *Sweden* and *Norway* became extinct; and the male line in *Denmark* being also extinct at the same time, *Queen Margaret*, daughter of king *Waldemar III.* and mother to the abovementioned *Oluf*, was the next who had any pretensions to the throne. Accordingly she obtained the Crown by the election of the States. In the year 1388, *Hagen Jonsen*, a Nobleman of the blood-royal, made a solemn abdication of his right to the crown of *Norway* in favour of *Queen Margaret*, who farther prevailed on the States of that kingdom to declare *Erick*, Duke of *Pomerania*, her sister's daughter's son, heir to the kingdom of *Norway*. This great Princess, in 1397, also united the three Northern Kingdoms by the famous Union of *Calmar*. When the *Oldenburg* branch ascended the throne of *Denmark*, the *Norwegians* shewed some inclination to shake off the *Danish* yoke; however, they afterwards closed in with *Denmark*: But king *John* meeting with ill success in his expedition against *Ditmarsch*, the *Norwegians* revolted. Upon their losing a battle near *Oppslo* in the year 1502, and the barbarous executions of the greatest part of their Nobility, they were entirely quelled, and obliged to swear allegiance to the king of *Denmark* and his descendants. In the year



1537, king *Christian III.* held a general Diet at *Copenhagen*, wherein a famous decree was passed, of which this was the most remarkable article, namely, ‘ That *Norway* should for ever be incorporated with *Denmark* as a province of that kingdom: for as the States of *Norway* had, both in the reign of *Christian I.* and king *Frederick*, engaged to be subject to the same Sovereign with *Denmark*; so, consequently, every person who happened to be chosen king of *Denmark* was of course, and without further formality, to be king of *Norway*.’ From that time *Norway* lost its own Council of State, came to be considered only as a province of *Denmark*, and as such to be governed by a *Danish Statthalter*; and as some temper to the partiality shewn to *Denmark*, king *Christian IV.* conferred on the Nobility of *Norway* the same privileges with those of *Denmark* in the year 1646. But when despotism was introduced, *Norway* and *Denmark* were again governed by the Sovereign himself, as two kingdoms united under one head; and the High Court of Judicature was restored in *Norway*. In this state it continued till the present *Ober-hof-gericht*, or General Supreme Court of Judicature for all *Norway*, was erected.

§. 16. King *Christian III.* appointed a *Statthalter* as Governor of *Norway*; then it was governed by *Vice-Statthalters*; and after that the office of *Statthalter* was executed by a college or commission called *Slotstov*, or Court-law. This again was superseded by king *Frederick IV.* who restored the office of *Statthalter*. At present the chief officer in *Norway* is a *Vice-Statthalter*, who is also president of the *Ober-hof-gericht* or Supreme Court of Judicature at *Christiana*. This *Ober-hof-gericht* is a general Tribunal for all *Norway*, to which there lies an appeal in all causes from the inferior courts of the several Dioceses in this kingdom, which, however, may be removed from this Court to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

Each of the four *Stiftamts*, *i. e.* Dioceses or General Governments, into which *Norway* is divided, has its *Stiftamtsman*, or General Governor; and under these are the *Amtmanner*, or Prefects. The office of both the Governors and Prefects is the same here as in *Denmark*. Next to the Prefects are the *Stiftamts-Schierber*, *i. e.* Receiver or Secretary, and the *Vogte*: The *Vogte*, like the *Amtsverwalter* in *Denmark*, are Collectors who levy the King’s taxes, &c. on the proprietors of lands and the peasants; and pay them into the hands of the *Stiftamts-Schreiber* or Receiver. They also manage all prosecutions and causes relating to the crown in the *Land-fiscals*, as they are called. Over the nine *Laugstole*, or Provincial Courts are so many *Laugmanner*, which are a kind of provincial judges. Besides these, there are also *Soren-Schreiber*, or *Amts-Schreiber*, who may be called inferior judges; each having a power of deciding causes within his District, in conjunction with eight assistants. In the four chief cities of *Norway*, *viz.* *Christiana*, *Christiansand*, *Bergen*, and *Drontheim*, are Presidents appointed by the King; and under these, as in all other towns, are *Stattvogte*,

*vogte*, or Town-Collectors. Lastly, at the silver mine of *Kongsberg* there is a College called the *Oberberg-amts-collegium*, with proper officers; and another such College presides over the mines at *Nordenfield*. There are also Collectors of the toll, Comptrollers over the farmers of the duties, and Commissaries of provisions in *Norway*.

§. 17. The military establishment for *Norway* has been already taken notice of in my account of *Denmark*.

§. 18. Nature has divided the main land of *Norway* into two parts by the immense chain of mountains called *Dofrefield* and *Langfield*, which are described in §. 6. This ridge of mountains separates the northern and western parts which lie near the sea, from the southern and eastern, or inland parts. The high-lands which lie to the South and East of these mountains are called *Sondenfields*, *Norwegia Meridionalis*, or *Norwegia Cisalpina*, i. e. *Norway* south of the mountains: Whereas that lying north of *Dofrefield*, and west of *Lang-field* toward the sea, is called *Nordenfields*, *Norwegia Septentrionalis* or *Norwegia Transalpina*, i. e. *Norway* north of the mountains.

According to the political division, *Norway* consists of four Diocesess or General Governments. Two of these, namely, *Christiana* and *Christian-sand* lie in the south, and the other two, viz. *Bergen* and *Drontheim*, in the north part of the kingdom. The ecclesiastical division into four *Stifts*, or Bishopricks, is agreeable to the civil; and as the General Governments or *Stifts-amts* are subdivided into *Amts*, *Vogteys* or *Lebne*, i. e. Prefectures, Districts or Fiefs, so the *Stifts* or Bishopricks are subdivided into Provostships and Parishes.



The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of  
CHRISTIANA, or AGGERHUUS.

THIS is the largest Diocese in the south part of the kingdom, and, indeed, the principal and richest in all *Norway*: It was formerly called *Hammer-stift*, and afterwards went by the name of *Opflo*. In this Government are the Prefectures of *Aggerhuus*, *Frederickstadt*, *Schmaalbene*, *Bratsberg*, *Ringing*, *Hallingdablen*, *Eger*, and *Buscherud*; two feudal Counties, four Provincial Courts, fifteen *Vogteys*, and fourteen Provostships.

The *Vogteys*, *Lebns* or Fiefs in this Diocese are,

I. AGGERS-HERRED, which comprises three Districts with as many Courts of Judicature, namely, *Afcher*, *East* and *West-Barum*, and *Ager*; with the following remarkable places.

*Christiana*, the capital, and most magnificent city of the kingdom. Here the *Vice-Statthalter*, the Governor of the Diocese, and the Bishop of *Christiana* reside; and the General and Provincial high Courts of Judicature are held. This city is regularly built, of a considerable extent, and carries on a great trade. It has a workhouse, and two suburbs called *Waterland* and *Peper-vigen*; *Opflo* likewise belongs to this city. Through the first runs a river which rises in *Maridalen*. After *Opflo* had been burnt, king *Christian IV.* built this city on the west side of the bay, and close by the castle of *Aggerhuus*; so that the guns of the fort command all the streets of the city. The same monarch in 1636, raised the school of *Christiana* to a *Gymnasium* or college; and at the same time settled an endowment upon it for the maintenance of the tutors and twenty students. But in the year 1653, it sunk again to a school, and has remained so ever since.

*Opflo*, or *Aflo*, lies on the east side of the bay facing *Aggerhuus* castle. It is more ancient than the latter; for it was built in the year 1060, by king *Harald Haardraade*, who resided here, as did also several of his successors. *Opflo* had formerly four churches. A synod was held here in the year 1306; and in 1589, the nuptials of *James VI.* king of *Scotland* and the princess *Anne* of *Denmark* were solemnized in this town. At the time of the Reformation the See of *Hummer* was removed to *Opflo*: But, in 1624, this city was totally consumed by fire, except the Bishop's palace and a few other houses, which were afterwards annexed to *Christiana* as a part of it, and



and called the *Old Town*. In the King's museum at *Copenhagen*, a medal struck by *Nicholas* Bishop of *Aflo* in honour of Duke *Philip*, is still to be seen.

*Aggerbuus* is an important fortification on the west side of the bay, near which, in a lower situation, lies the city of *Christiania*. The time when this fort was first built is unknown. In 1310, it held out a siege against the *Swedish* army commanded by Duke *Erick*; and in 1567 and 1717, it was invested by the *Swedes* a second and third time, but with no better success. Not far from the fort are a number of houses or villages called *Hovedtangen*.

*Aggers* is a very ancient church, which stands about a quarter of a *Norway* mile North of *Aggerbuus* castle. It is said to have been built above seven hundred years ago, and is reckoned the oldest church in this Diocese. Mention is made of it in history before the castle of *Aggerbuus* was erected.

*Barum* is a very ancient and flourishing iron-mine in this District.

II. BRAGNAS-LEHN, including *Hurum*, *Rogen*, *Eger*, *Lier* and *Buskerud*. There are in this District several iron-works, namely, at *Eger*, *Modum*, and *Lier*; and also a glass-house: This *Lehn* or Fief is watered by the large river *Drammen*, which empties itself into the bay of *Christiania*. On the banks of the *Drammen* lie the towns of

*Bragnas* and *Stromsloe*; the former on the north, and the latter directly opposite to it on the south side of the river. Each of these towns has its respective *Stadt-vogt*, or Town-Magistrate, and church; yet they have but one Toll-place or Custom-house, which is called *Drammensholplatz*, and brings in to the Crown as much as any Toll-house in *Norway*; for a great quantity of planks, beams, and iron, is brought from the adjacent country to this place for exportation.

In the river *Drammen* lies the island of *Langoe*, so famous for its marble quarries.

To the Provostship of *Bragnas* belong sixteen churches.

III. The *Vogteys* of NUMMEDAL and SANDSVARD including twenty churches, which are under the Provostship of *Kongsberg*. Partly in these two *Vogteys* between the rivers *Kobberberg* and *Jorndal* lies

*Kongsberg*, i. e. 'The King's Mine,' a flourishing mine-town, containing no less than ten or eleven thousand souls, among which are a *Danish* and *German* congregation. A mint was set up in this town so early as the year 1686; and in 1689, the mine-college was erected here. *Kongsberg* is famous for its silver-mines, the richest in all *Norway*, which were discovered in the year 1623; upon which this town was immediately built, and peopled with *German* miners. In the year 1751, one-and-forty shafts and twelve loads or veins were wrought in the four *Reviere* of this mine; and 3500 officers, artificers and labourers are usually employed in it. The clear profits annually arising from this mine cannot be exactly determined.

The rich ore in this mine is found only in dispersed *strata*; for, if it lay in continued veins, it would not have its equal. Even pure silver is also dug out of it; and in 1647, some gold was found among the silver, of which king *Christian IV.* had the famous *Brillen-Ducats* coined, with this legend: *Vide mira domini, i. e.* 'See the wonderful works of the Lord.' In the year 1697, a vein of gold was discovered here; and ducats were coined with the produce of it, which on one side had this inscription: *Christian. V. D. G. Rex Dan. Norv. V. G.* The legend on the reverse were the following words from *Job*, ch. xxxvii. ver. 22. *Von mitternacht kommt gold. i. e.* 'Out of the North cometh gold.' *Konigsberg, Decemb. 1, 1697.*

IV. The county of *JARLSBERG*, formerly called *Tonsberg-Lebn* or *Fief*, consists of arable land, and affords fine fisheries, and several mines; particularly a very profitable silver mine discovered in the year 1729, not far from *Stromsoe*: This county has its Court of Judicature. In the Provostship of *Jarlsberg* are twenty-five churches.

*Jarlsberg* is the most remarkable place in the county, and the residence of a branch of the family of the Counts of *Wedel*. On this spot formerly stood *Sam*, which was anciently a nobleman's seat. It lies about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from

*Tonsberg*, which is the most ancient town in all *Norway*. It lies on an arm of *Tonsberg* bay; and is so called from the old northern word *Ton*, or *Tun*, which signifies a parcel of houses and buildings, and *Berg* a mountain of which there are several in the neighbourhood of it. It was a populous town so early as the time of king *Harald Haarfager*; so that it is of eight hundred years standing at least. It was formerly much larger than it is at present, and contained nine churches: Whereas now it consists of scarce two hundred timber houses, and has but two churches. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate, who presides in the city and has the superintendency of the wharf and custom-house at *Holmestrand*. This town carries on a good trade in furs and butter, for which the returns are made in grain, malt, &c. There are four keys or wharfs in the District of its custom-house. In the year 1259, a great part of this town was consumed by fire. And, in 1536, it was laid in ashes, together with its convents and churches, by the *Swedes*. From that time it has greatly declined; though it obtained several new privileges in 1537, from king *Frederick III.* which were enlarged and ratified in 1596, and 1648. In the year 1673, king *Christian V.* conferred on the famous *Peter Greifensfeld* the District and town of *Tonsberg* with the title of Count of the kingdom of *Norway*. In 1739, king *Christian VI.* caused a brick-kiln to be erected near the town; and, on the peninsula of *Valoe*, about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Tonsberg*, the same monarch established a salt-work, from which several ship loads of salt are yearly exported.

V. The



V. The county of LAURWIGEN, formerly called the Fief of *Brunslawen*, belongs to Count *Ferdinand Antony Daneskiold*. It has its own jurisdiction, and contains fine iron mines.

In the Provostship of *Laurwig* are fifteen churches.

This District contains the following places of note.

*Laurwigen*, or *Larwigen*, a small town and the chief trading place in this county. It stands at the conflux of the *Laven* and the *Laverdal* or *Lardal*, which has its source in *Nummedal*, and runs close by *Kongsberg* and *Sandsvar*. The river *Faris* rises in the lake of *Faris*, and likewise directs its course to *Larwigen*. The greatest part of the wood used for fuel is brought hither by means of that river. The iron-works carried on in this place are the greatest and most valuable in all *Norway*, and consists properly of two mines, namely, one at *Lauerwig* and another at *Nes*.

*Stavern*, or *Frederickswarn*, is a small town, with a fortification which defends the harbour, on that side that lies towards *Larwigen*. In the year 1750, king *Frederick V.* ordered a dock-yard for building of galleys to be made here, and at the same time called the place by the name of *Frederickswarn*.

*Sandeford* has a good harbour and a commodious *Ladeplatz*, or wharf.

*Laurkullen* is a cape or Promontory well known to sea-faring people.

VI. BRADSBERG-LEHN or Fief contains the District of *Tillemarken*. The latter is divided into *Upper* and *Lower Tillemarken*, each of which is a *Vogtey*: But in ecclesiastical matters *Upper Tillemarken* is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Christiansand*. The inhabitants of these parts have, for hardiness and valour, been always accounted the most warlike people in all *Norway*.

The Provostship of *Lower Tillemarken* and *Bambel* contains twenty-two churches.

The most remarkable places in this District, are,

*Krageroe*, which is a little town with one of the most frequented *Ladeplatze* or wharfs in this country. It has its own *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate.

*Breedvig* and *Langesund*. These are two sea-ports each of which has a custom-house and a good wharf.

*Skieen*, *Schauna*, is a town situated on a river of the same name, which flows from the *North-lake* in *Tillemark*. Not far from this town it forms a cataract down an aperture in the rock, through which the water runs as in a long conduit. About half a *Norway* mile above the town is the *Porfsgrund*, where there is a commodious wharf for the shipping. *Skieen* is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate. In 1576, a great Assembly of the clergy and laity was held here for accommodating differences about tithes. This place formerly gave the name of *Skiefysfel* to *Bradsberg-Lebn*. A Provincial Court of Judicature is held in this town.



*Bradsberg* is a handsome seat, which stands on a hill near *Skieen*, and gave its name to *Bradsberg-Lehn*. It was formerly the mansion of the Lord of the Fief.

In this District are several fine iron-works. These are *Fossumwerk*, near *Skieen*, where the best cannon are cast; *Bolvigswerk* on the river near *Harrestad*, about three quarters of a *Norway* mile from *Skieen*; and that called *Ulefos* or *Haldenswerk*, about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Skieen*.

#### VII. HALLINGDAL and RINGERIGE.

A river runs through *HALLINGDAL* which falls into the lake of *Kroden*, and from thence runs into the river *Modum*, which afterwards joins with the *Drammen*. This District includes seven churches, which, with *Ringerige* and *Hadeland*, make a *Provostship*.

*RINGERIGE* produces rye, pease, barley, and oats, and is plentifully supplied with fish from the fresh-water with which this District is almost environed. Near *Honefossen* is a conflux of two rivers, one of which rises in *Hadeland*, and the other runs through *Odalén*, and has its source in *Walders*. In this District are the lakes of *Holtsfiord* and *Tyrrefiord*; and six churches.

#### VIII. HADELAND, TOTEN, and WALDERS.

In *HADELAND*, which includes thirteen churches, is some good arable land. It also carries on a considerable trade in wood and tar. There are several fresh-water lakes abounding with fish, namely, those of *Rand*, *Vesten*, and *Jaren*, in this District. Here are also several *Karause* ponds\*.

*TOTEN* has ten churches, and is separated from *Hedemarken* to the East by the large lake of *Miosen*, which is twelve *Norway* miles † in length. It has good arable land which yields plenty of corn.

*WALDERS* produces but little barley or oats; and the inhabitants chiefly subsist by grazing. The rivers *Beina* and *Urulla*, which run into the lake of *Sperdillen* are very convenient for exporting wood and timber. The lake of *Klein Miosen* or little *Miosen* also lies in this District.

*Walders* contains eighteen churches, and, with *Toten*, makes a *Provostship*.

#### IX. GULBRANDSDALEN.

This District consists of two large vallies; and both of them afford rich pastures. In the champaign parts of these extensive vallies, which contain twenty-five churches, there is also some good arable land. But in the deep, uneven and woody parts of them the corn is often greatly damaged by the cold; especially in the parish of *Lassoe*, which, however, has a very profitable iron-work. At *Faudal* there is a rich copper-mine. During the winter season the inhabitants of this District chiefly subsist by carrying her-

\* The *Karause* is a kind of fish resembling a carp, but is smaller and something broader: It is called in French *Corassin*, and in Latin *Coraceus*.

† Near seventy *English* miles; about ten *Norway* miles and-a-half being equal to a degree.

rings, dried fish and other goods from *Drontheim* and *Romsdal*, to *Christiania*, *Bragnas*, and *Kongsberg*, where they bring back corn and other necessaries in return. *Quernberg* affords mill-stones and other quarries, for which they have a very good vent. The defile, or narrow pass, near *Breide*, is famous for the defeat of the *Scotch* army under their General *Sinclair*, who was surpris'd and cut to pieces there by the peasants. A pillar has been erected on the place, with an inscription to commemorate that victory.

#### X. HEDEMARKEN.

The soil of this District is accounted the most fertile in the whole kingdom of *Norway*. Besides the great quantity of grain it produces, it abounds in all kinds of fish. Here is also several quarries of slate; and on the island of *Hovindsholm* is found the *Lapis Suillus* or Swine-stone, which emits a fetid smell, like the excrements of that creature. Formerly near a bay on the east side of the lake *Miosen* stood the ancient episcopal See of *Hummer*, a large and stately city consisting of three main streets of a considerable length, and fifteen cross-streets and lanes. It had also a fine cathedral; and in the year 1300 was so populous as to contain above eighteen hundred men fit to bear arms. But in 1350, it was reduced very low by an epidemical disease; and in 1567 was laid in ashes by the *Swedes*, and never rebuilt. Part of its situation is now occupied by a nobleman's seat. At the time of the Reformation, this city was made subject to the See of *Opflo*.

*Hedemarken* together with *Osterdalen* or East-Valley make a Provostship of six-and-twenty churches.

#### XI. SOLLOER and OESTERDALEN.

The inhabitants of OESTERDALEN, which borders on *Sweden*, subsist chiefly by dealing in cattle; the corn being often destroyed there by the severity of the frost. At *Quickne* in this District there is a rich copper-mine, which is called *Gottesgabe-berg*, *Θεωδωρον*, or Gods-gift. It was discovered in 1635; but was not wrought to any great effect till the year 1707. It affords a mineral-water called *Cement-wasser*\*, which precipitates copper. The frontiers of this District towards *Sweden* are well defended by natural fortifications, namely, the mountains of *Christiansfield* which lie in the parish of *Elverum*.

In the District of SOLLOER, which also borders on *Sweden*, the corn is often destroyed by the severity of the frost. But this misfortune is in some measure alleviated by the trade the inhabitants carry on in timber and masts. An iron-work has lately been set up at *Oudal*. This country also affords some lead-mines. The frontiers hereabouts are defended by the fortress of *Kongs-Winger*, which stands in the parish of *Winger*.

\* This is a vitriolic water which carries with it a copper sediment, and transmutes iron into copper by permeating through the iron, corroding its particles, and leaving those of copper in their places; so that at length it becomes entirely copper.



*Oesterdalen* and *Hedemarken* constitute a Provostship; and *Solloer* and *Ober-Romerige* make another.

XII. ROMERIGE, or RAUMORIGE, is a large District, probably, so called from the river *Raume*. It is divided into *Upper* and *Lower-Romerige*; each division making a *Vogtey*. The former together with *Solloer*, makes a Provostship of twenty-six churches; but the latter is a Provostship of itself, and contains fourteen churches. In *Upper Romerige* are some iron-works, at *Eidsvold* and *Hackedal*. *Lower-Romerige* affords some good arable land, and produces a great quantity of Danish *Cummin*, which is carried to *Christiania* and from thence exported to *Denmark*. Large floats of timber and several kinds of fish are also exported from hence. In this district lies

*Blackgierd*, a strong fort built at the conflux of two rivers on the borders of *Sweden*, which, on that account, in war time, requires a numerous garrison.

XIII. BORRESYSEL, formerly called WINGULMARK, derives its present name from the feat of *Borre*, which, in 1703, sunk into the ground; for the waters of the cataract of *Sarpen* washed away all the earth from the foundation of the house; and all that remains of it now is a pit full of sand and rubbish. The soil in this Province is pretty fertile; but as it is low and damp, oats thrive better than any other grain in it. Towards the sea, about *Follo*, the inhabitants are chiefly employed in carrying wood to the wharfs and custom-houses, at *Krogstadt*, *Drobach*, *Holen*, *Zoen*, *Hvidsteen*, &c. by which they get a comfortable subsistence. The rivers in this District are *Wansoe-fjord*, *Rodenas*, *Femefjord*, and *Store-elve*. The last falls into the *Sarpen* and forms one of the greatest waterfalls in *Norway*. The whole District is divided into *Upper* and *Lower-Borresyssel*; and these again are subdivided into the following *Vogteys*.

1. *Rackestad*, *Heggen*, and *Froland*.
2. *Ide* and *Marcher*.
3. *Moofs*, *Ousoe*, *Thune*, and *Wemble*.
4. *Folloug*, and *Agger*.

BORRESYSEL, with regard to its ecclesiastical state, is divided into three Provostships, namely, those of *Upper*, *Middle*, and *Lower Borresyssel*; the first including eighteen churches, the second thirteen, and the third twenty-three churches. *Upper-Borresyssel* has no place worthy of notice. In *Lower-Borresyssel* are the following towns, &c. namely,

*Mofs*, a small town governed by a *Stadtvogt*. It carries on a considerable trade; but is most remarkable for the two battles fought there in the year 1717, in which the *Swedes* were defeated, and lost their baggage and a large magazine which they had in this town. Not far from *Mofs* is a new iron-work and foundry, which turn out to good account.

*Basmoe*, a little town and a pass on the frontiers of *Sweden*. It is well fortified both by Art and Nature.



*Frederickshald*, a famous frontier-town towards *Sweden*. It is situated at the mouth of the *Tistedal*, where it empties itself into the *Spinesund*. This town was formerly called *Halden*, when it was a mean place, under the jurisdiction of the magistracy of *Frederickstadt*. However, it made a very gallant defence against the *Swedes* in 1658, and also in 1659, by means of a small entrenchment or rampart. After that, it was strengthened with additional fortifications; so that in the year 1660, it sustained a third vigorous siege from the *Swedes*; and *Charles Gustavus* is by some thought, to have received here the wound of which he died. As a reward of the brave resistance the inhabitants made, a charter with the privileges of a city, &c. were granted to this town in 1665. In the year 1686, *Christian V.* annexed the manor of *Ous* to *Frederickshald* as a compensation for the loss of its trade with *Sweden*. In 1716 and 1718, the inhabitants again signalled themselves by making a vigorous defence against the attacks of the *Swedes*: And here it was that, on the eleventh of *December*, 1718, the warlike *Charles XII.* of *Sweden* was shot in the trenches. King *Frederick IV.* ordered a pyramid twenty feet in height to be erected on the spot where that Hero fell. The sides of it were decorated with military trophies, with the arms of *Sweden* and the King's name; and the top was surmounted by a gilt crown. On four marble tables at the base were one *Latin*, and two *Danish* inscriptions in golden letters: But king *Christian VI.* in complement to *Sweden*, ordered this pyramid to be taken down. The town itself is not a place of any great strength; but on a high rock opposite to it stands the strong fortress of *Frederickstein*, the foundation of which was laid in the year 1661. Besides this there are other smaller forts near the town, namely,

*Storre-Taarn*, and *Oever-Bierget*, which have their respective Governors who are under the Commandant of *Frederickstein*. *Guldenlowe*, is such another small fort, of which *Charles XII.* of *Sweden* had made himself master, when he was shot with a musket-ball from *Oever-Bierget*, in the trenches between the former and *Frederickstein*. These three small forts were built in the year 1682. *Frederickshald* now carries on a very considerable trade, and is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate. In 1667, 1676, 1703, and 1716, this town was destroyed by fire.

*Frederickstadt*, a town built in 1567 by *Frederick II.* who granted it a very favourable charter; and the provincial court was at the same time removed hither from *Borre*. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate; and its chief trade is in timber, but this is not very considerable. *Frederickstadt* was regularly fortified in the year 1665 by *Frederick III.* and since that time new works have been added to it; so that for its strength by nature and art, and its convenient situation for a ready intercourse by sea with *Denmark*, it is the most important fortification in *Norway*. Though this town is very strong, it has the following forts for a further defence.

*Konigstein* fort, which stands on the land side.

*Ifegram*, which stands on the island of *Krageroe*, about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from the town.

*Aggerboe*, which is erected on an island, towards the sea. These forts have their particular Commandants, who are subordinate to the Governor of *Frederickstadt*.

*Sarpsburg* lies about a *Norway* mile from the sea, near the river or waterfall of *Sarpen*. It was anciently a city, being built in 1016 by king *Oluf the Pious* or *Haroldson*, as a defence to the kingdom against the incursions of the *Swedes*; but in 1567, the *Swedish* army laid it in ashes.

Not far from this place is the great cascade or waterfall of *Sarpen*, which king *Harald Gille*, in 1134, first used for the execution of criminals, by throwing a vassal of king *Magnus* down this dreadful cataract. There is an eminence called *Konigsbugel* close by the cascade, which is so called because three kings, who were father, son, and grandson, once stood upon it to view this surprising cataract: It drives seventeen mills, and the noise of it is plainly heard at the distance of four or five *Norway* miles from the place.

Near *Store-Elve*, which falls into the *Sarpen* and causes this waterfall, stands the famous old castle of *Waldisholm*, now called *Wallansoi*, which was formerly a very strong fortress.

*Note.* All that tract of land which lies east of the Gulf of *Follo*, *Opflo*, or *Christiania*, and is about ten *Norway* miles in length, formerly included *East-Folden* or *Follo*, which has been already described, and *Wigen* or *Babuus-Lebn* which belongs to *Sweden*. That part of it that lies west of the Gulf, was called *West-Folden*, including *Tonsbergs-Lebn*, of which an account has been given above.



The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

C H R I S T I A N S A N D.

THE ancient name of this province was *Stavanger*. At present it contains four *Amts* or Prefectures, five *Vogteys*, and two Provincial Courts. With regard to ecclesiastical affairs, it is divided into ten Provostships, among which that of *Upper-Tillemark* is one, though in secular matters that District belongs to the Diocese or Government of *Christiania*. I proceed to give a particular account of every District in the Diocese of *Christianland*.

I. NIDENAS-LEHN, so called from the Manor of *Nidenas* on the banks of the river *Nid*, is the largest District in *Agdesiden*. The soil is level and fit for agriculture. Here are fine woods of oak, and good fisheries of mackarel and salmon; particularly in the river *Nid*, which, near *Oejestadt-kirche*, has a high-water fall, across which is a bridge called *Strugebroe*, made of long beams of timber from one rock to another. The river continues its course from this cascade eastward about a *Norway* mile as far as

*Arndal*, a small town, situated on a rock in the middle of the river *Nid*, which is remarkable for a good wharf, or lading place, as it is called. Most of the houses stand on the acclivity of the rock, and others are built on piles in the water. The streets are nothing but bridges of boats, by means of which the inhabitants go from house to house. Here is a sufficient depth of water for the largest ships to lie along side of the bridges. The church stands high and almost on the summit of the rock, to which there is an ascent from the houses by a great number of steps hewn in the rock. The inhabitants make a good use of the commodious situation of this town for trade; for they employ many ships, and deal largely in timber. *Arndal* is under the same *Stadt-vogtey* or Magistracy as *Riisoe*; and has not long enjoyed the privileges of a town. At the distance of two *Norway* miles from hence is the iron-work of *Bariboe*, or *Baaseland*, which is one of the most ancient in the whole kingdom, and in a pretty good condition. In this District are also several iron-mines. About four *Norway* miles from hence, and two miles west of *Giernas*, lies

*Riisoe* or *East-Riisoe*, is a small town, with a commodious wharf or lading-place, and consequently not without some trade. It is under the jurisdiction of the *Vogtey* of *Arndal*.

*Fromoe* is the most remarkable of the islands belonging to this District, by reason of its stately church, which is built with stone, and serves as a landmark at sea. The sailors also distinguish this country by three high rocks;



which lie directly over-against this island at the distance of six *Norway* miles up the country, and are called *Trimlinger*.

The new iron-works of *Egerland*, in the parish of *Gierrestadt*, are also in this District.

The Provostship of *Nidenas* includes eight parishes.

II. RAABYGDELAGET is reckoned a fertile country for grain; but it too often happens, that the corn is destroyed by the severity of the weather. In this District are plenty of wild beasts, as stags, rein-deer, otters, beavers, &c. Its rivers abound with salmon and perch; and its trees produce a great quantity of tar. The large river *Otterae* on the west-side of *Byglesfield* forms a great lake called *Bygland*, and in the parish of *Esje* precipitates itself at the waterfall of *Fennie*.

The Provostship of *Raabygdelaget* includes four parishes.

III. MANDALS and LISTER-LEHN.

MANDALS-LEHN or Fief, which is also called *Midsyssel* or the Middle District, is twelve *Norway* miles in length, and is the most remarkable *Vogtey* in all *Norway* for salmon fisheries. The largest salmon are taken in the river *Otterae*; but the melting of the snow retards the season for fishing till the end of *July*; and a great waterfall hinders the salmon from coming above one *Norway* mile up the river. There is also a salmon fishery in the river *Torvedal*; but the most profitable fishery is in the river *Mandal*. The latter issues from an inland fresh-water lake called *Oere*, which is one *Norway* mile in length; and several rivers that run on the west side of the mountains discharge themselves into it. Near *Bielland* a very uncommon method of fishing is practised, about half a *Norway* mile north of a bridge laid across the river from one rock to another, thirty-six feet above the surface of the water; where the fishermen go under the cataract, which forms an arch over their heads, to hunt the salmon out of a hole in the rock, at the extreme hazard of their lives. In each of the above-mentioned rivers, namely, *Torvedal* and *Mandal* is also a rich pearl-fishery.

The Provostship of *Mandal* consists of five parishes, to which belong twenty-one churches.

The most remarkable places in this District are the following.

*Fleckeroe*, an island which lies about two leagues south of *Otternas*, and is a *Norway* mile and a half in circumference. Between this island and the main land is a celebrated harbour, into which the same wind that carries a vessel in on one side, proves contrary on the other. For the defence of such an excellent harbour a fort was built on *Fleckeroe*, in the year 1556; but this falling to decay King *Christian IV.* built another on the little island of *Otteroe* in 1635, and called it *Christiansoe*. Some time after the fortress of *Fleckeroe* or *Frederickskolm*, which is the chief defence of the harbour, was erected. Here the largest fleet may lie secure both  
from

from storms and the insults of enemies. About a league from hence, near the fortified island of *Otteroe*, on the continent, lies

*Christiansfand*, the capital of this Diocese, and the residence of the Bishop and the General-Governor; where there is also a Cathedral or Episcopal school. This city was built by king *Christian IV.* between the years 1641 and 1643; and is so called from the name of its founder and the great *Sande* or Strand on which it is built. The plan of it is square, and the streets are broad, regular, and well built. This city is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate. Its situation is very commodious; three sides of it being surrounded either with fresh or salt-water, and on the fourth it has a communication with fine meadows and the mountains. Some trade is carried on here in timber. In 1734, the church, with the greatest part of this city, was destroyed by fire.

*Mandal*, a small place of some trade stands on the river of the same name. It has a custom-house and is a parish of itself, which is called by the same name.

The *Ladeplatze* or wharfs of *Ripervig*, *Randoesfund*, *Hardmarkersfold* which lies west of *Christiansfand*, and *Trysfiorden* near *Taanaas* are in this District.

**LISTER-LEHN** is the most southern District in all *Norway*. It is a good corn country, and very conveniently situated for fishing. This District is separated from *Dalene* by the rapid river *Syre*; which rises in *Langfield*, runs along *Syredal* into the large lake of *Lunde*, and afterwards precipitates itself from a high rock into the sea with amazing impetuosity. In the parish of *Quinesdal*, so called from the river *Quine*, near the cataract of *Rafos* where the water issues from the apertures in the rocks as through so many pipes, is a profitable salmon-fishery; but the method of fishing there is very dangerous. *Listerlehn* is about a *Norway* mile and a quarter in length, and about the same breadth. The coast is extremely dangerous to navigators, as it lies low, has no harbour, or anchoring place, and is surrounded with hidden rocks and shelves. Betwixt *Lister* and *Lindenäs*, about a quarter of a *Norway* mile from the Cape or *Naxe*, is the famous harbour of *Selloe*, where king *Harald Haardraade* assembled a fleet of two hundred ships in order to go on his expedition to **ENGLAND**. Cape *Lindenäs* joins to the main land of *Lister-Lehn* by a very narrow isthmus called *Spanger-Eid*; for the word *Eid* signifies an isthmus. The inhabitants have formerly attempted, for the conveniency of navigation, to cut a channel through this small neck of land, and to build a town there. But this scheme was found impracticable by reason of the rocks that obstructed the execution of it. The Cape projects into the sea about a *Norway* mile towards the South-West, and is about half a mile broad. It is a high, barren, rocky promontory; however, it has twelve peasants houses on it. This Cape is commonly called the *Neufs* or *Naxe* in the Charts.

The Provostship of *Lister* consists of five parishes, to which belong one-and-twenty churches.

#### IV. JEDEREN and DALENE.

JEDEREN is seven *Norway* miles in length, and produces a good deal of corn; but the coast is very dangerous to navigators, a ridge of rocks concealed under the water running for a *Norway* mile into the sea towards the North-West. There are fine fisheries of oysters and lobsters in this District; and a fine salmon fishery near *Egersund*, betwixt *Egeroe* and the main land. The islands of *Rot*, *Tier*, and *Haasleen*, which lie North-North-West from hence, belong to this District. In these islands the bullocks lie in the open air both winter and summer.

The Provostship of *Jederen* comprehends five parishes; and that of *Dalene* the same number. In *Jederen* also lies

*Stavanger*, an ancient town, situated on the little bay of *Buckne*, or *Tungesford*. It is governed by a *Stadvogt* or Town-Magistrate; but was formerly much larger and more populous than it is at present. The cathedral, which was built in the year 1013, is the finest in all *Norway*, excepting that of *Drontheim*. But the town being burnt in 1686, king *Christian V.* removed the episcopal See from hence to *Christiansand*. There are but three churches in the Provostship of *Stavanger*.

V. RYFYLKET, or FIORDERNE, extends on each side of the large bay of *Stavanger*, which runs a great way into the land towards the East: This bay, at the entrance, is but two *Norway* miles in breadth.

*Udsteenkloster* lies about a *Norway* mile and a half to the north-west of *Stavanger*, and was at first a royal palace, and after that converted into a convent; but is now a Nobleman's seat.

The islands of *Rendesoe* and *Hvitingsoe* in this District deserve notice, as they occur in ancient history.

The large island of *Karmen*, and its well known Cape of *Augvaldsnas* are still more remarkable. On the latter stands the fine seat of the same name. About six leagues west of *Karmen* lies the island of *Udfire*.

The Provostship of *Ryfylket* includes seven parishes; and the Provostship of *Karmesund*, to which a great part of the island of *Karmen* belongs, consists only of three parishes.



The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

B E R G E N.

THIS Diocese is from forty to fifty *Norway* miles in length, and contains only the single Prefecture of BERGENHUUS, including seven *Vogteys*, and the same number of Provostships. The Diocese of BERGEN is very populous, and is remarkable for having seven marble quarries, which are still wrought.

The *Vogteys* in this Government are as follow.

I. HAARDANGER. The soil of this District is sterile and poor; and it derives its chief advantage from the mountains, which afford excellent quarries of millstones, and another kind of stone which is used instead of iron plates, for baking the flat cakes mentioned above. Here is also dug up a whitish grey marble and *Weich stein*, or *Lapis ollarius*, of which pots and chamber-stoves are made. To the East of the gulf of *Haardanger*, in *Quind-berred*, there is a ridge of mountains called *Fuglesfang*, *i. e.* 'The Bird-catch', which is one of the highest in all *Norway*, and is always covered with snow. There are several deep cavities and clefts in this mountain, which are frequented by birds of several kinds. In this *Vogtey* are four Courts of Judicature; and its Provostship includes three parishes, to which nine churches belong.

II. SUNDHORD-LEHN. This District has eleven Courts of Judicature; and nine parishes, with thirty-three churches, are included in its Provostship. To this District also belongs the island of *Storoe*, *i. e.* 'Great Island,' where *Harald Haarfager* the first sovereign of all *Norway* resided in his old age, in the palace of *Fidje*. Close by *Storoe* lies the island of *Monster*, which is commonly pronounced *Mofter* or *Mogster*, where king *Oluf Tryggesson*, in the year 997, built the first Christian church in *Norway*. On the island of *Halsnoe*, in this District, formerly stood a convent called *Lyse-kloster*, or *Lucidavallis*, founded in the year 1144, for a Fraternity of *Cistercian* monks; the estates that belonged to it are now converted into a Fief.

III. NORDHORD-LEHN, together with SUNDHORD-LEHN constitute a tract of land called *Hordeland*. This District produces but little corn; for the western parts of it chiefly consist of islands and rocks, where most of the inhabitants subsist by fishing, especially the herring fishery. It has thirteen Courts of Judicature; and its Provostship includes eight parishes, and twenty-nine churches. But what renders this District most remarkable, and is at the same time so advantageous to it, is

BERGEN, in Latin *Berga*, formerly called *Biorginn*, or *Biorgvin*, the largest city, and a place of the greatest trade in all the kingdom of *Norway*. It lies on the continent in the middle of a valley, and is built, in the form of a semicircle or horseshoe, on the sides of a bay which the inhabitants call *Waag*. Nature has so well fortified it towards the land by lofty mountains, of which there are seven remarkably high, that the passes or defiles between them are quite impracticable to an enemy. Towards the sea the harbour is extremely well defended by several fortifications, as the *English* fleet, which attempted in 1665 to carry off some *Dutch East-India* ships that had put in there for safety, found by experience. The harbour is also defended on the north-side by the fort of *Christiansholm*, built in 1641 by *Christian IV.* together with *Rothouwen*, *Sveresborg*, *Commun*, and the castle. On the left side some batteries are erected on *Nornas*, and *Fredericksberg*; and the latter now passes for one of the best fortifications belonging to *Bergen*. Besides these works a blockhouse was built on *Syndnas* in 1646; and in the year 1666, the extraordinary round fort of *Christiansberg* was erected. All the churches, public edifices, and most of the houses along the strand are built with stone. *Bergen* formerly contained thirty churches and convents; but at present it has only four parish churches, three of which are *Danish*, and one *German*, with a church in the large hospital of *St. Jurgens*, and another small church or chapel in *St. James's* churchyard. The castle of *Bergen* is a grand structure. The large cathedral-school in this city was founded in the year 1554 by Bishop *Petrus*, who also endowed it; and by the liberality of king *Frederick II.* and others, twelve scholars are maintained and educated in it. The Navigation-school, founded here, formerly flourished greatly, but is now fallen into decay. The *Seminarium Fredericianum* also deserves notice; which is an excellent foundation, where Natural and Moral Philosophy, the Mathematics, History, together with the *Latin* and *French* languages are taught by Masters who are properly qualified in those branches of Literature. This city carries on a large trade in all kinds of fish, tallow, hides, and timber. All these commodities are brought from the northern parts of the kingdom, called the *Nordlands* to *Bergen*, and from thence exported. The returns are mostly made in corn and foreign commodities. The *Hanse-towns* in the reign of king *Erick* of *Pomerania* had a Factory in this city, which *Christopher* of *Bavaria*, in 1445, ratified by a royal Charter; so that the year 1445 may be looked upon as the proper date when the Factory was erected in *Bergen*, in the privileges of which the cities of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Roslock*, *Derenter*, *Emdden*, and *Bremen* had the greatest share. But at present only *Bremen*, *Lubeck*, and *Hamburg* are concerned in the little business that is transacted here. In the seventeen edifices, with warehouses, &c. belonging to the *Hanse-towns*, there are forty-two warehouses, appropriated to the citizens of *Bergen*, and but seventeen for the use of the

Factory,

Factory, of which the *Lubeckers* possess only one, the *Hamburgers* one, and the *Bremieners* fifteen. These towns have eight *Skiotnings-stuben* or public halls at *Bergen* where the merchants meet to transact business, and sometimes have entertainments. *Bergen* had formerly the privilege of coining, and enjoyed it longer than any other town in *Norway*, namely, till the year 1575. In the royal *Museum* at *Copenhagen* is to be seen a medal struck here in the time of king *Erick*, who was a mortal enemy to the clergy. This city was founded in the year 1069, or 1070. Synods were held here in 1156, 1345, and 1435. It suffered extremely by fire in the year 1248, when eleven parish churches were entirely consumed. The like misfortune befel it in 1472, 1623, 1640, and 1702. The number of its inhabitants were computed at 30,000 in the year 1756. *Bergen* is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* and other magistrates.

King *Harald Haarfager* sometimes resided at *Solkeim*, and sometimes at *Abrickstad*, now called *Aarstad*, in this District.

On the island of *Guloe* a celebrated Court of Judicature called *Gulatings-laug-stoel* was formerly held, which was removed from thence to *Bergen*. However, there is still a Provincial Court or *Tinglaug* held on that island.

Between the islands and the continent runs a very dangerous *Sund* or Strait called *Kiilstrommen*, through which all the ships that sail to or from *Nordland* are obliged to pass. The current in these Straits is different from most other Straits; for it ebbs here when the tide flows, and flows when it ebbs, which causes dangerous whirlpools; so that the ships bound to *Nordland* generally wait in some harbour near these Straits till it is high-water, which is looked upon as the safest time for passing through the *Kiilstrommen*.

IV. SOGN OR SYGNA-FILKE is sixteen *Norway* miles in length, and is reckoned a plentiful country, abounding with grain, cattle, fish, forests, sawing-mills, and other conveniencies of art and nature.

Formerly a town called *Kopanger* stood in this District; but about the year 1178, it was sacked and burnt by king *Sverre's* army.

In the parish of *Leyrdal* is a copper-work called *Aar-Dalswerk* or *Sem-Dalswerk*, which king *Frederick IV.* purchased for 36,000 rix-dollars; but it has not been wrought for several years.

At *Leerdalfoe* a yearly fair is held on *Michaelmas-day*; the peasants who live in *Walders* venture to travel over the frightful rocky mountains of *Gal-drene* to come to this fair. *Sogn* was formerly divided into two *Vogteys* or Districts, called *Yttre-Sogn*, in which were nine Courts of Judicature, and *Indre-Sogn* with seven.

The Provostship of *Sogn* contains nine parishes and thiriy-six churches.

V. SUNDFIORD. In this District are six Courts of Judicature; and its Provostship includes six parishes and nineteen churches.

VI. NORDFIORD. This *Vogtey* has seven Courts of Judicature; and the Provostship of *Nordfiord* consists of four parishes, and eighteen churches.

On



On the island of *Selloe* in this District the remains of *Sunneva* were found by king *Oluf Tryggeson*, who built a church and convent in honour of that saint. It is said she was an *Irish* princess, and that, towards the close of the fourth century, being driven by stress of weather on the coast of *Norway*, which was then involved in the darkness of Paganism, she and her attendants laboured by their preaching to convert the *Norwegians* to Christianity. It is added, that the princess, who was not inured to hardships, soon after ended her days in a cavern of a rock. In the year 1170, her pretended remains were carried with great solemnity from this island to *Bergen*, and deposited in the cathedral, where, for a long time, they continued to be worshipped by the superstitious papists.

*Note.* The *Vogteys* or Districts of *Sund* and *Nord-fiord* are both called *Firdifylke* or *Fiordi-fylke*. They consist of a rocky barren soil which produces but little corn, except in a spot of land on the east side of the bay. In the islands belonging to these Districts the inhabitants live mostly by fishing. These *Vogteys* are but little known, as they have neither a public road, nor a good harbour for shipping. Between *Nordfiord* and *Sundmor*, a peninsula which is called *Statt* runs a good way into the sea towards the West; and the dangerous sea by which it is washed is well known to mariners by the name of *Stats-Hav*.

VII. *SUNDMOR*, or *SONDRE-MORE*, extends as far as *Romsdal*, and formerly belonged to the Bishoprick of *Drontheim*. The inhabitants of this District mostly subsist by the fisheries. It contains twelve courts of Judicature, from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court called *Laugstubl* at *Bergen*.

The Provostship of *Sundmor* includes four parishes and twenty-two churches.

It is said that a piece of hazel-wood being stuck into the morafs of *Bior-kedal* in this District will, in about three years, be transmuted into a whetstone, while that part that is above the swampy ground remains unchanged. However, alder-trees are said to grow in this morafs without undergoing any change. But Bishop *Pontoppidan* in his excellent Natural History of *Norway* asserts, that there is no petrefying water in this morafs; but informs us that on the side of it there is a piece of *Amianthus* or *Asbestos* rock, which being divisible into long pliant threads, like flax, and being more like wood than stone, has been given out for petrefied wood; and brought the neighbouring morafs to an undeserved reputation.

A town called *Corgund* formerly stood in this *Vogtey*, which now lies in ruins.

*Vallerbou* in *Sundmore* is, in all respects, an excellent harbour.

## The DIOCESE, or GENERAL GOVERNMENT of

## D R O N T H E I M.

THE Diocese of DRONTHEIM, in Danish *Trondbiem*, is the most northern Province in *Norway*, and is above an hundred and fifty *Norway* miles in length. It borders on *Sweden* and *Russia*, and is separated from the former by the long chain of mountains called *Kolen*, and from the latter partly by the *Nord-felsen* or North-rocks. That ridge of hills called *Kolen*, of which mention has already been made in the Introduction to *Norway*, §. 6, begins near *Waranger*, and *Indiager* bay in *Finmark*, and proceeds southward as far as *Roraas* and the lake of *Femmund*, that is, twenty *Norway* miles on this side of the city of *Drontheim*; consequently its whole length is little short of an hundred and fifty *Norway* miles. The Diocese of DRONTHEIM contains three large *Amts* or Prefectures, which are as follows.

I. DRONTHEIM. This Prefecture also includes those of *Romsdal* and *Nordmor*, each of which has a particular Prefect. I shall therefore, in the first place, give an account of

The Prefectures of ROMSDAL and NORDMOR, which consist of two *Vogteys* of the same names with their respective Prefectures.

1. The *Vogtey* of *Romsdal* has eight Courts of Judicature from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court of *Drontheim*. Its Provostship contains six parishes; and twenty-one churches. This District produces more oats than wheat; and the best arable land in it lies near the bays, or in the vallies: But the inhabitants of the sea-coasts apply themselves mostly to fishing. In the fourteenth century there stood in this *Vogtey* a considerable town called *Wedoe*, of which all that remains at present is the church of *St. Peter* in the parish of *Wedoe*. On *Ejen*, near *Boe*, a numerous army of *Swedes* was defeated in the year 1612. The only remarkable place in this *Vogtey* is *Molle*, which obtained its charter of privileges in 1742; and is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate. Timber and tar are exported from hence, and the return is chiefly made in corn.

2. The *Vogtey* of *Nordmor* is divided into eight jurisdictions, from which an appeal lies to the Superior Court at *Drontheim*. This Provostship comprises seven parishes; to which belong twenty-one churches, and three chapels. In the parish of *Sund*, barley and oats ripen in so short a space of time, that they are reaped in nine weeks after the grain is sown; which is owing to the mountains contracting and reverberating the sun-beams in



the narrow vallies in this District. *Lille-Fofen*, i. e. 'Little-Fofen,' obtained its charter in the year 1742, with the name of

*Chriftianfund*, and has a very commodious harbour and a good *Ladeplatz* or wharf; on which account a great quantity of timber from the adjacent country is brought to this town in order to be exported. It is governed by a *Stadt-vogt* or Town-Magistrate.

*Bremfnas* is remarkable on account of a crystal urn with a gold rim, and full of ashes, which was found in that place: It is now deposited in the royal *Museum* at *Copenhagen*.

The Prefecture of DRONTHEIM, exclusive of these, comprehends the following *Vogteys* or Districts.

1. The *Vogtey* of *Fofen*, so called from the island of *Store-Fofen*, i. e. 'Great-Fofen,' consists chiefly of islands. One of these, namely, the island of *Hitteroe* is eight *Norway* miles in circumference, and its inhabitants chiefly subsist by fishing. Here is a fine salmon-fishery near *Oereland*, and at *Biugnen* are caught the *Drontheim* herrings which are so much admired. About *Agdenas*, where *Drontheim* bay runs a good way into the land, the soil produces plenty of grain. This District is divided into eight jurisdictions, and the *Provostship* of *Store-Fofen* contains six parishes and sixteen churches.

2. The *Vogteys* of *Oerkedalen* and *Guldalen*. The former was anciently called *Oerkedola-fylke*, from the river *Oerkeln* which issues from *Oerkelfoe* lake near *Dofre-field*. In this District are four Courts of Judicature, and the rich copper-mine called *Lukkens* or *Meldals-werck*. The *Vogtey* of *Guledal*, *Guldalen*, or *Gauldola-fylke*, is so called from the river *Gaulen* or *Gulen*, which rises near *Skars-field*, and, after a course of twenty *Norway* miles, falls into the sea about a *Norway* mile west of *Drontheim*. Near the mine-town of *Roraas* is a large and rich copper-mine discovered in the year 1644. In this *Vogtey* are also four Courts of Judicature.

3. The *Vogtey* of *Strinden* extends from *Drontheim* bay eastward as far as *Jemtefield* near *Tidalen*. It contains eight jurisdictions. There is a copper-mine at *Selboe* in this District.

*Note.* The *Vogteys* of *Oerkedalen*, *Guledalen*, and *Strinden* produce some grain; but the corn is frequently destroyed by the frost. They constitute the *Provostship* of *Dalenes*, to which belong ten parishes and twenty-nine churches.

In the *Vogtey* of *Strinden* lies the city of *Drontheim*, on the river *Nid*, which rises in *Tidalen* and runs through *Selboe* lake, from which it directs its course northward, and runs near the city, so as almost to environ it. *Drontheim* was at first called *Nideroos*, or the mouth or outlet of the river *Nid*, from which its *Latin* name *Nidrosia* is derived. It owes its present name to the neighbouring country which was formerly so called; and its inhabitants were termed *Tronder*. King  
Oluf



*Oluf Tryggeson* was the founder of this city, which for some time was the residence of the *Norwegian* Kings, and afterwards of the Archbishops. It was erected into an archiepiscopal See in the year 1152, but suppressed at the Reformation. Formerly there were ten churches and five convents in this city; whereas at present it has but two churches, besides that at the hospital. The Cathedral, which is a superb edifice built with marble, was all burnt down in 1530, excepting the choir, which is rather too large for the present church, and is still called the Cathedral. This city is the residence of the General-Governor and the Bishop; and is governed by a *Stad-vogt* and other magistrates. Here are, a fine cathedral-school, a Seminary of Missionaries, an orphan-house, a workhouse, a house of correction, and an hospital. A considerable trade in timber, fish, tallow, and copper which is brought from the copper-works of *Meldal* and *Roraas*, is carried on in this city. A sugar-house is also lately erected at *Drontheim*. The city is defended by fort *Christianstein*, erected in 1680, some fortifications on the land-side, and by *Munkbolmen*, of which we shall presently give a particular account. In the years 1522, 1650 and 1681, *Drontheim* was greatly damaged by fire. In the month of *July* 1685, king *Christian V.* spent some days in this town, and supped at midnight without lights; the twilights being so luminous as to need no candles. In the *Museum* at *Copenhagen* there is an old medal, struck here by order of king *Sverre*, to be seen. On the east side of the city lies the suburb of *Bakkelandet*, with its own church. And not far from *Bakkelandet* is *Ladegaard* which has also a particular church.

The castle of *Munkbolmen* stands on a rock in *Drontheim* harbour, and defends both the city and harbour towards the sea. It formerly was the usual place of confinement for state prisoners, and particularly of the unfortunate *Peter Schumaker*, Count *Grieffenfeld* and Great Chancellor, who was imprisoned here from 1676 to 1699, and died at *Drontheim* immediately after he had obtained his liberty.

4. The *Vogteys* of *Stordalen* and *Verdalen*, which comprehend the *Filkes* or little territories of *Stiordola*, *Skaugna* or *Skagen*, and *Verdola-fylke*. It has eight Courts of Judicature, from which there lies an appeal to the Superior Court at *Drontheim*. *Frosten* and *Skogen* are accounted the best corn-lands in all the north part of the kingdom.

*Frosten* is remarkable for the court established there by king *Hagen Adelsfen*, whose jurisdiction extended over all the inhabitants of *Drontheim*. Directly opposite to *Frosten* stood formerly on an island the castle of

*Steenvigsholm* built just before the Reformation by the last Archbishop *Oluf-Engelbretson* for the security of the jewels belonging to himself and the church of *Drontheim*. But after he left the castle, it was soon mastered by *Christopher Hvitfeld*. It was ceded to the *Swedes* by king *Frederick II.* in 1564; but was afterwards demolished by the King's order, and in lieu

of it the strong fort of *Skagnas* or *Skognes* was erected in another place, which is always kept in good condition.

5. The *Vogtey* of *Inderoen*, which contains the little Districts of *Sparbygia* and *Augna-fylke*, with six jurisdictions. *Jemtefeld*, which here separates *Norway* from *Sweden* is one of the highest mountains in *Norway*. On a bay in the parish of *Stods* formerly stood the town of *Stenkier*.

*Note.* The *Vogteys* of *Stordalen* and *Inderoen* form one District called *Indberred*, which is accounted the best corn-land in the Prefecture of *Drontheim*. The Provostship of *Indberred* contains eleven parishes, with thirty-four churches and two chapels.

6. The *Vogtey* of *Nummedal* is so called from the river *Naums*, which runs into *Naumsdal-bay*. It contains three jurisdictions, and a Provostship with three parishes and fourteen churches.

II. The Prefecture of *NORDLAND*, extends from *Nummedal* to *Findmark*, and contains the following *Vogteys*.

1. *Helgeland*, formerly called *Halogaland*, *Halogia*, and *Helleland*. *Ramus* labours hard to prove that this is the *Ogygia* of *Homer*, and that *Ulysses* was the same person with *Othin* or *Outin*; so that according to that author this country was inhabited immediately after the *Trojan* war, and consequently before any other part of *Norway*. It is eighteen *Norway* miles in circumference, and is the most populous District in *Nordland*; the soil is fertile, and covered with fine woods and rich pastures. A great quantity of fish, tallow, and fine butter is exported from hence. An appeal lies from the inferior courts of this *Vogtey* to the Provincial Court at *Stege*.

There are five parishes, two vicarages, and sixteen churches in this Provostship.

Near *Alstaboug*, in this District, is a remarkable range of mountains with seven high summits or crests called the seven sisters, and which are discernible sixteen *Norway* miles off at sea. In the south part of this *Vogtey* is the mountain of *Torg-batten*, through which there is an aperture, from one side to the other, fifty fathoms in height and a thousand in length; and on the top of this mountain is a piece of water, or reservoir, of the dimensions of a moderate fish-pond.

2. The *Vogtey* of *Salten* is sixteen *Norway* miles in length and six in breadth. It produces a good deal of corn, especially barley, and has fine pastures and profitable fisheries.

The Provostship of *Salten* includes four parishes and fourteen churches.

At *Stegen* the Court of Judicature for the whole Prefecture is held.

In this District is the strait or current of *Saltstrom*, which, at certain times, has the same dangerous and violent agitations as are observed in the *Moskoestrom*.

3. The *Vogtey* of *Sennien* is about ten *Norway* miles in length, and eight in breadth. It consists chiefly of the large island of *Sennien*, the soil of which



which is fertile for corn and pasturage; and on the west side of it are several deep bays. The chief employment of the inhabitants is fishing.

This Provostship contains fourteen churches.

4. The *Vogtey* of *Tromsøen* is between seven and eight *Norway* miles in length; and contains one Provostship with eight churches. As the summers are very short in this country, it produces but little corn, and no great plenty of grass; so that the inhabitants subsist by the fisheries.

5. The *Vogteys* of *Lofoden*, *Vesteraalen*, and *Andenas* consist entirely of islands, and make but one Provostship, in which are nineteen churches: These Districts also labour under a scarcity of grain; but the islands of *Lofoden* produce good grass which grows very high, and have the best fisheries in all *Nordland*.

A whole range of islands extends from North-east to South-west along this coast, and betwixt them and the continent runs a large bay called *Westfiorden*, which widens gradually towards the South-west. The island of *Rost* lies farthest towards that point of the compass, and is four *Norway* miles in circuit: It has a church built on it, and is surrounded by a great number of smaller islands. At the distance of some miles to the North-east of it lies the island of *Werroe*, which has also a church and is encompassed with several small islands. Between *Werroe* and the nearest of the *Lofoden*, called *Moskoenas*, at the distance of a *Norway* mile from either of them lies the little island of *Moskoe*; which is about a *Norway* mile in circuit, and noted for its rich pasturages and the fine sheep bred there. *Lofoden* includes three other islands besides *Moskoenas*; and these four islands stretch to the North-east about nine *Norway* miles, as far as the island of *Vaage*; and between them run little straits or channels. Further north lie the islands of *Langoen* and *Andenoen*; which are both comprehended in the District of *Vesteraalen*, and have their respective churches.

Between the aforementioned islands of *Moskoe* and *Moskoenas* is the famous *Moskoestrom*, which is generally called *Mahlstrom*, or *Maelstrom*, by mariners. This current runs six hours from North to South, and returns from South to North in the succeeding six hours, like the ebbing and flowing of the sea, but in direct opposition to the motion of the tides: For during the flood which runs from South to North, the *Moskoestrom* runs from North to South; and during the reflux or ebb when the sea runs from North to South, this current impetuously returns from South to North. It runs with a surprising rapidity, especially between the island of *Moskoe* and the extremity of *Moskoenas*, where the tides rise highest; but gradually abates its impetuosity as it approaches the islands of *Werroe* and *Rost*. The *Moskoestrom* never runs in a direct line like other currents; but almost circular. When it is half flood in the sea, the current here runs to the South-South-East; and as the tide rises higher; winds southwards and from the South to the South-west, and so on to due West. When it is high-water



out at sea, the current of the *Moskoeſtrom* alters its courſe to the North-weſt; and ſo gradually on to the North, where its impetuofity is at a ſtand for about three quarters of an hour. This interval is obſerved twice a day, after which the motion begins again. The appearance and effects of the *Moskoeſtrom* have been deſcribed as very dangerous and dreadful; but, it muſt be owned, not without ſome exaggeration. M. Bing, who had ſeen it, informs us that it has no whirlpool or *vortex*; but that it is formed by the collision of an aſſemblage of foaming waves, riſing as it were pyramidically to a great height, and with a prodigious noiſe. According to *Schelderup's* account the *Moskoeſtrom* is full of *vortices* or terrible whirlpools in the form of inverted cones, and above two fathoms deep from the baſe to the *apex*, and, as ſome relate, four fathoms in diameter: However, both accounts may, in ſome meaſure, be reconciled. This is certain

Fiſt, That the *Moskoeſtrom* is not agitated with equal violence at all times; that about the new and full moon, the Equinoxes, or in ſtormy weather, it rages with the greateſt impetuofity; and that at other times it is more moderate, and twice a day quite calm.

Secondly, That the navigation in that part of the ſea is not abſolutely impeded by it, as at half flood a veſſel can ſafely go from *Moskoenas* to *Werroe* and *Roſt*, and at half ebb may ſafely return to *Moskoenas*; that the ſtrait betwixt *Moskoenas* and *Werroe* is twice a day quite ſmooth and navigable, for three quarters of an hour; and that the inhabitants of thoſe iſlands, accordingly, row in their boats to *Moskoe*, which lies in the middle of it, to look after the ſheep which feed on that iſland; and the fiſhermen ſound the bottom of it. After theſe intervals, the ſwiftness of the current gradually increaſes to its uſual boiſterous rapidity and violence. Sometimes the waves in this current are not larger than thoſe that are ſeen at ſea in a hard gale of wind; but when its agitations are at the height, ſhips that fail on either ſide of it keep at the diſtance of two or three *Norway* miles; for otherwiſe they would be abſorbed by it, and entirely deſtroyed. It is deſcernible, indeed, at a greater diſtance at ſea and even within a quarter of a *Norway* mile of the continent; but this does not render the ſea unnavigable at ſuch a diſtance; for large veſſels and ſmall barks fail very ſecurely within half a league of the iſland of *Weroe*.

I ſhall not engage in a particular diſquiſition into the cauſes of this Phenomenon, but it is probable, that it does not proceed from any cavern or abyſs under the water, but from its impetuous oppoſition to the current of the tides and the collision of the waves. A particular account of the *Moskoeſtrom* is to be found in *CLAUSEN's* and *RAMUS's* *Befchreibungen von Norwegen*, or *Descriptions of Norway*, but the latter has little more than copied the former writer; in *Ramus's* *Tract. Hiſtor. Geogr. quo ULYSSEM & OUTINUM unum eundemque eſſe oſtenditur*, p. 117—128; in *JUSTINI BINGI* *Diſſ. de gurgite Worvagico, vulgo Moeskoeſtrom. Hafniæ* 1741; in

*Altonaischen Postreuter*, or the *Altena Gazette* called the *Post-boy*, for the year 1751, p. 153, 155, 159, 167; in *Pontoppidan's Natural History of Norway*; and in the *Hamburg Magazine*, vol. vii. p. 203, taken from the *Memoirs of the Swedish Academy of Sciences*. These several accounts I have compared, and at the same time had before me the draught in *Ramus's Dissertation*, and another in manuscript, which is still larger.

III. The Prefecture of *FINMARK* has its particular Prefect, Register, and inferior Judge, but the same Provincial Judge with the Prefecture of *Nordland*. The inhabitants of this Prefecture subsist chiefly by fishing; and the best salmon of any in *Norway* are caught in the river *Tana* in this Province. In summer-time the sun continues above the Horizon of this country for some weeks. There are neither towns nor villages in *Finmark*, though the sea-coast is pretty well inhabited.

The Prefecture is divided into

1. *West-Finmark*, which makes one Provostship, including twelve churches and chapels, which are served by five Preachers. The extremity of the island *Magaroe* in *West-Finmark* is the most northern head of land in *Europe*, and is called *Nord-kap* or *North-Cape*.

2. *East-Finmark*, which makes but one Provostship, in which are nine churches and chapels, and three Preachers. The extreme point of the continent towards the North is called the Promontory of *Nordkyn*; being ten *Norway* miles distant from *Nord-kap*, but not so near the Pole as the latter.

The island of *Wardoe* lies about half a league to the East of the continent, and is three *Norway* miles in circumference. It has a secure harbour defended by the strong castle of *Wardoe-buus*, which may justly be reckoned the most northern fortress in the whole world.





An ACCOUNT of the DANISH MISSION  
*established in these Parts.*

THE sides of the vast chain of mountains called *Kolen* and *Nord-Felsen*, which have been mentioned above, are inhabited by *Laplanders*, who are called by the *Norwegians* *Finlappen* or *Lapfinnen*; but *Lapland*, commonly so called, does not extend so far as these mountains.

Those who live on the west side of these rocky mountains, belong to *Norway*, and those that inhabit the east side of them appertain to *Sweden* and *Russia*. The *Lappers* in *Nordland* appear to be of quite another extraction, or, at least, a different colony from the *Finners* and *Lappers* of *Finmark*. This distinction is not only observable by the difference of their dialect; but is still more visible with regard to their marriages. For, it seems, the *Finmark-Lappers* abominate all inter-marriages with their relations, even in the fourth degree; whereas the *Nordland-Lappers*, before the *Danish* Mission taught them better, made no scruple of intermixing even in the first degree of kindred, both in the ascending and descending lines. The *Finners* and *Lappers* of *Finmark* live at the foot of the rocky mountains, where, like the *Norwegians*, they labour hard for a subsistence both by sea and land, and consequently are more settled than the wandering *Laplanders*. The *Nordland-Lappers*, on the contrary, live both winter and summer in thick forests on the mountains, roaming about from place to place as they can find pasture for their herds of Rein-deer, by which they generally subsist; some of them being possessed of a thousand or fourteen hundred of those animals. The Rein-deer not only yield their owners milk, butter, cheese, venison, and skins both for traffick and cloathing, but are also used to draw their sledges. These *Laplanders* come down but very seldom, and in small numbers into the islands among the other *Norwegians*. Lastly, those *Lappers* who inhabit a part of the Prefecture of *Drontheim* particularly appropriated to them, called *Ludberged*, are much more licentious and disorderly in their manners than those mentioned above; and many of them, especially such as have no Rein-deers, stroll about from village to village during the whole year, and subsist partly by begging, and partly by working with furriers. Others again spend the whole summer upon the mountains with their families; but, in winter, excepting a few left to take care of the Rein-deer, come down into the vallies, and encamp close by the nearest creeks, where they set up their huts; but, according to an ancient custom, they often shift their habitation. These creeks are very frequent  
in



in *Norway*; some of them running ten or fifteen *Norwegian* miles into the land, and in their course forming a great number of small bays, the sides of which are usually inhabited. But those only which are near the mountains are frequented, at certain times of the year, by the *Fimmers* and *Lappers* for the conveniency of fishing.

Before the establishment of the *Danish* Mission, the religion of the *Lappers* and *Fimmers* was an absurd mixture of Paganism and Christianity. Before the Christian religion was introduced into *Nordland*, if they were not entirely of the same religion with the ancient *Norwegian* pagans, they at least agreed with them for the most part; though they had some superstitious peculiarities of their own. When the country came to be governed by Christian Sovereigns, the *Lappers* and *Fimmers*, in order the better to conceal their idolatry and magic, set them off with some ceremonies borrowed from Christianity, as it was then disguised by Popery: Hence it comes to pass that the sign of the cross is so commonly used among them. But when at length the unfulled light of the Gospel penetrated the gloom in which these remote parts were involved, the inhabitants became still more industrious to hide their idolatrous and pagan customs; and in externals, even to the use of the sacraments, affected to conform entirely to Christianity. This is the less to be wondered at, as the main scope and whole design of their religion is to procure temporal ease and advantage; for, before the Mission, they had but very faint and imperfect notions of the Immortality of the Soul, the Resurrection, and a Future State.

In the year 1609, king *Christian IV.* published an Ordinance, by which all *Fimmers* and *Lappers* convicted of magic or sorcery, and refusing to renounce it for the future, were condemned to die\*; and others, suspected on good grounds, were adjudged to be banished. *Erick Bredal*, who was bishop of *Drontheim* from the year 1642 to 1672, laboured with the utmost zeal and assiduity in converting the *Lappers* and *Fimmers* to Christianity; and possibly it was his laudable example that incited his successors to exert themselves in the same pious undertaking: At least from that time the *Drontheim* ministers, whose parishes border on the mountains, have been observed to interest themselves more in the conversion of the *Fimmers* and *Lappers* than they did before, though, as to essentials, little has been done. *Isaac Olson*, a poor person, from his ardent zeal for the conversion of the *Fimmers* and *Lappers*, went among them about the beginning of this century, and spent fourteen years in great poverty and distress; however, he

\* This Monarch's zeal in converting these savages to Christianity is to be commended; but the method he took to effect it was as weak as it was detestable. The absurdities of Popery, which the Author justly contemns, and the delirious frenzy of the *Laplanders* in their magical incantations cannot be more contrary to reason, than to punish these poor savages with death for their ignorance and superstition. As for banishing these pretended criminals, it would be difficult to find a more desolate region than that in which they at present wander.

had made some proficiency in his charitable undertaking, when he was met by the Missionaries on the mountains, and taken into their service.

This Mission was first established by the illustrious *Danish* Monarch *Frederik IV.* who in the spring of the year 1706, sent *Paul Resin*, a well qualified person, to travel in *Nordland*, *Finmark*, and *Lapland*; who, the year following, transmitted a full account of those countries. Hereupon, Bishop *Krog* received orders to exhort his inferior clergy to be assisting in the proposed Mission, and to select able persons to carry on so important an undertaking.

The *Collegium de cursu Evangelii promovendo* being established at *Copenhagen* on the tenth of *December*, 1714, the king, in 1715, sent the Missionaries proper instructions how to proceed in their expedition for the conversion of the *Finlappers* in *Finmark* and *Lapland*. The Mission, was extended also to those in *Nordland* and the Prefecture of *Drontheim*, and consequently in every part of that Diocese, in 1720. By virtue of this Ordinance, it was immediately determined to found a Seminary for Missionaries both in *Copenhagen* and *Drontheim*. Soon after, namely, in the year 1716, *M. Thomas von Westen* was settled as a preacher in the *Drontheim* dialect, with the titles of *Lector Theologiæ* and *Notarius Capituli*; and this worthy Divine, in order to promote the further conversion of those who were involved in the darkness of heathenism, cheerfully undertook to go to *Warddehuus* with two of his chaplains, or assistants, of approved abilities. The first scene of his labours was *East-Finmark*, where he was an instrument of bringing seven hundred and fifty persons into the light of the Gospel. In *West-Finmark* his endeavours were crowned with still greater success, the number of converts there amounting to something above a thousand souls. And lastly, he returned to *Drontheim* through the *Nordlands*, successfully destroying the power of Satan by sowing the seeds of the Gospel wherever he came.

On the twentieth of *November* a royal edict was published enjoining that every mother-church in *Norway* should contribute two rix-dollars, and every subordinate church one rix-dollar for promoting the Mission into *Finmark*. This contribution was to commence on the first of *May*, being the feast of *St. Philip* and *St. James*, in the year 1717, and to be continued every year on the same day. This was a constant fund for the salaries of the Missionaries and other necessary disbursements, and received an augmentation from his Majesty, who appropriated to that purpose some ecclesiastical tithes belonging to him in the District of *Hegeland* in the *Nordlands*, arising from the benefices and churches of *Bronoe*, *Alstaboug*, and *Rodoe*.

In 1717, the Seminary at *Drontheim* was quite settled; and in 1718, *M. von Westen*, accompanied by four new Missionaries, undertook a second journey to *Finmark*, where he had the satisfaction of finding that most of the *Finlappers*, both on the sea-coast and on the mountains, continued firm

to those good principles which he had instilled into them; and made several dispositions for their further instruction.

In 1718, his Majesty granted to the Mission the perpetuity, &c. of the revenues belonging to all the benefices in *Finmark*, for building and endowing churches, chapels, and schools.

In 1720, the Mission was also extended to *Nordland* and the Prefecture of *Drontheim*, and afterwards over that vast chain of rocky mountains called the *Kolen*; and many important measures were taken for the further promoting of this laudable undertaking.

In 1722, M. von *Westen* drew up a complete plan of the *Nordland* Mission, which consists of thirteen Districts, and are all provided at present with churches, chapels, tabernacles, and schools, with a proper number of Missionaries and Schoolmasters. The Missionary Districts are as follows:

IN FINMARK.

1. That of *East-Finmark*, with a Missionary for *Waranger*, *Tana*, and *Laxefjord*.
2. *Porsanger* in *West-Finmark*.
3. *Alten*, also in *West-Finmark*.

IN THE NORDLANDS.

4. That of *Skiervoë* in *Tromsøen*.
5. *Carlsøe*, likewise in *Tromsøen*.
6. *Sennien* and *Westeraalen*.
7. *Lodingen*.
8. *Stegen* and *Bodoen*.
9. *Gilleskael*.
10. *Rabnen*.
11. *Wefsen*.

IN THE PREFECTURE OF DRONTHEIM.

12. That of *Overbalden* in *Nummedalen*.
13. *Indberred*.

According to the abovementioned plan, the whole business and œconomy of this Mission has hitherto been conducted with the happiest consequences; of which a fuller and more accurate account has been given by E. J. *Jessen*, in the sixth volume of the *Danischen Bibliothek*, or *Danish Library*, from page 601 to 688, at the close of the year 1744.



## T H E

## N O R W E G I A N I S L A N D S.

BESIDES the continent which has been already described, several large and small islands belong to the kingdom of *Norway*, which remain to be taken notice of. We shall begin with the smallest islands, as they lie nearest to the main land. The *Orcades*, or *Orkneys*, and the *Hetland* or *Shetland* islands formerly belonged to *Norway*: But as they have since become a part of *Scotland*, we shall give an account of them in describing that kingdom. The first in order of the *Norwegian* islands are

## The Islands of F A R O E,

In Latin *Faeroæ*, or *Insulæ Faeroenses*.

We have a map of these islands in *Debes's* Description of them.

They lie in the *North-Sea*, about a hundred and seventy leagues South of *Iceland*, but something more to the West of *Norway*; and are twenty-five in number, though but seventeen of them are inhabited. They extend about fifteen *Norway* miles in length, and ten in breadth; and lie between  $61^{\circ}, 15'$ , and  $62^{\circ}, 10'$  North latitude. When the day is at the greatest length in these islands, the sun rises seven minutes after two, and sets fifty-three minutes after nine. In the shortest day the sun rises here fifty-three minutes after nine and sets seven minutes after two. The summers and winters are very moderate in this climate; and as the latter are neither long nor severe, the cattle feed here in the open air all the year round. However the dampness of the air makes the inhabitants subject to many distempers, as coughs, the scurvy, &c. These islands are, indeed, so many solid rocks, but the surface of them is covered with earth or mould to the depth of an ell\*; and this shallow soil is so fertile that one tun † of seed yields above twenty tuns of corn. The pastures are excellent; especially for sheep, in the great flocks of which the wealth of the inhabitants consists: But a hard winter is very destructive to these animals, as in general they run wild about the country. Here is a great plenty both of land

\* The Author does not tell us how many feet this ell consists of; probably it is equal to two feet.

† A Tun is eight Bushels, or a Quarter of corn.

and water-fowl; and it is naturally to be supposed that the inhabitants do not want fish. The commodities vended here to foreigners are salted mutton, goose quills, feathers and *Eider* down; knit woollen wastecoats, caps, and stockings; tallow, &c.

The islands of *Faroe* were discovered and peopled in the time of *Harald Haarfager* King of *Norway*; and one *Griener Camban* was the first person who built a house on one of these islands. The Christian religion being quite established in *Denmark* about the year of Christ 1000, the Gospel was also propagated in the islands of *Faroe*, which were even thought worthy of a particular Bishop; and the island of *Stromoe* was appointed for his place of residence. King *Cbristian* III. having established the doctrines of the Reformation in his dominions, nominated a Provost to superintend the affairs of religion in these islands; who, to this day, is subordinate to the Bishop of *Seeland*, and has under his jurisdiction seven Preachers or ministers, who have the care of thirty-nine churches. These islands together with *Iceland* are under one Governor; but they have their respective *Langman* or Provincial Judge, their *Land-vogt*, their inferior Judge, and King's Consul who superintends the trade carried on between the *Faroe* islands and *Copenhagen*.

As to their ecclesiastical state, these islands are divided into seven parishes.

I. The parish of **NORDROE**; to which belong the following islands and churches:

1. *Videroe*, an island of a *Norway* mile and a half in length, and three quarters of a mile in breadth. On this island stands the mother-church, of which the six churches erected on the five following islands, are members.

2. *Fugloe*, which lies most to the North-East among this cluster of islands. It is three-fourths of a *Norway* mile in length, and half a mile in breadth.

3. *Svino*, which is about a *Norway* mile and a half long, and three quarters of a mile broad.

4. *Bordoe*, which is two *Norway* miles in length, and has a very good harbour called *Klack*, on the North-west side. Between the first, third, and fourth of these islands is a small *vortex* or whirlpool.

5. *Kunoc*, which is something above one *Norway* mile in length, and half a mile in breadth.

6. *Kalsoe*, which is something longer and broader than those mentioned above, and has two churches.

II. The Parish of **OESTEROE** is an island about five *Norway* miles in length, and in some places not above half, but at most about one *Norway* mile and a half in breadth. Besides the mother-church of *Nas*, it contains

fix

six other churches which are members of it. This island has two harbours; namely, *Fuglefjord* and *Kongshaven*: The latter is in *Skaal-bay*.

III. STROMOE is the largest of all these islands; being six *Norway* miles in length, and its greatest breadth is about two. It is divided into two parts, or parishes.

I. The south part contains

*Thorshaven*, in Latin *Tbori portus*, a small town with a good harbour defended by a fort. This is the capital and common market of all the *Faroe* islands, and the residence of the *Land-vogt* and the King's Consul. Here is a little school founded by king *Christian III.* and improved by *Christian IV.* in the year 1647. On this island also stands the mother-church, of which the three following churches are members; namely, those of

*Kirkeboe*, *Kalbach*, and *Nolfoe*. *Kirkeboe* was formerly the Bishop's See.

*Nolfoe* is an island of that name about a *Norway* mile in length, and a mile and a half in breadth:

2. The north part contains the mother-church of *Kolde-fjord*, and four subordinate churches. In this part of the island are the harbours of *Westmanhavn*, and *Halderfvuig*.

IV. WAAGOE is an island about two *Norway* miles in length. The mother-church of *Midvaag* stands on a harbour of the same name; and three other churches dependent on it, near one of which is the harbour *Ser-vaag*, stand on this island. A fourth church, that belongs to that of *Mid-vaag* or the mother-church stands on the island of *Myggenas*, which is three quarters of a *Norway* mile in length, and something under half a mile in breadth.

V. SANDOE is an island about two *Norway* miles in length and one in breadth, and contains the mother-church of *Sand* and two others which are dependent on it. On the south side of this island are the rocks of *Dalsnipen* and *Dalsflas*, and a dangerous current or whirlpool, called *Quernen*. Two other churches belong to that of *Sand* or the mother-church, which stand on the islands of *Skuo* (which is about three quarters of a *Norway* mile long and a quarter of a mile broad) and *Store-Dimen*, which is almost round, and about one *Norway* mile in circumference. The latter is a rock which is so steep and surrounded with sand-banks and a great depth of water on all sides, that no place can be better fortified by Nature. The flocks of sheep on this island run about wild, and lie in the open air all the year round. Not far from *Store* or *Great-Dimen* lies *Lille-Dimen*, or *Little-Dimen*. The soil of this island has a singular quality, namely, that white sheep being brought to feed here, in a short time turn black. The first appearances of this metamorphosis are black spots on the legs, then on the back, which continue to spread till the whole fleece acquires a blackish hue.

VI. SUDEROE



VI. SUDEROE is five *Norway* miles in length and two in its greatest breadth. It contains five churches, besides the mother-church of *Qualboe*. The best harbour on this island is called *Lobroe*, being formed by the bay of *Vaagsfiord*. Near the south extremity of the island, not far from *Sumboe*, is a more rapid and dangerous current or whirlpool than the *Muskoe-ström* on the coast of *Norway*. In the middle of this *vortex* stands a rock called *Sumboe-Monk*. Near the village of *Famoën*, there is a mountain with a small lake on the top of it, which daily ebbs and flows at the same time with the flux and reflux of the tides.

## The Island of ICELAND\*,

In Latin *Islandia*.

§. 1. NOT to mention the old maps of *Iceland*, a small one is to be found in *Anderfon's* Description of that island; and a larger and better chart, but without the names of most places of note, nor even of a single river, may be seen in *Horrebow's* Description of *Iceland*. This was drawn by some of the King's Engineers, and completed by Captain *Knopf* in the year 1734; but it was published by M. *Horrebow*, who reduced it to a smaller scale. According to *Horrebow's* map this island lies four degrees more to the East than it was placed in other maps; but it seems a little improbable, that other geographers should be so far mistaken.

§. 2. *Iceland* lies in the great *Atlantic* Ocean, about a hundred and twenty *Norway* miles distant from *Drontheim*, and sixty from *Greenland*.

§. 3. The pirate *Nadok*, who about the year 860 was wrecked on this island, first called it *Snaland*, *i. e.* 'Snow-land;' but, four years afterwards, one *Gardar* a *Swede* landing here, gave it the name of *Gardarsholm*. *Flocko*, a third adventurer, named it in his own language *Island*, *i. e.* 'Iceland,' from the great flakes of ice which he saw driven hither from the *Ice-Sea*. Some authors suppose *Iceland* to be the famous *Tbule* of the Ancients.

§. 4. This island is about a hundred and twenty *Norway* miles in length, and fifty in its greatest breadth; but it is hardly twelve *Norway* miles broad in the narrowest parts.

§. 5. *Iceland* properly consists of a prodigious range of mountains running from East to West; on the declivities of which, and in the vallies

\* Some *English* Geographers write *Island* instead of *Iceland*; but, I think, erroneously, as it confounds the proper name *Iceland* with the appellative *Island*.

lying between them, the inhabitants live. Several of these high mountains, which are always covered with ice and snow, are called *Jockeler*. Here are also some mountains that consist only of rocks and sand, which are consequently far from being fertile. But on other mountains situated near the coast there are levels or plains covered with verdure, of several miles in extent, which produce fine grass. Though *Iceland* is, for the most part, a mountainous country, yet there are roads practicable for a horse in every part of the island. Carriages were formerly used here, but are now laid aside, as the trouble attending them was greater than the conveniency that could arise from them. Every year some hundreds of pack-horses come over the mountains from the north, to the trading places in the south parts of the island: These are loaded with butter, woollen manufactures, &c. which they barter for other commodities.

§. 6. Earthquakes are not unfrequent in *Iceland*, especially in the south parts about *Rangarvalle* and *Arnefs-Sysfler*, sometimes in *Gulbringe* and the adjacent Districts where they have been attended with very fatal consequences, and but seldom in the west and north parts of the island; by which it has been often laid waste, and undergone great alterations. These calamities happened chiefly in the years 1734, 1752, and 1755, and several spots are to be seen which were desolated by fiery eruptions breaking out of the earth at those times. Many of the *Jockeler* or snowy mountains have also gradually become *Volcano's*; and further alterations of the same nature may probably happen again in future times. Of these burning mountains *Heckla* is the best known to foreigners; and therefore I shall give some account of its eruptions in the sequel. The *Jockeler* called *Kotligiau* and *Oeraife* (which last word in general signifies a waste or desert) have also of late years broke out in *Sbaftefeld-Sysfel*. The former had a second eruption in the year 1721, and the latter in 1727; when these mountains, besides an inundation of melted snow and ice which poured down the sides of them, ejected a prodigious quantity of earth, sand, and stone as far as the sea. The huge mountain of *Krabla*, which lies in the *North-Sysfel*, on the seventeenth of *May* 1724, began with a terrible explosion to eject smoke, fire, cinders and stone, which was followed by an ignited stream, like fused metal. This *Lava* continued slowly to flow on for a *Norway* mile and a half, as far as the lake of *Mynat* where it emptied itself; and did not cease till the end of *September* 1729, when the eruptions of the mountain subsided. This fiery eruption of *Krabla* was soon followed by that of the adjacent mountains of *Leirbniukur*, *Biornaflag*, and *Hitzool*. It is a common observation among the inhabitants, that when the ice and snow are so accumulated on one of these mountains which formerly ejected fire, as to stop the clefts and chasms, which were the spiracles or outlets to those dreadful eruptions, and prevent the evaporation of smoke, flame, &c. a new eruption is not far off. In 1756, the *Kotligiau* began to eject fire and smoke a third time.



§. 7. Springs which are naturally warm, and even hot springs are frequently to be met with in *Iceland*; and likewise waters that have a mineral taste. About mount *Hecla* are several small basons of warm water, which sometimes emit a copious steam; but at other times this vapour is not so visible. These hot springs in the language of the country are called *Hver*, and are of three sorts. Some of them are little more than tepid, so that a person may hold his hand in the water without any inconvenience: Others are so hot as to rise in small bubbles like simmering water; but in others the ebullition is so strong as to force the water up to a considerable height. The last sort are observed to be either periodical or variable in their ebullitions. Of these I shall give a more particular account in the sequel. If a large stone be thrown into one of these springs it is always ejected by the return of the ebullition. The inhabitants who live near them boil their victuals only by hanging a pot, in which the flesh is put in cold water, in these hot springs: They also bathe in the rivulets that run from them, which by degrees become lukewarm, or are cooled by rivulets of cold water. If the cows drink the water of these springs, they are said to yield more milk than ordinary; and it is likewise accounted very wholesome for the human species to drink. The *Hver* or hot spring near *Krysevig* emits a very strong and fetid sulphureous vapour; and some of these springs are so intensely hot as to calcine bones.

§. 8. In the rocks of *Iceland* crystals are sometimes found, and many of them represent an object viewed through them double; but, properly speaking, these are only a species of *Talc*. There are also evident signs that the mountains of *Iceland* contain iron, copper, and even silver ore. Near these are found two kinds of agate, which, when lighted, burns like a candle; a species of Bitumen which is black, shining, and pretty hard; and another sort of black earth which is harder, and breaks into thin diaphanous *laminæ*; this is not inflammable, but vitrifies in the fire.

In *Norder-Syssel*, which lies in the Government of *Huusevig*, and in *Gulbringe-Syssel* near *Krysevig*, sulphur is dug out of the ground, and in no other part of the island. The soil there is very warm and internally hot, and, in some places, yields sulphur in great quantities; but the sulphur trade is now discontinued.

Salt springs are not known here; however, salt has been found at the root of the *Volcano's* or burning mountains. That salt might be made here by art is unquestionable, from the success of former trials.

Woods are not frequent on this island, though here and there a coppice, or small wood, is to be seen: But it is remarkable, that great numbers of small and large trees are driven hither by the sea, especially on the north coast, where, for the most part, they lie and rot; the inhabitants having no shipping by which they can export, or convey this wood for sale among their countrymen. A great quantity of shrubs on which grow all



forts of berries, as juniper-berries, black-berries, &c. are burnt every year for charcoal, which the natives use in their forges. The common fuel of the country is turf, some of which has a very strong sulphureous smell; and even fish-bones are burnt in some parts of this island.

Very good grass not only grows in the vallies which border on the lakes and rivers, but also in the hollows betwixt the mountains, and sometimes even on the summits of the latter. The finest pastures are in the northern parts of the island, where the grass springs up very fast, and to a great height. The cattle are generally driven amongst the mountains to graze, where they find good pasture; but the grass that grows near the habitations of the *Icelanders* is reserved for winter-fodder.

Here is also a plentiful variety of salubrious and medicinal herbs, as scurvy-grass, sampire, angelica, which is much used by the inhabitants, and *Berg-grass*, in Latin *Muscus catharticus Islandiæ*. The last is a kind of odoriferous moss and is very nourishing; and great quantities of it are laid up by the inhabitants for occasional use. Hitherto very few esculent vegetables have been cultivated in *Iceland*; but as all kind of culinary herbs thrive in the gardens at *Bessfæder* and those of the episcopal palaces, it is probable, that with proper culture, they would also grow in most parts of the island.

The *Icelanders* are entirely discouraged from pursuing agriculture, as they have not yet been able to bring any corn to maturity in this soil; and yet some parts of the island is known by several evident traces to have been cultivated in former times.

Bread is but little known here among the commonalty, who make shift to live on dried fish and flesh, without it. For though a large quantity of meal and bread is imported every year into the harbours of *Iceland*, the lower class of people can purchase but little or none of it; the price being adapted only to the more wealthy sort. The *Icelanders*, however, make a kind of meal and bread of a sort of wild barley, which grows chiefly in *Skaftefeld-Syffel*; and in times of scarcity they have recourse to a certain sea-vegetable, called in the *Iceland* language *Saul* or *Sol*, and in Latin *Alga marina Saccarifera*, which is dried before the fire, and sold at half the price of dried fish. The cattle are observed to feed on this sea-weed at low-water, and to prefer it to any other marine vegetables.

§. 9. Bears are frequently driven on this island along with the large flakes of ice from *Greenland*. But the inhabitants are so vigilant and dextrous in destroying them, that the only species of wild beasts to be seen in *Iceland* are foxes, which are either brown or white.

The horses here, as in all other northern Countries, are small, but strong and full of mettle, and, excepting those that are broke for the saddle, lie in the open air all the year round. In winter they subsist only on what fodder they can scrape from under the ice and snow. Such horses as the  
owners

owners have no immediate occasion for are turned out among the mountains, where they go in quest of them when they are wanted; and every one knows his own horses by certain marks.

Great numbers of sheep are to be seen in *Iceland*; and in those parts where graziery is the chief occupation of the inhabitants, it is not uncommon for a man to be master of a flock of three, four, or five hundred sheep. In the winter season they drive their flocks to shelter at night; and, in very severe weather, they keep them in the cotes also in the day-time. The grazing countries lie mostly in the northern and eastern parts of the island. The inhabitants of the southern are mostly employed in fishing, and leave their flocks abroad both summer and winter. Nature seems to have provided a shelter for the sheep in those parts; there being large caves in the earth, into which these animals are sure to retire in severe weather. In winter, when the snow is not very deep, and the weather inclinable to be fair and mild, the sheep are turned out to pick out what they can find under the snow. If these animals happen to be surprised at such times by a great snow, they immediately form themselves into a close, compact body, by laying their heads together in the centre. In this posture they are quite covered with the snow, and sometimes are so benumbed with cold, as not to be able to help themselves, till their owner happens to find them, and clears their way out. This is often a work of some days; and many times the weight of the incumbent snow is so great, that the sheep are crushed to pieces by it before they can be relieved. In the extremity of hunger, when they pass some days in such a wretched situation, these animals have been known to eat one another's wool; but this is apt to disorder them very much. On these accounts, upon any apprehensions of bad weather, the inhabitants carefully keep their flocks at home. The wool on the surface of the fleeces is very coarse, but that which grows near the bodies of the *Iceland* sheep is something finer. Those writers are mistaken who tell us that all the sheep in this island have horns: Some few of them, indeed, have been seen with five, and some with four horns; but they commonly have but two as in other countries. As for goats, here is no great number of them. Even some of the *Iceland* oxen and cows have no horns; and, in the southern parts, they are fed with fish-bones and the water in which the fish was boiled. Here are no hogs. As for domestic animals, a sufficient number of dogs, and but very few cats are to be seen on this island.

§. 10. The keeping of poultry and other tame fowl is so expensive, that very few of them are seen here: But plenty of swans, wild geese and ducks, among which may also be reckoned the *Eider* (the eggs and feathers of which are so much valued) snipes, woodcocks, &c. are to be met with in *Iceland*. At certain times an incredible number of eggs of sea-fowl, which the inhabitants are very fond of, are found along the sea-coast. The birds



of prey on this island are the eagle, hawk, raven, and falcon. Some of the last are entirely white; others are partly of that colour; and others are brown. These are accounted the best falcons in *Europe*. In every District there are certain falconers, who alone are impowered to catch falcons. These they carry to the King's falconry at *Bessflader*, where the King's falconer, who visits that place every year, picks out the best. Then the Governor of *Iceland* pays the falconers fifteen rix-dollars for every white falcon, ten for one that it is partly white, and seven for a brown falcon. Besides this, the falconers receive a gratuity of five or six rix-dollars when they first bring them in.

§. 11. The rivers, lakes, and bays, with the other parts of the sea, supply the *Icelanders* with prodigious quantities of various kinds of fish.

§. 12. They have always a short spring and autumn in *Iceland* before and after the summer season. The cold is severe in winter, and the heat is very intense in summer; but neither of them is insupportable. During the shortest days in winter, the sun in the north part of the island is scarce visible for an hour above the Horizon; but in the south part, it is seen for above three hours. In the middle of summer the sun is not much above three hours below the Horizon; so that the nights, if I may call them so, are very bright and luminous. The air in this climate is salubrious, and agrees very well with foreigners as well as the natives.

§. 13. The *Icelanders* are naturally of a robust and vigorous constitution; but are debilitated by the continual fatigues and hardships they undergo at sea in their fisheries; so that about the fiftieth year of their age they are generally afflicted with various distempers, especially those of the breast and lungs: Hence very few of them reach to an advanced age. The *Iceland* women are not inferior to the men either in hardiness or strength\*. In case of sickness the *Icelanders* entirely resign themselves to Nature and Providence; for there is not one physician or surgeon on the whole island. There are, indeed, some few persons who keep medicines by them, with which they are supplied from *Denmark*; but they are not very well acquainted with the virtues of those medicines, or the method of administering them.

The usual food of the inhabitants of this island is fresh and dried fish, milk, oatmeal, and flesh; but they chiefly live on dried fish dressed with butter. It is remarkable that they eat all their provisions without any salt. Their common drink is milk, which they drink by itself when sweet; but mix water with it when it turns sour. They are very fond of beer and spiri-

\* The author says that the women are not so robust and strong as the men; but this is no more than what is observed in every part of the world, so that the observation is very trifling and impertinent. I therefore look upon it as an error of the press, and have rendered the sentence in a different sense.



tuous liquors; and the most wealthy among the inhabitants sometimes purchase red and white *French* wines.

The *Icelanders* wisely content themselves with what apparel their own country furnishes. The cloth which they wear is called *Wadmal*; besides which, they also use a garment of coarse linen. Some of the gentry affect to appear in cloths and stuffs made in *Denmark*, though a stuff-manufactory has been lately set up at *Bessfader*. Their fishing dress is made with untanned leather, which is kept pliable by being rubbed with fishes livers.

As they are obliged to buy their timber of the Company established here \*, they build their houses as cheap as possible; so that they are neither very commodious nor handsome.

The occupations of the *Icelanders* are chiefly fishing and grazing; and when they are not engaged in either of these, especially in winter, the men, women, and children are employed in knitting woollen waistcoats, stockings, gloves, &c. and in weaving *Wad-mal*, or *Iceland* cloth. Their looms, indeed, are but very indifferent, but those made in *Denmark* now begin to be introduced among them.

§. 14. As to the commerce of *Iceland*, the following particulars are to be observed. In former times the *Hamburgers*, *Bremeners*, and the *Dutch* used to come hither to traffick. King *Christian IV.* deprived foreigners of this advantage in the year 1602, and erected at *Copenhagen* a Company for the *Iceland* trade, on which he conferred many advantageous privileges; but in 1662, this Company was dissolved. Some time after a society divided the island into four parts and farmed it; and since the year 1684, the *Iceland* trade has continued on that footing. In 1733, the Company that farms it was established by a royal charter and stiled the *Iceland* Company of *Copenhagen*. This Company every year sends twenty-three ships with their factors and sub-factors to all the ports on the island. The ports or harbours are divided into Fish and Flesh-Ports: The former are fourteen in number and lie on the south-west side, and the latter are but eight and lie on the north and east parts of the island. Here are also some ports, from which both fish and flesh are exported. The *Icelanders* either barter their commodities for those of *Denmark*, or receive ready money for them in *Danish* crowns and dollars in proportion to the *Land-tax*, or rate settled by the King's Ordinance. The cattle are delivered to the factors at the Flesh-Ports about the latter end of *August*; and in the Fish-Ports the factors purchase all the sound dried cod and ling, and train-oil, according to the fixt rate.

Accompts are kept here, and all calculations made by *Fishes*: A *Fish* (which is properly two pounds of fish) being a *Lub-Schelling*; and consequently forty-eight *Fishes* are equal to a *Specie-Dollar* †, and thirty to a

\* See Introduction to *Denmark*, p. 75.

† A *Specie-Dollar* is about four shillings and six-pence sterling.

*Danish Crown.* *Danish* marks at eight *Lub-Schellings* are sometimes current here, and also, though seldom, four *Lub-Schelling* pieces. A quarter of a *Specie-Dollar*, which is equal to twelve *Fishes*, is the smallest piece of money current in *Iceland*; so that any balance under this not being payable in money, is made up in fish or tobacco, the latter being sold at the rate of an ell for a *Fish*.

The exports from hence are chiefly dried fish, salted mutton; a good deal of beef, butter, and train-oil; a great quantity of tallow; coarse and fine jackets of *Wadmal*, woollen stockings and gloves, red wool, sheepskins and lambskins, fox-tails of several colours, feathers, and quills. The imports to *Iceland* are chiefly iron, horseshoes, timber, meal, bread, brandy, wine, tobacco, coarse linen, a few silk stuffs, and domestic utensils. In the year 1751, in order to enable the *Icelanders* to improve their manufactures and to promote trade and commerce, king *Frederick V.* bestowed on them a bounty of 10,000 rix-dollars, besides a loan of 5000 more.

§. 15. That the *Icelanders* are not wanting in mental endowments, evidently appears from the several learned men and ingenious artists that this island has produced. Several of their authors have written very elegant and accurate dissertations relating to the Northern History, which contribute much towards the clearing up the history of *Denmark* and *Norway*. Among these, the celebrated historian *Thormodus Torfaus*, a native of *Iceland*, has by means of some ancient *Iceland* chronicles, thrown a great light upon the Northern History. The *Icelanders* began to cultivate the study of Letters so early as the year 1130, which was about two hundred and forty years after that island was first inhabited by a colony from *Nordland*. The most ancient among them, whose works are extant, are the celebrated *Samund Frode* and *Are Frode*. *John Mathiason*, a native of *Sweden*, was the first who set up a printing-press in this island in the year 1530, or 1531. In every episcopal See there is a public *Latin* school erected as a seminary for the clergy; and some of the scholars, after having gone through all the classes, are sent to the University at *Copenhagen*.

The *Iceland* dialect is the same with the old *Norwegian* language, though at present it is not quite pure and uncorrupted; however, what they still retain of the ancient *Norwegian* language is of great use to investigate the etymologies, &c. of the several Northern dialects.

16. *Lutheranism* is the only religion tolerated in *Iceland*. The churches of the East, South, and West-Quarters are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Skaalkolt*; and those of the North-Quarter are subject to the Bishop of *Hoolum*. The *Iceland* Bishops cultivate the estates annexed to their respective Sees; and the annual produce of them is about two thousand rix-dollars. Out of these revenues a stated sum is appropriated to the Rectors and assistants of the school, and the Preachers or Ministers of the cathedral. A certain number of scholars are lodged and clothed, and the Bi-

shop's



shop's palace, &c. must also be kept in good repair out of the same revenues. After these several deductions the remainder is the Bishop's income. Some of the Preachers or Ministers are liberally provided for, others but indifferently, and many of them very scantily. Among the latter the certain income of not a few is but four rix-dollars a year\*.

§. 17. As to the historical particulars relating to this island; it owes its being first peopled to the tyranny of *Harald Pulchricomus* King of *Norway*, which occasioned several persons of note to quit *Norway* and seek for a new habitation. Among these were particularly two *Nordland* Gentlemen, called *Ingulf* and *Hiorleif*, who first landed on this island in the year 870; and about four years after returned and settled here, together with their families and dependants: And the places where these two families fixed their habitations still retain the names of their first proprietors. *Ingulf* found the country quite a desolate waste, and full of thick woods and forests, but not without some marks of its having been frequented by men before that time.

About the middle of the tenth century, or very soon after that period, the light of the Gospel began to dawn on this island; but it was not till half a century after, namely, the year 1000, that proper measures were taken here for the public establishment of the Christian Religion. In the year 1057, the cathedral church at *Skaalbolt* was built by *Islef*, the first Bishop of that See, together with a public school. In the year 1106, *Hoolum* was erected into an episcopal See, where a cathedral and a school were also built. The *Icelanders* had been under an Aristocratical government for about three hundred and eighty-seven years; but in the year 1261, they voluntarily made an offer of their island to *Haquin* king of *Norway*, and continued loyal subjects to the kings of *Norway* his successors, till, in 1387, *Iceland*, as a part of *Norway*, devolved to the Crown of *Denmark*, to which they have remained in subjection to this day. The Reformation occasioned many tumults and insurrections from the year 1539 to the year 1551, when it was happily established in *Iceland*. In the year 1627, some *Algerine* pirates surpris'd the island, and, after having committed the most shocking cruelties and barbarities, carried off two hundred and forty-two men as slaves. In 1687, other *Turkish* pirates also landed here, and committed great ravages and devastations.

§. 18. The secular government of this island is lodged in the *Stiftamtman* or General-Governor of *Iceland* and *Faroe*, who usually resides at *Copenhagen*, and deposes under him an *Amtman* or Prefect who lives in the King's palace at *Bessfader*. Here is also a *Landvogt* or Collector on this island who levies all the King's revenues, for which he passes his accounts with the *Rent-Chamber* or Treasury. The *Landvogt* formerly used to live

\* About eighteen shillings sterling.



in apartments at *Bessfader* ; but he now resides in *Widoe-kloster*. The revenues of *Iceland* arise,

1. From the farms of the ports or harbours, which amount yearly to something above 16,000 rix-dollars.
2. From the taxes and tithes, which according to the custom of the country are accounted for in *Fishes*, and farmed to private persons.
3. From the farmers of the sequestered convents and crown-lands.
4. From the King's boats.
5. The hundred and thirty-eight ells and a half of *Wadmal* or *Iceland* cloth, and eight hundred and ninety-two pairs of stockings to be delivered in annually by every *Syffel* ; and likewise a hundred and seventy-two pounds of fish payable by some *Syffels*.

Here are two *Laug-manner* or Superior Judges, one of whom presides over the South and East-Quarters, and the other over the North and West-Quarters of this island. Each of these has usually under him a deputy *Laugmann* or inferior judge. Lastly, here are one-and-twenty *Syffelmanner*, who are a kind of inferior officers like the *Hardes-vogtey* in *Denmark*, and also levy the King's revenues as they are farmed in their respective *Syffels*, or Districts. There are eighteen *Syffels* or Districts in *Iceland* ; and as the *Syffels* of *Mule* and *Skaftefeld* in the eastern part of the island are larger than the rest, each of them has two *Syffelmanner* : There is also another *Syffelmann* on the *Westman* islands. Every *Syffelmann* holds several Courts of Judicature, to which belong certain Districts. An appeal lies from these to the *Laugericht* or Provincial Court, which is held yearly at *Oexeraae*, and begins on the eighth day of *July*. Every *Laugman* or Superior Judge determines the causes belonging to his District, and has eight *Laugericht-manner* for his assistants. The Supreme Court on this island is also held at the same time and place, in which the *Amtmann* or Prefect assisted by twelve *Laugemanner* sits as president. If the cause amount to a certain sum specified by the laws of *Norway*, an appeal lies from this Court to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

§. 19. For the regulation of ecclesiastical affairs, here is, first, the Provoft-Court, consisting of the Provoft and two assistants. The next is the Consistory, which is also held at *Oexeraae* for the Diocese of *Skaalbolt* at the same time with the Civil Courts. In this Consistory the *Amtmann* or Prefect as the representative of the *Stift-amtman* or Governor, sits as president ; the Provofts and Ministers, and even the Bishop himself, being only assistants. In the Diocese of *Hoolum* the Consistory is held in autumn at a feat called *Flige Myre*, where the *Amtmann* or Prefect deposes another to represent him as President. From the Consistory an appeal lies to the Supreme Court at *Copenhagen*.

§. 20. The capital punishments inflicted on male criminals in *Iceland* are, beheading with an ax, and hanging to a wooden beam fixt in the cleft  
of

of a rock; but females who have forfeited their life to justice are first put in a sack and then drowned.

§. 21. Before I proceed to give a particular account of the four Quarters and remarkable places of this island, I shall add the following general observations concerning the nature of the soil, and the inhabitants. The middle of the island is not inhabited; the people living in the vallies, which lead to the lakes and extend themselves on each side of them. These vallies near the mountains are four or five *Norway* miles broad; and are properly the *Syffels*, to which other small vallies among the mountains where good pastures are found, also belong. From the mountains several brooks and rivers, in which are excellent fish, run into the vallies.

Of these rivers the most remarkable in the North-Quarter are

The *Hruuta-fiardar-aa*, which runs into the sea in the North-Quarter, and separates it from the West-Quarter.

The *Blandaa* in *Hunavatns-Syffel*, which is one of the milky rivers, as they are called from the chalky particles with which they are impregnated.

*Hierads-Votn* in *Skagafiardar-Syffel*: This is the largest river in this Quarter, and petrifies wood when steeped in it for some time.

The *Jokulfsaa i Axarfirdi*.

The *Laxaa*.

The *Skiaalfandafliot*, and

The *Hinoost-aa*.

In the East-Quarter are the following rivers.

The *Lagarfliort*, a large river which empties itself into the sea in this Quarter. This river is much talked of for a prodigious sea-serpent, of which, according to many fabulous stories, it was formerly the haunt.

The *Jokulfsaa a Breydamerkur-sande*, over which there is a bridge of a prodigious height, built from one rock to another.

The *Jokulfsaa* in *Loone*.

The *Hornaafiardarfliot*, which at the mouth of it is a *Norway* mile and a half in breadth, and *Jokulfsaa a Soolbeimasande*, which divides the East from the South-Quarter. These rivers emit fetid sulphureous vapours, which may be smelled at the distance of a *Norway* mile.

In the South-Quarter the following rivers empty themselves into the sea.

The *Markfliot*.

The *Tbioorsaa*.

Two rivers called *Huitaa*, which are both milky rivers, as they are called.

In the West-Quarter the only river of note is the *Kalldaloon*.

The number of inhabitants in *Iceland* is, according to an authentic computation, about fifty thousand. There are no towns, properly so called, on



this island: However, the houses of the *Iceland* Company at the two-and-twenty ports or harbours, and of which there are three or four at each harbour, are dignified with the appellation of towns; though they are only *Trading Places*, by which name we shall call them in the sequel. There are even no villages in *Iceland*; all the houses being built separate from each other. But, as many of these are composed of twenty, thirty, or sometimes fifty small dwellings, they have something of the appearance of villages. The whole island is, in every Part or Quarter, subdivided into parishes.

§. 22. *Iceland*, according to the general division, consists of four Quarters, which derive their names from the four Cardinal points towards which they lie: This division is caused by so many ridges of mountains that separate the Quarters from each other. The North-Quarter constitutes the Diocese of *Hoolum*, which contains a hundred and forty churches. The other three Quarters are included in the Diocese of *Skaalbolt*, to which belong a hundred and sixty-three churches.

I. NÖRDLENDINGA-FIORDUNG \*, [*Nordre-Fierding*,] or the NORTH-QUARTER, consists of four *Syffels*, or Districts, which are,

1. *Humarvatns-Syffel*, containing  
*Skagestrand*, a Trading Place, and Flesh-Port; and  
*Thjüng-eyar* [*Thing-eyre*] a secularized convent.

2. *Hegranes* or *Skagafjardar-Syffel*, in which are the following places of note.

*Skaginn*, [*Skaagen*,] a noted cape, or promontory.

*Skagafjordur* or *Hofs-os*, a Trading Place, and Flesh-Port.

*Holum* or *Hoolum*, [*Hoolar*] an episcopal See, with a cathedral. A school is opened here during the winter season, which was founded by *Jonas Augmundson*, the first Bishop of this See, about the year 1106, and since improved by king *Christian III*. Here is also a printing-house, in which several good books have been printed.

*Reinnesfjæstadir*, [*Reinestad*] a sequestered Convent, which was built about the year 1298.

*Hofs-fokul*, a *Jockeler*, or mountain covered with ice and snow, situated in the middle of the island; and *Tindastool* near *Skagafjord* bay, where agates and crystals have been found.

3. *Vadla-Syffel*, [*Vodle* or *Oesfjords-Syffel*.] Remarkable places in this District are

*Flotborn*, a head of land, or promontory.

*Wodru-Vellur*, [*Modre-Velle*,] and *Munka Tweræa*, which are secularized convents.

\* The names first mentioned are the *Iceland* names of places, and those included in brackets are the *Danish* names.



*Eyafjordur*, a Trading Place, and fine Flesh-Port.

4. *Thijing-Eyar* [*Thingoe* or *Nordre Syffel*.] Places of note in this District are

*Raudignupur*, or *Rode-nefs*, a cape or promontory.

The island of *Flat-Ey*.

*Hausa-Vijks*, [*Husevigs*,] a Trading Place and Flesh-Port.

*Krabla*, a *Volcano* or burning-mountain, of which an account has been given above in §. 6.

Three other mountains, which have begun to eject fire since *Krabla*, viz.

1. *Leirbniukur*, which lies about half a *Norway* mile to the North-west of *Krabla*, and had its first eruption on the eleventh of *January* 1725.

2. *Biarnaflag*, which became a *Volcano* on the nineteenth of *April* \*.

3. *Hitzool*, which stands near *Leirbniukur*.

The lake of *My-vatn*, in Latin *Lacus tabanorum*, so called from the immense multitudes of gnats which swarm over it, lies about a *Norway* mile and a half from *Krabla*, whose *Lava* or fiery stream at the time of the eruption of that mountain ran into this lake. Its circumference is about six *Norway* miles, and extends through two parishes which are situated on its banks. In this lake is found a smooth, beautiful black stone of an uncommon hardness.

Near *Reyker-harbour* in this District are three hot springs, about thirty fathoms distant from each other. They bubble up alternately; and this ebullition generally happens in each of them about three times in a quarter of an hour. Though these wells lie in a plain, they spring from a hard stony bottom. Two of them eject the water from the interstices between the stones about an ell high; but in the bottom of the third there is a round aperture, through which, in its turn, it throws the water five or six ells in height. After this it subsides about two ells; and one may go down and take a survey of this wonderful spring during that interval. Its ebullition has three gradations. During the first, the water rises half way up the cavity; afterwards it fills to the top; and, in the last place, it shoots up to the abovementioned height. When the water is subsiding, it absorbs any light substance or a piece of wood; but at the return of the ebullition, it ejects even heavy stones that are thrown into it.

II. AUSTFIRDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Oestre-Fierding*,] or the EAST-QUARTER consists of two *Syffels* or Districts each of which has its *Syffel*man.

I. *Mula-Syffel*, which on account of its large extent is divided into the North, Middle, and South-Parts, contains the following places of note:

Cape *Laanganas*, i. e. 'The Long Cape,' near which is a very dangerous current or *vortex* in the sea.

\* I suppose in the year 1725, as above.

*Austurborn* and *Ingolshofdi*, two places so called from the first inhabitants of the island\*.

*Vopnafiordur*, [*Wapnefiord*,] *Reydarfiordur*, [*Rodeford*,] and *Berefiordur*, [*Berefiord*,] are Trading Places and Flesh-Ports.

The sequestered convent of *Skrida* [*Skreide*.]

The hot Baths in the valley of *Rafnkelf-dalur*.

The island of *Pap-Ey*, which is inhabited.

2. *Skaptafells* [*Skafta* or *Skaftesfields*] *Syffel* is divided into East and West *Skaptafell-Syffel*, and contains the following places of note:

A cape or promontory called *Westre-born*.

The *Jockeler* or snowy mountains of *Knava Felle*, *Breida Merkul*, *Saptaa*, *Skideraa*, *Ocraife*, and *Kotligiaa* (the two last of which made fiery eruptions in 1721 and 1728, as was taken notice of above) and *Torva*.

The secularised convent of *Kyrkiubae*, [*Kirkebay*,] and *Thykvabae*, [*Tyckebay*.]

III. SUNNLENDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Syd-Fierding*,] or the SOUTH-QUARTER contains six *Syffels*, which are

1. *Raangaarvalla-Syffel*, [*Rangervalle-Syffel*,] in which are the *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Eya-fialla*, [*Eye-fielle*,] and the burning ice-mountain *Hekla*, which is the most famous of all the *Iceland* Volcano's. It takes up four hours to ascend from the foot of this mountain to the summit of it. On the North-west side is a vast chasm reaching from the top almost to the root of the mountain. Its eruptions happened in the following years, namely, 1104, 1157, 1222, 1300, 1341, 1362, 1389, 1558, 1636 and 1693. But the last dreadful eruption was attended with terrible devastations; the ashes flying all round this *Volcano* to the distance of thirty *Norway* miles † at least. But since that time mount *Hekla* has been free from eruptions. It was remarkable that whilst flames and ignited matter issued from one side of the mountain, the huge masses of ice and snow with which it was covered on the other were not melted, though the heat was so intense as to calcine large stones and other substances. Near mount *Hekla*, and not far from the mansion-house of *Fellsmula* is a deep lake, the bed of which is an excavated rock, wherein some aquatic animals of a very uncommon form are to be seen in clear weather.

2. *Arne-Syffel*, [*Arnne-Syffel*,] in which are,

*Skaalbolt*, an episcopal See with a cathedral and school. The latter was founded by *Iffief* the first Bishop of this Diocese in 1057; and king *Christian III.* bestowed considerable benefactions on it.

*Eyrarbacke*, [*Orebacke*,] a Fish and Flesh-Port.

*Tbing-valla-Vatn*, the largest lake in *Iceland*, being eight or nine *Norway* miles in circumference.

\* See Section 17.

† About a hundred and eighty *English* miles, *Credat Judaeus*, &c.



*Oexeraa*, which is situated on the bank of the above lake. Here the General or Provincial Court called *Al-Thing* is held. This Court was instituted so early as the year 930, and used to sit in the open air, till *Christian VI.* ordered a commodious timber building to be erected for that purpose.

In this District are also several hot Baths, among which the most famous is *Rykia-Laug* in *Laugar-dalur*, or 'The Bath-Valley.' The inhabitants of the south, east, and north parts of this island were baptized in this bath in the tenth century.

*Geyser*, a wonderful spring in the valley of *Haukadal*, but few miles from *Skaalholt*. This spring rises in a hollow rock at the foot of a mountain. According to *M. Olav's* Description of this spring, who saw it in the year 1746, it is a cavity in a rock about twenty fathoms in circumference, and three in depth. There is a small aperture at the bottom, through which the water gradually rises till it runs over the basin; then follows a terrible noise, like the discharge of small arms, which shakes the very rock. After this noise has been repeated four or five times the water, which is hot, emits a thick steam like smoke, is violently agitated, and springs up to the height of sixty fathoms, in such quantities as to form several hot rivulets on every side of the rock. The rising and violent agitation of the water ceases in six or seven minutes, and the cavity or basin becomes empty. This surprising phenomenon happens once a day, and is periodical, returning at a certain hour: But whether the agitations of this spring correspond with the tides in the neighbouring sea, has not yet been determined.

*Ingolfs-Fell*, a hill or eminence, on the top of which *Ingolf* the first inhabitant of this island, was buried.

The *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Geitland* or *Erick*.

3. *Gullbringu-Syffel*, [*Gulbringe-Syffel*,] in which the remarkable places are,

The Trading Places and Fish-Ports of *Grindavijk* [*Grindevig*,] *Baatsendar* [*Botstrand*,] *Kesla-vijk* [*Kieble-vig*,] *Hafnar-fiordur* [*Hafnesfiord*,] and *Hoolmurinn* [*Holmen*.]

The large promontory of *Reykanes*, *i. e.* 'The Reeking-Promontory,' so called from its hot Baths, *Reyk-bola-Laug* and *Reyk-bola-Hver*. In the latter all sorts of flesh are boiled in a very short space of time.

*Krusevig*, a mountain abounding in sulphur.

*Bessa-stader*, [*Basse-sted*,] the residence of the king's *Amtman* or Prefect. The Latitude of this place is sixty-four degrees six minutes. Here is a woollen manufactory with a fulling-mill belonging to it.

*Videy*, or *Vidoe*, an island on which stands a sequestered convent. The revenues of it is chiefly applied to the support of twelve poor men who are past labour. The *Landvogt*, at present, resides in this place.

4: *Kjoosar-*



4. *Kjöðsar-Syssel* [*Kjöse-Syssel*] is the smallest of all the Districts in this Quarter.

5. *Borgar-fiardar-Syssel*, [*Borge-fiords-Syssel*.] In this District are The celebrated warm Baths of *Reykollts-Laugar*, in the valley of *North-Reykiadal*, built in the thirteenth century by the famous *Iceland* Historian *Snorro Sturlason*. These Baths are well contrived, and so spacious that a hundred persons may commodiously bathe there at the same time. Near this structure lies *Sydre-Reykia-dalur*, in which is the hot Bath called *Krofs-Laug*, where, in the year of Christ 1000, the inhabitants of the western parts of *Iceland* were baptized; and from hence it had the name of *Krofs-Laug*, or the Cross-Bath.

*Westmanna-Eyar*, [*Westman-Oerne*,] a cluster of islands which constitute one *Syssel*. In the year 1627, some *Turkish* Corsairs landed here; and in 1687, they made another attempt.

IV. WESTFIRDINGA-FIORDUNG, [*Westre-Fierding*,] or the WEST-QUARTER, consists of seven *Syssels* or Districts.

1. *Myra-Syssel*. [*Myre-Syssel*.] In this District there is a vitriolic spring; and as the taste of it is something like that of beer, the inhabitants call it *Oel-keldurnar*, *i. e.* 'Beer-cellar.' This spring is not far from *Hytardal*.

2. *Hnappa-dals-Syssel*, [*Hnappedals-Syssel*.]

3. *Snafels-nefs-Syssel*, [*Sneefields-nes-Syssel*.] In this District lie The Trading Places and Fish-Ports of *Buuder* [*Budenstade*.] *Anarstapinn*, *Olafsvijk* [*Olufsvig*,] *Grund-Arfiordur* [*Grundefjord*,] and *Stykiskolmur* [*Stik-kefholm*,] which is a Flesh-Port.

The promontory or cape called *Snafelsnes*, which is twelve *Norway* miles long, and two or three, and in some places four, miles broad. On this promontory are the mountains of *Snafells*, which are covered with ice and snow, and are the highest of all the mountains in *Iceland*. In this District also stands *Helgafell*, *i. e.* 'The Sacred Mountain,' on which the ancient *Icelanders* imagined that they should enjoy all the pleasure and happiness imaginable after death. The monks who lived in the convent of *Helgafell*, which formerly stood here, were afterwards removed to the island of *Flatey*.

There is a vitriolic spring, of a beerish taste, not far from the Trading Place of *Buuder*, in this District.

4. *Dala-Syssel*, [*Dale-Syssel*,] commonly called *Breyda-fiardar-daler* from the bay of *Breydafiordur*, is the most delightful, and, indeed, the only pleasant spot in *Iceland*. The mountains here run in two parallel lines, and the vallies between them are watered by a number of little brooks and rivulets, which cause a beautiful verdure, and give them a charming appearance. There are also several islands in the bay of *Breydafiordur*.

5. *Barda-strandar-Syssel*, [*Bardestrands-Syssel*.] Remarkable places in this District are,

The Trading Places of *Patrifsjordur* or *Vatneyre*, [*Patrifsjord* or *Vatnsfeyre*,] and *Byldudalfeyre*.

The *Jockeler* or ice-mountain of *Glaama*, which is the highest on the island, except *Snafelsjoklu*.

The island of *Flatey*, with the secularized convent of *Helgafell* which formerly stood on a mountain of the same name. The *Flatey Codex*, which contains the greatest part of the Northern antiquities, derives its name from this island.

6. *Ifasiardar-Syssel*, [*Ifesfjords-Syssel*.] Places of note in this District are

The Trading Place of *Dyrafjordur* or *Thijngeyre*, [*Dyrefjord*,] which is both a Fish and Flesh-Port; and *Skutulsfjordur*, [*Skutulsfjord*,] a Port for fish, and train-oil.

*Draanga*, a *Jockeler*, or mountain covered with ice and snow.

7. *Stranda-Syssel*, [*Strande-Syssel*,] in which lies the Trading Place and train-oil Port of *Reykarfjordur*, [*Reykefjord*.]



---



---

G R E E N L A N D.

§. 1. **I**T is not yet determined to which of the four principal parts of the world *Greenland* properly belongs: But from its connexion with *Norway* from time immemorial, which will be plainly demonstrated in §. 7, and as it belongs to the king of *Denmark*, this seems the most proper place to introduce it. All the maps of this country, which are extant, are very imperfect. The best indeed is that in M. EGEDE'S *Des alten Gronlands neuen Perlustration*, or 'A New Survey of Ancient *Greenland*.' Some light may also be received from the large chart of *Greenland* delineated by *Laurens Fykes Haan*, and published by *Gerard von Keulen*; from those in *Torsaus's Gronlandia antiqua*; and *Anderfon's Account of Iceland, Greenland, and Davis's Straits*.

§. 2. *Greenland* lies about forty *Norway* miles from *Iceland*; and has by some been taken for a large island. Others, with greater probability, suppose it to be an extensive *Peninsula*, beginning in Latitude 59 degrees, 50 minutes, and extending itself on the west side beyond the 78th degree of North-Latitude. The east side of it stretches itself due North beyond the 82d degree of Latitude. The west side was first discovered in the year 1585, by *John Davis*, an *Englishman*, from whom the Straits that run between the continent of *North-America* and *Greenland* are called *Davis's Straits*. On the eastern and southern coast of *Greenland* vast flakes or islands of ice are seen, which are driven from *Spitzberg* towards the South by a very strong current. This current, according to some, is caused by two large Straits, that are said to run between the southern extremity of the main land and two islands. The most northern, or *Forbisher Straits* and island\*, lie in Latitude 63 degrees; and the most southern, or *Barnfund* in 62 degrees, or, as others place it, between 60 and 61 degrees of Latitude. But M. *Egede*, who set out on an expedition to make new discoveries in the year 1723, and sailed as far as the 60th degree of North-Latitude could not find out, nor get any intelligence of these Straits and islands; so that at least the situation of them is very uncertain. The old Description of *Greenland* makes no mention of these Straits; but only in-

\* This is called *Stats Island* in our maps, and that lying to the south of it is termed *Desolation Island*.



forms us, that the original *Nordland* colony first settled on the east side of *Greenland*, directly opposite to *Iceland*, and afterwards extended themselves towards the west side. Hence it is probable that they stopped in their progress at *Baals-Revier*, where ruins of several huts built in the northern manner, and land that was once cultivated, have been discovered; and likewise some remains even of walled houses towards the South. If ever there was such a place as *Forbisher's* † *Straits*, they must at present be so choked up with ice and snow that ships cannot possibly sail through them, as they are no longer discernible. The Straits of *Barnsfund* are so far from being passable through, as they are represented in some charts, that they do not run near so deep into the land as they seem to do in others: On the contrary, they are but shallow, and almost over-run with sea-weeds.

§. 3. The east side of *Greenland*, which is opposite to *Iceland*, is at present inaccessible, on account of the mountains and islands of ice of an astonishing height, with which the sea is covered; and consequently this part is unknown. But by sailing between these and *Iceland* several adventurers have safely arrived there; and this course the *Hollanders* have actually steered.

The west side of *Greenland* towards *Davis's Straits* is better known. The coasts on that side are defended by *Sheers*, rocks, and several large and small islands. It has also wide and deep bays which run a great way into the land, some of which are the mouths of large rivers, and others form good roads and harbours. The main land is little more than confused heaps of rocks, the summits of which are always covered with ice and snow, as are also the vallies in some places.

The climate, as far as the *Danish* colonies have penetrated, is not insupportable; but the weather is very changeable and unsettled. During the summer season, which lasts from the end of *May* to the middle of *September*, the sun shines here bright and warm; and on the main land, where there is not a cloud to be seen, the weather is very pleasant and always clear. But a cold damp fog, which intercepts the sun-beams, continually hovers over the islands, except in the month of *August*, which is the only time in the whole year when the vapours are dissipated. The rain that falls here is neither frequent nor heavy. It seldom thunders in this climate; and storms are also very rare, and of no long continuance; but the most violent gusts of wind come from the South. The winters, as far as the 64th degree of Latitude, are generally reckoned by the *Danes* and *Norwegians* pretty temperate, to which the calm and clear weather may greatly contribute. But when a north-east wind blows, which comes from the mountains that are covered with snow and ice, the cold is ex-

† The brave Admiral *Forbisher* ought to be treated with more respect by the author, and deserves at least to be credited as much as *M. Egeds*, whom he so implicitly relies upon.

tremely severe; the air being thick, and filled with clouds of icy particles which cause a most piercing frost. The snow falls in less quantities in *Greenland* than it does in *Norway*; for in the former, especially near the rivers in the inland parts, the snow is not above half an ell deep. As the weather is very calm in this climate, the ice in the bays betwixt the islands is not disturbed, but blocks them up till the end of *August*; and even in the creeks it does not begin to thaw till the close of *May*, when it is gradually washed away by the agitation of the waves. From *June* to *August* the sun is continually above the horizon; and consequently during that term they have no night here; but in winter the sun is hardly visible to the *Greenlanders*; and their day is nothing but the morning and evening twilights, which do not last above two hours. During this gloomy and disconsolate season the inhabitants of this country keep mostly in their huts, contriving beforehand to have little or nothing to do abroad. The tides generally ebb and flow here regularly, and are very strong.

§. 4. From the ancient Descriptions of *Greenland* one would conclude that the soil was once very fertile; for they inform us that it not only afforded pasturage for the cattle which were kept here, but also in some places produced excellent wheat; that very large acorns were found in the vallies; that the forests were well stocked with Rein-deer, and the lakes with fish, besides seals and whales with which the adjacent sea abounded. But all these conveniencies are now no more\*.

The soil in the vallies and plains consists of moor and turf land; and in some few spots, particularly in the south parts, in about 61 degrees of Latitude, fine grass and some good esculent herbs are observed to grow. But that part of *Greenland* that lies between the 60th and 64th degree of Latitude has the best soil; so that even cabbage and turnips thrive very well there, and the latter are remarkably sweet. There is not a tree of any kind to be seen in this country, except on the sides of a bay sixty *Norway* miles south of *Hoffnungscolonie* or *Hope Colony*; where a little coppice of birch trees grows, which are from six to nine ells high, with trunks no thicker than a man's leg †. One also meets with some shrubs dispersed here and there, as small juniper, gooseberry, and billberry-bushes, brambles, &c.

What minerals the *Greenland* mountains contain in their bowels is unknown; no trial having been hitherto made. *Amiantus*-rocks, from which considerable quantities of *Asbestos* have been hewn away, are not uncommon here. Some mountains also consist of *Weich-stein* or *Lapis*

\* The last article is still true; but whether *Greenland* ever enjoyed the other advantages here enumerated, may with great reason be questioned. I am apt to think this ancient Account, which the author quotes more than once, is no more than a fabulous description of a *Greenland* Golden-age, or perhaps some faint remembrance of the climate from which the first colony, that was driven by necessity or tyranny to this comfortless region, came.

† The measures are here a little inaccurate, as usual.



*ollarius* which is an imperfect kind of variegated marble, and serves the inhabitants to make kettles and other utensils of.

The fresh-water in *Greenland* has been highly recommended both for its salubrity and palatableness. In the country where *Forbisher's Straits* were commonly placed in the maps is a mineral spring, which the *Greenlanders* affirm to be so hot in winter, that upon throwing in a large lump of ice it is immediately dissolved. The taste of this water is said to be very pungent, and it smells very strong.

On the main land are found some hares; but these animals are very small, and are gray in summer, and milk white in winter. Here is also a small species of deer, which the *Norwegians* call *Reens-dyr*; but these are quite different from the *Lapland* Rein-deer. The foxes are white, brown, or gray; but are small and without any hair. White bears are sometimes found here; but the *Greenlanders* are very daring and active in destroying them. These also differ from the bears of either countries, their heads being longish like that of a wolf; and, indeed, they resemble that animal very much in their outward make and shape. The only domestic creatures found here are dogs, who never bark, but snarl and howl: They are also timorous, and quite unfit for the chase; however, if not tamed when young, they become wild, and very mischievous. The *Greenlanders* kill these dogs, and eat them; and often use them to draw their sledges, instead of horses. Snakes or any venomous creatures cannot live in this climate.

The land-fowl in this country are the *Ryper*, which builds its nest very high in the clefts of the rocks, sparrows, ravens, eagles, and falcons. All kinds of shore and sea-fowl known in *Norway* are seen here in amazing numbers. The flies or gnats which swarm in *Greenland* are extremely troublesome.

The rivers afford plenty of trout, cray-fish, and salmon. The sea yields an inexhaustible variety of all kinds of fish, except oysters; but it abounds with exquisite muscles and very large prawns or shrimps. The smaller species of fish are dried here for the winter store, especially the *Lodden*, a sort of small herring; but it does not stink like the *Norway Lodde*. Here is also great plenty of cod, haddock, thornbacks and the *Holybutt*\*, which is so large a fish that it fills a large cask.

§. 5. The *Greenland* sea, and other parts of the *Northern Ocean* which lie under the North-Pole are full of the large or cetaceous species of fish, where incredible numbers of them swim in vast shoals. Here the great Creator, out of his exuberant goodness and bounty, has dealt out their food with a liberal hand; and of all climates this is the best adapted to their hot constitutions, and enormous bodies which are, as it were inclosed in fat.

\* This fish is by some called the Turbot of the North.



The cetaceous species differ extremely from other kinds of fish, having nothing in common with them but the outward form; for in every particular they resemble land-animals as to their internal parts. They breathe with lungs, and consequently cannot remain long under water. They also copulate like quadrupeds, bring forth their young alive, and suckle them with their milk. As the fins of other fish consist of bones or cartilages fastened together by thin membranes running between them; so the whale has articular bones like the fingers of a human hand with their proper ligaments, which are covered with a thick skin like that of the other part of its body, and are distinguished by the name of fins. By means of this mechanism the whale can move and turn about their huge unweildy bodies with greater ease than they could with fins of the common make, and secure themselves from falling precipitately upon the rocks when they dive to the bottom of the sea; for which end they lay their thick tail horizontally on the surface of the water, which is of great service to them in this motion. There are several kinds of whales. In the first place, they may be divided into such as have apertures in the head, and such as have nostrils, for respiration. Some of the former have two holes or apertures; as the Whale properly so called, the Fin-fish, &c. Others have only one; as the *Cachelotte*. But those that respire through the nostrils are seldom to be met with. The Whale species may also very naturally, and from observation, be divided into those which have plain, and those with gibbous or prominent backs. The Whale, properly so called, and the *Nordcapcr* are of the former kind. Among those with protuberant backs are,

1. Such as have a fin, as the Fin-fish, and the *Jupiter*.
2. Such as have one or more *gibbi* or protuberances on the back; as the sword-fish, the *American Plug-fish*, &c.

Some Whales have *spicula* in their jaws, as those of *Greenland*, the *Nordcapcr*, the Fin-fish, &c. Others have teeth; and of these some have only one tooth, as the *Unicornu marinum* or Unicorn-fish, and others have several teeth.

Of the spiculated kind with a flat back, the chief is the real *Greenland* Whale, which is thick and unweildy; and its head takes up one third part of its bulk. This kind are from sixty to seventy feet in length; the fins on their sides from five to eight feet; and the tail, which is in an horizontal position, or bent a little upwards on both sides, is from three to four fathoms broad. When the Whale is in danger, he turns himself upon his side and brandishes his tail, which it is very dangerous to approach. The skin on the back of the Whale is black and smooth, but variegated or marbled in some places; and that on its belly is white. The tail serves him for an oar with which he rows himself forward with surprising swiftness. Next to the skin, which is not thicker than strong writing-paper or thin parchment, is the sward or rind, which is near an inch thick; and between

this and the flesh lies the fat to the thickness of nine, and sometimes twelve, inches. Under the fat is the flesh, which is dry and very red. In its upper jaw on both sides are the *spicula*, or the whale-bone, as it is called, which serve him for teeth; and the largest of these, which are placed in the middle, are seven or eight feet in length, and sometimes more. On each side are generally two hundred and fifty of these *spicula*; so that they amount to five hundred in all. The tongue is very fat, and so large that it fills several casks. The eyes of the Whale, which are not larger than those of an ox, are in the hind part of the head, where it is broadest; and are defended by eye-lids and eye-brows. This fish is very quick of hearing, though it has no external ears; only there is a black spot under the upper skin behind the eye, and under that spot a narrow duct, which seems to convey the sound to the *tympanum* or drum. The *penis* of the male is six feet in length, and seven or eight inches in diameter in the thickest part, but not above one inch near the body, into which it is generally drawn up. The *pudenda* of the female resemble those of quadrupeds, but are generally contracted together; and near the aperture on each side hangs a dug or teat. They generally bring forth but one at a birth; and sometimes, though but seldom, they have two young ones. Their milk is like that of a cow. Their usual food is a small, black, round insect, about the bigness of a pea, or horse-bean; of these insects the Whale sucks prodigious swarms with his vast mouth, and afterwards grinds them with his *spicula*.

The *Nordcaper*, a kind of Whale so called from the vast numbers of them seen about the *Nordcap* or North-Cape in *Norway*, is much slenderer and smaller than the Whale properly so called.

The *Cachellotte* is famous on account of the *Sperma Ceti* and Ambergris it yields. The head makes near half the bulk of the fish, and, in shape, is not unlike the butt end of a musket. As to the inward texture of the head, it has several cavities wherein is lodged the brain-oil, of which *Sperma Ceti* is made. The Ambergris is found in spherical balls from three to twelve inches in diameter, in an oval purse or bladder, which is three or four feet in length and two or three in breadth, and lies directly over the testicles of the fish.

The *See-bunde*, *Canis marinus*, or Dog-fish is the most serviceable of all animals to the *Greenlanders*. For its flesh serves them for food, and its skin for cloathing, to make boats with, &c. Of its entrails and membranes they also make windows and sails; its ligaments serve for thread and cords; and of the bones are made all kinds of domestic utensils and implements of hunting.

§. 6. The *Greenlanders* of both sexes are generally short, or under the common size, but well proportioned, fat, and plump. Their faces are something flat; their hair black and lank; and their complexion, from their



their sordid manner of living, is of a brownish red. It is very seldom that they are afflicted with epidemical diseases; being strangers to the small-pox, &c. But the scurvy is the reigning distemper in this country; and their common remedy on this occasion, besides some other simples, is scurvy-grafs. They have neither surgeon nor physician among them; but are apt to rely on certain imposters called *Argekoken*, who pretend to foretell future events, and to be skilled in Magic and Physic. Extraordinary instances of longevity are not wanting among the *Greenlanders*; and possibly they would be more frequent, did not their manner of life daily expose them to numberless dangers and fatigues.

Their language has something very singular in it, and is difficult to be learned; but at the same time it is said to have many elegant phrases and expressions, and not to be so harsh and uncouth as one would imagine. Concerning this particular the reader may consult WOLDIKEN's *Melitema de linguæ Grælandicæ origine, ejusque à cæteris linguis differentia*, in the second volume of the *Scripta Societatis Hafniensis*, or 'Transactions of the Royal Society, or Academy of Sciences, at *Copenhagen*'. M. Paul Egede has published a Dictionary of the *Greenland Language*, entitled *Dictionarium Gronlandico-Danico-Latinum*; and for the instruction of the *Greenlanders*, the Gospels of the four Evangelists, and several small tracts have been translated into their language, and printed at *Copenhagen*. The *Greenland* dialect is mostly the same throughout the whole country, excepting some little difference in the pronunciation. The women have also a particular manner of pronouncing their words, which generally terminate in an *n*. The *Greenlanders* in their own language call themselves *Immuk*.

Their cloathing is made of the skins of Rein-deer, the dog-fish, and of certain birds, sewed together with the small guts of the *Canis marinus*. There is very little difference in the dress of the two sexes; and both of them live in a very sordid filthy manner.

They have two sorts of habitations, one of which serves for the winter, and the other for the summer season. The winter dwellings are the largest; and it is generally the womens task to build them up against winter, or when they intend to make a long stay in any particular place. These are of a square form, and built with pebbles, or small fragments of the rocks, and their interstices are filled up with moss, or peat. These huts are very seldom more than two ells above the surface of the ground; the rest of them being, for greater stability and defence from the wind and cold, sunk into the earth. The roof is covered with turf; and the entrance into them is dug narrow, and winding under ground. One of these dwellings seldom exceeds twenty feet square; and yet is often occupied by seven or eight families. These habitations are so warm that both men and women are generally stript to the waist whilst they remain in them; but the stench occasioned by the close confinement of so many persons together is intolerable.



The *Greenlanders* betake themselves to these winter mansions in the month of *October*, and continue in them till the beginning of *May*. Their summer habitations are light tents made of the smooth skins of the dog-fish.

In their marriages, the chief qualifications required in the bride are skill in domestic affairs, and especially in cutting out and sewing their garments: And nothing recommends a suitor more than boldness, activity, and success in fishing and hunting. At the marriage festivities the bride is sure always to put on a shew of gravity, and an air of sullen melancholy. Relations never inter-marry amongst them; and they carry this humour so far as to abstain from it even to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. In general every *Greenlander* has but one wife. They have a respectful idea of marriage; yet is it not held so sacred among them, but that sometimes a man puts away his wife very abruptly. They are fond of their children even to a culpable excess; so that instead of moderate correction, or checking them for their faults, they let them do whatever they please. They usually eat when they are hungry; but their chief meal is at night. Their common food is the flesh of rein-deer and hares; all kinds of land and water-fowl; the dog-fish, and other sorts of fresh-water and sea-fish, and even some parts of the whale; and particularly the *Lodder*, a small kind of herring\*. Their manner of dressing and eating their victuals is extremely disgusting. They prefer the blood of the dog-fish to any other beverage; but their usual drink is water: However, they can drink a great deal of brandy without being intoxicated.

The occupation of the men is chiefly fishing and hunting, for which they have very curious tackle. The boats, in which the men only row out to sea, are about three fathoms long, and but three quarters of an ell broad† about the middle: they also end in a very sharp point at both extremities. They are made of very thin, narrow boards fastened together with whale-bone and covered with seal-skins. Only one man goes out in one of these boats, who is half covered, and so securely laced in, that the water cannot penetrate into the boat; and thus equipped he will row ten or twelve *Norway* miles ‡ in a day, though he has but one oar, which is six or seven feet long and flat at both ends. These boats are easily overset, which they look upon as no great detriment if the owner comes off with his life; and many of them are extremely dextrous in recovering the boat again when such an accident happens. The larger sort of boats are commonly called *Weiberbote*, i. e. ‘the womens boats,’ as none but females row in them. They have also open *Prahmen*, or barges, which are pointed at both ends but not

\* Probably the Pilchard.

† The dimensions are something inaccurate, and would have been more intelligible had the author given them in feet and inches, which are more generally known.

‡ About sixty or seventy *English* miles, at least.

deep: they are covered with dog-fish skins and high at the extremities. These they make use of to convey their effects in their emigrations, or when they embark for the whale-fishery, and likewise in coasting from one port to another.

The *Greenlanders* are strangers to trades, arts, and sciences. They have no traffick among one another, and their commerce with foreigners is very inconsiderable. Their chief commodities are blubber and whalebone; the sea-unicorn's horn; the skins of deer, foxes, and the dog-fish; which they exchange for necessaries in cloathing and all kinds of ordinary domestic utensils. They neither use nor have any knowledge of money; but they fix a certain value on iron.

When they meet together they express their mirth by drumming, singing and dancing. They are accustomed from their very childhood to an unbounded liberty; for they live according to their own inclinations, without any controul, or the check of parents or magistrates; all of them being on a level. They have little regard to outward ceremony, politeness, or decency. They are free, open, and cheerful in conversation; and nothing pleases them better than merry jests and rallery, by which that melancholy to which they are naturally inclined is diverted. They live very sociably, and repose great confidence in each other. Amorous intrigues are seldom or never heard of among them; and as they abstain from theft, rapine, and violence among themselves, they are never known, upon any pretence, to make war on their neighbours. They think themselves greatly superior to the *Danes*, and make no scruple to pilfer any thing from them when it can be done with safety. But the great foible with which the *Greenlanders*, and especially the women, are taxed with, is an invincible obstinacy and inflexibility. They are so unhappily ignorant in matters of religion, that they are said to have no idea of a God\*; insomuch that their language has not an expression to denote a Supreme Being. They imagine that as soon as a person dies, his soul goes to Heaven, and there enjoys the diversion of hunting from age to age, while the body remains behind and moulders away in the earth.

§. 7. The history of *Greenland* is not unworthy of notice. The *Aborigines* or original inhabitants, who on the arrival of the *Norwegians* in this country were savages, seem, by the little knowledge the latter had of them, to be of *American* extraction. The first that gave occasion to the discovery of this land was one *Gumbiorn*, a sea-faring person, who, after *Iceland* had been discovered, sailed further; and came to an island, to which he gave

\* As the *Greenlanders* have a notion of the separate existence of the soul, after death, in a state of supreme felicity, which they term 'hunting in Heaven;' it is reasonable to suppose that the *Danes* misrepresent them with regard to their idea of a God, &c. This is the more probable, as the *Greenlanders* have such a contempt for the *Danes*; and no doubt but the latter return it with aversion.



the name of *Gunbiorn's* rock or *Gunbiarnarsker*. He also discovered other land lying to the north of it; but did not attempt to sail thither. As soon as this discovery was known, *Erick*, a *Norwegian*, surnamed *Rotbkopf*, or 'Red-head,' whose father, *Torwald*, had been obliged to fly to *Iceland* on account of a murder he had committed in *Norway*, took it into his head to go in search of that unknown land. The motives that induced him to undertake this expedition, were the ill treatment he met with in *Iceland*, and the three years exile to which he had been condemned. In the year of Christ, 981, or 982, he set sail from *Snafelsnes* on the west side of *Iceland*; and steering a direct course, he discovered one of the *Greenland* mountains, which, at present, is called *Blaserk*. From thence he sailed towards the South, and landing on an island, he spent the first winter there, and called it by his own name. In the two following years he gave names to several places; and in the third summer, the time of his banishment according to the sentence being expired, this adventurer returned to *Iceland*. Some years after, he made another voyage to this country; and, from its fine verdant pastures and trees, gave it the name of *Groenland* or *Greenland*, and founded the village *Brattalid* on *Ericksfiord* bay, where he settled. At *Erick's* persuasion several *Icelanders*, from time to time, emigrated thither from their native country. Fourteen or fifteen years after *Erick* had settled in *Greenland*, *Leif*, his son, sailed from thence to *Norway* and acquainted king *Olaf Truggesen* with his father's discovery and settlement. The King having caused him to be instructed in the Christian Religion, ordered him to be baptized, and sent him back with a priest and several Ecclesiastics. *Leif* arrived in *Greenland* in the year 1000, and made his father a convert to Christianity, whose example was followed by all the other *Greenlanders* \*. In the year 1023, the *Greenlanders* became tributary to *Olaf* king of *Norway*; and in 1024, *Arnald* the first Bishop of *Greenland* was consecrated at *Lund* in *Sweden*. After this, the inhabitants of *Greenland* increasing in number, the colony was divided into the *East* and *West-Greenland*. *Erick* built the town of *Garde* in *East-Greenland*, whither the *Norwegians* resorted once a year to traffick with the colonies. Some time after, the town of *Albe* and the convent of *St. Thomas* were also founded. *Garde* was the episcopal See, and had a cathedral dedicated to *St. Nicholas*; besides which, there were two convents, twelve churches, and an hundred and ninety farm-houses in this eastern Division. On the western side, called *West-Greenland*, were four churches and an hundred and ten farm-houses. The kings of *Norway* also used from time to time to send *Stadthalters* or Governors to *Greenland*. In the year 1256, the *Greenlanders* revolted against *Magnus* king of *Norway*; but in 1261, by the assistance of *Erick* king of *Denmark*,

\* I suppose the author means the *Norwegian* colony settled in *Greenland*.



they were reduced to his obedience. In 1348, the black plague having swept away the greatest part of the *Norwegians*, the intercourse between *Norway* and *Greenland* was suspended. The last Bishop sent thither from *Norway* was one *Andreas* who sailed for *Greenland* in the year 1406. But no account was received of him till about 1540, when the colony there was found to be still existing. In the subsequent time *Greenland* was in a manner quite forgotten.

In the reign of king *Christian II. Walkendorf*, Archbishop of *Drontheim*, exerted himself in attempting to restore the communication between the two countries; but met with too many obstacles, to carry his point. *Christian III.* sent a party of men to *Greenland*; but these returned with the trifling excuse, that they had not been able to find it.

*Frederick II.* in 1578, dispatched one *Magus Henningsen* in quest of *Greenland*; who, indeed, got sight of the land at a distance; but the ice prevented his nearer approach.

In the year 1576, *Martin Forbisher* sailed from *England* to *Greenland*; but as the season was far advanced, he was also prevented from landing by the ice. However, by *Queen Elizabeth's* command, he made a second voyage the following year, when he landed in *Greenland*.

King *Christian IV.* sent out three ships in the year 1605, under the command of *Godsche Lindenow* who trafficked with the *Greenlanders*, and brought five of them to *Denmark*. In 1606, the same monarch sent five ships thither; and soon after, dispatched two vessels more of a considerable burden on a third expedition. That great Prince in the year 1616, sent Captain *Munk* with two ships to *Hudson's Straits*, in order to discover the North-west Passage; and it was that officer that gave the name of *Cape-Farewel* to the most southern point of *Greenland*, because he took his leave, as it were, of the old world at that Cape.

The King having relinquished this undertaking, several merchants of *Copenhagen* set up a *Greenland Company*; and, in the year 1636, sent out two ships, which came to an anchor in *Davis's Straits* and traded with the *Greenlanders*. One of these vessels returned with a cargo of gold-sand: But as all the skill of the *Copenhagen* goldsmiths could not extract any gold from it, the Lord High Steward, who was president of the *Greenland Company*, ordered the whole cargo to be thrown overboard. This hasty procedure is supposed to have given him some uneasiness, when a kind of sand resembling that which had been brought from *Greenland* and thrown into the sea, was found in *Norway*, which yielded very fine gold.

In the year 1654, a ship again sailed for *Greenland*, and another was dispatched in 1670. From that time the *Danes* gave themselves no farther concern about *Greenland*. The old passage from *Iceland* to *East-Greenland* was supposed to be stopped up by the floats of ice; and to this day

day there has been no farther account of the eastern part of *Greenland*, which is a hundred and fifty *Norway* miles distant from the *Danish* colony settled there. However, it does not appear that it is quite uninhabited at present. There is an old tradition handed about in this country, signifying that the inhabitants of the western coast of *Greenland*, being surpris'd by a clan of savages called *Skrellingers*, and their whole country laid waste, the inhabitants of *East-Greenland* marched to their assistance, when they found the country quite destitute of inhabitants, only the cattle and flocks of sheep being left behind; and that having killed a sufficient number of oxen, &c. they carried the carcases away in their ships. It appears by this account that the inhabitants of the eastern part of *Greenland* were in Being since the extirpation of those on the western coast. After this, the west side of the country, to which one sails through *Davis's Straits*, was called *New Greenland*, in order to distinguish it from *Old Greenland*, inhabited formerly by a *Norwegian* colony; and these Straits are still frequented by the *Hollanders*, who have in a manner engrossed the Whale-fishery, and likewise the traffick with the savages on this side, entirely to themselves.

§. 8. Thus stood the affairs of *Greenland*, till *Hans Egede* Minister of *Vogen* in *Norway*, prompted by a laudable zeal to promote the knowledge of Christ among the savage *Greenlanders*, made some proposals for renewing the intercourse between *Denmark* and *Norway*, and *Greenland*, which had been discontinued for some centuries. Most of the friends and acquaintance of this worthy Divine, when they heard of his project, looked upon it as a chimerical undertaking. However, in the year 1718, he resigned his benefice in the south part of *Norway*, and removed with his wife and children to *Bergen*. His proposals did not meet with a favourable reception either from the merchants or clergy of that city. He therefore went to *Copenhagen* in 1719, and laid his plan before the King; who sent an order to the Magistracy of *Bergen* to propose to the citizens the erecting of a *Greenland* Company. This, after many difficulties, was at last effected in the year 1721; and a capital of ten thousand six-dollars was raised for that purpose. The new established Company fitted out three ships for *Greenland*; and the indefatigable *Egede* was sent thither as missionary, and furnished with three hundred guilders by the Society for propagating the Gospel, at *Copenhagen*. It was not without great danger and difficulty that the single ship which had the Missionary on board at length arrived off a place called *Baals-Revier* on the west side of *Greenland*, in Latitude 64 degrees, and wintered on an island there. M. *Egede* and forty men who remained with him, immediately set about building a house, in which the savages themselves readily lent them a helping hand. This new colony was, from year to year, carefully supplied with necessaries by the Company; but the trade carried on with *Greenland* brought in no great profit. In the



## GREENLAND.

mean while the Missionary employed his time in learning the *Greenland* language; and by his liberality and sweetness of manners so endeared himself to the inhabitants, that the respect they shewed him in some particulars far exceeded his wishes. For they entertained such an exalted idea of his piety and virtue, that all the sick flocked about him, imploring him to heal them, being persuaded that his breathing on them would restore them to health. In the year 1723, another Missionary was appointed as an assistant to M. *Egede*. Notwithstanding the King bestowed several privileges on the Company, by allowing them a lottery, and by imposing a new tax on both kingdoms, which was called the *Greenland-Tax*; yet the proprietors despairing of reaping any great advantage from this trade, were averse from making any new contribution to increase the capital. Upon this, the King took the affair into his own hands; and in 1728, sent several ships and men with all necessaries, besides cattle, horses, &c. in order to establish a regular and lasting colony, and to build a fort for its defence. His Majesty likewise sent two preachers on board one of these ships. This new colony settled on the continent about two *Norway* miles to the east of the old colony; and some time after, *Nepisene*, another inhabited settlement, was erected farther towards the North.

- In 1731 a royal edict was published, enjoining all the king's subjects in *Greenland* to return home, and the colonies were thereby dissolved. But M. *Egede*, being zealous for the salvation of the inhabitants, staid behind, together with his family and some others who chose to follow his fortunes.

- In 1733, the *Greenland* trade was reassumed with great vigour; and the King granted a pension of two thousand rix-dollars a year to the Missionaries.

- In 1736, M. *Egede* took his leave of the *Greenlanders*, among whom he had spent fifteen years with the most indefatigable zeal and laborious application, but not without making a great number of converts, and arrived at *Copenhagen*; where he was appointed Superintendant of *Greenland*. To his sollicitation the Seminary in that city for educating able Missionaries and Catechists to be sent to *Greenland* owes its institution. The *Mission-College* also sends young lads to *Greenland* to learn the language, and to be further instructed by the Missionaries there, in order to qualify them for that station. The *Greenland* trade is, at present, carried on by the *Copenhagen* Company, who send thither three or four ships every year; and the *Dutch* are prohibited from coming within several miles of the colonies.

§. 9. The western coast of *Greenland*, as far as it is known is about three hundred *Norway* miles in length, and was called by *Forbifker*, or rather by his Mistress *Elizabeth*, Queen of *England*, *Meta Incognita*. The most remarkable places on this coast, or within *Davis's Straits*, are,



1. The *Staaten Hoek*, which is the most southern point of the main land.

2. *Cape Farewel*, which is the extreme point of an island, between which and the continent there is a Strait several miles broad.

3. *Desolation Island*.

4. The bay called *Baals-Revier*.

5. The *Danish* settlement of *Fredericks-Haab*, or *Frederick's-Hope*, situated in Latitude 62 degrees, where there is a Missionary and a congregation of *Greenlanders*.

6. The colony of *Got-Haab*, or *Good-Hope*, is now established on the main land in Latitude 64 degrees; but upon Mr. *Egede's* first coming over it was settled on an island. Here is the oldest Christian congregation in *Greenland*, and a Missionary. About half a *Norway* mile from hence lies

7. *Neu Herrenbuth*, a *Moravian* colony and congregation. This colony was first begun in 1733, by a handful of *Herenbuters* or *Moravians*; but is now grown so considerable as to equal the four *Danish* congregations. In the year 1749, a convenient place for the celebration of Divine worship was erected here.

8. The colony of *Christians-Haab*, or *Christian's-Hope*, in Latitude 69 degrees. But the Mission was settled in 1752 at *Claushavn*, four *Norway* miles to the West of *Christian-Haab*, where a Missionary resides.

9. *Jacobs-Havn* is the fourth *Danish* colony, and lies two *Norway* miles north of *Claushavn*.

10. The fishery and the whale-islands, situated in Latitude 68 and 69 degrees. Here the proper whale-fishery is established.

11. The large island of *Disco*.

12. *BAFFINS-BAY*, discovered in the year 1622, by *Baffin*, an *Englishman*. At the end of this Bay, a little beyond the 78th degree of Latitude, is *Sir THOMAS SMITH'S Sound*, which is the utmost verge hitherto frequented by the fishing vessels, and where the largest whales are taken.





---

THE  
K I N G D O M  
O F  
S W E D E N.

---



---

KIRK GORDON

SEWELL

---

A N

## INTRODUCTION

T O T H E

## DESCRIPTION of SWEDEN.

§. 1. **S**WEDEN is sometimes included in the general map of the northern Kingdoms, and is also represented in particular maps; among which that of *Andrew Buræus* is the ground-work of the later maps published by *De Wit*, and *Homann*. There are likewise maps of the several parts of *Sweden*, by the same hands, inserted in *Bleau's Atlas*. The latest, and indisputably the best maps of *Sweden*, are those published in the year 1742 by the Land-Survey-Office at *Stockholm*. To the same society we are obliged for a general map of *Sweden*, including *Finland* and *Nordland*, which was published in 1747. In this map the smaller districts of the kingdom are specified; but the greater divisions are omitted. A map of *Upland* and *Sodertorn*, of *Sudermannland*, *Nerike*, *Westmannland* and *Fierdkundra*, *Schonen*, *Malersee*, or the *Maler-lake*, with a plan of the city of *Stockholm*, and of the countries bordering on the gulf of *Finland*, were also published by the same *Landmessing-Contoir*, or Land-Survey-Office. A fine map was also published by *M. Tobias Mayer*, in the year 1751, in two sheets, for *Homann's* heirs. Hitherto the abovementioned Office has not favoured the public with particular maps of the other provinces of *Sweden*.

§. 2. Under the name of *Sweden* we include that extensive country which lies between *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Russia*, in a sort of a curve, and is bounded, for the most part, by the *Baltic* or *East-sea*. It extends

about two hundred, or two hundred and fifty *Swedish*, miles \* in length, and one hundred and thirty in breadth; and the area of it, according to a geometrical calculation, is about ten thousand square *Swedish* miles.

§. 3. The true etymology of the name *Svenge*, or *Sweden*, is not known with any certainty. It was anciently called *Swithiod* in the language of the country, which is said to be derived from one of the names of the idol *Odin*. The inhabitants of this country were called, *Swiar*, which was, I presume, a contraction of the word *Swithiar*. *Scæcia* in all probability is derived from *Swethia*; the *th* being formerly pronounced with a sibilation; so that the same word was sometimes spelt with *th*, and sometimes with a *c* only. The ancient *Sveconen* or *Suenones* also called themselves *Swenskar*; but the true etymology of the word *Swenske* is also unknown. Some imagine the word *Swen*, which signifies a young active man, or a soldier, to be derived from *Swear* or *Swiar*; and that from *Swen* the inhabitants were called *Swenskeman*, i. e. 'young and active men.'

§. 4. The climate of this country is very healthful. The winters are indeed extremely cold in *Sweden*; but the air is clear and salubrious; and the inhabitants arm themselves against it with furs, sheep-skins, &c. which they wear according to every one's ability. - In the long nights the moon, the reflection from the snow, and the clearness of the sky make it so light, that one may travel here as conveniently as in the day. In summer the days are very long and the heat intense; and the nights are luminous and exceeding pleasant. Violent storms and rains are seldom known here; and the sharp and keen northwind serves to purify and refresh the air.

§. 5. The *Swedish* coasts are encompassed with innumerable capes, islands and rocks, which they call *skiaren* or *skæers*; so that the approach to the continent is something dangerous. These derive their names from the provinces opposite to which they lie; as the *Upland-skæers*, the *Sudermannland*, the *East-Gothland*, *Bokus*, *Nordland*, and *Finland-skæers*. These islands or rocks lie very near each other, and are of different dimensions. Several thousands of them are inhabited, and the people live mostly by fishing.

The lakes in *Sweden* also contain some thousands of islands, of which the least are called *Holme*. The lakes are very numerous in this country and the largest are the following, namely, *Malar*, *Hielmar*, *Famund*, *Siljan*, *Wetter*, *Wener*, *Frygen* or *Fryken*, *Ringston*, *Stora Led*, *Storston*, *Stora Awan*, *Stora Luleo-Trask*, *Tornea-Trask*, *Knara-Trask*, *Ulea-Trask*, *Pejende* or *Pajanasee*, and *Saima*, of which an account shall be given in their proper places.

The number of rivers in *Sweden* is also very considerable; and the largest rivers or streams are in the *Swedish* language called *Elbe*. The principal of these are

\* Ten *Swedish* miles and a half are equal to a degree of the Equator; [See Table, p. 25] so that one *Swedish* is at least six *English* miles.



1. The *Motala*strom, which issues from the *Wetter*-lake, and being increased by seventeen smaller rivers, forms a waterfall or cascade from a height of sixteen feet, near *Nordkiöping*, and empties itself into the *Baltic*.

2. The *Stang*, which divides *Östgotland* or east *Gotland* into two parts.

3. The *Gotische-Elbe*, or *Gotic* river, which rises in the *Wener*-lake, falls into the North-sea near *Gottenburg*, and, about seven *Swedish* miles and a half before it reaches that city, forms a cataract or water-fall by precipitating itself from a great height.

4. The *Gullspang*, which divides *Westgotland* from *Wermeland*.

5. The *Dal-Elbe* in *Thal-Land* or the vale country, which is the largest river in *Sweden*.

In the description of the several provinces these and the other lakes and rivers, with every thing that is remarkable shall be taken notice of. Both the lakes and rivers abound in fish of several kinds, among which the principal are salmon and trout of various sorts. The best salmon are taken in *Halland*; but in the *Nordland* rivers the salmon fisheries are in a declining condition.

*Sweden* affords medicinal springs of experienced virtue, among which that of *Medewi* in *East-Gotland* is the most famous. Here also are a kind of springs called *Hunger-quellen* or dearth-springs, some of which indicate a scarcity when they run over, or at least when they do not overflow before the ground is entirely spoiled by heavy rains and melted snow; and when other *Hunger-quellen* are dried up they portend a bad crop, as the necessary consequence of a long drought or want of rain.

§. 6. *Sweden*, though it be a very mountainous country, affords a great many tracts of even ground which are fit for agriculture. The soil is in general sandy, swampy, or ferruginous; but at the same time is not void of fertility. Of all the divisions in this Kingdom *Gotland* produces the greatest quantity of grain, as wheat, rye, barley, oats, pease, &c. but every part of *Gotland* is not equally fertile in corn. *Sweden* also affords good pastures, and some orchards which yield very fine fruit; but is more famous for mines in general, than for the fertility or produce of the soil. There is less arable land in the provinces of *Thal-Lande* than in the other provinces of the Kingdom, some of which, besides tracts of fertile soil fit for tillage, have also good meadow grounds and pasturage. The *Nordlands* being full of rocks and mountains produce but little corn: However those provinces contain some fertile spots for grazing. *Lapland* yields still less grain than *Nordland*; but *Finland* is in most places very fertile, though it is hitherto far from being properly cultivated. The corn, in the short but hot summers of this climate, ripens very soon; but is so far from being sufficient for the subsistence of the inhabitants, that several hundred thousand tuns, or quarters, of corn are annually imported from abroad; particularly

near four hundred and fifty thousand tuns from *Livonia*, *Pomerania*, and *Wisnar*.

Those among the *Swedes* who have the welfare of their country at heart, are at present strenuously promoting several good schemes for the encouragement of agriculture and manufactures. And if the success be answerable to the present favourable appearances, the produce of the country will commodiously support some millions of inhabitants more than it does at present and that in greater plenty and affluence.

The King, in the year 1752, granted to the new society for the improvement of Agriculture a great deal of waste land for forty or fifty years, rent-free and exempted them from taxes and imposts. Hitherto considerable advantages have been made of the *Swedje-Land*, as it is called, which name denotes such spots of land as are cleared in a forest, by cutting down the trees, and then burning them, and strewing the ashes on the ground before it is sown. This sort of ground yields a great crop of corn, for three years after it is dressed with the above manure. However, this method of burning the soil with hot ashes is accounted very detrimental, as no grass nor wood will grow afterwards on the spot; especially if the ground be hilly and poor.

The inhabitants of the north parts of *Sweden* eat a sort of bread made of the bark of birch and pine-trees, straw, and roots. The *Hacke-brod* or *Stampe-brod* is very common in the north, and is sometimes used in the south parts in time of scarcity: It is made of the ears of corn cut from the stems and minced small, and afterwards dried and ground. On this sort of meal they pour boiling water and mix it with leven and corn-meal, where it is to be had. In spring they also take the bark of firs, as then it comes easiest off the trees; but not the thick bark next to the wood. Having pared off the outward coarse knots, &c. it is dried in an oven, or held over a wood-fire, till both sides become brown, swell, and undergo a kind of fermentation, so that the resin be consumed. These pieces of bark, being thus thoroughly dried, are ground, and then bread is made of the meal. But the dough is not to be kneaded so much as that intended for *Misse-brod*. The plant *Missne*, called in Latin *Calla folcis cordatis*, and by the *Finns*, *Wekka* is gathered in the spring in the morasses. After it is dried in the sun, it is baked in an oven, or half dried in a warm bathing room, while it is sprinkled with bath-water. After this it is put into the oven a second time, and dried till the leaves fall off, and the outward tegument detaches itself at the knots from the stem: Then the stems are chopped small in a trough, and ground, and the meal is sifted. When dough is to be made of it, they pour hot water on the meal, and, to give the bread a more agreeable flavour, add some brandy- lees to it. Afterwards the dough is kneaded with great labour, till it comes to be very tough, and as it were stringy; and then a third part of corn-meal is mixed along with it.

§. 7. The south parts of *Sweden* produce tolerable good fruit and esculent vegetables: but towards the north these gradually become more scarce, and degenerate in flavour and goodness; so that no such herbs are to be found in the most northern parts of the Kingdom. *Finland*, however, produces excellent turnips. Flax, hemp, and tobacco are also cultivated here to great advantage. The extensive woods and forests in *Sweden* become thinner, and daily decline; which is no more than the natural consequence of the immense consumption of wood in making charcoal, pot-ash, tar, pitch, manuring the land, &c. Oaks, in particular, are very scarce here.

The inhabitants in several parts of *Sweden* subsist by grazing; but here, as I have observed in all the northern countries, the cattle are small, and the wool of the sheep is very coarse; so that in order to mend the breed of the latter, rams are imported from *Spain*, and *England*. The horses are hardy, strong, and vigorous. Of the various advantages they reap from their rein-deer, I shall give a particular account in my description of *Lapland*. This Kingdom affords plenty of deer of all kinds, hares, elks, and all sorts of tame and wild fowl; and some parts of *Sweden* are too much infested with bears, wolves, foxes, linxes, otters, martens, and weasles.

§. 8. *Sweden* abounds in every species of the three Natural Kingdoms; especially those of the fossile or mineral kind; as crystals, amethysts, topazes, porphyry, *lapis lazuli*, agate, cornelian, a reddish stone called *Violstein*, a greenish semi-pellucid stone, *Asbestos*, coral, load-stone, touch-stone, sandy or free-stone, mill-stones, stucco-stones, slate, lime-stones, beautiful petrefactions, with coarse and white marble. Two *Swedish* miles and a half from *Nordkiöping*, in the forest of *Koolmole*, or as others call it, *Kalmalden*, are large and deep quarries of excellent white marble, of an extraordinary hardness, with beautiful green veins, which are sometimes of a dark, and sometimes of a bright vivid green, finely interwoven together. Of this marble Mr. *J. H. Sivers* in his 'Short account of *Swedish* marble,' printed in two sheets in quarto at *Nuremberg*, has given a particular description. *Marienglas*, called *Muscovy* glass or ising-glass, a rhomboidal spar, *Spathum viride montanum*, less properly called gold-solder, and *Spathum cœruleum montanum*, red, green, and blue fossile colours, vitriol, *Lac montanum* or an argentine white earth, mercury, *Amianthus*, lead-ore, ceruse, cobalt, alum, fullers-earth, *petroleum*, sulphur, mother of pearl, &c. are also dug up in *Sweden*. Many pearls of great value have been found in the pearl-fisheries of *Finland*. In *Smoland* and the *Lebn* or hief of *Bobus* salt is boiled from the sea-water, but not in sufficient quantities to supply the country.

§. 9. The great wealth of *Sweden* arises from its mines and metals.

Some Gold-ore has been discovered in *Smoland*.

The largest Silver-mine is near *Sala*. There are others at *Hellefors*, *St orbaar* and *Skishytte* in *Thal-Lande*; *Norrefors* in *East-Gothland*; *Brattfors* in *Warmeland*, where pure silver is dug up; at *Gisseby* in *Schonen*, and in several



## INTRODUCTION TO

several parts of *Lapland*. These mines are not equally rich; and in some of them the expectation of future profits is greater than what they yield at present.

The number of the copper-mines, hammering-mills, and smelting-houses is very considerable; and the richest mines of this sort are at *Falun*, in which pure copper has been formerly found; but such veins are no longer to be met with.

Iron-ore is here in such plenty, that it generally shews itself on the surface of the earth: It is also remarkable for its richness; especially the *Oeregrund* iron-ore. The produce of the iron-mines constitutes two thirds of the national revenues. The number of forges, hammering-mills, and smelting-houses in *Sweden* is about four hundred and fifty. The best iron-mines are in *Upland*: But *Westmannland* carries on the greatest trade in iron.

Lead is also dug up in *Sweden* in vast quantities; and most of the hammering-mills and mines are in the province of *Sweden*, properly so called.

The flourishing state of the *Swedish* mines will best appear from an account of their produce for a certain number of years.

1. The gold-mine, from the year 1741 to 1747 \*, produced two thousand three hundred and ninety-eight gold-ducats †.

2. The produce of the silver-mine at *Sala*, from the year 1743 to 1747, was eight thousand seven hundred *Lothige* marks ‡, two ounces and a half; and that of *Adolphus Frederick's* mine, from the year 1742 to 1747, was about one hundred and eighty-six marks five ounces. That of the *North*-mine, in some years, amounts to forty-five marks. *Lofab's* mine, from the year 1744 to 1747, produced about twenty-two or twenty-three marks. Near *Hellefors* several *Lothige* marks of silver are annually refined. The north *Christilirs*, *Mellem*, *Tirapen*, and *Silberbytta* mines are two veins of ore called *Malmen*, and contain generally from sixty to seventy pounds of lead in every hundred weight of ore; and the hundred weight of lead yields commonly from one to two, frequently from three to four, and sometimes from six to eight ounces of silver.

3. The produce of the copper-mines at *Talun*, from the year 1743 to 1747, was about twenty-two thousand eight hundred and seventy-nine pounds. The *New Work*, or *Liufners* mine, *Garpenbergs*, or the *Old Work*, and the copper-mines of *Ritterbutte*, *Rocker*, and *Betninge*, *Ancs* or *Insjo* and *Lofedh*, *Hakauboda*, *Liufnedal*, *Liungedal*, *Handohl*, *Gladhammar*

\* The author expresses himself very obscurely here; for it is uncertain whether he means the annual produce, or that of five years taken together. Nor does he acquaint us whether it is inclusive, or exclusive of the years mentioned above.

† A gold ducat is about nine shillings and four-pence sterling.

‡ A *Lothige* mark is equal to nine ounces twelve penny-weights *Troy* weight.

and *Mortefer*, from the year 1744 to 1747, altogether produced four thousand and sixty-eight pounds of copper.

4. The iron-works yearly produce about two hundred and ninety-nine thousand five hundred and thirteen pounds of iron which are sent to the forges; and the whole quantity of iron exported in bars from *Sweden*, from the year 1738 to 1744, amounted to two millions one hundred fifty-four thousand six hundred and forty-one pounds.

§. 10. *Sweden*, in proportion to its extent, is not sufficiently peopled. Of this there is a remarkable instance in one place, which, however, is not the most northern part of the kingdom, where hardly four thousand seven hundred souls are to be found in the compass of two hundred and twenty-five *German* or geographical square miles.

Some learned *Swedes* compute the number of the inhabitants of *Sweden* and *Finland* at about three millions; reckoning eighty thousand farms, on which are one million six hundred thousand souls, (the women, children, and servants included,) to make up above half of the number of the inhabitants in the whole kingdom. Others will have the number of inhabitants to be but two millions; reckoning the continent of *Sweden* and *Finland* to be about nine or ten thousand square *Swedish* miles; of which at least four thousand are level and fertile, and of these one thousand might be annually sown. Hence they justly infer that the country might be made to produce some millions of quarters of corn more than it does at present, and consequently might afford subsistence to a far greater number of inhabitants: Whereas, at present, some parishes are so extensive, and at the same time so thinly inhabited, that a peasant must travel several *Swedish* miles to visit his next neighbour; and others contain but seventy and sometimes not so many farms, which take up a tract of land equal to the whole province of *Holland*; though perhaps such a parish has not so many wretched cottages as there are towns in that flourishing province. This consideration gave occasion to a proposal made in the last Diet, that the peasants should divide their farms, and be permitted to take a greater number of servants; that proper measures should be taken for preventing or putting a stop to the most frequent epidemical distempers; and that all parts of the kingdom should be provided with skilful midwives; these being looked upon as the most probable means for increasing the number of inhabitants in the country.

The *Swedes* are robust, hardy, and vigorous, and are enured to all kinds of fatigues and hardships, which they undergo with cheerfulness.

The common people here subsist by agriculture, working in the mines, grazing, hunting, fishing, and commerce both domestic and foreign. They traffick in the following commodities: *viz.* masts, beams, timber for building, deal boards, the bark of birch-trees, tar, pitch, pot-ash, wooden.

wooden utenfils, *bast-stricken*\*, horfes, oxen, fheep, bacon, butter, cheefe, falt, hides, flax, hemp, linen, fowls, furs or the fkins of black, blue, white and crofs foxes, ermines, bears, martens, hyenas, otters, beavers, rein-deers, &c. which are produced in the feveral provinces.

The nobility of this Kingdom are fo numerous, that the noble manors and feats in *Sweden* and *Finland* amount to eight hundred, to which feveral rights, &c. are annexed. The Counts and Barons, who have very confiderable privileges and immunities, were firft created by King *Erick XIV.* in the year 1561; and, at prefent, the former confift of fifty-eight families, whofe names are as follow.

*Brabe*, the principal in the kingdom.

*Leuenbaupt.*

*De la Gardie.*

*Wafaborg.*

*Oxenftierna von Kroneborg.*

*Stenbock.*

*Duglas.*

*Schlippenbach.*

*Wachtmeifter von Johanskuus.*

*Sperling.*

*Bielke.*

*Gullenftelpe.*

*Bonde von Biorno.*

*Gyllenberg.*

*Mellin.*

*Polus.*

*Gullenftierna von Biorkofund.*

*Piper.*

*Frolich.*

*Stromberg.*

*Poffe.*

*Nieroth.*

*Horn von Ekebyholm.*

*Spens.*

*Cronbielm von Flofta.*

*Von Fersfen.*

*Recnftierna.*

*Teffin.*

*Meierfeld.*

*Morner.*

*Ducker.*

*Taube.*

*Sparre von Sandby.*

*Bonde von Safflabolm.*

*Dobna.*

*Sparre von Sofdeborg.*

*Von Lieven.*

*Creutz.*

*Cronbielm von Hakunge.*

*Horn von Ranzien.*

*Ekeblad.*

*Lilienfteds.*

*Lagerberg.*

*Torneflykt.*

*Hord.*

*Putbus.*

*Von Duben.*

*Bark.*

*Von Hefentein.*

*Loeven.*

*Von Rosen.*

*Wrangel.*

*Elirenpreufs.*

*Cedercreutz.*

*Von During.*

*Hamilton.*

\* This is a kind of cordage made of the inner bark of a tree.



Not only the nobility and clergy, but also the citizens and peasants (the vassals of the nobility excepted) constitute a part of the States of the kingdom, as I shall shew in the sequel.

The *Swedish* language has such an affinity with the *Danish* and *Norwegian* dialects, that the inhabitants of the three kingdoms readily understand each other: But *Finland* and *Lapland* have their respective dialects. In the Pagan times the *Swedes* made use of a particular Alphabet termed *Runor*, or *Runic* characters; as appears from the *Runensteine* or *Runic* stones set up near the sepulchres of the dead, which are still to be seen in most of the provinces; as also by the *Runenstabe* or *Runic* staves, on which a perpetual Almanack or calendar, with the usual computation of time, was engraven in *Runic* letters. The *Runenstabe* is still used in some parts of *Sweden*.

§. 11. This country was formerly involved in the grossest darkness of Pagan idolatry; and *Upsal* was the seat of their superstitious worship. The Emperor *Charles the Great*, at the request of King *Biorn*, sent hither an eminent ecclesiastic called *Herbert*, who made known the glad tidings of the Gospel in *Ost-Gothland*; and for the same laudable end, the Emperor *Lewis* sent into *Sweden* the famous *Ansebarius*, who was succeeded by several others. It appears that, in the middle ages, the clergy had got several large estates and other endowments into their hands; and that the Pope assumed a great power over the temporal concerns of the kingdom. These abuses procured *M. Olaus Petri* the more favourable reception in *Sweden*, who was a disciple of *Luther*, and promulgated the pure and uncorrupt doctrines of the Gospel in this country. King *Gustavus Vasa*, by his perseverance, happily introduced the Reformation in *Sweden*, notwithstanding the innumerable difficulties he encountered with. And though the reformed religion met with great opposition, and underwent many trials in the reigns of *Johan* and *Sigismund*; yet it was established at last by the Diet and Synod held at *Upsal* in the year 1593, when the States of the kingdom in a solemn manner engaged to adhere to the pure evangelical doctrine, as preached by *Luther*; and this, since the Decree of Uniformity of Religion which passed in 1613, is both by the sovereign and his subjects to be accounted the only established church in the kingdom. In 1741, indeed, his Majesty was pleased to permit, by a royal edict, the free exercise of religion to the *Calvinists*, and the members of the church of *England*, in all sea-ports, except that of *Carlsron*.

As to the hierarchy in *Sweden*, it is as follows:

One Archbishop, namely, that of *Upsal*, who performs the coronation ceremony.

Ten Bishops, viz. those of *Linkioping*, *Skara*, *Strengnas*, *Westeras*, *Wexio*, *Abo*, *Lund*, *Borgo*, *Gottenburg*, and *Calmar*.

Three Superintendants, one of which resides at *Carlsbadt*, another at *Hernofand*, and the third in *Gottland*. The other ecclesiastics in town and country are subordinate to these, as the provosts, deacons, chaplains or curates, and the ministers or incumbents in villages.

§. 12. The *Swedes* are of late greatly improved in Arts and Sciences; but those branches of literature which they chiefly study are the Oeconomics, Natural Philosophy, together with the Antiquities, History, and Geography of their own and other countries.

*Upsal* is the most antient and considerable University in *Sweden*, and is very liberally endowed. In the year 1728, a Royal Academy of Sciences was also founded in the same city.

The University at *Lund* in *Schonen* is stiled *Academia Carolina Gothorum*.

There is a third University at *Abo* in *Finland*.

A Royal Academy of Sciences was also instituted at *Stockholm* in the year 1739; and the Memoirs of that society have been well received in foreign parts. In the same city are the following institutions; namely, Archives for antiquities, a *Collegium Medicum*, or Physic-College, a royal Academy for that part of the Mathematics relating to the military art. Another for Surveying of land. A Chymical and Mechanical laboratory, and an Academy of Painting and Sculpture.

Queen *Louisa Ulrica* instituted an Academy for the polite arts at *Drotningholm* in the year 1753.

*Ghymnafia*, or Seminaries for the education of youth, are instituted at the following places; namely, at *Linkioping*, *Calmar*, *Wexio*, *Gotteborg*, *Skara*, *Carlsbadt*, *Strengnas*, *Westerobs*, *Gefla*, and *Hernofand*. Cathedral or episcopal schools are founded at *Upsal* and *Abo*; and inferior schools at *Wisby*, *Freso*, *Ofele*, *Lycksele*, and *Jockmock*. There is also a *Latin* or Grammar school at *Stockholm* for the benefit of the *Germans* settled in that city. An ordinance for the improvement and regulation of the art of printing was published by his *Swedish* Majesty in 1752; by which a new society was instituted for that purpose, regulated by proper rules for the managing of that art and the persons to be employed in it.

Here it may not be improper to take notice of what *M. A. Birch*, in a dissertation delivered in the year 1749, observes concerning the proportion that the students in *Sweden* bear to the number of *Aemts*, i. e. Posts or Benefices. He tells us that in this Kingdom, exclusive of the *German* provinces, there are in all three thousand ecclesiastical *Aemts* or Benefices; one thousand three hundred civil posts which are filled with persons learned in the laws; one thousand three hundred military posts which are occupied by men of literature; six hundred offices relating to the several departments which belong to the government, and two thousand six hundred physicians and surgeons.

§. 13. A few centuries ago there were no manufactures established in *Sweden*. The *Hanse*-towns not only exported unwrought iron and copper from this Kingdom, but likewise the ore of those metals, which they sold again to the *Swedes* when they had wrought them into various tools and utensils. The inhabitants of the coasts of *Sweden* were all fishermen, and the towns had no artificers. In the reign of *Gustavus Vasa* the *Swedes* first began to work their metals and even their wood at home; and towards the middle of the seventeenth century they begun to set up all sorts of manufactures in *Sweden*; but most of the hands they employed were foreigners, particularly *Hollanders* and *Flemmings*. In the year 1641, a glass-manufactory was erected here. The following manufactures and trades were also established in the succeeding years, namely the Starch manufactory in 1643; that of Tin in 1646; Booksellers shops in 1647; Needle and Silk manufactures in 1649; Leather-dressing and Soap-boiling in 1651; Sawing-mills in 1653; Iron and Steel manufactures in 1654; Sugar-baking in 1661; and the woollen and silk manufactures flourished above all the rest: But in the wars under *Charles XII.* manufactures in general fell to decay. In the reign of *Frederick I.* all sorts of mechanic trades and manufactures revived once more. The breeding of sheep was also regulated and encouraged; tobacco was planted; foreign artists and manufacturers were allowed the free exercise of their religion; and other useful regulations were made in *Sweden*. It was resolved by the States at the last Diet, which was held in 1752, to give all possible encouragement to new manufactures that should be set up in this Kingdom. There are at present in *Sweden* manufactories of silk, cloth, cotton, fustian and other stuffs, linen, sail-cloth, *Morocco*-leather, cotton-printing, dyeing; and also for boiling or refining of alum, sugar, soap, and salt; for spinning, of tobacco; making glass, porcelain, and brimstone; here are also paper-mills, gunpowder-mills, fulling-mills, boring-mills, stamping-mills, &c. Vast quantities of copper, steel, brass and iron, are likewise wrought in *Sweden*. Here are also foundries for great guns, pots, &c. forges for fire-arms, armours, anchors, &c. wire and flatting-mills, and the like. However the *Swedes* are not completely skilled in the working of metals. Great numbers of ships are also built, and wooden vessels and utensils made in this Kingdom.

According to the computation laid before the States of the Kingdom, at the Diet held in 1752, the produce of the manufactures in *Sweden* from the first of *October* 1739, when the Board for Trades and Manufactures was first erected, to the close of the year 1750, amounted to twenty-three millions six hundred forty-five thousand four hundred and forty-nine silver dollars\*, exclusive of the profits arising from sugar and tobacco; which

\* A silver dollar is equal to 1s. 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  sterling.



sum, the fourth part being deducted for the purchase of materials, makes a saving to the country of seventeen millions seven hundred thirty-four thousand and fifty-seven silver dollars. The increase of the silk, woollen, cotton and thread manufactures appears from hence, that in four years, namely, from 1741 to 1744, twenty-five *Tons of gold* † (silver money) and a quarter were expended for the unwrought materials. But in the four ensuing years the sum rose to thirty-six *Tons of gold*; and consequently the increase was no less than ten and a quarter *Tons of gold*. The goods made of these materials being reckoned at three times the value of the latter, the produce of the manufactures for four years, namely, from 1744 to 1748, must have increased to thirty-two and a quarter *Tons of gold*; not to mention the greater quantity of woollen goods imported on *Swedish* bottoms. The white cotton imported into *Sweden* has not been of late so considerable as it was formerly; the cottons flannels, and printed linens made at home being come into greater vogue. In the year 1754, it was computed that about one thousand six hundred and four persons were employed in the silk manufacture, eight thousand five hundred and sixty-seven in the woollen, two thousand and thirty-four in the linen and cotton manufactures, and two hundred and nine in the hard-ware; but few of the home manufactures are bought in *Sweden*, which is owing to the extravagant demands of the manufacturers, who rate them at fifty, seventy-five, or even a hundred *per cent.* beyond the price of foreign goods. The planting of tobacco has increased much; especially near *Carlskamm* and *Lund*; so that the quantity of foreign tobacco imported into the Kingdom is decreased by one half. It is of the highest concern to *Sweden* to diversify and improve their iron manufactures, that they may be able to send a variety of iron-ware abroad; as the iron-bar trade is considerably decreased since the iron-works of *Russia* and *America* have been wrought.

§. 14. *Sweden* is very conveniently situated for commerce, as it lies between the *Baltic* and the *North-Sea*. Besides, it has several large lakes and rivers; and some of the latter empty themselves into these lakes, and others into the sea. A scheme has been a long time on foot to avoid the passage through the *Sound*, by carrying on the trade from *Stockholm* another way. The ships bound to that port were to sail through the lake of *Malar*, and by the river and canal of *Arboga* into the *Hielmar*-lake, on which the town of *Oerebro* is situated, as far as the lake of *Wener*; and from thence through *Gothisch Elbe* or *Gotbland* river to *Gothenburg*, and so into the *North-Sea*. But the execution of this important plan will be attended with great difficulties, by reason of the vast cataract in the *Gothic-Elbe*, called *Trollhatta*. However on the *Carlsgraben* near *Trollhatta*, a sluice or canal, called *Count Tessin*,

† A *Ton of gold*, is one hundred thousand *Swedish* dollars at 1s. 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  which is nearly equal to 775*l.* sterling.

has been completed; and towards the close of the year 1752, it was opened with great solemnity, and found navigable for vessels of burden; so that it promises great advantages to the country by the increase of trade.

*Sweden*, for a long time, was without any trade or commerce; and formerly used to be supplied with foreign commodities by the *Hanse-towns*, which, so early as the year 1344, were endowed with several privileges, and exempt from paying any custom or duty in *Sweden*. At last King *Erick*, a *Pomeranian*, persuaded his subjects to carry on some trade in their own bottoms, and to employ five or six ships for that purpose. After this the trade of the *Hanse-towns* very much declined, though *Lubeck* still retained several privileges; which, however, were considerably restrained in the year 1529, and entirely annulled in 1599 and 1600; from which time the *English* and *Dutch* engrossed the trade to *Sweden* into their hands. Several commercial companies were also erected in *Sweden*, from time to time, as the South-Company in 1626; which, however, was dissolved in 1661. A College or board of trade was instituted in the year 1637; and a treaty was concluded with *Portugal* in 1641, by virtue of which an *African* Company was erected, who built fort *Corso* on the coast of *Guinea*. In 1648, a Tar-Company, who were to buy up and export the tar produced in the northern provinces of *Sweden*, was erected. But all these Companies in a short time came to nothing.

In the year 1648, the town of *Helmstadt* began to fit out fishing vessels; and even the Nobility joined with the Burghers in fitting out ships; though foreign vessels were employed for some time after. In 1667, a herring-fishery was set up at *Gotbenburg*. In 1666, some *Englishmen* were encouraged to settle at *Helsingburg*, where several privileges were conferred on them; and in 1667, a *Swedish* man of war first sailed to the *Mediterranean*. The long wars in the reign of *Charles XII.* proved extremely detrimental to the trade and manufactures of *Sweden*: But under *Frederick I.* they both revived; and in the last Diet it was resolved vigorously to promote the improvement of trade and navigation.

Certain towns which were allowed to import and export goods in their own ships, and to trade both with natives and foreigners, are called Staple-towns, and are four and twenty in number. But those towns which lie near the sea, and yet have no foreign commerce; and are permitted only to carry on domestic trade, to have shares in freight of goods, and to purchase, by wholesale the goods imported by the Staple-towns, are called *Land-towns*. Some of these are inland, and others sea-port towns; others again are *Mine-towns*, or belong to some Mine-District. The chief Staple-towns in *Sweden* are *Stockholm* and *Gotbenburg*. At the former are held the College of Commerce, the national Bank (which has often advanced

considerable sums of money for the service of the government, and has a fund of about six million, of silver dollars, besides current bills to the amount of seventy millions, and an Insurance-office. In the latter, *viz.* *Gotthenburg*, are the *East-India* Company which was erected in the year 1731, and pays for every ship that returns from *India* fifty thousand silver dollars to the government; and a *Levant* Company. The *Swedes* even trade to *China*. But as this traffick runs away with a great deal of bullion out of the Kingdom, Baron *Harlemann* calls it 'a necessary evil.' They likewise trade along the coasts of the *Mediterranean*, and to other *European* ports.

The exports from *Sweden* are, iron in bars and wrought, other wrought metals, timber, pitch, tar, pot-ash, salt-petre, gun-powder, cobalt, cordage, furs, *Morocco*-leather, as it is called, and dried fish. On the other hand the imports are grain, flesh, bacon, cheese, butter, tallow, salt, wine, brandy, drugs, hides, hemp, flax, wool, silk and several foreign manufactures.

The present state of the commerce of *Sweden* was laid before the States in the Diet of the year 1752, by the deputation of trade and manufactures; by which it manifestly appears that the trade of this country has increased remarkably for some years past. The manufactures have been also greatly improved; which has lessened the importation of foreign commodities, employed a greater number of the natives, and saved the nation great sums of money which used to be expended for foreign manufactures. The exportation of some commodities has also lately increased; particularly iron; which, not long since, was sold at a low rate, when it was deposited in warehouses belonging to foreigners; but now sells at a good price. However, proper measures have been taken to prevent dealers from raising the price of this commodity too high, and thereby giving an advantage to foreign iron-works.

The course of exchange has also, from time to time, been gradually lowered, and brought nearer to a par with that of other nations; and less specie now goes out of the Kingdom for unwrought materials and other necessary goods than heretofore. From the year 1741 to 1744, inclusively, the imports of *Sweden* exceeded the exports by fifty-eight *Tons of gold* silver money: But in the four succeeding years, the former exceeded the latter only by three and twenty *Tons of gold*; and of late years the balance has been less considerable. Provisions, raw materials for manufactures, and other necessaries are now purchased at the first hand, and imported into the Kingdom in *Swedish* bottoms; in which the home products are also exported.

Lastly, the duty or excise on what is consumed at home is a restraint upon luxury and excess; at least, in those who affect it, it is made an instrument of augmenting the national revenue. But all these advantageous  
insti-



institutions, and laudable endeavours, cannot yet bring the exports and imports of *Sweden* to an equality; the latter exceeding the former at least to the value of six *Tons of gold* every year. *Sweden* exports annually to the amount of six or seven millions, in metals, minerals, wooden ware, tar, potash, &c. On the other hand colours for dying, &c. drugs, spices, sugar, salt, foreign liquors, silk, and cotton drain the country every year of near twenty-six *Tons of gold* and two thousand three hundred seventy-five silver dollars; for as *Sweden* is entirely without some of these commodities, and has not a sufficient quantity of others, it must be supplied with them from foreign countries. Besides those specified above, the following commodities have, in the space of four years, cost the nation two hundred and thirty-two *Tons of gold* and a half; viz,

	Tons of gold.	Silver Dollars.
For grain of all sorts	113,	35,320.
For provisions	18,	25,668.
For Flax, hemp, wool, linen } and woollen yarn, and leather }	67,	24,044.
For fish	33,	67,816.
<b>Total</b>	<b>232,</b>	<b>52,848.</b>

According to this calculation, these articles amount annually to fifty-eight *Tons of gold* and thirteen thousand two hundred and eighteen Dollars, silver money. Luxury, vanity, and excess in provisions, dress, buildings, &c. rather increase; though woollen cloths and stuffs, the materials of which are produced in the country, and manufactured by the natives, seem much better adapted to the climate of *Sweden*, as well as to the interest of the nation, than those expensive silks, which the *Swedens* are too fond of.

It must however be observed, that these calculations are not altogether accurate and unexceptionable; for the custom of stating the balance of trade from the imports and exports, as they stand in the custom-house books, is far from being exact. According to the custom-house entries, *Sweden* must be much poorer now than it was at the death of *Charles XII.* than which nothing is more improbable. The great disparity of the course of exchange is still an extreme detriment to the kingdom.

The exportation of copper and copper plates has been prohibited since the year 1744, that commodity being, at present, wanted at home: Neither is the exportation of iron bars so considerable as it was formerly; and the like may be observed of the iron and steel-ware. A due equality of trade among the several provinces of the kingdom is also wanting; so that one gradually drains the other.

Another great impediment to the increase of commerce is the smuggling of prohibited and counterband goods, to the yearly amount of five or six *Tons of gold*; and this illicit trade is chiefly carried on by the *Lubeckers*. In order to put a stop to this illegal practice, it was enacted in 1754, That all foreign merchandise thus clandestinely imported shall, upon seizure, be not only confiscated, but packed up, sealed, and delivered in at the Manufacture-Office erected by the government at *Stockholm*, in order to be sent to a *Swedish* consul, agent, or commissary abroad; who is publicly to expose the commodities to sale, and to remit the produce of them to the abovementioned Office.

In the mean time, no endeavours have been wanting to bring the exports and imports to an equality, and by degrees even to turn the scale in favour of the former. The means employed for this purpose were,

1. The improvement and increase of agriculture; grain and provisions being the capital article of the imports.

2. The encouragement of fisheries; for which end, in the year 1745, a charter was granted to a Fishing-Company; and in 1752, several privileges were granted to all fishermen that should settle on the sea-coasts to follow that occupation.

3. The improvement of manufactures. And

4. The constant employment of *Swedish* bottoms for carrying on the trade of the Kingdom.

§. 15. The Coins in *Sweden* are

1. Gold ducats\*.

2. Silver pieces; as the silver *Oer* †, one of which is equal to four *Pfennings*, twenty of them to a *Caroline* ‡, and thirty-two to a silver Dollar ||. There are double and half *Carolines*, and also double single and half silver *Oer* current here.

3. Copper pieces; which are

An *Oer*, which, like a *Rundstück* \*\*, is equal to two *Pfennings*.

An half; a quarter; and a sixth part of *Kupfer-Oer*.

A copper dollar †† is about four *Groschen*.

4. Imaginary money; which are the Silver-Mark †††, and Copper-Mark ||||. The former is three times the value of the latter; and six silver, or eighteen copper marks is equal to a Specie Dollar or thirty-two *Groschen* ¶¶.

§. 16. All travellers agree in commending the roads for their goodness and security, the reasonable rates of carriages, and the courteous civility of the people in *Sweden*.

\* A Ducat is about 9s. 4d. sterling. † An *Oer* is equal to  $\frac{3}{2}$  of a penny sterling.

‡ A *Caroline* is about 1s. 2d. sterling. || A silver Dollar is equal to 1s. 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  *English* money. \*\* Eight *Rundstücks* make a penny *English*.

†† A copper Dollar is equal to 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  sterling. ††† A silver mark is equal to 4d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  sterling. |||| A copper Mark 1d.  $\frac{1}{5}$ .

¶¶ About 1s. 3d. sterling.

§. 17. *Sweden*

§. 17. *Sweden* is indisputably one of the most ancient kingdoms in *Europe*; but it is difficult to determine who were the first inhabitants or Sovereigns of this country. It was anciently called by various names, as *Jotunland*, *Gotunhem*, *Jattabem*, *Mannakem*, *Skytiød*, *Attland*, *Nordur-land*, *Scants Ey*, *Scanzia*, *Scandia* or *Scandinavia*, *Balthia*, *Gethia*, and *Gotbia*.

*Sweden* is particularly famous for being the native country of the fierce and warlike *Goths*, whose emigrations make such a figure in history. The kingdom of the *Swedes* was separate from that of the *Goths* until the twelfth century: But in the year 1132, both nations, with their several dependencies, were united under *Sverker* King of the *Ostrogoths*, who was proclaimed Sovereign of the *Swedes* and *Goths*. It was afterwards agreed by the two nations, that the *Swedish* and *Gotbic* Princes should hold the sovereignty alternately; but this occasioned many bloody intestine wars and commotions.

*Magnus Smeek* added *Schonen* and the adjacent territories to the kingdom; but that Prince alienated them again from the crown, and by his male-administration deprived both himself and his family of the throne. For after *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, his sister's son, had been elected King, *Margaret*, who was heiress to the crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, compelled him to give up the kingdom of *Sweden* to her; and that Princess, by the union of *Calmar*, united the three Northern Kingdoms under one head in the year 1397. This union the *Swedes* were obliged to receive, but with the greatest indignation; and, after several unsuccessful attempts, they at length shook off the *Danish* yoke. What most irritated them to this revolt, was the perfidious massacre perpetrated at *Stockholm*, by order of King *Christian II.* in the year 1520.

*Gustavus Erickson von Wasa* was first chosen *Statthalter*, and, in 1523, had the sovereignty conferred on him. This founder of a new royal line established the reformed religion in *Sweden*; and the crown was settled on his heirs in the male line. But the division of the kingdom among his children, the male-administration of his son *John*, together with the propensity of *Erick* (*John's* brother) and his son *Sigismund* King of *Poland* to Popery, threw the kingdom into terrible distractions. These commotions, however, were at last composed by *Charles IX.* and his son *Gustavus Adolphus*. This heroic Prince conquered the greatest part of *Livonia* and *Polish Prussia*; and penetrated so far into *Germany* as to become formidable to the Emperor. But in 1632, this Monarch lost his life in the battle of *Lutzen*; and by his death the male line of *Wasa* became extinct. His daughter *Christina* took away from *Norway* and *Denmark* the territories of *Jamtland*, and *Harjedalen*, with the islands of *Gottland* and *Oeland*; and in 1648 she dismembered upper *Pomerania*, *Bremen*, *Verden*, and *Wisnar* from the *German* Empire, and added them to the *Swedish* dominions. But in the year 1654, that Princess solemnly resigned



## INTRODUCTION TO

the crown of *Sweden*, and was very instrumental in advancing to the throne her cousin *Charles Gustavus*, Prince *Palatine* of *Deux-Ponts*, who in 1658 added *Schonen*, *Halland*, *Blekingen*, and the *Lebn* of *Bobus* to the *Swedish* dominions. His son *Charles XI.* reassumed all the alienated crown lands, and rendered himself an absolute Monarch. *Charles XII.* by an excessive fondness for war, brought the kingdom to very great distress, and was the last male heir of his family. After *Charles's* death *Ulrica Eleonora*, his sister, ascended the throne by the free election of the States; gave up all pretensions to arbitrary power; and in 1720, by consent of the Diet, transferred the government to her husband *Frederick*, hereditary Prince of *Hesse-Cassel*. King *Frederick* having no issue, the States, in the year 1743, nominated *Adolphus Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein* and Bishop of *Eutin*, his successor to the Crown of *Sweden*: who, accordingly on the demise of *Frederick*, who died on the fifth day of *April* 1751, assumed the reins of government.

§. 18. The title of the Kings of *Sweden* has been often varied. His present Majesty is stiled *Adolphus Frederick*, by the Grace of God, King of *Sweden*, and of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; great Prince of *Finland*; hereditary Sovereign of *Norway*; Duke of *Sleswick*, *Holstein*, *Stormarn*, and *Ditmarsh*; Count of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenbors*.

The Arms are quarterly. In the first and fourth *Azure*, three crowns *Or*, for the kingdom of *Sweden*; in the second and third *barré*, *ondé Argent* and *Azure*, a lion rampant *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for *Gotland*; with the Arms of *Holstein* in the inescutcheon.

§. 19. In the year 1748, *Frederick I.* revived two ancient Orders of Knighthood, and founded another in *Sweden*. The principal of these is the Blue Ribbon, or the Order of *Seraphim*, instituted in 1334 by *Magnus Smeck*; the Knights of this Order are also *Commandeurs* of the other Orders. The next is the Yellow Ribbon, or the Order of the *Sword*, which was founded by *Gustavus Wasa* in the year 1523. The Order of the Black Ribbon, or the *North Star*, is of very late institution. All three have their proper badges and motto's.

§. 20. Anciently the crown of *Sweden* was hereditary; but the succession was interrupted under the *Danish* Kings. The hereditary succession was afterwards settled on *Gustavus von Wasa*; and on *Charles IX.* and his heirs, even in the female line. Arbitrary power was unknown in this kingdom till the reign of *Charles XI.* which *Charles XII.* carried on with a high hand. However at that Monarch's death it was abrogated; the elective right was restored; and a council, of seventeen of the principal men in the kingdom, appointed for the King. The form of government was settled in *Sweden* in the year 1720, by which the King's male issue are declared his heirs and successors to the throne: But before the new Sovereign enters on the administration of the government, he renounces, by a solemn

solemn oath, all claim to Arbitrary Power which he detests and abhors; and engages to punish, with the utmost rigour, all who shall endeavour to promote it, as traitors and enemies to the King and Kingdom. The king cannot appropriate to himself, or alienate any of the national revenues. He cannot settle any of the royal demesnes on his children; but must supply the necessary sums for their education and portions in ready money. He must be of the *Lutheran* religion. He is to govern in concert with the Council of State, according to the general laws of *Sweden*, and the present form of government. He is not to engage in any war, to enact any laws, to impose any new taxes, nor to alter the value of the current coin; nor to detain the salaries or pensions accruing to the officers and soldiers from the crown-lands; nor lastly, to contravene or annul any ordinances made, or to be made, for the improvement of navigation, trade, manufactures, &c. without the privity and consent of his Council and the States of the Kingdom. In 1755 and 1756, the Diet added further limitations to the royal prerogative.

§. 21. The States who have a seat and voice in the Diet, are composed of the

1. Nobility, consisting of Counts, Barons, and others who are distinguished by their rank or titles.
2. The Clergy who, till the time of *Gustavus Wasa*, took place of the Nobility.
3. The Burghers or citizens.
4. The Peasants.

The King is obliged to convene a Diet once in three years: But in the Sovereign's absence or on any other impediment, or his decease, the Council of State issues a proclamation for that purpose; and in default of male heirs to the crown, the States meet of themselves. The *Swedish* Diet generally sits three months, or longer, according to the exigency of affairs. Extraordinary Diets are summoned by the King, with the consent of the States of the kingdom. Every class has its Chairman or Prolocutor: The Marshal of the Diet is generally the Chairman of the Nobles; the Archbishop of *Upsal* that of the Clergy; and the Burghers usually make choice of one of the Burgo-masters of *Stockholm*. The Peasants have also their *Talemann*, or Speaker. The Counsellors of State have no vote in the Diet; but every Nobleman, Bishop, Superintendent, and every two or three Provostships jointly, and every District of Peasants have a vote in the assembly of the States. Most of the towns have but one vote; some, however, have two, and *Stockholm* has four voices. Each of the four classes has its respective house: But at the general Diet all the States assemble in the Diet-chamber, which is a large apartment in the King's palace. Whatever has happened in the Kingdom since the preceding Diet, and has been discussed in the Council of State, or otherwise relates to the good of the Public,

## INTRODUCTION TO

comes under deliberation in this Assembly; but the King can propose nothing in the Diet without the previous advice of the Council of State.

§. 22. The great Colleges or Councils of the Kingdom are

1. The Council of State, which is the supreme Council. The King himself presides, and has two votes in this College; where all national affairs, which admit of no delay, are determined by the majority of voices.

2. The Royal Courts of Justice, of which the *Swedish*, properly so called, is held at *Stockholm*, the *Gothic* at *Jonkoping*, and that of *Finland* at *Abu*.

3. The Royal War-College, which has the direction of all military affairs.

4. The College of Admiralty, which is held at *Carlskron*.

5. The State-Office, in which the Prime Minister presides: The Secretary of State is also a member of this College, that has the care of the records of the Kingdom.

6. The Royal Chamber of Finances.

7. The Royal Demesne Chamber.

8. The Royal Chamber of Revision.

9. The Royal College of the Mines.

10. The Royal College of Commerce.

11. The Royal Chancery.

12. The Office of the States.

13. The Manufacture-Office.

Foreigners are excluded from all posts in the government of *Sweden*.

§. 23. The new *Swedish* Digest, or Book of Laws, after mature examination in the Diets held in 1731 and 1734, was allowed of by all the States, confirmed by the King, and promulged in the year 1736. It contains the new course of proceedings at law, whereby all law-suits are brought to a short issue, and easily determined. The towns and Districts of the Peasants have their inferior courts, from which an appeal lies to the superior or provincial courts; and from these again to the royal courts of justice mentioned in §. 22, N<sup>o</sup> 2. In the village-courts of judicature twelve Peasants always sit, as assistants, to try causes.

§. 24. King *Gustavus Wasa* considerably increased the revenues of the Kingdom by sequestering the church-lands; and *Charles XI.* made farther additions to them by the re-assumption of the alienated crown-lands. By the New Instrument of Government the ordinary revenues and out-goings of the Kingdom are placed upon the same footing as they were in 1696. The ordinary and extraordinary national expences for the Kingdom of *Sweden* and the great Dutchy of *Finland*, for the year 1753, amounted to ten millions two hundred forty thousand four hundred and thirty-four  
silver



silver Dollars\*. But this sum could not be cleared by the ordinary national revenue, which does not exceed eight millions seven hundred forty-five thousand seven hundred and eleven, including the sum allowed to the King for his civil list, which was little less than a million of silver Dollars. The usual grant to the King for his privy purse is about two hundred thousand silver Dollars, to the Queen one hundred thousand, to the Princess and Princesses, the children of the reigning Monarch, thirty thousand. The King has also twenty thousand silver Dollars allowed him for travelling charges. The subsidies from *France* to the Crown of *Sweden* amount to three hundred seventy-two thousand two hundred and twenty-two silver Dollars. The crown-debts are so great, that since the year 1753, the annual interest of them has amounted to one million twenty-eight thousand two hundred and eighty-six silver Dollars. The far greatest part of this sum has been borrowed from the Bank, which, from the year 1741 to 1753†, has advanced seven millions four hundred and forty-seven thousand silver Dollars to the crown.

§. 25. The Military Forces of *Sweden* consist partly of raised, and partly of distributed regiments. The latter form the greatest part, and are the national militia, which are maintained by the country according to an ordinance published by *Charles XI.* That Prince obliged the Nobility and Gentry, as well as the Peasants, to provide and maintain both horse and foot; of which every province furnishes its contingency.

As for the infantry, every three *Hinman* provide a foot soldier, pay him his stipend, and furnish him with a dwelling and a piece of land; but he has his accoutrements, arms, and ammunition, from the Crown; however certain provinces, in proportion to a contract made, also contribute something towards these. The Crown also pays the principal and subaltern officers, and supplies the troops with provisions when they are on their march or in the field, unless at the rendezvous of the regiments and companies when they meet in order to be mustered.

As to the Cavalry, the muster-master is obliged both in time of peace and war to pay the troopers, provide them with quarters, and their horses with forage: He also keeps their arms and accoutrements in complete order. The field and subaltern officers have also their several stipends or rents allotted to them, as the common troopers. On a march and in the field the Crown provides subsistence and ammunition for the troopers, and forage for their horses; however every muster-master is obliged to furnish his troopers with twelve charges for their musket.

*Jemtland* maintains Dragoons, whom the Crown finds in arms and cloathing. The Peasants contribute little or nothing in that province. But the *Jemtlanders* were formerly allowed twenty silver Dollars a man for these Dragoons.

\* A silver Dollar is equal to 1s. 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  sterling, as mentioned above.

† The Author does not tell us whether inclusive or exclusive of these years.

## INTRODUCTION TO

The Peasants may hire soldiers as labourers to do their work; and when such a soldier finds himself master of a sufficient parcel of arable and meadow-land, he generally marries; and, by that means, helps to people the country. As to the particular state of the forces, they consist,

I. Of INFANTRY: And these are,

1. Raised regiments, most of which serve as garrisons in the fortified places; and two of them are cantoned in *Pomerania*. Among these are also the King's Life-guards, which consist of eighteen companies each of 100 men, and are quartered in *Stockholm*; and seven other regiments some of which consist of 1000 men each, others of 1200, 1400, 1800, &c.

Making in all	—	—	—	—	—	Men.
						13,800

A regiment of artillery consisting of — — —  
 This is the only corps of that kind in the whole kingdom, and is divided into twenty-six companies of gunners, four companies for fire-works, and four of pioneers. These are upon the same duty as the infantry, and also have the same pay.

3000

2. The distributed regiments, which are one-and-twenty in number, exclusive of *Kymmengard's* battalion of 128 men. Each of these regiments consists of eight companies, excepting the regiments of *Nerike* and *Weremeland*, which have ten companies each. The complement of the least of them is 1025 men, and of the largest regiment 1200, exclusive of the above named two regiments, which have 1674 men each. Altogether making

24,238

Consequently the Infantry amount in all to

41,038.

II. Of CAVALRY, which consists

1. Of seven regiments and one company. The King's regiment of Life-guards consists of twelve troops, or 1505 men; the Standard of the Nobility, as it is called, of six troops, or 421 men; and the other regiments of eight troops, or 1000 men each. Consequently the whole body of the Cavalry makes

7026

2. Of Dragoons, which consist of three regiments and one squadron of 250 men, and altogether amount to

3154

Hence it appears that the total of the whole army is

51,218.

In war time several extraordinary regiments are raised, which amount at least to a number equal to this. The King's body-guard consists of a troop of Halbardiers, and amount to 136 men, who all rank as Cornets.

The War-Office or College has the direction of the Military Forces, &c. and under it are the Commissary of war, the ordnance and pay-master's Offices;

Offices; those of the militia, the fortifications, stores, camp, cloathing, quarters, &c. &c.

An Academy has been erected in *Sweden*, for instructing young Gentlemen in fortification, or military architecture, &c.

The Arsenals of the Kingdom are at *Stockholm*, *Oerebro*, and *Jonkioping*: But the arms are chiefly forged at *Jonkioping*, *Oerebro*, *Soderhamn*, *Nordtelge*, and *Nordkioping*; and are provided at the expence of the Crown by agents appointed for that purpose. The foundery for brass cannon is at *Stockholm*; but the largest iron guns are cast at *Stafio* and *Akers*; the smaller sort at the foundery of *Ferendals*; the bombs and bullets at *Froswidal* and *Elfskutte*. A great quantity of salt-petre is also made in *Sweden*, where there are five powder-mills. All the necessary arms and implements of the army and artillery are made in the kingdom.

A College of invalids is founded at *Wadstena* for twenty-eight field officers, nineteen subaltern officers, and twenty-two private men, who are there provided with lodging, firing, provision, and cloathing. Besides these, above five hundred field officers, five hundred and fifty subalterns, and four thousand private men have pensions and some other small gratuities or perquisites.

The Government is now repairing the fortifications on the frontiers; particularly those in *Finland*, which are improved with the addition of new works. The last Diet assigned, for the interval between it and the next, which will be held in 1755, twelve *tous of gold* in silver money for the beforementioned uses; eleven *tous of gold*, and forty thousand silver dollars being appropriated to *Finland*, *Schonen*, and *Gothland*, and the remaining sixty thousand silver Dollars are reserved for the other fortifications.

§. 26. The *Swedish* Navy is distributed in three ports. The main fleet lies at *Carlscron*; the second Squadron at *Gothenburg*, and the third at *Stockholm*. The whole fleet consists of

Twenty-four ships of war from the first to the sixth rate, carrying from one hundred to forty-two guns.

Twelve Frigates carrying from thirty-six to twelve guns.

Four Brigantines carry from eight to six guns, with several Bomb-ketches, and forty gallies.

*Sweden* abounds in all kinds of naval stores, and only wants a sufficient number of seamen. Those that belong to the royal navy have habitations provided for them in *Oeland*, *Gottland*, *Haliand*, *Blekingen*, *Medelpad*, *Angermannland*, and *Aland*. In the last Diet it was resolved, to form a body of Sea-Cadets, who are to be under the direction of the college of Admiralty.

§. 27. In the present century *Sweden* lost the following foreign dominions that once belonged to it, viz. *Livonia*, *Ingermannland*, and a considerable part of *Finland*; the Dutchy of *Bremen*, and principality of *Verden*; the city

of



of *Stettin* in *Pomerania*, and the Districts lying betwixt the *Oder* and *Pene*, together with the islands of *Wollin* and *Usedom*, and the Dutchy of *Deux Ponts*. Of its former conquests it still retains *Bobus-Lebn*, a tract of land in *Norway*, part of Upper *Pomerania*, the island of *Rugen*, and the town of *Wisnar*.

§. 28. I shall take no notice of the ancient divisions of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, especially as opinions are divided about them. It consists at present of five divisions or General Provinces, namely, the Kingdom of *Gotbland*, *Sweden* properly so called, *Nordland*, *Lappland*, and *Finnland*. These again with regard to the civil government are divided into twenty-four Particular Provinces; namely, *Upland*, *Stockholm*, *Skaraborg*, *Abo* and *Biorneborg*, *Cronoberg*, *Fonkioping*, *Westmannland*, *Nyslott* and *Kymenegards-Lebn*, *Ost-Gotbland*, *Sudermannland*, *Nyland* and *Tarwastebus*, *Elfsburg*, *Calmar* and *Oeland*, *Kopparberg*, *Nerike* and *Warmeland*, *West-Nordland*, *West-Botbnia*, *Gottland*, *Malmo*, *Christiansstadt*, *Blekingen*, *Hallan*, *Gothenburg*, and *Bobus*. These provinces are subdivided into *Harraden*, or Districts, and the latter into parishes.



THE

K I N G D O M

O F

G O T H L A N D,

In Latin *Gothia*, and in Swedish, *Gotbaland*.

**G**OTHLAND to the east and south is bounded by the *Baltic*, or *East-sea*; to the west by *Norway*, the *Sound*, and the *German Ocean*; and to the north by *Sweden* properly so called.

Its Arms are *Azure*, a lion rampant going over three streams; by which the *Goths*, probably, intended to denote their warlike prowess, and the success of their arms in three of the principal parts of the world. Those fierce and warlike *Goths* who emigrated from hence, and subdued so many countries, are said to derive their name from *Goth*, a son of the god *Odin*, or from the *Gothic* word *Gieta*, *i. e.* 'to engender or breed,' on account of the surprising fecundity and increase of them in these northern climates.

*Gotbland* had anciently its own Sovereigns; but *Suercher*, King of the *Ostrogoths*, being proclaimed King of the *Swedes* and *Goths* in the year 1132, both these kingdoms were united under one Sovereign.

It is a very pleasant and fertile country, consisting of fine plains and inclosures; and the greatest part of the corn of the growth of *Sweden* is produced here. It also abounds in lakes and rivers which yield great quantities of fish, extensive forests, and rich mines. The number of towns in *Gotbland* amounts to forty-eight. It is divided into *Ost* or *East-Gotbland*, *West-Gotbland*, and *South-Gotbland*, of which I shall give a particular account in their order.

## E A S T - G O T H L A N D,

In Latin *Gothia Orientalis*,

THIS name, besides *Ost-Gothland*, or *East-Gothland*, properly so called, includes *Smaland*, with the islands of *Oeland* and *Gothland*. To begin, then, with

I. *E A S T - G O T H L A N D*, properly so called,  
In Latin *Ostro-Gothia*.

This country, which in former times was governed by particular Kings, and its own laws, is sixteen *Swedish* miles in length, and fifteen in breadth. It produces wheat, rye, barley, oats, pease, &c. in such plenty as to supply the neighbouring provinces with these several sorts of grain. It has also many fine orchards, rich meadows and pastures, lakes and rivers abounding with variety of fish, extensive forests, some of which are of oak and birch, profitable iron-mines, and foundaries; two brass flatting mills, and other machines for the improvement of manufactures.

The occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fishing; and in some places they are employed in the mines.

The mountain called *Amberg* which lies about two *Swedish* miles from *Wadstena*, is of such a vast height, that a person may have a view of fifty churches from the summit of it. Upon this mountain is a flat stone, under which one of the ancient Kings is said to be interred. Among other remarkable mountains that of *Thors-klint*, in the parish of *Qwillinge*, on which formerly stood a fort, deserves notice.

In the forest of *Kalmarden* is dug up fine marble, which has been mentioned above in the Introduction (§. 8.) And the reddish *violstein* or violet-stone, which emits a very fragrant smell. Along the banks of the *Wetter*-lake is found agate, cornelians, touch-stone and *Klappersstein* or rattle-stones. In the iron-mines at *Hellestad* stucco-stones are dug up; antimony is found in mount *Amberg* near the *Wetter*-lake, white lead at *Stegeborg*, and beautiful petrifications in several parts of this country.

Among the twenty-three lakes, with which *East-Gothland* is watered and supplied with plenty of fish, the *Wetter* which lies between *East* and *West-Gothland* is the most remarkable. For it extends fifteen *Swedish* miles in length and two and a half in breadth, and contains the islands of *Wisingse* and *Stora Rocknen*. It has but one outlet by the river *Motala*, though above forty little streams discharge themselves into it. This lake also lies seventy ells \* higher than either the *Baltic* or the *North-Sea*; and is deep and clear,

\* About one hundred and forty feet probably, but the Author never informs us what ells he computes by.



but very boisterous in winter. It is also supposed certainly to prognosticate the approach of stormy weather.

The rivers that water *East-Gotland* are

1. The *Motala*, which receives seventeen rivulets: It issues from the *Wetter*-lake, and passing through the whole country empties itself into the *Baltic*. Near *Norrkiöping* it precipitates its waters from a rock sixteen fathoms high; and in some places its current seems to stand quite still. Here, and likewise where it issues out of the *Wetter*-lake, is a fine salmon and eel-fishery.

2. The *Stang*, which discharges itself into the lake of *Roxen* below *Linkiöping*, and divides the country into the east and west parts.

3. The *Molby*, or *Nibro*, in which there is a pearl-fishery.

4. The *Karesbo*. And

5. The *Skena*.

*East-Gotland*, with regard to its ecclesiastical state, consists of one diocese, which is that of *Linkiöping*, and the second in *Sweden* as to precedence: It includes two and twenty provostships.

*East-Gotland* is divided into one and twenty Districts which belong to the *Hauptmannschaft*, i. e. Government or Prefecture of *Linkiöping*. Seventeen of these Districts lie in the east and north parts, and are included under the name of *Linkiöpings-Lehn* or fief: And four lie in the western part and constitute the *Lehn* or fief of *Wadstena*.

LINKIÖPING-LEHN is subdivided into three parts; namely,

1. *Oestan-Stang*, which lies on the east side of the river *Stang* and the town of *Linkiöping*, and contains nine *Harade* or Districts, in which are the following places of note.

*Norrkiöping*, in Latin *Norcopia*, is a Staple-town situated on the river *Motala*, which here falls into the gulf of *Bravicken*. It is next to *Stockholm* in extent, is reckoned one of the best cities in the Kingdom, and was formerly well fortified. In a Diet held here in the year 1604, Duke *Charles* was proclaimed King, and the famous hereditary union was enacted. In 1719, this city was destroyed by the *Russians*; but has at present recovered itself after that calamity, and is in a good condition. It contains five churches; carries on a considerable trade; and has a new and commodious key. Here are also two copper-mills, a fine hammer-mill for brass, a printing-house, several paper-mills, woollen manufactories, &c. *Norrkiöping* is the third city that votes in the Diet. A view of it is to be seen in *Dalkberg's Suecia*. A little way out of this city lies the palace of *Johannisburg*, which, in 1614, was built by Duke *John* of *East-Gotland*; but is now in a ruinous condition: And about a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from the city the remains of a castle called *Ringstabolm*, are to be seen, on an island in the river *Motala*.

*Radga* lies about two *Swedish* miles and one fourth from *Norrkiöping*. Here is the oldest manufactory in the whole Kingdom.

*Soderkiöping*, in Latin *Sudercopia*, is a staple town situated on a navigable river, and one of the most ancient cities in *Gotland*. It had formerly its own municipal laws, and was in a much more flourishing condition than it is at present. Two kings were crowned, and, in 1595, a Diet was held in this town. It has at present but two churches. Without the town near the east toll-house is the spring called *Ragnild's* well, ornamented with a little tower. This spring both in winter and summer continually runs through two pipes, and forms a rivulet. *Soderkiöping* is the thirty-fifth, in order, of the towns, which vote at the Diet. *Dablberg* has given a prospect of this city in his *Suecia*. Among the *Ostro-Gotland sheers* or rocks are the following places of note.

The noble quarries of marble, which is polished at a place about two *Swedish* miles from *Norrkiöping*.

The royal palace of *Stegeborg*, whither the Kings and great men used to withdraw for safety in troublesome times.

*Baresund*, a strait through which ships have a safe passage from the main sea up to the two cities above-mentioned. Here is a custom-house, where all ships that pass this way are searched.

The crown lands of *Braborg*, the old palace belonging to which the *Russians* destroyed in 1719.

*Skenas*, another royal estate, whose fine mansion-house was likewise burnt by the *Russians*.

*Gufum*, a curious brass flattening-mill.

The large and famous plain of *Brawalla*, in the District of *Wikebo*, where, in the year of Christ three hundred and seventy-five, a most bloody battle was fought between the *Swedes* and *Danes*, in which the latter were defeated.

2. *Westan-Stang* lies on the west side of the river *Stang* and the city of *Linkiöping*; and is divided into seven Districts, containing the following remarkable places.

*Linkiöping*, in Latin *Lincopia*, a very ancient town situated on the banks of the river *Stang*, not far from the *Roxen*-lake. The castle of *Linkiöping* was built about the close of the fifteenth century; and was once burnt down, but has been since well repaired. The cathedral was four times consumed by fire from the year 1416 to 1567. This city is a bishop's see, and has three churches; a *gymnasium* or seminary with seven masters, which was erected in 1628; a library near the cathedral, and a printing-house. There, are, however, but few mechanics and not one physician at *Linkiöping*. The governor of *East-Gotland* resides in this town. In the  
popish

popish times \* this city had several convents and chapels. One of the Kings was crowned, and, in the year 1600, a remarkable Diet held at *Linköping*. This is the twenty-ninth in order of the towns which have a vote at the Diet: A view of it may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Wardsberg*-church, which is one of the most ancient in *East-Gothland*, and is remarkable for the tower at the west end of it, which was formerly a fortress.

*Wreta*, a place where formerly stood a celebrated convent, which was one of the most ancient monasteries in the Kingdom, It was also the burial-place of several Kings; but all that remains of it now are only some ruinous walls, and the church, which is in a good condition. A perspective view of it may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*. The monuments of King *Ingo*, Queen *Helena*, King *Magnus*, King *Suercher*, and King *Ragwald* are to be seen here.

3. The Mine-Districts and *Finspanga-Lehn*, on the north side of the lakes *Roxen* and *Glan*. Here stands the elegant palace of *Finspang*, with the elevation of which *Dahlberg* has embellished his *Suecia*.

The WADSTENA-LEHN is divided into four Districts, in which the places of note are,

*Skeninge*, in Latin *Skeningia*, an ancient town situated in a fertile country on the river *Skena*. It was formerly a large and opulent city embellished with several churches and convents; but is now very much declined from its former flourishing condition. The annual fair held here on the twenty-ninth of *July* is, however, one of the greatest in the whole Kingdom. In the year 1248, a general council was held here pursuant to a bull of Pope *Innocent IV*. In that council the marriage of the clergy was prohibited as unlawful. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet, this is the forty-ninth in order. *Dahlberg* has given us a perspective view of *Skeninge* in his *Suecia*.

*Wadstena*, in Latin *Wadstenum*, is very pleasantly situated on the *Wetter*-lake. In ancient times here stood the castle of *Susenborg*. The celebrated ancient convent of *St. Brita* which stands in this town, and was inhabited by Monks and Nuns, was in Queen *Christina's* time converted to an hospital of invalids for the soldiery. But a nunnery has since been erected here. In the convent church which is large and elegant, several royal personages are interred. The castle of *Wadstena* is an ancient structure; and makes a grand figure with its moats, redoubts, and drawbridges. It was built in the year 1545. A muslin manufacture has been lately set up in this town. In the year 1567, this place was burnt by the *Danes*. Three remarkable Diets have been held at *Wadstena*, which is the forty-eighth in order, of

\* The author is so complaisant as to call the times of popish idolatory and superstition *Catholic* times. If any thing could make those dark ages deserve the name of *Catholic* it was the ignorance which universally prevailed in most parts of the world.



the towns that have a voice at the Diet. *Dahlberg* has inserted a perspective view of this town in his *Suecia*.

The royal palaces of *Starby*, *Hafgarden*, and *Stoforp*.

The ruins of the ancient grand convent of *Alwastra*, in which four Kings of the *Suercherian* line, and other eminent persons lie interred. These ruins are also to be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Medewi*, the most famous medicinal spring in the whole Kingdom, lies in a very pleasant spot about three *Swedish* miles from *Wadstena*.

*Hunger-quelle*, another remarkable spring, lies in the parish of *Nykirke*, the water of which rises and falls in the same proportion with the *Wetter-lake*. Its rising is supposed to portend a dearth; hence it derives its name.

The Royal seat of *Motala*, where some remains of an old castle which stood near it, are to be seen.

*Note.* In the third volume of *Dahlberg's Suecia* are perspective views of the following places:

The noble seat of *Breborg*, which is situated near *Brawiken*-bay.

*Stegeborg*, a palace, which stands near a gulf of the *Baltic*.

*Allono*, situated on the sea coast.

*Charlottenburg*, which lies on the bank of the *Motala*.

*Skenas*, which stands near the *Brawiken*-bay.

*Kongs Norby*.

*Idingstä.*

*Lofstad.*

*Mauritzberg*, situated near the gulf of *Brawiken*.

*Norsholm.*

*Rono*, a fine castle.

*Tuna*, which stands between the lakes of *Roxen* and *Gardfion*.

*Stiernorp*, situated on the bank of the *Roxen*-lake.

*Sturefors* which lies near the *Erlangen*-lake.

## II. S M A L A N D O R S M O L A N D,

In Latin *Smolandia*.

THIS country is twenty *Swedish* miles in length, and twelve in breadth; and was formerly governed by its own Kings. It was also for a considerable time included in *East-Gothland*, and had the same laws with that province. It was probably called *Smaland*, i. e. 'Small parcels of land,' because in ancient times the country was so over-run with woods and wastes, that

that the inhabitants could only cultivate a few spots here and there between them: And even to this day one meets with large heaps of stones in the woods, which were thrown together by the first inhabitants of this country, in order to clear the ground. Though *Smaland* is mountainous, those parts which are cultivated and improved by industry are very fruitful; and it is particularly remarkable for fine pastures, which bring in great profits to the graziers. Here are large forests of beech and other trees; and also silver, copper, and iron mines, &c. a great quantity of iron ore being found at the bottom of the lakes. A vein of gold ore has been likewise discovered in this province. The high mountain of *Hunsberg* resembles a cone, and may be seen at the distance of eight *Swedish* miles. The inhabitants get a comfortable subsistence by agriculture, the mines, and especially by graziery. They also deal in planks, beams, masts, tar, pot-ash, iron, grain, cattle, butter, cheese, flesh, bacon, tallow, hops, and fish. There are one and twenty lakes in this province; but they afford nothing remarkable. It is also watered by ten rivers, among which are

The *Emma*, in which are caught great numbers of salmon and shad.

The *Nissa*.

The *Laga*. And

The *Helge-a*.

The *Swedes* have a rhyming phrase concerning the three rivers last mentioned, signifying that *Nissa*, and *Laga* have proved fatal to many, but *Helge-a* to a far greater number.

*Smaland*, with regard to its ecclesiastical State, consists of two dioceses, namely.

1. That of *Wexio*, whose bishop is the sixth in rank in the Kingdom. This diocese includes the Governments or Prefectures of *Cronoberg* and *Jonkioping* (excepting *Sodra* and *Norra Wedbo* which belong to the diocese of *Linkioping*, and *Mobarad* in that of *Skara*) and contains twelve Provostships.

2. The diocese of *Calmar*, which is the eleventh of the *Swedish* bishoprics in order, and consists of all the Prefecture or Government of *Calmar*, excepting some Districts which belong to the diocese of *Linkioping*. The diocese of *Calmar* contains eight Provostships.

As to the political division of *Smaland*, it contains three Prefectures, which include four and twenty Districts. The Prefectures are as follow.

1. The Prefecture of *CALMAR* lies towards the *Sund* or Sound of *Calmar* and the *Baltic* or *East-Sea*, it contains nine Districts, the island of *Oeland*, and the following places of note.

*Calmar*, in Latin *Calmaria*, a fine staple city, and one of the oldest in *Gotbland*, lies on the main sea, opposite to the isle of *Oeland*. The form of it is nearly round; it has fine regular streets, and about four hundred and ninety houses. *Calmar* formerly stood on another spot and had several churches

churches and convents; but being destroyed by fire in 1647, it was afterwards built on the island of *Qvarnholm*. It is surrounded on the land side with four walls, and moats; but has only one wall towards the sea. At the distance of a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from the town stands the strong fort of *Grimskiar*; and towards the North, on the island of *Karinglaret*, is also another fort. *Calmar* castle stands near the Sound or Strait, opposite to the city, and has two ditches. It is so well fortified, that it was formerly not only the strongest fort in the whole kingdom; but when *Schonen* and *Blekingen* were dismembered from *Sweden*, it was looked upon as a key of the kingdom of *Gotbland*, and the most important fortress on the frontiers. Hence, in all the wars with *Sweden*, the *Danes* have never failed to direct their forces against it, and sometimes have carried it. In this city the famous union of *Calmar* was concluded between the three Northern Kingdoms; and King *Erick* of *Pomerania* was crowned King of all the three. Several articles of the Convention of *Calmar*, concluded in 1474 and 1483, also received the sanction of laws. In the year 1495, a Diet, or assembly of the States, was held here. The Prefect or Governor resides in the royal palace of *Hofmo* near this city. Here are also a Bishop's palace, a *Gymnasium* or seminary, a fine cathedral, and a commodious key for shipping; and the town is surrounded with a royal chace. A great quantity of deal boards, tar, and alum, is annually exported from this town; which has also good manufactories of cloths and woollen stuffs. The Sound, which runs between the castle and the island of *Oeland*, is called *Calmar* Sound, and is about a *Swedish* mile over. A fresh spring in the midst of the sea near this town deserves notice. In the Diet this is the seventh city in the order of voting. A perspective view of it is to be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Bromsebro* lies on the borders of *Blekingen*, and, as its name denotes, has a great bridge over a river which here discharges itself into the main sea. A small island lies in the middle of the river, on which two stones are erected for boundaries. In the years 1541 and 1572, a congress was held here to settle some disputes concerning the arms of the three Northern Crowns; and in 1645, a peace was concluded between *Sweden* and *Denmark* in this town.

*Wemmerby*, in Latin *Wenmaria*, a small, but very ancient town, stands very high, and not far from the river *Stang*. *Charles IX.* raised it from its declining condition; so that it is now the eighty-second of the towns that vote in the Diet. In ecclesiastical affairs it is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Linkioping*. *Dablberg* has inserted a perspective view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Hollarweden* is a large forest, in which the *Danes* were defeated by the *Swedes* in the fifteenth century.



*Westerwick*, in Latin *Westerwickia*, is a staple town situated near a bay, at the entrance of which stands *Spareberg* hill, which serves as a landmark to ships. The bay is called *Sparefund*; and near it is a custom-house, where all homeward and outward bound ships are searched. *Westerwick* formerly stood two *Swedish* miles higher up in the country, on the spot where the market-town of *Gammelby* now stands. It has a good harbour, a commodious key, and a cloth-manufacture; and carries a brisk trade in ship-timber and all sorts of naval stores. As to ecclesiastical affairs, it is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Linkioping*. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet this is the twelfth in order. *Dablberg* has given a perspective view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Stegeholm*, or *Stakeholm*, is a ruinous palace. The estate belonging to it was twice granted as a County; but since the year 1681, it reverted to the crown.

*Ofwrum*, a foundery for great guns.

2. The Government or Prefecture of *CRONBERG*, which contains six Districts, in which are the following towns, and places of note.

*Wexio*, in Latin *Wexionia*, a town situated almost in the centre of the province. It is the residence of the Prefect or Governor, and also a Bishop's see. It is said to have been built in the reign of King *Olaf Skotkonung*, who, according to some writers, founded this bishopric in the year 989; though others affirm that it was first founded in 1030. In the year 1570, this town was reduced to ashes by the *Danes*. In the times of Popery here was a convent. A *Gymnasium* or Seminary was founded here in 1648; but the library, and the cathedral which was above nine hundred years old, and was the burying place of St. *Siegfried* its founder, were destroyed by fire in 1740. Here is also shewn the spring in which St. *Siegfried* is said to have baptized a great number of converts. This city has the thirty-third vote in the Diet. *Dablberg* has given a perspective view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Trojenborg* is said, in former times, to have been a castle, and *Troja* a town near it; its remains being still to be seen in the parish of *Nykirke*, where the old fortification of *Trolleborg*, which was burnt in 1434, also stood. *Dablberg* has given a good draught of this part of the country.

*Cronoberg*, which stands on a small island in the *Helge*-lake, was formerly a fine castle. It was built, in 1002, by St. *Siegfried*, the first preacher of the Gospel in these parts, and was by him settled on the popish Bishops of this See. But in the year 1545, it was enlarged and walled in by King *Gustavus I.* and its former name of *Biskopsberg* was changed into that of *Cronoberg*. In the reign of King *Erick XIV.* it was consumed by fire; so that only the ruins of it are now remaining, which *Dablberg* has inserted in his *Suecia*. However, it still gives name to the fief or *Lehn* of *Cronoberg*.

*Fallerne* is a famous medicinal spring, about half a *Swedish* mile from *Wexio*.

*Ingellad* is a noted inn and post-house, about a *Swedish* mile and a half from *Wexio*, and was formerly a royal palace, with a castle.

*Browalla-Heide*, or *Browalla-heath*, lies about two *Swedish* miles from *Wexio*, and is famous for being the place where the *Danes* were totally routed by the heroine *Blendu*, who commanded the *Smaland* women in the absence of their husbands that were engaged in another expedition. As a recompense of their bravery the women of *Smaland* were honoured with extraordinary privileges, and wore a kind of martial head-dress: And they have still an equal share of inheritance with the men. *Dahlberg* has added to his map of this country some draughts of its antiquities.

3. The Prefecture of *JONKIÖPING* is divided into nine Districts, and contains the following towns and places of note.

*Jonkiöping*, in Latin *Junecopia*, a very ancient staple town, situated on a peninsula between the lakes of *Wetter*, *Munk*, and *Rock*. *Jonkiöping* formerly stood in another place, but the inhabitants were removed hither in the reign of *Gustavus Adolphus*. The suburbs, on both sides, are separated from the town by a canal, which conveys water out of the *Lill*-lake into that of *Rock*. In this town are three churches, an armory, an elaboratory, and an arsenal which belongs to the crown; fire arms are also made here. The supreme court of Justice for *Gotbland*, which was instituted in the year 1634, is held in this town; and ten provincial with forty-eight inferior courts, are under its jurisdiction. The Prefect or Governor of this *Lehn* or Fief resides at *Jonkiöping*. Here was formerly a mint, and a convent of regulars. The castle, which is of great antiquity, after having been several times destroyed, was rebuilt and fortified; but at last, in the year 1737, it was consumed by fire, together with the arsenal. In the year 1599, a Diet was held here. Near the town is a royal chase, or forest, planted with oaks. This town has the twenty-seventh vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of *Jonkiöping*.

*Ridabolm* is a parish, in which formerly stood a royal palace.

*Runlaborg*, or *Romlaborg*, is a ruinous royal palace and fortification, of which *Dahlberg* has given a perspective view in his *Suecia*.

*Husquarn* lies near a cataract or water-fall, and has a fine powder-mill. Fire arms are also made in this place. All these are represented in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Hwetlanda* is a market-town, where several ruinous remains of an ancient populous town called *Witala* are to be seen.

The parish of *Alsboda*, where, in 1738, the gold mine of *Aedelfors* was discovered, which was wrought with great success.

*Ekefio*, in Latin *Ekefioea*, is an inland town of great trade in oxen, tapestry, bedsteads, chairs, and other furniture. The *Ekefio* tobacco is also in great request.

request. This town lies within the diocese of *Linkioping*, and has the fifty-eighth vote in the Diet. A view of it may be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Grenna*, or *Brabe Grenna*, is a small town lying between the *Wetter*-lake and a high mountain. It is opposite to *Wisingso*, and derives its name from Count *Peter Brabe*, by whom it was built. *Grenna* trades largely in oxen, and has a tobacco plantation. This is the ninety-eighth in order of the towns that vote in the Diet; and has a place in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Wisingso*, in Latin *Wisungia*, is a fertile and pleasant island in the *Wetter*-lake. It is a *Swedish* mile long, and half a mile broad; and was formerly fortified with a superb castle, built by the *Brabe* family, from which they had the title of Counts. In the reign of *Charles XI.* this island devolved to the crown; and in 1718, the castle was burnt by the *Russian* prisoners. Here are a *gymnasium*, a school, a park, and a remarkable grotto called *Gilberts-loch*. This island in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries was frequently the residence of the *Gothic* Kings.

*Note.* In the third volume of *Dablberg's Suecia* are perspective views of the following Noblemens seats.

*Wisensborg.*

*Wastana*, situate on the *Wetter*-lake.

*Bergwara.*

*Brokin.*

*Brachaela.*

*Ekesio* town-house.

*Brabeuus*, which stands on the *Wetter*-lake.

*Griepenbergs.*

### III. O E L A N D.

In Latin *Oelandia*.

**T**HIS pleasant island lies in the *Baltic*, directly opposite to the *Calmar* Sound. It is fourteen *Swedish* miles in length, and but a mile and a half over in the broadest place; and is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*. In the former are several fine forests, and a great many stone quarries; but in the latter the ground is more level, and fit both for tillage and pasture. The island in general yields plenty of butter, honey, wax, and nuts. The *Oeland* horses, or *kleppers*, as they are called, are small, but strong and full of mettle. The King's forest extends over the whole island. Here are also numbers of deer of several kinds, with



hares, and wild boars. Both parts of the island abound in alum-mines. The *Oeland Sandstein*, or free-stone, comes from this island, which is much harder than that of *Gottland*; and also black marble, or touch-stone. The *Alga*, or sea-weed, is used here, with pretty good effect, instead of other manure. The inhabitants, who are said to exceed seven thousand souls, have various occupations; being employed in agriculture, working in the quarries, cutting stones, burning lime, fishing, and navigation. The sailors belonging to the crown are generally quartered in this island. The four Provostships, into which *Oeland* is divided, are in the Diocese of *Calmar*.

In the *North Part*, which consists of three Districts, are the following places of note.

*Borgholm*, which is a stately royal seat and well fortified. It has been several times taken by the *Danes*; but the *Swedes* have always insisted on its being given up to them again by treaties. When *Charles X.* was only presumptive heir to the crown he resided here; the revenues of the island being appropriated to that Prince; and by his order, the old palace being pulled down, the present edifice was built. Near it is the commodious harbour of *Borga*; and a royal farm lies at a small distance from it. *Dalkberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given us three views of this castle.

The royal palaces of *Horn* and *Haltorp*.

*Jungfrun* is a high and dangerous rocky island in the sea, and has proved fatal to many ships. It is about a *Swedish* mile in circumference, and lies at the distance of three *Swedish* miles from the north point of *Oeland*. On the summit of it is a small lake.

In the *South Part*, which consists of four Districts, is the large royal farm of *Ottenby*, noted for its fine breed of sheep.

#### IV. G O T T L A N D.

In Latin *Gottlandia*.

THIS is an island in the *Baltic* about eighteen *Swedish* miles in length, and from five to six in breadth. From its convenient situation it has justly acquired the name of the *Eye of the Baltic*. It was formerly governed by its own Kings, and had its peculiar laws and privileges; but is now subject to the Supreme Court of Justice at *Stockholm*. It is said to have been called *Gottland* from having been the winter quarters of the *Goths*, when they put to sea on naval expeditions and piracies.

The soil is fertile; and there are fine woods of oaks and pines, good pastures, and profitable fisheries on this island. In *Burfwick* are large

quarries

quarries of stone, particularly the famous *Gottland*-stone, and a soft grey sandy-stone, which are exported to *Stockholm* and other places. Here are also found some curious species of stones, as stone corals, and branches of coral stones of several kinds, cornelians, agates, and beautiful petrefactions. In former times here were also fine marble quarries. Very good lime-stones, tar, deal-boards, beams, turneps, and an excellent breed of sheep are exported from this island. *Gottland* is not infested with bears or wolves; but is sufficiently stocked with deer, foxes, and hares.

The inhabitants subsist by agriculture, grazing, fishing, working in the quarries, burning lime; and by several sorts of mechanic trades, and navigation. The *Gottland* peasants sell none of their commodities to the inhabitants of the towns; but when a peasant comes to a market-town, the burgher to whom he applies finds him in all necessaries, gives him money to enable him to pay his taxes, and provides him with all necessary commodities. On the other hand, the peasant delivers up to the burgher all the produce of his industry, without saying a word about the price; and thus both parties act according to the dictates of natural justice and equity.

In the year 1361, *Waldemar*, King of *Denmark*, ravaged this island, and laid it waste; but it still remained subject to the crown of *Sweden*. *Albert* King of *Sweden*, after an expensive war, was obliged to mortgage it to the Knights of the Cross in *Prussia*, who, in consideration of a sum of money delivered it up, in 1403, to Queen *Margaret*, though with some reluctance. King *Erick*, of *Pomerania*, after he was dethroned, withdrew to this island, where he remained for three years: And when *Charles VIII.* was preparing to drive him from *Gottland*, and make a conquest of it in the year 1449, *Erick* made an offer of it to *Christian I.* King of *Denmark*. It remained in the possession of the *Danes* till the year 1645, when, by the treaty of *Bromsebro*, it was restored to *Sweden*. Round *Gottland* lie twenty islands large and small. The Superintendent is the fourteenth in rank; and the diocese is composed of the city of *Wisby* and three Provostrhips. The whole island forms but one Prefecture or Government, which consists of two jurisdictions and two *Vogteys*.

*Gottland* is divided into three parts, namely, the North, Middle, and South Part; the first of which contains seven; the second six; and the third seven Districts. The only places worth notice are the following.

*Wisby*, in Latin *Wisbia*, a very ancient staple city; situated in another place till the year 800, when the inhabitants were removed to the present town. In former times it was one of the *Hanse-towns*, and made a considerable figure in the kingdom. When *Wineta*, a place of great trade in the island of *Usedom* near the coast of *Pomerania*, was destroyed by an inundation, several of its wealthiest inhabitants removed to *Wisby*. It was likewise frequented by *Swedes*, *Goths*, *Danes*, *Normans*, *French*, *English*, *Saxons*, *Livonians*, *Spaniards*, *Russians*, *Greeks*, and other nations. In the times

times of popery there were three churches and five convents within the city, besides two without the walls. The maritime laws of *Wisby* were famous in all parts, and adopted along the coast of the *Baltic*. The wall of *Wisby*, and the towers with which it is flanked, were built in the year 1289. This city continued in a flourishing condition till the year 1361, when the *Danes*, making themselves masters of the town, almost totally destroyed it. *Erick*, the *Pomeranian*, built the castle called *Wisberg* in 1411, which was dismantled by the *Danes* in 1649. Here was formerly a good library, which contained several curious manuscripts. *Wisby* is the residence of the Superintendent and Prefect, and has a church and a school: It is at present in a pretty flourishing condition. The harbour is safe and commodious, but not very large. Of the towns that have a vote in the Diet this is the fourteenth in order. *Dablberg* has given us both a plan and perspective view of this city in his *Suecia*.

The royal manor of *Roma* or *Ruma*-convent, where there is a stately convent; and *Slotts-Ladugarden*.

*Carlsward* is a fort, built by King *Charles X.* on *Ekeholm*, near *Slitehamn*, which is the best and largest of all the harbours in this District.

*Far-o*, a pleasant island lies about a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from the continent. It is about two *Swedish* miles in length and consists of two parishes.

*Sand-o* is an island famous for a seal-fishery.

The *Great* and *Little Carls-Insel*, or *Charles's Islands*, lie about a *Swedish* mile from the coast. Here formerly was a quarry out of which marble for building the churches in *Gottland* was dug up.

## W E S T - G O T H L A N D,

In Latin *Gotbia occidentalis*,

CONTAINS four Provinces, *West-Gothland*, properly so called, *Warmeland*, *Daland*, and *Bohns-Lebn*.

### I. W E S T - G O T H L A N D,

In Latin *Westro-Gotbia*.

This Province lies below the *Wener*-lake, and is twenty *Swedish* miles in length, and sixteen in breadth. It was formerly governed by its own Kings. and had its particular laws and privileges, The soil produces fruit-trees, corn, and vegetables; and the pastures are so rich that grazing turns



turns to very good account here; so that the inhabitants can supply other parts with cheese, butter, &c. the former being much admired. Here are iron and alum works, and paper-mills; and near *Gotthenburg* are several fine fisheries. The occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, grazing, fishing, and traffick.

On a mountain called *Kina Kulle*, between the lakes of *Wener* and *Skare*, (which mostly consists of slate, sand-stone, and lime-stone, and at the distance of eight or nine *Swedish* miles off resembles a hat,) are five parishes, and several Noblemens seats, with gardens and orchards. On the high mountains of *Warkullen* are thirty-eight churches; and on *Hunneberg*, where the *Huns* were defeated with a terrible slaughter, are three-and-twenty lakes, and several rivulets which set six mills in motion. Some of the rocks on this mountain look like *Ionic* and *Corinthian* pillars. *Hakla* another hill, which stands in a fine valley betwixt *Hall* and *Hur-neberg*, like *Moffeberg*, is remarkable for a high precipice; from which, in the dark ages of Paganism, many devotees used to throw themselves headlong, from a false principle of religion. The bodies of those wretched victims were first washed, and then buried under the hill. *Dahlberg* has given us a fine view of this mountain in his *Suecia*.

The *Wener*-lake is fourteen *Swedish* miles long, and seven broad, and ebbs and flows in an extraordinary manner. This lake is stored with great plenty of fish. Four-and-twenty rivers empty themselves into the *Wener*-lake, yet none flows out of it but the large river called *Gotha-Elbe*, by which outlet it discharges itself into the sea. There are several islands in this lake. In the year 1744, the Diet resolved to make the passage from the *Wener*-lake and the *Gotha-Elbe* to *Gotthenburg*, and from thence to *Oerebro*, navigable. The chief rivers in this province are,

1. The *Halle*. There is a view of the cataract formed by this river, in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

2. The *Gotha-Elbe*, or *Gothic* river, which issues from the *Wener*-lake, and empties itself into the *North-Sea* near *Gotthenburg*. About seven *Swedish* miles and a half from its mouth is the stupendous cataract or water-fall of *Trollkatta*. The water is here precipitated between two rocks, and consists of three cascades, each of which is about five fathoms high; but they are about three hundred fathoms from one another. Half a *Swedish* mile from the water-fall, near the village of *Rownam*, is a bridge, built from one rock to another, over another high cataract formed by this river, at the bottom of which great numbers of fine salmon are caught; and two *Swedish* miles lower down is another water-fall, where the boats and other vessels pass through three sluices. The two cataracts first mentioned make a fine appearance in *Dahlberg's Suecia*. The timber is floated to *Gotthenburg* down this river; and since the time of *Charles XII.* a project has been formed to make it every where navigable.

3. The

3. The *Gullspang*, which divides *East-Gothland* from *Warmeland*. There are several other lakes in the province, besides the *Wener* and the *Wetter*.

*West-Gothland*, as to its ecclesiastical State, is divided into two dioceses; namely, that of *Skara*, which is the third in rank, and includes fifteen *Provostships*; and that of *Gothenburg*, which is the tenth in rank, and, exclusive of the city of *Gothenburg*, contains nine *Provostships*. With regard to its political establishment, this province consists of the following *Prefectures* or *Governments*.

1. The Government of *GOTHENBURG*, which contains four *Districts*, and the following towns and places of note.

*Gotheborg*, or *Gothenburg*, in Latin *Gotoburgum*, a Staple town, first built by *Charles IX.* in 1607, on the island of *Hisingen*, about half a *Swedish* mile from the fortress of *Ufsborg*. But being destroyed in the year 1611 by *Christian IV.* the inhabitants about seven years after, in the reign of *Gustavus Adolphus*, were removed to the place where the town now stands, and were favoured with several eminent privileges. *Gothenburg* is the principal and most opulent town, and carries on the most considerable trade of any city in *Sweden*, excepting *Stockholm*. It lies on the borders of *West-Gothland*, at the mouth of the river *Moludal*; which runs close by the north side of the city, and by means of several canals is conveyed through the town. Since the year 1746, the greatest part of *Gothenburg* has been rebuilt with stone; and the streets are broad, and kept very clean. It is also regularly fortified; and on the land side is defended by the two citadels called the *Lion* and the *Crown*; and towards the sea by the citadel of *New-Elfsburg*. The suburb is called *Haga*. The Governor of the *Prefectures* of *Gothenburg* and *Bobus*, who is also the commandant of the forts and fortifications, resides in this city. *Gothenburg* is also a *Bishop's See*. Here are two *Printing-houses*; a *Gymnasium* or *Seminary*, erected in 1648; an *Orphan-house*; a *City-church*; an edifice called the *Kronhaus*, or *Crown-house*, where the garrison attend divine service; a *German-church*; and several keys and docks. The number of the inhabitants in this city is computed at 13,000. In the year 1635, a *Mint* was set up in this town; but it was destroyed by a terrible fire which reduced this place to ashes in 1669. *Gothenburg* was also very much damaged by fire in 1721 and 1746. In 1658 and 1660, *Diets* or assemblies of the States were held here. In the year 1731, an *East-India Company* was established in this city, which has, since that time, sent a considerable number of ships to those parts. In the same year a *Sugar-house* was erected in the *Old town*, as it is called, about half a *Swedish* mile from *Gothenburg*, which turns out to a good account. It may be supposed that a great number of ships frequent *Gothenburg*, as the vessels sailing from all foreign sea-ports without the *Cattogat*, may enter this port without being obliged to pass through the *Sound*, or the *Baltic*. The harbour is at  
present



present an excellent one; but the depth of water is said gradually to decrease in it. Here is held a College of Admiralty; and a squadron of men of war lies in this port. A brigade of Engineers, and a constant garrison are also kept in this city. In the year 1740, a General Court-martial, a *Leuterations Gericht* or Court of Appeal, &c. were established in this town. In the same year, an iron weighing-house, two docks for ship-building, and two woollen-manufactories were set up here. Without *Carlsport* a spring of medicinal water was discovered in the year 1711. *Dahlberg* in his *Suecia*, has given a perspective view of this city, and likewise of the King's, and the Queen's Gate. *Gothenburg* is the fourth in order among the towns which have a vote in the Diet.

*Gulberg*, *Gulbrandskus*, or *Gulbergshed*, is a fortress built in the year 1304 by King *Birger*, and put in a defensible state by *Charles XI*.

*Kronan*, i. e. 'the Crown,' is a fort built on a hill close by *Gothenburg*: It was erected in the year 1639.

*Neu-Elfsborg*, an excellent fortification, built in the year 1646. It stands about a *Swedish* mile from *Gothenburg*, and defends it towards the sea. *Dahlberg* has given views of these forts in his *Suecia*.

*Hisingen*, is a triangular island, and lies between *Bobus* and *Gothenburg*. It is three *Swedish* miles long and one broad, and consists of three *Pastorates* and seven parishes: it is divided into *East* and *West Hisingen*.

*Nylodese*, in Latin *Ludofia Nova*, but now called *Gamla-stadt*, or the *Old Town*, lies directly opposite to the island of *Hisingen*. It was formerly a very flourishing town, being situated on the *North-Sea*, and was governed by its own laws. This town was built in the year 1545. The burghers of *Gamla*, or *Old Lodese*, obtained leave to remove hither, and live in *New Lodese* for the conveniency of trade as it stands nearer the sea. But the town being entirely burnt by the *Danes* in 1611, the inhabitants withdrew to *Alingsfabs*.

*Gamla-Elfsborg*, or *Old Efsborg*, was formerly a town with a strong castle built on the sea-coast. It has, from time to time, sustained several sieges and undergone many severe calamities; particularly during the turbulent times in the fifteenth century. In the year 1563, this town was burnt, and the castle surrendered to the *Danes*; but was again restored to the crown of *Sweden*. In 1611, the *Danes* became masters of it again, and, about two years after, it was restored a second time to the *Swedes*. *Dahlberg* has inserted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Gamla-Lodese*, or *Old Lodese*, was formerly a considerable and well fortified town, and lies about four *Swedish* miles from *Neu Lodese* mentioned above. In 1296 and 1304, it was reduced to ashes; and, at last, in the reign of *Gustavus I*. the inhabitants removed to *Altstat* or the *Old Town* near *Neu Lodese*. However, it retained its ancient privileges till the year 1646, when Queen *Christina* reduced it to a manor or farm. Several re-



mains of this town are still visible, as the ruins of churches, convents, walls, &c.

*Note.* To this Prefecture or Government also belongs *Bobus-Lebn*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of *ELFSBORG* is divided into thirteen Districts, containing, among others, the following towns and places of note.

*Wenersborg*, in Latin *Wenersburgum*, a *Landstadt* \* or inland town, lies between the lakes of *Wener* and *Wasbohn*, at the efflux of the *Gotbo-Elbe* out of the former. It was built in the year 1642, by the burghers of *Bretta*, a town situated about half a *Swedish* mile from *Wenersborg*. All the iron consigned from *Warmeland* to *Gothenburg* passes through this place. The Prefect, or Governor, of the *Lebn* or fief resides in this town, which was formerly well fortified. Among those cities which have a vote in the Diet this is the forty-fourth in order.

*Edsborg*, or *Edsbohm*, was formerly a round fortress environed with water, and the residence of the ancient Kings of the *Visigoths*.

*Alingsfahs*, is an inland town situated on the banks of the river *Sewelanga*; and was built by the inhabitants of *Ny-Lodese*, after the destruction of their town by the enemy. A fine silk and woollen manufacture is established here. Tobacco is also spun; and tobacco pipes are made in this town. *Alingsfahs* has no magistrates, but is subject to the Justiciary of the said manufactures, to whom are joined four counsellors, as assistants. This is the eighty-first voting town in the Diet. A view of it is to be seen in *Dalberg's Suecia*.

*Borahs*, in Latin *Boeresia*, is an inland town situated in a mild and mountainous country, on the river *Wiska*. It was founded by King *Gustavus Adolphus*, and in the year 1622, endowed with several privileges. The inhabitants of this town travel the whole Kingdom as pedlars, and deal in linen, &c. for which end they also have several privileges beyond what other towns enjoy. These itinerant dealers are so accustomed to travel about with their goods, that they look upon it as something irreputable to stay at home even for one half of the year. In 1727, this town was destroyed by fire; but has since been rebuilt and continues in a good condition. Here is a spring of medicinal water. *Borahs* has the forty-third vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Quarfebo*, where there is a Post-Office.

*Kialeby* and *Alfwom*, which are Crown demesnes.

*Ulricabamn* is a very old inland town situated on the banks of the *Afunda*-lake. It was formerly called *Bogefund*; but its present name was given it in the Diet of 1741, in memory of Queen *Ulrica Eleanora*.

\* *Landstadt*; which I have rendered an inland town, is a place where there is a magazine for goods. See Introduction to *Sweden*.

It carries on a good trade in cattle, provisions, tobacco, &c. In the year 1520, a battle was fought in these parts between the *Swedes* and the *Danes*. *Ulricabamm* has the sixty-first vote in the Diet, and has a place in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Rinnabohm*, or *Rinnabus*, is a ruinous frontier fortification.

*Oereften* is an ancient manor belonging to the Crown. A palace stood here formerly, near which King *Christian I.* lost a battle. The Lordship about it is called *Oerefte-Lebn*.

*Note.* This District belongs to *East-Gothic Thal-land*.

3. The Prefecture of *SKARABORG* consists of fifteen Districts, and contains the following towns and places of note.

*Skara*, formerly called *Skaurum*, in Latin *Scarum*, is the most ancient city in the country; and was formerly the capital of the Kingdom of *Gothland*, and the residence of many of its Kings. It had also several churches and convents, the ruins of which are still to be seen. This town was totally destroyed by fire in 1719, so that, at present, the number of its inhabitants does not exceed four hundred. Here is a *gymnasium* or seminary which was erected in the year 1640; and the cathedral is one of the largest structures of that kind in the whole Kingdom. The Royal palace which stood near this city, and was built in 1545, was laid in ashes by the *Danes*, together with the whole town, in the year 1611. A little without the town is a park; and at a small distance from it stands *Brunsbø* an episcopal See. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet this is the thirty-second in order. A view of it may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Scaraborg*, formerly a fortified royal castle, lies about half a *Swedish* mile north of the town of *Skara*: Some ruins of it are still existing. *Scaraborg Lebn* or fief derives its name from this ruinous castle.

*Gellaquist*, *Gotbala*, and *Axewal*, were formerly fine castles but now lie in ruins. *Dahlberg* has, however, bestowed a plate on the first and last of them.

*Hogentorp* is an ancient crown manor which lies in a most delightful country. The mansion-house affords a view of two-and-thirty lakes. Here is a breed of *English* sheep for the use of the woollen manufactory at *Alingsfals*; and likewise a plantation of tobacco, and a fine park.

*Warnbem* was formerly a convent, built in the year 1150, by King *Suercher*. Several kings lie buried in this monastery. The church was repaired by Count *Magnus Gabriel de la Gardie*; and a prospect of it, with draughts of the tombs of King *Knut* and *Erick X.* and King *Erick XI.* and also *Jugo* and the above-mentioned Count, is to be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Hufaby*, formerly a celebrated royal palace, was by King *Olof Skotkonung* converted into a Christian church, where together with his consort, he lies interred. This church was the first cathedral erected in *Sweden*; and

*Hufaby* was the most ancient Bishop's See, and had the first Christian school in the Kingdom. Near the Bishop's palace, which now lies in ruins, is the famous spring called *Siegfried's* well, where King *Olof* was baptized in the year 1012. *Dablberg* has inserted perspective views of these places in his *Suecia*.

*Aranas*, and *Ingatorp*, were formerly royal castles; but only the ruins of them are now to be seen. *Gudbern* was also a stately convent; and a view of its ruins is to be seen in *Dablberg*.

*Lidköping*, in Latin *Lidcopia*, is a small inland town, well situated at the influx of the *Lida* into the *Wener*-lake. The river divides it into the *Old* and *New Town*, which are both handsomely built; and the streets are well laid out. *Lidköping* is one of the largest and pleasanter market towns in the whole Kingdom. A very famous fair is held here annually on the twenty-ninth of *September*. The inhabitants of the town are computed to be betwixt four and five hundred souls. It is the fifty-first voting town in the Diet; and the view of it makes a pretty appearance in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Lecko* is an ancient royal palace situated on a delightful island in the *Wener*-lake. A view of it is to be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Gothslunda*, a royal manor or farm, was in the time of paganism a royal palace, where several Kings resided.

*Marie-stad*, in Latin *Mariestadium*, is an inland town, near which the river *Tida* empties itself into the *Wener*-lake. It was built by Duke *Charles*, who gave it the name of *Mariestad* in honour of his Dutchess, and, in 1583, endowed it with several privileges. Before it a very spacious prison has been erected. *Dablberg* has given a view of this place in his *Suecia*.

*Marieholm* is an estate belonging to the Crown on an island in the river *Tida*, and the place where the Governor of the *Lebn* or fief resides.

*Hoffwa*, which was formerly a town, but is now little better than a village, has both a Post-office and Custom-house; and the produce of the latter is pretty considerable. In the year 1276 King *Waldemar* was here taken prisoner by his brother; and a battle was fought in this place in ancient times between the brothers of *Hading* the *Gothic* King and *Olof* King of *Denmark*.

*Skiofde*, in Latin *Scedvia*, is a small but ancient and well situated inland town. Formerly the bones and other reliques of St. *Helena*, who is said to have been buried in the town church, which was founded by that saint in the twelfth century, were worshipped here with great devotion. This is the sixty-third town that has a vote in the Diet.

*Kungslena*, is an estate belonging to the Crown, on which stands a large village laid out in regular streets. This place is noted for a signal defeat the *Danes* suffered here in the year 1208.



*Hio*, in Latin *Hiovia*, a very old inland town situated on the bank of the *Wetter*-lake. Here is a good salmon fishery which is of considerable advantage to the inhabitants, who carry on some trade besides. It is the sixty-second voting town in the Diet.

*Falkioping*, in Latin *Falcopia*, is an inland town situated on a fruitful spot betwixt two mountains, almost in the centre of the District; but no wood grows in this neighbourhood. A view of it may be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*. Near this town an obstinate and bloody engagement was fought in 1388 between King *Albert* and Queen *Margaret*, in which the former was taken prisoner together with his son. The country about this town is called *Falbygden*.

*Carleby-Langa* is one of the largest villages in *Sweden*. Here *Ragwald Knapfode*, King of the *Visigoths*, was defeated and buried in 1132. Accordingly several *tumuli*, which were the graves of that monarch and other persons of distinction, are still to be seen here.

*Note.* In the third volume, of *Dablberg's Suecia* are to be seen perspective views of the following seats:

*Granas*, which is situated on the *Anten*-lake.

*Nas*, *Hojentorp*, and *Hallekis* on the *Wener*-lake.

*Hansäter*, which is also situated near the *Wener*-lake.

*Lindholm*, built on an island in the same lake. *Mariedal*, and *Sundholm*, in the *Okern*-lake.

## II. W A R M E L A N D,

In Latin *Vermelandia*;

**F**ORMS a semicircle round the north part of the *Wener*-lake; and is said to be about five-and-thirty *Swedish* miles in length from *Nasudden* on the *Wener*-lake to *Elfwedal*, and twenty-four *Swedish* miles in breadth from *Nerike* to the frontiers of *Norway*. It derives the name of *Warmeland*, or *Wariemannaland*, from the *Gothic* word *Wara*, *Warja*, or *Warast*, which signifies to defend; the inhabitants of this country, which borders on *Norway*, having bravely defended it from the incursions of their enemies. In the pagan times this province had its own Sovereign.

This country is almost every where mountainous; but the east and south parts are more level and fertile than the west and north parts. However, the woods, and mines of silver, lead, copper, and iron, with forges, founderies, &c. belonging to them, furnish the inhabitants of the latter with a greater variety of employments. In the year 1726, some pure silver was found in an  
iron-

iron-mine not far from *Philipstadt*; and the memory of this extraordinary circumstance has been preserved in some medals struck on the occasion. In this country are seen several *tumuli* or eminencies, which formerly served for juridical and sepulchral purposes.

The chief occupation of the inhabitants is mining, smelting, &c. together with fishing, and a little agriculture. Their trade consists mostly in masts, planks, timber, the bark of birch trees, &c.

The chief river in this province is the *Clara* or *Stor-Elbe*, in which there is a very profitable salmon-fishery. The principal lake, besides the *Wener* above described, is the *Fryken*, which is eight *Swedish* miles in length, but narrow: It has a communication with the *Wener*-lake by means of the river *Noor* or *Fryks-elbe*.

As to the ecclesiastical government, this province is a Superintendency called the Diocese of *Carlstadt*, which is the twelfth in rank, and consists of *Warmeland*, and *Thal-land* in *West-Gothland*. It is divided into nine Provostships.

The whole province of *Warmeland* belongs to the government of *Nerike*, and is divided into eleven *Land* and two *Mine-Districts*.

1. MELLAN-SYSSLET contains four Districts, and lies in the middle of the province. Places of note in *Mellan-syssel* are

*Carlstadt*, in Latin *Carolo stadium*, an inland-town, built by Duke *Charles* on the island of *Tingwalla*, where the river *Clara* runs into *Wener*-lake. It stands in a very commodious situation, has above eight hundred inhabitants, a Superintendent, a school founded by King *Charles XI.* a woollen manufacture, a good metal weigh-house, from which every year great quantities of iron and copper are exported; and is a place of a considerable trade. *Charles* the Ninth's palace, called *Carlborg*, formerly stood on the spot where the church is built. There is a good medicinal spring not far from this town; which, in the order of the Diet, has the thirty-eighth voice. In the year 1752, *Carlstadt* was quite destroyed by fire. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of it.

*Warpnas* is a village, where a market is held, and belongs to the parish of *Noor*.

2. OESTRASYSSLET consists of two *Land* and two *Mine-Districts*. Remarkable places in this *Syssel* are

*Christinabam*, in Latin *Christine portus*, a town, in which a good market was formerly held. It was made a town in the reign of *Charles IX.* and had its charter of privileges, in the year 1642, from Queen *Christina*. It is built on the royal manor of *Bro* near the *Wener*-lake, and contains about six hundred inhabitants. A great quantity of iron is annually exported from the Metal-Weigh-house in this town. Not far from *Christinabam* is an excellent medicinal spring. This is the sixty-seventh, in order, of the towns

towns which have a vote in the Diet. *Dablberg's Suecia* exhibits a view of this town.

*Philipstadt*, in Latin *Philipostadium*, is a town surrounded with lakes and mountains. It was built by, and had its charter of privileges from *Charles IX.* who called it after the name of his son *Charles Philip*. When this town was consumed by fire in 1694, its privileges were revoked; and the inhabitants were included under the jurisdiction of the Provincial Court. But in 1720 it obtained the privileges of a Trading Place; and a Justiciary, with an assistant, was also appointed to preside in the court of Judicature that was erected here. *Philipstadt* is the seventy-ninth town that has a vote in the Diet. In *Dablberg's Suecia* there is a view of it.

*Nya-Elfhytta*, a considerable iron-foundery, stands on the bank of the river *Swart* in the parish of *Carlskoga*. In this place are cast excellent iron-stoves, small field-pieces, cannon-balls, and grape-shot.

3. WESTRA-SYSSLET is divided into four Districts, and formerly had two forts, namely, *Eda* and *Morast*; but the former is now demolished.

### III. T H A L - L A N D or D A L A N D,

*i. e.* The Vale-country of *West-Gothland*.

**T**HIS province is called in Latin *Dalia*, in Swedish *Dal*, and derives its name from the great number of vallies it contains. It lies between the *Wener*-lake and *Bobus-Lebn*, and is ten *Swedish* miles in length, and five and a half in breadth. Mountains and rocks constitute the greatest part of this province; and mount *Borekne* is the highest among the former. Here are also several forests and woods. The plains and vallies that lie between the hills are so fruitful as to supply the country with plenty of grain. The inhabitants subsist chiefly by agriculture, grazing, breeding of sheep, fishing, weaving, working in the mines, &c. They also traffick in masts, deal-planks, tar, horses, oxen, sheep, bacon, butter, cheese, &c. The principal lake in this province is that of *Stora-Led*, which is about seven *Swedish* miles in length, but not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; and part of it lies in the province of *Warmeland*.

The Clergy of this province, which is divided into two Provostships, are under the jurisdiction of the Superintendent of *Carlstadt*, of which mention has been made above. *Daland* is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

1. In the *North Part* of this province, which is rocky and mountainous, and consists of two Districts, are the following places of note.



*Amal*, in Latin *Amalia*, a town situate on the *Wener*-lake, which divides the town and the market-place into two parts. *Amal*, was founded in the year 1640. Here is a Metal-Weigh-house and a harbour on the *Wener*; and this town drives a considerable trade, particularly in timber, deals, and tar. It has long since recovered itself after the fires which happened in 1645 and 1676. It is the eighty-ninth town of those that vote in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Billingfors*, and *Kollero*, two noted forges, lie in this part of the province.

2. In the *South Part* of *Daland* which is a champaign country, and consequently is more fertile than the *North Part*, are three Districts, in which are the following places of note.

*Dalaborg*, in Latin *Dalaburgum*, formerly a palace and fortress. It was built in the year 1304; but taken and dismantled in 1434.

*Brette* was formerly a town, situated on the *Wener*, but is now desolate; its inhabitants, by the King's order, having removed to *Wenersborg*, which lies about half a *Swedish* mile from *Brette*.

#### IV. B O H U S - L E H N,

In Latin *Præfectura Babufice*.

THIS Prefecture or Government is said to take its name from the castle of *Bobus* or *Babus*, so called from the *Norwegian* word *Bay*, 'great and splendid,' and *Hus* which signifies a house. It is also called *WIKÉ*. It is bounded on one side by the *North-Sea*, and on the other by the *West-Gothische Thal-land*, or Vale-country of *West-Gotland*. This province extends from *Swinefund* as far as the river called *Gotha-Elbe*; being one-and-twenty *Swedish* miles in length, and between three and four in breadth. The country is in general level, and the soil fertile, consisting of fine arable and meadow-land, diversified with woods, lakes, and rivers. In the *Sheers* or rocks on the coast salt-works have been set up, where salt is boiled from the sea-water.

Near *Uddewalla* is a high mountain, which chiefly consists of a kind of shells that are dug up and calcined for lime. In many places in this *Lehn* are large cavities in the mountains, which resemble spacious apartments, and are called *Riefen-boblen*, or 'Giants-holes.'

There are several lakes and rivers in this province; particularly the river called *Gotha-Elbe*, which divides itself into two arms or branches, (that which directs its course to the West belonging to this *Lehn*;) and another

another river called *Quistrom*. There are good salmon-fisheries in both these rivers.

The chief occupations of the inhabitants are fishing, grazing, and agriculture. They also carry on a trade in planks, masts, deals, tar, lime, tallow, hides, cattle, and all kinds of fish.

This country had anciently belonged to the crown of *Sweden*; and in 1658 was again ceded to the *Swedes*, by *Denmark*, at the treaty of *Roschild*. Hence it is that we treat of it here, though it is generally looked upon as a part of *Norway*. *Bobus-Lehn*, as to its ecclesiastical state, is in the Diocese of *Gothenburg*, and, with regard to its political government, is divided into the *South* and *North Part*.

1. The *South Part*, which is also called the *Binnen-Land*, contains four Districts, the places of note in which, are

*Kongbell*, or *Kongsball*, in Latin *Kongbella*, a very ancient town, environed on all sides by the rivers *Norre-Elf* and *Giotbe-Elf*. It is so called from its having been the *Hall* or Court of the ancient Kings. In the reign of King *Sigurd Jorsalafars*, who lived in the twelfth century, it was the principal city in *Norway*. He not only made it his place of residence, but also granted it a very honourable and advantageous charter. That Prince likewise embellished it with several noble structures; and among the rest built a palace here, which, after his death, was converted into a monastery, and provided for its defence by a castle and other works. But in the time of King *Harold Gylles* it was sacked by the *Vandals*; and is so far from recovering its former prosperity, that it was deprived of several of its ancient privileges by King *Charles Gustavus*. *Kongbell* was originally built on the spot where the royal palace of *Castelle-Ladugarden*, or the residence of the Commandant, now stands; but in the time of King *Christian IV.* it was built on another foundation. From the year 1680 to 1700, it was the residence of a Governor, who in the last mentioned year removed to *Gothenburg*. This is the eighty-third town that votes in the Diet; and a view of it may be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

The castle of *Bobus*, from which the whole Province or Prefecture derives its name, lies opposite to the town; and is a very strong fortification, built on a rock, and surrounded by the river called *Gotha-Elbe*. There is a spring of very good water in this fort. King *Christian I.* built both the walls and houses with stone in the year 1448; whereas the latter were before only of wood. *Dablberg* has inserted a view of this castle in his *Suecia*.

*Marstrand*, in Latin *Marstrandia*, is a very ancient staple-town, situated on the sea-coast, with a spacious, deep, and secure harbour, into which there is an entrance on the north and south side; and it is defended by the strong citadel of *Carlstein*. According to some, this town was built in the year 1132, whilst others fix the time of its foundation in 1262.

It has, indeed, many considerable privileges; but, partly by the calamities of war during the years 1676 and 1719, and partly by the fires which broke out in 1683 and 1699, it is in so declining a condition, that in the year 1747, it had but twenty poor burghers; and the poll-tax register contained only sixty-five persons: However, it consists of two hundred ruinous, and almost uninhabited houses. This is the twenty-second in order of the voting towns in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given it a place in his *Suecia*.

*Carlstein* is a famous fort, situated on a high mountain near the town, with a handsome church. It was built between the years 1682 and 1687. The brave *Danish* Admiral *Tordenskiold*, after making himself master of the town and the forts of *Hekvigsholm* and *Malapart*, which lie near it, by the briskness and continuance of his fire, also obliged the Governor of this citadel to surrender. But, the next year, it was restored to the *Swedes*. Formerly all condemned criminals were sentenced to work at these fortifications, as some are to this day, whilst others are employed elsewhere. The dangerous rock called *Pater-Noster* lies in the sea off *Marstrand*. *Dahlberg* has a view both of the town and citadel in his *Suecia*.

2. The *North Part*, which is properly called the *Wike*, is subdivided into *Sunnar-Wiken*, and *Nor-Wiken*, and consists of nine Districts, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Uddevalla*, a very old staple-town, with a strong fort and convenient harbour. It carries on a considerable trade, particularly in timber; but was very much damaged by fire in the year 1738. This is the fifty-ninth, in order, of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it.

*Stromstadt*, in Latin *Stroemstadium*, is a small staple-town, situated on the frontiers near the *Swinesund*; and the north part of it, which stands on *Blomesholm*, was built in the reign of *Charles XI*. This town is noted for lobsters and fine oysters. In the year 1717, it was hard pressed by the *Danes*; but was defended with equal bravery and vigour. It is the hundredth voting town; and a view of it is to be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

At the noble manor of *Blomesholm*, about three *Swedish* miles from *Stromstadt*, is a monument of great antiquity, consisting of large stones set up perpendicularly, and arranged in the form of a ship.

3. The large islands of *Oroust* and *Tiorn* also belong to *Bohus-Lehn*. The former consists of nineteen, and the latter of three parishes. The pastures, in both these islands are so rich that they are famous for excellent butter, and cheese, and a fine breed of cattle.



## S O U T H - G O T H L A N D,

In Latin *Gothia Australis*.

THIS country consists of three provinces, namely, *Schonen*, *Halland*, and *Blekingen*, which, from time immemorial, have undergone many vicissitudes and changes, that are particularly related in the histories of *Sweden* and *Denmark*. Sometimes they were subject to the Crown of *Denmark*: At other times they were recovered by the *Swedes*; but at length King *Charles Gustavus* annexed them for ever to the *Swedish* Dominions, by the treaty of *Roschild*, in the year 1658.

## I. S C H O N E N,

In Latin in *Scania*.

THIS province lies so near *Denmark*, that it is only separated from *Sealand* by the *Oresund* or *Sound*, which betwixt *Helsingborg* and *Croneburg*, is but a league in breadth. *Schonen* in ancient times was governed by its own Kings, and had its particular laws. This province if measured according to the roads is fourteen *Swedish* miles in length from *Falsterbo* to the long sand bank of *Halland*, and about eleven *Swedish* miles in breadth. This is the most level, pleasant, and fertile spot in all *Sweden*; and produces plenty of rye, barley, oats, pease, buckwheat, honey, cummin-feed; likewise pit-coal, chalk, tiles, and pot-ashes, of which, though to the great detriment of the forests, 10,000 tons are exported annually from hence. The inhabitants also carry on a considerable trade in oak, timber, mill-stones, cordage, fish of several kinds, fine horses, sheep, and horned cattle. All sorts of animals are larger in *Schonen* than in the northern parts of *Sweden*; but are not so vigorous, and accordingly become more strong and hardy, when they are removed northwards. Alum, sulphur, and amber are also found here. In that part of *Schonen* which lies near the *Sound* and the *Baltic*, not a wood is to be seen for several miles; but that part which borders on *Blekingen*, *Smaland*, and *Halland*, is well wooded. In the former part which lies near the *Baltic*, turf and straw are generally burnt for fuel. This country, with regard to its many advantages, may be called

the store-house and granary of *Sweden*. No province in the Kingdom is to be compared to it for fine seats and noblemens estates; and it contains more well built towns than any other province of *Sweden*.

The number of inhabitants in *Schonen* alone are computed at 600,000 souls, and above.

It has eight rivers, and several lakes; all well stored with fish. The only bishopric in *Schonen* is that of *Lund*; which is the eighth in order, comprehends the Prefectures of *Malmo*, *Christiansstadt*, and *Blekingen*, and is divided into four-and-twenty Provostships.

SCHONEN consists

1. Of the Prefecture of *MALMO*, which contains three Districts, and the following towns and places of note.

*Malmo*, in Latin *Malmogia*, is a considerable staple-town, which is called by the *Dutch* *Ellenbogen* i. e. an elbow, because the land on which it lies forms a kind of *Elbow* in the sea. In the year 1319, the inhabitants were removed from the former situation higher up in the country to the place where the town now stands. It is surrounded with walls, moats, and bastions towards the land; and is defended by several fortifications and a castle towards the sea. The castle was built in 1434, razed in 1534, and rebuilt in the year 1538. In this town are two Burgomasters, a good school, one *Swedish* and one *German* church, an orphan-house, a large market-place, fine streets, and several woollen manufactories. Here the Governor or Prefect of the District resides. A Philological Society was instituted in this town in the eleventh century, in memory of King *Knut IV.* who was surnamed the Pious, and called *Knuts-gilde*. This Society has many peculiar customs and privileges; and its members are of both sexes. Kings, Princes, and other persons of the highest distinction have not disdained to add that of *Knutsbruder* to their other august titles. In the order of voting at the Diet, this is the fifth town.

*Skano*, is at present reduced from a town to a place for loading and unloading goods. It is, however, noted for its yearly swan-hunting.

*Falsterbo*, a fishing-place, especially for herrings. Here is a light-house, on account of the shoal called *Falstarbo-Ref*, which lies off this place.

*Trelleborg* is but little better than a village, though formerly a handsome town, with fortifications, a convent, &c. A great quantity of amber is found in the neighbourhood of this place. King *Charles XII.* in his voyage from *Stralsund*, landed at *Stafflen*, a little to the west of this place, on the thirteenth of *December* 1715, after his long absence from *Sweden*.

*Ystad* or *Oiestad*, in Latin *Ystadium*, is a small but well built staple-town situated on the sea-coast, from whence a packet-boat goes to *Stralsund*. It was formerly well fortified, and had two churches. The present Convent-church is so called because it was built for the use of two convents which

were

were founded here in the times of popery. This town has the twenty-first vote in the Diet.

*Lindholm*, a fine estate belonging to the Crown with a castle, where King *Albert* of *Mecklenburg* was confined as a Prisoner for seven years.

*Lund*, in Latin *Lunda Gothorum*, is a very ancient city, and formerly the residence of the Kings of this country. It was erected into a Bishop's See in 1065, which, in 1103, was made an Archbishop's See for the three Northern Kingdoms. The name of the first Archbishop of *Lund* was *Adzer*. It is said that this city in the times of popery contained two-and-twenty churches, and at least as many convents, with a proportionate number of inhabitants; and was well fortified. Its cathedral is an ancient stately building; and has a fine well, with which all the other wells in the city have a communication, a superb altar, and a pulpit of alabaster and black marble.

King *Charles Gustavus* intended to have founded an University at *Lund*; but this scheme was not put in execution till the nineteenth of *December* 1666, in the reign of *Charles XI*. The consecration of it was solemnly performed on the twenty-eighth of *January* 1668, it being the saints day whose name the King bore; and the University was accordingly stiled *Academia Carolina Gothorum*. In the year 1736, it received the addition of a very elegant anatomical theatre. Here is also a physic garden. The Bishop of the See is Vice-Chancellor of the University. The inhabitants of this town are mostly employed in agriculture. In the neighbourhood are several good tobacco plantations, which produce nearly to the amount of 160,000 pounds weight of tobacco annually. Above 20,000 mulberry trees have also been planted lately in the *environs* of this town. In 1676, King *Charles XI*. entirely defeated the *Danes* near this city; and in 1679, a peace was concluded here betwixt the two Kingdoms. On a hill, not far from the town, which is called *St. Laborius's hill* or *Slipare-bog*, the Danish Kings were elected by the States in ancient times. In the Diet this town has the thirty-fourth vote. Its Latitude is 55°, 41', 6".

*Wesum*, an estate belonging to the Crown.

*Dalby*, which is now one of the King's stables, in the eleventh century was for a short time a Bishop's See, which was afterwards translated to *Lund*. At the same time, namely, in the year 1065, *Suen* King of *Denmark* built here a very fine convent, in which two Kings lie interred. In 1512, it underwent the common fate of all the convents in *Denmark*; being sequestered to the Crown by *Christian III*.

*Flyinge*, a rich royal demesne.

*Landskrona*, in Latin *Coronia*, is a fortified staple-town situated near the *Sound*. It was built by King *Erick* the *Pomeranian* near a convent which stood here. It has two churches, a secure harbour, and a strong castle built in 1549, by *Christian III*. King of *Denmark*, on the spot where the old  
ruinous



ruinous convent stood. The number of inhabitants in this town is supposed to be between seven and eight hundred. Great encouragements are offered for any foreign *Calvinist* or *Lutheran* manufacturers, to induce them to settle here. In the year 1676 the *Danes* made themselves masters both of the town and castle. There are tobacco plantations near this town; which carries on a good trade, and has the sixth vote in the Diet.

*Hwen* or *Ween*, in Latin *Hevena*, is a fertile island lying in the *Sound*. It is about 8160 paces in circumference, and has the appearance of a high mountain at a distance. By the treaty of *Roschild*, it was annexed to the Crown of *Sweden* in 1658. Though it anciently depended on *Seeland*, *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark* subjected it to the jurisdiction of the Provincial court of *Schonen*; but with a provisional clause, that all its processes should be determined according to the laws of *Seeland*.

This island was rendered famous by the celebrated astronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom it was granted, together with a fief in *Norway* and some other lands, by *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark*, who also caused an elegant feat to be built for him at a very considerable expence. This castle, which is called *Uranienburg*, is sixty feet square, and seventy-five in height: It is embellished with two towers, which were designed for observatories, and two other smaller observatories, which yield an extensive prospect; and has a delightful garden. But the practices of his malicious enemies deprived *Tycho* of all these enjoyments; and being obliged to leave *Uranienburg* in 1597, he died in *Germany* in the year 1601. His celestial globe which was six feet in diameter, and said to have cost him 5000 dollars\*, was first carried from hence to *Benadky* in *Bohemia*, and soon after was removed to *Prague*; from whence it was conveyed to *Neisse* in *Silesia*. That town being taken in 1632 by Prince *Ulrick*, this curious machine was removed to *Copenhagen*, and deposited in the round tower; where it was entirely consumed in the calamitous fire, which happened in the year 1728, and laid a great part of that flourishing city in ashes. All that celebrated Astronomer's other valuable mathematical instruments, and curious machines have likewise been gradually lost; and his favourite *Uranienburg* now lies in ruins. The whole island makes but one parish, or village, consisting of fifty or sixty houses; and near it stands the parish church.

*Helsingborg*, in Latin *Helsingoburgum*, a very ancient staple-town, is said to derive its name from the *Helsingers* by whom it was built. It lies on a declivity at the foot of a high mountain, on which *Helsingborg* originally stood. It had anciently a very strong castle, being then a large considerable city; but suffered extremely in the wars of the last century, particularly since the year 1673; so that now it is only a defenseless place, containing about two hundred houses and a battery of a few guns: And of all its fortifications the only remains is a tower which stands by itself on the hill. The

\* A Dollar is 1s. 9d.  $\frac{2}{3}$

shallowness of its harbour obliges all ships that pass through the *Sound* to keep close to the *Danish* mole at *Helsingoer* or *Elfsinore*; and this circumstance must be a great disadvantage to it in point of trade, which is very inconsiderable here. This is the usual ferry for passengers across the *Sound* into *Denmark*. A flourishing manufacture of coarse hats, and boots, is carried on, but the other manufactures established in this town, as that of ribbons, &c. in which young girls are employed, scarce answer the charges. In the year 1447 King *Christopher* of *Bavaria* died at *Helsingborg*. This town has been more than once taken by the *Danes*; but always has been soon after retaken by the *Swedese*. This is the eighteenth town that has a vote in the Diet.

In the mountain near which this town stands, the famous *Helsingborg* spring has its source. This spring supplies the town every minute with about twenty gallons \* of clear palatable water of an extraordinary coldness, and of which a great quantity is bottled up and exported. *Helsingborg* lies in 56°, 2', North latitude.

*Ranlosa*, which is not far from *Helsingborg*, is a famous medicinal spring issuing from a solid rock.

*Kulla-Fyr*, is a lighthouse built on a mountain, at the distance of two *Swedish* miles from *Helsingborg*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of *CHRISTIANSTADT* is divided into ten Districts, and contains the following places of note.

*Christianstadt*, a town situated on the river *Helge-a*, by which it is encompassed on three sides. This town was originally built in the year 1614, by *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark*, from whom it received its name. It has a handsome church, a good school, a strong bridge with several warehouses built on it, woollen and linen cloth, and silk manufactures, &c. and carries on a considerable trade. It is fortified with walls and horn works; but the castle which stands near the church, has nothing worthy of notice. In the year 1676, the *Danes* made themselves masters of this town; but the very next year, *Charles XI.* retook it sword in hand. The Prefect or Governor resides in this city, which is the seventeenth of the towns that have a vote in the Diet. The Latitude of *Christianstadt* is 56°, 1', 20'.

*Hammar* is a royal demesne not far from *Christianstadt*.

*Wabe*, or *Wa*, which lies about three quarters of a *Swedish* mile north of *Christianstadt*, and *Abus* which stands at the distance of two miles south of it, were formerly considerable towns. *Abus* is, as it were, the warehouse, where the goods designed for *Christianstadt* are deposited.

*Andrarum*, which lies near four *Swedish* miles south of *Christianstadt*, is the most considerable alum-work in the whole Kingdom, and belongs to Count *Piper*. This fossile resembles slate, which being laid in heaps and calcined, and afterwards boiled in water, yields both alum and vitriol,

\* The Author says forty-three *canns*.

*Kirwick* is a fishing place remarkable for its fine herrings.

*Cimbrishamn*, in Latin *Portus Cimbrorum*, is a small sea-port on the *Baltic*, from which the ancient *Cimbri* are said to have set sail for their foreign expeditions. This is the ninety-ninth voting town in the Diet.

*Tomarup*, or *Tomarp*, is a manor said to have been formerly a town, in which was a convent in the times of popery.

*Engelholm*, in Latin *Engelbolmia*, is a town situated not far from the sea, which is said to derive its name from the *Angles*, who either first came from hence, or built this town for the conveniency of trade. It is under the jurisdiction of the magistracy of *Helsingborg*, from which it is but two *Swedish* miles distant. The clouds of sand which are here raised by the wind are very troublesome; but these sands now begun to be gradually sown with *Sandbafer* or wild oats, which will in time remedy that inconveniency. *Engelholm* is the twentieth town in the order of voting in the Diet.

*Thorekou* is a considerable fishing-town with a kind of votive church, to which the sea-faring people send considerable pecuniary offerings from all the neighbouring ports.

*Batstad*, a considerable fishing-place where a market is kept, has the appearance of a small city and formerly had the privileges of one. It lies on a bay of the *North-sea*.

## II. H A L L A N D,

In Latin *Hollandia*.

THE name of this province denotes a high land; and it is so called because it lies higher up the country than *Schonen*; or according to others derives its name from the high mountains with which it is over-run. *Holland* is sixteen *Swedish* miles in length, and, at its southern angle, is about four *Swedish* miles broad. The produce of the arable land in this province is far from being sufficient for the support of the inhabitants: But this defect is in some measure compensated by a great plenty of fish, especially the salmon, it affords, which are reckoned the best in all *Sweden*. This province also has a very advantageous trade in cattle, and is not without some pearl fisheries. Here are woods of tall oak and birch-trees; but pine-trees, &c. are not very common in these parts.

In the sandy tract of *Holland* stands a mountain, in which there is a cavity large enough conveniently to hold twenty persons. In this province there are five rivers; and all of them afford good salmon fisheries. There are also two considerable lakes.

The



The inhabitants who are but few, chiefly subsist by grazing and fishing. They likewise spin and weave, and make a kind of knit garments. Those who live near the sea-coasts in the north of *Halland* employ themselves in trade and navigation. This country is partly assigned for the equipment of dragoons, and the support of sailors for the royal navy. The clergy of this province are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Gotthenburg*.

As to its political state it is divided into *South* and *North-Halland*.

1. SOUTH HALLAND extends from the long sandy tract of land mentioned above to the river called *Falkenbergs-a*, and is much more level and fertile than *North Halland*. It consists of four Districts, and contains the following places of note.

*Labolm*, or *Lagebolm*, in Latin *Labolmia*, lies at the mouth of the river *Laga* near the main sea, and has a fine salmon-fishery. The ruinous castle, which stands near it on a small island in the river, was demolished in the reign of *Charles XI*. Among the towns which have a vote in the Diet, this is the eighty-fifth in order. Near it lies a royal demesne.

*Knared*, a village with a church, which has a yearly fair. In the year 1613, a treaty of peace was concluded here betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark*.

*Halmstadt* is a pleasant well built staple-town, situated at the mouth of the river *Nissa*. In 1327, this town was made the capital of the province, and endowed with suitable privileges. The fortifications erected here by *Christian VI*. King of *Denmark* have been razed. The castle is the place of residence of the Governor of the province. The cloth and woollen manufactures established here are in a flourishing condition; and the salmon fishery near this town is very famous. In the times of popery, there were three convents at *Halmstadt*; and in 1619, it was the scene of an interview between King *Gustavus Adolphus* and *Christian IV*. of *Denmark*. King *Charles XI*. defeated the *Danes* on a spot about half a *Swedish* mile from this town. In the neighbourhood of it there is a large tobacco plantation. *Halmstadt* is the sixteenth of the towns that have a vote in the Diet; and the prospect of it makes a good appearance in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Biskopstorb*, which lies in the parish of *Quibille*, is an estate belonging to the Crown.

*Skottorp*, a noble manor situated in the sandy part of *Halland*. Here King *Charles XI*. celebrated his nuptials with *Ulrica Eleanora*, princess of *Denmark*, in the year 1680. A prospect both of the building and garden may seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Falkenberg*, in Latin *Falkenberga*, a small ancient sea-port, near which the river *Falkenberg* runs, which is likewise called *Aethra*. This river issues from the *Alfungen*-lake, and by it the latter has a communication with the sea. This town stands in a sandy situation; and has a good fishery, where great quantities of salmon and some herrings are caught. *Falkenberg* has a tolerable harbour, and is the ninety-seventh of the towns that vote in the Diet. In

the year 1565, the battle of *Falkenberg*, in which the *Danes* forced their way through the *Swedish* army, was fought at a village called *Axtorn* near this town.

2. NORTH HALLAND is a mountainous and woody country, and extends from *Falkenberg* river to *Elfsborg-Lebn*. It consists of four Districts; and in it are the following towns, &c.

*Wardberg*, in Latin *Warburgum*, is a small staple town, but one of the best in the province. It has a harbour on the *North sea*, which, at present, has only depth enough for small vessels. *Wardberg* carries on a considerable trade; and had stood on three different situations before the year 1666, when it was built, a fourth time, on the spot where it now stands. A very ancient fortified castle stands at the harbour's mouth on a rock surrounded with water; but, at present, it is of little service. Near it is a royal manor-house on a spot where the city formerly stood. This town has the twenty-third vote in the Diet, and is exhibited in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Af-kloster* was formely a convent, built in the year 1165; but at present is a considerable royal demesne.

*Hunehals* is a fort built on a rock in the parish of *Hunestad*, and in popish times belonged to the Bishops of *Lund*.

*Kongsbacka*, is a small town situated between three rivers, which empty themselves into the sea hard by it. The inhabitants subsist by agriculture, trade, and navigation. It is the ninety-eighth of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Rosared* is a royal demesne.

*Note.* Both *South* and *North Halland* are under one Government.

### III. B L E K I N G E N,

In Latin *Blekingia*.

THE *Swedes* call this province *Blekingh*, the *Danes* *Blegind*, and the inhabitants term it *Blegen*. It lies to the East of *Schonen*, and extends itself about fifteen *Swedish* miles in length, and four in breadth. *Blekingen* is a mountainous country, and for pleasantness, especially in that part that lies between *Carlskron* and *Carlsbamm*, exceeds most of the provinces in *Sweden*. Here are several woods of oak, beech, pine, and birch trees: But as the soil, in most places, is too shallow for tillage, the inhabitants are obliged to make up that deficiency by supplies from their neighbours.

This province is computed to contain about 1089 families; and the inhabitants drive a considerable trade in pot-ash, tar, tallow, hides, leather, beams, deal-boards, and malts. They also employ themselves in fishing and hunting, to a great advantage. The pastures in this province are so nutritive, that the best cheese in *Sweden* is made here; and grazing turn  
to

to very good account: However, the cattle are somewhat smaller here than in *Schonen*.

Instead of its quota of soldiers, this province maintains 1554 sailors to serve on board the royal navy; and these are divided into three companies.

There are several lakes, and six rivers of note, all which afford good salmon, in this province. *Blekingen* and *Smaland* are separated from each other by these rivers. The principal islands belonging to this jurisdiction amount to about one hundred and thirty. The whole province contains, with regard to the ecclesiastical division, nine-and-twenty parishes. The clergy of it are subject to the See of *Lund*. As to its political division it consists of four *Harads* or Districts, which are,

I. OESTRA-HARAD, of the *East-District*, in which are the following towns.

*Carlskrona*, or *Calfcron*, in Latin *Caroli Corona*, a handsome staple-town, lies on the *Baltic*; and was first built by King *Charles XI.* who called it after his name, and endowed it with the privileges, and the freedom of a Staple. This town, next to *Stockholm*, is reckoned the best in the kingdom. A part of it stands on the little island of *Biorkholm*, where the marine hospital is, part on that of *Stubholm* on which the arsenal is built, and part on the mole, where the fleet is usually laid up. The large and small islands that lie near this town, together with the woods of oak, beech, and birch trees on all sides, render the situation of it extremely pleasant. Here are three churches, namely one *Swedish*, which is called the town-church, one *German* church, and the third belongs to the Admiralty. The inhabitants of *Carlskrona* are supposed to be about 5000 souls. This city is famous for the Admiralty-college which was removed hither from *Stockholm* in 1680; a dock-yard which is separated from the town by a high stone-wall; and a squadron of ships of war which is laid up here. It has two burgomasters, and the Governor of the province makes it his place of residence. The harbour, which lies between *Asp-oe* and *Stork-oe*, is so commodious that the whole royal navy may securely ride in it; and the mouth or entrance into it is defended by the citadels of *Kongsholmi* and *Drotningskar*. There is a new handsome parish-church in these forts, and also a *German* church. The dock-yard is particularly remarkable; it being dug out of a mountain to the depth of eighty feet. The length of it is from three hundred to three hundred and fifty feet at the place where the King's fleet lies; and this excellent dock, though prosecuted with all possible vigour, employed the engineers from the year 1715 to the year 1724, before it was completed. Its entrance towards the sea has a sufficient depth of water to set the largest men of war on float. This entrance is closed by two flood-gates, and the basin may be emptied in four-and-twenty hours, so that the dock becomes quite dry in order to repair and clean the ships; after which the water is re-admitted, by means of two sluices which are further defended from the violence of the waves by a certain machine, in order to set the ships afloat and carry them out of the basin. *Carlskron* is the



tenth, in order, of the towns that vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given us two views, one of the city, and another of the castle of *Drotningskar*.

*Christianopol*, commonly called *Nopeln*, is a fortified market-town, which is almost surrounded by the *Baltic* in the manner of a peninsula. In 1603, *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark* gave it a charter of privileges, and called it by his name. But it lost those privileges in the year 1610, when it was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was at that time hereditary Prince, or heir apparent to the crown.

2. MEDELSTA-HARAD, in which the places of note are,

*Ronneby*, or *Rotneby*, a parish, with a market-place, which lies in the midway between *Calshron* and *Carlsham*. Near it the river *Ronneby*, which has a good salmon-fishery, empties itself into the *Baltic*. This place was formerly fortified; and till the time of *Charles XI.* was a little town, having been built by one of the Kings of *Denmark*. It still carries on some trade; and has an harbour, some medicinal springs, and several manufactories. The inhabitants of *Ronneby* are free of *Carlskrona*.

*Gio*, or *Gifo*, is a peninsula lying about three quarters of a *Swedish* mile from *Ronneby*. Here is a fine fishery which is very advantageous to the place, and the cause of a considerable trade to it.

3. BRAKNE-HARAD, in which lies

*Carlshamn*, in Latin *Caroli portus*, a staple-town which derives its name from *Charles X.* by whom it was built in the year 1658. Before that time it was called *Christianshamn* from *Christian IV.* its first founder; but *Charles XI.* improved and fortified it with a castle, which stood on a rock at the mouth of the river and defended the town and harbour, but is now fallen to decay. Here are two churches, a woollen manufacture, and a good key; and without the town stands a copper-mill. The number of inhabitants in *Carlshamn* is said to exceed 1200. In the Diet this town has the nineteenth vote.

4. LISTERS-HARAD, in which are the following places of note.

*Elleholm*, a village, with a church, standing on a small island in the river that runs by *Morum*. It lies at the distance of half a *Swedish* mile from *Carlshamn*, and was formerly a town, and had a castle. Its municipal privileges have been conferred on

*Solfwitzborg*, a sea-port, which for a long time remained disfranchised, but at last had a charter of privileges conferred on it. This town is almost environed by the *Baltic* sea, and was formerly in a more flourishing condition than it is at present. It has a harbour with a ruinous castle. *Solfwitzborg* is said to have been the place where the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* assembled, when they left this country in order to go in search of new habitations. This is the eighty-fourth voting town in the Diet. A fishing place called *Hallawic* belongs to this town,

S W E D E N, properly so called,

In Latin *Succia stricte sic dicta*.

THIS country is bounded on the North by *Nordland*, on the West by *Warmeland* and *Norway*, on the East by the sea, and on the South by the kingdom of *Gotbland*. Of all the *Swedish* dominions this country has the greatest number of mines, forges and hammer-mills. *Sweden*, in ancient times, was sometimes a distinct kingdom, and sometimes united with that of *Gotbland*, as it has been ever since the year 1132. It is divided into five provinces, namely, *Upland*, *Sudermanland*, *Nerike* or *Nericia*, *Westmanland*, and *Dabl*, or the Vale-country; which had also their respective Kings, and were governed by their own laws, except *Nerike* which had no particular laws of its own. *Sweden*, properly so called, contains five-and-twenty cities and towns.

---

I. U P L A N D,

In Latin *Uplandia*.

THIS province is so called from the superiority the ancient Kings, that resided at *Upsal*, had over the Vassal-kings and Governors who were tributary to the former. This province extends in length about eighteen *Swedish* miles, and fifteen in breadth, and is a champain, fertile country; producing wheat, barley, rye, and oats in such plenty, as to supply its neighbours with considerable quantities of grain. But in some parts of *Upland* there are neither pastures nor woods.

Among the mountains of this province some are remarkable for spacious caverns which resemble large regular apartments.

Here are twelve rivers, and a still greater number of lakes. The *Maler*-lake is the principal among the latter, and lies between *Upland*, *Sudermanland*, and *Westmanland*. It is twelve miles in length, yields an extraordinary plenty of fish, and is said to contain 1290 islands. Its banks are beautifully diversified with towns, castles, churches, noblemens seats, and other edifices. It has a communication with the sea, through the outlets of the north and south rivers, or channels, near *Stockholm*. In this country are several very wealthy persons, who are owners of mine-works and hammer-mills; and the latter are not only profitable, but also curiously contrived. In this province are likewise the best iron mines in the kingdom.

The

The chief occupation of the inhabitants of *Upland* is agriculture; but in some places they work in the mines, and in others they are employed in the fisheries. Those who live on the sea-coast, among the *sheers* or rocks, entirely subsist by the latter. This country is divided into three parts, namely,

UPLAND, properly so called, which is the middle part of the country.

ROSLAGEN, or the maritime part. And

FIERDHUNDRA, or the part which borders on the rivers *Dal-Ebe*, and *Sag*.

The *Archbiskoprick* of *Upsal* consists of twenty-five *Provostships*, one hundred and sixty-six *Pastorates*, or two hundred and forty-two town and country-parishes, and four chapels; and this Diocese includes,

1. The Government of *Upsal*.
2. That part of the *Stockholm* Government which lies in *Upland*.
3. *Gastrickland* and *Halsingeland*, which are the western parts of the Government of *Nordland*.
4. Part of *Salberg* and *Wasby-Lebn*, which belong to the Government of *Westmanland*. As to its political state this province is divided into the three following Prefects or Governments.

1. The Government of STOCKHOLM, which includes

The *Sechs-see-Districte*, or the six maritime Districts, and the *Zehn-land* District, or ten inland Districts. In the former are the following remarkable places.

STOCKHOLM, in Latin *Holmia*, a staple city, the capital of the whole kingdom, and the residence of the King, lies at the junction of the *Baltic* and the *Maler*-lake; so that it has the conveniency both of salt and fresh-water. Its circuit, computed from the one gate to the other, is two *Swedish* miles; and it stands partly on islands and partly on peninsulas. Most of the streets of this city are broad, and kept very clean; and the market-places are spacious. In the city, properly so called, are above 5000 houses, most of which stand on piles, though entirely built with stone, and are four or five stories high; and some of them are covered with iron or copper-plates, and others with tiles. Besides these, there are a great number of timber houses in the suburbs, and twenty churches in all. The seven *Holme* or islands on which this city stands, are

1. The City, properly so called, which contains, 1. The new palace, a very grand structure. 2. The Nobles-house, which is also a very superb edifice, and gives the name of *Ritter-haus* market to the adjoining market. 3. The town-house. 4. St. *Nicholas*, or the great church. 5. St. *Gertrude's*, or the *German* church, near which stands a grammar-school. 6. The great market. 7. The bank. 8. The corn-quay. 9. The marine fraternity.

2. The



2. The *Ritterholm*, which lies on the west side of the city, and has a communication with it by means of a bridge. On this island stands the old royal palace which was burnt in the year 1697, and the *Ritterholm* church which is dedicated to St. *Francis*. In this church are interred the following Kings; viz. *Magnus Ladulas*, *Charles VIII.* *Gustavus Adolphus*, *Charles X.* *Charles XII.* and *Frederick I.* with the Queens, *Maria Eleanora*, *Hedwig-Eleanora*, the two *Ulrica Eleanora's*, besides several Princes and Princeesses.

3. *Helgandsholm*, or the island of the Holy Ghost, which lies in the *Norder-strom* or North channel, between the city and the *Norder-malm* or North suburb. In this part are the King's stables which were built in the year 1696.

4. *Schiffsholm*, which lies to the east of the city. In this part are the dock-yard and the Admiralty. Near this island lie those of *Castleholm* and *Pecholm*; and close by *Blasieholm*, the church belonging to *Schiffsholm* stands on a small island, towards the North.

5. *Blasieholm*, which was formerly called *Kapplingsholm*.

6. *Konigsholm*, on which stands the *Ulrica-Eleanora*-church.

7. *Ladugards-Land*, which is now joined to the *Nordermalm*, and looked upon as a suburb. In it are *Hedwick's* church, a market-place, an orch-yard belonging to the King, and an orphan-house founded in the year 1750 by the *Free-Masons*. Also two large suburbs called *Norder* and *Suder-Malm* belong to the city of *Stockholm*.

The *Norder-Malm*, or North Suburb, which is separated from the city by the *Norder-Strom*, lies in *Upland*, and contains the churches of St. *James*, St. *Clara*, St. *Olaus*, and St. *John*; the orphan-house, together with a church; the arsenal, and three market-places. Here is also a high sandy hill called *Brunkberg*, from *John Brunk*, high-constable of the kingdom, who was beheaded there in the time of King *Birger*; and another hill called *Sabatsberg* near which are a medicinal spring and an observatory.

*Suder-Malm*, or the South Suburb, is separated from the city by the canal called *Suderstrom*, which was dug by order of King *Oluf the Pious* in the year 1008, and lies in *Sudermanland*. In this Suburb are *Mary Magdalen's* church, St *Catbrine's* church, the *Sudermalm*-market, with the town-house on it; and likewise the *Russian* chapel, the *Dutch Calvinists* church, a large hospital, a fine iron Weigh-house, the New Market, &c.

All these parts of *Stockholm* are joined together by twelve bridges.

The number of the inhabitants who pay taxes in this metropolis is computed at 60,000.

The Police of the city is lodged jointly in the magistracy, and the *Oberstatthalter*, i. e. High *Statholder* or Governor, who presides in the Royal Chancery of the Supreme Court and the city Council-Chamber. This city has, besides, four Burgomasters; and the magistracy is divided

into four particular Colleges, namely, those of Justice, the Police, Trade, and Manufactures; and likewise into three courts of Judicature. Here also are held the Colleges and Offices mentioned in §. 22. of the Introduction to *Sweden*; among which the principal is that called the Royal High-Court of *Sweden*; which was established in 1614 for *Sweden* properly so called. Subordinate to this are eight superior and twenty-four inferior Courts, together with the jurisdictions of several Justiciaries.

The *Collegium Medicum*, or College of Physicians, was founded at *Stockholm* in the year 1688. Here are also a Royal Academy of Sciences, which was instituted in 1739; a Royal Academy for Military Architecture, and another for Land-surveying; a Chymical and Mechanical Elaboratory; an Academy of Painting and Sculpture; a Royal Library, an account of which has been written by *Magnus Celsus*; and several well-regulated Printing-houses.

There are besides in this capital the following offices and institutions, *viz.* a Board of Admiralty, a Navy-office, a Custom-house, an office of the Revenues, an edifice where goods manufactured in the kingdom are examined, and disputes betwixt manufacturers decided; a national Bank, the credit of which appears from the price of its actions; a large Iron Weigh-house; an Insurance-office instituted in 1739; three sugar-houses; with manufactories of glass, porcelain, silk, woollen-cloth, cotton, parchment, and canvas. Here are also commodious docks in which many ships are built for foreigners.

The foreign and domestic trade of this city may be supposed to be very considerable; for it has an excellent harbour almost surrounded with hills: But the many *sbeers* or rocks at the mouth of it render the entrance something difficult. In the year 1696, a society of Pilots was established in this city for the improvement of navigation.

Here are very good regulations in cases of fire; provision for the losses by such accidents being made by means of an Insurance-Office. The Governor of the *Stockholm* Prefecture or Government resides here; and the King's guards consisting of eighteen companies, together with the Officers, &c. belonging to the Ordnance, are always quartered in this city.

As to historical particulars relating to this city; it is said to have been built in 1252, or 1260, by *Birger Jarl*, Regent of the kingdom; but others date its foundation about an hundred years earlier. Its charter of privileges has been renewed and augmented, from time to time. *Stockholm*, in ancient times, sustained several sieges; and in the year 1520, a shocking massacre was perpetrated here by order of the perfidious King *Christian II.* Ninety-six Diets have been held in this city since the thirteenth century. In the year 1751, a fire happened at *Stockholm* which destroyed three hundred and ten houses, besides *St. Clare's* church. This is the first city that votes in the Diet; and its Latitude is 59°, 20'.



The *Swedish* Atlas exhibits the ichnography of this city; and there is also a good plan of it in OUTHIER's *voyage au Nord*, or 'Travels to the North.

*Fredericks-hof* is a royal palace built in 1732 by *Frederick* I. It stands on the east side of *Ladugardsland*; and near it is a park, and an orangery which is much admired.

The King's Park extends itself from north to south on the east side of the *Nordermalm*, or the north suburb, and is almost surrounded with water. Nothing can be more delightful than the beautiful disposition of the fine groves, lawns, and walks with which it is diversified: There is also a medicinal spring in this park.

*Carlberg* is a fine royal pleasure-house with a garden laid out in the most elegant taste, and decorated with some beautiful statues, &c. It lies about a quarter of a *Swedish* mile west of *Nordermalm*, or the north suburb, on a creek of the *Maler*-lake. This seat was formerly called *Magnusberg* from Count *Magnus Gabriel de la Gardie*. At the entrance of this palace stands a marble statue of King *Frederick*. *Dahlberg* has inserted several views of this charming place in his *Suecia*.

*Ulrichsdal*, a stately royal seat, is situated at the distance of half a *Swedish* mile to the north of *Stockholm*, on the west side of the *Edfwike*. It was built in the year 1644 by Count *James Pontusson de la Gardie*; and forfeited to the crown in the reign of King *Charles* XI. who altered its former name of *Jacobsdal* to *Ulrichsdal*, in honour of his third son *Ulrick* who was born in this palace. The garden is particularly remarkable for the elegant contrivance of its curious grotto. Here is also a fine park. *Dahlberg* has given a perspective view of this palace in his *Suecia*.

*Drotningholm*, the finest of all the King of *Sweden*'s palaces, stands on the island of *Lofon* which lies about a *Swedish* mile to the west of *Stockholm*. *Hedwig Eleanora*, consort of Prince *Charles Gustavus*, to whom it devolved in the year 1652, was the foundress of the present structure; the former palace having been burnt by carelessness. Facing the south front of it is a pleasant garden adorned with a variety of fountains; and the east and north side exhibit a delightful view of the ships at sea, all which are well represented in *Dahlberg*'s views of this place.

The *Upland schein*. This is a name given to those small islands, and rocks surrounded with water, which lie along the *Upland* coast, and among which it is dangerous to sail. The inhabitants of these *scheers*, or small rocky islands, generally employ themselves in fishing.

*Waxholm* which lies about two *Swedish* miles from *Stockholm* just at the entrance of the channel into the lake, is a strong citadel built on a small island in the year 1649. It has since been greatly improved and enlarged, so that it has the appearance of a little town. Here all homeward bound ships are searched. On this island, which is called *Waxon*, besides this fort are a church, a school, and a Custom-house. The chief occupation of the



inhabitants is fishing. *Dahlberg* has given a view of these places in his *Suecia*.

*Palsunde*, lies also on a channel that runs up to *Stockholm*. Here is a battery erected just at the water's edge. In 1723 a rampart of earth was thrown up in this place.

*Oxdiupet* is a third channel leading to *Stockholm*; it is defended by a fort called *Fredericksburg*.

*Sandhamn* is a harbour in the parish of *Wermdo*, where all vessels homeward or outward bound to or from *Stockholm* are searched.

*Nortelge*, in Latin *Telga Borealis*, is a sea-port built by King *Gustavus Adolphus*, which in the year 1622, was endowed with the staple and other privileges: however, the inhabitants enjoyed these advantages but for a short time, namely, till the year 1637. They now subsist by navigation and fishing. This town has in some measure recovered itself after the ravages committed here by the *Russians* in the year 1719. Near the water-fall is a fine forge for making fire-arms. *Nortelge* is the fifty-fourth of the towns that vote in the Diet. There is a perspective view of it in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Radmanfo* is a royal demesne, on an island among the *Scheers* or coast-rocks, about a *Swedish* mile and a half from *Nortelge*.

*Lindholm*, a fine manor, lies about two *Swedish* miles from *Nortelge*, where King *Gustavus I.* was born in the year 1490.

*Wira* is a place where very good blades are made, and lies in the parish of *Riala*.

*Grisebaman*. Here is a Post-house, from which the packet passes over to the island of *Aland*.

ZEHN-LAND DISTRICTE, or the ten inland Districts, lie higher up the country, and contain the following towns and places of note.

*Oesthammar*, in Latin *Oesthammeria*, is an old sea-port, and formerly a staple-town. In the year 1491 the inhabitants of this place with all its privileges were removed to *Oeregrund*. But, some time after, *Oesthammer* was built on the *Gold sbeer*, or golden rock, as it is called, which projects a little farther into the sea than its former situation. In the year 1719, this town was burnt by the *Russians*: But it has recovered itself since that calamity; and its inhabitants subsist comfortably by navigation and fishing. *Oesthammar* has the eighty-seventh vote in the Diet. *Dahlberg* has also given it a place in his *Suecia*.

*Oeregrund*, in Latin *Oeregrunda*, is a sea-port, built in the year 1491, on the sea-coast, by some of the inhabitants of *Oesthammar*; who left that town because of the great decrease of the water in the harbour which entirely ruined its trade. *Oeregrund* was a staple-town till the year 1630, and has been three times burnt, and quite demolished by the *Russians*. And though the last time it was laid waste was no longer ago than the year 1719; yet it has rose again since to some degree of prosperity. The harbour is defended from

from the violence of the sea by a mole. A convent of Monks formerly stood in this town, which has the fifty-second vote in the Diet. A prospect of it is to be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Swartfjo*, is a royal manor on an island in the *Maler*-lake in the parish of *Sanga*. This island is the best peopled of any in that lake. It has been a royal manor from time immemorial, and the present mansion-house was lately built; the former having been burnt in the year 1687. *Dahlberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of it.

*Wantholmen* is a royal farm assigned for the expences of the Court.

*Biorko*, in Latin *Birca*, is an island in the *Maler*-lake, and lies about three *Swedish* miles from *Stockholm*. On this island stood formerly a market-town with a royal seat called *Birka* or *Biorko*, which was commonly but improperly termed a city. A draught of it may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia* Tom. I.

*Sigtuna*, a small town situated on a creek of the *Maler*-lake, formerly made a great figure among the chief cities of this Kingdom. It derives its name from the *Asiatic* hero *Odin*, whose surname was *Sigge*. He came into the North before the Christian *Æra*, and had his residence, his Temple, and Court of Judicature in this place; on which account it was called *Siggestuna*, i. e. *Sigge's* Court. Others will have it, that the town was first built by *Odin*, and assign its name another etymology, namely, *Stadt des Siegers*, or the 'Conqueror's town;' being so called on account of the costly sacrifices formerly brought hither, which were termed *Sigurblott*, i. e. Victims, offered after a victory. *Sigtuna* went through many vicissitudes during the Pagan times; and was plundered and burnt in the year of *Christ* 1008 by *Olof the Pious*, King of *Norway*. However, after this catastrophe it rose again by degrees to its former flourishing condition, and continued so till it was destroyed a second time, in 1188, by the *Carelians*, *Estonians*, and *Russians*. It even recovered itself once more after this second calamity, and continued for some time in a prosperous state. But the vast increase of *Stockholm* gave an irretrievable blow to *Sigtuna*; for as the former flourished the latter declined in proportion. Several churches and other buildings, which however are an ornament to *Dahlberg's* draught of this town, are to be seen here in a ruinous condition. This is the forty-seventh town that votes in the Diet.

*Noor*, is a very fine manor in the parish of *Knitstätt*.

2. The Prefecture or Government of *Upsal* consists of four Districts, and contains the following towns and remarkable places.

*Upsala*, or *Upsal*, in Latin *Upsalia*, a very ancient and pretty large city, is situated on the river *Fyris*, which divides it into two parts; that part which lies on the east side of the river being properly the city, and that on the west being called *Fierding*. *Upsal* was anciently the chief seat of the sovereigns of *Sweden*, where they held their supreme tribunal. The greatest sacrifices offered in all the northern provinces were brought hither in the



time of paganism; and the most eminent heathen priests, had their residence in this city. *Upsal* was also the most ancient town in the *Swedish Hochlander* or Highlands, and the chief ornament of the whole country.

All the buildings of this city are of wood, the cathedral and a few stone-houses excepted; and the roofs of them are nothing but the bark of birch-trees covered with turf. Here are three churches; among which the cathedral is the principal, and indeed makes the best appearance of any in the Kingdom. It was built in the thirteenth century, but not completed and consecrated till the year 1435. The Architect being a native of *Paris* took the church of *Notre Dame* in that city for his model. This cathedral has been destroyed by fire no less than five times since its first foundation; the last time it was burnt was in the year 1702: However, it has since been rebuilt in an elegant manner. Several royal personages lie buried in this church; and the remains of King *Erick IX.* are shewn here in a silver shrine. There was formerly an episcopal palace on the spot where the King's stables now stand. The royal palace in this city was consumed by fire in the year 1702; but preparations are making for rebuilding it. The Kings of *Sweden* are generally crowned here.

A school was first instituted at *Upsal* in 1246, which was raised to an University in the year 1476; but in 1582 it was removed to *Stockholm*. However, the University was established a second time at *Upsal* in the year 1592. *Gustavus I.* and *Gustavus Adolphus* endowed this University with some lands. It has been also enriched by considerable legacies of several private persons, besides the royal salaries. The edifice called *Academia Gustaviana*, which is three stories high, was built by *Gustavus Adolphus* in the year 1622. It has a round tower, or rather cupola, at the top, in which is a curious Anatomy-theatre, founded in the same year by Professor *Rudbeck*. It has also a very valuable library containing near 1000 manuscripts, among which the most remarkable is the *Codex Argenteus*, supposed to be *Uphila's Gothic* translation of the four Evangelists; but it seems rather to be written in the language of the ancient *Franks*. The *Museum* or Cabinet of curiosities is said to be worth a *Ton of Gold*\*. The astronomical Observatory was planned by the celebrated *Celsius*; and the Physic-garden was laid out chiefly by the famous *Linnaeus*. The Royal Academy of Sciences was instituted in the year 1728. The Archbishop of *Upsal*, who is the only one in the Kingdom, is the *Pro-cancellarius Academiae*, or Vice Chancellor of the University. There is also a cathedral school in this city; and the Governor of *Upland* resides here.

The *Swedish* Geographers place their first meridian, from which they compute the Longitude, at *Upsal*.

About the close of the eleventh, or the beginning of the twelfth century, a Bishop's See was established here, which, at the desire of *Charles VII.* was made an Archiepiscopal See by Pope *Alexander III. Stephanus*, who was consecrated in the year 1162, was the first Archbishop of *Upsal*.

\* 100,000 *Swedish* dollars at 1s. 9d.



The most remarkable Diets held in this city were those of 1593 and 1654. *Upsal* has the second vote in the Diet, and is ranked accordingly.

Near this city is a royal chace, and *Ultuna*, a royal demesne, on which stands a mansion-house. In the year 1160, a battle was fought in the royal inclosure near this city between *Erick IX.* and *Henry Skateler* King of *Denmark*, in which the former was totally defeated and lost his head. *Dablberg* has bestowed several plates on this city in his *Suecia*.

*Gamla Upsala*, i. e. *Old Upsal*, is a parish that lies about half a *Swedish* mile from the city; and is by some supposed to have been the chief place whither in ancient times all the Northern People resorted to offer sacrifices to the Heathen Gods. In the year 1138, a Christian church, which is still to be seen here, was built out of the ruins of an ancient Pagan temple: near this church are several *tumuli* or sepulchral monuments. Of these buildings and antiquities *Dablberg* has inserted draughts in his *Suecia*.

*Mora-steine* is a parcel of stones lying on a level meadow about a *Swedish* mile from *Upsal*. Near these stones the Kings of *Sweden* were formerly elected and inaugurated, pursuant to a custom first introduced in the year 1059; but this ceremony was discontinued in 1457. On these stones, which are now extremely mutilated, the arms of *Sweden* with several inscriptions are cut. They stand under cover; and the little edifice in which they are inclosed is kept locked, and the key is committed to the care of the keeper of the meadow.

*Skog-kloster*, a fine estate near the *Maler*-lake, was formerly the property of the *Folkunga*-family, and after having been in the possession of several other proprietors, it devolved to Count *Brabe*, who is the present owner of it. The ancient *Dominican* convent which stood here, and was afterwards turned into a nunnery, is now converted into a fine palace; in which are two armories, a large cabinet for mathematical and astronomical instruments, and a valuable library. A view of this place is to be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Eckholmsfund* is a royal demesne. A view of it is exhibited in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Enkioping*, in Latin *Encopia*, is a very ancient city situated in a fertile country. This town in the times of paganism was the residence of the Vassal-kings of *Fierdkundra*; and of late the superior judges have held their courts and musters here. The number of inhabitants at *Enkioping* is about six hundred; and it has still some remains of two churches and as many convents. In the year 1308, it was sacked by the *Germans*; and was consumed by fire in 1572 and 1609. Its deputies rank in the Diet as the fifty-fifth voting town. *Dablberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Suinnegarus*, or *St. Siegfried's* well, lies about half a *Swedish* mile from the city. This was anciently the scene of several superstitious customs and ceremonies.

*Oerby-Hus*, a considerable estate above four *Swedish* miles from *Upsal*, now belongs to the *De Geer* family. Here King *Erick XIV.* was detained prisoner till the year 1579, when he was taken off by poison.

*Dannemora* is an iron mine about four *Swedish* miles from *Upsal*: It is one of the most ancient and considerable mines in the Kingdom, yielding every year forty or fifty thousand cart-loads of red iron ore.

*Loffla* hammer-mill lies about two *Swedish* miles from the former, and consists of four hammers, eight forges, and a smelting furnace. Though the *Russians* entirely destroyed this structure by fire in the year 1719, it was rebuilt since, and consists of so many buildings as to constitute a little town; so that it has not its equal of the kind in the whole Kingdom. These works also belong to the abovementioned *De Geer* family.

*Tobo* is the largest and most noted smelting-house in all *Sweden*.

*Elfkarleby* is a royal manor, on which stands a village where a yearly fair is kept. Here is a fishery, in which salmon and lampreys are caught in great abundance.

3. The Prefecture or Government of *WESTMANNLAND* consists of three Districts and two parishes. The only remarkable places in *Westmannland* are the village of *Ullaraker*, where a town formerly stood, of which some ruins are still to be seen, and the borough of *Borgberg* which lies in ruins.

*Note.* In *DAHLBERG'S Suecia antiqua & hodierna*, Vol. I. are to be seen views of the following feats.

*Akehof.*

*Ado*, situated on the *Maler-lake*.

*Almarstak.*

*Arnoo.*

*Angsoo.*

*Aspenas.*

*Bogefund.*

*Brunsholm*, situated on the *Maler-lake*.

*Diursbolm*, situated on the *Wortan-lake*.

*Ekebyholm*, which stands on the bank of the *Synningen-lake*.

*Ekkholm.*

*Finstad*, where *St. Bridget* was born, and several antiquities are to be seen.

*Gorvalen.*

*Gronsoo.*

*Haaga.*

*Hatunabolm.*

*Hammerfkog*, which lies in *Dablbywyk*.

*Hornsberg.*

*Hasleby.*

*Riersoo.*

*Malmwyk*, lying near the *Maler-lake*.

*Lindholm.*

*Lidoon*, on the *Alandshaf*.

*Moorby*, which stands near the *Schedwyk-lake*.

*Margretelund.*

*Nasby.*

*Noor*, which stands on the lake of the same name.

*Oerby*, near the *Mandel-lake*.

*Oestana.*

*Penningeby.*

*Rosersberg*, an elegant castle with a very pleasant garden.

*Roftrand.*

*Ridbobolm.*

*Runsa.*



*Runsa.*  
*Skaniabolm.*  
*Saalsfad.*  
*Satuna.*  
*Saby.*  
*Sio*, a stately palace.  
*Schellnora.*

*Stafsund.*  
*Steeninge.*  
*Tuna.*  
*Ulfunda.*  
*Wansgarn.*  
*Wennegarn*, and  
*Wyk.*

## II. S U D E R M A N N L A N D,

In Latin *Sudermannia*.

**T**HIS name preserves the memory of the ancient *Mannabem*, i. e. *Mansio Virorum*; and as it lies to the south of *Upsal* and *Upland*, it was called *Suder-manna-land*, or *Suder-manna-bem*, i. e. *Meridionalis virorum Mansio*. It is five-and-twenty *Swedish* miles in length, and twelve in breadth; and this Province appears to be one of the first that was inhabited and cultivated in this Kingdom. The soil is fertile, and, accordingly, no labour is spared for the improvement of it. *Sudermannland* abounds in fine arable land, pastures, woods, iron-mines, and forges; and its lakes are well stocked with fish. Its advantageous situation between the main-sea and the *Maler-lake* is also the cause of its carrying on a considerable trade.

There are eleven rivers, some of which shall be mentioned in the sequel, in this province; and several fresh-water lakes, among which the most remarkable are

The *Maler*, of which an account has been given above.

The *Hielmar*, which is seven *Swedish* miles long, and has a communication with the *Maler-lake* by means of a canal, some sluices, and the *Arboga* river.

The *Bawen-lake*, in which are a hundred islands.

The inhabitants of this country chiefly subsist by agriculture, hunting, fishing, and working in the mines; and carry on a considerable trade in corn, iron, and wooden ware. On account of the pleasantness and fertility of the country, the dowager *Queens* use to have their dowery, and the *Dukes* their dutchies in this province.

*Sudermannland* is divided into *SUDERMANNLAND* properly so called; *SUDERTORN*, in Latin *Toernea Meridionalis*, which lies between *Stockholm* and *Sudertelge*, and is environed by the main-sea and the *Maler-lake*; and *REKARNA* which lies between *Hielmarsund* and *Strengnas*. But the inhabitants of this last division differ from the others both in their language and dress.

The Diocese of *Sudermannland* is the fourth in order, and contains fourteen *Provostships*.

*Suder-*



*Sudermannland*, properly so called, consists of two Governments, namely, *Nikioping* and *Suder-Torn*.

The Government of *NIKIOPING* contains three Districts.

1. *Nikioping-Lebn*; in which the places of note are,

*Nikioping*, i. e. 'a new mart,' in Latin *Nicopia*, is a well-built staple-town, and the capital of this province. It is one of the most ancient cities in the kingdom of *Sweden*, and was formerly the residence of the Kings and Princes of *Sudermannland*. The air is so temperate and salubrious that in times of a contagion, the royal family and the several Boards and Offices have frequently removed from *Stockholm* to this place. Its inhabitants are above 1200 souls; and the city is divided into two (nearly equal) parts by a large river, which rises in *Langhalsen*. In the year 1728, a stone-bridge, which is scarcely to be equalled in the whole kingdom, was built over this river. *Nikioping* was almost consumed by fire in 1661, and suffered extremely by the ravages of the *Russians* in 1719. Here was formerly a very ancient castle, which is famous in history; but it was demolished in the year 1665: The Kings of *Sudermannland* resided in it, and it was so strongly fortified that it was accounted little inferior to those of *Stockholm* and *Calmar*. The streets are all well laid out, and the high-street is planted with *Dutch* limes. It has two handsome churches, a commodious harbour, several manufactories of cloth and *Morocco*-leather, a brass hammer-mill, and drives a considerable trade by sea. Its chief magistrates are two Burgomasters. The Governor of *Sudermannland* also resides in a palace in this city. In the times of popery here was a famous convent; and several Diets have been held in this town. The *Swedish* language is supposed to be spoken in its greatest purity at *Nikioping* and its environs. Without the town is a royal inclosure; and the adjacent country is extremely fertile. This is the eleventh voting town in the Diet. *Dablberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a view of this place.

*Hasselo-Schantz* is a fort which stood on an island, but now lies in ruins. Here is a custom-house for searching all ships that are bound to or from *Nikioping*.

*Nafuequarn* and *Staffio* are two founderies for great guns: the latter is extremely well contrived.

*Eriksberg* is a large estate in the parish of *Malm*, about four *Swedish* miles from *Nikioping*, on which stands one of the finest palaces in the kingdom, with a most delightful garden. This place affords a quarry of beautiful speckled marble.

*Juleta* is a fine demesne near the *Oeljarn*-lake. A convent formerly stood on the same spot.

*Trosa* is an ancient sea-port lying in a mountainous country, with a good harbour. It is the eighty-sixth town that votes in the Diet. *Dablberg* has inserted a plate of it in his *Suecia*.

2. *Gripsholms-Lebn*, which contains the following remarkable places.

*Mariefred*,

*Mariefred*, in Latin *Pax Mariæ*, is a town situated on a bay of the *Maler*-lake, so called from a convent built there in 1490, and dedicated to the Virgin *Mary* in the year 1504. A good stocking and woollen manufacture is carried on in this town; which has the seventy-sixth vote in the Diet.

*Gripsholm*, which lies near *Mariefred*, is a royal castle with a park. A prospect of this together with the town of *Mariefred* is to be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Rafsnas* and *Tynnelfo* are royal demefnes with castles of the same names.

*Strengnas*, in Latin *Strengnesia*, is a very ancient inland town, situated on the *Maler*-lake. In the choir of the cathedral in this town King *Charles IX.* with his two Queens, Duke *Charles Philip*, and, in a private chapel, *Charles Gyldenkielm* are buried. *Strengnas* is a Bishop's See, and has a celebrated *gymnasium* or feminary founded in 1626 by *Gustavus Adolphus*, who at the same time endowed it with pensions for thirty students. Here is also a school, in which King *Gustavus I.* received his first instructions in the rudiments of learning. In the times of popery here was a convent with a chapel belonging to it. Several Diets have, from time to time, been held in this city. *Strengnas* is the thirty-first town that votes in the Diet, and is exhibited in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Kongsberg* is a fine royal farm, that lies about a *Swedish* mile from *Strengnas*, which from the time of King *Erick Lasses* to the reign of *Gustavus I.* was a convent of nuns.

3. *Efcbilstuna-Lehn*, which contains the following towns, &c.

*Efcbilstuna*, or *Carl-Gustavstadt*, in Latin *Efcbilstuna*, lies at the extremity of the *Hielmar*-lake, where it runs into the *Maler* with great rapidity. This town derives its name from St. *Efcbil*, who came over from *England* in the year 1082 to preach the Gospel in *Sudermannland*, and was the first Bishop of this See. *Efcbilstuna* was incorporated with *Carl-Gustavstadt*, which lies in its neighbourhood, in the reign of *Charles X.* and the municipal privileges were jointly conferred on them in the year 1659. This is the forty-second of the towns that have a vote in the Diet. The view of its castle makes a good figure in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Sunhyholm* and *Ribbingelund*. These are two royal demefnes.

*Torsbella*, in Latin *Torsilia*, is an inland town, about a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from the *Maler*; and a rapid stream runs close by the town and empties itself into the lake. It is under the jurisdiction of the same Burgomaster as *Efcbilstuna*. *Torsbella* is the forty-first town that votes in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given it a place in his *Suecia*.

*Biby*, a royal demefne, lies in this neighbourhood.

SUDERTORN consists of three Districts, which belong to the Government of *Stockholm*, and is a kind of island, being surrounded with water. The remarkable places in *Sudertorn* are,

*Sodertelge*, in Latin *Telga Australis*, an inland-town lying betwixt the sea and the *Maler*-lake. About half a *Swedish* mile distant from this town, at a place called *Aegelfarwyk*, is a good harbour. *Sodertelge* was formerly a staple-town and in a flourishing condition; and there is still a thriving manufacture of worsted and silk-stockings in this town. The inhabitants have also begun to plant tobacco in the adjacent grounds. In the year 1719, *Sodertelge* was burnt by the *Russian* army; but has been since rebuilt. In the fourteenth century a great Provincial assembly, and in 1494 a Diet was held here. This is the fifty-third voting town in the Diet; and a view of it may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Carlholm*, which lies near a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from *Sodertelge*, was formerly a royal demesne, with a castle on it.

*Dadero*, also a royal demesne.

*Brankyrka* is a parish, where a bloody battle was fought in the year 1518.

Among the *Scheeren*, or rocky islands on the coast of *Sudermannland* are the following remarkable places.

*Landfort*, a point of land that projects a great way into the sea, on which stands a light-house.

*Elfnabben*, or *Hielmsnabben*, is a safe harbour, and often mentioned in history.

*Note*. In the second volume of *Dahlberg's Suecia* are prospects of the following feats:

*Akero*, which is situate on the *Yngarn*-lake.

*Ado*.

*Arsta*, near which is a harbour in the *Baltic*; and two medicinal springs that run into a cavity below them, and, by a canal, are carried one hundred paces farther to a lower place, where the water in winter and summer spouts up like a perennial fountain.

*Haringe*, situated on *Langfjohln*-lake.

*Ericksberg*.

*Fjohlm*.

*Hanstawick*.

*Gieddeholm*.

*Hesleybyholm*.

*Horningholm*.

*Ludgonas*.

*Nykas*.

*Malma*.

*Malfaker*, which stands near the *Maler*-lake.

*Rinsta*.

*Rafsnas*.

*Sandmare*, which stands on a bay in the *Baltic*.

*Safwestabohm*.

*Siofa*, situated near a bay in the *Baltic*.

*Siobhm*, which stands on the bank of a lake.

*Sunby*, near the *Hielmar*-lake.

*Sunbyholm*, near the *Maler*-lake.

*Steenhammer*.

*Tullgarn*.

*Tarna*.

*Tynelfo*, on the *Maler*-lake.

*Torso*.

*Wybyholm*.



## III. N E R I K E,

In Latin *Nericia*.

**T**HIS province is ten *Swedish* miles in length, and eight in breadth. In most parts of it the soil is fertile, and produces corn and pasturage. This country also yields iron and sulphur mines, quarries of load-stone, alum, lime-stone, &c. Consequently it has iron foundaries, with sulphur and lead-works. Here are large woods, several high mountains, seven considerable rivers and three-and-twenty lakes, which abound in fish. *Nericia* is famous for several flourishing manufactures of all kinds of hard ware; and it has always been remarkable for forging arms, &c. The chief occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture, working in the mines and forges, hunting, and fishing; and they trade in grain and all kind of iron-wares. *Nericia*, in ecclesiastical affairs, is divided into four Provostships, and is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Strengnas*, excepting the *Pastorat* of *Nysund*, which is annexed to the Superintendency of *Carlstadt*. As to its political state, this province is divided into \*

1. *Ost-Nerike*, or *East-Nericia*, which contains four Districts, and the following places of note.

*Oerebro*, in Latin *Oerebroa*, a famous ancient town, situated on the *Hielmar*-lake, where the river *Schwart* runs out of it. It is a long narrow town, with a castle quite surrounded by water; and as it had been often besieged, King *Gustavus* I. caused it to be well fortified; and farther improvements have been made in the fortifications since that time. In the times of popery here was a *Carmelite* convent. *Oerebro* has at present two churches, a grammar-school, and a manufacture of fire-arms. It has also a harbour on the *Hielmar*-lake, which has a communication with the *Maler* by means of the river and canal of *Arboga*; and consequently there is a passage by water from hence to *Stockholm*. The inhabitants carry on a considerable trade; and this town is in high reputation for the exactness of its weights and measures. The Governor of the province resides here. Among the Diets held at *Oerebro* those of 1347, 1531, and 1540 were the most remarkable. This is the twenty-seventh town that votes in the Diet. *Dablberg* has a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Axberg*-sulphur-work lies about a *Swedish* mile and a quarter from *Oerebro*: Of the ore dug up here is, first, made sulphur, afterwards vitriol, and lastly a red colour for painting.

*Sellewalla* and *Siofstad* are two decayed towns, of which nothing is to be seen but the ruins.

\* I suppose the Author means *East* and *West-Nerike*; but he has entirely omitted the latter.

*Riseberga* is a fine estate, where formerly stood a nunnery, the walls of which are still remaining.

At *Ramunda* or *Romla-Boda* are a church, a post-office, and an inn. Here formerly stood the only *Eremitical* convent in the whole kingdom.

*Askerfund*, an inland town, stands at the extremity of the *Wetter*-lake. It has an harbour on the lake, and carries on a good trade in grain, nails, and tobacco. *Askerfund* is the sixtieth voting town in the Diet. *Dablberg* has inserted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Oxoga*, a good medicinal spring impregnated with sulphur, lies about two *Swedish* miles and a half from *Oerebro*.

#### IV. W E S T M A N N L A N D,

In Latin *Westmannia*.

**T**HIS province is seventeen *Swedish* miles in length, and fourteen in breadth: The soil is fertile and consists mostly of arable land, with meadows, pastures, and very fine woods in proportion. It also contains rich silver, copper, and iron-mines, and very curious copper, steel, and brass hammer-mills, and is reckoned the most famous province in the kingdom for mines. The iron trade carried on by the inhabitants of *Westmannland* is the most considerable in all *Sweden*; the quantity of iron exported annually from *Westerabs*, *Arboga*, and *Kioping*, amounting to 120,000 *lb*. The south part of the province chiefly consists of arable and meadow land, and supplies the inhabitants of the mine-districts with corn; and the northern parts abound in mine-works and fine woods. *Westmannland* is well watered both with rivers and lakes, which yield a vast plenty of fish; and the *Maler*-lake is of great advantage to its commerce, as it opens a passage from this province to *Stockholm*. The chief subsistence of the inhabitants is derived from agriculture and the mines, breeding of cattle and fishing: The woods, hammer-mills, &c. also employ a great many hands.

The Bishoprick of *Westmannland*, or *Westerabs*, is the fifth in rank, and is divided into fourteen *Provostships*. It includes the greatest part of the Prefecture or Government of *Westerabs*, a considerable part of that of *Nerike* or *Oerebro*, and the whole District of *Copparberg*.

This province is divided into the *Land* and *Mine*-Districts.

1. The WESTMANNLAND Government, properly so called, includes nine *Land* and two *Mine*-Districts; in which the places of note are,

*Westerabs*, in Latin *Arosia*, a very ancient inland town, where the river *Schwart*, after it runs through the town, empties itself into the *Maler*. Its name is a contraction of *Wesstraaros*. It is an episcopal see, and has a *gymnasium* or seminary; a castle, part of which is made use of as a granary; a weigh-

a weigh-house for metals, from whence a vast quantity of iron, copper, and brass is exported every year to *Stockholm*; and is the residence of the Governor of the province. The cathedral is a spacious and magnificent structure; but is particularly remarkable for the architecture of its tower, and for being the burial place of King *Erick XIV.* The trade carried on at *Westerabs* is very considerable. This city has often suffered very much by fire, particularly in the year 1714. Among the Diets held at *Westerabs*, those of 1527 and 1544 were the most remarkable. This is the twenty-fifth town that votes in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given a prospect of it in his *Suecia*.

*Jobannisberg* is a royal farm, not far from this city.

*Badehundsabs* is a long, narrow, sandy tract of land about half a *Swedish* mile from *Westerabs*, where the *Danes* were totally defeated in the year 1521.

*Kila*, or *Satra*, is a famous medicinal spring on a delightful spot of land.

*Sala* or *Salberg*, in Latin *Sala*, is a fair large mine-town and *Mine-District*, situated on the river *Sag*. It was built and endowed with several privileges, by King *Gustavus Adolphus* in the year 1624. The streets are straight and well paved; and the market-place spacious and regular. Here is held a mine-court, a court of works, a town-council, and an inferior court of judicature. To this town belong several considerable estates; and the neighbouring villages supply the inhabitants of *Sala* with all kinds of commodities at a very cheap rate; no custom or duty being paid here. Here is also a medicinal spring. In the year 1736, this town was destroyed by fire. In 1710, the royal family chose *Sala* for their retreat during a raging pestilence. Not far from the town is a very large ancient silver-mine, which used annually to produce 24,000 *Lothige* marks\* of silver: But it is now greatly declined. This is the forty-sixth voting town in the Diet. *Dablberg* has inserted a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Gulboburg* and *Baibyburg* lie directly opposite to each other on the rivers *Sewa* and *Kila*. They are both large boroughs and inclosed with walls.

*Engson* is a good estate with a fine seat, on an island in the *Maler*, and belongs to Count *Piper*.

*Tidon*, which is also a fine estate belonging to the *Oxenstiern* family.

*Stromsholms* is a well situated and very rich demesne, with a magnificent seat and a church. *Dablberg's Suecia* exhibits two views of it.

*Suraburg*, formerly called *Tkuraburg*, one of the largest boroughs in the whole kingdom, is still in a pretty good condition, and inclosed within two walls. On the spot where the church now stands was formerly a Pagan temple famous for the offerings made there. Superstitious travellers, in

\* A *Lothige* mark is equal to nine ounces twelve penny-weights, *Troy* weight.



passing by, still present money at the old offering-church, and some congregations have prayers said here for the recovery of the sick.

*Davo*, or *Davidso*, is an island so called from St. *David*, the first preacher of the Gospel in *Westmannland*, who came from *England* about the year 1060, and founded a convent in this place. It is now a manor belonging to a noble family.

*Norberg* is a parish, in which are the best iron-mines in this province.

*Kioping*, in Latin *Kopingia*, a handsome old town, situated at the extremity of a creek or bay of the *Maler*-lake called *Galten*. *Kioping* carries on a good trade, and has a fine iron weigh-house. The King's Halbardiers or Life-guards are quartered in this town, which has the thirtieth vote in the Diet. *Dablberg*, in his *Suecia*, has given a prospect of *Kioping*. Near this town lies the *Kioping Gerichts-bugel*, or Juridical hill, where causes were formerly tried in the open air. Below the town formerly stood a royal farm and a castle, near the river.

*Kungsohr* is a royal demesne.

*Arboga*, in Latin *Arbogia*, is a handsome ancient town, but formerly in a more flourishing condition than it is at present. The *Stora*, i. e. 'large river,' runs through this town, which contains between eight and nine hundred inhabitants, who carry on a good trade. Here are a large iron weigh-house, a manufacture of arms, and a mint; and a part of the King's Halbardiers or Life-guards are quartered in this town. In the year 1710, the Senate withdrew to this place on occasion of a pestilence that raged at *Stockholm*. *Arboga* was formerly well fortified; and embellished with a palace, several convents, chapels, and market-places, of which some remains are still to be seen: But at present here are only two churches standing. Several Diets and Provincial assemblies have, from time to time, been held here. Near the town is a remarkable grove where sacrifices were offered in Pagan times, with other monuments of antiquity. *Arboga* is the twenty-sixth voting town in the Diet, and has a place in *Dablberg's Suecia*. At the distance of a quarter of a *Swedish* mile from the town is the *Arboga* canal by which there is a communication between the lakes of *Hielmar* and *Maler*. There are nine sluices in this canal.

*Note.* In the second volume of *Dablberg's Suecia* are views of the seats of *Malhammar*, *Mira* on the *Helmar*-lake, and *Tydon* on the *Maler*.

2. Part of the District of *FALLINSBRO* and four Mine-Districts in *Westmannland* belong to the Government of *Nerike*: In these are the following towns, &c.

*Lindesberg* or *Linde*, in Latin *Lindesberga*, is a Mine-town and Mine-District. It lies on a narrow tract of sand between two lakes. Queen *Christina* built this town in the years 1643 and 1644; and in the following year it received its charter of privileges. Here is a good medicinal spring. *Lindesberg* is the fifty-sixth voting town in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Wedwag* and *Quarnbacka*, are considerable forges for steel, iron, and brass, erected in the last century. Here all kinds of tools, &c. are made in a very curious manner.

*Nora*, a *Mine-town* and *Mine-District*, is situated on a lake, which has its name from this town. It was built in 1643, and drives the best trade of any of the *Mine-Districts* in the kingdom in unwrought iron, which is the best in *Sweden*. In the year 1731, *Nora* was burnt down; but has been since rebuilt, and is at present in a flourishing condition. This is the fifty-seventh town that has a vote in the Diet; and a view of it is inserted in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Loca* is a famous medicinal spring, whose water is impregnated with sulphur and nitre.

*Note.* In the second volume of *Dahlberg's Suecia* are views of the mansion-houses of *Espelunda*, *Ekeberg*, *Gioksholm*, and *Kagleholm*.

## V. S W E D I S H T H A L - L A N D,

In Latin *Dalecarlia*, or *Dalia*.

THIS province is so called from its many vallies [*Thalern*], and is forty *Swedish* miles in length, and six-and-twenty in breadth. It is very mountainous, and has but little arable land, especially beyond *Falun*: But where the soil between the mountains allows of tillage, it yields plenty of oats and pease, of which the inhabitants make bread. In the parish of *Ratwicks*, indeed, some fine barley grows. This country is almost every where diversified with mountains, vallies, woods, heaths, lakes and rivers; and abounds in mines of silver, copper, and iron, and with fine quarries of slate and mill-stones. The pastures are so good that grazing turns out here to very good account.

The river called *Dal-Elbe*, the source of which is among the *Norway* mountains, consists of two streams; which, after watering the whole country, unite in the parish of *Gagnefs*. That branch of the river which waters the eastern part of this province is called the *Oester-Dal-Elfwe*, and the adjacent country has the name of *Oest-Thal-Land*; and that which runs through the western part of the country is called *Wester-Dal-Elfwe*, and the neighbouring parts are termed *West-Thal-Land*. At length this river discharges itself into the *Baltic* sea at *Elfkarleby*.

The inhabitants of this province, who are called *Dalecarlians*, are famous in History for their integrity and firm attachment to their King and Country; but more particularly celebrated for their courage and bravery; and indeed it is probable that they are descended from the ancient *Scythians*. They are proof against toil, hardships, and want; and have thoroughly learned the advantage of industry and œconomy, since they are able to subsist on their daily

daily acquisitions in such a barren mountainous country. In many parishes there is scarce a man who is not skilled in all necessary handicraft trades; and in other parts of the Kingdom they hire themselves out as labourers, carpenters, masons, &c. They trade in wooden-ware, the bark of birch-trees, hops, slate, lime, scythes, hatchets, and other iron utensils.

In the north part of this province, and even in the parishes of *Elfdalen*, *Mora*, and *Orsa*, they speak a particular language which has a great affinity with the old *Gothic* and *Islandic* dialects. They use three different dialects; and a *German* understands their language much better than a *Swede*. They still retain the manner of living, dress, and customs of the ancient *Swedes*, without affecting new fashions, or modern inventions. The *Runslab* or *Runic* Calendar is still in use among them; and they carry it about them as a perpetual Almanac.

*Dalecarlia* and *Westmannland* make but one diocese: But in the times of Popery there was a cathedral, with a Dean and Chapter at *Tuna*. This province belongs to the Prefecture or Government of *KOPPARBERG*, and consists of six Divisions, four of which lie in the eastern part of *Dalecarlia*, and these are

1. *NASGARDS-LEHN*. In this Division are the following places of note.

*Stiernfund*, a forge or hammer-mill which is curiously constructed. It was erected in 1701, and is put in motion by water.

*Nasgard*, an ancient royal manor formerly known by the names of *Nasbolm* or *Nasbobolm*.

*Hedemora*, a very ancient town, but in latter times handsomely rebuilt, stands on the *Hafran*-lake. It carries on a good trade, and has an annual fair on the festival of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*. *Hedemora* is the only town in the province of *Dalecarlia*, and one of the principal cities in the whole Kingdom. It is famous for the gun-powder which is made here. A mint was formerly set up in this town, by *Gustavus Erickson*; and some of the pieces coined here are still to be seen in the cabinets of the curious. The gardens about this town, in which fruit trees are cultivated, are unquestionably the most pleasant in all *Dalecarlia*. *Dahlberg* has bestowed a plate on this town and *Afwestad* in his *Suecia*. *Hedemora* has the fifty-fifth vote in the Diet. In the year 1754, this town was destroyed by fire.

*Afwestad* is a copper-work belonging to the Crown situated on the *Dal-Elbe*. It is so large a structure that it resembles a town, and has its own church and congregation. Copper-plates are made, and the small copper money is coined here. There is a royal post-house in this place.

*Wykbyttan* or *Trollbo*, and *David's-byttan*, are two steel-manufactories.

2. *SATERS-LEHN*, in which are

The parish of *Tuna*, where there is the largest congregation in the whole Kingdom, consisting of between eighteen and nineteen hundred families. In this parish lies *Hushaga* with a royal manor and a palace, where the Governor of the province resides.



*Sater*, an inland town situated on the *Liustern*-lake, was built in the reign of King *Gustavus Adolphus*, who often spent some weeks here; but this town had not its charter of privileges till the year 1642. The mint for copper-money was removed from this place to *Afweblad*. It is the eighty-eighth town that votes in the Diet.

*Satersbof*, which lies near the town of *Sater*, was formerly a royal manor, and the residence of the Governor of *Dalecarlia*; but is now taken up by the colonel of the *Dalecarlian* regiment.

3. COPPARBERG-LEHN, in which are

*Falun*, in Latin *Faluna*, or *Gamla Copparberger*, i. e. 'old copper-mines,' a Mine-Town and Mine-District, lies between two lakes called *Warpan* and *Runn*, and two mountains. It is large and very populous, and its streets are regular; but the houses are all built with timber. One of its two market-places is very spacious, and handsomely built. On the north side of it stands a large stone edifice, which is a Court of Justice; and on the same market place a public-cellar, granary, and dispensary are erected. On the east side of it is a handsome stone church, the roof of which is covered with copper: the doors are of brass, and the tower is remarkably high. Without the town towards the East stands another church built with stone, and covered with copper. *Falun* has a good school, a fine copper weigh-house, a Mine-Court, and other inferior courts. The place where the Governor resides is a little without the town. This is the fifteenth of the towns that vote in the Diet.

A little to the West of *Falun* is the famous copper-mine which used to produce every year 10,000 tons, and in 1650, 10,000 tons 321 pounds of copper: But of late its produce is considerably decreased. The depth of this mine is three hundred and fifty *Swedish* ells \*. A great variety of curious engines belong to this work.

A prospect of *Falun* may be seen both in *Dahlberg's Suecia* and *Outbier's Voyage au Nord*. The former has also given a draught of the mine-works.

*Noor*, a royal manor near *Falun*, is the place where the Governor now resides.

4. OESTLICHE THALER, or the East vallies, in which are

*Silianfors*, a fine iron-forge.

The great slate quarry in the parish of *Orsa*, &c.

Two of the above-mentioned six Divisions lie in the western part of *Dalecarlia*; and these are,

1. The west MINE-DISTRICT, in which lie

*Grangarder*, or *Grange*, a parish with inexhaustible iron-mines; and *Skys-Hytta*, a silver-mine.

2. The WESTERN VALLIES, containing,

The iron-works of *Grawendal* and *Stromskal*; and

The ruinous fort of *Lima*.

\* A *Swedish* ell is about half an *English* ell.

## N O R D L A N D,

In Latin *Nordlandia*.

**N**ORDLAND is bounded to the East by the gulf of *Bothnia*, to the South by *Upland* and *Dalecarlia*; to the West it joins to *Dalecarlia*, *Norway*, and *Lapland*; and to the North it borders on *Lapland* only. Its name is derived either from *Nore Jatteo*, i. e. 'the Giant *Nore*,' who was the first inhabitant of this country; or from its situation, which is north of *Sweden* properly so called. *Nordland* in the times of Paganism was a distinct Monarchy, to which several Vassal-kings were tributary.

This country has the advantage of all the other parts of the Kingdom, in the plenty of timber and venison it affords; but its rocks and mountains leave but a small extent of land fit for tillage. Here are, however, some fertile spots and verdant pastures, which are agreeably interspersed with lakes, rivers, and woods.

This province, besides the timber it yields has several rich mines, forges or hammer-mills, and other works for metals. Its lakes and rivers abound in fish; and great numbers of cattle are bred in the country. Here are greater flights of wild-geese than in any part of the Kingdom; but *Nordland*, like *Lapland*, affords no crabs or lobsters. Birch-trees and oak do not grow wild beyond *Upland*, so that those trees are very scarce here. Some scattered tracts of land in this country are inhabited by the *Finlanders*.

*Nordland* has nine towns, and comprehends seven provinces. Six of the latter constitute the Government of *West-Nordland*; but the seventh, together with *Lapland*, belongs to the Government of *West-Bothnia*. These provinces are as follows.

## I. G A S T R I C K L A N D,

In Latin *Gastricia*.

**T**HIS province derives its name from *Gastrick*, which signifies 'hospitable,' and contains very little arable land, but consists of mines, woods, rivers, and lakes, abounding with fish; and by an industrious use of these conveniences the inhabitants procure themselves a tolerable subsistence. *Gastrickland* consists of one *Land-District-jurisdiction*, and a *Vogtey* or inferior Government. The clergy of this province are subject to the Archbishop of *Upsal*.

Remarkable towns, &c. in *Gastrickland* are the following.

Geste

*Geſte* or *Geawok*, in Latin *Gevalia*, is a ſtaple-town and the largeſt in all *Nordland*. It is well ſituated on a creek of the gulf of *Bothnia*. The river *Geſte* runs through the town, and ſupplies it with plenty of ſalmon; it afterwards divides itſelf into three branches; forms the two pleaſant iſlands of *Alderholm* and *Iſlandſholm*, and, about the diſtance of half a *Swediſh* mile from the town, empties itſelf into the main-ſea. *Geſte* has the conveniency of readily forwarding, in boats, all goods deſigned for the lading-place; and is a ſtaple-town of ſuch antiquity, that it boaſts of being founded three hundred years before *Stockholm*. Some buildings in this town are of ſtone, others of wood; and ſome houſes are partly built with ſtone and partly with wood. The ſtreets are very irregular, and the market-place is badly laid out; ſo that a ſtranger would never be able to find it out without a guide. It is a populous town, and has a good *Gymnaſium* or Seminary, which was removed hither from *Stockholm* in 1669; a ſchool; a fine town-houſe built with ſtone; a very ancient hoſpital, rebuilt with ſtone in the year 1731; and carries on a very advantageous trade with a great number of ſhips. The Company of Fiſhermen conſtitutes two thirds of the burghers. The principal inhabitants are traders and manufacturers; and by that means employ the poorer fort. The caſtle, which is ornamented with towers, was entirely deſtroyed by fire in 1727, but it has been ſince rebuilt; and the Governor reſides in it. This town has the thirteenth vote in the Diet.

On the iſland of *Alderholm* are a handſom iron weigh-houſe, a dock, and a landing place for deals, &c. two warehouses, a large custom-houſe, an arſenal, and a magazine.

On *Iſlandſholm* ſeveral magazines and warehouses are erected. A view of all theſe may be ſeen in *Dahlberg's Succia*.

*Friederichsbantze* is a fort, which lies about a league from the town on a ſmall iſland in the ſea.

*Hillebrun*, a medicinal ſpring, lies about three leagues from *Geſte*.

*Eka*, a copper-mine with ſeveral veins of a certain rich ore, lies in this neighbourhood.

## II. H A L S I N G L A N D,

In Latin *Helſingia*.

THIS province is twenty *Swediſh* miles in length, and ſixteen in breadth. What little arable land it contains yields good crops; and the paſtures feed great numbers of fine cattle. In *Halſingland* are very good iron-works, and large foreſts; and its rivers and lakes abound in fiſh. Lin-ſeed are alſo cultivated here with great induſtry.



The inhabitants are chiefly employed in agriculture and working in the mine-works, grazing, all kinds of handicraft trades, hunting, and fishing. They also traffick in iron, flax, linen, tallow, butter, tar, deal boards, timber; and wild fowl, as partridges, woodcocks, and moor-hens, of which some thousands are every winter carried in sledges to *Stockholm*. The *Helsingians* are celebrated for their courage; having made themselves masters of several countries, where they have settled and called them by their name. This country maintains both soldiers and sailors. Besides the *Gothic* or *Runic* calendar, which is every where known, the *Helsingland Runic*, as it is called, which differs from the former, is used here.

*Helsingland*, with regard to its ecclesiastical state, is divided into three Provoftships, which are comprehended in the Archbishoprick of *Uppsala*. As to its political division it consists of a *Land-District-Jurisdiction*, and two *Vogtens*; and is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

1. The NORTH PART contains the following towns, &c.

*Hudickswall*, in Latin *Hudickswallia*, a small sea-port town, which formerly stood in another situation; but in 1640 it was built on the extremity of a narrow tract of land. The old town was founded in the year 1582, by order of King *John III.* and was endowed with the staple privileges by the same Prince in 1590, which were revoked in 1636. It has a commodious deep harbour, and on three sides is surrounded with water. Besides an advantageous trade in deal boards, beams, wooden-chairs, flax, linen, butter, fish, &c. the inhabitants employ themselves in agriculture and mechanic trades. Here is a church, and a school. In the year 1670, *Hudickswall* was consumed by fire; and in 1714, it suffered greatly by a like misfortune. In the year 1721, it was totally laid in ashes by the *Russians*; but is at present in a flourishing condition. This is the thirty-sixth voting town in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Agon* is an island, remarkable for a good harbour, and skilful mariners.

The island of *Boldson*, and *Horflansjudd*, a peninsula, which have both good harbours, are in this division.

2. The SOUTH PART, in which are the following places of note.

*Soderhamn*, in Latin *Suderhamnia*, is a small sea-port situated on the river *Liufnan* between two mountains. It was first built by gun-smiths and copper-smiths; and obtained its privileges in the year 1620. Its buildings, for the most part, are not more commodious or elegant than the peasants houses in the country: However, the church, which was consecrated in 1693, is the best structure in all *Nordland*. Here is an old manufacture of fire-arms (but those made here are inferior to some others,) and another of linen. The inhabitants carry on a brisk trade in flax, butter, &c. This is the sixty-ninth voting town in the Diet; and a view of it may be seen in *Dablberg's Suecia*.

*Stor-jungfrun*, an island, is a noted land-mark.

*Flors* is a linen-manufactory, so called from the village *Flor* in which it stands. Coarse and fine linen, thread-stockings and night-caps; likewise plain and flowered stuffs, a coarse kind of muslin for aprons, damasks for table-cloths, and buckram, are made here; but these are said to be none of the best, nor are they durable. Several curious remains of antiquity are to be seen in this country.

### III. M E D E L P A D,

In Latin *Medelpadia*.

THIS province is fourteen *Swedish* miles long and seven broad; and is said to derive its name from the old *Scandinavian* word *Medal*, 'the middle,' and *a*, 'a river,' because it lies between the rivers *Niurunda* and *Indal*. Though this province is very mountainous and woody; yet it has several delightful vallies of arable and meadow land. The seed is not sown here till about *Whitsuntide*; but the corn ripens in ten weeks.

Among the forests, the largest and most pleasant is *Astrog*; and next to that *Gimdalen*, which is about six *Swedish* miles long, and abounds in venison and game of all sorts, as elks, rein-deers, beavers, martens, weasels, linxes, foxes, and wild-fowl.

This country also is agreeably interspersed with lakes and rivers, which supply it with plenty of fish. The grain which grows in this province is sufficient for the support of its inhabitants. They have also plenty of cattle, and deal in timber, hops, flax, hemp, butter, fowls, and dried fish. Salmon, seals, &c. are also caught here. *Medelpad* maintains its quota of sailors. In ecclesiastical affairs it is within the diocese of *Hernösand*; and consists of a *Land-District-jurisdiction* and a *Vogtey*.

This province is divided into the *North* and *South Part*.

I. In the NORTH PART, the places of note are

*Sundswall*, in Latin *Sundwallia*, a well built small sea-port, and the only one in the country. It was built in the reign of *Gustavus Adolphus*, on the spot which is now called the *Old town*, but formerly the *Trading-place*. In the year 1624, it obtained several privileges as a manufactory of small fire-arms; but in 1647, it was rebuilt on its present situation, which is a barren sandy plain betwixt high mountains, by Queen *Christina*; and the manufacture of fire-arms was removed to *Suderhamn*. In the middle of the town is a small pond well stocked with a fish called *Karauseb*\*. A woollen manufacture was lately set up in this town. Here is a dock where several large vessels have been built. The harbour, which is about

\* A kind of small carp. See note p. 188, of this Volume.

a league in breadth, is very commodious; and the inhabitants drive a good trade in tar, the bark of birch-trees, deals, wooden-chairs, linen, flesh, cheese, and butter. *Sundswall* is the sixty-eighth voting town in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has given a view of it in his *Suecia*.

In *Selanger* parish, which is not far from *Sundswall*, formerly stood a royal palace; and some remains of an oblong Juridical Eminence and an old castle are still to be seen there.

*Skian* church is the most remarkable in this country; for it was formerly a castle, and is every where full of loop-holes for small arms.

2. The SOUTH PART, in which lies

The parish of *Tuna*, where, in the foot way close by the river is to be seen a tomb about ten ells in length, said to be that of the giant *Skarkoter*, who was famous for his heroic achievements, and equally celebrated for his clemency and moderation. In the same parish are the harbours of *Kalfsundet* and *Skepshamn*, and the ruins of several fortresses.

#### IV. J A M T L A N D,

In Latin *Jemtia*.

THIS province borders on the kingdom of *Norway*, and is nearly of a circular form, being twenty *Swedish* miles in breadth, and four-and-twenty in length. *Jamtland*, after undergoing many revolutions, was annexed to the crown of *Sweden*, by the treaty of *Roschild*, in 1658. It is, in general, a mountainous country; but the hills differ extremely from each other in appearance.

The western part of this province is over-run with vast craggy rocks and high mountains, which lie on the frontiers of *Norway*; and between these are deep vallies and rapid torrents: However in some spots among the mountains, which are frequently covered with snow, one meets with fine verdure, and plenty of nutritive pastures. In these parts the inhabitants house their cattle even in summer-time; and thus never fail of breeding fine cows, whose milk yields excellent butter; and yet they purchase beef and tallow from *Norway*.

The eastern part of *Jamtland* is a champaign country, watered with several lakes and rivers which abound with fish. And such is the fertility of some spots of land in these parts, that in a good year when the corn has not been nipt by the frost, the neighbouring provinces are supplied with grain from hence. Barley is the grain that is mostly sown here: They also sow a considerable quantity of rye, and some wheat. This country produces oats of an extraordinary goodness, and abounds in excellent turnips. Sometimes, indeed, the severity of the frost causes a scarcity of corn; and then  
the



the *Jamtlanders* are obliged to make bread of the pounded bark of trees; the rye bread being reserved for festivals.

In this province many hands are employed in extracting iron from a kind of iron-ore resembling small stones, which are collected in fenny places. Here are also alum-quarries, a white and porous *calx* or chalky earth, sandstone, slate, the *Lapis ollarius*\*, fine rock-crystals, lead-ore, two new-built copper-works, and a place where salt-petre is refined.

Here are great numbers of elks which the *Jamptlanders* castrate, in order to make them grow fatter; and a mischievous species of vermin called *Lemlar*, or *Lemeller*, are very common in this country.

The river *Ragunda-Elfwie*, which is called *Indals-Elfwie* by the inhabitants of *Medelpad*, forms a stupendous water-fall near the parish of *Ragunda*. The salmon, that frequent this river, go no higher than this cataract; so that none are caught above it.

That this country is very thinly inhabited, is evident from hence, that there are only six places where Divine Service is performed every *Sunday*; that in some churches it is celebrated every other *Sunday*, and in others only every third *Sunday*; and that in all the rest the congregations assemble but three or four times in a year. There is not so much as one town in *Jamtland*, and only eleven parishes, in which forty-six churches are erected. In all these parishes there are but seven hundred and seventeen chimneys, though they make an area of four hundred square geographical miles at least. Hypochondriac disorders, and suicide are very frequent in this solitary, desert country.

The inhabitants, for the most part, subsist by agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fishing. They also carry on a considerable trade with the *Norwegians*, whom they supply with salt-pans, steel and iron-ware, and a kind of leather dressed in a particular manner so as entirely to keep out the water, with which they make shoes, boots, and even jackets that are proof against wet. Every peasant is obliged to contribute towards the subsistence of the Soldier; so that this country maintains a regiment of foot, or according to others, of dragoons, at the expence of 31,609 dollars †; and a troop of horse, the charge of which is 6,210 dollars.

The *Jemtland-Lappers* consist of something above one hundred families; and since the year 1746 a church and a school have been erected for their use at *Folinge*.

This country and *Harjedal* are subject to the same provincial jurisdiction; but it constitutes a particular *Vogtey*.

The clergy of this province are subject to the Bishop of *Hernosand*, and with regard to its ecclesiastical estate, it consists of the *North* and *South* Provostships.

\* See an account of this stone in note p. 178 of this Volume.

† A *Swedish* silver dollar, which, I suppose, the Author means, is equal to 1s. 6d. ¾ sterling.

*Jamtland*, according to its political division, consist of the *South* and *North Part*.

1. The *SOUTH PART*, in which lies

*Frosan*, a kind of market-village, which has something of the appearance of a town. It lies on an island in the *Stor-sjö-lake*, from whence it has a prospect of the whole country; for it stands nearly in the centre of it. Here is a school, a post-house, and a fort called *Kronstadt*, which was erected in the year 1710.

2. The *NORTH PART*, in which the places of note are

*Carlstrom*, a decayed fortification, which stands on the frontiers of *Norway*.

*Fort-Hierpe*, which is also on the frontiers of *Norway*, and is embellished with a tower. But all that remains at present of this fortification is only a large block-house.

*Fort-Dufve*, which lies farther up the country, is in a ruinous condition. Near this fort is a *Bureau* or frontier custom-house.

## V. H A R J E D A L E N.

In Latin *Herdalia*.

**T**HIS province was incorporated with the *Swedish* dominions by the treaty of *Bremsebro*, in the year 1645. It is eighteen *Swedish* miles in length, and from seven to eight in breadth. It abounds in mines and woods; and consequently agriculture is not much practised here. Its pastures, however, are so excellent, that the inhabitants carry on a very advantageous trade in horned cattle. Its rivers and lakes, like all the rest in the country, abound with fish. The inhabitants subsist by grazing, hunting and fishing; and sell a great quantity of cheese, which is much esteemed. They maintain no soldiers in this province; and several places among the mountains are inhabited by *Lappers*. *Harjedalen* is under the same provincial jurisdiction with *Jamtland*; but makes a particular *Vogtey*. The clergy of this province belong to the *South* Provostry of *Jamtland*.

1. In the *NORTH PART* are the following remarkable places.

*Liufnedal*, a fine copper-work.

*Langoskantzze*, a fort, which was demolished in 1734.

*Funnedsals-By*, where there is a frontier custom-house.

*San-Fialet*, a very high mountain, which is always covered with snow.

2. The *SOUTH PART*, in which lie

*Storbin* and *Liungdalen*, two villages inhabited by some wealthy *Lappers*.

VI. *ANGERMANNLAND,*In Latin *Angermannia*.

**T**HIS province lies farther north than *Harjedalen*, and is twenty-four *Swedish* miles in length, and sixteen in breadth. This country is extremely mountainous and woody; and the remarkably high mountain called *Skula*, with the vast and uninhabited forest of *Skula-skog*, in this province are well known. However, the soil is fruitful, and in some parts produces excellent corn; especially on the south side of the *Angermannland* river, from *Hernofand* to the parish of *Botea*, and a noble seat or manor called *Holm*, &c. In those parts rye, pease, lin-seed, flax, and good barley, grow; and the meadow-lands afford good pastures for the cattle. Here are also several fine iron-works; and the lakes and rivers yield plenty of fish. In the bottom of some of the stagnant lakes in this province is found a fine red colour or *lake*.

The *Angermannland* river is one of the largest in the whole kingdom, being about a league over at the mouth of it, and navigable for small vessels several *Swedish* miles up the continent. The salmon-fishery, in this river, also brings in extraordinary profits to this country.

This province maintains sailors for the royal navy; and consists of a *Land-District-Jurisdiction* and two *Vogteys*. It is the residence of the Superintendent of this diocese, which is the thirteenth in rank, and is divided into two *Provostships*. This Superintendency or bishoprick consists of the provinces of *Angermannland*, *Medelpad*, *Jamtland*, *Harjedalen*, and the whole government of *West Bothnia*, *Kremi-lapmark* excepted which belongs to the diocese of *Abo*. *Angermannland* is divided into,

I. The SOUTH PART, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Hernofand*, in Latin *Hernesandia*, is a sea-port, and the only town in this country; and stands on the island of *Hernon* near the mouth of the *Angermann* river, where it empties into the gulf of *Bothnia*. It was built by King *John III.* in the year 1584, and has a communication with the continent by a bridge of about one hundred ells in length. The timber houses are built of a great thickness, and stand on the south side of the town on the declivity of a hill towards the sea. On the north side of the harbour there is a sufficient depth of water for the largest ships to come up and unload at the warehouses; but on the south side, it is only practicable to flat bottomed vessels and lighters. *Hernofand* was formerly a staple-town, and still carries on a considerable trade, particularly in linen; and the annual fair held here on the fourteenth of *September* is the most frequented of any in *Nordland*. A *Gymnasium* or Seminary erected in 1648, and a school are an



ornament to this town; which is also the residence of the Superintendent of the See of *Hernösand*. In 1710, 1714 and 1721, this place was burnt by the *Russians*; but has pretty well recovered itself since. Near it are several *tumuli* or sepulchral eminences. In the years 1746 and 1748, some shocks of an earthquake were felt in this neighbourhood. This is the thirty-ninth town that votes in the Diet; and a view of it is to be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*.

*Hammar*, an inn and post-house, lies about five *Swedish* miles from *Hernösand*. Here the iron and wooden-ware exported from this province are shipped; for the *Angermann*-river is not navigable for vessels of burden.

*Saleftea*, a parish and bartering place. An annual fair is held here on the festival of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*.

*Gieroders-Gård*, in Latin *Geiraudagardia*, was formerly a considerable Royal Mansion-house, and the residence of the Sovereigns of *Nordland*. Hence it derives its name from King *Gierauder*.

*Holm* is the only Nobleman's feat in all *Nordland*, and lies about four *Swedish* miles from the town of *Hernösand*.

2. The NORTH PART, in which are

*Ulfon*, a good harbour and fine iron-work, which lies about six *Swedish* miles from *Hernösand*.

*Skialewad*, a parish and bartering place, which is about ten *Swedish* miles from *Hernösand*. An annual fair is held here on St. *James's* day.

## VII. W E S T - B O T T N.

In Latin *West-Bottnia*.

**B**OTTN, or *Bothnia*, is that large country which extends itself northwards on both sides of the *Gulf of Bothnia*. That part which lies on the west side of the *Gulf* is called *West-Bothnia*; and that on the opposite side is termed *East-Bothnia*. Of the former we shall give an account here, reserving the latter to our description of *Finland*.

The inhabited part of WEST-BOTHNIA, which extends from the frontiers of *Angermannland* to the church of *Upper Tornea*, is computed to be about fifty-eight *Swedish* miles in length, and its breadth is from sixteen to eighteen miles. A great number of pleasant islands lie off the coast of this province. It has also several forests, the largest of which borders on *Lapmark*, with many lakes and rivers. There are excellent pastures in *West-Bothnia*; though on the summit of the high mountains it mostly consists of moss, on which the rein-deer generally feed. The country is for the most part level and the soil tolerably fertile; and though they sow the corn here very late, it ripens in six, seven, or eight weeks, according as the place lies more or less exposed

exposed to the North. However, sudden frosts often prove extremely detrimental to the corn; particularly the frosty nights that often happen in the month of *July*. There are also several good copper and iron-mines in this province.

The inhabitants of *West-Bottnia* are famed for their courage and bravery. They subsist by agriculture, grazing, hunting, and fishing. They endure hunger and want beyond any other people, being inured to it from their youth; and even in fruitful years they mix their corn with chaff and pulverized pine-bark, to make what they call their *Stampe Brot*, or pounded bread. They traffick in beams, deal boards, timber, and shingles, tar, salted and smoke-dried salmon and other fish, wild fowl, cummin, train-oil, venison, tallow, butter, cheese; also in fables, and skins of blue and white foxes, ermines, bears, wolves, martens, hyenas, beavers, and rein-deer; also in castor, linen, &c. These commodities are not only carried to other parts of *Sweden*, but also over the mountains to *Norway*, or through vast deserts to *Russia*. This country maintains its quota of soldiers.

*West-Bottnia* is divided into four *Vogteys* or inferior Governments: These are subject to the general Government instituted in the year 1638, which also includes *Lapmark*. It contains two Provincial Jurisdictions; and as to its ecclesiastical State, belongs to the See of *Hernofand*.

1. The first VOGTEY or Division contains the following places of note.

*Umea*, in Latin *Uma*, a considerable sea-port, lies at the mouth of the river *Umea*, and was built by King *Gustavus Adolphus*. It has four streets lying in a straight line from East to West, with several others intersecting them at right angles from North to South. At the east angle of this town is a large area on which the church stands. *Umea* has a commodious harbour and carries on a considerable trade. It is the seventy-third voting town in the Diet; and *Dablberg* has a view of it in his *Suecia*.

*Umea-Kongs-Gard* which stands near the town, was formerly the residence of the Governor of the province; but the Governor now resides at a place called *Gran* near the parish church of *Umea*.

*Bydeas-Kirche*, which lies not far from *Umea*.

The parishes of *Nysatra* and *Lofanger* are also in this neighbourhood.

Note. *Lyksele* and *Umea Lapmark* belong to this *Vogtey*.

2. The second VOGTEY contains the following remarkable places.

*Pitea*, in Latin *Pitovia*, is a sea-port situated on a small island at the mouth of a river of the same name. It is joined to the continent by a wooden-bridge, at the end of which a gate is erected. The streets run in parallel lines; but the church stands a good way without the town, so that the bridge must be crossed to go to it. This town has a commodious harbour and a good school. *Pitea* was first built, in the year 1621, by *Gustavus Adolphus*, about half a *Swedish* mile higher up in the country: But the town being totally destroyed by fire in 1666, it was rebuilt on its



present situation. *Old Pitea* is now a large village, consisting of a great number of houses scattered irregularly on a fine common. This is the seventy-fourth voting town in the Diet. *Dablberg* has given a view of *Pitea* in his *Succia*.

*Skelleftea* and *Buretras* are parishes in this neighbourhood.

*Note.* *Pitea-Lapmark* belongs to this *Vogtey*.

3. In the third *VOGTEY* lies

*Lulea*, in Latin *Lula*, a sea-port, which was first built by King *Gustavus Adolphus*. *Lulea* originally stood near the parish church of *Lulea*; but was afterwards rebuilt in the year 1649 on a peninsula, about a *Swedish* mile from *Old Lulea*, which lies close by the mouth of the river of the same name, and has a good harbour. *Old Lulea* has still some streets remaining, and resembles a town, but is not surrounded with palisadoes.

This town has the seventy-fifth vote in the Diet, and ranks accordingly. *Dablberg* has inserted a view of it in his *Succia*.

*Note.* This *Vogtey* includes three other parishes; and also *Lulea* and *Calix Lapmark*.

4. In the fourth *VOGTEY*, or Division, lies

*Tornea* or *Torne*, in Latin *Torna*, a little sea-port town consisting of about seventy wooden-houses. It stands on a peninsula called *Schwentzar*, which is formed by the river *Tornea* where it falls into the gulf of *Bothnia*. *Tornea* lies in 65°, 50', 50", North Latitude; and is said to be the most ancient town in *West-Bothnia*, and the farthest towards the North of any in *Europe*. It has three streets running in parallel lines from North to South, which are intersected at right angles by fourteen cross streets or lanes. The church is built with timber, and stands at a little distance from the other buildings, but within the palisadoes which inclose the town and a pretty large piece of arable land. Divine Service is performed here in the *Swedish* language, which is used by the Burghers. There is another church built with stone on an island called *Biorkbon* which lies near the town, in which the Service is performed in the *Finnean* language for the benefit of the Burgher servants, and the inhabitants of the adjacent country. All the dwellings in this town, like those in the neighbouring country, have a large court, two sides of which at least are taken up with apartments, and in the other two are the stables and barns, and other out-houses. These courts, in the country habitations, are exactly square; but in the town are of an oblong form. A very considerable trade is carried on here not only by the *Swedes* and *Laplanders*, but the *Russians* and *Norwegians*; who also resort to the trading and bartering places of *Tornea*, in order to traffick.

In the year 1694, this town was honoured with the presence of King *Charles XI.* who, being accompanied by several persons of distinction and learning, took a view of the Sun at midnight, if it may be called so, from the church tower at *Tornea*: For, at that time of the year, the Sun may be seen



seen above the horizon when in the opposite part of the meridian of *Tornea* by a spectator placed at a certain height above the surface of the earth\*.

This town and the adjacent country from hence to *Kittis* have lately been rendered famous by the observations made in these parts by *Monf. Maupertius*, and some other members of the Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, in order to determine the figure of the earth. This is the seventy-sixth voting town in the Diet.

There is a prospect of *Tornea* in *Dahlberg's Succia*, and a plan of it in *Outbier's Voyage au Nord*, 'or Travels to the North.'

## L A P L A N D,

In Latin *Laponia* or *Lappia*.

WE shall here only treat of *Swedish Lapland*, or, as the inhabitants call it, *Sameland* or *Samenolmai*; which, towards the East, is bounded by *East Bothnia* and *Russian Lapland*, to the South by *Famland*, and borders on *Norwegian Lapland* to the North and West. This country, according to some computations, is sixty *Swedish* miles in breadth, and seventy in length; whilst others extend the breadth of it to one hundred and twenty *Swedish* miles, and make the length still greater in some places.

*Lapland* is very thinly peopled in proportion to its extent, which must be imputed to the many inconveniences arising from the climate, soil, &c. But these disadvantages, in many particulars, are exaggerated beyond the truth. This country, indeed, at first sight makes but an uncouth and disagreeable appearance. For in most places it abounds with rocks and mountains, whose lofty summits seem to penetrate the clouds, and are covered with eternal snow. In other parts of it nothing is to be seen, for many leagues, but fens, and morasses, with few scattered birch-trees, shrubs, and bushes, stunted in their growth by the inclemency of the sky. Other parts of *Lapland* consist of barren heaths and sandy deserts, over-run with moss, fern, and other unprofitable weeds; one barren wild beyond another with little or no pasture growing on the intermediate spots. Besides these inconveniences, the long and severe winters, the cold, dark, and tedious winter-nights, together with the vast depth of snow that covers this desolate region, might seem sufficient to deter every living creature from fixing his abode

\* *Seeing the sun at midnight* is an inaccurate way of speaking, which the Author makes use of several times in this work; but I have endeavoured to render the passage more intelligible here, and in p. 207, &c.

in this inhospitable country. And when, at last, the heats in the middle of summer begin to warm the air, *Lapland* is infested with such swarms of gnats and flies, that, like clouds, darken the sky, and obscure the light of the sun.

But notwithstanding all these disadvantages, Nature has bestowed on this dreary region several conveniences, which, if duly weighed, examined, and properly used, might in some measure reconcile the inhabitants to their native country. It is found by experience, that corn will grow in *Lapland*; and there are more dry, than swampy spots amidst its rocks and sandy plains; nor is it without loose and clayey soils. When the summer heats are set in, the earth is here sooner purified, and the moisture exhaled, than in other places; so that one often sees with astonishment grass and vegetables spring up, and the land tilled, where, a few weeks before, winter appeared with all its horrors. Grass will grow almost in every part of the country if it was duly cultivated; so that grazing and feeding of cattle might be turned here to a good account.

*Lapland* abounds in all kinds of beasts, birds, and fishes. The furs and skins of bears, wolves, beavers, otters, martens, elks, wild and tame rein-deers, hyenas, ermines, hares, squirrels; black, red, and white foxes, &c. bring a great deal of money into the country. Here are also wood-cocks, snow-birds, as they are called; a species of partridges, moor-hens, falcons, and other large and small birds.

The fisheries in this country not only afford a plentiful subsistence to great numbers of the inhabitants, but enable them to sell a considerable quantity of fish to their neighbours. The pearls found in the *Lapland* rivers are remarkably valuable; and swans, geese, all kinds of wild ducks, and other sea-fowl, unknown in other countries, abound here; especially in the southern parts of *Lapland*.

In the vallies and along the banks of lakes and rivers, pine, fir, birch, juniper, willow, asp, elder, and other trees are observed to thrive; and a moderate plenty of wholesome vegetables, berries, flowers, grass and other herbs are produced in this country. The woods of pine-trees, which grow here, are more serviceable than orchards; that beneficial tree, besides several other uses to which it is applied, being an essential part of the food of the inhabitants: for a labouring man, who feeds on bread made of the pounded bark of the pine-tree, preserves himself in health and vigour, without feeling his strength in the least impaired by it.

It is true there are mountains of a prodigious height and extent in this country: but these seem to be intended as fences to shelter the plains from violent winds; and even the wildness and irregularity of them has something very entertaining to the eye, both in winter and summer. Nor are they any obstruction to travellers; on the contrary, the alternate succession of hills and vallies exhibits a delightful variety of prospects. In-  
fomuch



so much that there are some places in this country which, if they were not included in *Lapland*, might be reckoned among the most enchanting spots in the world. It also appears from trials which have been made, that these mountains, upon a proper search, would be found inferior to none in richness of ores and fossils: at least the largest and clearest rock-crystals, purple amethysts, topazes, loadstones, quicksilver, native cinnabar, with other minerals and fossils have been found in the bowels of them.

The gnats and flies that infest this climate are, indeed, extremely troublesome; but this is an inconvenience common to many other countries. Besides, they swarm chiefly in the woods; and there are methods for securing one's self, in some measure, against these insects.

If, at certain times of the year, the days are very short and the long nights tedious and irksome; this is compensated by the pleasant luminous summers, when the sun is visible, for several weeks, above the horizon; a phenomenon to which the inhabitants of more southern climates are entire strangers. Even in winter, the radiancy of the snow, the brightness of the moon-light, the twinkling of the stars, and the effulgent corruscations of the *Aurora Borealis*, afford a light sufficient for most of the necessary occasions of life. Not to mention the twilight, which begins four or five hours before sun-rise, and lasts as long after that luminary is set. Besides, the inhabitants, conformably to the calls of Nature, sleep away most of the dark season, and employ the luminous part of the year in their respective occupations; so that they do not suffer either in their health or circumstances by this seeming inconveniency.

The all-wise and bountiful Creator has made a provision for them against the severity of winter, by the multitudes of animals with which this country is stocked; whose soft and warm furs and skins defend the inhabitants against the most piercing cold, and preserves them in a comfortable warmth. In great and deep snows the *Laplanders* generally keep at home, and if it happens that they are obliged to pitch their tent in the open air on a journey, even this hardship is no more than what is supportable; at least it seldom endangers their lives, as there can be no want of furs for clothing, or a *Lapland* fire, which is procured by laying two billets of pine-tree one over the other, and then kindling them by rubbing them together\*. The snow by its glare not only alleviates the darkness in winter, but also whilst that season lasts, renders travelling safe and easy; so that they need not be under apprehensions of any sudden impediment in their journeys. They have lately invented a kind of skates in the use of which they are so dexterous and agile, that many a *Laplander* has pursued a wolf which had a design upon his herd, over the deepest snow, and soon overtaken and killed it. And though several morasses and pasture grounds remain frozen,

\* This passage is obscure; and I am not certain whether I have rendered it according to the Author's meaning.



in some years, almost during the whole summer : Yet in other years, when the spring sets in early, the earth in most places, excepting the mountains, is thawed and cherished by the sun-beams as in other climates ; and by the long continuance of the sun above the horizon, the air glows with such heat as accelerates the maturity of the fruits of the earth, and inspires the inhabitants with a genial warmth.

The time when *Lapland* was first peopled cannot be easily determined, any more than the nation from which its first inhabitants descended. That the *Lapps* were originally one people with the *Finns* seems incontestable ; and, probably, their separation may be dated from the time, when the latter began to leave off their former rude manner of life, to build regular habitations, and to apply themselves to agriculture. Some writers, from the remarkable affinity which the language of the *Lapps* bears to the *Hebrew*, their peculiar dress, their religious observance of *Saturday* as a Sabbath, and several other particulars, endeavour to prove that they are originally descended from the ten tribes of *Israel*.

The word *Lappen* can hardly be thought to be derived from their language : for these people do not so much as know that this is the name given them by the *Swedes* and other nations ; *Sabme*, or *Same*, being the name by which they call themselves in their own language. But whether the word *Lapp* be derived from the *Finnean* word *Lappu* ; or from the *Swedish* word *Lapp* which signifies a patch or botch ; or from *Lappa* which in the *Nordland* language denotes a bat ; or lastly, from *Lopa* ' to run ' must remain a doubtful point. It is, however, pretty clear that this appellation was not given them till between the years 1077 and 1190.

They have their own peculiar language, which, though in reality no more than a dialect of the *Finnean* tongue, has some mixture of other languages, especially the *Swedish* and *Norwegian*. Grammars, Dictionaries and other books are now published in the *Lapland* language. They also have different dialects ; and as the *Swedes*, *Lapps*, *Finns*, *Danes*, and *Russians* converse and trade promiscuously in *Lapland* ; there is in each of the *Lapmarks* a certain dialect which is generally used and understood in all of them as the national language. In *Lule-Lapmark*, the *Lappean* tongue obtains ; and in *Tornea* and *Kimmi Lapmark*, the *Finnean* dialect is used. In the South *Lapmarks* many of the *Laplanders* understand *Swedish*, and many of the *Swedes* speak the *Lappean* language ; and in some parts the former can converse in what is called the town dialect, which was introduced by the burghers of some towns who trade with the *Laplanders*.

The *Laplanders* are a surprizing instance that a whole people can subsist contentedly without plowing ; sowing, or planting ; without spinning or weaving, brewing or baking ; and without houses or farms. They employ themselves in feeding of herds, which is the most innocent, and most ancient occupation in the world ; and as their lot is cast in a country, where winter engrosses

engrosses the greatest part of the year, and consequently renders it impossible for them to provide a sufficient quantity of hay and fodder for great herds of cattle, to last the whole year; the bountiful Creator has bestowed on them a species of animals that require little or no trouble to provide for. This is the Rein-deer\*, which of all tame animals requires the least attendance, and procures the greatest profit and advantage to its owners. These creatures provide for themselves, feeding in summer on leaves, moss, and grass, of which they meet with as much as suffices even among the mountains; and in winter they live only on a sort of moss which grows in every part of *Lapland*. They come at this moss by scraping away the snow with their feet; these animals easily find the spots where it is to be found by unerring instinct. During a journey of several days with the rein-deer, the only trouble a traveller is at, is either to turn them loose, or tie them to a tree, where the quantity of food they eat at a time does not exceed a handful. The sole care of the *Laplanders* is to keep their herds of Rein-deer from going astray, and to protect them from wild beasts; and this, especially in summer time, they look upon as no inconsiderable task. They have no occasion to house the Rein-deer, as they always lie out in the open air without any inconveniency; and when after a strict search there is no danger from beasts of prey, against which the *Laplanders* keep a good look out, they turn them loose into the woods; but when they are under any apprehension of danger from that quarter, the Rein-deer are watched by the *Lapland* herdsmen.

This animal very much resembles a stag, except that it hangs the head down a little, and the horns project directly forward. On the fore part of the head, near the root of the large horns, are two smaller branches; so that they seem to have four horns. There are two different species of Rein-deer, namely, the wild and tame. The latter is a well-made, swift animal; and so useful to the *Laplanders* as to supply the place of corn-fields and meadows, horses and cows. In winter the *Laplander* makes use of the Rein-deer in travelling, as we shall mention in the sequel. Its flesh, either fresh or dried, is his chief food; and all his cloathing from head to foot consists of this animal's skin. He also exchanges some of his Rein-deer for summer clothes, and a tent, which serves instead of a house. The Rein-deer also supplies his owner with a bed; and, both winter and summer, with good milk and excellent cheese. Of the intestines and tendons he makes thread and cordage; and the bones and horns the superstitious *Laplander* offers to his idols. In a word, the Rein-deer is every thing to a *Laplander*, so that by the loss of these useful animals he is entirely ruined. Whilst he has Rein-deer, he gives himself little or no concern about fisheries, mechanic trades, or any other occupation: For very few of these people practise either fishing or shooting, except it be those who are not possessed of any Rein-deer.

\* *Remthier*, which is usually rendered *Rain-deer* or rather *Rein-deer*, signifies a swift animal, or a creature formed for running, from the *Teutonic* word *Rennen* 'to run.'

Some of them are masters of above a thousand, and know every particular animal by dividing them into classes, and giving every one of them a name. *Ren* is not a *Lappean* word; these creatures all over *Lapland* being called *Palso*; and the herds are by the *Lapps* termed *Aelo*. Every one distinguishes his own herd by a particular mark on the ears.

The *Laplanders*, with regard to their manner of living and habitation, consist of two different tribes, namely, the *Forest* and the *Mountain Laplanders*. The former spend the greatest part of the summer in the woods, and have no property; but the latter live among the mountains. The food of the former is mostly fish and fowl; whereas the latter chiefly depend on their herds of Rein-deer. The *Laplanders* in general and especially the *Foresters*, are reckoned exceeding good marksmen. They have a great aversion to mining, though some of them have found their account in working in such mines as were contrived by others, or in carrying away the ore with their Rein-deer. In most of the *Lapmarks* the *Lapps* make it their employment to carry the burghers to the yearly fairs; and some of the former, for a reasonable reward, usually look after the Rein-deer belonging to any of the townsmen, in summer time. Most of the *Laplanders* choose rather to sleep away the whole day in their tents, than to put their hands to any work; especially if they can live without it: Others, however, whom pinching want has prompted to industry, give evident proofs that this people do not want a capacity for mechanic trades, nor even for exquisite pieces of workmanship. Their boats and many other utensils which they make for use and ornament, are plain indications of their skill; and their sledges are very curiously inlaid with horn of all kinds of figures. Their horn spoons, their *Runen-Stabe* or *Runic* Kalenders, with their moulds for casting pewter utensils, their bows and arrows, their packs of cards, and the like, are all of their own making.

The *Lapland* women have a kind of horn perforated with large and small holes, through which they draw the tin or pewter into wires of different thickness, with which they very elegantly embroider their girdles, clothes, and sledge-furniture. They also prepare all kinds of skins by various methods; and cut out and sew the several sorts of dresses used among them. The *Lapland* tobacco-boxes and snuff-boxes, of which there is an infinite variety, are too well known to be described here.

From what I have observed above it appears that the chief wealth of the *Laplanders* consists in Rein-deer, on which they depend for their subsistence and welfare. To them the Rein-deer is all in all. Some of the wealthiest among this people are possessed of two or three thousands of those animals; so that the territory or district belong to many villages in this country contains no less than 30,000 Rein-deer great and small. But these possessions are very precarious, not only on account of the depredations made among them by the beasts of prey; but also by the various distempers



to which these creatures are subject, and other accidents. Several *Laplanders* are also masters of a considerable quantity of silver, in rings, buckles, large and small spoons, and cups, &c. which often weigh several pounds; and money grows daily more and more in use among them. But they prefer the *Holland Rix-dollar* to all other coins, by reason that the *Norwegians*, with whom they traffick in summer, will not take any other money in exchange for their goods. There have been instances of some wealthy *Laplanders* who, at their death, besides 3000 heads of Rein-deer, have left as much money and plate behind them as two strong men could hardly drag along. Many of these people have a way of burying their treasure, which seldom comes to light afterwards. The rest of their substance consists of domestic utensils, and other furniture; as tents, iron pots, copper and brass-kettles, furs and other clothes, bed-furniture, fine sledges with harnesses, hatchets, boats and fishing-tackle, the value of all which, taken together, amounts to a considerable sum when they are first bought by young housekeepers. As to the poorer sort they are obliged to put up with fewer conveniences.

As grazing or feeding their herds of Rein-deer is the chief occupation of the *Laplanders*, they are obliged to shift their habitation very often in a year. For in winter time, when the mountain *Lapps* come down into the woods, they are hardly ever observed to continue a fortnight together in one place. At the approach of spring, most of them with all their families take a journey of twenty or thirty *Swedish* miles among the mountains of *Norway*, as far as the *North-Sea*, where they fix their abode till autumn; and then they quit the mountains, for otherwise they would be frozen to death for want of fuel, and their Rein-deer would be starved; there being no moss for them to feed upon. They spend the summer upon the mountains, as the lands for which they pay taxes to the crown lie there; for in the winter whilst they live among the woods, they take up tracts of land which belong to other people, for which they also make them some acknowledgment. Besides, the Rein-deer thrives best on the mountains in the summer season. Their manner of living, indeed will not admit of dwelling constantly in one place, as is manifest from the *Lapps* that dwell in the village districts, or live by fishing, over all the *Lapmarks*; who though they make no excursions to the mountains, yet never settle in one place; but while they fish or look after their Rein-deer rove from place to place, and from one lake to another. This the Rein-deer, in some measure, obliges them to do; for at a certain time they shew a disposition to remove, whether their owners will or no, either for want of fodder, or because they are sensible of the approach of spring.

This unsettled way of life lays the *Lapps* under a necessity of providing themselves with portable dwellings; and such are their tents, the construction of which is as follows. They first set up several poles or stakes in a circular position, gradually closing together towards the top almost in the form of an imperfect cone, or a sugar-loaf with the top of it broken off.

Over these poles they lay a kind of coarse cloth, which the *Swedes* call *Walmar*, or pine boughs. One of these booths generally has room for twenty persons. The hearth is in the middle of the tent, with stones laid round it to prevent the fire from spreading. An aperture is left at the top, where the poles almost join, which serves both for chimney and window. From this hole hang two iron-chains with hooks at the ends of them to hang the pots on, in order to boil their victuals, or melt the ice or snow into water to drink. Round the inside of the tent they lay their clothes to keep out the cold wind, and spread branches of birch or fir round the tent by way of seats to sit upon; for they have neither chairs, stools, nor benches. About the tent stand the cupboards or pantries, where they keep their provisions, on posts or blocks of woods, so that they look something like the pigeon-houses, which are erected on pillars. This is done as a security against vermine. When they can possibly do it, the *Laplanders* pitch their tents near dried pines for the conveniency of fuel; but in spring and autumn they are forced to be contented with brush-wood. It must, however, be observed that in some of the *Lapmarks* the *Lapps* erect boarded cottages, or wooden-houses resembling those of the *Swedes*.

Their carriages are a kind of sledges, which are shaped like small boats with a broad keel, and of such a thickness that no water can penetrate through them. They have also a back board for the traveller to lean against, who sits fast laced in the sledge, and well secured from the cold. This vehicle is drawn by the Rein-deer, and generally those of the wild species, and carried with incredible swiftness though forests and valleys, and over mountains. The Rein-deer is harnessed with a large cloth girt, embroidered with pewter-wire and fastened on his back. The bit is a piece of thick leather tacked to the reins of the bridle which goes over the head and neck of the deer; and from the breast a leather strap passes under the creature's belly, and is fastened to the fore part of the sledge, so that it serves instead of shafts to the carriage. In summer time the Rein-deer in a great measure lose their vigour and celerity: However they do very well for carrying the *Laplanders* effects from one place to another, if they are loaded in a proper manner. Besides these sledges the *Laplanders* use a kind of *Skidders* or skates like those used by the *Finns* and *Nordlanders*. These consist of a board three or four ells long and six inches broad, ending in a point which turns up before. With these boards fastened to their feet, and a pole with a round piece of wood at the end of it to prevent its sinking too deep into the snow, the *Laplanders* slide with such swiftness as to overtake bears and wolves.

In summer-time the *Laplanders*, especially those who practice fishing, and live in *South Lapmark*, make use of a kind of boat or little barque, for crossing rivers, &c. These are made of very slight boards curiously joined together with filaments of the roots of trees, or hempen strings; and

are

are so light, that a *Laplander* carries his boat on his shoulders with the oars and every thing that belongs to it, besides his provision-bag, wherever he pleases. They steer them with prodigious dexterity even among rocks, and down the most rapid water-falls; and though the cataract be never so frightful, and the *Laplander* ever so great a stranger to it; yet he undauntedly ventures down the precipice in his little boat. When he goes against the stream and comes to a water-fall he puts ashore, takes his boat upon his back, and travels on till he comes to smooth water. In the northern *Lapmarks* they use larger boats, which are four or five fathoms or more in length. Those are either haled up the great water-falls with ropes, or in the less rapid cascades are shoved up with poles by two men, one of whom sits at the head and the other at the stern. As for going down the water-falls with the stream, they look upon it as attended with no difficulty.

The flesh of the Rein-deer is the usual food of the *Laplanders*, who have neither wheat, rye, barley, nor any other grain, except what little they buy in the villages, and of the burghers. The flesh is not the only food which these animals afford them; for they yield them milk of which they make cheese, &c. There is, indeed, a difference between their summer and their winter diet. The mountain *Lapps* in summer live chiefly upon milk; and of this, and likewise the cheese made of it, they lay up a store for winter, steeping several kinds of berries and herbs in it. In the month of *September*, before the cold weather and piercing frost set in, they kill what numbers of their Rein-deer they think will suffice till *Christmas*. After this they kill as many as will serve them for the rest of the year, when they are fattest; and sometimes they kill one or two occasionally. The more wealthy sort among the *Laplanders* sometimes in summer buy *Norway* cows and sheep, which they milk, and afterwards kill for their winter provision. They also eat the flesh of bears and beavers, sea and wild-fowls, &c. The poorer sort among the *Laplanders*, who live in the villages, even content themselves with the flesh of dogs, wolves, foxes, horses, &c. to satisfy their craving appetite. The fishing *Laplanders* live on the fish they catch, and to gratify their palate have various ways of dressing them. Those who have Rein-deer, on high days and festivals dress flesh and fish together. In summer they buy their salt from the *Norwegians*; and in the winter-time they purchase it of the burghers. Tobacco is not very rare among them; but is sold at a high price. None of the women have a hand in dressing victuals; that being the office of the master of the house, assisted by his servant. They never omit saying Grace before and after meat, nor to shake one another by the hand before they rise from table. Their drink is chiefly water. As for brandy, it is prohibited among them; but if they can come at it, they pay but little regard to this prohibition.



Marriages among the *Lapps* depend wholly on the pleasure of the parents, who pay no manner of regard to the disposition of their children: and as interest is their chief view in these alliances, it is seldom known in *Lapland* that one of the parties that come together is rich and the other poor. A widow that is decrepit with age, and deaf and blind to boot, will never want suitors here, if she be rich. They seem to disapprove of marriages among relations, and even intimate friends; and polygamy has never obtained among them either in antient or modern times. When the parents have determined to choose for themselves a daughter-in-law at any certain place, they take their son, however unwilling he may be, along with them; and, accompanied by some of their near relations, go to the dwelling of the son's future father-in-law, always carrying some brandy with them. This liquor is the first and most powerful pleader in behalf of the match; and the acceptance of it is reckoned a good presage of success: But if the treaty comes to nothing, the young woman's parents are obliged to pay for all the brandy used during the courtship\*. If the marriage takes place, an agreement is made about the money and goods which the bridegroom's parents are to give to those of the bride, and the presents which they are to make to the bride's nearest relations. On the other hand, the bride's parents are obliged to give the new married pair so much furniture and Rein-deer, as a kind of an equivalent for the presents they have received; and the bride's relations are also to make some returns for their presents. The poorer sort marry without any of these previous ceremonies; every one providing according to his ability at such times. The marriages are solemnized in the churches; and at this ceremony the bride puts on such a feigned timidity and obstinate reluctance, that sometimes force must be used to get her to the church. After the ceremony, the company return to their tents, where they have a feast; every one bringing his portion of provisions which, in the dressing and serving up, are all jumbled together, and every person who is present eats in what manner he pleases. The *Laplanders* are accused of making so little account of the marriage-bed, as even to be panders to their own wives; but this heinous charge has never been made good.

Their children are inured to hardships from their birth; in their infancy they are securely laced up in their little cradles, which are suspended in the smoke at the top of their tent, and rocked by pulling two cords that hang down from each side of it. The *Lapps* are very careful in teaching their children to earn a comfortable subsistence, by accustoming them, as they grow up, to all kinds of work practised among them; but have a great aversion to schools.

\* It appears by this custom that the prohibition mentioned above by the Author amounts to nothing at all, or that there is no other prohibition but the dearth of that liquor, and their inability to purchase it.

The *Laplanders* are generally of a brown and swarthy complexion, which seems the necessary consequence of their sordid way of living, and being so much in the smoke, and exposing themselves to the air in all weathers. The hair of both sexes is black; and their faces are broad, with peaked chins and hollow cheeks. They are generally of a middling stature. The change of modes and fashions in dress is unknown among them; their constant habit being furs, and a coarse kind of cloth called *Walmar*.

In their conversation and behaviour the *Lapps* adhere strictly to their national customs and usages, one of which is to kiss each other by way of salutation. In some of the *Lapmarks* or provinces of *Lapland*, thefts are seldom or never heard of: But in others, this crime is no less common than among other nations. Self-interest is a predominant principle in all their transactions, and prevails even in the presents they make. They seem to be naturally very low spirited and timorous\* so that every little accident alarms them. They have an aversion to war, and dread serving in the army; in consequence of which very few of them are employed that way. But they are not so dull of apprehension, and void of natural parts, as is generally imagined.

Though the inhabitants of all the *Swedish Lapmarks* profess the Christian Religion; yet in many parts such gross ignorance and errors prevail, as have but very little tincture of Christianity; the only signs of it consisting in their being baptized, and calling themselves by the name of Christians. What renders them extremely tenacious of their Pagan rites and customs, is the high idea they entertain of their ancestors, looking upon whatever they did as reasonable, just, and commendable.

As to their Mythology, they term the Supreme God and Sovereign of all things, and of good Spirits, *Jubmel*; and the Prince or chief of the evil Spirits they call *Perkmel*. But as they attribute to the evil Spirit an equality of power with God, it is no wonder that, like other Pagans, they should endeavour to obtain the favour of this evil Being, and render him propitious, that he may not hurt or annoy them. *Tbor* or *Ajike* they look upon as a kind of God that is both a good, and an evil Being at the same time. Besides these and some other Deities, they likewise have a great many Demi-gods.

As for images, they make them both of wood and stone; but they pay the greatest reverence to the latter sort. They generally bring the horns and bones of their Rein-deer to the altar of Offerings. When the *Laplanders* come within sight of the place where the idol stands, they uncover themselves, make low bows, and creep on their hands and feet to the stones where they make their offerings.

\* This character can hardly be reconciled with what the Author observes above, concerning their intrepidity in rowing down the water-falls, pursuing wild-beasts, &c.

A great deal has been said of the forcery practised by these people; but fame has very much exaggerated the truth, and magnified their skill beyond what it is in reality. Very few of the *Laplanders* pretend to be skilled in magic; and when any thing singular seems to be brought about by their magicians, it is as extraordinary and as much a matter of wonder as among other nations. The notion they have of their forcerers is, that by a form of words, or some other means, they restore health to the sick, and give tidings of stolen goods; and that they also have it in their power to do mischief, and hurt their neighbours. But they can produce no authentic instances of the exertion of such power as they attribute to these magicians.

Every body has heard of their magic Drums; but the *Laplanders* are so cautious in the use of these implements, that their own countrymen scarce know any thing of them\*. Indeed, if a person is detected in practising  
with

\* As the Author has not given a description of the magic drum, and the ceremonies practised by the *Laplanders* at their incantations, &c. the following account, by a person who was eye-witness of the operation, may not be unentertaining to the reader.

M. *Motraye*, who travelled through *Lapland* in the year 1718, relates, that he hired a guide to direct him to the tent of one of these magicians, in the most remote parts of *Lapland*. *Motraye*, having given the guide all imaginable assurances that he would not betray him to the government, found the wizard in a poor hut, and in as wretched circumstances as those people are usually represented to be in this part of the world: upon which he made the common observation, that if these wretches had any interest with the devil, he would surely reward them better. The magician gave M. *Motraye* his hand, and ordered him to follow him to the top of a high mountain, which lay to the east of his hut; where he desired him to stand while he fetched his drum, and other utensils which were necessary for his purpose. Soon after, the *Laplander* returned with his magic drum, which he had hid among the shrubs, for fear of a discovery. It was of an oval form, and had but one head, which was covered with a transparent kind of parchment and wretchedly painted with the celestial signs; and there was fastened to it a chain, with several brass rings. Before the operation began, the wizard demanded if they had any brandy; and half a pint of that liquor being presented to him, he immediately drank two thirds of it. He then put the chain and rings into the inside of his drum; and turning the bottom upwards, he beat upon it with a forked piece of a Reindeer's horn, for few minutes; the rings all the while jumping about, and making a jingling noise. After this, he laid himself down flat on his back, setting the head of his drum upon his bare breast; and having shut his eyes, pretended to be in a trance, for he did not seem to breathe for some time. Having fetched a deep sigh, he gently raised the drum above his head, and looked upon the rings, which he could easily discern through the transparent parchment. When he had observed their position, and distance from the figures of the celestial signs, he fixed his eyes upon M. *Motraye*, and declared that he would run a great hazard of his life by water as he returned in his sledge, and would also be in great danger in going down the cataracts or waterfalls in a boat; that he would have another narrow escape from fire; that his life would be long and healthful after he had overcome two fits of illness, both which would seize him within the space of two years. And for the *Lapland* interpreter, who led *Motraye* to his cell, he directed him to go out to fish on the twentieth, twenty-second, twenty-fourth, twenty-sixth, and twenty-eighth days of that month, and the third, sixth, ninth, twelfth, sixteenth, twentieth, twenty-fourth and twenty-eighth days of the next, and he should return home laden with fish; and that the same days of the months of *September*, *October*, and *November*, would be equally fortunate to him in hunting. *Motraye* demanded if he could tell whether



with these drums, it costs him his life\*. They are supposed to use these drums as oracles; for they imagine that by means of various figures painted on the head of the drum, they can know what passes in distant places; whether they shall meet with success in hunting; what offerings will be most agreeable to their Gods; with the causes and cures of certain distempers, &c. Bear-hunting, in particular, is preceded by many rites and ceremonies. It is not uncommon among them sometimes to mingle God's Word and several Christian rites with their magical superstitious practices.

Since the accession of King *Magnus Ladulas* to the crown of *Sweden*, endeavours have not been wanting to propagate the Christian religion among the *Laplanders*. But in the times of Popery their conversion was carried no farther, than that the *Lapps*, in some of the *Lapmarks* or Provinces, were prevailed upon to have their children baptized, and their marriages performed in the presence of a Christian Priest; and to receive the benediction: And to these injunctions they were probably, at first, compelled to conform by the civil power. But *Gustavus I.* King of *Sweden* shewed a most laudable zeal for bringing the *Lapps* to the knowledge of the essential part of Christianity, and sent preachers among them. The first *Lapp-school* was also founded in the town of *Pitea* in that Monarch's reign. After that they were visited at least once a year, at the time of the annual fairs, by the neighbouring *Swedish* preachers, who instructed them in the principles of the Christian religion. For the advancement of this charitable undertaking, King *Charles IX.* about the year 1600, ordered churches to be erected for the use of the *Lapps*, which were to be dependent, as members, on the neighbouring *Swedish* churches; till Queen *Christina* provided them with regular Priests, who were constantly to reside in their parishes. Since that time, a farther progress has been made, and the number of congregations is greatly increased, by erecting new churches and chapels, and ordaining more pastors. Endeavours have been also used of late for sending missionaries there, and erecting schools in most of the *Lapmarks* or Provinces; and to maintain the former congregations in good order by proper regulations and suitable encouragements. The direction of ecclesiastical affairs in *Lapland* is, at present, vested in the Counsellors of State, the Chancellors of the Universities, the Archbishop of *Upsal*, with the Recorder and justiciary Burgo-master of *Stockholm*. Though in some of the *Lap-*

he was a bachelor or a married man; into what countries he had travelled? &c. but the conjurer was too wise to guess at things that were past, in which he knew his ignorance might be too easily discovered.

Hence it appears that the magic ascribed to the *Laplanders* is nothing more than a feigned enthusiastic fit, accompanied with a few strokes on their drum and other trifling ceremonies, to which brandy does not seem to contribute a little, according to what is related above.

\* This, I presume, is the reason why these practices are so little known at present, or at least are done with the greatest privacy; so that it is a difficult matter to come to a proper knowledge of these superstitious ceremonies.

marks the gross ignorance of the inhabitants must be a matter of concern to every sincere Christian; yet it may be observed of other provinces that Christian knowledge has made a tolerable progress in them.

Before this nation became subject to the crown of *Sweden*, it may be reasonably supposed, that *Lapland*, like other northern countries, had its own Sovereigns, Princes, or other Governors: But these were little more than chiefs or heads of families. It is certain that King *Magnus Ladulas*, who reigned about the year of Christ 1276, issued a proclamation, signifying, 'That whoever should reduce the *Lapps* under the dominion of *Sweden* should have a grant of an hereditary Government over them.' This was undertaken by the *Birkaleans*, a set of people who lived in some of the parishes of *West-Bothnia*, before any town was built in that country; And they accomplished their design partly by stratagem, and partly by open force and bravery. Accordingly, the Government of *Lapland* with all its revenues was conferred on them as their property, only paying to the crown of *Sweden* an yearly acknowledgment of musk, &c. But this Government after several restraints had been laid on the Governors, was at last totally abolished. King *Gustavus I.* laid the foundation of a better form of Government in this country; which in subsequent times, particularly in the reign of *Charles IX.* was confirmed and improved; and at last it was brought to the establishment which at present prevails in most of the *Lapmarks*.

The *Lapps* in general acknowledge the King of *Sweden* for their rightful Sovereign; though some of them also pay tribute to *Denmark* and *Russia*, as, at certain times of the year, they pitch their tents, &c. within the dominions of those two Crowns. However, they conform to the *Swedish* laws, attend the celebration of Divine Service in *Swedish* churches, and apply to the *Swedish* courts of judicature all over *Lapland*. The usual tribute paid by the *Lapps* to the crown of *Sweden* is the very same as was appointed by King *Charles IX.*

In the Juridical and Trading Places, courts and houses for the chief officers are erected. The Judges Assistants are here chosen from among the *Lapps*; and the taxes or contributions are usually paid at the time of holding the courts. At the places appointed for these courts, and for levying the taxes, there are several houses and tents erected by the *Lapps* for their own conveniency, and likewise other houses and shops which they let to the Burghers who frequent the annual fairs in the *Lapmarks*.

The most considerable fairs are held at the same time with the courts of justice, and in some provinces last near a fortnight, but in others only a few days. Ready money is now become much more in use among the *Lapps* than formerly, when most bargains were made by bartering one commodity for another: However, a great deal of business is still transacted this way. The goods which the *Laplanders* buy from the Burghers or inhabitants of the towns are chiefly salt, tobacco, meal, cloth, hemp, ox-hides, and *Walmar*,  
a kind

a kind of coarse cloth; also kettles, pots, silver-spoons, buckles, girdles, rings, cups, hatchets, knives, scissars, lead, powder, fire-arms, needles, and laces; together with tin or pewter, sulphur, wine, malt-liquor, figs, &c. The *Lapps* in return sell to the Burghers the following commodities, namely, furs of all kinds, the flesh and skins of Rein-deer, furr-gowns, boots, shoes, fish, cheese, &c. The *Mountain-Lapps*, when they come down to the coast of the *North-sea* in summer-time, make use of the opportunity to carry on some little trade with the *Norwegians*. There are neither towns, nor any fixed or measured miles in any of the *Lapmarks*.

Besides the native inhabitants of *Lapland*, several *Swedish* and *Finnean* peasants have, from time to time, settled there; being invited to it by the *Swedish* government, in order to improve the soil by agriculture. But the *Lapps*\* look with a very evil eye on these foreigners. Hitherto these colonists have not much improved their fortunes; which is partly owing to the difficulty of finding out proper places for a colony to settle, and partly to the wrong measures they pursue: Their indigence also contributes not a little to their ill success.

*Lapland* is divided into seven Provinces or *Lapmarks*, which derive their names from the places of note in *Nordland*, in whose neighbourhood they lie. They all belong to the Government of *West-Bothnia*, *Jamtland Lapmark* excepted, which is included in the Government of *West-Nordland*. *Afse-Lapmark* and *Angermannland* have a Governor, who, at the beginning of every year, takes a journey into *Lapland*. *Umea-Lapmark*, *Pitea-Lapmark*, and *Lulea-Lapmark* belong to the fourth jurisdiction of *West-Bothnia*; but *Tornea-Lapmark* and *Kiemi-Lapmark* are included in the north jurisdiction.

As for the ecclesiastical state of this country, *Kiemi-Lapmark* belongs to the diocese of *Abo*, and all the rest to that of *Hernosand*. To begin with

## I. J A M T L A N D S - L A P M A R K.

**T**HIS lies farthest south of all the *Lapmarks*, and forms a curve between the province of *Jamtland*, described above, and a chain of mountains. It extends about thirty *Swedish* miles in length, and is divided into smaller *Lapmarks* or Districts, called *Owikens-Fial*, *Osterdals-Fial*, and *Hamnardals-Fial*. These *Fials* or *Mountain-Districts* are inhabited only by *Lapps*; but the last mentioned is the most populous of the three. On the twenty-fifth day of *November* a very considerable fair is annually held in the parish of *Hamnardal* in *Jamtland*.

\* The natives may be properly called *Lapps* to distinguish them from the colonies settled among them, who are also called *Laplanders*. This is the reason why I have generally made use of the former name in the translation.



Hitherto no certain places have been fixed upon for erecting churches in this province: For as these *Lapps* have a smattering of the *Swedish* language, they join for the most part with the congregations of the neighbouring villages. However a preacher was settled here in the year 1746.

---

## II. *A S E L E - L A P M A R K*, or *A N G E R M A N N L A N D - L A P M A R K*.

**T**HIS province lies near the *Angermannland*-river; and borders on *Angermannland* towards the East, on *Umea-Lapmark*, towards the North; joins to the mountains on the West, and to *Jamtland* on the South. It is above thirty *Swedish* miles in length. In the reign of *Charles XI.* namely, in the year 1673, proper measures were taken for the better peopling of this country. In this *Lapmark* lies

The parish of *Afele* which is about eight or nine *Swedish* miles in length; and the south part is inhabited by *Swedish* peasants, who settled in this desert country, to the number of five-and-twenty colonies, of which the most ancient are *Gafsele* and *Hellan*. There is but a little part of this country capable of improvement; and of this but few spots have been cultivated. The greatest tax levied on one of these peasants is twenty-one copper-dollars\*: But the generality pay only three copper-dollars, for which every peasant may appropriate to himself a parcel of land of a *Swedish* mile or two in circumference, or indeed of what extent he pleases. Barley is the only grain sown in this parish; and as this frequently miscarries, corn bears a great price here; so that the inhabitants are obliged to mix the bark of fir-trees dried and pulverized, or chaff, with their barley-meal; and of this mixture to make their bread. They chiefly subsist by breeding of cattle and fishing; which last is a resource which seldom or never fails. It is remarkable that the corn sown in the colony of *Hellan*, which lies in the neighbourhood of a great many morasses, is never nipped by the frost. On the contrary the corn is frequently destroyed by the frost at *Gafsele*, and still oftener at *Noren*; though both these colonies, and especially *Gafsele*, are environed by water as well as *Hellan*. Among other inconveniencies to which this country is subject in the summer, it is infested with a species of fetid gnats, against which, in clear and calm weather when they are most troublesome, the inhabitants have no other expedient than to besmear their faces with a kind of ointment made of tar and grease; but these insects are driven from the houses by smoke. The church of *Afele*, though erected by order of *Queen Christina* in the year 1648, is built with

\* A copper-dollar is 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$  *English* money.

wood, and makes no better appearance than a barn. Divine Service is performed here but once on every other *Sunday*, on account of the great extent of the parish, and consequently of the distances of some parts of it from the church. The congregation meets once a fortnight on *Friday* evening, and the *Lapps* continue till *Sunday* evening in their huts erected near the church, and the peasants in the houses built by them for the same purpose. The *Mountain-Lapps* scarce appear at church even on the high festivals. A school was erected near this church in the year 1750, where a school-master and six *Laplanders* children are maintained at the King's expence. At the fair, which is held every year at *Christmas* near *Afele* church, the *Lapps* sell the flesh and skins of Rein-deer, furs, whittings, fowls, &c. and the *Lapland* peasants carry butter, cheese, dried fish, fowls, and some sorts of furs to the same market.

### III. U M E A - L A P M A R K.

THIS province borders on *Afele-Lapmark* and the parish of *Nord-maling* in *Angermannland* to the South, and on the farthest villages of *Umea* parish to the East; it joins to *Pitea-Lapmark* on the North, and to *Norway* on the West. In *Umea-Lapmark* lies

*Lyksele*, a considerable parish, situated on the river *Uma*, about twelve *Swedish* miles from the town of the same name. The church belonging to this parish was built in the time of *Charles IX.* but that structure falling to decay, it was rebuilt in the year 1735. Ten *Laplanders* children are annually instructed and maintained in the school erected in this place. *Sorsele* is one of the churches dependant on *Lyksele* as the mother Church, and lies on the river *Windel*, about twelve *Swedish* miles nearer to the mountains than *Lyksele*. Near the mother church of *Lyksele* is an edifice in which the court of judicature is held, a Market-Place, and a house where the Governor resides. Exclusive of the *Swedish* congregation at *Lyksele*, which consists of colonists; there is a *Lappean* community, which is divided into four Village-Jurisdictions or *Vogteys*. These are

1. *Wapstebyn*, which lies among the mountains, and consists of twenty-five *Lapp*-Divisions. These *Lapps* pay contributions both to *Sweden* and *Norway*.

2. *Ran*, which lies also among the mountains.

3. *Granbyn*, which consists of forty-two *Lapps*-dwellings, six of which pay taxes to *Sweden* and *Norway*, but the rest are tributary to *Sweden* only.

4. *Umea-byn*, which consists of sixteen *Lapps*-habitations, is tributary to *Sweden* alone. This Village-District is twenty *Swedish* miles in length.

### IV. P I T E A -

## IV. P I T E A - L A P M A R K.

THIS province joins to *West-Bothnia* on the East, to *Umea-Lapmark* on the South; it borders on the mountains to the West, and on *Lulea-Lapmark* to the North. The silver-mine of *Nassa-Fial* is not wrought at present. Veins of silver-ore have been also discovered in other parts of this *Lapmark* or Province; which consists of two *Pastorates*, namely,

1. *Arwidsjaur*, or *Arfwidsjerf*, where there is an edifice for a court of justice, a Governor's house and a Market-Place; to which the Burghers of the town of *Pitea*, which lies about twelve *Swedish* miles from this place, resort to traffick at the fair. *Arwidsjaur*, the only *Lapp*-village in this *Pastorate*, consists of thirty-eight *Lappean*-families who pay taxes only to the crown of *Sweden*.

2. *Arjeplog* lies ten *Swedish* miles from *Arfwidsjaur*, near the mountains, and on the banks of the large lake of *Hornawam*. In the year 1743, a school was founded here for six young *Laplanders*, and a church at *Silbojock* which depends on the mother church at *Arjeplog*. The whole community consists of five *Lapp*-villages, which are

*Lurkt*, or *Loctea*, which consists of twenty *Lappean*-dwellings.

*Mabas*, or *Nordwest-Dorf*, consisting of thirty-one dwellings.

*Simesjaur*, or *Simesjerf*, which has twenty-six dwellings.

*Niarg*, or *Sudwest-Dorf*, which is inhabited by twenty-six *Lapps*, who have only one *Wood-District*, and pass the summer in *Norway*.

*Arjeplogs-Dorf*, a village consisting of thirty-two dwellings.

All these villages are tributary to *Sweden* only. There is but one new built village, properly so called, in *Pitea-Lapmark*, which lies about a *Swedish* mile and a half from *Arjeplog* church.

## V. L U L E A - L A P M A R K.

THIS province lies still farther north than *Pitea-Lapmark*, on the river *Lulea*. It joins to *West-Bothnia* on the East, to *Pitea-Lapmark* on the South, to *Norway* on the West, and to *Tornea-Lapmark* on the North; and is for the most part over-run with woods and mountains, though not without some level ground. The corn is observed to ripen here sooner than in the southern provinces of *Sweden*. For instance, barley ripens in fifty-eight days, namely from the thirty-first of *May* to the twenty-eighth of *July*; and rye in sixty-six days, namely, from the thirty-first of *May* to the fifth of *August*. *Lulea-Lapmark* consists of two *Pastorates*, viz.

1. *Jockmock*.



1. *Jockmock*. Near this church a school was erected in the year 1730 for six young *Lapps*. Here are also a manor-house, an edifice where a Court of Justice is held, and a Market-Place frequented by the burghers of *Lulea*, which lies about eighteen *Swedish* miles from hence, of whom the *Lapps* buy brandy, tobacco, cloth, and iron utensils, which they procure for skins, cheese, and tongues of the Rein-deer, and sometimes for those animals alive. To this, as the mother church, belongs that of *Quickjock*, which stands near the silver-mine of the same name, about fifteen *Swedish* miles nearer the mountains than *Jockmock*; and this is the stated residence of the Pastor. The whole community, exclusive of the colonists, consists of four Village-Districts, namely, *Sirkas*, *Turpen*, *Jockmock*, and part of *Sockjock*.

2. *Gelliware*. This Pastorate was separated from *Jockmock* in the year 1742, and is so called from the iron-mine of *Gelliware*; where a Community is settled, which, besides a great number of colonists, inhabits two vallies, namely, *Keitom-wom-a* and *Teusö-woma*, together with *Nederby* which makes a part of *Sockjock*. *Gelliware* lies directly under the arctic Polar Circle, about sixteen or eighteen *Swedish* miles North-north-west from the town of *Lulea*. These *Lapps* pay their contributions to *Sweden* only. In this *Lapmark* are fourteen new-built villages, and several veins of silver, lead, and iron-ore.

## VI. T O R N E A - L A P M A R K.

**T**ORNEA *Lapmark* lies along the river *Tornea*, and to the East is bounded by *Kiemi Lapmark*, to the South by *West-Bothnia* and *Lulea-Lapmark*, to the West by *Lulea-Lapmark*, and to the North by the Kingdom of *Norway*. In some parts of this province one meets with level grounds; and it also affords good salmon-fisheries, copper and iron-ore. *Tornea-Lapmark* consists of two mother churches and two others dependent on the former, which are,

1. *JUCKAS JERFWI*, a Pastorate lying on the river *Tornea*, about thirty-four *Swedish* miles from the town of *Tornea*, has a manor-house, an edifice where a Court of Judicature is held, and a Market-Place, to which the burghers of *Tornea* resort to traffick. This parish from North to South is twenty-two *Swedish* miles in length, and about eighteen in breadth from North-east to South-west. The distance from the Market-Place to the nearest mountains is computed to be fifteen *Swedish* miles; and it is about two *Swedish* miles farther over the mountains to the *North-Sea*. Here are two villages; namely, *Tingewara*, which lies next to *Norway* and consists of three *Lapps*-dwellings: and *Siggewara* consisting of eighty-eight dwellings: both pay tribute to *Sweden*. Here eight new peasants villages were also built by the colonies that settled in this country.

2. *Enontekis*

2. *Enontekis* is a church and congregation dependent on the Pastorate of *Juckasjerfwi*, and lies about fourteen *Swedish* miles to the north of it. In the year 1744, a school was erected in this place. Here are likewise a manor-house, a Court of Judicature, and a Market-Place, whither the Burghers of *Tornea* come to trade, though it lies at the distance of forty *Swedish* miles from that town: This parish consists of three villages; namely, *Raunula*, consisting of forty-five, *Peldo-Jerf* of eleven, and *Sundawara* of thirteen *Lapp*-dwellings. It pays taxes only to *Sweden*, and contains eleven new-built villages.

3. The Pastorate of *Kautokeio*, which lies forty-five or fifty *Swedish* miles from *Tornea*, consists of three Village-Districts; namely, *Kauto-keimo*, which lies among the mountains and consists of thirty-eight *Lapp*-dwellings, tributary to *Sweden*; *Wio-wara*, which lies also among the mountains and consists of twenty-two *Lapp*-dwellings, tributary to *Sweden*, with a manor-house, a Court of Justice and a Market-Place; and *Teno*, which consists of four *Lapp*-dwellings, and contributes to *Sweden* like the two former. At both the last places also some new villages have been built.

4. *Utsjocki* is a church dependent on the preceding, though it is thirty *Swedish* miles distant from it, and has a manor-house, and a Market-Place. The *Lapp*-villages here consist of forty-one dwellings, which pay their contingencies to the Crown of *Sweden*.

## VII. K I E M I - L A P M A R K.

THIS province is bounded to the East by *Russian Lapland*, to the South by *East-Bothnia*; to the West it borders on *Tornea-Lapmark*, and to the North on the *Danish* and *Russian Lapland*. The country for the most part consists of plains and morasses; and the inhabitants chiefly subsist by catching beavers and wild Rein-deer. Places of note in *Kiemi-Lapmark* are,

1. KUSAMO, the royal mother church, in which are the following villages.

*Enara-by*, where there is a chapel, with a manor-house, a Court of Judicature, and a Market-Place for an annual fair. It lies seventy *Swedish* miles from the town of *Tornea*, (the inhabitants of which frequent this place to traffick,) and contains fifty *Lapp*-families.

*Sombio-by*, which has a manor-house, an edifice where a Court of Justice is held, and a Market-Place. The industrious Burghers of *Tornea* trade also to this village, which consists of twenty-three *Lapp*-families. New farm-houses have been built here in eight several places.

*Remi-kyla-by*, like the foregoing, lies on this side the mountains, and consists of eight *Lapp*-families.

*Kualojerfwi-by*, which consists of thirty *Lapp*-families.

*Kitka-by*, and *Kufano-by*, consist each of fourteen *Lapp*-families and forty new settlements. All these villages are tributary to *Sweden*.

2. *SADANKYLA* is a church dependent on the Pastorate of *Kufamo*, and lies about twenty-seven *Swedish* miles from *Tornea*. It consists of the two following villages.

*Sadankyla-by*, inhabited by thirty-three *Lapp*-families and six farming peasants.

*Kittala-by*, which consists of twenty-three *Lapp*-families and nine new built farm-houses; and has a manor-house, an edifice in which a Court of Justice is held, and a Market-Place. Both these villages pay an annual acknowledgment to the Crown of *Sweden*.

## F I N N L A N D,

In Latin *Finlandia*, *Fenningia*, *Fenmonia*, or *Venedia*.

THE etymology and signification of this name are very uncertain. Some derive it from that of the *Wenden* or *Vandals*, who inhabited the countries lying on both sides of the gulf of *Finland*. Others will have it derived from the *Gothic* word *Fin* or *Fen*, which signifies a fen or morass; for they are very common in *Finland*. Many other conjectures concerning the origin of this name, I omit for brevity's sake. In the *Finland* language this country is called *Suomi*, *Suomenma*, *Suomima*, and *Suomen-saari*. It lies to the East of *Sweden* properly so called, making that angle or tract of land on each side of which the *Baltic* is divided into two gulfs, namely, those of *Bothnia*, and *Finland*.

This country was formerly governed by its particular Sovereigns; but at present it has the title of a *Great Dutchy*. In the twelfth century great pains were taken for the conversion of the *Finns* to Christianity; and *Henry*, who was Bishop of *Upsal* in 1157, fell a martyr to his zeal in carrying on that pious undertaking. That Prelate founded the first cathedral in *Finland*, at *Randamaki*; but the See was afterwards removed to *Abo*, which lies in the neighbourhood of the former. *Martin Skytte* and *Peter Serkilar* were the first preachers of *Luther's* doctrine in this country.

*Finland* contains about 3000 square *Swedish* miles; and is naturally fertile, but not properly cultivated nor sufficiently peopled in proportion to its extent. This could not be completely done by less than three millions of labouring hands, who might here subsist in a plentiful manner. But even before the late wars, all the inhabitants of *Finland*, including those in the towns and in the country, scarce amounted to a million of souls.



The *Firms* have, from time immemorial, been accustomed to sow on *Swedish-land*, as it is called, and to dry their corn. They divide the *Swedje-land* or *Brenn-land*, i. e. 'burnt land,' into three kinds. These are

1. *Huckta* or *Halme*, which is a large tract of land covered with wood, and cleared when the leaves of the trees are full grown. For this sort of land a great quantity of old thick wood, and all kinds of white fir-trees are used; and this wood, after it is felled, lies two years before it is burnt: Such land serves only for rye.

2. *Kaski*, which is a sort of land where the wood which grows on it is something smaller, and may be burnt within a year after it is felled. This may serve both for corn and turnips; but it is generally sown with rye.

3. *Kieskanmaa* is covered with a small low wood, growing on eminences, which is felled in the spring; and the boughs and tops of the trees are lopped-off. When the wood is dry, it is burnt; and then the field is sown with wheat or other corn, as soon as the burning is over: Buck-wheat, indeed, is sown something later, and lin-seed when the bushes begin to bud the following spring. The trees are set on fire in this kind of land about the middle of summer, when the weather is very dry; and the fire is spread along the grass which had not been burnt before. As soon as the fire is extinguished, the corn is sown that very same evening, that the ashes may not in the night-time be blown away by the wind, but adhere to the seed by means of the dew. After this they plow the ground with a forked plough called *Kaski-Sara*, and harrow it with a wooden harrow, as the usual plough and iron harrows would be of little service among stones and stumps of trees. The seed is but very thinly sown in these ashes. This process of burning, sowing, ploughing and harrowing is sometimes continued for a whole year on the same piece of land; and if every thing succeeds, it yields thirty or forty fold: Nay there are some instances of its producing one hundred, and even one hundred and fifty fold.

Here is also a kind of land called *Kytoland*, which must not be omitted. This consists of morasses and mossy grounds, where, by way of trial, a clod is burnt; and if the ashes prove red, it is a sign that the ground will produce corn, on proper culture, for a considerable time; but if the ashes be white it shews the soil to be barren. In order to improve such places, the water is drained off, and what wood grows on the spot is felled. After some years the ground is drained by means of a ditch cut all round it, then cleared of the stumps and roots of trees, and afterwards plowed several times. When it has lain fallow some time to dry, the turf is set on fire; and immediately after this burning, the land is plowed and harrowed again, that the wind may not blow away the ashes. The ground being thus prepared it is sown with rye at the usual season of sowing that grain. They have several other methods of trying land that is covered with moss or slime.

In *Wilborg-Lebn*, the country about *Wilmanstrand*, in some parts of *Carelia* and *Tavesland*, and likewise all over *Sawolax*, buck-wheat is chiefly sown;

sown; as it turns to better account in those places than any other corn, and is used for bread, &c. But the poorer sort, for want of better food, dry even straw; then bruise and mix it up with some meal, and make bread of it.

The pastures here are so rich, that great profits accrue to the inhabitants from grazing; but the breed of cattle in this country is very small. Here are considerable woods of pine trees; so that vast quantities of wood and charcoal, timber and boards are sent from hence to *Stockholm* for exportation. This country also abounds with all sorts of game; and several sorts of fruit, as apples, pears, plums, and cherries. *Finland* is every where watered with lakes, rivers, and brooks, which yield plenty of fish; and very fine pearls are found in the pearl-fisheries, and sold to foreigners at a great price. In the lakes and morasses is dug up a ferruginous earth, from which iron is extracted. Lead-ore is also found in several parts of this province. Along the *Finland* coasts lie great numbers of *Scheeren*, or small rocky islands. Though *Finland* is a fertile country, and naturally enjoys a greater plenty of all the necessaries of life than any other part of the *Swedish* dominions; yet the terrible calamities it underwent in the last war have brought it so low, that it makes but a melancholy appearance; and its inhabitants, who are famed for their courage and bravery, are reduced to great distress.

The language of the *Finnlanders* is quite different from most of the other northern dialects; but, like that of the *Lapps*, with which its idiom perfectly agrees, it has a great affinity with the *Hebrew*.

FINNLAND is divided into five provinces; which I shall describe in their order.

## I. FINNLAND, properly so called.

In Latin *Finlandia strictè sic dicta*, with the *Lehn* or fief of *BIORNEBORG*, which belongs to it.

THIS province lies at the angle where the gulfs of *Bothnia* and *Finland* join, and directly opposite to *Upland* and *Gestrickland*. It is about twenty-nine *Swedish* miles in length, and eighteen in breadth. The soil is very fertile; and the country yields pleasant prospects especially in the southern parts, where it is diversified with fine lakes, rivers, corn-lands, meadows, pastures, hop-gardens, woods, and some iron-works; but the north part of *Finland* is not so well cultivated. The *Lehn* or fief of *Biorneborg* is one of the most fertile parts in all *Finland*, and the most commodiously situated. In the parish of *Saſtmola*, which lies in this *Lehn*, is a rich pearl-fishery, where pearls of an extraordinary size are found, for the most part, single; but sometimes a cluster of two or three pearls are found in the same shell.

The inhabitants of this country subsist by agriculture, grazing, fishing, and making wooden-ware; and traffick in grain, meal, cattle, butter, talc, linen, yarn-stockings, &c. The bishoprick of *Abo* is the seventh in the Kingdom as to precedence, and consists of eighteen Provostships.

FINNLAND, properly so called, is divided into ABO-LEHN and BJORNEBORGs-LEHN.

ABO-LEHN, which comprehends the South part of *Finland*, is subdivided into *South* and *North-Finland*.

*South-Finland* consists of three Districts, namely,

1. *Pykie-District*, in which are the following places of note.

*Abo*, in Latin *Abœa*, lies at the point of the angle formed by the gulfs of *Bothnia* and *Finland*, and on the river *Aurojocki* which runs through this city. It is the most considerable town in the whole country, and dates its origin from the year 1155. It is surrounded on all sides with hills; and is a staple-town, with a very commodious harbour. *Abo* was erected into a Bishop's See about the year 1226. King *Gustavus Adolphus* founded a *Gymnasium* or Seminary here in 1628, which Queen *Christina* converted into an Academy in the year 1640: here is also a Cathedral school. The cathedral, which was built in the year 1300, is a handsome structure. A Royal High Court of Judicature, which is the only one in *Finland*, is held at *Abo*; where the Governor of the province also resides. The chief magistrates of this city are two Burgo-masters. It carries on a brisk trade in linen, corn, provisions, planks, &c. The *Russians*, who were in possession of this town from 1713 to 1720, committed great outrages in it. It has also frequently sustained great damages by fire. In the year 1743, a peace was concluded here between *Sweden* and *Russia*. *Abo* is the eighth voting town in the Diet.

*Abo-Slot*, or *Abo-castle*, is one of the most ancient fortifications in *Finland*. It stands on a peninsula at the mouth of the river *Aura*. In the sixteenth century, King *Erick XIV.* was confined as a prisoner in this castle. It has been several times destroyed by the enemy and consumed by fire since it was first erected.

*Cuppis*, a fine medicinal spring, lies at a small distance from the city of *Abo*.

*Rausala* is a pleasant island, on which stands a royal mansion-house.

*Rone*, a royal demesne, lies in the parish of *Sagu*.

2. *Masko-District*, which contains the following remarkable places.

*Nadendabl*, in Latin *Vallis Gratiae*, is a small town at the distance of a *Swedish* mile and a half from *Abo*. The *Nadendabl* Convent which gave occasion to the building of this town, was sequestered at the Reformation. However, nuns continued there till the year 1595, and set up a manufactory of knit-stockings, which continues to flourish to this day; so that several hundred pairs of thread-stockings are sold at a very low rate, and sent from hence to *Stockholm* and other places. This town has the ninety-first vote in the Diet. Not far from *Nadendabl* is a fine medicinal spring.



*Noufis*, a parish-church, lies about three miles from *Abo*. In this church is to be seen the tomb of Bishop *Henry*, who first preached the Gospel in *Finland*, and suffered martyrdom in the year 1157.

3. *Halliko-District*, in which lies

*Kimito*, an island which constitutes a parish, about six *Swedish* miles from *Abo*. On this island are several noblemens seats, an iron-mill, and quarries of good stone.

*North-Finland* contains two Districts: These are,

1. *Wirmo-District*, in which are the following places of note.

*Saris*, an ancient royal demesne.

*Pyha*, a royal farm or manor.

*Monois* and *Nitu*, two royal demesnes with mansion-houses.

*Fagerholm*, a toll or custom-house, where all ships passing to or from *Abo* are searched.

2. *Wemo-District*, in which lies

*Nystadt*, in Latin *Neostadium*, a sea-port town, built in the year 1616, and pleasantly situated. It has a commodious harbour and a considerable trade in all kinds of wooden-vessels. In the year 1721, a treaty of peace was concluded in this town between *Sweden* and *Russia*. *Nystadt* is the seventy-seventh town that votes in the Diet.

*BIORNEBORG-LEHN* includes the North part of *Finland* and is subdivided into *Upper* and *Lower-Satagunda*.

1. *Upper Satagunda* consists of a District of the same name; in which are the following towns.

*Biorneborg*, in Latin *Bioerneburgum*, or *Artopolis*, is a sea-port town, situated on a narrow sandy tract of land on the bank of the river *Kumo*, which divides itself into several branches just below this town, and forms a great many small islands within the distance of half a *Swedish* mile. *Biorneborg* at first stood in *Kumo* parish; but was afterwards rebuilt at *Ulfby* or *Wanbakila*; and lastly in the year 1558, the inhabitants were removed, and the town was built on the spot where it now stands. Great quantities of wooden-ware and fish, particularly salmon and large whittings are exported from hence to *Stockholm* and other places. The key or lading-place belonging to this town is at *Sandud*, about a *Swedish* mile from the town. In the year 1602, a Diet was held at *Biorneborg*, which has the sixty-fourth voice in the assembly of the States. Near this town lies a royal manor.

*Raumo* or *Ramea*, in Latin *Rauma*, is a very ancient sea-port with a good harbour, which carries on a trade equal to that of *Nystadt*. It is the fifty-fifth town that votes in the Diet.

2. *Lower Satagunda* comprehends the Districts of *Oefredel* and *Nedredel*, which include several parishes.

II. The *I S L A N D* of *A L A N D*,In Latin *Alandia*.

**T**HIS island lies between *Upland* and *Finnland*, but rather nearer to the latter. Between *Aland* and *Finnland* are several small islands, shelves, and rocks, which render that part of the sea very dangerous to mariners. *Aland* is about six *Swedish* miles in length, and almost as many in breadth. The soil is so fertile, that the inhabitants seldom experience any scarcity of corn. It also produces rich pastures for grazing. The woods, which are sufficient for the use of the inhabitants, belong to the King, and are every where inclosed. There are also good lime-stone quarries in different parts of the island. Lynxes, foxes, and hares abound here; but bears are not very common.

The inhabitants speak the *Swedish* dialect, and chiefly subsist by agriculture, grazing, fishing, hunting, catching of sea-fowl, and working in the woods; some of them are also good mariners. They traffick in butter, wooden-ware, coals, and lime.

*Aland* is said to have been formerly governed by its own Kings; at least, it did not belong to *Finnland* in ancient times. After this island became a province of the *Swedish* dominions, it had its *Stattbalter* or Governor for some centuries: But since the year 1634, when it was included in the Government of *Abo* and *Bjorneborg*, it was modelled into a District-Jurisdiction and a *Vogtey*, including eight parishes or *Pastorates*, with the chapels appertaining to them. The clergy of this island are under the jurisdiction of the bishop of *Abo*. The remarkable places here, are

*Castelholm*, *Grelfby* and *Haga* three royal demesnes, in the first of which a post-house is erected.

*Hamno*, a small island, lying about three *Swedish* miles South-east of *Aland*, where in the times of popery a convent stood.

*Eckero*, an island on the west side of *Aland*, on which stands a post-office.

III. *E A S T - B O T H N I A*,In Latin *Ostro-Botbnia*.

**T**HIS province lies farther North on the sea-coast, and derives its name from its situation, which is on the east-side of the gulf of *Botbnia*. The length of this country computed according to the roads, is near ninety *Swedish* miles, and the breadth about forty. Others compute the length of

it

t at sixty-six *Swedish* miles, and the breadth at twelve. Nature has separated it from the adjacent countries by a chain of hills, which runs all along the east side of it. From these mountains issue several rivers; some of which empty themselves into the *White-sea*, and others into the gulphs of *Bothnia* and *Finland*.

The country, especially on the sea-coast towards the south, and in some other places, is for the most part level, but full of morasses. The industry of the inhabitants in agriculture is attended with good success; so that they supply other places with corn: but their hopes of a good crop are sometimes frustrated by a sudden and unexpected frost. The inhabitants also frequently sow their corn in *Swedish-land*, as it is called: However, several large tracts of land in this country lie waste. *East-Bothnia* abounds in woods, and with lakes and rivers which yield plenty of fish. In some of the rivers are found pearls of an extraordinary size. There are also some forges in this country.

Near the sea-coast lie several large *Scheeren* or rocky islands, and the inhabitants of those parts speak the *Swedish* language; but those of the inland parts use the *Finnean* tongue.

The commodities which are exported from hence are beams, planks, tar, train-oil, cattle, fish, and other provisions.

The inhabitants of this province subsist chiefly by agriculture, grazing, burning lime and tiles, and making tar. Of the last they extract to the amount of 50,000 barrels, from 3,200,000 pine-trees. They also employ themselves in hunting and fishing, ship-building, and making wooden ware. The parishes which are most noted for ship-building are *Carleby* and *Kronoby*.

All the parishes in this province amount to no more than nineteen inhabited by *Finns*, and nine by *Swedes*. The number of the inhabitants in the whole is computed at 80,000. This country maintains an entire regiment of foot as its quota; but some parishes, in lieu of soldiers, furnish ship-wrights to work in the dock-yard at *Carlschron*. The Clergy of this province are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Abo*.

*East-Bothnia* is divided into three Parts or *Lebns*, which are all under one Governor. These are as follow.

I. CAJANA-LEHN, which lies in the north part of the province. In this *Lebn* are

*Cajana* or *Cajaneborg*, in Latin *Cajania* or *Cajaneburgum*, a small town, granted as a Barony, together with several other parishes, to *Peter Brabe*, great Constable of the Kingdom, in 1650, under the title of the fief of *Cajana*. The ruinous castle, which alone is properly called *Cajaneburg*, was built in the year 1607, and lies near the town: It surrendered by capitulation, and was demolished, in the year 1716. It is almost surrounded by the river *Pyba*, which forms a dreadful cataract in this neighbourhood. *Cajana* is the hundred and second town that votes in the Diet.

*Paldama,*



*Paldama*, the parish in which the town of *Cajana* lies, is the largest in the whole kingdom; but so thinly inhabited, that some farm-houses are seven *Swedish* miles distant from any other dwelling.

*Hysis-Schlofs*, in the parish of *Paldama*, was formerly a castle of a stupendous height. It was entirely hewn out of a hard rock, and had two gates and a very wide stair-case; but this structure is totally decayed.

2. ULEABORG-LEHN, which is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*: In the *North Part* of this *Lehn* are the following towns.

*Ulea* or *Ulaborg*, in Latin *Uloa* or *Ulaburgum*, a sea-port town situated on a peninsula, at the mouth of the river called *Ulea-Elf*. It was built in the year 1610, and is the largest town in all *East-Bothnia*. It has very straight and long streets, a good school, a commodious harbour, and a fine salmon-fishery. In the year 1714, this town was demolished by the *Russians*. It is the fortieth town that votes in the Diet. The castle, which stands near it on a small island, and is properly called *Ulaborg*, was built and fortified in the year 1590; but now lies in a ruinous condition.

*Brabestad*, in Latin *Brabestadium*, a town commodiously situated on the sea-side. It derives its name from Count *Pebr Brabe*, the Great Constable of the kingdom, who built it for mechanics, in the year 1652, and procured it the privileges of a town. It has the ninety-ninth vote in the Diet. Here is a commodious harbour.

In the *South Part* are the following remarkable places.

The parish of *Laktea*, noted for salt-works.

*Gamla-Carleby*, in Latin *Carolina antiqua*, was built in the reign of *Gustavus Adolphus*, in a fertile and pleasant plain, and obtained its privileges in 1620. It has a commodious harbour, and the inhabitants carry on a considerable trade in tar, and make great advantages of ship-building. In the Diet this town is the seventy-second in order. The country about *Gamla-Carleby* is noted for a particular kind of salt, which the peasants boil from the sea-water in spring and autumn. At first it is of a dirty gray colour, but upon pouring some sour milk into the clarifying vessel, it becomes as white as snow. The particulars of this process may be seen in the Transactions of the *Swedish* Academy of Sciences, Vol. IV. p. 310.

3. RORSHOLMS-LEHN, which is divided into the *North* and *South Parts*.

In the *North Part* of this *Lehn* are the following towns,

*Ny-Carleby*, in Latin *Neo-Carolina*, a sea-port situated on the river *Lappojock*, which empties itself into the sea about a *Swedish* mile from this town, where there is also a commodious harbour. It was first built by King *Gustavus Adolphus*, and endowed with several privileges in 1620. In the order of the Diet *Ny-Carleby* is the seventy-first town; and carries on an advantageous trade.

*Jacobstadt*, in Latin *Jacobstadium*, is a sea-port with a commodious harbour. The north part of this town stands on the continent, and the south

south part on the island of *Bockholm*. It was built in the year 1653, by the Countess *Ebba Brabe*, who gave it the name of her deceased husband *Jacob de la Gardie*, Captain-General of the *Swedish* forces. This town obtained its privileges in 1660; and is the ninety-fourth voting town in the Diet. It was entirely destroyed in the late wars; but has been since pretty well rebuilt.

The *South Part* contains the following places of note.

*Wasa*, in Latin *Vasa*, a privileged sea-port, was built by *Charles IX.* in the year 1611, and by that Monarch named from the royal line of *Wasa*, or *Vasa*. This town has a good school, and trafficks in all kinds of fish. The entrance into the harbour is something dangerous. This is the fiftieth town that votes in the Diet.

*Rorsholm*, a royal demesne, lies near *Wasa*. Here the Governor of *East-Bothnia* now resides; and a strong castle formerly stood in this place.

*Christinesadt*, in Latin *Christinæstadium*, is a sea-port town built in 1649, by Count *Pebr Brabe*, on the peninsula of *Koppo*, and called after the name of his first wife. It is the ninetieth town in the order of voting in the Diet.

#### IV. T A W A S T L A N D,

In Latin *Tavastia*.

**T**HIS province lies in the middle of *Finmland*, and is thirty *Swedish* miles in length, and twenty in breadth. The country is very fertile, and consists of fine plains, watered by a great number of rivers and lakes which abound with fish. It is diversified with arable and meadow lands; so that with respect to these natural advantages, it may not only be looked upon as the best part of *Finmland*, but is scarce surpassed in those particulars by any province in *Sweden*. It is likewise stored with cattle, fish, and all sorts of game. But notwithstanding this country is so fertile, it is far from being well cultivated; and consequently the peasants are generally very poor. Sometimes, indeed, the corn is much damaged by keen and unexpected frosty nights. The northern part of *Tawastland* is more mountainous and woody than the southern. In the morasses and uncultivated sandy wilds a ferruginous earth is dug up, from which the *Eisensand-ertz*, or iron sandy-ore, as it is called, is prepared. Among all the lakes in this country the *Pejende* or *Pajana*-lake is the most extensive, being twenty *Swedish* miles in length.

The inhabitants subsist by agriculture, grazing, and breeding of cattle, and some of them are employed in the fisheries. They also traffick in corn, pease, beans, flax, hemp, dried fish, cattle, leather, tallow, butter, lime, the



bark of trees, &c. In ecclesiastical matters, this province is partly subject to the Bishop of *Abo*, but most of it is included in the diocese of *Borgo*.

TAWASTLAND is divided into the *South* and *North Part*.

The SOUTH PART consists of two Districts, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Tawastebus*, or *Kroneborg*, in Latin *Croneburgum*, is a small town, built in the year 1650, on a pleasant spot by Count *Pebr Brabe*, and endowed with considerable privileges. In 1713 this town was taken by the *Russians*; and in the last war between them and the *Svedes* it was laid in ashes. The castle, which, exclusive of the town, is properly called *Tawastebus*, or *Tawasteborg*, is well fortified, and serves for an arsenal and royal magazine. A view of *Tawastebus* may be seen in *Dahlberg's Suecia*. It has the hundredth vote in the Diet.

*Sairiala*, a royal demesne, lies in the parish of *Haubo* in this neighbourhood.

The NORTH PART also contains two Districts, in which are the following places of note.

*Wafunda* and *Mustela*, two royal mansion-houses.

*Tamela*, a parish or village in which copper and iron-mines have been discovered.

*Jansio*, another parish or village with a market-place, where a considerable trade in corn is carried on.

## V. N Y L A N D,

In Latin *Nylandia*.

THIS province lies in a bay of the *Finnland* gulf, and was formerly peopled by the *Finns*; but is now inhabited by some of the natives of *Sweden* properly so called, and *Helsingland*, by whom it was called *Nyland*. It is near twenty-three *Swedish* miles in length, and, except in few places, only five in breadth. This is a level, fertile, pleasant country, and is better peopled and cultivated than the neighbouring provinces. It consists of good arable land and meadows; excellent pastures, fine woods, rivers and lakes abounding with fish, and is well stored with game of all sorts. Here are also some sawing-mills and iron-foundaries, which are supplied with iron-ore from *Sudermannland*. The inhabitants subsist by agriculture, grazing, and fishing; and they trade in corn, planks, linen, and dried fish. The See of *Borgo*, which is the ninth bishoprick in rank, and consists of seven *Provostships*, is in this province.



*Nyland* is divided into three Districts, which are comprehended in the Government of *Tawastland*, namely, *Borgo-District*, *East-Roseborg-District*, and *West-Roseborg-District*.

1. **BORGO-DISTRICT** contains the following towns, &c.

*Helsingfors*, in Latin *Helsingforsa*, a staple-town, and the best in the province. It stands on a peninsula, and has an harbour equal to any in *Sweden*. It was built by King *Gustavus I.* but in the late wars was laid in ashes, and has not recovered its former flourishing state since that calamity. The inhabitants deal in corn, timber, and fish. The Governor of *Nyland* and *Tawastland* resides in this town. Within these few years the forts of *Utricaburg*, *Gustavswerth*, *Sweaborg* and *Langorn* have been erected in the neighbourhood of *Helsingfors*. Here is a good school; and an Academy for cadets who are natives of *Finnland*, is founded at *Sweaborg*. This is the twenty-fourth town in the order of voting in the Diet. Not far from *Helsingfors* lies the royal manor of *Wick*.

*Borgo*, in Latin *Borga*, a very ancient sea-port, with an indifferent harbour. This town was almost entirely demolished in the late war; but is now in a very flourishing condition. It is a Bishop's See, and has a good *Gymnasium* or Seminary. The inhabitants trade in all kinds of linen. *Borgo* has the sixtieth vote in the Diet.

*Stromsberg*, a royal demesne.

*Degerby* or *Louisa*, a well built staple-town, lies in the parish of *Perno*, on a creek of the gulf of *Finnland*, and has a commodious harbour. It was built in 1745, as a frontier town towards the *Russian* territories, according to the limits settled by the last treaty of peace; and was called *Degerby* from the Nobleman's estate on which it stands. But in the year 1752, King *Adolphus Frederick* gave it the name of *Louisa*. A post-office is established in this town.

*Perno* and *Sibbo* are two parishes and market-towns, or villages.

2. **EAST-RASEBORG-DISTRICT**, in which lies *Lojo*, a parish and market-town.

3. **WEST-RASEBORG-DISTRICT** contains the following places of note.

*Raseborg*, formerly a considerable demesne with a strong castle, but at present inhabited by an officer in the army.

*Ekenas*, in Latin *Quercuum Peninsula*, a little sea-port with an indifferent harbour. This town is pleasantly situated, and probably takes its name from the wood of oaks that lies near it. This is the seventy-eighth town in the order of voting in the Diet. The royal manor of *Ekenas* is not far from this town.

*Hango*, or *Hango-Udd*, a point of land near *Ekenas*, has a post-office and a very convenient harbour well fenced by Nature. In 1714 an engagement happened off this place betwixt the fleets of *Sweden* and *Russia*.

## VI. S A W O L A X\*,

In Latin *Sawolaxia*.

THIS country is thirty-four *Swedish* miles in length, and twenty-one in breadth, and produces very little corn or pasture, as it mostly consists of woods, lakes, rivers, and morasses. The greatest part of its rivers empty themselves into the lake of *Saima*, which extends from North to South about forty *Swedish* miles in length. It is full of mountainous islands; and with a roaring noise runs along the large stream of *Waxen* into the *Ladoga*-lake. The land is so unequally divided, and withal so thinly inhabited, that the grounds belonging to some farms lie ten, fifteen or twenty *Swedish* miles from the house. The inhabitants, however, get a tolerable subsistence by sowing buck-wheat, grazing and breeding cattle, hunting, fishing, and making wooden ware. They also trade in tallow, butter, dried fish, hides, and furs. Their houses are, for the most part, very small. This country abounds in elks and rein-deers. As to its ecclesiastical state, it is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Borgo*, and is divided into three Provoostships.

*Sawolax* is divided into three Districts, exclusive of the town of *Nyslott*, of which we shall give an account in describing *Russia*, and contains the following places of note.

*Hanulangpaldo*, *Tawisalmi*, *Randafalmi*, and *Sairala*, which are royal manors.

*St. Michel*, a parish, where there is a post-house. The church is one of the most ancient structures that were built in the times of Popery.

*Brabelinna*, which is also a royal demesne.

## VII. K Y M M E N E G A R D S - L E H N.

THIS country derives its name from the river *Kymmene* and the royal demesne of *Kymmenegard*. By *Kymmenegards-Lehn* is commonly understood that part of *Carelia* and *Kexholm-Lehn*, which, according to the treaty of *Nystadt*, belongs to *Sweden*.

*Carelen* or *Carelia*, was formerly of great extent; for it was bounded to the East by the lake of *Onega*, the river *Pinasjoki* which runs into the *White-Sea*, and the river *Powents* which discharges itself into the fore-mentioned lake; to the South by the gulf of *Finland*, the lake of *Ladoga*, and the rivers *Sweri* and *Niewa*; the river *Kymmene* and the *Pejende*-lake

\* These are numbered according to the original; but I suppose the Author does not include them in *Finland*, as it consists of five provinces only. [See p. 36.]

were its Western, and the river *Kiemi* its Northern limits. This country has often been a bone of contention between *Sweden* and *Russia*, and occasioned frequent disputes between those two powers. But, by the treaty of *Nyfladt*, *Sweden* was obliged to cede the greatest part of it to *Russia*; and all that now belongs to the former is the most western part of *Carelia*, consisting of a small number of Districts.

*KEXHOLM-LEHN* lies to the north-east of the *Swedish Carelia*, and extends as far as the lake of *Ladoga*. It derives its name from the old castle of *Kexholm*. By the treaty of *Nyfladt*, the castle of *Kexholm*, together with the southern and best part of this *Lehn* or fief, were given up to *Russia*; and this cession was confirmed in 1743 by the treaty of *Abo*.

*Kymmenegards-Lehn* is naturally a fertile country; but, for want of inhabitants and proper culture, but little arable or meadow land is seen in this *Lehn*, which has extensive woods, and several rivers and lakes abounding with fish, and some good pastures. In this part of *Carelia* a sort of bread is made of sorrel-seed, which is well tasted.

The river *Kymmene* has its source in the *Pejende-lake*, and empties itself into the gulf of *Finland* through six mouths or outlets.

The large stream called *Woxen* issues from the lake of *Saima* and runs into that of *Ladoga*. About a *Swedish* mile from the former lake it has a cataract from a very high and steep precipice. The clergy of this *Lehn* or fief are subject to the Bishop of *Borgo*.

This country is divided into four parts or Districts, two of which lie towards the South and the other two towards the North. The places of note in this *Lehn* are

*Kymenegard*, an ancient and considerable royal demesne. Here the river *Kymene* issues out of the *Prejende-lake*, and

*Karnas*, a royal farm.

*Note.* An account of the following towns will be given in our description of *Russia*, viz.

*Wilmanstrand.*

*Kexholm.*

*Frederickshamn.*

*Lexa.*

*Wiborg.*

*Taipol.*







---

T H E

R U S S I A N E M P I R E .

---





A N

## I N T R O D U C T I O N

T O T H E

## R U S S I A N E M P I R E .

§. I. **T**HOUGH the maps of the vast Empire of *Russia* and all *Tartary*, which have been published within these sixty or seventy years, are more accurate than those that were extant before; yet they differ from each other both in correctness and beauty. The large map of the northern and eastern parts of *Asia* and *Europe*, which was first published in 1687 by the celebrated *M. Nicholas Witsen*, Burgomaster of *Amsterdam*, (who, in order to illustrate his maps, published his valuable and very scarce work, entitled *Noord und Oost Tartarye*, or ‘A description of *North* and *East-Tartary*,’ first in the year 1692, and afterwards in 1705) notwithstanding the author’s great trouble and application is so faulty that he would willingly have suppressed that historico-geographical work. From *Witsen*’s map *Frederick de Witt* delineated several smaller maps, which were published by *Mortier* and others. It is to the learned *Witsen* that the world is also indebted for the publication of *Ysbrant Ides*’s travels into *China* \*. In that valuable book may be seen a map of *Russia*, which *Homann* made the ground-work of his map, but with several improvements. The maps of *Russia* published by *Herman Moll*, *De l’Isle* and *Stralenberg* have also their use. The general map of *Russia* by *M. Kirillov*, privy counsellor to the *Czarina*, was the best extant till *J. M. Hafe*’s *Tabula imperii Russici & Tartariæ universæ*, together with a short explication of it, was published in 1739 at the expence of *Homann*’s heirs; which may be looked upon as a perfect model for projecting geographical Tables. The best maps of the *Russian* Empire, yet extant, are those in the *Atlas* published by the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Petersburg* in

\* A translation of this curious work was published in *England* in 1706, entitled ‘Three years’ Travels from *Moscow* to *China*, &c. by land, written by *Ysbrant Ides*, Embassador from the *Czar* ‘of *Muscovy* to the Emperor of *China*’. This book is at present very scarce; and was of great service to the author.

## INTRODUCTION TO

the year 1745; but these are far from being perfect. They consist of one general, and nineteen particular maps, representing the whole *Russian* Empire and the countries bordering on it, according to the rules of geography and the latest discoveries. The price of this *Atlas* at *Petersburg* is four *Rubels* \* and eighty *Copeiks* coloured, and four *Rubels* plain.

§. 2. *Russia* is by some called *Moscovy*; but this way of speaking is very improper. For to give this Empire the name of *Moscovy* from *Moscow* its capital, is as absurd as if we should term it the *Peturburgian* Empire; or call *France* the *Parissian* monarchy, from *Paris* the capital of that Kingdom. The etymology of the word *Russia* is uncertain; for it is neither derived from רוסי *Rosch*, mentioned in *Exekiel*, c. xxxviii. v. 2, 3, and c. xxxix. v. 1. as some imagine, nor from an imaginary Prince of the name of *Rufs*, the brother of *Zech* and *Lech*, &c. as others pretend. Nor are the *Russians* so called from *Rufs* an ancient city; for the latter rather derived its name from the former, by whom it was inhabited. Those who deduce the origin of the *Russians* from the ancient *Scythæ* and *Sarmatæ* give no further proof of it than that they possess the country formerly inhabited by those nations; which no body will dispute with them. This, however, is certain, that before the ninth century the name of *Russians* was entirely unknown; not the least mention of it being made in the preceding ages. We shall shew in the sequel, that the people called *Russians* emigrated from other parts into the countries they now possess. The name itself, according to the account given of it in the *Russian* annals, was first used by the northern *Waregers*, who crossed the *Baltic* from *Scandinavia*, and settled in this country: For the *Slavians* or *Sclavonians* who possessed the other part of this country, were by the former called *Russen* or *Russians*. The *Finns* to this day, though they can assign no reason for it, give the *Swedes* the name of *Russes*, or rather *Rossa-Laine*. They also call the *Russians* *Venne-Laine*, and stile themselves *Suoma-Laine*, i. e. people living among fens or morasses. This name of *Russes* the *Novogrod Sclavonians* seem to have borrowed from the neighbouring *Finns*; and they term all foreigners that come into their country from the North, *Russes*. Thus the *Sclavonians* give the *Waregers* the name of *Russians*: And when the former became tributaries to the latter, they were also included under the name of *Russians*; as the *Gauls* when conquered were called *Franks*, and the ancient *Britons* changed their name into that of *Angles* or *Englishmen*.

§. 3. The *Russian* Empire extends itself much farther than *Russia* properly so called. Towards the North and the East it is bounded only by the main Ocean; but towards the West and South the limits of this vast Empire are settled by treaties concluded with several Powers; namely, with *Sweden* by the treaty of *Nystadt* in the year 1721, and that of *Abo* in 1743; with the *Poles* by certain conventions agreed on in 1667, 1672,

\* A Rubel or Ruble is one hundred Copeiks, and is equal to 4 s. 2 d. sterling.

and 1717, but these were not ratified as to every article. With the *Turks* the limits were settled by the treaty of *Carlowitz*, concluded in the year 1701; but some alterations were subsequently made at the treaty of the *Pruth*, and ratified in the year 1714. Farther changes also took place with regard to the limits between *Russia* and *Turky* at the treaty of *Belgrade* in the year 1739. Pursuant to the last treaty of peace concluded with *Persia* in 1732, the river *Kur*, which runs into the *Caspian-Sea*, is made the boundary between the *Russian* and *Persian* dominions. But the *Russians*, having soon after relinquished the provinces which they had taken from the *Persians*, the river *Terk* is looked upon as the present limits. The other wandering tribes who live farther south, *viz.* the *Caracalpackians*, *Kasatshia-Horda*, the *Calmucks* and *Bashkirians*, are confined by lines thrown up on the frontiers. The last treaty of peace and friendship with *China* and the *Mungalians* was concluded, in the year 1727, on the banks of the river *Bura*; and in 1728, the several ratifications of it were exchanged at the river *Kiakta*. By virtue of that treaty barriers have been set up on the south side of the mountain of *Sayan*, and farther towards the East as far as the river *Argun*. By casting an eye on these limits in the map we may conclude, that the *Russian Empire*, for extent of territories, may dispute the preeminence with any power on the globe; or rather that there is not a monarch in the whole world possessed of such extensive dominions as the *Empress of Russia*. From West to East it extends from the 40th degree of Longitude to the 204th degree in length; and from North to South it is 15, 20, and in some places 25 degrees in breadth: so that it is above 1200 geographical or *German miles*\* in length, and from 2 to 400 miles in breadth.

§. 4. As this Empire consists of a great number of provinces, many of which are very extensive, the soil and temperature of the air must vary considerably in different parts of it; and consequently one province may supply what is wanting in another.

In those parts which lie beyond the 60th degree of Latitude there are but few places where corn will grow to maturity; and in the northern parts of the Empire no garden fruits are produced, except in the country about *Archangel*; where horned cattle are also bred, and a great many bushes and shrubs grow spontaneously, which yield several sorts of berries. There is also plenty of wild beasts and fowls, and several sorts of fish in the neighbourhood of that city.

In those provinces which lie in the middle of the Empire the air is mild and temperate, and the soil produces all kinds of trees and garden fruits, corn, honey, &c. They are also well stocked with horned cattle; the woods abound in game; and the rivers are navigable, and full of the best sorts of fish.

\* The author does not specify what miles he reckons by in the description of *Russia*; but where he uses the general term, I presume he means *German miles*.



## INTRODUCTION TO

In the southern provinces the climate is hot: and though many barren wastes are to be met with in some parts of them; yet in other places they are covered with verdure and flowers. Tobacco, wine, and silk might be produced in them, as the two first are at *Astracan* and the *Ukraine*; and they are well watered with rivers which afford plenty of fish: nor are they destitute of game in proportion to the extent and number of the woods.

Provisions are very cheap in *Russia*; especially flesh-meat of all kinds. The fish peculiar to this country are the *Beluga*, *Sterled*, *Offetrina*, *Citrine*, &c. and the two last are of a delicate flavour. The only difference between the *Sturgeon*, the *Sterled*, and the *Kosteri* is, that the *Sterled* is something smaller than the *Kosteri*, and the *Kosteri* has rougher scales than the *Sturgeon* or the *Sterled*.

Medicinal and saline springs are not uncommon in *Russia*. Fine silver, which also yields some gold, is dug out of the mines in this country, and likewise exceeding fine copper, iron, and many other minerals; as the famous *Marienglas*, called by some *Muscovy* glass, or *ising-glass*, &c. with several precious stones. Of these valuable productions found in the *Russian* Empire more will be said in §. 11, and in the description of *Siberia*.

In the middle and northern parts of the Empire the cold is very severe, and the days extremely short in winter: But the summers are warm and delightful; and even in the shortest nights the twilight is very luminous. At the winter solstice, when the day is at the shortest, the sun rises and sets on the horizon of the principal cities in the *Russian* Empire according to the following Table.

Sun rises	Hours	Min.	Sun sets	Hours	Min.
At <i>Astracan</i>	7	48		4	12
At <i>Kiow</i>	8	7		3	53
At <i>Moscow</i>	8	37		3	23
At <i>Riga</i>	8	47		3	13
At <i>Tobolsk</i>	8	56		3	4
At <i>Petersburg</i>	9	15		2	45
At <i>Archangel</i>	10	24		1	36

At the summer solstice when the day is at the greatest length this order is reversed. For example, the sun rises at *Astracan* about twelve minutes after four, and sets about forty-eight after seven, and so for the rest. The common observation that eastern countries are much colder than the western that lie in the same Latitude, is greatly confirmed in *Russia*. For since the year 1718, the river *Neva* at *Petersburg* has, in some years, been covered with ice so early as the twenty-fourth of *October*, and in other years when latest, about the twenty-second of *March*; but it generally thaws by the twenty-sixth of *April* old stile, which it has never been known to exceed.

exceed. When it begins to freeze in *Russia* and *Siberia*, the flakes of ice float on the rivers till at last they join together, and form a hard surface. Sometimes, though seldom, a sudden frost congeals the water to the consistency of a jelly; and then the rivers are soon incrustated with ice\*, and their current is stopped.

§. 5. A person may travel cheap and with great expedition in *Russia*; both in summer and winter; especially in the sledges, during the latter season. The draught-horses are extremely swift, and the roads very good, particularly in the winter-time, between the principal cities of this country. It is nothing extraordinary to go with post-horses from *Petersburg* to *Moscow*, which is about one hundred and ten geographical or *German* miles†, in seventy-two hours; and a commodious sledge drawn by a pair of post-horses for this distance may be hired for fourteen or fifteen *Rubels*. Between *Riga* and *Petersburg* the hire of a post-horse for every *Werst* is two *Copeiks* and a half‡; between *Novogrod* and *Petersburg* one *Copeik*; and betwixt *Novogrod* and *Moscow* but half a *Copeik*. The post-roads leading to the chief towns, &c. are very exactly measured, with the *Wersts* marked; and the post-stages are fixed at proper distances. Throughout the whole Empire, and even in *Siberia*, a pillar inscribed with the number of the *Wersts*, &c. is erected at the end of every *Werst*. According to these pillars the distances between the principal cities are as follows.

	<i>Wersts.</i>
From <i>PETERSBURG</i> to <i>Riga</i> through <i>Narva</i> , <i>Dorpat</i> , and <i>Wolmar</i> ,	545
————— To <i>Wyburg</i> —————	139
————— And from <i>Wyburg</i> to the frontier town of <i>Lille- Aborfors</i> —————	} 189
————— To <i>Kronstadt</i> by land —————	47
————— To <i>Moscow</i> by way of <i>Novogrod</i> , <i>Forzk</i> , <i>Twer</i> , and <i>Klin</i>	734
This road for about 110 <i>Wersts</i> runs in a direct line.	
————— To <i>Smolensk</i> through <i>Narva</i> , <i>Gdow</i> , and <i>Pskow</i>	838
————— To <i>Archangel</i> something more than ———	1300
From <i>Moscow</i> to <i>Kasan</i> —————	735
————— And from <i>Kasan</i> to <i>Orenburg</i> ———	508
————— To <i>Tobolsk</i> —————	2384
————— To <i>Astrachan</i> —————	1412
————— To <i>Archangel</i> —————	1004
————— To <i>Kiew</i> —————	890
————— To <i>Afow</i> , or <i>Asof</i> —————	1268
————— To <i>Bielgorod</i> —————	604
————— To <i>Smolensk</i> —————	350

\* There is nothing particular in the account the Author gives here of the rivers freezing in *Russia*, the same gradual progression being observed in all northern countries. The latter phenomenon was also seen in *England* in 1739.

† About four hundred and forty *English* miles.

‡ About 1d.  $\frac{1}{4}$  sterling.

## INTRODUCTION TO

Seven *Russian Wersts* are equal to a long *German* mile, or twenty *Wersts* are equal to three geographical miles; or, to speak with greater precision, 3500 *English* feet constitute a new *Werst*; and  $104\frac{1}{2}$  of the latter are equal to a degree of the Equator\*.

§. 6. Not one third of the *Russian* Empire is sufficiently peopled, or properly cultivated. The number of inhabitants who pay the poll-tax and furnish recruits is computed at 5,100,000; and, females included, amounts to about 10,000,000, exclusive of the inhabitants of the conquered provinces.

Before the time of *Peter I.* the *Russians* were, and in some respects not undeservedly, looked upon as mere savages. But that wise and great Prince, by incredible application, and a proper temperature of severity and mildness, brought about such a happy change in their manners, as in a great measure sets them on a level with the other civilized nations of *Europe*. The *Russians* are remarkable for their comeliness of person, strength of body, fidelity, firmness, ingenuity, wit, and obedience to the laws of their superiors.

The insatiable eagerness of the common people after spirituous and other strong liquors, especially in the carnival time, is in a great measure owing to the rigorous fasts they observe, and the slender diet they live upon throughout the year. Their food chiefly consists of turneps, cabbage, pease, large cucumbers, onions, and coarse ill-tasted fish. Their drink is *Quas*, which is a kind of small-beer; and even among the gentry brandy always makes a part of every repast. Among the lower sort, it is generally the men who give themselves up to these excesses; though, indeed, it is no uncommon sight at *Petersburg* to see a drunken woman staggering along the streets.

The *Russian* women are extremely fond of paint, and look upon a ruddy complexion as the very essence of beauty; so that in the *Russian* language red and beautiful are synonymous terms. Even the poorer sort among the women, in order to mend their complexion, will beg money to buy some red paint.

Persons of distinction dress after the *German* and *French* manner †, and are very fond of state and splendor. The dress of the common people in *Russia* is mean; but they are neat and cleanly in their apparel. Persons of both sexes wear a cross on their breasts, which is put on when they are baptized, and never lay it aside as long as they live. The peasants crosses are of lead; but those wore by the better sort are of gold or silver. The peasants let their beards grow to their full length. The *Russians* seldom fail of bathing twice a week; for which purpose almost every house-keeper is provided with a bath; and he that has none of his own goes to the

\* See the Table of miles in page 25 of this Volume.

† The *German* and *French* dresses, which the Author couples together, are very different; but most nations affect to imitate the latter in their fantastic levity, though sometimes with a very ill grace.



public baths. They often fall out naked from the warm bath, run about in the cold, and roll themselves in the snow; and then they plunge again into the bath: This vicissitude of heat and cold they look upon as beneficial to the constitution by rendering them hardy and robust.

Even the common people among the *Russians* salute each other with great civility; but before a *Russian* bids his guests welcome to his house, they are obliged to make the sign of the cross; and at the same to bow to the picture of some Saint, which is so placed in every room, as to be seen immediately at coming in. In visits of ceremony it is usual for the men and women to welcome each other with a kiss. Those of the lowest class prostrate themselves on the ground before persons of high rank, in order to shew their profound respect.

The most usual method of building both in the towns and country is to lay one beam or log of wood upon another; then they fasten them at the four corners, and fill up the crevices between the beams with moss. The house is afterwards covered with shingles; and holes are made in the timber for doors and windows. There is commonly a brick stove or large oven in every room in the house of a peasant, which takes up the fourth part of the area, and is flat at the top and boarded; on which, and a kind of shelves round the room, the whole family sleep without beds. Their furniture consists of three benches, an oblong table, and a picture of a Saint or two. Instead of candles or lamps, the *Russian* peasants usually burn long splinters of deal. The apartments look like so many chimneys; the fire-hearth, which is in the stove mentioned above, having no other vent for the smoke but into the room. It is no sooner dark but the houses swarm with insects called *Tarakans*, which are a species of goat-chaffers. The best expedient to keep them out, is to burn a light in the room till break of day. The houses in the villages are contiguous, or built close together, in the same manner as they are in the towns.

The peasants are but vassals to the great, and groan under many oppressions; but they are so far from being dull and stupid, that they are remarkably acute and witty, and do not want for natural parts.

The *Russian* Nobility formerly consisted solely of *Kneses* or Princes, and Gentlemen. *Bojar* is not a title of Nobility, but anciently denoted a post or office, as a privy-councillor, &c. *Peter the Great* added the titles of Counts and Barons to the former; and in 1714, ordered that the estates of the Nobility should not be divided; and also invested the proprietors with full power to leave their estates to that child or heir whom they should think most worthy of the inheritance: However, this law was repealed in the year 1731. The Nobility with regard to unlimited subjection to their Sovereign are on a level with the rest of the people; neither does their rank entitle them to high posts in the state; but they are promoted only according to their merit.

§. 7. The *Russian* language, it is true, derives its origin from the *Slavonian*; but it differs greatly from the latter at present, and with regard to religious subjects, is enriched with a great number of *Greek* words. The Alphabet consists of forty-two letters; and most of them are *Greek* characters, as they were written in the ninth century. But as the latter did not express every particular found in the *Slavonian* language, recourse was had to several *Hebrew* letters, and some arbitrary signs. There are various dialects used in the different parts of the *Russian* Empire, namely; the *Moscovite*, the *Novogrodian*, the *Ukrainian*, and that of *Archangel*. The *Siberian* dialect is much the same with the last.

§. 8. The *Russians* profess the religion of the *Greek* church, which was first embraced by the Great Dutchess *Olga* in the year of Christ 955, and afterwards by her grandson the Great Duke\* *Wladimir* in 988, whose example was followed by his subjects. That the Gospel was first preached to the *Russians* by St. *Andrew* is, but an uncertain conjecture. Instead of entering into a detail of the doctrine of the *Russian* church, I shall only give an account of the ceremonies, or external part of their religion. Their private devotion consists in fasting and prayer; and in the number and severity of their Fasts they far exceed the Papists. Their usual weekly Fasts are *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. In Lent they neither eat flesh, milk, eggs, nor butter; but confine themselves to vegetables, bread, and fish fried in oil. The *Butter-week*, as it is called, when eating of flesh is forbidden and butter is allowed, is the week immediately preceding the great Fast of Lent; and the latter is regulated by the moveable feast of *Easter*, and lasts till that festival.

St. *Peter's* Fast, as it is called, always begins the first *Monday* after *Whit-sunday*, and lasts sometimes six weeks, and sometimes but eight days, as *Easter* happens to fall out early or late.

The Fast of the blessed Virgin begins annually on the first day of *August*, and continues to the fifteenth of the same month.

St. *Philip's* Fast is likewise immoveable; for it begins on the fifteenth of *November*, and lasts till the twenty-fifth of *December*.

The eighth week before *Easter*, which, as I observed above, is called the *Butter-week*, may be looked upon as the *Russian* Carnival, and is spent in all kinds of entertainments and licentiousness. Among the diversions exhibited during the carnival, one of the most singular is that of riding in sledges down a steep declivity of twenty ells in height, which is made with boards, and covered with ice by throwing water to freeze on it. At this time of public diversions their slender diet is made up with the liberal use of spirits or brandy; and on *Easter-day* most of them eat to such excess, as to throw themselves into a fit of sickness by overcharging their stomachs. On that joyful festival the *Russians* kiss one another in the most friendly manner, presenting an egg coloured over, or sometimes curiously painted,

\* The *Russian* Sovereigns were formerly stiled Great Dukes, and even so late as the sixteenth century; as appears by public instruments &c.

with the following salutation, 'Christ is risen,' to which the answer is 'He is risen indeed \*.'

The *Russians* in their private devotions kneel before a picture of our Saviour, the Virgin *Mary*, St. *Nicholas* or some other faint; which is an indispensable piece of furniture in their closet. To this they bow several times, making the sign of the cross with their thumb, fore-finger, and third finger on the breast, fore-head, and shoulders; at the same time repeating, in a low voice, the Lord's Prayer, and some other short ejaculations, particularly the words *Ghospodi Pomilui*, i. e. 'Lord be merciful to me.' They seldom pass by a church but they utter these words, bowing and crossing themselves, without paying regard to any person who may happen to be present. They also look towards a church when they are at a distance from it, and practise the same bowings and crossings as above. Many, and even some persons of distinction, by way of penance, or from other motives of humiliation, prostrate themselves on their faces at the entrance of the churches; and those who are conscious of having contracted any impurity, forbear going into the church, but stand at the door. The church bells are often rung; and as ringing is accounted a branch of devotion, the towns are provided with a vast number of bells, which make, as it were, a continual chiming.

Their Divine Service, which is all performed in the *Slavonian* language, consists of abundance of trifling ceremonies, long masses, singing, and prayers; all which are performed by the priests, the congregation in the mean time saying *Ghospodi Pomilui*. A lecture from one of the ancient Fathers is sometimes added. Sermons are delivered but in few churches; and there they preach but very seldom. There are neither seats nor forms in the *Russian* churches; but the whole congregation perform their devotions standing. On festival days the Clergy appear in very rich vestments, not unlike those of the Levitical priests described in the Old Testament. But the common people can reap little benefit from the public worship; as the service is performed in the *Slavonian* Tongue †. The Word of God is but little known among them; for it is not yet translated into their language; and even a *Slavonian* Bible costs at least between twenty-five and thirty *Rubels* (a). The *Russians* never sing hymns, nor keep any hymn-books in their houses; and none but the choristers sing psalms in the churches; that office

\* This is agreeable to the custom of the primitive Christians, whose salutation, when they met each other on *Easter-day* was 'Ανεσε ο Χριστος, and the reply was 'Αληθως ανεσε.

† The *Slavonian* differs much from the modern *Russian* language; see §. 7. of this Introduction. Service is performed in *Greek* at the *Russian* Ambassador's chapel in *London*, where they use the liturgy of St. *Chriftom*.

(a) Since I wrote the above, I am informed by Mr. *Muller* that a new edition of the *Slavonic* Bible was published by the Holy Synod in 1751 from the *Moscow* edition of 1663, with annotations, which is sold for five *Rubels*; but that as yet there is no talk of a Bible in the *Russian* language. He adds that the New Testament and Psalter in the *Slavonic* language, in quarto, is sold at a moderate price in *Russia*. [The Authors note.]



being looked upon as their peculiar province, for which they are held in some esteem. As for instrumental music, it is not allowed in the *Russian* churches. No proper measures have as yet been taken here, for the instruction of young people among the vulgar in the principles of religion.

The *Russian* separatists are, by way of contempt, termed *Roskohniki* or *Roskolschtsicken*, i. e. schismatics; but they call themselves *Starowierzi*, or 'ancient believers.' Their chief peculiarities consist in having their own books, on which they ground their doctrines. From the authority of these books they make the usual sign of the cross only with the fore and middle finger, like the clergy of the orthodox *Russians* when they give the benediction; and consequently they differ in this point from the *Russians* of the national church, who make it with the thumb and the fore and middle fingers. They also let their beards grow to their full length, though this is a privilege which they procure at an extravagant rate. They totally abstain from spirituous liquors; never go into a *Russian* church; and will neither eat nor drink out of any vessel which has been used by an orthodox *Russian*. This sect is not very numerous in *Russia* properly so called; but it has spread over all *Siberia*, and prevails very much among the inhabitants of *Tomsk* and *Tara*.

The inhabitants of the provinces conquered from *Sweden* profess *Lutheranism*; and the Protestants of whom there are great numbers among the *Russians*, as also the Papists, enjoy a full liberty of conscience, and the public exercise of their religion; so that they have churches and priests or ministers at *Petersburg*, *Cronstadt*, *Moscow*, *Archangel*, and *Astracan*: but the Papists have no longer the privilege of hanging up bells in their churches. The *Armenians* have their public places of worship only at *Astracan*. The *Jesuits* and *Jews* have been banished from this country; but it is thought there are a great many still remaining, who secretly adhere to *Judaism*.

A considerable number of the *Russian* subjects profess the *Mahometan* religion; and greater numbers are still Pagans. In order to promote their conversion, the Synod has instituted a peculiar society for propagating Christian knowledge, called *Collegium de propaganda fide*; and we are informed by the public papers, that many thousands of them have been converted to Christianity. But it too plainly appears from M. *Gmelen's* journey through *Siberia* [Vol. I. p. 257, 334, 335, &c.] that great constraint and violence have been used to bring them over; and that the people, most of whom are baptized against their will, have but a very imperfect and contemptible idea of the Christian religion. But as this was also the case in the first conversion of the *Saxons* and other nations; which yet in time contributed to the introduction of greater improvements in knowledge and morality; we may hope for the like happy consequences from the conversion of the *Russians*.

Besides the great festivals ordained by the *Russian* church, there are also, every year, some holy-days appointed by the civil power, when all public business and trades are suspended with greater strictness than even during the former. Such are the anniversary of the Birth, Inauguration, and Coronation of the present Empress *Elizabeth*, and of the saint's day whose name she bears, and likewise the festival of the birth and name day of the Great Duke and his consort the Great Dutchess; that of St. *Alexander Neuski*, which is kept on the thirtieth of *August*; and the anniversary of the battle of *Pultawa*, which is commemorated on the twenty-seventh day of *June*.

There are great numbers of convents for the religious of both sexes in the *Russian* Empire. But *Peter I.* very prudently ordered, that no man should be permitted to enter on a monastic life before he is thirty years of age; and that no woman should take the veil under fifty, and then not without the express approbation and licence of the Holy Synod. The Abbot or head of an abbey is here called *Archimandrite*, and the prior of a convent *Igumen*. An Abbess or head of a nunnery is entitled *Igumenia*. Deacons, Popes \* or priests, and Protopopes † are exceeding numerous in *Russia*. Every large village in this country has a church and a priest to officiate in it; and in the towns almost every street has its church, &c. It is remarkable that all the old churches in *Russia* have a crescent, or half moon, under the cross erected on the tops of the towers, &c. The *Russian* Bishops and Archbishops are called *Archiierèi*. The *Metropolitans*, who are only two, *viz.* one at *Kiow* and the other at *Tobolsk*, differ from the Bishops only as to the title. In ancient times the Primate or supreme Bishop of the *Russian* church was a suffragan to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; but the Czaar *Fedor Iwanowitz* appointed a *Russian* Patriarch to preside over the church. As these Patriarchs gradually assumed an exorbitant power, which was dangerous even to the Czars themselves, *Peter I.* on the death of the last Patriarch in 1701, suppressed that dignity, and declared himself Head of the church of *Russia*; but it is not true that he ever officiated in that character. In the year 1719, the same Prince instituted a Council, which has the direction of ecclesiastical affairs, and is stiled *The most Holy Synod*: since the year 1750, the Archbishop of *Moscow* has been president of the Synod. Subordinate to this council are: 1. The *Oconomie*, as it is called, which has the management of all the ecclesiastical lands and revenues. 2. The *Roskolniki-Priscafe*, which has power to execute the regulations made concerning the above-mentioned Separatists, called *Roskolniki*; and levies the money or tax imposed on them for being permitted to let their beards grow. Under the present government, the Holy Synod is held in great veneration. All the ecclesiastics are permitted to wear their beards and their own lank hair.

\* They are called Papa's by other authors.

† *Protopopes* are such priests as belong to the cathedrals and principal churches.

## INTRODUCTION TO

Their dress is a sort of long cloke; and on their head they wear a high stiffened black cap from which a piece of the same stuff hangs down on their backs, or a large flapped hat. Secular priests when they are out of the church generally wear a blue or brown long coat. The clergy are permitted to marry, but it must be to a virgin; and on the death of his wife a priest is not allowed to marry again, nor to hold his benefice: but has only this alternative, either to betake himself into a convent, or be degraded; and if he chooses the latter, he is at full liberty to marry a second time. Hence it is observed that in *Russia*, no wives are better treated than those of the ecclesiastics.

In the thirteenth century several Popes laboured hard to put the Great Dukes of *Russia* out of conceit with their old *Greek* religion, by recommending to them that of *Rome* as preferable to it; but without success. The doctors of the *Sorbonne* at *Paris* made the same attempt of late years: for at the suppression of the Patriarchate by *Peter I.* they endeavoured to persuade him to bring about an union of the *Russian* church with that of *Rome*; but they were not able to carry their point.

§. 9. Before the reign of *Peter I.* the several branches of learning were but little known in *Russia*; but that illustrious monarch spared neither expense nor trouble, to dispel the clouds of ignorance in which his subjects were involved, and to inspire them with a taste for Arts and Sciences. That great Prince founded an Academy of Sciences, an University, and a *Gymnasium* or Seminary at *Petersburg*, besides other schools in the different parts of his Empire; invited several persons of distinguished learning from *Germany*, *France* and *Holland* to settle at *Petersburg*; collected a great number of books; and encouraged his subjects to travel into those countries where Arts and Sciences were known to flourish. These wise and laudable measures are still continued; and have cultivated many geniuses among the *Russians*, who have made a considerable figure in the republic of letters. Since the time of *Peter the Great*, the Empress *Elizabeth* has also erected an University and two Seminaries at *Moscow*. However, the number of *Russian Literati* is as yet but small: And as there are but three Universities in this vast Empire, namely, those of *Petersburg*, *Kiow*, and *Moscow*, learning may be said as yet to be only in its infancy in *Russia*. Hence it may be easily conceived why the Arts and Sciences have not made so great a progress in this country as in many other *European* States and Monarchies. We must not judge of the state of learning in the whole Empire from the present appearances at *Petersburg*, any more than from that of the foreign geniuses invited thither from all parts of *Europe*. The *Russians* are far from wanting talents and a disposition for learning. The studies to which they chiefly apply themselves are History, Genealogies, and the Mathematics; but they make a great mystery of the description and history of their own country.



The members of the Academy of Sciences at *Petersburg* not only publish collections of their own memoirs; but compose a variety of books for instruction of youth in the Sciences, besides translations of the most useful books published in foreign countries. All mechanic arts and trades are continually improving in *Russia*; and those improvements are not entirely owing to foreigners who reside there; but even the natives are spurred on by emulation to equal, and sometimes exceed their masters.

§. 10. Formerly the *Russians* were wholly employed in agriculture, feeding of cattle, hunting, and fishing. What they mostly excelled in was making *Yuchte*, or *Russia-leather*, which had been a secret of a long standing among them; but they were entirely unacquainted with the more ingenious mechanic trades. Great numbers of excellent artificers having been invited to *Petersburg* by *Peter the Great*, the *Russians* shewed that, with proper instructions, they did not want a capacity for all kind of handicraft trades; for they have now flourishing manufactures of velvet, silk, woollen stuffs, and linen; also copper, brass, iron, steel, and tin are wrought; and great guns, fire-arms, wire, cordage and sail-cloth, paper, parchment, glass, gun-powder, &c. are made in *Russia*. These manufactures, however, are not brought to such perfection as to be carried on without foreign hands, and additional supplies of those commodities from abroad. What is wrought by *Russian* workmen is sold for one half, or a third part less than what is made by foreigners at *Petersburg* and *Moscow*; but the former does but half or a third part of the service of the latter. Ship-building, in particular, is carried to great perfection in *Russia*. As for the *Russian* peasants they are their own artists, and make every utensil, &c. that they have occasion for.

§. 11. *Russia* affords a variety of commodities which are of great use to foreigners; and as the exports of this country greatly exceed its imports, there is a considerable annual balance of trade in its favour. The *Russian* home commodities are fables, and black furs, the skins of blue and white foxes, ermines, hyenas, linxes, squirrels, bears, panthers, wolves, martens, wild cats, white hares, &c. Likewise *Russia-leather*, copper, iron, a transparent fossil called *Marienglas* or *Muscovy-glass*, tallow, wax, honey, pot-ash, tar, linseed-oil, rosin, pitch, train-oil, caviar, salt-fish, castor, ising-glass, hemp, flax, thread, *Russia-linen*, sail-cloth, callimanco, matting, *Siberian* musk, *mamonts* teeth and bones, as they are called, soap, feathers, hogs bristles, timber, &c. To these commodities may be added the *Chinese* goods as rhubarb and other drugs, silks, &c. with which the *Russians* partly furnish the other countries of *Europe*. Furs are so far from being cheap at *Petersburg*, that they may be bought for the same price at *Dantzic*, *Hamburg*, and *Leipsic*, and sometimes even cheaper; for, to omit other causes, incredible quantities are clandestinely carried out of the country without paying any duty, which occasions the difference in the price. A farther account of furs will be given in the description of *Siberia*.

The

## INTRODUCTION TO

The red and black *Iuchte* or *Russia*-leather for colour, smell, and softness cannot be equalled in any other part of the world; and the best sort is dressed at *Iaroslaw*, *Castrum*, and *Pleskow*. One may judge of the genuineness of the *Russia*-leather not only by the colour, and softness, but also its fuming and smelling like burnt leather when rubbed hard. The word *Iuchte* signifies a pair, two skins being always put together.

The quantity of bar and other unwrought iron annually exported from *Russia* amounts, one year with another, to 300,000 *Puds* \*; and the *Russian* iron is little inferior, if at all, to that of *Sweden*.

No greater quantity of Rhubarb is exported from hence than what is allowed by the *Empres*, who also fixes the price of it.

*Caviar* or *Cawceer* is made of the roes of the fish called *Beluga* and the sturgeon. The best is made of the *Beluga* roes, and is of two sorts; namely, the granulated and pressed *Caviar*. The former, which is most valued, is prepared in autumn and winter, but the latter is made in summer; and both sorts are exported to the southern parts of *Europe*. The granulated sort is first salted, and then put in kegs for exportation. *Caviar* is most palatable when fresh, and spread on bread, with salt, leeks, and pepper; but as it soon becomes tainted by warmth, it cannot well be exported fresh: The *Russians* in their language call it *Ikra*.

In order to give the reader some idea of the yearly exports of *Russia*, I shall set down the particulars from authentic accounts; according to to which the following commodities are annually exported from *Petersburg* in the quantities specified below.

Callimanco	_____	_____	_____	<i>Arshines</i> †.
Linen	_____	_____	_____	1,214,000
Table Ditto	_____	_____	_____	4,000,000
				600,000
				<i>Puds</i>
Bees-wax	_____	_____	_____	22,000
Ising-glass	_____	_____	_____	1500
Flax	_____	_____	_____	65,000
Hemp	_____	_____	_____	1,000,000
Tallow	_____	_____	_____	100,000
<i>Russia</i> -leather	_____	_____	_____	200,000
Pressed <i>Caviar</i> .	_____	_____	_____	20,000
Hogs-bristles	_____	_____	_____	6500
400,000 Hare-skins				
70,000 Pieces of Furr, &c. &c.				

\* A *Pud* is about thirty-six pounds avoirdupoise, or forty *Russian* pounds.

† An *Arshine* is equal to  $28 \frac{1}{6}$  inches.

The goods imported into *Russia* are silks, chints and cotton, cloth and other woollen stuffs, fine linen, toys, *French* brandy, wines, herrings and other fish, spices, hard ware, &c. In the year 1749 the value of the goods exported from *Petersburg* amounted to 3,184,322 *Rubels*; and that of the imports to 2,942,242 *Rubels*. Of these were exported to *England* to the value of 2,245,573 *Rubels*; and the value of the commodities imported from thence amounted to 1,012,209 *Rubels*.

But to enter more particularly into the state of commerce in the *Russian* Empire; the trade of *Russia* is divided into the land and sea commerce, or into foreign and domestic trade. The land-trade principally consists of,

1. The trade to *China* which, at present, is carried on by caravans, and partly by private adventurers. The greatest in quantity and most valuable commodities which the *Russians* carry to *China* are furs; and in return for these they bring back gold, tea, silks, cotton, &c.

2. The trade with the *Calmuks* which is entirely in private hands, but of no great importance. To these people they carry all kinds of iron and copper utensils; and the returns are made in cattle and provisions; and, sometimes, in gold and silver.

3. The trade to *Bugbar* or *Bochara*\*, which brings in ready money, or, by bartering of goods, curled lamb-skins, *Indian* silks, and sometimes gems; which are brought to the yearly fair at *Samarkand*.

4. The trade to *Persia* by the way of *Asiracan* and the *Caspian* sea, which is considerable; and the returns are made in raw silk, and filken stuffs.

5. The traders in the *Ukraine* sell all kinds of provisions to the *Crim-Tartars*; and also trade with the *Greek* merchants at *Constantinople*.

6. The inhabitants of *Kiow* trade to *Silesia* in cattle and *Russia* leather; and, notwithstanding the severest prohibitions, great quantities of goods are smuggled from the Government of *Smolensk*, to *Konigsberg* and *Dantzic*.

As to the naval commerce of *Russia*, it owes its origin to the *Hanse-towns*, which formerly carried on a considerable trade with *Revel*, *Novogrod*, and *Pleskow*. Afterwards, about the middle of the sixth century, some *English* traders † found the way to *Archangel*.

The *Russians*, at first, were strangers to any course of exchange, which was not introduced among them till the year 1670; and money was so very scarce in this country, that foreigners were obliged to barter their goods for those of *Russia*, and even to give the *Russians* money in exchange for their commodities. Most of the foreign merchants used to reside at *Moscow*, and took a journey in summer time to *Archangel*, where they had their warehouses and factors. This practice continued till the year 1721, when,

\* *Bochara* is situated near the river *Oxus*, and is one of the chief cities of *Usbec Tartary*.

† This was Captain *Chancellor* who sailed into the *White Sea* and landed at *Archangel* in 1553.



by order of *Peter the Great*, the seat of commerce was transferred from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*; and the foreign traders accordingly were obliged to remove their factories to the latter. At the same time also, among other regulations, a Tariff was settled; but this was abolished in 1733, and the old *Russian Rubels* restored; and to this day the customs and duties are computed by that coin. The old *Rubel*, before the present century, was no more than an imaginary piece, containing a hundred silver *Copeiks* of those times, which, however, were as large and heavy as those coined since. Fifty such *Copeiks* were valued at one specie or *Holland Rix-dollar*\*; and a hundred of those *Rubels* weighed fourteen pounds of fine silver †. They still compute by *Rubels* of this value in commercial affairs: but the duty for all merchandises imported and exported is paid in *Alberts* or new *Holland Rix-dollars*, and not in *Russian* money. Fourteen such Rix-dollars are valued at a pound weight of fine silver, which must be paid either in coin or bullion. Foreign merchants are not allowed to keep the goods consigned to them in their own warehouses; but are obliged to deposit them in magazines built by the Government for that purpose; and pay rent for warehouse room in proportion to the quantity of goods they are possessed of.

The merchants and traders at *Petersburg* consist of natives and foreigners. The former may sell by wholesale or retail; but the latter by wholesale only, and that to none but the natives: for foreigners are not permitted to sell any thing to one another, nor to have any commercial dealings together in *Russia*. Most of the foreign traders at *Petersburg* are only factors; the rest, who trade on their own bottoms, deal mostly in toys and grocery. The factors are intrusted with very large capitals, and may, without engaging in any commerce for themselves, raise handsome fortunes. The native *Russian* traders who bring goods from several places to *Petersburg*, and carry foreign commodities farther into the continent, do not reside at *Petersburg*, but in several parts of *Russia*. In *May* or *June* they bring their goods thither annually by water; and in the months of *September*, *October*, and *December*, after they have disposed of their own goods, they return with foreign commodities to their respective homes. The wealthiest among these traders save themselves the fatigue of travelling, by sending their factors to *Petersburg*. All foreign merchandises are generally sold at a twelvemonth's credit: But the *Russian* commodities must be paid for at the delivery of the goods, unless the natives find a difficulty in selling their stock; and in this case they deal by way of exchange. However, they will not barter goods for goods, but commonly insist on one fourth, one third, or one half of the value of the whole in specie. Of late foreign

\* A *Holland Rix-dollar* is equal to 4*s.* 4*d.*  $\frac{1}{4}$  sterling money.

† The Author does not tell us whether he means a pound *Troy* weight, &c.

merchants deal for the *Russian* commodities by contract, and even advance the money to the *Russians* in winter upon condition that they deliver in the goods, at a settled price, in the ensuing summer; and, for the greater security, these contracts are entered in the Custom-house books. To this unreasonable partiality in favour of the natives, to the prejudice of the foreign traders, the large credit given by the latter to the former, and sometimes the misconduct of the factors, may be chiefly imputed the great losses sustained by foreign merchants in *Russia*, which amount to some millions of *Rubels* since the removal of the seat of trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*; so that the remarkable increase of foreign commerce amidst such enormous losses in trade, one year after another, has something in it very surprising. But it is also evident that the commerce of *Petersburg* is now arrived at its highest pitch. In the year 1744, the number of ships which came into the port of *Petersburg* from *England*, *Holland*, *France*, *Norway*, *Denmark*, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Stetin*, *Rostoc*, *Kiel*, *Prussia*, *Sweden*, *Dantzic*, &c. amounted to two hundred and sixty-four; and in the following year only to one hundred and ninety-five: But in 1750, the number increased to two hundred and seventy-two; and in 1751, to two hundred and ninety.

The *English* enjoyed here considerable privileges in trade so early as the reign of the Czar *Iwan Basilowitz*\*, which were renewed by *Peter the Great*, who gave them great encouragements; however, that Monarch permitted them to send their goods only to *Moscow*. In 1752, a treaty of commerce was concluded betwixt *Russia* and *England*, by which it was stipulated that the *English* should be allowed the privilege of sending goods through *Russia* into *Persia*; but Captain *Elton* an *Englishman*, having entered into the service of *Schach Nadir* in 1746, and built ships on the *Caspian* sea for that Monarch, the *Russians* put a stop to this trade to *Persia*. The *English* still have a considerable trade with *Russia*, which exceeds that of any other nation.

Next to the *English* the *Hollanders* carry on the greatest trade with the *Russians*. Bills of exchange are drawn at *Petersburg* on *Amsterdam* only; so that the traders of other countries, who give commission for buying *Russian* commodities at *Petersburg*, are obliged to procure credit, or to have proper funds at *Amsterdam*.

Such foreigners as settle at *Petersburg*, without actual commissions and a sufficient credit in exchanges, run a great risk of becoming bankrupts, of which there are too many instances. There is not a nation in the world more inclined to commerce than the *Russians*; but they are so full of chicanery and finessè, that a foreigner cannot be too much on his guard in his dealings with them.

\* Captain *Chancellor* delivered a Letter to this Emperor from *Edward VI.* in 1553, and received a favourable answer, with licence to trade, &c.

§. 12. The several sorts of weights peculiar to *Russia* are,  
A *Solotknick*, which is the  $\frac{1}{6}$  of an ounce, and is divided into halves, quarters, and eighths.

A *Russian* pound, which is equal to ninety-six *Solotknicks*.

A *Pud* or *Pood*, which is forty pounds\*.

A *Berkowetz*, which is equal to ten *Puds*. The other weights are the same with those of *Germany*. Their measures of length are,

The *Arshine*, or *Russian* ell, which is equal to twenty-eight inches and  $\frac{1}{10}$  *English* measure.

A *Wersock*, which is the  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an *Arshine*.

A *Sashen*, or fathom, contains three *Arshines*.

§. 13. All *Russian* coins, the ducats excepted, have inscriptions in the *Russian* language. The gold coins are Imperial ducats; and the largest silver coin is the *Rubel*, the value of which rises and falls according to the course of exchange. In *Russia* a *Rubel* is always equal to one hundred *Copeiks* †. The other silver coins are,

Half-Rubels, which are called *Poltinnik*, and Quarter-Rubles.

A *Gryphe* or *Griwe* is ten *Copeiks*, and ten *Griwes* are equal to a *Rubel*.

An *Altine*, which is equal to three *Copeiks*; but these pieces, and the small unstamped silver *Copeiks* are no longer current in *Russia*. Indeed neither the silver nor copper *Copeiks* are at present in common use. The copper coins are

A *Copeik* ‡.

A *Denga*, or diminutively, *Denufka*, two of which make a *Copeik*.

A *Polushka*, which is  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a *Copeik*.

The only foreign pieces current in *Russia* are ducats, *Holland* rix-dollars, and *Albert*-dollars.

Besides the *Russian* coins, the following are also current in *Livonia*. A white *Schelling*, which is worth two black *Schellings*. Three of the former make one *Grosch* ||.

A *Farding* which is one *Grosch* and a half.

A *Riga* Mark, which is six *Groschen*.

A *Polish* guilder which is five *Riga* marks.

A *Kopa-Schock* or *Lowentbaler* which is equal to twenty-five *Groschen*.

A *Rix-dollar*, is valued at sixty *Fardings*.

§. 14. The ancient *Russian* history is still involved in darkness and obscurity; however it might be considerably cleared up if the *Russians* were

\* A *Pud* is equal to thirty-six pounds *English* weight; so that the Author's pound is  $\frac{1}{6}$  less than a pound *Avoirdupoise*.

† Or four shillings and six-pence sterling.

‡ A *Copeik* is  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a penny sterling.

|| A *Grosch* is  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a penny *English* money.



more communicative of the accounts of their own country\*. The most ancient *Russian* chronologer, whose works are now extant in manuscript, is *Nestor*, who was Abbot of the convent of *Petshow* at *Kiow*, and lived in the beginning of the twelfth century. He begins his *Annals* from the arrival of the *Waregers* into *Russia*; and these chronicles have been continued down to the year 1206 by an anonymous Writer. Professor *Muller* of *Petersburg*, who must be allowed to be better acquainted with the *Russian* history than any living Author, has in the first Volume of his *Sammlung Russischer Geschichte* or 'A Collection of *Russian* historical Tracts,' given us an abridgement of this *Russian* manuscript in *High-Dutch*, with notes wherein he corrects, in some places, the errors of the Author, to whom he gives the name of *Theodosius*.

It is certain that the *Russians* are colonists in the country which they now inhabit. The *Aborigines* or ancient inhabitants not only in *Russia*, but all over *Siberia*, even as far as the borders of *China*, are called *Tshudi*; for the above-mentioned Professor *Muller*, upon enquiring by whom the ancient buildings and sepulchral monuments were erected? and whether they were the work of the *Russians*? was every where answered by the inhabitants That those monuments, &c. were set up by the *Tshudi*, who, in ancient times, had lived in that country. But the *Tshudi*, who, as the *Russian* history informs us, inhabited the north part of *Russia* antecedently to the present possessors, are properly the *Finns*, *Carelians*, and *Finnean Esthlanders*: For the adjective *Tshudski* is still retained in the *Russian* language, as in *Tshudskoi-Osero*, which is the name they give to the *Peipus-lake*, and *Tschudskoi-Iajick*, i. e. the *Finnean* or *Esthonian* language.

The nation from which the *Russians* derive their origin were the *Slavians* or *Sclavonians*, who first settled along the banks of the *Wolga*, and afterwards, near the *Danube* in the countries now called *Bulgaria* and *Hungary*. But, according to the account of the *Russian* historians, being driven from thence by the *Wolochers* or *Wolotaners*, i. e. the *Romans*, they first removed to the river *Borysbenes* or *Dnieper*; over-run all *Poland*; and, as it is said, built the city of *Kiow*. Afterwards they extended their colonies farther north to the rivers which run into the *Ilmen-lake*; confined the *Finns* within narrower limits; and laid the foundation of the city of *Novogrod*. The towns of *Smolenssk* and *Tshernikow* appear also to have been built by the *Sclavonians*. Indeed the date of these events cannot be properly ascertained.

In the ninth century the *Scandinavians*, who were the *Danes*, *Normans* or *Norwegians*, and *Swedes*, emigrated from the North, and crossing the *Baltic*, came to seek for habitations in *Russia*. They first subdued the *Courlanders*, *Livonians*, and *Esthonians*; and extending their conquests still

\* The *Russians*, it seems, make a secret of the history and antiquities of their own country; but it is a wonder such an idle whim should prevail amongst them, since arts and sciences have been introduced into *Russia*.

farther, they exacted tribute from the *Novogrodians*, and settled Kings over them; and traded as far as *Kiow*, and even to *Greece*. They were called *Wareger*, which name according to M. Muller signifies 'sea-faring people,' and probably was first used by the *Scandinavians*, but afterwards by the *Russians*; and with people unacquainted with the northern language, this word came in time to pass for a proper name. Not to mention other etymologies; it may possibly be derived from the old northern word *War*, i. e. war, and be rendered 'warlike.' To these *Warregers*, the name of *Russes* or *Russians* as I have observed above [§. 2.] owes its origin. M. Muller has cleared up this point in his learned Dissertation *de originibus gentis & nominis Russorum*; but unhappily the publication of that curious work has been prohibited. This loss, however, may in some measure be compensated by the following historical pieces, viz. T. S. BAYER *de Varagis* T. IV. *Comment. Acad. Scient. Imp. Petrop.* p. 275. *Erici Jul. BIOERNER Sched. Hist. Geograph. de Varegis heroibus Scandianis, & primis Russiæ Dynastiis, Stockholmiæ, 1743.* 4to. *Arvid MOLLERUS de Varegia, 1731.* *Algot SCARINUS de originibus prisca gentis Varegorum.* The two last treatises are mentioned by *Biærner*.

It may not be improper to enquire whether these *Waregers* might not possibly have been *Franks*, who emigrated hither from the northern part of *Europe* called *Scandinavia*: For, to this day, the *Asiatics* call the *Europeans* *Parengi*, i. e. *Franks*. And though the *Waregers*, both in their language, customs, and manner of living differed very much at first from the *Sclavonians*; yet the two nations were by degrees so connected, and blended together, as not to be distinguished in succeeding times. The three *Waregerian* Brothers *Rurik*, *Sineus*, and *Truwor* were elected as chiefs by the *Russians*. The first took up his residence at *Ladoga*, the second at *Biclo-Ofero* or the *White-lake*, and the third at *Ijborsk*. After the decease of the two last, *Rurik* became the sole sovereign. In the year of Christ 955, *Olga*, who was the consort of his son and successor the Great Duke *Igor*, was baptized at *Constantinople*; and in the year 988, *Wladimir*, *Rurik's* grandson, likewise embraced the Christian religion. According to *Sturleson's* and *Odden's* account, *Olga* was *Wladimir's* wife, and both were converted to Christianity at the same time. The city of *Kiow* was the residence of all the Great Dukes or Sovereigns of *Russia* till the twelfth century.

After the death of *Wladimir*, which happened in the year 1015, his son *Suetopolk* placed himself on his father's throne at *Kiow*; but his tyrannical government incited his brother *Iaroslav* to make war against him, who at last became master of the whole *Russian* Monarchy. In the reign of this Great Duke the Christian religion first gained footing in *Russia*.

*Iaroslav* died in the year 1055, and divided his dominions among his twelve sons. The *Tartars*, who lived on plunder, took advantage of the weakness of the brothers on this partition of the *Russian* dominions, by making frequent inroads into their territories. These incursions, with the establishment

establishment of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in *Livonia*, brought the Great Duchy of *Russia* to the brink of ruin in the beginning of the thirteenth century.

When the State was in the utmost danger of being lost, the brave and wise Prince *Alexander*, exerted himself against his enemies; and by his courage and conduct, partly in his father's life time when he was hereditary Prince, and partly after his death, while he was Great Duke, rescued his country from the calamities under which it groaned. In the year 1241, he obtained a signal victory, near the river *Newa*, over the *Swedes* and the *Teutonic* Knights of *Livonia*, and on that account he was honoured with the surname of *Newski*. In 1245, he succeeded his father *Iaroslaw* as Great Duke; and after a glorious and happy reign, ended his days in the year 1263. It is pretended that several miracles were performed at his grave; insomuch that the *Russian* church ranked him in the number of her saints. *Peter* I. erected a stately monastery near the *Newa*, to his memory; the *Czarina Catharine* founded the well known order of knighthood called by his name in honour of him; and their daughter *Elizabeth*, the present reigning Empress, caused his remains to be laid in a magnificent silver shrine placed on a superb monument all plated over with silver, in a convent at *Petersburg* which is called after his name.

*Daniel Alexandrowitz*, *Alexander's* fourth son, was the first Great Duke who resided at *Moscow*.

*Iwan Iwanowitz*, grandson of the preceding Duke, mounted the throne in the year 1353, and was surnamed the *Defender of the faith*. At this time *Russia* fell almost entirely under the dominion of the *Tartars* and *Poles*.

At last, about the close of the fifteenth century, *Iwan Basilowitz* I. shook off the *Tartarian* yoke; subdued the petty Princes of *Russia*; and laid the first foundation of the present grandeur of the *Russian* monarchy.

*Basili Iwanowitz*, his son and successor, was frequently harassed by the incursions of the *Casan Tartars*, and died in the midst of those disturbances.

*Iwanowitz* was succeeded by his son *Iwan Basilowitz* II. This politic, but cruel Prince conquered the two *Tartarian* kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and committed great ravages in *Livonia*; but he was unsuccessful in his wars against *Poland* and *Sweden*. To him *Russia* owes several great improvements; for he drew great numbers of foreigners into his dominions. In his reign the *English* discovered the way to *Archangel*\*; and *Siberia* was annexed to the *Russian* dominions. The rigour and severity

\* Captain *Richard Chancellor* was the first who discovered the bay of *St. Nicholas*, or the *White Sea*, 1553, and sailed through it to *Archangel*.



this Prince exercised towards his subjects, was, in some measure, unavoidable, the obstinacy of their nature requiring compulsion ; but he often carried it too far. *Peter I.* prosecuted the great designs which were planned by *Iwan Basilowitz II.* who died in the year 1584.

*Feodor* or *Theodore Iwanowitz*, son to *Iwan Basilowitz II.* was the last Sovereign of this race ; and after his decease *Russia* fell into extreme confusion, being torn to pieces by the factions of the counterfeit *Demetrii*.

In the year 1612 *Michael Feodorowitz* of the house of *Romanow* ascended the throne; and, after he had sustained considerable losses, restored the public tranquillity.

His son *Alexius Michaelowitz*, took *Smolensk* from the *Poles*, together with a great part of the *Ukraine*. At his death he left three sons by two wives ; the eldest of whom, *Feodor*, or *Theodore*, was successful in the war against the *Turks*.

After this prince's death, his half-brothers *Iwan* and *Peter* reigned jointly together ; but after several disturbances, *Peter* took the reins of government into his own hands. This illustrious Prince, whose name will be remembered with honour to latest posterity, added *Livonia*, *Ingermania*, and a part of *Carelia* to his dominions by the peace of *Nyftadt*. He also brought about a wonderful change in the manners of his subjects; built the city of *Petersburg* ; put trade and manufactures on an excellent footing; established the right of the *Russian* Czar to nominate a successor ; took upon him the title of Emperor, and by his actions justly acquired the surname of *Great*. He finished his glorious course in the year 1725. He had first married *Ewdokia* \* *Feodorowna* in 1694 ; but she was divorced by him, and sent into a convent at *Susdal*. From thence she was removed to *Ladoga* ; and in the year 1725, she was carried as a prisoner to *Schlusfelburg*, where she received very severe treatment. But in 1727, when her grandson mounted the throne of *Russia*, she was set at liberty and restored to her former dignity ; and died in 1731. His second wife was *Catbarina Alexeowna*, whom he publicly espoused in 1713, and caused to be crowned Empress in 1724. She was a person of a very mean extraction, but of great natural parts ; and succeeded him to the Imperial crown of *Russia*.

Upon the demise of the Czarina, which happened in 1727, *Peter Alexiewitz*, grandson to *Peter the Great*, mounted the Imperial throne of *Russia* ; but this young Prince was taken off by the small-pox in 1730.

*Anne*, Dutchess dowager of *Courland*, daughter to the Czar *Iwan* succeeded *Peter II.* This Princess, by a treaty of peace concluded with *Persia* in the year 1732, enlarged the *Russian* Empire by an accession of *Dagestan* and *Schirwan* ; but she soon after relinquished those provinces. The Czarina *Anne* was successful in the war against the *Turks* and *Crim-Tartars* ; and

\* Some authors call this Princess *Outokefa*.

in the year 1740, settled the succession on her nephew *Iwan*, an infant, who was son of the Great Dutchess *Anne* and Duke *Antony Ulrich* of *Brunswick-Wolfenbuttle*.

*Iwan* III. together with his mother who was Regent, was deposed in 1741; and the most Serene and Gracious Princess *Elizabeth* †, youngest daughter of *Peter the Great*, succeeded to the Imperial crown of *Russia*. In the year 1743, the Czarina concluded an advantageous peace with *Sweden* by the treaty of *Abo*; and declared her elder sister *Anne's* son *Charles Peter Ulrich*, Duke of *Holstein*, after he had embraced the *Greek* religion, Great Duke of *Russia*; who thereupon took the name of *Peter Feodorowitz*.

§. 15. On the fifth of *February* 1722, the Emperor *Peter the Great* published an Ordinance, by which the succession was entirely to depend on the will and pleasure of the reigning sovereign; and this is the only written fundamental law with regard to the succession in *Russia*. The power of the *Russian* Emperor is absolute and unlimited.

§. 16. The ancient sovereigns of *Russia* stiled themselves *Great Dukes*, and afterwards were called *Czaars* \*. But *Peter* I. assumed the title of Emperor, which was offered him by his subjects, and is now acknowledged by all *Europe*. The present reigning Princess is stiled, 'Empress and sole Sovereign of all the *Russias*'. The title of the *Russian* Emperor at full length is as follows. 'N. N. Emperor and sole Sovereign of all the *Russias*, Sovereign Lord of *Moscow*, *Kiow*, *Wlodimiria*, *Novogrod*; Czaar in *Casan*, *Astracan*, and *Siberia*; Lord of *Pleskow*; Great Duke of *Smolensko*; Duke of *Esthlonia*, *Livonia*, and *Carelia*; of *Tweria*, *Ingoria*, *Pernia*, *Wiatkia*, *Bulgaria*, and Lord of several other territories; Great Duke of *Novogrod* in the low country, *Tschernickow*, *Resan*, *Rostow*, *Iarostaw*, *Bielo-sero*, *Uldoria*, *Obdoria*, *Condinia*; Emperor of all the Northern Parts; Lord of the territory of *Jweria*; of the *Carthalian*, *Greuzinian* and *Georgian* Czaars; of the *Kabardinian*, *Circasian* and *Gorian* Princes; and Lord and supreme Ruler of many other countries and territories.'

§. 17. The arms of *Russia* since the reign of *Iwan Basilowitz* are, *Or*, an eagle displayed *Sable*, holding a golden scepter and *monde* in its talons. Over the head of the eagle are three crowns, and on its breast it bears a shield with the arms of *Moscow* in the center, surrounded with six others, namely, those of *Astracan*, *Siberia*, *Kasan*, *Kiew*, and *Wlodimiria*. The *Russian* Empire ever since the time of *Iwan Basilowitz* I. has been an undivided inheritance; but the female line is not excluded from the succession.

† This Princess now sits on the Throne of *Russia*.

\* This title seems to be a contraction of the word *Cæsar*, or *Kaiser* as the *German* Emperor is stiled.

## INTRODUCTION TO

§. 18. The splendor and magnificence of the *Russian* Court is augmented by three orders of knighthood, which are as follows.

The first and most honourable is that of St. *Andrew*, or the *blue ribbon*, instituted by *Peter the Great* in 1698, in honour of St. *Andrew* the patron of *Russia*; and the Empress *Catharine* gave the statutes, and assigned proper habits for this order. It has its ensigns, motto, and collar.

The second is the order of St. *Alexander Newski* or the *red ribbon*, which was indeed instituted by *Peter I.* but the Czarina *Catharine* first conferred it in the year 1725. This order has also its badge and motto.

Besides these two there is a female Order in *Russia*, which *Peter the Great* founded in 1714 in honour of his consort *Catharine*; and from her name he called it the order of St. *Catharine*.

The Colleges, and Chanceries, or offices, which have the direction of the affairs of the *Russian* Empire, are as follows.

1. The Senate, or Directing Council, is the supreme Court of Judicature, to which all processies are brought by appeal as the last resort. The Senate takes care of all domestic affairs, receives accounts from all the Colleges excepting the Holy Synod, and issues out orders to them all accordingly. In the reign of the Empress *Catharine* the honourable Privy Council used to send orders to the Senate; but in that of the Empress *Anne* such orders were issued only by the Cabinet Council, which consisted of two ministers of state. During the minority of the Emperor *Iwan III.* and the regency of the Great Dutchess *Anne*, Field-Marshal Count *Munich* was declared Prime Minister, Count *Ostermann* High Admiral, the Knees *Tsherkaskoy* Great Chancellor, and Count *Gollowkin* Vice-Chancellor of the *Russian* Empire. The present Empress *Elizabeth* has entirely abolished the Cabinet Council, and by a manifesto of the twelfth of *December* 1741 restored to the Senate the same power which it had in the time of *Peter the Great*. According to this ordinance, the posts of General Procurator and Supreme Procurator are again established in the Senate, and other Procurators are appointed in the respective Governments. As for the direction of foreign affairs relating to the Empire, a particular account will be given of that department in N<sup>o</sup> 5.

2. The Holy Synod or Ecclesiastical Council. Of this an account has already been given in §. 8.

3. The War-College has the care of recruiting and exercising the whole *Russian* army, except the guards which are immediately under the direction of the Emperors. This office also receives the taxes appointed for the maintenance of the troops, and nominates the officers even as high as the lieutenant-colonels. Under the War-College are, 1. The Office of the General Commissary at war. 2. The Office of Ordnance. 3. That of the under Commissary at war. 4. The Military Chest. 5. The Office for clothing the army. 6. The Victualling Office. 7. The Accomptant's Office: The Military College has also a particular office at *Moscow*.



4. The Admiralty College manages all naval concerns without exception; and such forests as lie near navigable rivers are under the inspection of this college. Subordinate to it are, 1. The Office of the General Commissary at war; which pays the navy, has the care of victualling the fleet, and has the keeping of the monies assigned for those services. 2. The Store Office, which has the direction of the magazines, and every thing belonging to the equipment of ships of war. 3. The Office which directs the construction of ships, provides necessary materials for that purpose, and has also the inspection of the forests. 4. The Artillery office. The Admiralty has also inferior offices at *Kronstadt*, *Archangel*, *Casan*, *Astracan*, *Woronetz* and *Tawrow* on the river *Don*.

5. The College for Foreign Affairs pays the salaries of the *Russian* ministers at foreign courts, pensions, and expences of foreign envoys, which are always defrayed. This College also makes out pass-ports, and decides any difficulties or disputes relating to foreign ministers, which happen from time to time. The members of this college are, the Chancellor of the Empire and Vice-Chancellor, who upon any momentous affairs are assisted by some of the Counsellors of State. This college has an inferior office at *Moscow* for receiving and remitting the public money.

6. The College of Justice at *Moscow*. Under this is the *Sudnoy Pricas*, some of the members of which constitute a College of Justice at *Petersburg*, which determines suits brought thither by appeal from the conquered provinces, and has likewise a consistorial jurisdiction over the Protestants and Papists in that city; but on this occasion the minister of the church to which the plaintiff belongs is summoned to attend. The *Russians* have their particular Code or law-book called *Sobornoe Ulozhenie*, i. e. an 'uniform and universal law,' which *Alexius Michaelowitz* published in 1649, and the succeeding Czaars enlarged by new edicts. The process is summary and short, and the punishment inflicted by the *Russian* law very severe; but it was formerly much more rigorous. The *Battogen*, *Katze*, and *Knute* are infamous punishments.

7. The *Wotshinoy College*, or Feudal Chancery is held at *Moscow*, and has the care of every thing relating to the estates of private persons, and their boundaries or limits.

8. The College of the Treasury has the direction of levying all the public revenues, except the poll-tax and the produce of the salt-works. The office which has the care of the monies arising from the conquered provinces is at present held at *Petersburg*; but all the other departments belonging to the treasury are at *Moscow*.

9. The State Office issues out the public money, and gives the necessary directions to the Chamber of accounts; accordingly the revenue-chambers at *Petersburg* and *Moscow* are dependent on this Office.

## INTRODUCTION TO

10. The Revision College is a sort of a check on other colleges, and receives their accompts in order to examine them.

11. The colleges for trade, mines and manufactures are distinct offices; and besides the departments from which they take their names, have also the management of the naval customs or tolls, and decide all commercial disputes between merchants and traders.

12. The *Confiscation-Chancery*, directs the sale of all forfeited estates, &c. and the levying of all fines imposed by the other colleges.

13. The Salt-Office has the direction of the revenues arising from the salt-works, which are appropriated for the Empress's privy purse.

After these we must take notice of the *Government*, as it is called; the Academy-Chancery; the Privy-Chancery which takes cognizance of all hospitals, dispensaries, medicines, &c. and the College of the Magistracy, to which all the magistrates throughout the Empire are accountable for their conduct.

§. 20. The revenues of the Empire are variously computed. The author of the *Anmerkungen uber die Moscowitischen Briefe*, or 'Observations on the *Muscovite Letters*', pretends that they amount to sixty millions of *Rubels*\*; but this certainly is exaggerating beyond the truth. Some compute them at twenty millions of *Rubels*, which is still beyond the mark; others on the contrary, reckon them to be but eight millions, and this is something short of it; others again suppose them to be fifteen millions of *Rubels*, but this, probably, is no more than an arbitrary conjecture. By virtue of an Imperial *Ukase* or edict issued in *December 1752*, the revenues and number of troops under the reign of the present Empress *Elizabeth* were augmented near a fifth part. But it is in general to be remarked, 1. That the Imperial revenues are not proportionate to the vast extent of the *Russian* dominions. 2. That they do not all consist of ready money; the country in many places furnishing recruits for the army in lieu of it, and most of the inhabitants of *Siberia* paying their tribute in furs. 3. That, notwithstanding all this, the revenues are equal to the exigencies of the State. I have now before me an authentic account of the Empress's whole revenues, according to which they amount to about ten millions of *Rubels*. They arise from the following funds.

1. From the annual capitation or Poll-tax, to which the vassals of Noblemen pay seventy *Copeiks*, the burghers 120 *Copeiks*; the *Tartars*, the *Ischeremisses* and other nations in the territory of *Casan*, together with the vassals of the *Kan*, 110 *Copeiks* a head. This tax amounts to five millions; but as it is not duly paid by a great number, the arrears remaining every year are very considerable. At the close of the year 1752, the gracious Empress *Elizabeth*

\* A *Rubel* is always reckoned in *Russia* at a hundred *Copeiks*, or 4 s. 6 d. sterling; but varies with regard to foreign merchants, according to the course of exchange.

gave a new proof of her indulgent care over her subjects, by freely remitting the arrears of the poll-tax from the year 1724 to 1747; the whole sum amounting to no less than 2,534,000 *Rubels*. From the abovementioned sum we may form some conjecture of the number of inhabitants in the *Russian* Empire.

2. From the demesne lands occupied by 360,000 peasants, each of whom pays 110 *Copeiks per annum*, in all amounting to 396,000 *Rubels*.

3. From the revenues of the *Cabaques* or inns and drinking houses, which are in all about two millions; the privilege of selling beer, mead, and spirits distilled from corn being monopolised by the Crown.

4. From the tolls or customs by sea and land, which produce about 1,150,000 *Rubels*. It must, however, be observed that all the inland duties throughout the whole Empire of *Russia* were abolished in the year 1754.

5. From the continual trade carried on by the Crown, 1. In iron, of which the annual exports amount to about 400,000 *Puds*; and every *Pud*, being thirty-six pound *Avoirdupoise*, is sold for forty *Copeiks*, amounting in the whole to 240,000 *Rubels*. Private persons also have a share in the iron-works, and annually sell as large a quantity as the crown does.

2. In Pot-ash, the profits arising from which amounts to about 40,000 *Rubels*.

3. In ashes of the willow-tree, which brings in 30,000 *Rubels*.

4. In Rhubarb, the annual produce of which is 200,000 *Rubels*. The Government regulates both the quantity to be exported and likewise the price of this drug.

5. In tar, of which about 80,000 barrels are annually exported from *Archangel* at a *Rubel per barrel*.

6. Lastly, In Train-oil; the profits arising to the crown from this article amounts yearly to 24,000 *Rubels*.

6. From the Salt-works, which bring in to the crown 700,000 *Rubels*.

7. From the duty on Stamp-paper, amounting to 120,000 *Rubels*.

8. From the Caravans to *China* at least 100,000 *Rubels*; but the revenue arising from this article is not every year equal, for it sometimes amounts to more, but is never under that sum.

9. From the exportation of Sail-cloth; which trade, however, is in private hands. The revenue from coining and the mines is likewise very considerable. The uncertain and casual sums arising from confiscations and fines do not properly come in here; as they are generally given away to favourites.

The ordinary expences of the *Russian* Court are, indeed, very large; but as I have observed before, they are no more than what the revenues can sufficiently defray. The chief expences are the following.

The annual charge of the fleet, and the canal of *Cronstadt*, amounts to 1,200,000 *Rubels*, for which part of the *Cabaque*, or revenue arising from the sale of liquors, is appropriated.



## INTRODUCTION TO

The charge of maintaining the army is about four millions of *Rubels*, which is defrayed by the Poll-tax. The two regiments of guards are paid out of the profits arising from the *Cabaques*, or the sale of liquors. The *Ismailow* regiment is maintained by the produce of the salt-works; and the horse-guards from the *Siberian Pricafe* or Colleges of judicature.

The corps of Cadets stands the government in 65,000 *Rubels per annum*, which arise from the capitation, and the general commission of war. The expence of the train of artillery amounts yearly to 300,000 *Rubels*.

The annual charge of the Civil List, in the time of *Peter I.* did not exceed 50 or 60,000 *Rubels*; but in the reign of the Empress *Anne* the salaries of the court officers alone amounted to 120,000 *Rubels*. In the present reign they are not less than 190,000 *Rubels*; and the total of the annual expences of the Court is about a million of *Rubels*. A hundred and fifty tables are spread twice a day at court; and the dishes for these tables are about 1800. To make this provision, the court purveyor receives for every three days 2000 *Rubels*, exclusive of the produce of the crown-estates, and the proper quantity of wine, sugar, and spices. The daily consumption of coffee at court is a *Pud* or thirty-six pounds *English* weight; and 7000 *Puds* of salt are expended there every month.

The Great Duke, or heir apparent, is allowed 200,000 *Rubels* a year, for the maintenance of his household.

The annual expences of the *Russian* ministers in foreign courts amount to about 100,000 dollars\*.

The Academy and University at *Petersburg* receive annually from the Treasury, by Warrant of the State-Office, 53,928 *Rubels*.

The court allows 110,000 *Rubels* for the support of public dispensaries; and the deductions from the pay of the officers and soldiers for that purpose make about 40,000 *Rubels*; so that the whole expence amounts to 150,000 *Rubels*. Other inconsiderable sums laid out by the court I shall take no notice of. The produce of the public shows of tumblers and rope-dancers, of which multitudes are exhibited at *Easter* for the diversion of the people who are passionately fond of them, are allotted for defraying the expences of the Police, paving the streets, &c. Besides, every house-keeper pays an assessment for his house and court-yard according to the extent of ground he occupies, which is applied to the same purposes. The salaries of all civil officers are paid out of the monies received by the Chanceries or offices belonging to their departments; and those of the Governors from the *Pricases* or offices of their respective Governments. A Senator, as such, receives no pension or salary. The surplus remaining in the inferior offices is transferred to the State-Office.

§. 21. The military establishment of *Russia*, by the indefatigable care of *Peter the Great*, has been entirely new modelled. Before his time the in-

\* A dollar is equal to 3s. 6d. sterling.

fantry, for the most part, were called *Strelitzes*, who, being honoured with particular privileges as the Czaar's body-guards, arrogated to themselves a power which often proved dangerous even to the Emperor's life. But *Peter I.* suppressed both the name and the corps. The *Russians* at present are good soldiers, especially if they be well disciplined; but the infantry far surpasses the cavalry: both horse and infantry are on the *German* footing.

The army, according to the state of it given by *M. Von Haven*, consists  
*First*, Of REGULAR TROOPS which are divided into

I. The Field Army, which consists of

	<i>Men.</i>
1. Infantry, namely,	
Three regiments of Guards containing in all — —	8244
Fifty marching regiments in time of peace amounting to } 70,450; but in war time to — — — — }	78,300
The corps of matrosses and engineers — —	5011
2. Cavalry, namely,	
One troop of life-guards of three hundred men, and the } horse-guards of 1443, amounting together to — — }	1743
Three regiments of cuirassiers — — —	2934
Twenty-nine regiments of dragoons making in time of peace } 31,668, but in war time — — — — }	35,699
Four regiments of hussars containing — —	4435
II. The army belonging to the Garrisons and Governments, which consists of	
1. Infantry, namely,	
Twenty regiments which are cantoned towards the <i>Baltic</i> } amounting in all to — — — — }	26,520
Twenty-eight regiments in the heart of the Empire making } in all — — — — — }	36,736
Land militia on the <i>Sakomsko</i> line — — —	2342
Six battalions containing — — — —	4020
The corps of artillery and engineers — —	5950
2. Cavalry, namely,	
Twenty regiments of land militia on the <i>Ukraine</i> line } amounting in all to — — — — }	22,700
Land militia on the <i>Sakomsko</i> line — — —	3351
Seven regiments of dragoons in garrison making — —	7399
Two squadrons in garrison amounting to — —	1130
Total of the regular troops — —	246,494

*Secondly,*

## INTRODUCTION TO

Secondly, Of IRREGULAR TROOPS, which consist of

						<i>Men.</i>
Ten <i>Little Russia</i> regiments amounting to	—	—	—	—	—	60,000
Five <i>Slabodian</i> regiments making in all	—	—	—	—	—	30,000
<i>Don Cossacks</i>	—	—	—	—	—	10,000
<i>Calmucks</i>	—	—	—	—	—	20,000
Total of irregular troops.						120,000

These, like the regular army, may be augmented at the Empress's pleasure.

As for the Officers pay, it must be observed, 1. That the officers of the twenty garrison-regiments in the towns lying on the *Baltic* have double the pay of other garrison regiments. 2. That the officers of all marching regiments have three times the pay of the officers of the regiments in the governments or provinces. 3. That the private men in the guards have double the pay of those in the marching regiments.

Here follows an account of the annual pay of the Generals, officers, and private men in the *Russian* service.

A General Field-Marshal is allowed *per annum*.

<i>Rubels.</i>	<i>Rations.</i>	<i>Rubels.</i>	<i>Denßeks</i> or <i>Servants.</i>
7000	200 valued at	1140	and 16
A General in chief.			
3600	80	456	12
A Lieutenant-General.			
2160	50	285	10
A Major-General.			
1800	40	228	8
A Brigadier.			
840	20	171	7

In the marching regiments a Colonel is allowed yearly.

<i>Rubels.</i>	<i>Rubels.</i>	<i>Copeiks.</i>	<i>Servants.</i>
600	96 and	90 for <i>Rations.</i>	6
A Lieutenant Colonel.			
360	62	70	4
A Major.			
300	62	70	3



A Captain.

<i>Rubels.</i>	<i>Rubels.</i>		<i>Copeiks.</i>	<i>Servants.</i>
180	28	and	50 for Rations.	2

A Lieutenant.

120	22		80	1
-----	----	--	----	---

A Second Lieutenant.

84	17		10	1
----	----	--	----	---

An Ensign.

84	17		10	1
----	----	--	----	---

A Quarter-master of a regiment.

84	22		80	1
----	----	--	----	---

An Adjutant.

120	22		80	1
-----	----	--	----	---

From this table, and the paragraph immediately preceding it, we may find out the pay of the officers belonging to the regiments in the garrisons and Governments.

A private man is allowed yearly ten *Rubels* and ninety-eight *Copeiks*, besides three barrels of meal, a certain quantity of groats or coarse oatmeal, twenty-four pounds of salt, and flesh to the value of seventy-two *Copeiks*; all these articles are computed at five *Rubels* seventy-four *Copeiks*. But six *Rubels* thirty-five *Copeiks* are deducted from the pay of every private man for clothing, medicines, flesh, cartridges, and flints for their firelocks. His whole clothing from head to foot costs near twelve *Rubels*.

The *Dentskeks* or servants are taken out of the recruits to attend the officers: And for the support of every one of these eleven Rix-dollars and two *Copeiks* and a half are paid annually out of the military chest; but the masters are obliged to clothe them. The corps of Cadets shall be spoken of in my account of *Petersburg*.

§. 22. The *Russians* owe their skill in the art of ship-building, and consequently their naval power, entirely to *Peter the Great*. For they had only barks and other small craft, for passing up and down the *Volga* and the *Don*, before that Monarch's time. *Russia* naturally abounds in all kinds of naval stores; and at *Petersburg* and *Archangel* are large dock-yards, in each of which three *English* ship-carpenters superintend the building of ships. It appears from a list published by M. *Haven*, that in the year 1746 the *Russian* navy consisted of twenty-four ships of the line, seven frigates, three bomb-ketches, and two *Praams* or flat-boats; besides the galley-fleet at

## INTRODUCTION TO

*Petersburg* consisting of 102 galleys. The complement of the whole fleet amounted to 10,570 men; and of these 7701 were seamen. The fleet since that time continues pretty nearly in the same state; for if some ships are built every year, others become unfit for service. The men of war are laid up at *Revel* and *Cronstadt*, and the galleys at *Petersburg*. The *Russians* cannot as yet be said to have a complete good harbour on the *Baltic*; the water at *Cronstadt* being too fresh, which does considerable damage to the ships that lie there.

There is a new Academy for 300 Sea-Cadets erected at *Petersburg*. The High-Admiral has the pay and rank of General Field-Marshal; an Admiral, of a General in chief; A Vice-Admiral, of a Lieutenant-General; and a Rear-Admiral, of a Major-General. A Captain of a man of war has the same pay, and ranks with a Colonel, a Lieutenant-Colonel, and a Major of a marching regiment; and a Sea-Lieutenant, with a Captain.

§. 23. The *Russian* Empire lies partly in *Europe* and partly in *Asia*. The *European* part contains *Great*, *Little*, and *White Russia*; to which may be added the conquered provinces which formerly belonged to *Sweden*. *White Russia* in this Empire must not be confounded with the country of the same name in *Lithuania*. As for *Red Russia*, it belongs to *Poland*. In order to understand the origin of these names it must be observed, that it is a custom among the *Eastern* people, to distinguish countries by the epithets white and black; and that by the former they call the most extensive and fertile, and by the latter the smaller and less fruitful countries or territories. There are indeed different opinions concerning the use and application of these names; but to enter into a minute disquisition on this head, would lead me too far from my subject.

The *Asiatic* provinces of the *Russian* Empire make no small part of *Great Tartary*; and have been conquered partly in ancient, and partly in more modern times.

The *Russian* Empire is divided into Governments; and every Government consists of certain Provinces or Circles. These Governments have been frequently altered; but, according to the present division, they are as follow.

The Government of *Riga*, *Reval*, *Narwa*, *Petersburg*, *Wiburg*, *Great Novogrod*, *Archangel-gorod*, *Moscow*, *Nishneinow-gorod*, *Smolensk*, *Kiew*, *Bielogrod*, *Worontz* and *Afow*, *Asiatican*, *Oreuburg*, *Casan*, and, lastly, that of *Siberia*.

*Note.* In order to facilitate the pronunciation of the *Russian* names of places mentioned in the geographical part, I have set them down as they are spoken \*; and for the farther satisfaction of the reader, I shall here

\* Where the *German* pronunciation differs from the *English*, I have accommodated the *Russian* words to the latter, particularly in the *sch* which is expressed by *sh*, and *j* consonant by *i* or *y*, as it is pronounced so by the *Germans*: the method of writing the names of places after the *German* manner with *sch*, *ch*, *j*, &c. would serve to embarrass the *English* reader.

add the following explanation of such *Russian* words as occur in this account, in alphabetical order.

*Bieloï, Bielaia, Bieloïe*, white.

*Gora*, a mountain.

*Gorod*, a city or town.

*Gorodishtsbe*, a place where a town formerly stood.

*Guba*, when speaking of water, signifies a bay or gulf.

*Kamen*, a rock.

*Kamennci Gorod*, a walled town.

*Krasnoi, Krasnaia, Krasnoïe*, red, or beautiful, these being synonymous terms in the *Russian* language.

*Krepost*, a fort, or fortified town.

*Liman*, a marshy lake, with a river issuing from it, or discharging itself into it.

*Maloï, Malaia, Maloïe*, little.

*Monastir*, a convent.

*More*; the sea.

*Niskoi, Niskaia, Niskoïe*, low.

*Nos*, a cape or promontory.

*Nowoi, Nowaia, Nowoïe*, new.

*Ozero*, a lake.

*Ostrog*, a place inclosed with palisadoes, frequent in *Siberia*. Instead of a wall, they are surrounded with long piles driven perpendicularly into the ground, or wooden breast-works, like ramparts, made of logs and beams of timber laid upon each other. These *Ostrogs* have only the principal buildings inclosed within them, as the *Waiwode* or Governor's house, the public offices, a magazine of provisions, an armory, a furr-warehouse, a church, &c. But a town or village stands near most of the *Ostrogs*.

*Ostrow*, an island.

*Pogost*, properly a church with the buildings belonging to it; in a more extensive sense it denotes the whole territory of a parish belonging to a church. The villages likewise dependent on the church have also the same names.

*Pricas*, a chancery or public office.

*Porogi*, water-falls or cataracts.

*Provincialnoi Gorod*, or a Provincial city, is the residence of a Governor, Deputy Governor, or of a *Woiwode*; and has other towns under its jurisdiction.

*Sawod*, a smelting house, or place where ores and metals, as iron, copper, &c. are melted down and wrought.

*Saftawa*, a toll-place, or custom-house.



*Selo*, a village consisting of one church, and the houses which belong to it. Some *Selo*'s belong to private persons or convents.

*Slobodes*, are different from the preceding. The *Slobody Uiezdnyia*, or *Slobode* circles, have handsome buildings and are larger than many small towns, but not fortified. The inhabitants of them are traders, and have a particular magistrate and a toll-place or custom-house. *Iamskiie-Slobody*, are places where carriers generally live. The *Slobodes* in *Siberia* are inhabited by peasants; and these may be accounted part of a Circle, as they include several parishes and villages; and in some of them there are *Ostrog*s. *Sloboda* in the province of *Tobolsk* signifies a town surrounded with wooden walls; and there are few other fortifications in *Siberia*, except those of the city of *Tobolsk*. Indeed, the only enemies the *Siberians* have to deal with are the *Beshkirians*, the *Calmuks*, and the *Kasatska-Horda*; and their wars may be looked upon as robberies rather than military expeditions, for they attack the villages on horseback for the conveniency of carrying away the plunder immediately; so that the main point is to prevent the enemies from breaking in. They have but little to fear from their weapons, which, for the most part, are only bows and arrows.

*Shushiwie*, irregular foot soldiers.

*Sol*, salt.

*Stan*, a part of a Circle containing fifty churches, with the chapels dependent on them.

*Staroi*, *Staraia*, *Staroie*, old.

*Step*, a waste or wilderness; likewise a level barren country.

*Swiatoi*, *Swiataia*, *Swiatoie*, holy.

*Tsbernoi*, *Tskernaia*, *Tsbernoie*, black.

*Uiezd*, a Circle or district, less than a province, and more extensive than a *Stan*, a *Wolost*, or *Pogost*.

*Ost-ie*, the mouth of a river.

*Welekoi*, *Welekaia*, *Welikoie*, great.

*Wercnei*, *Wercniaia*, *Wercnoie*, superior or above.

*Wersta*, a *Russian* measure of distance, of which  $104\frac{1}{2}$ , or according to some, 105 are equal to a degree of the Equator.

*Yam*, a Post-stage, where the horses are changed.

*Yamskaia*, a village or small town inhabited by sledge-drivers, carriers, &c.

*Yar*, a steep high coast.

*Yurte*, huts.

*Zemlia*, a country, or the earth.

---

T H E  
E U R O P E A N P A R T  
O F T H E  
R U S S I A N E M P I R E.

§. 1. **T**HE boundaries of this part of the *Russian* Empire towards the East are indeed the same with the limits between *Europe* and *Asia*; but these are not easily ascertained. All that can be said with any certainty is, that the river *Don* has, from time immemorial, been looked upon as the southern boundary; that the kingdom of *Asracan* and *Kasan* are reckoned to be in *Asia*; and that the *Wercoturian* mountains have commonly passed for the limits between *Russia* and *Siberia*.

§. 2. The seas bordering on *Russia* have been described above \*. The principal rivers in the *European* part of the *Russian* Empire are as follow.

1. The *Wolga*, in Latin *Volga*. This river was formerly known by the name of *Rba*; and is at present by the *Tartars* called *Atel*, *Edel*, or *Idel*, i. e. 'the large river'. It has its source in the forest of *Wolconski*; and is one of the largest rivers in the world; for it runs a course of between four and five hundred geographical or *German* miles, before it falls into the *Caspian* sea. Its borders are generally fertile; and though they are not sufficiently cultivated, on account of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars*; yet the soil naturally produces all kinds of esculent herbs; and particularly asparagus of a very extraordinary size and goodness. Most of the oaks in *Russia* grow in the countries that are watered by this river. At *Twer*, a town but little more than twenty geographical miles from its source, the *Wolga* is navigable for large ships. Towards the end of the spring, this river is so swelled by the melting of the ice and snow as to cause great inundations; particularly in the months of *May* and *June*. The masters of

\* See pag. 60, 61, 62.

the vessels which are bound down the *Wolga* to *Astracan*, carefully observe this season, as at that time they have not only the opportunity of a safe passage over the shallows; but likewise over several flat islands, which then lie at a considerable depth under water. Trees are often torn away by the roots from the banks of this river by the violence of the current; and the anchors of the vessels are frequently so entangled amongst them, that there is a necessity of cutting the cable, so that a great number of anchors are supposed to lie at the bottom. The *Wolga* abounds with the fine fish called *Beluga*\*. It receives several noted rivers, and among the rest the *Occa* and *Cama*; and empties itself into the *Caspian* sea through several mouths or channels, which form a great many islands.

2. The *Don*, in Latin *Tanais*, by the *Tartars* called *Tuna* or *Duna*. The ancients ranked the *Tanais* among the most famous rivers, and looked upon it as the boundary between *Europe* and *Asia*. Its source is not far from *Tula*, in the *Ivano Ojero* or *John's lake*. It runs first from north to south; and after its conflux with the *Sofna* near the fortress of *Nowa Pawlowaskaia* in the Government of *Woronese*, it directs its course from West to East, and in several large windings runs again from North to South. At last it divides into three channels which begin to spread from each other below *Czerkaskoi*, and falls into the *Palus Maotis* near *Afew* and *Lutik*. The waters of the *Don* are thick and chalky; and consequently not very wholesome to drink. In summer this river is very shallow and full of sand-banks; however, it affords plenty both of small and large fish. The *Don*, in its course, approaches so near to the *Wolga*, that the distance between them in one place is but one hundred and forty *Wersts*, or about eighty *English* miles. But if the river *Lawla* which runs into the *Don*, and the *Camishinka*, which empties itself into the *Wolga*, were made navigable, the distance between the two rivers then would hardly be four *Wersts*; and they might be easily united by cutting a canal. However, it is said that *Peter the Great* did not think this project feasible.

3. The *Dwina*, in Latin *Duina*, a very large river. The name signifies double; for it is formed by the conflux of the two rivers *Sukona* and *Yug* at *Ufliaga*. This river divides itself into two branches or channels near *Archangel*, which run into the *White Sea*. Some imagine that a famous temple stood on the bank of this river, in which an idol called *Solbtaia Baba*, or the 'Golden Matron,' was set up. This Goddess was worshipped, under the name of *Yumala*, not only by the inhabitants of the country; but by the *Scythian* and *Greecian* merchants, who resided near the *Dnieper* and the *Black Sea*, and used to travel hither to trade and pay their adorations to the idol. Others place that temple on the *Petshora*, and others again, with greater probability, on the river *Oby*; but the

\* This fish is about eight or ten feet in length, and is esteemed preferable to the Sturgeon.  
whole



whole is very uncertain. The *Duina* or *Duna* a river of *Poland*, though its source is likewise in *Russia*, is not to be confounded with this river.

4. The *Dnieper*, or *Danapris*, in Latin *Borysthenes*, rises from a morass in the forest of *Wolconsk* about twenty *German* or Geographical miles above *Smolenssk*. It forms several windings through *Lithuania*, *Little Russia*, the country of the *Zaporo-Cosaks*, and a tract inhabited by the *Nagaian Tartars* of *Crimea*; and after forming a *Liman*, or marshy lake, of sixty *Wersts* in length, and in many places two, four, or even ten *Wersts* in breadth, it loses itself in the *Black Sea* between *Oczacow* and *Kinburn*. The banks of this river on both sides are generally high, and the soil is excellent; but the water in summer is not very wholesome. The *Dnieper* has no less than thirteen water-falls within the space of sixty *Wersts*; yet in spring, during the land-floods, empty vessels may be halled over them.

This river, till it comes to the *Liman* near the mouth of it, is so full of islands, that all the intervals being computed together do not amount to thirty *English* miles; and abounds with sturgeon, sterled, carp, pyke, *karauß*, &c. The only bridge over the *Dnieper* is the float-bridge at *Kiew*, which is 1638 paces in length. This bridge is taken away about the end of *September*, to give the flakes of ice a free passage down the river, and is again put together in spring. A great number of mills erected in boats are to be seen on this river; any one being allowed the liberty of setting them up.

§. 3. The principal lakes in this part of the *Russian* Empire are,

1. The *Peipus* lake in *Livonia*, called in the *Russian* language *Tshudskoe Osero*, which is ten geographical miles\* in length, and seven or eight in breadth. It abounds with fish; and runs into the gulf of *Finland* by the river *Narva*. This lake has also a communication with that of *Pleskow* which is called by the *Russians* *Pskowskoe Osero*.

2. The famous lake of *Ladoga*, which lies between the gulf of *Finnland* and the *Onega*-lake, is twenty-five *German* or geographical miles in length, and fifteen in breadth. It is reckoned the largest lake in *Europe*, and is supposed to exceed any other for plenty of fish, among which are also seals or sea-dogs. *Ladoga* is full of quick-sands, which being moved from place to place by the frequent storms it is subject to, cause several shelves along its coasts, that often prove fatal to the flat-bottomed *Russian* vessels. This induced *Peter the Great* to cause a canal of one hundred and four *Wersts* † in length, seventy feet in breadth, and ten or eleven feet deep, to be cut at a vast expence from the south-west extremity of this lake in *Ingria* and *Novogrod*, to the sea; which with the necessary windings

\* The miles by which the Author computes the length and breadth of these lakes, &c. are mentioned in general terms; but as *mile* is a word of such latitude, it were to be wished he had been more accurate.

† Near seventy *English* miles.

was carried from *Schluffelburg* to *New Ladoga* in the river *Wolcow*. This work was begun in the year 1718; and though it was vigorously prosecuted, was not completed till the year 1732, in the reign of the Empress *Anne*. This canal at first reached no farther than a village called *Cabona* situated on a river of the same name, at the distance of forty-four *Wersts* from *Schluffelburg*, and where the vessels sailed into the lake; for which purpose the sluice is still kept up there. The canal has twenty-five sluices; several rivers run into it as the *Lipka*, *Nassia*, *Tzeldika*, *Larwa*, *Cabona*, and two smaller anonymous streams on which stand two small villages. At the distance of every *Werst* along this canal is erected a pillar marked with the number of *Wersts*, &c. It is the constant employment of a regiment of soldiers to keep the canal in repair; and for this purpose they are quartered in several places on its banks. In summer-time it is covered with floats and vessels passing from the *Wolcow* to the *Neva*, which pay toll in proportion to the value of their cargo; but not a few, to avoid the duty, and the labour of drawing the vessel or the floats on the canal, rather venture on the *Ladoga*-lake. The islands *Sarcow*, *Selency*, *Kirwet* and *Tinow*, which lie in the lake and are inhabited by fishermen, may be seen from the canal. The river *Neva*, which shall be spoken of in the sequel, issues from this lake.

3. The lake of *Onega* lies betwixt lake *Ladoga* and the *White Sea*; and has a communication with the former by means of the river *Swir*. Its length is one hundred and eighty *Russian Wersts*, the breadth about eighty; and though it be a fresh-water lake seals are often seen in it. A scheme was laid before *Peter the Great* for joining the rivers *Wytegra* and *Roufska*, and by that means opening a communication betwixt the *Onega*-lake and *Beloseero* or the *White Lake*: But the execution of this plan was prevented by the death of that Monarch.

We shall now proceed to give an account of

The PROVINCES acquired by RUSSIA, and taken from the SWEDES in this century; and these are *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Carelia*.

## I. The D U T C H I E S of

### L I V O N I A and E S T H O N I A.

§. 1. **A**MONG the maps of this dutchy which are extant, that stiled *Nova totius Livoniæ accurata descriptio, apud Janssonio-Waesbergios & Mosem Pitt*, is at present too obsolete, and much less accurate than the *Nova exhibitio geographica ducatum Livoniæ & Curlandiæ* published by *Hermann*.

*mam.* The map of *Esthonia* and *Livonia* inserted in the *Russian ATLAS*, notwithstanding all its improvements, is not without many faults. This map, indeed, exhibits more countries than its title contains; for besides *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, it also includes *Courland*, *Ingermania*, and part of the Governments of *Novogrod* and *Smolensk*.

§. 2. The country we are now describing was formerly inhabited by three different nations, namely, the *Livonians*, *Lettonians*, and *Esthonians*. It was accordingly divided into *Liefland* or *Livonia*, *Letland* or *Lettonia*, and *Esthland* or *Esthonia*; not to mention *Courland* and *Semgallen*, which Dutchies, till the time of *Gothard Kettlern*, also made a part of this country. The name of *Liefland* or *Livonia*, which properly belongs only to the District that lies along the *Duna*, has in time been applied also to *Lettonia*; and in common conversation *Livonia* includes the country properly so called, together with *Lettonia* and *Esthonia*. But to speak with greater precision, *Livonia*, or the south part of the country, must be carefully distinguished from *Esthonia*, or the north part; which distinction we shall observe in the particular description of them.

§. 3. This country\* borders on *Courland*, the *Baltic*, the gulf of *Finnland*, *Ingria*, *Russia*, and *Poland*. It extends in length from North to South between forty-five and fifty geographical or *German* miles; and its breadth from East to West is from thirty-five to forty, exclusive of the islands belonging to it.

§. 4. *Livonia* consists partly of woods and morasses, and partly of a fertile soil, which yields the inhabitants all the necessaries of life in great plenty. The air is clear and salubrious; and though the winter be long and severe, and the summer, consequently, but short; yet the heat of the climate during the latter season is such, that the grain sown both in summer and winter ripens at the proper time. In a plentiful year when the crops have not failed, the inhabitants export many thousand Lasts of rye and barley to *Holland*, *Spain*, and other foreign countries: Hence *Livonia* is called the 'Granary of the North.' Before the corn is threshed, it is dried and hardened in kilns heated by large stoves or ovens, which are built contiguous to their barns; however, this does not render it unfit for sowing, or for making bread and malt; besides, it keeps the better for it.

The horned cattle, horses, and goats of this country are very numerous, and much esteemed; but the sheep are not extraordinary, their wool being coarse, and resembling goats hair.

Vast quantities of flax, hemp, lin-seed, leather and skins are exported from hence in foreign bottoms.

\* *Livonia*, including *Esthonia* and *Lettonia*.



The rivers which water this country are the *Duna*\*, the *Aa*, the *Embak*, the *Pernaw*, &c. It has also many standing-lakes, as that of *Peipus* † mentioned above, the *Werczer*-lake, which is five geographical miles in length and two in breadth, the *Luban*-lake, &c. Both the lakes and rivers afford plenty of the finest salmon, and other fish. Turbots are also taken in the gulf of *Riga*; and the fisheries support a considerable part of the inhabitants. *Stromlings*, which are a species of herrings, are found in vast shoals along these coasts, and are the common food of the peasants who salt great quantities of them. In the present reign a *Swede* has set on foot a pearl fishery, and there are above forty-five rivulets and lakes in *Esthonia* and *Livonia* where this fishery is carried on; but the former yields more pearls than the latter, which come pretty near the oriental pearls both for size and clearness.

This country was formerly overrun with vast woods of oak, fir, pine, and birch-trees; but these are now too thin, partly by the method of building practised by the inhabitants, whose houses and other edifices in towns and villages consist almost entirely of wood; and partly by their clearing of the woods in order to cultivate the land for sowing corn, &c. The harbour of *Roderwyck*, which required a prodigious quantity of timber, contributed not a little to the destruction of the woods in *Livonia*. However the country has reaped one advantage by it; for it is not so much infested with bears, wolves, elks, lynxes, martens, and other wild beasts. *Livonia*, still abounds with the smaller wild quadrupeds and other game; so that hares, which turn white here in winter, and wild fowl, are sold very cheap. As for stags, deer, and wild boars, there are none in this country. Quarries of good stone are very common here. The highways and roads in *Livonia* are in very good order; and at the end of every *Russian Werst* a red pillar is erected, on which is marked the number of the *Wersts* passed and remaining in travelling from one capital to another. The country inns are very mean; but the post-houses have every thing in proper order.

The distances between the principal towns are as follows.

From *Riga* to *Narva* 400 *Wersts*, or 21 Post-stages.

From *Riga* to *Pernaw* 172 *Wersts*, or 9 Post-stages.

From *Pernaw* to *Reval* 138 *Wersts*, or 6 Post-stages.

From *Reval* to *Habsal* 95 *Wersts*, or 4 Post-stages.

From *Reval* to *Narva* 196 *Wersts*, or 9 Post-stages.

The sledges are a very great conveniency for carrying on trade, and travelling in winter.

§. 5. This country was formerly interspersed with a great number of towns and villages: But in the wars and commotions which *Livonia* has so often experienced, most of them were destroyed; so that at present nothing but

\* This is called here *Duna* to distinguish it from the *Dwina*, which runs to *Archangel*. See pag. 412, N<sup>o</sup> 3.

† See §. 3 of the Introduction to *Russia*.

the ruins of many of them are to be seen. A traveller passes through more towns in a journey of twelve or fifteen geographical miles in many countries, than in all this vast extent of land. To the same cause also the poverty of the *Livonian* peasants may be attributed; who amidst all their affluence find so much difficulty in turning the overplus of their substance into money, that they are obliged to give half of it away, and at the same time buy whatever foreign commodities they have occasion for, at a very high price.

§. 6. This country might undoubtedly afford subsistence to a much greater number of inhabitants than it has at present; for they have been extremely thinned by war, pestilence and famine. The number of them may in some measure be determined by the following method. The estates in *Livonia* are taxed according to the number of *Hakes*, i. e. 'of men fit for labour from fifteen to fifty years of age;' five of these being reckoned to a *Hake*. Now the peasants of *Esthonia* are said to consist only of 5000 *Hakes*, which amount to 25,000 labouring men; an inconsiderable number for a province of such extent.

Besides the inhabitants who are descended from the *Germans*, this country contains great numbers of *Esthonians* and *Letonians*, which are people of a very different extraction and language; but their manners and customs are pretty much the same. The *Esthonians* seem from the affinity of the two languages and other circumstances, to be derived from the same origin with the *Fins*. The *Letonians* both from their name and language appear to be sprung from the same stock as the *Lithuanians*, who were a mixture of several *Sarmatian* tribes. They are both termed *Undeutschen*, i. e. 'people that are not *Germans*', by the other inhabitants. Their stature very seldom exceeds the middle size; but they are vigorous and hardy; enduring cold and heat, and undergoing the greatest labour and fatigue with cheerfulness. Their houses are very meanly built; and the rooms quite black with smoke. They are all vassals, or rather slaves to their lords, who may treat them as they please, if they do not kill them. Their chief occupations are agriculture, grazing, and sometimes fishing; but they have a good natural genius for mechanics. They are very much given to drunkenness; and are still fond of many superstitious practices in private. There are also many *Russians* in this country. The languages usually spoken by the inhabitants are, the *Letonian*, the *Esthonian*, the *German*, the *Russian*, the *Swedish*, and *Finnish* tongues.

§. 7. The Nobility are very numerous, and are mostly of foreign extraction; for their ancestors were partly such families as anciently came into *Livonia* with the King of *Denmark*; but for the most part removed hither from *Germany*, particularly from *Thuringia*, *Westphalia*, *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, and other parts of the circle of *Lower Saxony*. Here are also some noble families of *Swedish* and *Polish* extraction. Most of the Nobility of this country have always given themselves up entirely to a military life.

Those of another turn of mind, who reside on their estates and make improvements in agriculture, are generally invested with civil and juridical employments; and of this class are Governors, Prefects, *Land-Marskals*, provincial and *Hake* Judges, &c. The Nobility are far from being sufferers by falling under the dominion of *Russia*; for since that time all their rights and privileges have been confirmed to them; and the estates which the Court of *Sweden* had reassumed have likewise been restored to the former feudatories.

A Diet or Provincial Assembly is held for *Esthonia* once in three years at *Reval*, in which a Chief Head of the Noblesse, who is equal to a *Land-Marskal*, is chosen by a majority of votes; and at the expiration of that office he is entitled to the next survivorship of the post of *Land-Rath*, or provincial Counsellor. Every thing relating to the public utility is the subject of the deliberations of this Diet; and out of it is appointed a committee in which the *Land-Raths*, as they are called, have a seat. The Diet is convened on any important occasion by the chief of the Nobility. A Diet is never held at *Riga* without permission from the *Russian* Court; which being obtained, a *Land-Marskal* is chosen, whose employment is chiefly confined to the affairs under deliberation in the Diet.

§. 8. Artificers and mechanics are not so common here as in other countries. The commerce of *Livonia* always flourishes in-time of peace; *Riga*, *Reval*, and *Narva* being well known in the commercial world. *Pernau* is likewise in a flourishing condition. However, these towns suffer greatly from the clandestine trade, which is carried on by land; and though it has been often prohibited it still encreases. The gentry purchase corn both of their own vassals and other peasants; and some of them distil spirits from it, while others send it to the sea-ports, and there sell it to the best advantage. The peasants are obliged to bring what corn they intend for sale to the Noblemen's seats, where, instead of ready money for it, they generally receive iron, salt, steel, tobacco, and other commodities and utensils of little value.

§. 9. At *Riga* and *Reval* are good *Gymnasia*, or Seminaries, and schools: but this country at present cannot boast of one University.

§. 10. The inhabitants of *Livonia*, for the most part, profess Lutheranism; but the Calvinists, Papists, and *Russians* are indulged with the free exercise of their religion. There is an yearly allowance from the crown of 1200 *Rubels* towards the support of the national churches in this country; but the churches of the separatists do not partake of this bounty. The Bible has been published here in the *Lettonian* and *Esthonian* languages.

In *ESTHONIA*, all the country parishes, together with the cathedral of *Reval*, with regard to ecclesiastical jurisdiction, are subject to the Nobility, and are but forty in number: we may hence form a conjecture of their great extent. They are divided into Provostships, according to the Circles in which they are included. The Consistory of Nobles is composed of a  
president.



president, who is a *Land-Rath* or provincial Counsellor, Provosts, the Preachers belonging to the cathedral of *Reval*, and some other Assessors. Here is also a Supreme Court of Appeals in spiritual causes, which consists of some ecclesiastics, *Land-Raths*, and noblemen. LIVONIA or the General-Government of *Riga* contains above one hundred and twenty parishes, which together with St. *James's* church in *Riga*, is under the jurisdiction of the Consistory of Nobles. Over these presides a General Superintendant, who has his residence at *Riga*. The High-Consistory is also held at *Riga*, and the president of it is a *Land-Rath*. Every Circle has a Governor in civil and ecclesiastical affairs, who must be of the class of the Nobility. The Ministers of *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and other small towns in *Livonia*, are subject to the General Superintendant; but the cities of *Riga*, *Reval*, and *Narva* have their own Consistories, which, as well as their magistracy, are independent of the Nobility.

§. 11. The highest tribunal in ESTHONIA is that called the *Government* or Supreme Provincial Court, which meets to administer justice every year about the middle of *January*, and continues sitting till *Easter*. It consists of the Governor as president, and twelve *Land-Raths* or Provincial Counsellors, who are all Noble, and have the rank of Major-General. The *Land-Raths* may, by a free choice, fill up the vacancies in their college from among the Nobility, without any licence or nomination from the crown; and the senior *Land-Raths* compose a *Government* in the absence of the other *Governors*. Subordinate to this tribunal are the *Mann-Gerichte* or inferior courts, and *Haken-Richter* or inferior judges. The *Haken-Richter* of every Circle in *Esthonia* has two *Adjuncti* or assistants. His office is to take care of the roads and bridges, to levy the money granted by the Nobility at the Diet for the service of the public; and all disputes about limits and other incidents have the first hearing before him. A *Mann-Gericht*, of which in all there are three, consists of a Judge, two Assessors, and a Notary. These take cognizance of all criminal matters, and disputes of more importance. An appeal also lies from the *Haken-Richter* to the *Mann-Richter*. Both these are appointed by the *Land-Raths* college, and must be of the class of Nobles; and continue in office but three years. When they are exchanged the *Adjuncti* are usually made *Assessores*; and one of the Assessors is appointed *Haken-Richter*; and the *Haken-Richter* is promoted to be *Mann-Richter*. As these courts are held only at certain times, the plaintiffs are obliged previously to apply to the *General-Government* or Supreme Council, where the Governor who is nominated by the Crown presides.

In the General-Government of RIGA, or LIVONIA, the chief tribunals are the *Hof-Gericht* or Supreme Court of Judicature which is appointed by the *Czarina*. Here are also twelve *Land-Raths*, or Provincial Counsellors; but only one of them has a seat in the *Hof-Gericht*. Each of these *Land-Raths* resides in his turn at *Riga* for a month, in order to preside in the College of the Nobility, and

takes cognizance of the same affairs as the above-mentioned Chief of the Nobles does in *Eſthonia*. The *Land-Raths* indeed elect the College; but their choice muſt be confirmed at the *Ruſſian Court*. The inferior courts are, the *Land-Gericht* and *Ordnungs-Gericht*, the members of which have their reſpective Aſſeſſors; and they are on the ſame footing as the *Mann-Richter* and *Haken-Richter* in *Eſthonia*. But from all theſe courts there lies an appeal to the College of Judicature eſtabliſhed at *Petersburg* for the provinces of *Eſthonia* and *Livonia*; and from that again to the *Senate*, which is the Supreme Tribunal for the whole *Ruſſian Empire*.

§. 12. The ancient hiſtory of theſe Dutchies is very dark and obſcure. Paganism prevailed here down to the twelfth century, when by the following accident the Chriſtian religion was firſt introduced into *Livonia* properly ſo called. In the year 1158, ſome merchants of *Bremen* bound to *Wisby* in *Gotland* were driven by ſtrefs of weather on the coaſt of *Livonia*, and landed at the mouth of the river *Duna* near the *Baltic*. The inhabitants of thoſe parts who called themſelves *Liven*, at firſt, were for oppoſing their landing; but becoming more tractable by degrees, they trafficked together. Theſe beginnings the *Bremeners* improved, by reſorting hither in greater numbers with commodities to trade with the natives; and with the conſent of the inhabitants, went about two leagues up the *Duna*, where they pitched their tents. After this they built a ſtrong ware-houſe of timber on an eminence, in which they depoſited their goods. To this edifice the inhabitants gave the name of *Ykeſkola*, that is, a ſchool or convent; and to this very day it is called *Uxkul*. The *German* coloniſts encreasing in number, brought with them, probably about the year 1186, an eccleſiaſtic of the name of *Meinkard*, who was an *Auguſtine* monk of the convent of *Segeberg* in *Wagric*. This monk, having learnt the language of the country, perſuaded ſome of the inhabitants to be baptized. The town of *Uxkul* was then built with ſtone, and a caſtle was erected at the foot of the hill. In the former *Meinkard* founded a church and a convent of *Auguſtine* monks. This firſt preacher of the Goſpel was made Biſhop; and *Kerkholm* was erected into an epiſcopal ſee. From this time ſeveral *German* families came and ſettled in *Livonia*. About the ſame era, namely 1196, *Canute VI.* King of *Denmark* made an expedition into *Eſthonia*; and having ſubdued that province, he introduced Chriſtianity, erected churches in the country, and ſent prieſts to officiate in them. Biſhop *Albert*, in order to promote the conqueſt of *Livonia*, inſtituted the order of knighthood called the Knights of Chriſt; and Pope *Innocent III.* gave them the ſame Statutes with the Knights Templars, and a croſs and a ſword as a badge to be worn on their coats, enjoining them at the ſame time to obey the Biſhop of *Riga*. In the year 1206, Biſhop *Albert* gave a grant to the Order of the third part of *Livonia*, with all the privileges of Sovereignty; which was confirmed by Pope *Innocent III.* in the year 1210, who exempted the Knights from tythes

and other imposts. The first Grand-Master of this order was *Winno*, who ordered that the Knights for the future should be stiled *Fratres Ensigniferi* 'or sword-bearing Knights.' In 1231, these *Fratres Ensigniferi* were solemnly united with the Knights of the *Teutonic* order; and as the habit of these incorporated Knights was a white mantle with a black cross, they stiled themselves 'Brothers of the cross.' But this humble title, in 1382, they changed to that of 'Lords of the Cross.' In the year 1346, *Waldemar III.* King of *Denmark* sold *Esthonia* to this Order for 18,000 *Lothige* marks of silver\*. In 1521, *Walter Plettenberg*, the General of this order, purchased from the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* order in *Prussia* the chief jurisdiction in *Livonia*; and he as well as the States of *Livonia* were discharged from their oath of obedience to the *Teutonic* Grand Master. And not long after, the Emperor *Charles V.* admitted them among the Princes of the Empire. By this privilege the *Livonians* had a right of appealing from their high Court of Judicature to the Aulic Council at *Spire*. About this time the Reformation began to spread itself throughout the whole country.

Towards the middle of this sixteenth century the Czar *Iwan Basflowitz* formed the design of conquering this country; which induced the city of *Reval* and the dutchy of *Esthonia* to put themselves under the protection of *Sweden*: And on this was grounded the claim of that crown to *Livonia*, and the superior privileges which *Esthonia* enjoyed beyond *Livonia*. *Gotha Ketler*, who was chief of the Order, gave up *Livonia* to the King of *Poland*, as great Duke of *Lithuania*, upon which it was annexed to that crown; solemnly resigned his command; and in 1561 was created the first Duke of *Courland*, but was to hold this Dutchy as a fief of *Poland*. The *Poles* also got possession of *Riga* and *Lettonia*. And now this country became the cause, as well as the dismal scene of very bloody wars betwixt *Russia*, *Sweden*, and *Poland* for a whole century; namely, from the year 1561 to 1660.

By the peace of *Oliva*, which was concluded in 1660, *Livonia* was given up by *Poland* to *Sweden*; and the *Duna* was agreed on as the boundary betwixt the *Swedish* and *Polish* dominions. In 1681, the decrees of the Diet held at *Stockholm* in 1680 concerning the Reassumption of alienated crownlands, began to be put in execution here; which was an extreme grievance to the Nobility.

In the famous northern war which broke out in the beginning of the present eighteenth century, this country was miserably ravaged; till at last, by the treaty of *Nyßadt* concluded in the year 1721, *Sweden* agreed to cede *Livonia* for ever to *Russia*. In the fourth article of that treaty it is expressly stipulated 'That the crown of *Sweden* shall yield and give

\* A *Lothige* mark is nine ounces twelve-penny weights *Troy* weight.



‘ up to the *Russian* Empire for ever, as lawful conquests, the provinces of  
 ‘ *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and *Ingria*; a part of *Carēlia*, together with the  
 ‘ District of *Wiburg*, and the towns and fortresses of *Riga*, *Dinamunde*,  
 ‘ *Pernau*, *Reval*, *Dorpat*, *Narva*, *Wiburg*, *Kexholm*; and all towns, forts,  
 ‘ harbours, places, districts, and coasts belonging to the said provinces; with  
 ‘ the islands of *Oeſel*, *Dagge* and *Moen*, and all other islands lying off the  
 ‘ frontiers of *Courland* towards the coasts of *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and *Ingria*,  
 ‘ on the east side of *Reval*, and in the road of *Wiburg*, as they were professed  
 ‘ by the crown of *Sweden*.’

In the ninth and tenth articles of the same treaty. ‘ His *Czarist* Ma-  
 ‘ jesty engages to preserve and maintain the inhabitants of all ranks and  
 ‘ degrees in *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and the island of *Oeſel*, and also the towns,  
 ‘ magistracies, companies, and trades in the said provinces, in the constant  
 ‘ and unmolested enjoyment of all the rights, privileges, customs, and  
 ‘ jurisdictions, which they were in possession of under the dominion of  
 ‘ *Sweden*; and that in these ceded countries he shall be so far from of-  
 ‘ fering any violence to the consciences of the inhabitants, as to permit the  
 ‘ Evangelical [*Lutheran*] religion, with the churches and schools, and all  
 ‘ the endowments, &c. thereto belonging, to remain and continue on the  
 ‘ same footing as under the *Swedish* government; with a proviso, that  
 ‘ the professors of the *Greek* religion shall likewise enjoy an entire liberty of  
 ‘ conscience, and the free exercise of their religion in those provinces.’

In the year 1741, *Sweden* attempted the recovery of part of these ceded countries, but this was attended with a farther loss of part of *Finnland*; and by the peace of *Abo*, which was concluded in 1743, *Russia* was not only confirmed in the possession of all its conquests, but acquired some additional Districts in *Finnland*, of which an account shall be given in the sequel.

Since this country has been under the *Russian* dominion it has been divided into two General Governments and one City, which are,

#### 1. The General Government of RIGA.

This Government contains *Lettonia*, to which the name of *Livonia* is also given in a more limited sense, and consists of the Circles of *Riga*, *Wenden*, *Pernau*, *Dorpat*, and the province of *Oeſel*.

The towns and other places of note in the General Government of *Riga* are as follows.

*Riga*, the capital of the whole country, is situated on the river *Duna* and is said to derive its name from a rivulet formerly called *Rige*, now *Rifing*, which is almost dried up. This city is not of any great extent, but populous, well fortified, and famed for its trade and opulence. In the year 1660, *Charles XI.* King of *Sweden* not only declared it to be the capital of the country; but conferred on it the next rank to *Stockholm*, and honoured all the members of its council, and their successors, whilst they have a seat in the council, with the title of Noble. The houses are handsome and  
 for

for the most part, built with stone; but the streets are narrow, and the manner of building very much resembles that of the *Hanse-towns* situated on the *Baltic*. The *Lutheran* churches, namely, the Cathedral, St. *James's*, St. *Mary Magdalene's*, St. *Peter's*, and St. *John's* are handsome structures. The Seminaries called the imperial *Lyceum* and the city *Gymnasium*, the masters of which have very considerable salaries, are in a flourishing condition. Here are also an old castle, a strong citadel, and two arsenals well stored with arms, one at the charge of the crown and the other of the city. The fortifications, both on the land and water-side, have been improved under its present masters; and these towards the sea are enlarged by additional works. This city, by means of its excellent harbour, has a good trade with *England*, *Holland*, and the *Hanse-towns* during the summer-season; and in winter-time it trafficks with the *Russian* provinces by the conveniency of sledges. Its privileges, which are very considerable, were confirmed by the Empress *Anne*. The Supreme Court of Judicature for *Livonia*, and the High-Consistory are held in this city; which is also the residence of the Governor and General Superintendent. *Riga* was built in the year 1200, and soon after inclosed with a wall. It has suffered very much both by fires and sieges: Of the latter the most remarkable are those it sustained from the *Russians* in 1656; the *Saxons* and *Poles* in 1700; and a second time from the *Russians* in 1710, when it was obliged to submit to the victorious arms of *Peter the Great*.

*Dunamunde* is a noble fortification lying about two Geographical miles from *Riga*, at the mouth of the *Duna*, where the ships which sail out of the *Baltic* into that river pay toll or custom. This place was taken by the *Swedes* in 1609, and 1618; and by the *Saxons* in 1700, who gave it the name of *Augustsburg*. In 1701, it surrendered a third time to the *Swedes*, who by that means became masters of a fine train of artillery belonging to the *Saxons*; and in 1710, it was taken by the *Russians*. *Dunamunde* was formerly a convent of *Cistercian* monks, founded in the year 1201 by *Albert* Bishop of *Livonia*.

*Wenden* was formerly a place of great note, and the residence of the Master of the *Teutonic* Order; and several Diets were also held there. It is, at present, but a small mean town; especially since it was entirely consumed by fire in the year 1748. When *Wenden* was besieged and taken by the *Russians* in the year 1577, several of the inhabitants, dreading the savage cruelty of the *Russian* army, blew themselves up with the castle of this town. It belongs at present to Count *Bestuchef*, the great Chancellor of *Russia*.

*Wolmar* is a mean town situated on the river *Aa*; and derives its name from *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, on account of a victory which he obtained in this place in 1220 over the pagan *Livonians*. It was built in the year 1283; and was entirely burnt down, except the church and the castle, in the year 1689. The

The other castles and places of note in *Lettonia* were *Rockenhausen*, which was formerly the Bishop's See; *Askerade*; *Walk*, a small town; *Lemfal*, another little town; *Treiden*; *Uxkul*; *Leuwarden*; *Luban*; *Skmiten*; *Ronneburg*; *Erla*; *Kerkholm*, &c. which are now all in ruins.

*Dorpat* or *Dorpt*, in Latin *Derptum*, *Derbatum* or *Torpatum*, a town situated on the river *Embeck*, which is called *Emma Joggi*, i. e. 'Mother river,' by the *Esthonians*, lies in the Circle of the same name, and is also called *Odempe*. It was built in the year 1030, by *Iurii Iaroslav* *Wladimiritz*, Great Duke of *Russia*, who gave it the name of *Iuriew*; but the *Russians* continued in the possession of it only to the year 1191.

*Volquin*, Great master of the Order of the *Fratres Enssiferi* took *Dorpat* by assault in 1210. Soon after, this town was rebuilt at the expence of those Knights; who also erected it into a Bishop's See.

It was formerly in a flourishing condition, being the residence of a Bishop, and embellished with a cathedral: it was also a member of the *Hanseatic* confederacy; and, by means of the communication it had with *Pernau* by a canal, which was destroyed in the last *Russian* wars, carried on a considerable trade by sea. An *English* staple was also fixt in this town, as appears from the large stone edifice which was the *English* factory, but afterwards converted into a magazine.

While *Dorpat* was subject to the *Swedens* it was sometimes the residence of the Governor; and the Supreme Court of Judicature and High-Consistory, were held there till the commencement of the last war. In the year 1632, *Gustavus Adolphus* founded an University in this town; and this falling to utter decay amidst the confusions of subsequent wars, was restored in 1690: But in the year 1699, it was removed to *Pernau*. Besides, the inhabitants were wealthy, and the town was embellished with many handsome stone-edifices; but its wealth and beauty have, from time to time, fallen a prey to the frequent ravages of war.

Not to mention the more ancient sieges of *Dorpat*, and those in 1582, 1604, and 1654; this city was besieged by the *Russians* in 1704, when it was taken and plundered, and the inhabitants treated with great cruelty. But the total ruin of it happened in the year 1708, when all the inhabitants were carried away, as prisoners of war, by the *Russians*, and the castle and fortifications blown up. Those unhappy captives being afterwards permitted to return to their native place, rebuilt it with mean timber-houses as their wretched circumstances would permit.

Since the peace of *Nysladt* the number of its inhabitants has been considerably increased; many foreigners having settled here, which has made the town rather more populous than it was under the dominion of the *Swedens*. But notwithstanding all this, almost all the buildings still lie in ruins; and the fortifications, walls, and gates, with most of the public edifices and private houses, which are fallen to decay, make a very melancholy



lancholy appearance. There are as yet but fifteen private houses built with stone at *Dorpat*, and as for public buildings, none but the magazine and the *German* or *St. John's* church. The present inhabitants, though very numerous, are generally poor and indigent, and their affairs are not yet restored to their proper order; nor are their former privileges confirmed. Its University, which was for a time removed to *Pernau*, is quite fallen to decay. Here is an imperial Office called the *Oeconomie*.

*Pernau* lies in the Circle of *Pernau*, and on the river of the same name, near the *Baltic*. It is but a small town mostly built with timber, has some trade, and is defended by a castle: it contains about a hundred houses. I observed above that the University of *Dorpat* was removed hither; but the college is now converted into a magazine; and there is scarce so much as a common school remaining in the town. The fortifications are still kept in a defensible state.

*Fellin*, a small town and castle in the Circle of *Pernau*.

The province of *Oesel*, which includes the islands of *Oesel*, *Moon*, and *Ruwoe*.

The island of *Oesel*, *Ofilia*, lies at the entrance of the gulf of *Riga* about two leagues to the south of *Dagbo*. It is fourteen geographical miles in length, and between two and three in breadth, and contains ten parishes. The soil is stony, but fertile. It was formerly subject to the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order, but without prejudice to the crown of *Denmark's* pretensions to it. At last, the Knights resigned it up to the *Danes*, who, at the peace of *Bremsebro*, ceded it to the *Swedes*; and the latter, by the treaty of *Nyfladt*, gave it up to *Russia*. It was formerly a diocese; but at present is included within the General Government of *Riga*: However, it has an *Unterstatthalter* or Deputy-Governor, a College of *Land-Raths* or Provincial Counsellors, and its chief of the Nobility. The Deputy-Governor resides at *Arensburg* one of the towns of *Oesel*. *Sonneburg* was formerly a castle; but is now totally demolished. A light-house has been erected on this island for the safety of navigators. The *Esthoniens* call this island *Currefaar*, i. e. 'the island of the Cures;' The inhabitants having in all ages been famed for privateering. *M. Gruber* supposes that the word *Corfsair*, which signifies a pirate, is derived from the name of these people, contrary to the general opinion which deduces it from the *Corficans*.

The little island of *Moon* which lies near *Oesel* constitutes a parish.

The island of *Ruwoe* also lies in the gulf of *Riga*; and a light-house is erected on it.

## 2. The general Government of REVAL.

This Government includes the province of *Esthonia*; or the small Districts of *Wyk*, which is divided into *Land Wyk* and *Strand Wyk*, *East* and *West Harrien*, *Ierawen*, and *Wirrland*. The chief town in this government is

*Reval*, which lies on the *Baltic*, and though not very large, is an opulent city and well fortified; and is a place of considerable trade. In the year 1218, both the town and castle were founded by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*, on the same place where his ancestors had built the convent of *St. Michael*, which, in 1310, was included within its walls. This town, as well as the whole dutchy of *Esthonia*, received most of its privileges from the *Danish* Kings; and the arms of *Denmark*, with inscriptions in the *Danish* language, are still seen in the churches and other public edifices. The houses are mostly of brick, and well built; but the streets are something irregular. The only churches or congregations here, besides those of the *Russian* Church, are *Lutherans*. The *Germans*, including the Superintendent, have four Ministers which constitute the town clergy: But the cathedral, in which two preachers officiate, belongs to the Nobility; who also have their Chapter of Nobles there. The *Swedish* congregation has but one Minister; and that of *Undeutsche* or native *Esthonians* has two preachers. An annual assembly of all the clergy of *Esthonia* is held at *Reval*; but the town-ministers are excluded from this Synod. The imperial *Gymnasium* or Seminary, founded here in the year 1631, has four Professors, and one teacher of the *Russian* language. Here is also a town-school; and near the cathedral the school of the Nobility, which has five classes. The tolls or customs of this town are considerable; of which the magistracy have a part, and the rest belongs to the crown. *Reval* has its own arsenal; and maintains a number of matrosses, and a company of soldiers. This city, formerly, made no inconsiderable figure among the *Hanse-towns*; and is still a staple-town, and has a flourishing trade. Its harbour is convenient and spacious; and a part of the *Russian* fleet usually lies in it. The town is surrounded with high walls, strengthened with bastions, and a deep ditch; and for its further security is fortified with a castle, which stands on a rock and is embellished with several towers. The citizens have very pleasant gardens without the walls. King *Waldemar II.* erected this city into a Bishop's See.

*Reval* was totally destroyed by fire in the year 1433; and in 1710 surrendered to *Peter the Great*, who not only confirmed its former privileges, but restored several others of which the crown of *Sweden* had deprived it.

A quarter of a league from this city, near the sea-side, stands the fine imperial Garden called *Catharinen-Thal*.

The rich convent of *Marienthal* lies about a geographical mile from *Reval*. The building of this convent took up twenty-nine years, and was begun in the year 1400, or 1407; it was demolished at the Reformation, and is at present nothing but a heap of ruins.

*Padis*, which was formerly a fortified convent; but at present belongs to a nobleman.

*Habsal*, a small town, lies on the spot where formerly stood the cathedral of the diocese of *Oesel*, which was a stately edifice, but is now in a ruinous condition. It has a harbour; but has no great trade.

*Lode*, a castle in this neighbourhood.

*Leal*, a town where the See of *Oesel* was first established.

The island of *Dagbo* in the *Baltic* is tolerably fertile. It is of a triangular form, each side being about three geographical miles in length. *Dageroth* on this island is remarkable for a light-house. *Faden* is a small town; but has a pretty good harbour.

*Rogerwick*, which lies not far from *Padis*, and about six geographical miles from *Reval*. Here *Peter I.* purposed to have made an excellent harbour, but it was not completed in his time. The Empress *Elisabeth*, in 1746, took a view of this place; and ordered the work begun by her father to be prosecuted.

*Wittenstein* or *Weissenstein*, a small country town, lies in the District of *Ierwen*. Its castle in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries was several times besieged and taken; but is now in ruins.

*Wafenberg*, formerly a small town with a castle, now a manor belonging to the noble family of *Tiefenhausen*.

### 3. The City of NARVA.

This city lies on the borders of *Ingria*, on the banks of a rapid river of the same name, which runs from the *Peipus*-lake, and empties itself into the gulf of *Finmland* about four leagues from the city. There is a high water-fall in this river about a geographical mile from *Narva* towards the lake; so that the goods brought from the lake to the city, must be taken out at that place and carried by land. The town, probably, derives its name from the river; and was built in the year 1224 by the Governor, in the reign of *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*. The circuit of *Narva* is not large; but the houses are handsomely built with stone. It stands very commodiously for trade, is well fortified, and has always a strong garrison. On the market-place stands an elegant triumphal arch, erected in the year 1746 in honour of the present Empress *Elisabeth*.

Besides the *Russian* churches here is also a *Lutheran* church for the *Germans*, and two other churches for the *Finns* and *Swedes*.

Flax is the chief commodity exported from hence; and a great quantity of salt is imported in return.

*Narva* has frequently felt the calamities of war. When it was hardly pressed by the *Russians* in 1700, it was relieved by *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*; who, with an army greatly inferior in number to that of the *Russians*, entirely defeated the latter with a very great slaughter, and raised the siege. In the year 1704, it was again besieged by the *Russians* and carried by assault; and since that time it has been a part of the *Russian* dominions, but with the full enjoyment of all its former rights and privileges; the *Russians* only reserving the right of appeal to the Senate at *Petersburg*.



## II. I N G E R M A N N L A N D,

In Latin *Ingria*;

Or the G O V E R N M E N T of P E T E R S B U R G.

A Map of this province is to be seen in M. Kirillow's ATLAS, which Homann's heirs have copied, and in the year 1734, published under the title of *Ingermannlandia* or *Ingria*. In the large *Russian* ATLAS *Ingria* is included in the map of *Livonia*. It was called, formerly, *Ingarien*, from which the *Latin* name *Ingria* is derived. This province lies between the gulf of *Finmland*, *Carelia*, and *Russia* properly so called; and extends about thirty geographical miles in length, and its breadth is nearly equal to its length. This country is fertile, producing both corn and pasture; and abounds in all kinds of game, particularly elks.

Its principal rivers are the *Luga*, the *Sifla*, the *Cowassa*, and the *Newa* or *Neva*. The last has its source in the *Ladoga*-lake, and is a broad, rapid, and navigable river. It runs through *Petersburg*, where it divides itself into several branches or channels, particularly into the *Great* and *Little Newa*, and the *Newka*; and after a course of sixty *Wersts*, or forty *English* miles, discharges itself into the gulf of *Finmland*. There are some villages and several brick-kilns along the banks of the *Newa*; and opposite to the village of *Tosna* many sawing-mills are erected. On the *Ingria* side, it receives the small rivers of *Smolensko*, *Slowianka*, *Izora*, *Cormina*, *Tosna*, *Mga*, *Moika*, &c. and on that of *Carelia*, the rivulets *Ockta*, *Singawina*, *Rybnaia*, and *Zernowka* run into the *Newa*. The distance from *Narva* to *Petersburg* is seven Post-stages, or one hundred and forty-five *Wersts*.

Formerly, whilst the *Swedes* were in possession of *Ingria*, Lutheranism was the only religion professed in the country: but, at present, great numbers of *Russians*, who are of the *Greek* religion, are mixed with the old inhabitants.

In the year 1702, this province was recovered by the *Russians*, who were masters of it once before, even so early as the thirteenth century; but had been obliged to give it up to *Sweden*. It was confirm'd to *Russia* with their other conquests by the treaties of *Nyfladt* \* and *Abo*, as I have mentioned above. *Ingria*, at present constitutes the Government of *Petersburg*; and the most remarkable places in it are as follows.

\* See §. 12. p. 421, 422.

*Iwangorod*, or *John's castle*, is a strong fort on the river *Narwa*, close by the city of the same name. A particular District belongs to this castle; which was built in the year 1492, by the Great Duke *Iwan Basflowitz*. It stands on a rock, and is surrounded with a treble wall, and several round bastions. It derives its name from the founder of it, and is also called *Narwa* in the *Russian* language.

*Iamburg*, a small mean town with an ancient stone-castle on the river *Luga*. It gives name to the *Iamburg* District.

*Koporie* is a small town built on an eminence in a pleasant country. In 1612, it was taken by the *Swedes*, but recovered by the *Russians* in 1703.

*Kronstadt*, a good town and admirable fortification, stands on the island of *Retufari*, which is about a geographical mile in length and one third of a mile in breadth, and is called by the *Russians*, on account of its figure, *Kotlinnoi-Ostrow*, or the 'kettle-island.' *Kronstadt* lies in the gulph of *Finnland* about eight leagues, by water, from *Petersburg*, and near two leagues from the coast of *Ingria*. It was built by *Peter I.* who gave it the name of *Kronstadt*; and near it, the same enterprising prince erected the strong fort of *Kronschloß* in 1703, in the winter season. *Kronstadt* is pretty large and regular in those parts which were first built; but the original plan was not entirely executed. The streets are broad; but only some parts of them are paved. The palace of *Peter the Great*, which was built with stone, is now uninhabited, and, together with other handsome stone edifices which make a grand appearance on the *Ingria* side, is falling to decay. The other buildings in this town are but mean. Besides two principal and several dependent *Russian* churches, here is a small *Lutheran* church: But the *English* congregation is no longer in being. The inhabitants of *Kronstadt* are a medley of all nations, consisting of sailors, soldiers, and burghers; and amount to about 20,000 souls. The wall round the town has several great guns planted on it. It is likewise defended by the citadel and *Kronschloß* fort, which are at a small distance from the town on the *Ingria* side. *Kronstadt* has three harbours which are all large, safe, and commodious: But the fresh water in the harbour, is very detrimental to the ships. The harbour for merchantmen lies westward and is very convenient; but that for the ships of war, in which the greatest part of the *Russian* fleet is laid up, lies towards the east. The powder magazine is erected in the water in this harbour. The middle harbour is for other ships and yachts belonging to the Crown. This place *Peter the Great* intended to fit up for the repairing of his large men of war, by cutting a stone canal of an extraordinary breadth and depth with several docks in it. But this great work was not completed till the present reign. The canal alone is two *Wersts* and fifty fathoms in length; and from the outward sluice of the dock to the sea is three hundred and fifty-eight *Russian*, or four hundred and seventeen *English*, fathoms. The water in it is raised to the depth of twenty-four feet by means of two large

large sluices. On the surface of the water, the canal when full is one hundred feet, and at the bottom from fifty-four to sixty-seven, in breadth; the outward and inward walls of the canal and the mole are hewn out of a rock. At the end of the canal is a deep basin lined with stone, which intersects the former at right angles, and is designed for a reservoir of the water of the canal, when the docks are to be cleared of it. This great and useful work is not to be paralleled. At the first opening of the canal in the year 1752, it received the name of *Peter the first and the Great*; and at the mouth of it were erected two pyramids. On the north-side of the island *Retufari*, towards *Carelia*, the water is so shallow as to be navigable only for small boats.

*Kronschloß* is a strong castle built on a sand-bank in the sea, at the distance of a cannon shot from *Kronstadt* harbour, towards *Ingria*. It was erected by *Peter I.* as I observed above, for the defence of his conquests; and such improvements have been added to it since, that like *Kronstadt*, it is justly called the bulwark of *Petersburg*. It is built in the form of a round tower with three galleries one above another; and is well provided with cannon on every side. All the ships that sail to *Petersburg* are obliged to pass between this castle and *Kronstadt* within reach of the cannon from both sides.

*Oranienbaum* a fine palace situated on the continent, near the gulf of *Finnland*, and directly opposite to *Kronstadt*. It was built by Prince *Menzshikow*, and was afterwards converted into an hospital for seamen; but, at present, it is the summer residence of the Great Duke, to whom it belongs. Nothing can be more delightful than the garden adjoining to this seat.

*Peterhof* an imperial seat on the coast of *Ingria*, where the Empress spends the summer season. From the time of *Peter I.* no expence has been spared in adding to the charming situation of this palace all the embellishments of art. The house indeed cannot boast of any great regularity: But whoever views the elegance of the gardens which are adorned with fountains ejecting vast columns of water to an extraordinary height, with the grotto's, double cascades, pleasant groves, and many other admirable ornaments, will not think this place much inferior to the celebrated *Versailles*. The palace stands on a hill which is about sixty feet high; and on one side it has a most extensive prospect, diversified with noble objects; namely, the city of *Petersburg*, *Kronstadt*, and the sea. Among the summer houses belonging to this palace one distinguished by the name of *Mon plaisir*, i. e. 'my delight,' is particularly remarkable for its curious paintings.

*Strelen-Hof*, or *Strelna-Musa*, is an imperial palace built in the water. *Peter I.* employed many thousands of men in creating it; for he designed it for a superb palace, and a garden with a labyrinth and other embellishments; but his plan has not been completed to this day.

*Elisabeth-Hoff*, *Annen-Hoff*, and *Catharine-Hoff* are also imperial palaces or pleasure-houses on the river *Neva*. The last, which was the favourite residence



sidence of the Empress *Catharine*, consists properly of two edifices, and stands in a wood, on one of the finest spots in the neighbourhood of *Petersburg*: but its low situation exposes it to frequent inundations.

St. *PETERSBURG*, in Latin *Petropolis* or *Petroburgum*, is one of the capitals and imperial residences of the *Russian* Empire. The beginning and increase of this great city were very extraordinary; for till the year 1703, the only buildings on the spot where this flourishing metropolis now stands, were two small fishing huts. But *Peter the Great* having in that year taken the town of *Nyenschanze* seated on the river *Neva*, and made himself master of this country; its commodious situation for the *Baltic* trade determined him to build a town and fortrefs here. He immediately began to put his project in execution, calling the town by his own name.

At first it was designed only for a place of arms, to which all kinds of military stores might be conveniently brought from the interior parts of the Empire; so that by that means the war with *Sweden* might be carried on with more vigour and dispatch. At this time both the public edifices, and private houses were built only with timber. The dock and the town had no other fortifications than a mean rampart of earth; nor were the streets paved. In short, if the Czar had been then deprived of the place, the loss of it would not have been great. But the victory at *Pultawa* and the conquest of *Livonia* inspired *Peter I.* with hopes that he should be able to preserve his conquests, and to render *Petersburg* the capital of his Empire. His fondness for maritime affairs, a desire of perpetuating his name, and his aversion to *Moscow*, where in his younger years he had received so much ill treatment, were the chief motives that induced him to lay the foundation of this new seat of Empire; to which some add another inducement, namely, the pleasure of mortifying the *Russians*, who were so strongly attached to the city of *Moscow*.

Upon this *Peter I.* ordered the castle to be built with stone, the Admiralty to be walled in with the same materials, and all the buildings to be erected in a handsomer and more durable manner, and gardens to be laid out.

In the year 1714, he removed the Council to *Petersburg*, and handsome edifices were erected, in a straight line, for the public offices; which in 1718 were also translated hither. The principal families likewise were ordered to make this their residence, and build houses according to their abilities. But all this occasioned an irregularity in the buildings; for the situation of the town was not precisely laid out till the year 1721. The nobility and burghers had been directed to build their houses on the island of *Petersburg*; and not a few buildings both public and private were, accordingly, erected there. But afterwards the Emperor determined, that the whole town should stand on the island of *Wasili-Ostrow*. The streets were marked out; canals were dug; the island was to be fortified with fifty-seven bastions; and the

the nobility had their houses to begin a second time. However, the death of the Czar put a stop to the execution of this plan; and the stone-buildings which had been erected went to ruin.

The reluctance of the *Russian* Nobility to settle at *Petersburg* was no more than what was natural; as they can neither live so cheap nor so commodiously here as they did at *Moscow*. The country about *Petersburg* is none of the most fertile; so that provisions are brought to that city from a great distance, and must be paid for in ready money; which was no small grievance to the Nobility, who chiefly subsisted on the produce of their estates, but seldom abounded in money. Besides, *Moscow* seemed much fitter for the imperial seat; being in the centre of the Empire, from whence justice might be more easily administered, and the national revenue be received and disbursed with more conveniency and dispatch. *Petersburg*, besides other inconveniences, seemed to them to lie too near the *Swedish* frontiers. However, this city in the time of *Peter I.* became large and splendid; and, under his successors, received additional improvements; so that it is now ranked among the largest and most elegant cities in *Europe*.

*Petersburg* lies partly on the continent in *Ingria* and *Finnland* among thick woods, and partly on several islands formed by the branches of the *Neva*, in 59 degrees 57 minutes North Latitude. The low and swampy soil on which it stands has been considerably raised with trunks of trees, earth, and stone: Its situation, however, is pleasant, and the air salubrious. The city is about six *English* miles in length, and about as many in breadth; and has neither gates nor a wall; but is open, and situated on several islands.

The river *Neva* is about eight hundred paces broad, near *Petersburg*, but has not every where a proportionate depth of water; so that large merchant-ships are cleared at *Kronstadt*: but the men of war, built at *Petersburg*, are conveyed to *Kronstadt* by means of certain machines called *camels*. This river divides itself into two main branches, called the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and several smaller streams. Besides the *Neva*, the rivers *Fontanka* and *Moika* contribute to form the large and small islands on which the city stands; which is also watered by several canals. There is but one single bridge over the *Neva*, which is constructed with large flat-bottomed boats, and joins the dock-yard to *Basili-Ostrow*. The *Praams*, or lighters by which this bridge is supported, are laid across the river in spring so as to form a safe and convenient passage: But in autumn, before the frost begins, they are always removed. The only communication between the other islands, even in summer, is either in boats or barks which cross the water at stated times: but bridges are built over the *Moika* and *Fontanka*, and likewise over the canals.

The number of houses at *Petersburg* are computed at 8000, about six hundred of which are of stone; but the rest are built with timber, and far

the most part, in an irregular manner after the *Russian* taste. There are about twenty *Russian* churches in this city, besides four Lutheran churches for the *Germans*, and several Calvinistical for the *Swedes*, *Finnns*, *Germans*, and *French* Protestants; and other places of worship for the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Roman-Catholics*. In describing this city more particularly, we shall begin with

1. *Petersburg-island*, which is formed by the *Great* and *Little Neva* and the *Newka*. Under this name we also include the small island on which the fort, which is in the middle of the *Neva* and also of the city, stands. This fort is of an hexagonal form, and built with stone according to the modern improvements in fortification: It is planted with a great number of cannon, and additional works are continually made to it, which are all vaulted: the dungeons under it are chiefly made use of for prisons. In the middle of it stands an elegant church, where the remains of *Peter the Great*, his consort *Catharine*, and several other personages of that illustrious family are deposited in very magnificent mausoleums. In the high beautiful tower belonging to this church, the spire of which is covered with gilt copper, hangs a fine set of bells, with chimes made in *Holland*, which play twice in four-and-twenty hours at twelve of the clock. On one of the bastions of this fort facing the imperial palace, a flag is always hung out according to the custom in *Holland*; which, on state-holydays, is exchanged for a finer with the *Russian* Eagle on it. On the same bastion also, when the *Neva* is not frozen, a great gun is fired at the rising and setting of the sun, as a signal for the sailors. As this fort stands in the centre of the town, it is not only a defence, but a very great ornament to it. It serves also for a secure prison; and, on an exigency, may prove a convenient asylum to the Sovereign. On state-holydays the bastions and curtains of this fort are finely illuminated with lamps. On the island of *Petersburg*, properly so called, is a horn-work belonging to the castle. This island is above two leagues in circumference, and is extremely well peopled; but most of the houses are meanly built; and the five *Russian* churches, the shambles, inns, and corn-market have nothing that deserves notice. On this island is still to be seen the small wooden house which *Peter the Great* ordered to be built, and lived in, the first time he arrived on the spot where, at present, this superb city stands; and that it may remain as a lasting monument of that circumstance, it is inclosed within a stone-wall, and has been covered with a new roof. This island is separated, by the *Carvowka*, from another called the *Apothecaries-Island*, which is about five or six *English* miles in circumference, and contains about two hundred houses, besides the large physic garden where all kinds of *European* and *Asiatic* plants, roots and trees, with proper green-houses, &c. are to be seen. The other part of this island consists of a pleasant wood. From the island of *Old-Petersburg* you cross the *Little-Neva*, and come to



2. The island of *Wasli-Ostrow*, or 'Basil's Island,' which is the largest of all these islands. It is environed by the *Great* and *Little Neva*, and lies towards *Kronstadt*. The greatest part of it is covered with woods, and the rest with buildings. It has twelve broad streets running in a direct line, and of an uncommon length. They are called the *Lines*, and distinguished by numbers; they are also intersected at right angles by six cross streets; but are not paved. The vista's through these streets are very broad and beautiful at both extremities. The largest extends the whole length of the island as far as the galley-harbour; but the smallest is not so long. Several large canals are cut through this island, particularly at the places where the buildings stand; but most of them being now gone to decay, are little better than morasses. Opposite to *Petersburg* island, and adjoining to the hemp warehouse, are the Exchange, the Custom-house, the Pack-house, and the Key where the merchants ships unload. Contiguous to these are several large stone-buildings belonging to the Imperial Academy of Sciences, which was founded in 1724 by *Peter I.* and endowed with a yearly revenue of 24,912 *Rubels*. That Monarch also intended to erect an Academy of the Polite Arts; but as estimates of the necessary charges of such an institution have not yet been made, the present Empress *Elizabeth* was pleased to augment the above-mentioned endowment to 53,298 *Rubels*.

The Academy is divided into two classes; the first constituting the ACADEMY, properly so called, and the second the UNIVERSITY. The members of the former are employed only in finding out new inventions, or in improving the discoveries of others. They are properly stiled *Academici*; but are commonly called *Professores*. They are under no obligation to instruct youth, unless particular pupils are recommended to them, or they do it voluntarily for their own advantage. This Academy is again divided into four classes: Namely, 1. The Astronomical and Geographical Class. 2. The Physical Class, whose province it is to make improvements in Botany, Anatomy, and Chymistry. 3. The Physico-Mathematical Class, who study Mechanics, civil and military Architecture, and Experimental Philosophy. 4. The Higher Mathematical Class, who solve questions and problems proposed by the other Classes, and likewise such as are received from foreign parts. Besides the ten Ordinary Members, the Academy has ten foreign Extraordinary Members, to whom, for the trouble they are sometimes put to in elucidating difficult and important questions sent them by the Academy, a pension is allowed, which is not to exceed two hundred *Rubels*. Every Academician has an *Adjunctus*, who is under his care, and succeeds him in his place. The Academy is governed by a President, but in such a manner, that every thing is transacted under the auspices and direction of her Imperial Majesty. The President, at this time, is Count *Kirila Grigoriiewitsh Rasumowski* or *Cyrillus*

*Cyryllus Grogorides*, *Hettmann* of the *Cofaks*. By the Statutes of the Academy three solemn meetings are to be held every year; and at each of those public assemblies a *Latin* and a *Russian* dissertation are to be read.

The UNIVERSITY has its particular Professors who read lectures in the Sciences both in the *Latin* and *Russian* languages. Difference of religion does not disqualify a person for being a Professor; but they are enjoined not to inculcate to their pupils any thing contrary to the doctrines of the *Greek* church. The students are instructed in Poetry, *Greek* and *Latin*, Arithmetic, Drawing, Geometry and other branches of the Mathematics, civil and ecclesiastical History, Genealogy and Heraldry, Philosophy, and Antiquity: But every pupil is not instructed in all these several sciences; nor are youth of mean circumstances admitted into the University. In the year 1750, the number of students amounted to thirty; who were sent hither from different convents, and lived in one house together under the inspection of a Professor. The college designed for the Academy, which stands something lower, was destroyed by fire in 1747, and has not yet been rebuilt. In the buildings which belong to the Academy are 1. The Imperial library, which, as appears by the catalogue published in the year 1742, in three Volumes 8vo. contains 2699 *folio's*, 3410 *quarto's*, 8078 *octavo's* and *duodecimo's*; amounting in all to 14,187 volumes, besides 282 *Russian* manuscripts. 2. The fine Museum, containing natural and artificial curiosities, with a collection of physical, mathematical, and other instruments. 3. The Printing-house. 4. The Bookseller's shop. 5. The apartment for Book-binding. 6. Another for Letter-founding. 7. The Engraving apartment. 8. The Painting Academy. 9. The room where mathematical instruments are made. The famous copper-globe of *Gottorp*, which stood on the tower of the Academy, was almost totally consumed by fire, along with the tower, in 1747; but has been repaired at a great expence, and with admirable skill. You ascend a few steps, and enter into the Globe through a small door. Within stands a table with benches round it, on which twelve persons may conveniently sit, and be turned round with the celestial globe, the outside of which is the terrestrial globe. The diameter of it is eleven feet: It was brought hither, in 1714, from *Gottorp* at a great expence; and at present stands in a stone edifice by itself, having been first repaired and beautified, and rendered more accurate than before by new improvements.

The *Gymnasium* and *Seminarium* also belong to the University.

The next remarkable place in order is the *Theatrum Pyrotechnicum*, or the 'Fire-work Theatre,' which is built on piles in the *Neva*, opposite to the imperial Winter-Palace. Here is a very long stone-building appropriated for the State-colleges and offices. Just beyond these stands the spacious and elegant structure, which was formerly Prince *Menshikow's* palace, but now the Academy of the corps of Cadets of noble families,

to which considerable additions have been made; but it still wants a left wing.

By the advice of the Field-Marshal Count *Munich*, the Empress *Anne*, in the year 1731, issued out a proclamation inviting all the young nobility, and officers sons, of *Russia* and *Livonia* to repair to *Petersburg*, where they should be educated *gratis* according to their rank, &c. Pursuant to this ordinance, in the beginning of the year 1732, they made their appearance at *Petersburg*; and the above-mentioned palace was assigned for their dwelling. At that time the number of *Russian* Cadets on this foundation was to be two hundred and forty, and of the *Germans* one hundred and twenty; which number was then indeed complete, besides some supernumeraries. But it is now no longer so, especially with respect to *German* Cadets; as, of late years, they have been obliged to engage, That they will never quit the *Russian* dominions, nor enter into foreign service. Three, four, five, seven, eight or even ten *Germans* and *Russians* intermixed together lodge in one apartment, under the inspection of a subaltern, or one of the senior Cadets, as a monitor. At dinner they have three, and at supper two dishes served up; a captain and a lieutenant being always present. They form three companies, each of which ought to consist of one hundred and twenty persons. Their present Director or Governor in chief is Prince *Iussopow*. Next to him is the *Commaudeur*, who is a Lieutenant-Colonel; and under him is the Major. Every company has a Captain, a Lieutenant-Captain, a first and second Lieutenant, Ensign, Serjeant-major, two Serjeants, a *Capitaine d'Armée*, a Quarter-master, a Vice-Ensign, four Corporals, and eight Exempts. The subaltern officers are selected from among the Cadets; and sometimes even the field-officers. Formerly, they used to be employed during the whole summer-season in the exercise of arms: but at present they are exercised in *June* and part of *July*; and that not after the *Prussian* manner as heretofore, but according to the *Russian* discipline on foot. They are divided into Grenadiers, of which there are but few, and *Musqueteers*. Every four hours twelve men and three Grenadiers with a Serjeant, Corporal, and Exempt mount guard. They have two suits of clothes once in two years, one for every day, and the other to wear when they are on duty. Their uniform consists of green, and straw-coloured waite-coats; and the coats they wear on duty are embellished with a narrow gold-lace. They are also allowed two laced-hats, the one for duty and the other to wear every day; three half-upper shirts trimmed with lawn at the bosoms, three pair of ruffled sleeves, three cravats, three under-shirts, two pair of spatter-dashes once in two years, and every year three pair of shoes. Their hours for instruction are, in the morning, from seven to eleven, and in the afternoon from two to six; they are taught in classes the *Russian*, *German*, *French*, and *Latin* languages, with the following sciences, namely, Mathematics, History, Geography, Ethics, Politics,



Politics, Logic, Civil Law; and likewise dancing, fencing, riding, drawing, and other genteel exercises. According to the original plan, their education was to be intrusted to three Professors of Law, Mathematics, History and the *Russian* language; four *Adjuncti* or assistants, and twenty-four masters; but some of these places are now vacant. There are also a riding-master and his assistant, an equerry and four grooms, with a stud of seventy or eighty horses maintained on this foundation. The *Russian* Cadets have their particular church with two Priests, two Lecturers, one Deacon, and two Sextons; and the *Germans* have a Preacher, a Chanter, and a Sexton, with a church set apart for them; which is also frequented by many other *Lutherans* from the city. Divine Service is performed in both churches morning and evening; and the *Russian* Popes or Priests generally preach a sermon. None are admitted into this corps under twelve years of age; and every Cadet, according to the statutes, is to continue there five or six years: But several of them do not stay so long, and others continue longer in the Academy. Some of these young persons who are designed for civil employments are termed students, and are not instructed in any military exercises. The others, at their dismissal, are distributed among the regiments, the Cadets as Ensigns; the Corporals as second Lieutenants; the Serjeants as Serjeants-major; and the Ensigns as first Lieutenants. This corps is under the controul of the Council of State and the Senate; and the annual expence of this foundation amounts to 65,000 *Rubels*. The salary of the Governor in chief is 1000 *Rubels*; that of the Colonel 1500, and that of the Major 700 *Rubels*; and the rest in proportion. The Professors and Masters have apartments *gratis* in the house, to which a very fine garden also belongs.

Near this Academy is the bridge of boats over the *Neva*; and not far from the latter is the Academy for three hundred and sixty Sea-Cadets. Besides a *Russian* church, and the above-mentioned *Lutheran* church for the Cadets; there is also in the street called the *Third-Line* a *German* *Lutheran* church, which has the appearance of a private house, and the Preacher lives in it. On this island of *Basil* are likewise two *Russian* parish churches and a sugar-house. The galley-harbour lies a little lower down towards *Kronstadt*. In sailing up the *Neva* from *Kronstadt*, one sees on the *Wafili-Ostrow*, which lies to the left, a very long row of near fifty elegant stone-palaces, built by the *Russian* Nobility, in the *Italian* taste, extending itself on the bank of the river almost as far as the Cadet-Academy; but most of them are now empty and falling to decay. On the right-hand is

3. The Admiralty-Side, or Admiralty-Island, which is environed by the *Neva* and the river *Fontanka*; and from this island the bridge of boats is laid in the summer to *Wafili-Ostrow* or *Basil's* island. There is also a watch tower erected at the mouth of the *Neva* between these two islands. This is the most magnificent part of the city. A parchment-manufactory, the

Admiralty-

Admiralty-Victualing-Office, the Galley-dock where all the galleys are built, and the vast timber storehouses for ship-building lie on this island. Here are also a great number of handsome stone-houses and elegant palaces, along the river side, reaching almost to the bridge of boats. The *English* factory have their place of worship in this part, and behind it, is *New-Holland*, with the rope-walk. The Admiralty, or Dock-yard, is fortified with a wall, and five bastions planted with a great many guns; and all ships at coming into the harbour salute it. There are always some men of war on the stocks in this yard. The top of the tower belonging to the Admiralty is gilt in the same manner as that of the great church in the castle.

Near this place is the imperial Winter-Palace, which is a large square building of three stories high; but the architecture is not extraordinary. Behind it in a spacious area stands a noble equestrian statue of gilt brass, erected in honour of *Peter I.* Adjoining to this, along the banks of the *Neva*, are several other palaces, among which is the old imperial Winter-Palace, several elegant stone buildings, the new Play-house which is built with timber; and the delightful imperial Summer-Palace which is also of wood, but one story high, and looks only like a pleasure-house. Behind this palace are several stone-buildings for the officers, &c. belonging to the court. It has a very fine orangery, and a beautiful large garden ornamented with a most admirable grotto, fountains and other water-works, and a great number of valuable marble and alabaster statues brought from *Italy*; but they are not all of them equally well executed. Two of these statues which stand near the grotto, representing Religion and Faith, are greatly admired by the connoisseurs for the appearance of the faces through thin transparent veils, which seem to cover them. This garden is also famous for a pleasant grove of oaks; which has not its equal in all the *Russian* Empire. The dock affords a double vista, one to the *Russian* church of the Ascension; the other is terminated by the Convent of *Alexander Newski*. The elegant buildings on both sides of the river *Fontanka* also make a most beautiful appearance from hence. The streets that lie behind the Admiralty, and along the fields behind the imperial Summer-Palace, are very grand and magnificent; but these are equalled, if not excelled by the *Great* and *Little Morjskoi* and the *Million-Street*, which are embellished with the most superb buildings. At the end of the *Million-Street*, near the garden of the Summer-Palace, the Emperor has a curious dispensary. In this part also lie the imperial stables, and the dwellings of the Officers belonging to them; the church of the *Swedish Finns*; the *German* Lutherans church, dedicated to *St. Peter*, which is an elegant structure and the chief of the Protestant ecclesiastical buildings; the church of the *German* and *French* Calvinists; the shops, which to the number of one hundred lie in a straight line, and form a vista (no merchant being allowed to have a shop in his house) where all sorts of goods are to be sold; and lastly, two market-places full of shops, near which are the menagery, the park, and the elephant-yard where several of those animals are kept.

4. The *Moscovite-Side*, which is properly the city, is on the continent ; and part of it is very well built. In this quarter are the following places of note : The private dock ; the Court-Victualling-Office ; the foundery on the *Neva*, in which great numbers of mortars and cannon are cast ; the fire-work elaboratory ; the aqueduct which supplies the fountains in the Emperor's garden ; the *German* Lutheran church dedicated to St. *Anne* ; three *Russian* churches ; the pheasant-house ; the *Italian* Garden ; the *Muscovite Iemskoi* ; the Convent of St. *Alexander Newski*, of which a particular account shall be given in the sequel ; and the barracks for the horse-guards, together with the stables for their horses.

5. Lastly, on the *Wibourg-Side*, as it is called, are the following remarkable places : St. *Samson's* church, and the *Russian* and *German* burial-places ; the sugar-house ; the land and sea-hospital ; the hospital-church ; the beer-brewers quarter ; the *Dutch* beer brew-house ; a rope-walk ; the suburb called *Sloboda Kosajschia* ; a nursery of young oaks ; great *Ockta* ; a *Russian* church ; the ruins of a fort called *Nienschanz*, which was taken and demolished in 1703 by *Peter I.* and little *Ockta*.

There is a great variety of curious manufactures in this city ; as that of looking-glasses, gold and silver works, tapestry, &c. Its extensive commerce also adds a great importance to *Petersburg* ; for a vast number of ships from all maritime countries frequent this port, as the mart for buying all *Russian* commodities ; and find a vent for all the goods they import, and for which there is a demand in *Russia*.

The inhabitants of this large city, besides *Russians*, consist of all nations ; so that a person hears a great variety of languages, and sees an infinite diversity of fashions and customs at *Petersburg*. The burghers or citizens, properly so called, do not exceed two hundred ; but the town contains above 100,000 Souls. The splendor of the Court is imitated by the inhabitants in general ; though every thing belonging to apparel, and especially if it be made by foreign artificers is very dear ; and likewise furniture, and houses in a good situation bear, sometimes, a very high price in this city. On the other hand, provisions (wine, lemons, oranges and some other foreign particulars excepted) are sold here very cheap, and in winter are brought hither in great abundance from the distance of several hundred miles.

The morals of the inhabitants, as in all large cities, are very much corrupted and depraved. The suspicious vigilance of the *Russian* government renders it necessary for a stranger to be very circumspect in his words and behaviour : However foreigners, who are very numerous here, enjoy all possible liberty of conscience, as long as they do not say any thing against the *Greek* religion.

When a person intends to set out from hence in order to quit the country, he must be furnished with a Pass, and advertise his name and intention of travelling in the news-papers. No sooner is the winter set in, than near



3000 *Russians* repair with their sledges to *Petersburg*, where they stand in every street, and are so cheap and convenient that few go on foot even about the town. A sledge and a horse may be hired for ten *Copeiks* \* an hour; and within that time this carriage will go about seven or eight *English* miles, the horse continually galloping. Every *Ishvostiek*, or driver, is marked with a certain number on his back. It is sufficient for a stranger to know the place or the house where he is to go, and three or four *Russian* words; as *Stupai*, drive on; *Stoy*, stop; *Pramo*, straight on; *Na prava* to the right; *Na leva* to the left; and the driver will carry him safe. Most house-keepers have their own sledges and horses; and persons of distinction have also their postillion. In summer-time those who are not inclined to go on foot in this extensive city, either make use of their own carriage, which is almost of absolute necessity here, or else hire curricles or boats. The police of this city is good, and strictly executed. There are few places where so many great guns are fired, for diversion, as at *Petersburg*. A south-west wind in autumn frequently occasions an inundation here: those which happened in 1721, 1726, 1736, and 1752 did very great damage, to this city.

The convent of *St. Alexander Newski* lies about five *Wersts* from the castle, on the river *Neva*; and was built in honour of that pious Prince in the form of an eagle, but is not yet compleated. It contains above two hundred apartments. In the middle of the building stands a very large and beautiful church, which represents the eagle's body; the two towers, its neck and head; the spire, the Imperial Crown; and the two small churches on each side, the two wings. In this convent are deposited the pretended remains of that Saint, for which the present Empress *Elisabeth* ordered a silver shrine to be made, which lies on a superb monument covered with silver plates of a considerable thickness.

*Sarskoe-Selo* is a pleasant imperial palace about thirty *Wersts* from *Petersburg*, with a park and a garden. In the hermitage is a table, which by screws may be raised up into the apartment above, and let down again, at pleasure.

*Pofad* is a mean little town at the entrance of the *Ladoga* canal; near which, on a small island in the *Neva*, is another imperial palace.

*Schlusfelburg*, a strong fort, stands on a small island in the middle of the *Neva*, just where it runs out of the *Ladoga*-lake, and commands both shores. It was formerly called *Oreshek*, or *Oreckowitz*; and in the *Swedish* language, *Notteburg*, from the form of the island whereon it stands, which resembles a nut. But *Peter the Great* having made himself master of it in the year 1702, changed the name of this fort to *Schlusfelburg*; that monarch esteeming it the key [*Schlusfel*] of his conquests. Its walls are two fathoms and a half thick, and built in the old manner. In one angle of this fort is a small strong castle. The *Russians* have improved this fort both

\* About five-pence sterling.

within and without, and added new works to it. It has undergone many sieges; and when *Peter I.* took it in 1702, he ordered two medals to be struck in commemoration of his success. On one of them is the following inscription:

*Notteburgum nunc Schlüsselburgum post annos XC ab hoste recuperatum.*  
Actum d. 12 Octob. f. v. MDCCII.

‘*Notteburg*, now called *Schlüsselburg*, recovered from the enemy, after ‘ninety years possession, on the twelfth of *October* 1702.’

### III. The late acquisitions in *CARELIA*,

Or the GOVERNMENT of *WIBURG*.

**T**HIS province includes part of the Great Dutchy of *Finnland*, which was ceded to *Russia* by the *Swedes*, and consists of,

#### 1. Part of FINNLANDISH-CARELIA.

*Carelia* has often been a bone of contention between *Sweden* and *Russia*. In the year 1293, it fell under the *Swedish* dominion; but in 1338, part of it was yielded up to *Russia*. By the peace of *Nystadt* concluded in 1721, a still greater part of this country was resigned to the *Russians*; the western part only being left in the possession of the *Swedes*. After this *Sweden* was obliged to give up, by the treaty of *Abo*, the fort of *Frederickshamn* and *Wilmansstrand*, with part of the parish of *Pythis*, which lies on the other side of the eastern branch of the river *Kymmene*. In this part of *Carelia* are the following places of note.

*Susterbeck*, which lies on the gulf of *Finnland*, is remarkable both for the excellency, largeness, and contrivance of its manufactories of muskets, swords, and iron utensils. The greatest part of the arms of the *Russian* forces are cast or forged in this place.

*Wiborg*, by the *Finnlanders* called *Somelinde*, was formerly the capital of all *Carelia*, a Bishop's See, and the bulwark of *Sweden* against *Russia*. It is situated on the sea, and carries on a considerable trade. *Peter the Great* having taken this town by capitulation in the year 1710, improved its fortifications; which have ever since been kept in such good condition, that *Wiborg* may now be looked on as the bulwark of *Russia* against *Sweden*. This city was built in the year 1293, and has often suffered by fire.

*Wilmansstrand* stands on the *Saima*-lake, and is called in the *Finnish*-language *Lappi Wessi*, i. e. ‘*Lapp*-water.’ It had formerly the name of *Lapstrand* and was only a market-place; but was afterwards made a town: however, it has no magistrate of its own, but is dependent on *Frederickshamn*. It was also a considerable mart for tar, and the residence of a

*Swedish* Governor. On the twenty-third of *August* 1741, an obstinate battle was fought about an *English* mile from this town between 3000 *Swedes* and 16,000 *Russians*; but at last the former were obliged to yield to superiority of numbers. The *Russians*, having gained the victory, burnt *Willmannstrand*, which before was fortified with a moat and wall; but it has since been rebuilt.

*Frederickshamn*, in Latin *Frederici Portus*, lies on the gulf of *Fimmland*, on the spot where the town of *Wekelax*, which was burnt by the *Russians* in 1712, formerly stood. In the year 1723 this town was endowed with a charter, and governed by two burgomasters: it had also a good harbour, and a considerable trade in tar; and was fortified by a castle built in 1722. But in the last war between the *Swedes* and *Russians*, it was burnt to the ground and ceded to the latter. By the peace of *Nyfladt* the limits betwixt the *Swedish* and *Russian* *Carelia* were fixed near this place.

### 2. Part of KEXHOLM.

This country anciently belonged to *Russia*; and, indeed, was wrested from them, in 1293 and 1580, by the *Swedes*; but soon after recovered. The Czar *Waflei Iwanowitz Shuiski* promised it to King *Charles IX.* in consideration of the assistance he gave him; but the Czar did not keep his word. *Gustavus Adolphus* revenged this affront, and compelled the Czar *Michael Feoderowitz* to resign this country to him at the peace of *Stolbow*. In 1721, the southern and best part of it, together with the fortrefs of *Kexholm*, was restored to *Russia* by the treaty of *Nyfladt*. The most remarkable place in it is

*Kexholm* or *Calerogorod*, i. e. 'the fortrefs of *Carelia*,' which is a strong town; but the buildings are all of wood. It stands on two small islands at the influx of the river *Woxen* into the lake of *Ladoga*. The town is built on one of these islands, and the castle on the other.

### 3. A Part of SAWOLAX,

Yielded up to *Russia*, by the treaty of *Abo*, in 1743. It consists of the town of *Nyflot* and a district of two miles round it.

*Nyflot*, in Latin *Arx Nova*, and in the *Finnean*-language called *Sawotinna*, lies on the *Saima*-lake, and was built in 1745. Its castle which stands on a rock in a river near the town, and from which the latter derives its name, is extremely well fortified both by art and nature. In the year 1495, it baffled the attempts of *Russia*; but in 1714 was obliged to submit to their arms. It was restored to the *Swedes* at the peace of *Nyfladt*; but they were obliged to give it up to the *Russians* by the treaty of *Abo*.

In the next place, we are to give an account of

The PROVINCES which have always made a part of *RUSSIA*. These are as follows.



I. The G O V E R N M E N T of  
N O W O G R O D.

THIS Government includes the Dutchy of *Nowogrod*, or the island of Great *Nowogrod*, which the *Russians* conquered in the year 1478. In this country lies the *Osero-Ilmen*, or *Ilmen-lake*, from which the river *Wolcow* runs; and those great rivers called the *Wolga*, *Dneiper*, and the *Polish Dwina* have also their sources in this province. *Peter the Great* ordered a canal to be cut between the rivers *Twerza* and *Msta*, near the town of *Wischni Wolotshok*; so that, at present, there is a communication between the *Caspian-Sea*, (along the rivers *Wolga*, *Twerza*, and *Msta*,) and the *Ilmen-lake*; and from thence there is a passage for vessels along the river *Wolcow* into the *Ladoga-lake*; and from the latter down the *Neva* into the *Baltic*.

This Government includes the following Circles or Districts.

1. The Circle of NOWOGROD, called by the *Russians* *Nowogorodskoi Uiezd*. In this District are the following remarkable places.

*Nowogrod Weliki*, or *Great Nowogrod*, in Latin *Novogardia* or *Neapolis magna*, is a very ancient, large and celebrated city, situated on the river *Wolcow*, just where it runs out of the *Ilmen-lake*. It is a place of considerable trade, and the seat of a Governor. It was first built in the ninth century by the *Sclavonians*; and improved by *Rurik*, a *Waregerian* Prince, for his place of residence. *Nowogrod* was a famous staple of the *Hanse-towns* till 1494; and grew so powerful as to give occasion to a phrase, 'Can any body withstand God and *Nowogrod*?' But by frequently falling into the hands of the enemy, and the many conflagrations which from time to time have happened in this town, it is so far reduced, that scarce any marks of its former grandeur now remain. The churches and convents are the only objects worthy of notice; the rest of the town consisting of small wooden houses. It is however, an Archbishop's See. The fortifications consist of old walls and deep moats. The old *Russian* writers call this city *Holmgard*.

*St. Antony's* convent lies on the river *Wolcow* about two *Wersls* from *Nowogrod*, and is the principal monastery in the country. *St. Antony*, the founder of it died, and was buried here in 1147. Besides his monument, here is shewn a mill-stone on which, as his votaries gravely assert, he failed from *Rome* to this place, and some other curiosities of the same nature.

*Staraja Ladoga*, or old *Ladoga*, is a small town on the river *Wolcow* consisting of about fifty houses, with two churches and the ruins of a castle. It was, indeed, formerly a large city, and the first residence of *Rurik* Prince of *Russia*; but when the canal of *Ladoga* was made, it gradually fell to decay.

*Nowaia Ladoga*, or *New Ladoga*, lies between the lake of *Ladoga*, and the canal of that name which here joins the river *Wolcow*. This small town was peopled from *Old Ladoga* for the most part, and is the residence of a *Wairwode*.

*Wijsnei Wolotzkok*, a considerable village on the river *Twerza*, inhabited by sea-faring people. It was consumed by fire in the years 1748 and 1753. Here the *Twerza* and *Msla* are joined together by a canal.

*Staraia Ruffa*, a small town, but famous for its salt-works.

*Tikfinski Pofad*, a convent situated on the river *Tikfina*.

*Stolbowa*, a village near the *Tikfina*, where, in the year 1617, a peace was concluded betwixt *Ruffia* and *Sweden*.

*Olonetz*, a town on the river *Olonia*, to which belongs a large territory. In this town are an iron-work, and a forge.

*Petrowskoi Sawod*, an iron work.

*Powenetz*, a large village.

*Wygowskie Mednie Sawodi*, an iron work on the river *Wiig*.

*Porkow*, a town situated on the river *Sbelona*.

*Waldai*, a large market town.

*Cotilaw*, a post-stage. This is remarkable for being the place where the Great Duke *Peter Feodorowitz* lay ill of the small pox in 1745, and happily recovered of that dangerous distemper.

## 2. The PROVINCE of PLESKOW.

Places of note in this province are,

*Pfkow* or *Pleskow*, a strong provincial town which lies on the river *Welika*. It is a Bishop's See, and a place of great trade; and consequently is very populous. In the year 1581, it held out a siege against the *Poles*.

*Isborsk*, an ancient town with a castle of the same name.

*Petsherskoi*, a convent famous in history for having been frequently besieged by the *Livonian* knights. It is so called from the subterraneous passages near it, which, it is said, have a communication with those of *Kiew*.

*Kobylie* was formerly a town on the *Peipus*-lake, and on account of its having been often demolished it had the name of *Goroditshc*. Here are still some inhabitants.

*Gdow* a town in this neighbourhood.

*Ostrow*, a small town, stands on an island in the river *Welika*, and has a District belonging to it.

*Wyshgorod*, *Wrew*, *Wybor*, *Wolodimeritz* and *Dubkow* or *Dubiow*, small towns dependent on *Ostrow*.

*Opotsha*, a small town lying on an island in the river *Welika*, to which the little towns of *Krasnoi*, *Welie* and *Woronetsh* are subject.

*Rskewa Pustaiia*, or *Sarwolotshie*, is immediately dependant on *Pleskow*: This town stands on an island formed by the river *Welika*.

3. The Province of WELIKOLUK, called in the *Russian* language *Welikoluzkaia Provinciia*.

Places of note in this province are,

*Welikie Luki*, a provincial town, which gives title to the Archbithop of *Novogrod*.

*Cohn*, a little town on the river *Lowat*, to which a particular Distrikt belongs.

*Tropetz*, a town of good trade on the river *Toropa*.

4. The Province of TWER.

Remarkable places in this Province are,

*Twer*, the provincial town, which lies on both sides of the *Wolga*, at the influx of the river *Twerza*. It is a large town, having seventy churches and convents, and carries on a considerable trade in corn. It is at present an Archbithop's See; and formerly was the residence of several Great Dukes and Princes. Near the town stands a castle on an eminence.

*Torskok*, a pretty large town surrounded with walls on the river *Twerza*.

*Stariza*, *Subzarw*, and *Rsbewa Wolodomeroewa* are towns which lie on the banks of the *Wolga*.

*Ostafskow* and *Pogoreloe Goroditsche* were formerly towns, but now little better than villages.

*Krasnoi*, *Cholm*, and *Mikulin* on the river *Sboska* were also formerly considerable towns; particularly *Cholm*, which was the residence of the Sovereign of the country, who was descended from the royal family of *Twer*. A *Mikklin* of a particular line of the same family also resided here.

5. The Province of BELOSERO, called in the *Russian* language *Beloserskaia Provinciia*.

This Province formerly had its own Princes, being an appenage of the Great Ducal family. In this Province are, the lakes of *Belosero*, i. e. the 'White Lake,' which is fifty *Wersts* in length, *Woske-Osero*, and *Latska-Osero*.

In this province are the following places of note.

*Belosero*, the provincial town, lies on the west side of the lake of that name. It contains about five hundred dwellings, and eighteen churches. Here is a castle of a quadrangular form, inclosed with a wall of earth; and within which are two churches, the Archbithop's palace, the revenue offices, the *Wairwode's* house and other buildings. In the year of Christ 862, when *Sineus*, a *Waregerian* Prince, presided at *Belosero*, the city is said to have stood on the north side of the lake. About a *Werst* and a half from this city, on the banks of the river *Shopna*, lies *Iamskaia-Sloboda*, and a monastery.

*Slowianskoi* or *Slowinskoi Wolok*, is a small town or village.

*Tfabaronda*, a town lying on the west side of the lake *Woske Osero*.

*Ustiuszna Sbelesopolskaia* is a town on the river *Mologa*, in which is a considerable iron foundery.



II. The GOVERNMENT of  
*A R C H A N G E L,*

Called in the *Russian* Language

ARCHANGELAGORODSKAIA GUBERNIIA.

THIS Government includes a part of *Lapland*, of which country we have given a sufficient account in treating of *Sweden*. As great numbers of the people called *Samoiedes* live in this Government, they are not to be entirely passed over in silence. The *Samoiedes* inhabit the coast of the *Northern Ocean* and *Ice Sea*, both in *Europe* and *Asia*. The word *Samoiad* is said to signify 'Man-eater;' for it was erroneously imagined that these people devoured their deceased friends and the prisoners taken in war: but their custom of eating fish and the flesh of animals raw must have given occasion to this report. The *Samoiedes*, that live in the Government of *Archangel*, are quite separated from the rest of that nation; and, as it were, excluded from any intercourse with them: They have also a different language; however, as to religion and customs, they entirely correspond. They are very poor, simple, and undefining. Their stature is low; and their feet, especially those of the females, are remarkably small. Their tawny complexion, longish eyes, and puffed cheeks make them appear very disagreeable to strangers.

Their winter dress is made of rein-deer skin with the hairy side outwards; and generally the cap, coat, gloves, breeches, and stockings are sewed together; so that the whole suit makes but one piece. In summer they dress themselves in fish-skins; and instead of thread use the nerves of wild beasts cut into long filaments.

They all subsist by hunting and fishing; the flesh of rein-deer, bears, seals or sea-dogs, fowls, dried fish, and turneps being their usual food. The flesh they eat partly raw and partly boiled. Their hunting weapons are bows and arrows, and javelins, the points of which are of bone; they have also some darts bearded with iron. When they find it difficult to subsist in one place, they immediately remove to another. Their summer huts are made of nothing but the bark of birch-trees; but in winter they are covered with the skins of rein-deer. Their whole substance consists in tents, clothes, and rein-deer. Both Sexes among them wear the same kind of dress; and as they are equally disagreeable in their features, it is not an easy matter to distinguish one from the other.

Their marriages are attended with no other ceremony but merely an agreement between the parties. Most of them have but one wife; though polygamy is not prohibited among this people. The *Samoiedes*, like the *Ostjaks*, call their new-born children by the name of the first animal they meet; or if they first happen to meet a relation, he generally names the child.

Before they became subject to the *Russian* Government, the only punishment among them was, to sell the perpetrator of any heinous crime, as murder, &c. together with his whole family for slaves. But, at present, the *Russian* laws have been introduced in the principal places in this country.

They have very little knowledge of a Supreme Being; but pay their adorations to mishapen wooden images of men, beasts, fishes, birds, &c. They also worship the heads of beasts of prey, particularly those of bears, which they put up in the woods, and fervently pray to; that being an animal of which they are extremely afraid. Their Priests, whom they call *Shamams* or *Kodesniks*, are chosen from among such as are most advanced in years; and these they imagine can make known to them the will of their Gods, foretel future events, and perform all kinds of magical operations by their strange gestures and ridiculous grimaces.

Till the reign of the Czaar *Iwan Wafilowitz*, the only magistrate among them was the oldest man in the family or village, to whom the rest were subject. But in this Czaar's reign a person called *Anica Stroganow* sent his son to make discoveries in this country, who, on his return, made an ample report to the Government. The *Russians* were not a little fond of the fine furs it produced; and the Czaar immediately ordered several forts to be built in different parts of the country. The *Samoiedes* readily submitted to pay a tribute of furs, which was imposed on them. By degrees the habitable places were occupied by *Russian* colonies and Governors. These people made two attempts to shake off the *Russian* yoke, but were soon reduced. They have the finest furs in all the *Russian* Empire, which they dispose of to the *Russians* for trifles; and, when they meet with no success in hunting and fishing they exchange them for meal: They mix the meal with water, and eat it out of a kettle which always hangs over the fire.

The Circles of this Government are,

1. The Circle of KOLA which is a part of *Lapland*.

Places of note in this Circle are as follow.

*Kola* or *Kolski Ostrog* is a small place in the Latitude of  $68^{\circ}$ ,  $54'$ . It stands on the river *Kola*, which rises in a lake of the same name, falls into a small bay of the *Northern Ocean*, and forms a harbour in this place which is frequented every year by some foreign ships. Near *Kola* stands the convent of *Pesbenskoi*.

*Swiatoi Nofs*, i. e. 'The holy cape,' which projects into the *Northern Ocean*.  
Kandalax,

*Kandalax, Koweda, Keret, Kemskoi Ostrog, and Sumskoi Ostrog* are all mean towns situated near the *White Sea*.

2. The *DWINA* Circle, called by the Russians *Dwinskoi Uiezd*

Remarkable places in this Circle are,

*Archangel*, in the Russian language *Gorod Arkangelskoi*, in Latin *Archangelopolis*, the capital of this Government, and a famous commercial city, lies in  $64^{\circ} 34'$  North Latitude, on the river *Dwina*, about seventy-five *Wersts* from the *White Sea*. This city is about three *English* miles in length, and one in breadth, and the houses are all built with wood after the Russian manner, except the large *Goslinnoi Dwor*, or 'Merchants Exchange,' which is of stone. The citadel, where the Governor lives, is surrounded with a kind of wall made with large pieces of timber. This city is a Bishop's See. The *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* have their respective churches here. Provisions are sold very cheap at *Archangel*.

The foundation of its commerce was laid by the *English* in the reign of the Czar *Iwan Basilowitz* \*; and the advantages they reaped from the *Russia*-trade soon prompted other nations to put in for a share of it. But the gradual increase and prosperity of *Petersburg* has occasioned this city to decline in the same proportion. However, a post has been established between this town and *Petersburg* for the conveniency of trade.

*Nowa Dwinka* a fort, which stands on an island.

*Kolmogozzi*, a small town, which lies on an island in the *Dwina*, not far from *Archangel*. This place is remarkable for being the residence of *Anthony Ulric* Duke of *Brunswick*, and his august family.

*Kemi*, a small town, on the *White Sea*. Near it lies the island of *Seloweckoi*, on which stands the famous monastery where two celebrated saints are worshipped, and on that account much frequented by pilgrims. Here is also a state prison.

3. The Circle of *KEWROL*, called in the Russian language *Kewrolskoi Uiezd*.

In this District lies

*Kewrol*, a small town, with some other mean towns or villages.

4. The Circle of *MESEN*, called by the Russians *Mesenskoi Uiezd*, and in the imperial titles, *Udorien*. Its chief town is *Mesen*, situated on a river of the same name. It has also several other places of less note.

5. The Circle of *PUSTOSERSK*, in the Russian language *Pustoferskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies *Pustoferskoi Ostrog*, on the lake of *Pustofero*, which has a communication with the river *Petshora*. This country was formerly called *Ingorien*.

6. The Circle of *YARENSK*, in the Russian language *Iarenskoi Uiezd*.

The most remarkable place in this Circle is the small town of *Yarensk* which stands on the river *Wytshегда*.

\* In the year 1553. See note in p. 393.



7. The Circle of SOLWYTSHEGOTSK, called by the Russians *Soliwytshegotskoi Uiezd*.

Places of note in this Circle are,

*Solwytshegotskaia*, a town famous for its salt-works.

*Lalskoi Pofad*, a market-town on the river *Lala*, which falls into the *Lufa* about two *Wersts* from this place. It has three handsome churches built with stone, and two alms-houses, one of which has a good church. The number of houses in this town is about one thousand; and the inhabitants are almost all traders. Some villages belong to this place; and near it stands a monastery.

8. The Circle of USTIUG, called by the Russians *Ustiushkoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies the provincial town

*Ustiug Weliki*, near the conflux of the rivers *Suksona* and *Iug*. *Ustiug* formerly stood at the mouth of the latter, from which it derives its name. This city is about three *Wersts* and a half in length, and half a *Werst* in breadth, and, including the *Dymowskaia Sloboda*, which joins to it, contains twenty-three churches, besides five convents, and fifteen other churches about it. This city is an Archbishop's See. Its communication by water with *Archangel* and *Wologda* makes it so convenient for trade, that most of its inhabitants are merchants; and some of them are very wealthy. Those who go from *Archangel* to *Siberia*, generally pass through this city; and most of the merchants who travel from *Siberia* to *Russia* go by way of *Ustiug*. There is great plenty of fish taken in this place. Though *Ustiug* lies in Latitude 61 degrees 15 minutes; yet the fruits of the earth often come to maturity in this climate.

9. The Circle of WASHSK, by the Russians called *Wasbskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle are the following remarkable places.

*Pofad Wercowasbskoi*, a good market-town.

*Sbenkursk*, a town or village on the river *Waga*.

10. The Circle of TOTMA, or *Totemskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are,

*Totma*, a town consisting of about two hundred mean houses, and thirteen churches. Most of the inhabitants both of the town and *Sloboda*, or suburbs, are traders. Without the town are two convents, and eighteen salt-pits which are supplied by three saline springs. The salt is white and transparent, but not very pungent; and the taste of it is a little bitterish. *Totma* formerly stood on the river of the same name. It is under the jurisdiction of the province of *Wologda*.

*Nowoie Uffolie*, which stands on the river *Kowda*, has four salt-pits.

*Ledingskoie Uffolie*, seated on the river *Ledinga*, has five salt-pits, where both a very white and a brownish salt is made.

11. The Circle of WOLOGDA, or *Wologofskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle the places of note are,

*Wologda*, the provincial city, which stands on a river of the same name. It has seventeen hundred dwelling-houses, sixty-eight churches, two convents with four churches, and a German *Slobode*, or Suburb, though but two German families now live in it. To this city also belong two *Slobodes* or Suburbs inhabited by sledge-drivers, in which are two churches; besides a convent of Monks with four churches, and a *Slobode* with two churches. It is the See of an Archbishop. This city formerly was in a flourishing condition, and carried on a considerable trade: But its commerce now consists of hemp, hemp-seed, and matting made of the bark of lime-trees, which the inhabitants send to *Archangel* in a few large barges that belong to this town; and the *Russia*-leather and tallow they send by land to *Petersburg*. *Archangel* on the other hand supplies *Wologda* with all foreign commodities, which are sold here very cheap. Most of the inhabitants of this town are dealers. *Hollanders* and *Germans* have been settled here for a long time past; and upon the taking of *Narva*, the greatest part of the inhabitants, who were taken prisoners, were sent to this town, and by their industry provided so well for themselves, that it was with reluctance they went back. The *Archangel* post passes through this town, which is eight hundred *Wersts* distant from that city.

*Kubenskoie Selo*, a village on the lake *Rubenskoe*, which abounds with fish, and is sixty *Wersts* in length, and between five and fourteen in breadth. It belongs to the *Soltikow* family.

12. The Circle of GALITSH, called by the Russians *Galitskoi Uiezd*, formerly a principality.

The most remarkable places here are,

*Galitsb*, the principal town of this Circle.

*Sol Galitskkaia*, *Tskukloma*, *Sudai Kolobrew*, *Perfenew*, and *Unsha*, small towns in this Circle.

### III. The GOVERNMENT of

M O S C O W,

By the *Russians* called

M O S K O W S K A I A G U B E R N I I A.

**T**HIS Province is the best cultivated and most populous in the whole Empire, and may be called the garden of *Russia*, in the centre of which it lies.

The

The Circles included in this Government are the following.

1. The Circle of KOSTROMA.

In this District lies

*Kostroma*, a provincial town of a middling size, situated on the *Wolga*, and surrounded with a rampart of earth. Opposite to it on the right hand lies a suburb called *Slobode Gorodistske*; and near this, above the town, stands the stately monastery of *Iratskoi*, surrounded with stone-walls and ornamented with towers, battlements, &c.

The small towns of *Bui*, *Liubin* and *Shuia* are also in this Circle.

2. The Circle of YAROSLAWL, which was formerly a Principality.

In this District are the following remarkable towns.

*Yaroslavl*, a large and well built provincial town, which has a good trade, and is celebrated for its *Iuchte* or *Russia*-leather. The shops in the large Exchange make a very grand appearance, and are very well stocked both with home and foreign goods. Here is also a considerable manufacture for all kinds of linen, and flowered woollen stuffs, which belong to the *Satrapesnow*, who employs there 4000 of his vassals. The *Russian* church, which stands near the manufactory, is built in the *German* taste, and has few equal to it in this country. This town is famous in history for having been the residence of the unfortunate *Ernst Jobn*, Duke of *Courland*.

*Dofkekonié*, a town situated at the conflux of the *Tshukona* and the *Sheksna*.

*Romanow*, a town on the river *Wolga*.

3. The Circle of UGLITSH.

In this Circle lies

*Uglitsh*, a provincial town on the *Wolga*. It is of the middling size and has a wooden fort.

*Kashin*, a small town which stands on the *Wolga*.

4. The Circle of PERESLAW-SALESK, or the Dutchy of ROSTOW.

In this Circle are,

*Pereslaw Saleskoi*, a Provincial town situated in a pleasant country, and surrounded with hills.

*Rostow*, a little town on a small lake, in which the river *Weda* has its source. It is an Archbishop's See.

5. The Circle of YURIEW.

In this Circle lie

*Yuriew Polskoi*, a provincial town, situated on the river *Nerl*.

*Luch*, a small town.

6. The Circle of SUSDAL.

In this District lies

*Susdal*, a provincial city and a Bishop's See. *Peter* I. after divorcing his first wife *Eudoxia Feodorowna*, confined her in the convent of *St. Basil* in this town, which is a stately edifice.



7. The Circle of WOŁODIMER, which is a Dutchy.

The only remarkable place in this District is

*Wolodimer*, a provincial town, which stands on the river *Kliafwa*. It was formerly one of the seats of the Great Dukes.

8. The Circle of Moscow.

In this Circle lies

MOSKWA or *Moscow*, the ancient capital of the *Russian Empire*, and residence of the Czars, which is the largest city in *Europe*, and lies in a pleasant plain. It derives its name from the river *Moskwa*, which runs on the south side of it. *Moscow* was founded in the year 1156; at least it appears to have been a city in 1175. It lies in a round situation formed by the winding of the river; and the compass of the curve is about thirty-six *Wersts*, or twenty-four *English* miles. But its circuit is said to have been formerly twice as large. The number of the churches in this city is computed at 1600, among which are eleven cathedrals and two hundred and seventy-one parish churches: The rest either belong to convents, or may be looked on as private chapels. Near the churches are hung up several large bells, which are kept continually chiming. Many of the churches have gilt steeples and are magnificently decorated within: the vestments of the Priests are also very rich. The number of public edifices and areas, or places, at *Moscow* amount to forty-three.

The mean houses, indeed, are much more numerous than those that are well built; but the latter are daily increasing. The streets are broad and well laid out; but as only a part of them is paved, they are very dirty. This city is divided into four Circles, which lie one within another.

The interior Circle, or the *Kremlin*, which signifies a fortress, contains the following remarkable buildings; namely, the old imperial palace, pleasure-house, and stables; a victualing-house; the palace which formerly belonged to the Patriarch; nine cathedrals; five convents; four parish-churches; the public colleges and other offices; and the arsenal. All the churches in the *Kremlin* have beautiful spires; most of them being gilt with pure gold, or covered with silver. The architecture is in the old or *Gothic* taste; but the inside of the churches is richly ornamented; and the pictures of the Saints are decorated with gold, silver, and precious stones. In the cathedral called *Sobor*, which has no less than nine towers or cupolas covered with copper double gilt, is a silver branch with forty-eight lights, which is said to weigh 2800 pounds. Here are deposited in silver shrines the remains of three Archbishops, namely, *Peter*, *Philip*, and *Jonas*; and in a golden box is kept a robe brought from *Persia*, which is here looked upon as the identical garment which our Saviour wore. Many other reliques of great value, to be seen in this cathedral, I omit. The remains of the Sovereigns of the *Russian Empire* and their male descendants are interred in *St. Michael's* church; and those of their Consorts, and the Princesses, are deposited

posited in the convent of *Ishudow*. In the great tower of the church of *Iwan Weliki*, which is two hundred and sixty-two *English* feet high, are eighty-six bells of different sizes; and the last which was hung up there weighs about 500,000 pounds or 2500 tons. The height and diameter of it being equal, are eighteen *Rhinland* feet and a half; but this bell was very much damaged by a fall. All these structures, which are in the *Kremlin*, or interior part of the city, are both lofty and spacious, and built with stone. This Circle is three hundred fathoms in diameter. It is surrounded with very high and thick walls flanked with six towers, and planted with cannon, and with deep moats and ramparts. On one side it is watered by the *Moskwa*, on the second by the *Neglina*; and on the third lies *Kitai-gorod*. From this Circle you pass over a stately stone-bridge into

The second Circle of the city, which is called *Kitai-gorod*, or the *Chinese* town. In this Circle are five streets, two cathedrals, eighteen parish churches, four convents, thirteen noblemens houses, and nine public edifices, and places or areas. These are 1. The famous chief dispensary, which is adorned with rich porcelain gallipots and other vessels decorated with the Imperial arms; and from this place the whole Empire is supplied with medicines. 2. The Mint, which is a superb structure. 3. A magazine or warehouse, where all goods are brought before they have paid duty. 4. The Custom-house. 5. The Ambassador's palace, which is now converted into a silk manufactory. 6. A Printing-house. 7. A hall for a Court of Judicature. 8. The Physic Garden. 9. The Exchange, called *Gostinnoi Dwor*, in which are about 6000 handsome shops. This is the scene of trade, and where all commercial affairs are transacted; particularly what relates to the trade with *China*, so that it swarms with merchants and spectators. This part of the city is fortified with a pretty high wall, which is strengthened with twelve round and quadrangular towers, and strong bulwarks. One side of this Circle lies towards fort *Kremlin*; the second is surrounded by the river *Moskwa*; the third by that of *Neglina*; and the fourth is inclosed by a wall which runs from the *Neglina* to the *Moskwa*.

The third Circle which surrounds the former, is *Belgorod*, or the 'White town,' so called from a white wall with which it is encompassed: It is also called the Czar's Town. The *Neglina* runs through this part of the city from South to North. In this Circle several *Kuces*, *Boiars*, *Merchants* and tradesmen reside; but there are also many dirty spots in this quarter, and the houses for the most part are very mean. It includes eleven convents, seven abbeys, seventy-six parish-churches, and nine public edifices and areas; namely, two palaces, a cannon-foundery, two market-places, one brew-house, one magazine of provisions, the salt-fish harbour, and the *Basil-Garden*. At the timber market are sold new wooden houses, which may be taken to pieces, and put together again where the purchaser pleases.

The fourth Circle is called *Semlanogorod*, i. e. 'a town surrounded with ramparts of earth'. This Circle incloses the three preceding parts; and

its ramparts include an area of eighteen or nineteen *Wersts*. The entrance through these ramparts was formerly by thirty-four gates of timber and two of stone. But of these only the two last are standing at present. Over one of these gates is a Mathematical school and an Observatory. This Circle contains two convents, one hundred and three parish churches, an imperial stable, a cloth-manufactory, an artillery-arsenal, a magazine for provisions, and a mint.

Round these principal parts of the city lie the vast suburbs belonging to it, in which are ten convents and sixty parish churches. These all look like the villages in other parts of this country, except the *German* quarter called *Ina-semjka Sloboda* or *Nemetska Sloboda*; which is both the largest and handsomest, and contains two *Lutheran* churches, a grammar school, a *Calvinist* church and a *Popish* church. This suburb lies towards the East, on the river *Yausa*. To the West of it lies a palace called *Annenhof*, with a good garden; and towards the North is a large and stately hospital. Farther to the West of the suburb stands the palace of the Empress *Elisabeth*, which is called *Pokrouske*; and westward of that, the old castle of *Preobraschenskoi*; and still nearer the city are an artillery arsenal, a magazine for bombs and grenades, another for forage and provisions, and the hawk-mews. From the palaces of *Semenowskoi*, *Ismailow*, and the above-mentioned castle of *Preobraschenskoi*, the three regiments of guards derive their names, who are called the *Preobraschenskoi*, the *Semenowskoi*, and *Ismailow* regiments.

The whole number of the inhabitants of this vast city are supposed to be about 150,000\*; these consist of statesmen, noble families and their servants, soldiers, merchants, mechanics, sledge-drivers and carriers, priests, monks, and servants belonging to the churches, labourers, &c.

The police of this city is on very laudable footing. Since the building of *Petersburg*, and its being made the seat of the Empire, *Moscow* is greatly declined. In the year 1755, an University, and two *Gymnasia* or Seminaries were founded here. *Moscow* has often suffered by fires; and in the years 1737, 1748, and 1752, a considerable part of it was reduced to ashes; especially by the last fire, which consumed above half the city, together with the noble dispensary mentioned above, and the *Czarina's* stables. But the houses have always been soon rebuilt after such a calamity, as they are for the most part of very mean materials. The gardens hereabouts yield variety of fruit and are particularly famous for the transparent apple called by the Russians *Nalivi*.

In the Circle of *Moscow* are also the following places of note.

*Troitz*, or *Troiskoi monastir*, i. e. 'The convent of the Holy Trinity.' This is the largest convent, and the best endowed in all *Russia*; the number of

\* Notwithstanding the vast extent of *Moscow*, which our author calls the largest city in *Europe*, it appears by this that it is vastly inferior to *London*; the number of inhabitants in the latter being six times as many, as are computed to be in the former.



peasants who are its vassals being no less than 20,000. It lies at the distance of sixty *Wersts* from *Moscow*, and is built in a quadrangular form, in the old *Gothic* taste. It is also inclosed with strong walls, ramparts, and moats, and is always garrisoned by a company of soldiers. The convent itself is a spacious, lofty, and handsome structure. The great church is very splendid, and has a fine tower in which are several valuable bells. Besides the principal church, there are nine other churches and a grammar school within the inclosure of this convent. The number of monks who reside here is said to be about six hundred. This was the place where *Peter I.* took shelter after he had narrowly escaped the hands of the *Strelitzes*, who had been spirited up against him by his half-sister *Sophia*. It has been an ancient custom for the sovereign of the *Russian* Empire to go a pilgrimage to this place. Here are several dead bodies which, from natural causes, remain undecayed. Near this convent lies a small town.

*Kolonna*, a small town; which, however, is a Bishop's See.

The towns of *Klin*, *Swenigorod*, *Mosaisk*, *Borisow*, *Wercia*, *Borowesk*, *Serpucow*, *Yaroslawetz*, *Obolensk*, *Taruska*, and *Roskira* also lie in this Circle.

#### 9. The Circle of PERESLAW-RIASANSKOI.

In this Circle are,

*Pereflaw Riasanskoi*, a provincial town, on the river *Oka*, which first began to flourish after the destruction of the town of *Resan*. An Archbishop's See is erected here.

*Resan*, which was formerly a noted town; but is now very much decayed; having been destroyed by the *Tartars* in the year 1568. This ruinous town lies on the river *Oka*.

*Prousk* and *Micailow*, are small towns on the banks of the river *Prona*.

#### 10. The Circle of KALUGA.

In this Circle lies

*Kaluga*, a provincial town, which stands on the river *Oka*.

*Worotinsk*, *Peremysbl*, *Rozelsk*, *Likwin*, *Meshtshowsk*, and *Serpetsk* are small towns in this Circle.

#### 11. The Circle of TULA.

In this District are,

*Tula*, a fine provincial and trading city, situated on the river *Upa*. It contains one hundred and forty-four churches and convents; and great quantities of fire arms and *Russia*-leather are made in this town.

*Diedilow* and *Alexin*, two small towns or villages.

IV. The G O V E R N M E N T of  
N I S H N E I - N O V O G R O D.

**T**HIS Government is inhabited by the following tribes; namely, The *Mordunians*, *Morduans* or *Morduats*, whose language is said very much to resemble the *Finnlandish* dialect.

The *Tsheremissians*, distinguished into the *Logowoi*, who inhabit the plain on the left side of the *Wolga*; and the *Nagornoi* who live among the mountains on the right side of that river. The former belong to this Government; but the greatest part of the latter to that of *Kasan*. They seem to have no religion but that of Nature. Their chief sacrificing priest they call *Yugtush*; and under him is another distinguished by the appellation of *Mushan*. Their language is neither that of the *Tartars* nor *Russians*. Many of these people have been baptized.

The *Tshuwashians*, who live dispersed in this and the *Kasan* Government, and are a numerous tribe. In the district of *Tshebaxar* they exceed 18,000 souls; in that of *Kusmademianski* they are above 10,000 in number: in the territory of *Sirilsgorod* they amount at least to 12,000, and in that of *Swyask* to 60,000; but in the District of *Kokshaisk* they do not exceed 400 souls. They worship, as they say, one God, whom they call *Tora*; they also look upon the Sun as a kind of Divinity, and pay their adoration to that luminary. They have several other inferior or subordinate Deities which, they say, hold the same rank with the saints of the *Russians*. Every village has its own idol, which is erected in a quadrangular consecrated place inclosed with pallisades. They perform their devotions to it near a fire; where they offer a sheep to the idol, and hang up the skin for a trophy in honour of it. The person who performs this sacrifice, and to whom they have recourse in every difficulty, is stiled *Yumasse*; and both sexes are capable of this religious office. Great numbers of these Pagans have been baptized; and in all the *Russian* towns, in the Districts where they live, schools have been erected for the instruction of their youth in the principals of the Christian religion, in order to qualify them to be missionaries among their own tribe.

This GOVERNMENT includes the following Circles.

1. The Circle of NISHNEI-NOVOGROD, or *Nishneinowogrodskoi Uiezd*, which is also a Dutchy.

In this Circle lies

*Nishnei-Novogrod*, i. e. 'Lower-Novogrod,' a large provincial city which stands on the *Wolga*, at the influx of the river *Oka*. It was built in the year 1222 by the Great Duke *Jurii*, or *George*, *Wsewoloditsh*; and as it was

the

the appenage and place of residence of the petty *Russian* Princes, many of them lie buried here. In this city are two cathedrals; twenty-eight parish-churches, most of which are built with stone; and five convents. It is an Archbishop's See; and has a castle surrounded with stone walls. The trade of this town is so considerable, that the shops make a very handsome appearance; being richly furnished with all kind of foreign and home goods. In the great fire that broke out here in 1715, some thousands of the inhabitants lost their lives.

2. The Circle of BALACNA, in the *Russian* language *Balaconskoi Uiezd*. In this Circle are,

*Balacna*, a very long town but meanly built. It stands on the *Wolga*, and is famous for its salt-springs, which afford a constant supply to fifty boiling houses.

*Yuriew Powolski*, a small town on the *Wolga*, near which, on the bank of the river, are to be seen the ruins of a large castle that was built with brick.

3. The Circle of ARSAMAS, or *Arzamaskoi Uiezd*, in which the only place of note is

*Arsanas*, the provincial city.

4. The Circle of KASIMOW, in which lie

*Kasimow* and *Murom*, two small towns on the river *Oka*.

## V. The GOVERNMENT of

## S M O L E N S K.

THIS Government contains *White Russia*, properly so called; and was ceded by *Poland* to *Russia*, as a Dutchy, by the treaty of *Andrussow*, which was concluded in 1667, and confirmed in the year 1686.

The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Smolensk*, a large and well fortified town, on the *Dnieper*. It is the residence of the Governor, and a Bishop's See; and its commerce is very considerable. It is famous in history, as the subject of many disputes between the *Poles* and *Russians*; during which it was often besieged and taken by both parties.

*Andrussow*, a village lying between *Smolensk* and the town of *Mstislaw*, close by the river *Harodna*. This place is famous only for the treaty of peace concluded here in 1667 between *Russia* and *Poland*.

*Dogorobus*, a small place seated on the *Dnieper*.

*Wiasna*, a small town on a river of the same name.



VI. The GOVERNMENT of *KIEW*.

THIS Government is a part of *Little Russia*, and is inhabited by the *Cofaks*; which word signifies irregular troops of horse. The *Cofaks* are divided into

The EUROPEAN *Cofaks*; and these are

1. The *Zaporog Cofaks*; who live below the cataract of the *Dnieper*, some on the side next to *Russia*, and others on the opposite side of the river. The latter are subdivided into *Sietshian* or *Lower Cofaks*, and *Upper Cofaks*. Most of these are subject to the *Russians*.

2. The *Bielogorod-Cofaks*, and

3. A part of the *Don-Cofaks*. Both these are under the *Russian* Government.

The ASIATIC *Cofaks*, including,

1. The rest of the *Don-Cofaks*.

2. The *Grebin-Cofaks*.

3. The *Yaik-Cofaks*. All these are subject to *Russia*.

4. The *Casatshia-Horda*, who were formerly an independent people; but are now, partly, subject to *Can-Taisba*.

It appears from *Constantine Porphyrogenetes*, that the *Cofaks* were known by that name so early as the year of *Christ* 948. They lived on mount *Caucasus*, in the place now called *Cabardey*; and were reduced under the *Russian* dominion in 1021, by Prince *Mstislaw*. The *Polish* writers represent the *Cofaks* as a very strange set of people; but this, in a great measure, must be imputed to national prejudice. They reproach them in particular by calling them a mixed rabble. It is true that, from time to time, many *Russians*, *Poles*, &c. who could not live at home, have been admitted among the *Cofaks*: But the latter, abstracted from these fugitives, must have been an ancient and a well-governed nation.

The *Zaporog-Cofaks*, in the beginning of the sixteenth century, fixed their habitations on the spacious plains that lie along the banks of the *Dnieper*. Ever since the thirteenth century, they had suffered very greatly from the ravages of the *Tartars*, for which they afterwards took ample revenge. The *Poles*, being sensible how useful the *Cofaks* might be to defend them against the incursions of the *Tartars*, and even of the *Russians*, proposed an alliance to them. In the year 1562 they solemnly took them under their protection, and engaged to pay them a yearly subsidy; in return for which the *Cofaks* were to keep on foot a good body of troops for the defence of the *Polish* dominions. In order to bind them more strongly by ties of interest, the *Poles* gave up to them the whole country lying between the

the

the rivers *Dnieper* and *Niefter* and the borders of *Tartary*. This fruitful tract of land the *Cofaks* fo industriouſly cultivated, that in a ſhort time it was interſperſed with large towns and handſome villages. Beſides, they continually haraſſed the *Turks*, and did them all poſſible damage by their incuſions; and to prevent the latter from purſuing them, or making reprisals, they ſeized on ſeveral ſmall iſlands in the *Dnieper*, where they kept their magazines, &c. The *Hettman* or General of the *Cofaks* was not in the leaſt ſubordinate to the Field-Maſhal of *Poland*; but acted in concert with the latter as an ally of that Republic, and not as a ſubject. But this alliance, though it was ſo advantageous both to the *Poles* and *Cofaks*, did not long ſubſiſt. The former envied the latter the fine country that they were in poſſeſſion of, and made an attempt to bring them into ſubjection. Upon this, the *Cofaks* fired with indignation, had recourſe to arms, and applied both to *Ruſſia*, and the *Ottoman Porte* for protection. A very bloody war enſued, which, in the ſixteenth and ſeventeenth century, was, from time to time, renewed with the utmoſt fury and animoſity. In the years 1587, 1596, 1630, 1637, and 1638, the *Poles* were, for the moſt part, victorious. And though the *Cofaks*, in the year 1648, gained conſiderable advantages over the *Poles*; yet, in the following year, they made overtures for an accommodation; in which, however, they not only preſerved their old immunities, but acquired new privileges. The reſult of all was, that theſe *Cofaks* remained under the protection of *Ruſſia*; and as their former country was all laid waſte in the late wars, they ſettled in the *Ruſſian Ukraine*, upon receiving formal aſſurances from the Court of *Ruſſia*, that no alteration ſhould be made in their political conſtitution; and that no taxes or impoſts ſhould be laid on them. On the other hand, the *Cofaks* were always to keep in readineſs a good body of troops for the ſervice of *Ruſſia*. But *Mazeppa* their *Hettman* or Chief, in the year 1708, went over from the *Ruſſians* to the *Swedes*; upon which *Peter I.* determined to prevent ſuch revolts for the future. To this end after the battle of *Pultawa*, he ſent a ſtrong detachment into the above-mentioned little iſlands in the *Dnieper*, whither the *Cofaks* had fled, with their wives and children, and all their effects, and ordered them all without diſtinction to be put to the ſword, and the plunder to be diſtributed among the ſoldiers. Beſides, that monarch ſent a great number of his men into their country, and cauſed many thouſands of the *Cofaks* to be carried to the coaſt of the *Baltic*, where they were put to all manner of hard labour; and by that means, he in a manner, exterminated them. Upon the death of their laſt *Hettman*, which happened in 1722, that office was aboliſhed: but it was reſtored again in 1750, when they elected for their *Hettman* Count *Kirila Grigoriewitſh Raſumowſky*, Privy Counſellor of the *Ruſſian Empire*, preſident of the Academy of Sciences, and Lieutenant-Colonel of the *Iſmailow*-regiment of life-guards. This election being publicly declared and confirmed by the reigning Empreſs *Elizabeth* on the twenty-

fourth of *April* O. S. his promotion was made public by the Senate at *Petersburg*, by an instrument bearing date the twelfth of *June* following. The country of these *Cofaks* is commonly called the *Ocraine* or *Ukraine*, which word properly signifies a frontier; for it lies on the borders of *Russia*, *Poland*, *Little Tartary*, and *Turkey*. By virtue of the last treaty, concluded in 1693, between *Russia* and *Poland*, the latter remains in possession of all that part of the *Ukraine* that lies on the west side of the *Dnieper*, which is now but indifferently cultivated. The country on the east side of that river inhabited by the *Cofaks* is in a much better condition, and extends about sixty geographical or *German* miles in length, and as many in breadth. It is one continued fertile plain, watered by a great number of fine rivers, and diversified with pleasant woods. It produces all kinds of grain, pulse, tobacco, honey, and wax in such quantities, as to supply a great part of the *Russian* Empire with those commodities. The pastures are extremely rich and succulent, and the cattle of an extraordinary size; the rivers also abound with excellent fish. This fine country, however, is very much infested by locusts, which are a great plague to the inhabitants. Most of the houses in the *Ukraine* are built with wood after the *Russian* manner. The *Cofaks*, as to their persons, are tall, well made, generally hawk-nosed, and of a very good mien. They are vigorous, hardy, brave, and very jealous of their liberty; fickle and wavering, but sociable, chearful and sprightly. Their forces entirely consist of cavalry. Their dialect is a mixture of the *Polish* and *Russian* languages; but the latter is most predominant. They profess the *Greek* religion; but there are also some *Roman* Catholics and Protestants among them. They are a very powerful people. Every town, with the district belonging to it, is governed by an officer called *Ottomann*, or *Attamann*.

The *Don-Cofaks*, who live on the banks of the river *Don*, very much resemble those we have been describing. In 1549, when the Czaar *Iwan Basilowitz* was Emperor of *Russia*, they voluntarily put themselves under his protection; and are, at present, nearly on an equal footing with the other *Russian* subjects. These *Cofaks* have a great number of towns and villages along the banks of the *Don*: But the scarcity of fresh water and wood in many places, prevents them from extending themselves farther up the country. They subsist chiefly by grazing and agriculture, and occasionally by robbing and plundering, for which they want neither capacity nor inclination. Every town is governed by a magistrate, which they call *Tamann*; and the *Tamanns* with their towns, are under the jurisdiction of two *Ottomanns*, who reside at *Tsherkasky*. The troops of these *Cofaks* likewise consist entirely of cavalry. Every town and village in this country is fortified and surrounded with pallisadoes, by way of security against the incursions of the *Calmucks* and *Kuban-Tartars*, with whom they are always at war. The *Cofaks*, in general, are of great service to garrison-towns



or defend them, and to pursue an enemy; but are not so good at regular attacks.

The *Sietsh-Cofaks* have their particular *Hettman*; and are also known by the name of *Haidamacks*. They live in the *Russian*, *Polish*, and *Turkish* dominions along the banks of the *Dnieper*.

The *Yaik-Cofaks* live on the south side of the river *Yaik*; and on the success of the *Russian* arms in the kingdom of *Astracan*, voluntarily submitted to them. In height of stature they very much resemble the other *Cofaks*; though by their boorish manner of living, and inter-marriages with the *Tartars*, they have not the shape and air peculiar to the rest of their countrymen: However, they resemble them in their natural dispositions and customs. Their chief occupations are agriculture, fishing, and feeding cattle; and, like the other tribes, they seldom let slip an opportunity of purloining from their neighbours. Their continual wars with the *Kara-Kalpacs* and the *Kasatshia-Horda*, lay them under a necessity of keeping their towns and villages in a defensible state. They are, indeed, subject to *Russian Waiwodes*, to whom they are every year obliged to pay tribute in corn, wax, honey, and cattle: But they have also their particular Chiefs, who govern them according to their ancient customs. The greatest part of the *Yaik-Cofaks*, it is true, profess the *Greek* religion; but a great many reliques of *Mahometanism* and *Paganism* are still to be found among them. They make excellent soldiers, being remarkable for hardiness and courage; and they are not so turbulent as the other *Cofaks*. They live in an entire peace, and even have a commercial intercourse, with the *Calmucks*, &c.

The Government of **KIEW** consists of the following Circles.

1. The Circle of **STARODUB**.

In this District are,

*Starodub*, one of the four guarantee-towns, which was the first yielded as a security to the *Russians* by the *Poles*. This town obtained the privileges of a royal free city from the Kings of *Poland*.

*Roslavl*, a town of the middling-size, on the river *Belisna*.

*Potshep*, a small town on the river *Suda*.

2. The Circle of **SEVERIEN**, or **NESHIN**, formerly a *Dutchy*, was ceded by the *Poles* to the *Russians*, by the treaty of *Andrussow*, in the year 1667.

Places of note in this Circle are,

*Nowgorod Sewerski*, in Latin *Novogardia*, or *Ncapolis Severiæ*, a small town on the river *Desna*.

*Baturin*, a town which, before it was destroyed by the *Russians*, stood on a small eminence near the river *Sem*, and was the seat of a *Cofak Hettmann*. In the year 1708, it was carried, without any great loss, by the *Russians* sword in hand; who after plundering it, and putting all the inhabitants to the sword, set fire to the town and reduced it to ashes. The

castle is now handsomely rebuilt for the new *Hettmann*; and preparations are making also for repairing the town.

*Glucow*, a city, where formerly the Chiefs or Governors of the country resided.

*Konotop*, a small town.

*Neskin* or *Nieshin*, one of the four guarantee-towns. It stands on the river *Uda*, and when, it belonged to the *Poles*, was a royal free town.

3. The Circle of *Tshernigow* was formerly a Dutchy, and, like the preceding, ceded by the *Poles* to the *Russians* by the treaty of *Andrussow*.

Remarkable places in this Circle are,

*Tshernigow*, a city on the river *Desna*, and the See of an Archbishop, who is also Archbishop of *Nowgorod Sewerski*.

*Lubitsch*, a small town.

4. The Circle of *Kiew*.

In this District lies

*Kiew*, or *Kiow*, the capital of this Government, which stands on the *Dnieper*. This city is said to owe its beginning to *Kius* a *Sclavonian* Prince, and, according to the *Polish* writers, was built in the year 430; but this account is not to be depended upon. It was, at first, the residence of *Skold* and *Dir*, two famous *Waregerian* Chiefs: But in the year 1037, the Great Duke *Iaroslav* declared it the capital of all *Russia*; and it continued to be the residence of the Great Dukes till the twelfth century. Afterwards it fell into the hands of the *Poles*; but at the treaty of *Andrussow*, they gave it up in 1667 to the *Russians* for a certain term of years, and in 1686 ceded it to *Russia* for ever. It consists properly of three small towns, namely, the castle of *Petsbersky* with its suburbs, the old city of *Kiew*, and the town of *Podol* that lies below the latter; which are partly inclosed with a common fortification, and in other parts have a communication by a large entrenchment, carried on as the inequality of the mountains would permit. The whole garrison consists of seven regiments of foot; and the city is governed by a *Statthalter* General, a Deputy-*Statthalter*, and a *Commandant*.

The castle of *Petsbersky* stands on an eminence facing the south; and, besides barracks for the garrison, magazines, officers houses, and some churches, includes that rich and stately monastery which was founded in the eleventh century, and called *Petsbersky*, because the Monks formerly lived in a *Petsbera*, i. e. 'a cavern', on the mountain where the convent now stands. In its subterraneous vaults, which resemble a labyrinth, and consist of cells, chapels, &c. are found great numbers of undecayed bodies, supposed to be the remains of Saints and Martyrs, like those shewn at *Troitx*. The bodies of the deceased Monks are also deposited here. Prints of these large subterraneous vaults, which are called *Crypta Antonia*, and of the smaller vaults, or *Crypta Theodosia*, are to be seen in a little book

pub-



published by *J. Herbinius*, and entitled *Religiøse Kiiovienses Cryptæ*. Ienæ, 1675. Opposite to this monastery formerly stood a nunnery, which is now converted into a magazine. The suburbs of *Petshersky* are very large, consisting of the houses belonging to the above-mentioned convent; and also several convents and churches, the principal of which is the convent of *St. Nicholas*.

The old city of *Kiew* stands on an eminence facing the north, and is fortified, according to the mountainous nature of the country, with horn-works, &c. Here stands the cathedral of the *Greek* Archbishop of *Kiew*, *Halitsb*, and *Little Russia*, who resides in the convent of *St. Sophia*. To this church, and the convent of *St. Michael* where the reliques of *St. Barbara* are kept, belong most of the houses in the city.

*Podol* lies below *Old Kiew* in the plain on the banks of the *Dnieper*; and, excepting the churches and convents, consists entirely of shops and tradesmens houses. Under the Kings of *Poland* its magistrates enjoyed the privileges of a royal free city: and even now are independent of the Colonels of the regiments in garrison, and receive their orders immediately from the War-Office at *Glucow*. The Academy adjoining to the *Bratskoi* monastery, not far from the town-house, is entirely built with stone; and is one of the noblest edifices in the city. The University of *Kiew* is, from the names of its founders, called *Academia orthodoxa Kiovomobylæana*, or *Kiovomobylæanozaborowskiana*. The Archbishop of *Kiow*, *Halitsb*, and *Little Russia* is the Principal of the University; and under him are two other officers, who have the care of the students. The nine Professors, who live in a wooden building to which belongs a charming garden, are all monks, and are not to taste flesh throughout the whole year; but they are said to make little scruple of transgressing this rule privately. Their salaries are but small; so that, for the most part, they are maintained by the stipends and presents which they receive from the students. The number of collegians amounts to about one hundred; and public lectures in all the sciences are read to them. They also perform several exercises according to the custom of the Universities in *Germany* and other countries, as public disputations, &c. besides some others peculiar to themselves.

While *Kiew* was subject to the *Poles*, the Papists had a Bishop, a college of Jesuits, a *Dominican* Convent, and likewise several churches in this city; which were all suppressed, and appropriated to the use of the professors of the *Greek* religion. It was owing to the incursions and ravages of the *Cosaks* of *Little Russia*, that *Kiew* was ceded to the *Russians*, together with three other towns, as barriers to secure them from insults. My plan will not allow me to enlarge any further on the historical particulars relating to this city.

There are several small towns, *viz.*

*Borisopol*, *Pogowka*, *Gogolez*, *Oster*, *Kozelsk*, *Nosowka*, *Iwangorod*, &c. in this Circle.



On the western bank of the *Dnieper* stood formerly the capital of the *Trethimerow-Cofaks*, which, at present, is only a village. Not far from it on the frontiers, stands the fortress of *Biclaia Zerkow*.

5. The Circle of PEREIESLAWL contains the fortress of *Pereieslawl*, which is one of the guarantee-places, with some other small towns and villages.

6. The Circle of PRILUKI.

In this District are the small towns of *Priluki*, *Perewolotskna*, *Romna*, &c.

7. The Circle of LUBNI, in which are, *Lubni*, and other small places.

8. The Circle of MIRGOROD.

In this District are,

*Mirgorod*, *Orsitz*, and other small towns.

9. The Circle of GADITSH, containing *Gaditsh*, *Dobshenk*, &c.

10. The Circle of PULTAWA.

In this District are the following places of note.

*Pultawa*, a town on the river *Worskla*, the fortifications of which are not very strong. This town, with the regular fort belonging to it, is subject to a Commandant, and not to the Colonel of the regiment of *Cofaks*, who resides here. The Burghers carry on a considerable trade to the *Crimea*, and through *Poland* to *Germany*. This is but an indifferent town, being built in the manner of the *Cofak* towns; but was rendered famous by the *Swedes* besieging it in 1709. At last, it fell into the hands of the *Russians* after the defeat of *Charles XII.* near this place. A monastery stands upon an eminence without the town, where the King of *Sweden* had his head quarters.

*Kolomak*, a small fort.

*Perewolotskna*, a small fortress, stands on the river *Worskla*.

*Orel* and *Kitaigorodok*, are small places on the river *Orel*.

11. The Circle of SAMARA, in which lie,

*Samara*, a small town on a river of the same name.

*Rudak*, a mean place on the *Dnieper*.

## VII. The GOVERNMENT of

# B I E L O G O R O D.

THIS country is a part of *Little Russia*, and inhabited by *Cofaks*.

The Government includes,

1. The District of IZIUM, which contains the little town of *Izium* situated on the river *Donetz*, with several other small places.

2. The

2. The District of CARKOW, in which are,

*Carkow*, a little town,

*Tshugnew* and *Saltow*, two other little towns which stand on the river *Donez*.

3. The Circle of BIELOGOROD, in which lies

*Bielogorod*, the capital of the Government, which stands on the river *Donez*, and was built in the year 990, by the Great Duke *Wladimir*. About an *English* mile from the town is a large chalk hill, where *Bielogorod* formerly stood, and from which it derives its name, which signifies a white town; but it was afterwards built in a valley between two mountains. It is divided into the *Old* and *New Town* and has three suburbs: The *Old Town* is surrounded with a rampart and moat, and the *New Town* with pallisadoes. *Bielogorod* is an Archbishop's See. It was formerly called *Sarkel*, which name is of the same import with its present *Russian* name.

From this town to the little town of *Staroi Oskol* a line of communication is drawn; and there is another intrenchment between the small town of *Nowoi Oskol* and *Wercosofnizy* which lies in the Government of *Woronesh*.

*Karpow*, *Iablonow*, and *Korotsha* are small places in this District.

4. The Circle of WALUIKI contains *Waluiki*, a little town on the river *Oskol*, and some other small places.

5. The District of SUMYN, in which are the little towns of *Sumyn* and *Susa*.

6. The District of KURSK, in which are

*Kyrsk*, a small town on the river *Sem*.

*Kylsk* and *Putiwl*, which are small towns on the same river. The latter is a Bishop's See.

7. The Circle of SIEWSK.

Places of note in this District are as follows.

*Siewsk*, a large town surrounded with high ramparts, in which is a strong garrison. Part of the field-artillery, for the defence of *Kiew* and other places on the frontiers of the *Crimea* upon any emergency, are kept in this town.

*Sursk*, a small town on the river *Sem*.

*Trubtsheusk*, a small town situated on the river *Desna*.

*Kromy*, *Samowa*, and *Kalakobowa*, which are small towns in this Circle.

*Karatshew* and *Briansk* are towns of a moderate extent.

8. The Province of OREL, in which are the small towns of *Orel*, *Mfensk*, *Tshern*, *Bolcow*, and *Bielew*.

## VIII. The GOVERNMENT of

## W O R O N E S H and A S O W.

THIS Government includes the following Districts.

## 1. The District of WORONESH.

Remarkable places in this District are,

*Woronesh*, a large and populous provincial city, which lies on the narrow but very deep river of the same name. It is surrounded with a wall, and is the residence of the *Statthalter* or Governor, and a Bishop's See. Most of the streets are laid with beams of timber instead of a stone pavement. Peter I. caused a large dock-yard to be made here for building of ships, in order to maintain his sovereignty over the *Black Sea*; which drew hither many new inhabitants, among whom were several foreign artificers who came to settle here. *Woronesh* is a place of considerable trade.

*Tawrow*, a small town on the river *Woronesh*. Peter I. likewise ordered a dock-yard to be made here for ship-building; and a great number of *praams*, galleys, and barques were built here, which were employed at *Asow* in the war against the *Turks*. The streets of *Tawrow* are broad and straight, and the houses well built.

*Rosins*, a small town on the river *Don*.

*Ufman*, *Demshin*, *Bielokolsk*, *Romanow*, and *Sopolsk* are small towns in this District.

## 2. The District of IELEZ, in which are,

*Ielez*, a provincial town.

*Talez*, *Tshernawsk*, *Iefremow*, *Lebedian*, *Donkow*, and *Epifan*, which are all inconsiderable towns.

## 3. The District of SHATSK contains

*Shatsk*, a provincial city.

*Elatma*, *Radom*, *Temnikow*, and *Riask*, which are small towns.

## 4. The District of TAMBOW.

In this District lie

*Tambow*, a provincial town on the river *Sna*.

*Kostow* and *Werchnei Lomow*, which are small towns.

*Borisogliebsk* and *Novocoperskaia* are towns of the middling size, which stand on the river *Coper*.

## 5. The District of KOROTOIAK.

Places of note in this District are,

*Korotoiak*, a small provincial town on the river *Don*.

*Oslrogoskk*, *Olskansk*, *Bobrowsk*, &c. which are but small towns.



*Pawlowsk*, a ruinous town built on the *Don* by *Peter the Great*. It is surrounded with chalk-hills, and consequently an unhealthy place\*. Here was formerly kept a part of the field-artillery.

6. The District of BACHMUT.

In this District are the following places of note.

*Bakmut*, a town on a river of the same name. It lies partly upon an eminence on its western bank, and partly in a plain on the east side of the *Bakmut*. The former is defended by a citadel; and, indeed, the whole town is fortified, for the security of its salt-works. The imperial salt-office at *Bakmut* maintains one battalion of regular troops, and a company of *Cosaks* consisting of one hundred men. The country which lies between the *Donetz*, the *Don*, the *Palus Mæotis*, *Mius*, and *Kalmius* not only exceeds all the rest of *Little Russia* in fertility, but also has several spots that are supposed to contain rich ore, &c.

*Tor*, a fortification on a river of the same name.

*Raigorodok*, *Iampol*, &c. are small towns in this District.

The *Don-Cosaks* who reside in this Government are possessed of a great many small towns situated on the rivers *Don* and *Donetz*. Their capital is

*Tsherkask*, which is the residence of the *Ottomann*. It is built in the *Turkish* manner, and part of it is encompassed with high pallisadoes fixed on the *Don*. This city is of a large compass, being inhabited by great numbers of all kinds of *Asiatic* nations, and carries on a very great trade.

Four *Wersts* beyond *Tsherkask* lies *St. Anna*, a new town regularly built and fortified by the *Russians*. It is but small, and lies low on the bank of the *Don*: It has six bastions and the necessary outworks, with a garrison consisting of two marching and two garrison regiments. The streets are broad, straight, and the houses well built. The adjacent country consists of a marshy soil.

Not far from the city of *Tsherkask* the *Don* divides itself into two channels. The southern branch, which is the principal, retains the name of *Don*; but the northern branch is, by the *Russians*, called *Donetz*, or the *Little-Don*, which must be distinguished from the great *Donetz* that runs into the *Don* higher up. On the south channel of this river formerly stood

*Afow*, a celebrated and important fortress, and a town of considerable trade, which is now demolished. Near this place the *Greeks*, many centuries ago, built the city of *Tanais*, which was very famous for its trade, and, from time to time, underwent many vicissitudes. The name *Afow* seems to have been given this city from the *Polowzian* † Prince *Afup* or *Agiup*, or at least from some word in the *Polowzian* language; for the

\* This consequence is not very clear, and, I believe, will hardly be granted by the faculty.

† The Author calls these people *Polowzier*: I suppose he cannot mean the *Poles*, who are never called by that name in the *German* language; but are termed *Poln*.

*Polowzians* were in possession of this city and territory in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and were driven out of it by the *Russians*. Be that as it will, the *Russians*, from that time, called it *Afow*, which name it still retains. The *Turks* pronounce it *Adsak*, and it was further corrupted by several Authors who sometimes wrote it *Ofow*, and sometimes *Kasak*, or *Kasarwa* \*.

From the *Polowzians* this city fell under the dominion of the *Genoese*, who took it in the beginning of the thirteenth century, and gave it the name of *Tana* †. This town appears to have, long before, been taken from the *Tartars*, who were very powerful in these parts; for there are *Afow* coins extant, on which the name of the *Taktamyfs-Kan* is to be seen.

From the *Genoese* this city fell into the hands of the *Turks*, lost its former advantages of trade, and became an inconsiderable town.

In the year 1637, it was taken by the *Cosaks*, who defended it against the attack of the *Turks* in 1641; but in the following year they set fire to the town and blew it up.

After this the *Turks* rebuilt the place; and *Russia* laying claim to the town in 1672, the former strongly fortified it. In the year 1695, the *Russians* demolished the two strong towers which stood before the town; and in 1696 they took the town itself, which they fortified with additional works; but by the treaty of peace concluded at the *Pruth* in 1711, it was restored to the *Turks*.

In the year 1736, the *Russians* became masters of *Afow* once more, and put it in a good state of defence; but at the treaty of peace concluded at *Belgrade* in 1739, they were obliged to relinquish and entirely demolish the town.

Such were the various turns of fortune which befel this important fortress, of which we have a large account in the second Volume of the Collection of *Russian Transactions*, in an excellent historical piece first published separately by Professor *Beyer*, and entitled, *Begebenheit von Afow*, i. e. 'The Fate of *Afow*.'

In this District are also

*Lutik*, a strong castle which stands on an island, formed by the two channels of the river *Don*, opposite to *Afow*. It consists of four citadels, which have a communication with each other by walls, &c. This fort was taken by the *Russians* in 1696.

*Taganrok* was a fortification and excellent harbour on the *Palus Mæotis* or sea of *Afow*, built in the year 1697 by *Peter the Great*; but by the peace concluded at the *Pruth* it was demolished and abandoned by the *Russians*. The fort called *Semenowfski*, which also lies in this Government, likewise met with the same fate.

\* It is generally called *Afeph* or *Afof* in the maps.

† Or rather *Catana*.

---

T H E  
A S I A T I C P A R T  
O F T H E  
R U S S I A N E M P I R E.

§. 1. **T**HE *Russian* dominions in *Asia*, make a considerable part of *Great* or *Asiatic Tartary*. The word *Tatar*\* properly signifies the Lord or Sovereign of a country; and consequently it cannot be originally applied to any particular *Tartarian* nation, much less to a certain river, as was formerly imagined. That the *Tartars* and *Turks* have certainly the same origin, is evident from the similitude of their language, complexion, and air of their countenances. Under the name of *Tartary* a part only of this vast tract is properly included; but custom has extended it to the whole country. This extensive region has, no less improperly, been called *Mungalia*; for it is uncertain whether the people who live more northerly or easterly had ever any connection with these *Tartars* and *Mungalians*. The *Yakuthians*, and the more remote nations differ extremely from the *Tartars*, properly so called, in their customs and manner of living. The country of the *Siberians* and *Ostiaks* came to be looked upon as part of *Tartary*, because those nations had been conquered by the *Tartars*, or rather by the *Mungalians*, who sent several colonies amongst them; or because it formerly belonged to the kingdom of *Great Tartary*, which was founded by *Zingis-Kan*. This distinction must be particularly observed with regard to *Russian Tartary*; we shall therefore specify in the proper places, what territories are a part of *Tartary*, properly so called, and what provinces do not belong to it.

\* The Author calls the country *Tatarey* and the people *Tatars*, which I presume is the right name; but *Tartar* is the name they are generally known by in *Europe*.

§. 2. The



§. 2. The seas bordering on this country, and inclosed by it, have been already described \*; what now remains is only to give an account of its rivers and lakes. With regard to the former the most remarkable are,

*First*, The rivers which run into the *Caspian-Sea*.

These are,

1. The *WOLGA*, of which we have already given an account in describing *European Russia*.

2. The *YAIK*, formerly called *Rhymnus*, has its source among the *Uralian* mountains, in Latitude  $54^{\circ}$  and Longitude  $87^{\circ}$ , and after running a course of about 1000 *Wersts*, empties itself by two channels into the *Caspian-Sea* in Latitude  $47^{\circ}$ ,  $30'$ , and Longitude  $74^{\circ}$ . The principal rivers which fall into it are the *Upper* and *Lower Kysyl*, and the *Sacmara*. The *Yaik* abounds with excellent fish, and has a very rapid current; but in some parts is very shallow. Its banks near the influx of the river *Sacmara* are rocky: and are also very high and mountainous near the river *Kysyl*. Opposite the *Upper Kysyl* stands a high mountain, out of which are dug magnets or load-stones. But the farther you go from this river, the more extensive are the plains; and the country is more level near the mouth of it than about its source: However it is, for the most part barren and sandy; so that corn is chiefly produced in the higher grounds for the subsistence of the inhabitants. There is but little wood growing in these parts, except in the neighbourhood of *Sacmara*.

3. The *YEM*, or, as it is called by the *Russians*, *Iemba*, is a rapid, but very shallow river; for it is hardly five feet deep at the mouth. Its water is clear, and the banks are fertile; but there are neither towns nor villages built on the borders of it. The *Tartars* of the *Kasatka Horda*, who inhabit the country on the west side of this river, live in tents and little huts. The *Yem* empties itself into the *Caspian-Sea*.

4. *GIHUN*, which is also called by the several names of *Annu*, *Amel*, *Anu-Daria*, *Midergias*, *Sheberbas*, *Nabar*, † or simply *Roud Kanem*, i. e. 'the large stream'. This river was the *Oxus* and *Bactrus* of the Ancients; and formerly disembogued itself by two channels or mouths into the *Caspian-Sea*; but these are now become dry, and the stream has been diverted by art into the sea or lake of *Aral*. In *Cyrus's* time it was the boundary [of the *Persian* Monarchy; and is by some authors supposed to be the *Araxes* of the Ancients. Its source is in the mountains of *Paropamisus*.

5. *SIHUN*, was anciently called *Alkash*, *Saert*, *Acsaert*, *Sir*, *Daria*, *Sirdergias*, *Jaxartes*, and *Siris*; but was erroneously thought by the *Macedonians* to be the *Tanais*. This river has always emptied itself into the lake of *Aral*.

*Secondly*, Those rivers which discharge themselves into the *Ice-Sea*, which are,

\* See p. 60, & seq. † נַחַר or *Nabar*, in the *Hebrew* language signifies a river.

1. The famous and large river *OB* or *OBY*, which under the name of *Bi*, issues from the *Altin*-lake (by the *Russians* called *Telekoi-Ofero*,) in Latitude  $52^{\circ}$  and Longitude  $103^{\circ}, 30'$ . Its name signifies 'great;' and accordingly in *Russia* it is often called the *Great River*. The *Kalmucks* and *Tartars* generally give it the name of *Umar*. It is a very large, smooth stream, its current being usually slow; and is between two and three hundred fathoms in breadth: But in many places it is much broader, especially in great floods. It abounds with fish; and is navigable almost to the lake in which it springs. The bottom of this river for a considerable way from its source is stony; but from the influx of the river *Ket* it is clayey. In its course, especially towards the town of *Beresow*, it forms a great many islands. The *Oby* in its several windings traverses a long tract of land, and in Latitude  $67^{\circ}$ , and Longitude  $86^{\circ}$ , empties itself into a bay of the *Ice-Sea*, which runs eighty *German* miles into the land; but the mouth of the bay, where it joins the *Ice-Sea* lies in Latitude  $73^{\circ}, 30'$ , and  $90^{\circ}$  Longitude. The springs where this river rises are not very copious; but it receives several large rivers in its course. These are,

The *Catuna*, at the influx of which it acquires the name of *Oby*.

The *Tsharysh* and *Alei*, which runs into it on the left side.

The *Tshumysh*, on the right side.

The *Tsheus* and *Shagarca*, which falls into it on the left.

The *Tom* and *Tshulim*, which last, is called *Iius*, near its source, and is formed by the conflux of two streams called the *White* and *Black River*.

The *Ket*, which is well known on account of its proximity to the river *Ienisea* near its source, falls into the *Oby* on the right side; and the *Wassuga* on the left.

The *Tym* and the *Wak*, famous for the passage of several ships, which sail through these rivers and the *Yelogui* into the *Ienisea*, run into the *Oby* on the right side.

The *Iugan* and *Irtis*, and several other rivers empty themselves into the *Oby* lower down; among which *Kasim*, on the right side, and *Sofwa*, on the left, are the principal.

Of all the rivers which increase the *Oby*, the most remarkable is the *Tom*; it being navigable as far as the town of *Kutsnesk*. Its source is near the river *Abakan*, in Latitude  $53^{\circ}$ , and its influx into the *Oby* is in Latitude  $58^{\circ}$ . It receives several rivulets in its course; but the *Condoma*, which runs into it on the left side, opposite to the town of *Kutsnesk*, is a considerable river.

The *Irtis* or *Irtish* rises in the country of the *Kalmuks*, and in Latitude  $46^{\circ}, 30'$  and Longitude  $103^{\circ}$ , runs through the lake of *Saissan*; and, after winding through a long tract of land, falls into the *Oby*, in Latitude  $61^{\circ}$ , and  $86^{\circ}$  of Longitude. In this river are several islands, which in summer, when the water is low, are more numerous than during the floods in spring. Some of these

these islands disappear, and others seem to supply their place. The depth of the *Irtis* is so remarkably variable, that ships can no longer pass where they formerly used to do; and on the other hand, those parts which were once shallow have now a sufficient depth of water for vessels of burden. Its water is light and clear, and abounds with fine fish; particularly sturgeon, the fat of which is, by the inhabitants of this country, reckoned the greatest delicacy. The *Irtis* on both sides receives several rivers. The principal of these, after it has passed the fortress of *Ustkamenogorsk* in its course, are the following:

The *Ulba*, *Shulba*, and *Uba* which run into it on the right.

The *Zarguban*, which name signifies three oxen, on the left.

The *Tskermuia* falls into the *Irtis* on the right.

The *Shelesenca* and *Tawgutshai*, on the left.

The river *Om* on the right.

The *Camyslowia* on the left.

The *Tara*, *Shish*, and *Tui* on the right.

The *Ishim*, *Tobol*, and *Konda* on the left.

Of these rivers the *Ishim*, the *Tobol*, and the *Konda* are the largest. The *Konda* falls into the *Irtis* a little beyond the 30th degree of North Latitude. The *Tobol* rises from several springs in Latitude  $52^{\circ} 30'$ , and Longitude  $81^{\circ}$ . Its banks are so low, that the neighbouring country is subject to frequent inundations: It falls into the *Irtis*, in Latitude  $58^{\circ}$ , and  $86^{\circ}$  of Longitude.

The smaller rivers *Ui*, *Ifet*, *Tura*, and *Tawda* increase the *Tobol* considerably. The *Ifet* has its source in a lake, and runs through the territory of *Cathrinenburg*; and, after receiving, on the right, the *Sifert*, *Sinara*, *Tetska*, and *Mias*; and several small streams on the left, it discharges itself into the *Tobol* in Latitude  $57^{\circ}$ . The *Tura* rises in the mountains of *Wercoturia* in Latitude  $59^{\circ}$ , and falls into the *Tobol* in Latitude  $57^{\circ} 30'$ . If the water of the *Tura* were to be deducted from that of the *Tobol*, the former, on the right side, receives but a little less quantity of water than is contained in the *Tobol*, from the rivers *Salda*, *Tagil*, *Niza* (which is formed by the *Nieva* and *Resh*, and is enlarged by the *Irbit* from the right) and the *Pyshma*. The *Tawda* rises about the Latitude of  $63^{\circ}$ , and Longitude  $80^{\circ}$ , and is formed by the conflux of the *Sofwa* and the *Lofwa*, and, something beyond the 59th degree of Latitude, and about the same degree of Longitude runs into the *Tobol*.

2. The *LENISEI*, or *LENISEA*, is little inferior to the *Oby*. The *Tartars* and *Moguls* call this river *Keen*, but the *Ostiaks* give it the name of *Guck* or *Ke-fes*, i. e. 'The great river.' It is formed by the conflux of the two rivers *Ulu-Kem* and *Bri-Kem*, in Latitude  $51^{\circ} 30'$ , and  $111^{\circ}$  of Longitude. From thence it directs its course almost due North; and in Latitude  $70^{\circ}$ , and  $103^{\circ} 30'$  Longitude, forms a kind of bay, in which are several islands:

This



This bay runs about  $3^{\circ} 30'$  in length, towards the North, in which Latitude \* and the 100th degree of Longitude, at last it joins the *Ice-Sea*. At the town of *Ieniseisk*, in autumn when this river is lowest, the breadth of it at the surface of the water is 570, and in the spring when it is highest about 795 fathoms. The bottom of the *Ienisei* is stony and sandy; and the banks, especially on the east side, are very mountainous and rocky. The fish in this river are palatable, and its current for the most part is rapid; but it gradually lessens its rapidity towards the mouth; so that at last it has scarce any appearance of a current. In that part of its course where it approaches the rivers *Dubtsbes* and *Turukan*, it forms several islands between the towns of *Ieniseisk* and *Krasnoiarisk*; and, below the *Dubtsbes*, it has some cataracts or waterfalls; but is navigable from its mouth as far as the *Abakan*, and even higher up. A little way from its source, the *Ienisei* receives the following rivers; viz.

The *Kemtshuk* and *Abakan* on the left.

The *Tuba*, *Mana*, *Kan*, and *Tungusca* on the right.

The *Kafs*, *Syn*, and *Dubtsbes* on the left.

The *Tungusca podeamenaia*, i. e. 'beyond the mountains,' and the *Bacha* on the right.

The *Yelgui* on the left.

The *Lower Tungusca* on the right.

The *Turuca* on the left; not to mention other rivers that fall into the *Ienisei* near its mouth.

It must be observed that there are three rivers called *Tungusca*, which all run into the *Ienisei*. The first and most northerly of these is called simply *Tungusca*, and acquires this name after it is joined by the river *Ilien*: it is called *Angara* from the influx of that river to its source, which is in the lake of *Baikal*. Its bottom is stony, and full of rocks, which cause four waterfalls in this river. But it is navigated during the summer both with and against the stream, though the passage upwards must be attended with no small difficulty and hazard.

3. The *LENA*, which is a large river, waters the east part of *Siberia*, and rises on the north side of the lake of *Baikal*, in Latitude  $52^{\circ} 30'$ , and Longitude  $124^{\circ} 30'$ . This river, after pervading a large tract of land in Latitude  $73^{\circ}$ , divides itself into five branches; three of which run westward, and two towards the east; and by these channels it discharges itself into the *Ice-Sea*. Its three western mouths lie in 153 degrees of Longitude, but the eastern extends only as far as  $143^{\circ}$ . The current is every where very slow; and its bed is entirely free from rocks. The bottom is sandy; and the banks are in some places rocky and mountainous. The principal rivers that fall into the *Lena* are,

The *Mansurca*, and *Culenga*, which run into it on the west or left side.

\* That is, seventy-three degrees and a half.

The *Orlenga*, on the right.

The *Ilga*, on the left.

The *Kirmga*, *Tjkebskui*, and *Tjbaia*, on the right.

The *Itshora*, on the left.

The *Witim*, the two *Potama*'s, the *Olecma*, the two *Talba*'s, and the *Aldan*, on the right.

The *Wilui*, on the left, &c.

Among all these, the *Witim*, *Olecma*, *Aldan*, and *Wilui* have the longest course. The *Witim* is said to owe its source to a great number of lakes, which have a communication with each other by natural channels. Among other rivers, it receives two streams called *Mama*, celebrated for a transparent fossil called *Marienglas*, or *Muscovy-glass*, dug along its banks. The course of the *Wilui* is in 16°, 30' before it joins the *Lena*. The river *Aldan* receives, on the right or the east side, the *Utskun* and *Maia*, and on the opposite side the *Iudoma*. There is a passage for vessels from the *Lena* and *Aldan* through the *Maia* and *Iudoma*, almost to the source of the latter; from which, after a journey of twenty *German* miles by land, a traveller may go down the *Urack* by water into the *Sea of Kamtskatka* \*. We come

*Tbirdly*, To those rivers which discharge themselves into the *Eastern Ocean*. These are,

1. The *AMUR*, a large and celebrated stream formerly called *Karanmuran*; but, at present, the *Chinese* and *Manshurians* give it the name of *Sagalin-Ula*. It is also called *Yamur*, *Onon*, *Helong-Kiang*, and *Skilka*. The *Amur* is formed by the conflux of the rivers *Skilk* and *Argun*; is navigable a great way from its mouth; and abounds with fish. The length of its course is four hundred *German* or geographical miles.

2. The *UD*, or *Uda*, is the only considerable river that runs into the *Sea of Kamtskatka*.

3. The *PENSHINA*, which gives name to the gulf of *Penshinska*.

4. The *ANADIR*, a considerable river which runs into the *Eastern Ocean*.

§. 3. The principal lakes in the *Asiatic Part* of the *Russian Empire* are,

1. The *Aral* \*, which lies not far from the *Caspian-Sea*, and is one of the largest lakes in all *Asia*. Its length from North to South is said to be thirty *German* or geographical miles, and its breadth from East to West is about half as much. Its water is very salt; and on that account it is conveyed by the neighbouring *Karacalpacks*, the *Kasatsha-Horda*, and the *Turkomanians*, by small narrow canals into sandy pits, where the heat of the sun, by exhaling the water, provides them with a sufficient quantity of salt for their necessary uses. The same species of fish are found in this lake as in the *Caspian-Sea*; and the *Aral*, like the latter, has no visible outlet.

\* This is a bay of the *Eastern Ocean*.

† This is called the *Sea of Aral* in the maps.

2. The *Baikal*-lake, by the neighbouring people called *Swiatoie-More*, or 'the holy lake,' extends in length from West to East five hundred *Wersts*; but from North to South it is but twenty or thirty in a direct line, and in some parts only fifteen *Wersts*. It is entirely surrounded by high mountains. This lake does not begin to freeze till about *Christmas*, and thaws about the beginning of *May*; from which time to *September* a ship is seldom wrecked upon it; but by the high winds, which blow in that month, many vessels are lost on this lake. When such storms happen, the inhabitants that live near the *Baikal* imagine, that by complimenting it with the name of a SEA they render the lake propitious, and are preserved against all the dangers it seems to threaten. In that part of it that lies near the river *Bargufin*, it throws up an inflammable liquid called *Maltha*\*, which the inhabitants of the adjacent country burn in their lamps. There are also several sulphureous springs near the *Baikal*-lake. Its water at some distance appears of a sea-green colour; it is very fresh, and so clear that one may see objects to the depth of several fathoms in it. In this lake great plenty of large sturgeon and pyke, and several black, but no spotted seals are caught. This lake contains several islands; and the borders of it are haunted by black fables and civet-cats.

3. The *Altin*-lake, called by the *Russians* *Telekoi-Osero*, from the *Teleffi*, a *Tartarian* nation who live on the borders of it. The *Tartars* call it *Altin-Kul*, and the *Kalmucks* give it the name of *Altinnor*. It is about eighteen *German* or geographical miles in length, and twelve in breadth. The north part of this lake is sometimes frozen so hard, as to be passable on foot; but the south part is never covered with ice. The bottom is steep and rocky. The water in the *Altin*-lake, and also in the rivers that run through the adjacent parts, contrary to what happens in other lakes, &c. rises only in the midst of summer, when the great heats dissolve the snow on the mountains, which had withstood the rays of the vernal sun.

We now proceed to the Description of the country itself, where we first meet with

The WEST and SOUTH PART of

R U S S I A N T A R T A R Y,

WHICH, from time immemorial, has made part of the *Ruffan* dominions; and belongs to *Tartary* properly so called. This country is inhabited by various nations, of which we shall give a concise account.

\* This is a kind of liquid sulphur.



1. The *Circassians*, who inhabit the country lying to the north-west part of the *Caspian-Sea*, between *Georgia* and the mouth of the *Volga*. *Circassia* is above sixty *German* miles in length, and of an equal breadth; and is partly subject to *Russia*, and partly under the dominion of the *Crim-Kan*: However, some of the inhabitants still preserve their independency. The *Circassians*, and especially the women, have the reputation of being the most beautiful of all the eastern nations. Prince *Cantemir*, in his *History of the Ottoman Empire*, says, that they may be justly termed the *French Tartars*, because they continually invent new fashions both as to their dress and their arms; and that the other *Tartars* never fail to imitate these modes; and generally send their children among them for education. As to their religion, they seem to be Half-Mahometans; for they use circumcision and other *Mahometan* rites; but have no *Mulkas* \* or *Mosques*, and express no veneration for the *Koran*. They are mostly employed in hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture. That part of their country that borders on the *Caspian-Sea* is very barren; but towards *Daghestan* and *Georgia* the soil is exceeding fertile. The *Circassian* horses are far from being handsome; but as they are hardy and spirited, they bear a good price.

2. The *Grebinian* and *Yaik Cofaks*, the latter of which live near the river *Yaik*. Mention has been made of these tribes in our account of the Government of *Kiew*.

3. The *Great Nogayans*. These are *Mahometan Tartars*, and live near the *Caspian-Sea*, between the *Volga* and the *Yaik*. They subsist by hunting, and feeding of cattle; and some of them are employed in agriculture. Great numbers of the *Nogayans* have been converted to the *Greek* religion.

4. The *Torgautians* or rather the *Torgut-Kalmuks*, who inhabit the country that lies between the *Volga* and the *Yaik*, are *Kalmuks* and *Pagans*. *Torgut* signifies the illustrious tribe, or the great, noble, celebrated *Horde*; and the *Torgutes* are thought by the learned to be the *Thyssagetes* or *Thyrfagetes*, mentioned by *Herodotus* the historian, above 2000 years ago.

5. The *Tsheremissians* and *Tshuwassians*, of whom we have spoken in our account of the Government of *Nishneinowgorod*.

6. The *Wotiakians*, who belong to the Government of *Kasan*, live in a very savage and sordid manner. They, indeed, believe in a supreme Being, whom they term *Yumar*, and imagine that he resides in the sun; but they neither worship, nor pay him any regard. On any exigency they repair for advice and assistance to a certain person whom they call *Dona*. They speak both the *Tartarian* and *Russian* languages; and subsist chiefly by hunting.

7. The *Tartars* of the Government of *Kasan*. These profess the *Mahometan* religion; and are more civilized and decent in their behaviour than the *Tshercmissians* and *Wotiakians*.

\* The *Mulkas* are *Mahometan* priests; their temples are called *Mosques*; and the *Koran* commonly called the *Alcoran*, is their sacred book, written by *Mahomet*.

8. The *Bashkirian* and *Ufian Tartars*, who also live within the Government of *Kasan*. The former inhabit the country that lies towards the East, between the river *Kama*, the mountains of *Ural*, and the *Wolga*; but the latter live in the north part of that Government. They live together and intermarry, without mixing with other nations. These *Tartars* are strong, and well-made. They have broad faces, a brown complexion, black hair, and long beards. Their dress is not unlike that of the *Russians*. They are excellent horsemen; and are remarkable for their valour and dexterity in managing their bows and arrows. As to their religion, they may rather be accounted Heathens than *Mahometans*, circumcision and few other ceremonies being all that they practice of the latter: Some of them, indeed, have been converted to the *Greek* religion. They live in towns or villages, and employ themselves in hunting, feeding of cattle, and agriculture: They have also plenty of honey and furs. They usually thresh their corn in the field before they bring it home. They pay their tribute in the produce of their country, as corn, wax, honey, cattle and furs. Though they have a great number of hogs, they never eat any pork. They use both horses and dromedaries for travelling, &c. They take as many wives as they can maintain, and give horses in exchange for them: sometimes six or seven horses are given for a wife. Both the *Bashkirian* and *Ufian Tartars* have several times, and particularly towards the close of the year 1735, attempted to shake off the *Russian* yoke; but were soon reduced to obedience. After this, upon their requesting a new form of government, a *Russian Starshine* or Judge, and a *Sotnik* or Prefect have been set over every District; and a kind of Overseer is appointed in every village; so that all opportunities of future revolt seem to be taken from them, especially as there are several fortresses built in this country by way of a further check upon them.

We shall, in the next place, treat of every province, or Government, in particular.

## I. The GOVERNMENT of

## A S T R A C A N ;

Called in the *Russian* language

## A S T R A C A N A I A G U B E R N I I A.

THIS province contains the ancient *Tartarian* Kingdom of *Astracan*, which, in year 1554, was conquered by the Czar *Iwan Basilowitz*; and includes the country lying on the north and partly on the west side  
of

of the *Caspian-Sea*. The heat here is so intense in summer, that, according to observations made at *Astracan* by M. *Lerch*, the Thermometer sometimes rises to above a hundred, and even to a hundred and three degrees and a half according to *Fahrenheit's* Scale; though *Boerhaave*, in his *Elemen. Chym.* p. 192, asserts, that a heat above the ninetieth degree of *Fahrenheit's* Thermometer would be more than human creatures could bear; and that all animals, of which he had any knowledge, soon expired in such a degree of heat. The *Steppe*, or wide desert plain of *Astracan*, according to the account given us by travellers, is a dreary waste, without water or verdure; and towards the coast of the *Caspian-Sea* it is said to be very sandy. In the neighbourhood of *Astracan*, are small lakes and ponds so impregnated with salt, that sometimes it incrusts the surface of the water like ice. This saline incrustation is so thick that one may securely walk on it; and salt is likewise found at the bottom of the ponds in the form of crystal salts. The *Arbuses*, or water-melons, that grow about *Astracan* are accounted the best in the *Russian Empire*; and the vines, which have been planted here, thrive extremely well.

The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Astracan*, which is the capital, the residence of the Governor, and a Bishop's See, stands near the *Caspian-Sea* on an island formed by the *Wolga*; and in the *Russian* language is called *Dolgoi*, which signifies *long*. It is almost a *German* mile in circuit, and is surrounded with a good stone-wall; and opposite to it stands a fort. Among the *Russian* churches in this city the Cathedral is the most elegant and the latest built. The *Lutherans* have a church here; as have also the *Armenians*, who, to the number of forty families, reside here for the sake of trade. *Astracan* has always been remarkable for its commerce; and above thirty different nations resort hither to traffic. A garrison of 3000 men is always kept in this city.

*Krasnoiïar*, a small town, stands on the *Wolga* and is inclosed with a kind of wooden wall. This town, with the next following, keep a watchful eye upon the roving *Calmuks*, who often bring their cattle to graze hereabouts. The name of this town signifies 'a red bank.'

*Tshernoïïar*, a little town in the *Steppe*, or desert, on the bank of the *Wolga*. It is fortified with eight wooden towers and strong barricadoes, against the incursions of the *Cossaks*. As these fortifications were erected in the reign of the Great Duke *Michael*, the town is also called *Michailo-Novograd*.

*Zarizin*, a small town on the *Wolga*, surrounded with wooden redoubts and towers. Its garrison watches the motions of the *Tartars* and *Cossaks*, against the incursions of which a strong line, called the *Zarizin-Line*, has been drawn from the *Wolga* to the *Don*. Along this line the forts *Metshonaia*, *Gratshi*, *Ozokor*, and *Donskaia* are erected.



*Guriew*, a small place on an island, formed by the river *Yaik*, at its mouth where it falls into the *Caspian-Sea*.

*Yaik*, or *Yaitzskoi Gorodok*, a large town situated on the river *Yaik*. It carries on a very considerable trade, and has a good fishery: and is famous for the *Caviere* made in this town.

On the west side of the *Caspian-Sea* stands

*Kistiarskaia*, a fortress near the river *Terek*. On the same river are also some other inconsiderable places, as *Sbedrin*, *Tsherwlenoi*, &c.

The *Russians* have extended their conquests on this side of the *Caspian-Sea* a great way towards the South, both under the Emperor *Peter I.* in 1722, and still farther in the reign of the Empress *Anne*. For the *Persians*, by the treaty of peace concluded in 1732 at *Ratsha* in the province of *Ghilan*, for ever ceded to *Russia* a tract of land along the coast of the *Caspian-Sea* of above sixty *German* miles in length, and comprehending the provinces of *Dagestan* and *Shirwan*. But as multitudes of the *Russian* foldiers died in this warm climate, so different from their own; and as the revenues of the provinces did not answer the charges of keeping up the troops; *Russia* evacuated these conquests in exchange for the privilege of an unlimited commerce throughout all the *Persian* dominions. At present, the river *Terek* is the limits betwixt *Russia* and *Persia*.

## II. The GOVERNMENT of

### O R E N B U R G.

**T**HIS Government lies in the province of *Ufa*, and has been but lately erected. It has its name from

The town and fortress of *Orenburg*, which was built in 1738 by order of the Empress *Anne*, at the conflux of the *Or* and the *Yaik*. But that situation being found inconvenient, the inhabitants were removed, and the town built lower down on the *Yaik* in 1740. This town was designed to protect the new subjects who, from time to time, put themselves under the protection of the *Russians*, and to promote the trade with the people that live more towards the South. Since the establishment of a considerable commerce here, all *Russian* and *Asiatic* merchants are permitted, on paying a certain duty, to sell their goods by wholesale or retail; and all *European* foreign merchants are allowed to bring their goods from the harbours and frontier towns to *Orenburg*.

The other places of note belonging to this Government are, *Ozernoi*, *Bordinskoi*, and *Ilek*, which are forts on the river *Yaik*.

*Sakmarisk,*

*Sakmarsk*, a little town on the river *Sakmara*.

*Ufa*, a fortified provincial town, situated on a river of the same name.

*Kandara*, a fortress on a lake of the same name; and *Menzelinsk* is also a fortress on the river *Menzelia*.

*Kungur*. Near this town is a remarkable cavern of chalk; the inside of which is so curiously formed by Nature, that no traveller, who passes this way, omits seeing it. It is said to have been formerly inhabited by some *Russians*, who fled thither for shelter against the incursions of the *Baskirians*; and to this it is owing that a wooden cross is still to be seen in the cave.

On the *Steppe*, or desert, are also the forts of *Atshitzkaia* and *Bisfert*, so called from the rivers on which they stand.

### III. The G O V E R N M E N T of

## K A S A N.

**T**HIS Government is of greater extent than the ancient kingdom of *Kasan*, which was conquered in the year 1552 by the Czaar *Iwan Basflowitz*. It contains

1. The Circle of *KASAN*, called in the *Russian* language *Kasanskoi Uiezd*. Places of note in this District are,

*Kasan*, the capital of this Government. It stands on the river *Kasanka*, which, about a *German* mile from this place, runs into the *Volga*. In the *Turkish* and *Tartarian* languages *Kasan* signifies a cauldron large enough to contain victuals for many persons; and this name the *Crim* and *Budziak Murses* give to the families of their subjects or vassals, about ten men being reckoned to a *Kasan*. This city consists of a strong fort built with stone, the *Wooden Town*, as it is called, and several adjoining *Slobodes* or Suburbs; and among these there is one inhabited by *Tartars*, in which are four *Metsheds*. Here are about fifty churches almost all of them built with stone, and eleven convents, in and near the town. In the fort is the Government's Chancery, which is under the direction of the Governor and Deputy-Governor. The Governor of the fort has all the garrisons and regiments within the Government under his command. The garrison of the city consists of two regiments, for the service of which a very good hospital is provided. *Kasan* is also an Archbishop's See; and the nunnery of the *Virgin Mary* in this city boasts of a miraculous image of the Blessed *Virgin*. At one end of the town is a cloth manufactory; and all the cloth is bought up at a set price by the Crown, in order to clothe the soldiers. In the  
convent

convent of *Silandowo*, which stands on the river *Kafanka* about two *Wersts* from the town, is a school where the children of *Tshuashian*, *Tsheremifshian*, *Mordunian Calmuks* and *Tartars* are taught the *Russian* and *Latin* languages, the principles of the Christian religion, and the elements of Philosophy, in order to qualify them as preachers for the conversion of the nations to which they belong. In 1749 and 1752 this city was totally destroyed by fire. The *Russians* first made themselves masters of this important place on the third of *October* 1552.

*Lajshew*, a small town on the river *Kama*, where the vessels laden with salt from *Permia* arrive every year; and the masters hire men to draw them up the *Wolga* from hence to *Nishneinowogrod*.

About seventy *Wersts* from *Kafan*, and not far from the river *Kama*, are to be seen the ruins of the ancient city of *Bulgar*, which was formerly the capital of the *Bulgarians*. *Peter the Great*, in the year 1722, when he went on his expedition against the *Persians*, visited these ruins, and gave orders for copying and translating into the *Russian* language several *Armenian* and *Turkish* monumental inscriptions found among them. *Bulgaria* still makes a part of the Czar's titles.

*Staro Sbesbminsk*, and *Norwo Sbesbminsk*, on the river *Sbesma*, which runs into the *Kama*; and also *Biliarsk* on the river *Maloi*, *Tinsk* on the small river *Tnia*, and *Sainsk* are fortresses in this Circle.

*Malmysb*, a small town on the river *Wiatka*.

*Sarapul*, which stands on the river *Kama*, is a small town, or rather a fortress with a *Slobode* or Suburb.

*Ossa*, a fortification and *Slobode* or Suburb on the *Kama*. About five *Wersts* from this fort is a copper-work.

2. The Circle of *SINBIRSK*, called *Sinbirskoi Uiezd* in the *Russian* language.

In this Circle are,

*Simbirsk*, a pretty large provincial city, which stands on the *Wolga*.

*Bieloiar*, *Sysbran*, *Kashpor*, and *Saratow*, are small towns on the *Wolga*.

*Petrowsk* on the river *Medweditza*, *Sursk*, on the river *Sura*, *Pogoreloi*, *Uren*, *Karsun*, and *Tagai* are small places in this Circle.

3. The Circle of *PENSISK*, in the *Russian* language *Pensfskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are,

*Pensa*, a provincial city on the river *Sura*.

*Ramsaisk*, *Mokshaisk*, *Temar*, and *Saransk* are small places in this Circle.

4. The Circle of *ALATYRSK*, called by the *Russians* *Alatyrskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies

*Alatyr*, a provincial town, situated on the river *Sura*.

5. The Circle of *SWIASK*, in the *Russian* language *Swiaskoi Uiezd*.

In this Circle lies

*Swiask*, a provincial city situated on the *Wolga*.



6. The Circle of ZYWILSK, called by the Russians *Zywilskoi Uiezd*.  
The only place of note in this Circle is  
*Zywilsk*, a small town.
7. The Circle of TSHEBAKSAR, in the *Russian* language *Tshebaksarskoi Uiezd*.  
In this Circle lies  
*Tshebaksar*, a handsome provincial town on the river *Wolga*.
8. The Circle of KUSMODEMIANSK, in *Russian* called *Kusmodemianskoi Uiezd*.  
In this Circle are,  
*Kusmodemiansk*, a small town on the *Wolga*.  
*Wasligorod*, a small town, which stands on an eminence.
9. The Circle of KOKSHAISK, called in the *Russian* language *Kokshaiskoi Uiezd*, in which lies  
*Kokshaisk*, a small mean town on the river *Kokshaga*.
10. CAREWO KOKSHAISKOI UIEZD, or Circle, in which lies  
*Karewo Kokshaisk*, on the river *Kokshaga*.
11. CAREWO SANTSHURSKOI UIEZD, or Circle, in which *Samezurst*,  
a small place, lies.
12. The Circle of YARANSK, in the *Russian* language *Yaranskoi Uiezd*, takes  
its name from *Yaransk* the provincial town.
13. The Circle of URSUM, in which lies the town of  
*Ursun*, on a river of the same, which runs into the *Wiatka*.
14. The Circle of KLYNOW, called by the Russians *Klynowskoi Uiezd*, or  
*Wyatskaie Provinciia*, i. e. 'the *Wiatka* Province.'  
In this Province are,  
*Klynow*, a provincial town on the river *Wyatka*.  
*Orlow*, or *Orel*, a small place on the same river.  
*Shestakow*, which also stands on the *Wiatka*, and *Wolynskoi* are two  
mean places.
15. The Circle of KAIGORODOK, by the Russians called *Kaigorodoskoi Uiezd*.  
The only place of note in this Circle is  
*Kaigorodok*, a small town on the river *Kama*, the inhabitants of which  
subsist partly by agriculture, but chiefly by fishing.
16. The Circle of TSHERDYN, in the *Russian* language *Tsherdynskoi Uiezd*.  
This is a part of the ancient *Permia*; and in it lies  
*Tsherdyn*, a provincial city on the river *Koirwa*. It is a Bishop's See, and  
has a *German* school.
17. The Circle of *Solikamskaia*, called by the Russians *Solikamskoi Uiezd*.  
In this Circle, which is also a part of the ancient *Permia* lies  
*Solikamskaia*, a provincial city, on the river *Ussolka*, consisting of about  
six hundred wooden houses, several churches built with stone, two con-  
vents, &c. This town is famous for its many salt-pans where salt is  
made, which like all the rest that is boiled in *Permia*, is accounted the  
best

best in *Russia*, whither great quantities of it are exported. These salt-works belong to forty-eight private persons; however, several of them are not wrought at present, and the number of them frequently varies. There is also a *German* school in this town.

The *Pyshkora* copper-works stand on the little river *Pyshkora*, which falls into the *Kama*. The ore is brought hither from several mines, with which this country abounds. To the monastery which stands near the works belong twenty-six salt-pans in the village *Diiadukina*, which consists of about two hundred houses. The monks have also four more, about seven *Wersts* below the village.

18. The Barony of STRAGANOW.

This District contains many towns and villages. The Baron has in the village of *Lenwa* twenty-seven salt-works, and forty in the large and handsome village of *Nowo-Ussolie*; which are divided into what the *Russians* call *Werchnoi* and *Nishnoi Promysk*. But some of these works are at a stand.

S I B E R I A;

Or the NORTHERN and EASTERN PARTS of

G R E A T T A R T A R Y,

Which were lately added to the RUSSIAN DOMINIONS.

§. 1. **T**HE name *Sibiria*, or *Siberia*, was originally applied, and still properly belongs only to the south part of the province of *Tobolsk*: But, in a more extensive sense, it now includes all the northern part of *Asia*, which borders on *Russia* to the West, on the *Ice-Sea* to the North, on the *Eastern Ocean* towards the East, and on *Great Tartary* to the South. Its length from West to East is something above eight hundred *German* or geographical miles, and the breadth from North to South is about three hundred.

§. 2. *Siberia* seems to derive its name from an old city called *Sibir*, which, according to a received tradition, stood on the right side of the river *Irtis*, about eighteen *Wersts* from *Tobolsk*, and was the residence of the ancient Sovereigns of *Siberia*. This city also, probably, gave name to the river *Sibirka*, which, in this province, falls into the *Irtis*. There are still some ruins of a rampart to be seen on the spot, but no other remains of a city.

§. 3. The air of *Siberia* is, in general, extremely piercing; and we learn from authentic observations that the cold here is more severe than in any

other part of the *Russian* dominions. The *Siberian* rivers are frozen very early, and it is late in the spring before the ice is thawed. The snow often falls in *September*, and is frequently seen on the ground in *May*. If the corn does not come to maturity in *August*, there is little hopes of a harvest in this country; and in the province of *Ieniseisk* it is sometimes covered with snow before the peasants can reap it. The earth is never thawed to any considerable depth in *Siberia*. M. *Gmelin*, having, on the eighteenth of *June* O. S. caused the earth to be dug near *Iakutzk*, where the ground was high found the depth thawed to be scarce four feet from the surface; and in low places it did not exceed three feet. Near fort *Argunsk*, which is but little beyond the fiftieth degree of North Latitude, the inhabitants acquainted him, that in several places the soil was not thawed to above the depth of an ell and a half; and that this internal frost made it very difficult to come at any springs. M. *Gmelin* observed that the quicksilver sunk to a hundred and twenty degrees of *Fahrenbeit's* Scale at *Ieniseisk*, which is a degree of cold never felt hitherto in any other country on the globe. But Providence seems the more liberally to have dealt out to the inhabitants of this country wood for fuel, and furs which they make use of to preserve them against the severity of the weather. Even ice itself is by them, in some measure, converted into a fence against the cold: For in the northern parts, particularly at *Iakutzk*, it is usual to hew a piece of transparent ice of the size of the hole which serves the peasants for a window; and having placed it on the outside, they sprinkle a little water at the edges which immediately freezes, and cements the ice in the hole. This ice-window keeps out the wind and cold without much diminishing the light. Those who have glass-windows besides, place them on the inside of the hole, that the house may not be incommoded by the cold and moist effluvia of the ice; but this inconveniency the common people do not regard. Beer is seldom known to freeze in the cellars, when the holes for admitting the light are thus stopped with a piece of ice. As the winter-days in the north parts of *Siberia* last but few hours, and the storms and flakes of snow darken the air so much, that the inhabitants even at noon cannot see to do any thing without artificial lights, they sleep away the greatest part of that season. In those parts where the river *Ienisei* empties itself into the *Ice-Sea*, the Northern Lights make their appearance from the beginning of *October* till *Christmas*; and the corruscations of one kind of them are said to be very terrifying. M. *Gmelin* thinks this to be the place where the *Aurora Borealis* is to be seen in its greatest perfection.

These severe winters are succeeded by warm and delightful summers; and the heat is so intense that the *Tungusians*, who inhabit the province of *Iakutzk*, go almost naked. Here is hardly any night during that season; and towards the *Frozen Ocean* the sun appears continually above the Horizon. The vegetables and fruits of the earth are here extremely quick



in their growth. Thunder is seldom heard near the *Ice-Sea*, on the coast of which the thunder-claps are said to be so faint, as scarcely to strike the ear; but the lightning may be seen very plainly in that climate. On the contrary, the south part of *Siberia* is subject to very dreadful tempests.

§. 4. In the north part of *Siberia* neither corn nor fruit grows; so that the whole tract of land that lies beyond the sixtieth degree of Latitude is a barren waste: However, barley is known frequently to come to perfection in *Iakutzk*. On this account, the inhabitants of those northern parts are obliged to live on fish and flesh; but the *Russians* are supplied with corn from the southern: For in those parts of *Siberia* the fertility of the soil is surprising. The countries that lie beyond the lake of *Baikal*, especially towards the East as far as the river *Argun*, are remarkably fertile and pleasant: But by the supine indolence of the inhabitants several fruitful tracts of land, which would make ample returns to the peasant for cultivating them, lie neglected. The pastures are excellent; and one meets with vast numbers of fine horned cattle, horses, goats, &c. in this country, on which the *Tartars* chiefly depend for subsistence. However, there are several *steppe's*, or barren wastes, and unimproveable tracts in these parts; and not one fruit-tree is to be seen. As for vegetables, here is a great variety; and in several places, particularly near *Krasnaia Sloboda*, the ground is, as it were, over-run with asparagus of an extraordinary height and delicious flavour. The bulbs of the Turkish *Bundes*, and other sorts of lilies, is much used by the *Tartars* instead of bread. Their want of fruit, &c. is richly compensated by the great plenty of tame and wild beasts and fowls, and the vast variety of fine fish, among which are the Sturgeon and the *Sterled*, which this country affords. Provisions are so cheap, that in several places a *pud* or thirty-six pounds of meal may be bought for five or eight, and a *pud* of the finest beef for twenty or thirty *Copeiks*.

In that part of *Siberia* which lies near the *Ice-Sea*, and several other places, no trees, but shrubs and bushes, grow; but the greatest part of this country produces large woods of pine, larch, and other trees: Besides, a considerable quantity of wood is thrown ashore by the waves of the *Ice-Sea*. The *Siberian* cedar, called in Latin *Pinus foliis quinis, cono erecto, nucleo eduli*, grow to a great height and thickness; and the pine-apples, which they produce, are very large, and contain small nuts with a thin blackish shell, in which are very palatable white kernels that are much admired. These nuts also yield an oil, which the *Russian* gentry make use of instead of butter for pastry, and frying fish in lent and other safts.

§. 5. Not to mention the great quantity of wild fowl, as moor-hens, partridges, woodcocks and snipes; here is an incredible number of wild quadrupeds; some of which are eatable, and others valuable for their skins or furs. The *Argati*, which are also called *Stepnie Baranni* or wild sheep, the

*Dsholaſhan*, the *Gaadinadatſh*, the *Kytyp* and *Kulem*, reſemble roe-bucks more than ſheep; and are a particular ſpecies of animals between theſe two. They are found about the *Irtis*, and from thence eaſtward as far as *Kamtſhatka*. In the province of *Irkutzk*, and beyond the *Baikal*-lake is a kind of deer called the *Ijubr*; but the inhabitants that live near the river *Irtis*, call this creature *Maral*, and the *Tartars* about the *Yeneſei* give it the name of *Syn*. This ſpecies is alſo diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral appellations of *Maime*; *Meyinie*, *Búba*, *Kámaka* and *Kumaká*. Here are two kinds of wild goats, one in the province of *Irkutzk*, which are called *Dſhers*, and perfectly reſemble the roe-buck, except that they have horns like the ſhamois, which they never ſhed: The other kind is called *Saiga*, and are very frequent near the ſource of the *Irtis*; but are to be found in no other part of *Siberia*. This *Saiga* is not unlike the ſhamois, except that the horns are quite ſtraight and have no branches. Their horns are ſemi-transparent, and much uſed to make handles for knives, daggers, &c. The animal called *Saiga* beyond *Kraſnaiarſk*, and over the whole province of *Irkutzk* and the Government of *Iakutzk* is the muſk or civet-cat. The *Koſi* or roe-buck, the *Socaty* or elk, rein-deer, hares, the *Kabari* or wild boars, and bears are well known in *Siberia*. The *Tſhigitai* or wild mules in the province of *Irkutzk* reſemble a bay horſe; but their tail is like that of a cow, and their ears of an enormous length: However, they are very ſwift.

The animals whoſe ſkins are moſt valued are the black fox, the ſable, the hyena, the ermine, the ſquirrel, the beaver, and the lynx. The ſkin of a real black fox is more valuable than even that of a Sable. In the country that lies near the *Frozen Ocean* are alſo found blue and white foxes. The fineſt Sables come from *Nertſhinsk* and *Iakutzk*; where thoſe animals are caught by the inhabitants, in the mountains of *Stannowoi Krobot*. It is uſual in thoſe parts for ten or twelve men to form themſelves into a ſociety, and ſhare all the Sables they take. One of the members is choſen as chief, to whom all the reſt muſt pay obedience, or be well drubbed, or baniſhed out of the ſociety. Before they ſet out, they never fail to make a vow of giving ſomething of their capture to the church. Several *Tartars* alſo apply themſelves to the hunting of Sables, and purſue them very dexterouſly through all their thiſts. For when the Sable finds no means of eſcaping its purſuers, it climbs up the higheſt tree within ſight; but the hunters immediately ſet fire to the tree, and ſpreading out a net catch the Sable as it leaps down to avoid the flames, and thus he becomes their prey. By the great value ſet on Sables, the number of theſe animals is very much decreased; and, what is no ſmall detriment to the crown, great numbers have been caught, and ſold clandeſtinely, notwithſtanding the ſevereſt prohibitions. Formerly the tributary nations were obliged to pay their tribute in the ſkins of Sables and foxes only; But now the ſkins of ſquirrels, bears, rein-deer, &c. and ſometimes money is received by way of tribute; and this not only



from those that live near the *Lena*, but also in the Governments of *Ilinfk*, *Irkutzk*, *Selenginsk* and *Nertsbinks*. When the *Tartars* were first made tributary to the *Russians*, they brought their furs indiscriminately as they had caught them, and among them were often sables of extraordinary value; and formerly if any trader brought with them an iron kettle, they filled it with Sables, and gave as many as it held in exchange for that utensil: But now they are better acquainted with the value of them. They sell their sables at a very high price to the smugglers; and of their gains pay only a *Rubel* instead of a skin into the Revenue-Office; which now receives more ready money than Sables by way of tribute. The subjects plead the scarcity of furs, and, I have already observed, not without some appearance of truth.

The Hyena is a very crafty animal, watching other creatures with very singular address, in order to execute that by cunning, which it could not do by open force; and is equally artful in avoiding the snares and contrivances of men. It keeps an eye upon fawns, young elks, rein-deer, civet-cats, roe-bucks, hares, squirrels, foxes, and young partridges; and either watches them on a tree, from whence it springs upon them, and fastens on their neck with its teeth, or surprises them in their lares or dens. The hyena often devours the animals caught in the toils of the hunters; and consequently does them a considerable damage. This creature runs from south to north, and from north to south, in quest of its prey, and is extremely voracious\*; but the opinion that it squeezes itself between two trees to force out its excrements and make room for additional food, wants confirmation. This animal in *Siberia* is called *Rossomak*.

As for squirrels, the blackest, which are indeed the smallest, are caught in the above-mentioned mountain of *Staunowoi Krevet*. Those of *Beresow* are larger; but their furr is of an ash-colour. The silvercoloured squirrels of *Tschut* are famous all over *Siberia* for their largeness; and are, by some, preferred even to the black sort. The flying squirrels scarce resemble the common species, except in their manner of climbing up trees. The flying species have more the appearance of a rat; and have a strong tegument from the hind to the fore leg on both sides, which is above an inch broad, and can be contracted or dilated as the animal pleases. This mechanism enables it to fly a little way. The tail is not so long as that of a squirrel, and is of a dark yellowish colour.

The whitish beavers are tame, and friendly to mankind, who, in return, have pursued and destroyed such numbers of them, that they are become very scarce in *Siberia*. The greatest number of them is found at present, in the country that lies near the source of the river *Ienesei*, and the banks of the *Oby*; but the largest are those of *Kamtshatka*.

\* The German name *Velfias* signifies a glutton.



§. 6. *Siberia* has still other, and more valuable treasures, than what we have yet enumerated. The silver mines of *Argun* are very rich, and the silver they produce yields some gold. Both silver and gold are likewise found among the copper ore of *Kolywan*. This country is also particularly rich in copper and iron ore. The former lies even on the surface of the earth; and the mountains of *Picktow*, *Koliwan*, *Ploskaii*, *Woskresensk*, *Kufwi*, and *Alapaick* are full of it; and, not to mention several others, the Government of *Krasnoiarski* affords several copper mines. Iron is still more plentiful there, and of a very good sort: but that of *Kamenski* is reckoned the best. From the copper and iron smelting houses several hundred thousands of *puds* are annually exported. These works belong partly to the Crown, and partly to private persons; and among the latter M. *Demidow*, a Counsellor of State, has the largest share: Most of them lie in the Government of *Catbrinenburg*. The *Tartars* also extract a great quantity of iron from the ore.

Several sorts of precious stones are also found in *Siberia*. The topazes of this country have such a fine lustre, that he must be a very good judge who can distinguish a *Siberian* from an Oriental topaz. Single small pieces of Agate are found near the *Argun* in open sandy places, and on the banks of other rivers and lakes. Here are also Carnelians, and green Jasper with red veins: the latter is chiefly to be met with in the *Gobiskoi* deserts.

The famous *Marienglas* or *Lapis Specularis* \* is dug up in great quantities in *Siberia*. The stone or *Matrix* in which it is found is partly a light yellow *Quartz* or *Marcaffia*, and partly a brown indurated fluid; and this stone contains it in all the species of the *Marienglas*. The most transparent, which is like pure water, is accounted the best, and that of a greenish tinge is looked upon as the worst sort. Next to the colour, its size is most regarded. Some pieces have been found of an ell and a quarter, an ell and a half, or an ell and three quarters square †: but these are not very common. Hence a very high value is set upon them; and a *Rubel* or two a pound is readily paid for a piece of an ell square. As for the more common sort, a *pud* of that of a quarter of an ell square is sold for nine or ten *Rubels*. But the very worst sort, which is stitched together, is sold for a *Rubel* and a half or two *Rubels* a *pud*. To render the *Muscovy-glass* fit for use, it is split with a thin two-edged knife; but care is taken that the *laminæ* be not too thin. It is used for windows and lanterns all over *Siberia*, and looks very beautiful; its lustre and clearness surpassing that of the finest glass. In the villages and many small towns of *Russia*, it is used for window-panes; and lanterns are made of it in every part of the Empire. It is preferable to glass for windows and lanterns on board a ship, as it

\* This is a particular species of transparent stone lying in *strata* like so many sheets of paper; and is by some called *Muscovy* or *Russian-glass*, and by others, less properly, *isnglass*.

† As ells vary in every country I cannot pretend to determine how many inches we must allow to an ell.

stands the explosion of cannon, which is apt to split other glass, though it be ever so thick. The *Marienglas* is found in the greatest quantity about the river *Witim*.

*Siberia* affords magnets of an extraordinary size, and even whole mountains of load-stones. Pit-coal is dug up in the north parts of this country. The *Kammenoie Maslo* is a yellowish kind of alum: It is unctuous and smooth to the touch like tophus, and exudes from blackish a *stratum* of alum. It is found in several mountains of *Siberia*, namely, those of the *Krasnoiarisk*, *Ural*, *Altaiisk*, *Yenisea*, *Baikal*, *Bargufik*, *Lena*, &c.

§. 7. It is remarkable that *Siberia* contains not only fresh-water lakes, of which there are a great number in this country, but also several lakes whose waters are salt; and that its lakes are subject to very surprizing alterations, a fresh-water lake being sometimes changed into a saline, and a saline lake into a fresh one. Some lakes also dry up, and others break out in places where none were ever seen before. Among all the saline lakes *Yamuska* in the province of *Tobolsk* is the most remarkable; for it contains a salt, which is as white as snow, and consists entirely of cubic crystals. Salt-water brooks, saline springs, and a hill of salt are also to be met with in *Siberia*. The salt-springs in the province of *Irkutsk*, which are about two hundred *Wersts* from *Olecminskoi Ostrog*, not far from the banks of the *Kapitendei*, are so strongly impregnated with saline particles, that a pure white salt is by degrees accumulated to the height of several feet above the spring. In the same province lies the salt-hill, which is thirty fathoms high, and two hundred and ten fathoms in length from East to West. This hill, as far as two thirds of its height from the base, is a congeries of a very hard, transparent salt, which consists of large cubic crystals, apparently without the least mixture of any heterogeneous substance. From what has been said, it may be concluded that there are a great number of salt-works in this country.

§. 8. *Siberia* affords a great many other things that deserve attention; and therefore they must not entirely escape our notice. That excellent root called *Rhubarb* grows in vast quantities in the neighbourhood of the city of *Selenginsk*. The curious *Mamont's* bones and horns, as they are called, which are found along the banks of the *Oby*, *Yenisei*, *Lena*, and *Irtish*, are unquestionably the teeth and bones of elephants; for they are made into combs and other utensils like ivory. Some of these teeth, or horns as they are called in *Siberia*, are four *Russian* ells \* in length, and six inches in diameter; and the largest sort weigh six or seven *puds*. The colour of them is like that of ivory, excepting few of them which are yellowish, brown, or of a black inclining to blue; and this, probably, is owing to their long continuance in the earth. Those that are found near the mouths of the rivers which empty themselves into the *Frozen-Ocean*, or on the banks of the fresh-water lakes which lie at no very great distance

\* I suppose the author means *Arshines*. See p. 394.

from the *Ice-Sea*, where the ground is perpetually frozen, are generally very fresh: Whereas those that are dug up in the southern parts of *Siberia* are often soft and decayed. But whether these elephants teeth and bones were conveyed to these northern regions by the general deluge, or by any other inundation, and were by degrees covered with earth is a disquisition foreign to my purpose. Such bones have also been found in *Russia*, and even in several parts of *Germany*. A kind of bones of a larger size than these have also been dug up in *Siberia*; which seem to have belonged to an animal of the ox-kind. The horn of the whale called *Narwhal* has been found in the earth near the rivers *Indigirka* and the *Anadir*, and the teeth of another species of whales called *Walrofs* about *Anadirskoi*. The latter are much larger than the common sort which are brought from *Greenland*, *Archangel*, and *Kola*.

Among the objects which deserve our notice, we must not forget the *Siberian Volcano* near *Kamtshatka*, where violent earthquakes are not uncommon: And they have also been often, though in smaller shocks, felt in other parts, particularly in *Irkutsk* and about the *Baikal-lake*.

§. 9. The chain of *Siberian* mountains reaches from that of *Werchoturie* towards the south, as far as the neighbourhood of the city of *Oriemburg*, in a continued ridge under the name of the *Uralian* mountains; but from thence it alters its position towards the West. These mountains are a kind of boundary, which divides *Russia* from *Siberia*. Another chain of hills separates *Siberia* from the country of the *Kalmuks* and *Mongalians*. These mountains between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby* are called the *Altaic*, or the golden mountains; which name they afterwards lose, particularly between the river *Yenesei* and the *Baikal-lake*; and are called the *Sayanian*-mountains. From this chain some branches advance towards the south into the country of the *Kalmuks* and *Mongalians*, and some towards the north which partly surround the rivers *Oby* and *Tom*, and especially the *Yenesei*. The whole country which extends to the North and East towards the two Oceans \*, begins here to grow mountainous and rocky. But the longest chain of mountains in *Siberia*, is that which lies between the rivers that run into the *Eastern Ocean* and the *Ice-Sea*: This ridge begins in the country of the *Mongalians*, and extends to the north-east extremity of *Siberia*. The mountains of less note in this country are those between the *Yenesei* and the *Lena*, from which the river *Tunguska* that runs beyond these mountains derives its name. Another ridge of hills lies on the south side of the river *Aldan*, in which are the sources of those rivers which empty themselves into the *Ice-Sea*. This chain of mountains is called *Werecianskoi*.

§. 10. The inhabitants of *Siberia* consist of three sorts of people, namely, the *Aborigines* or ANCIENT INHABITANTS, the TARTARS, and the

\* i. e. The *Frozen Ocean* and the *Eastern Ocean*.



**RUSSIANS.** Of the two first some have no other religion but that of Nature ; others are Pagans or Mahometans ; and some of them have been converted to Christianity, or rather only baptised by the *Russian* missionaries. The *Aborigines* or first inhabitants consist of,

I. The *Wogulitzians* or *Wagulians* who live in the province of *Tobolsk*, and, may more properly, be classed here than among the *Tartars*. These, by living among the *Russians* in a constant intercourse of trade, &c. before the latter had conquered this country, are more civilized than the other *Siberian* nations. They have some notion of a God, or the Creator and Preserver of all things. They believe a resurrection of the dead, and a future state of rewards and punishments ; which important articles they probably received from the *Russians*. But they absolutely deny the existence of the devil, alledging that if there was such a being, he could do them no hurt ; and that they never knew any instance of it. Their whole religious worship consists in the following ceremony : Every year towards the end of the summer every father or head of a family in all their villages meet, and in some neighbouring wood offer the head of every species of animals they are acquainted with, and hang the skins on the trees. They afterwards make several reverential bows before them, but without uttering a word by way of prayer. After this they feast, with great rejoicings, on the flesh of the animals whose heads have been thus offered. The only reason they assign for performing this ceremony, is the practice of their ancestors. When they bury their dead, they throw money into the grave with the deceased. They generally take as many wives as they can maintain. In their dress and method of building, they, for the most part, imitate the *Russians* ; but furnish the inside of their houses rather in the *Tartarian* than the *Russian* manner. As they have not a sufficient quantity of arable land, they mostly subsist by grazing and hunting. These people are entirely subject to the *Russian* government ; and many of them have embraced the Christian religion, as professed by the *Greek* or *Russian* church.

II. The *Samoiedes*, who live in the province of *Yeniseiskoi*. Of these we have before spoken in our account of the Government of *Archangelgorod*.

III. The *Yuraki*, a numerous tribe of *Samoiedes*, who inhabit the sea coast and further up the continent between the rivers *Ienisei* and *Oby*. Most of these still live without any form of government : and though some of them pay tribute to the *Russian* Empire, the generality have not yet submitted to the yoke.

IV. The *Ostiaks* or *Astaks*, who call themselves *Conti* or *Konni-yung*, and by the *Tartars* are stiled *Ysttuk*, are divided into the *Ostiaks* of *Narim*, *Yenisei*, *Oby*, *Surgut*, *Irtis*, &c. The ancestors of this people are supposed to have emigrated hither from *Welika Permia* when Christianity was first introduced into *Russia*, to enjoy their idolatrous worship without molestation : at least their language is said to have a great analogy with that of

the *Pernians*, which is very different from that of the neighbouring *Samoides* and *Wogolitfskians*. The *Ostiaks* are of a middling stature, and generally well-shaped, but very fordid and nasty in their way of living. They give the name of the first beast they meet to their children; and as they grow up, instruct them in hunting and fishing. They never give over fishing in summer till they have caught a sufficient quantity of fish to serve for the whole winter; and in the latter season they go out with their dogs to hunt hyena's, lynxes, fables, ermines, and bears, which enables them to pay their tribute, and carry on a trade with strangers. They also catch a great number of birds and rein-deer for food in these excursions. They are immoderately fond of *Skaar*, or *Chinese* tobacco. Their dwellings are small low huts made with shrubs and bushes, and covered with the bark of birch-trees; and in the middle is the hearth for fire. They mind neither feeding of cattle nor agriculture, and keep no animals, but dogs for hunting and drawing their sledges. They worship three deities called *Stariks*, besides a great number of large and small frightful idols; of these, however, several were destroyed in the years 1712, 1713 and 1714, when many of these Pagans were converted to Christianity. They call the devil *Shaitan*; and bury their deceased friends with arms and household furniture. When they take an Oath of Fidelity to the *Russian* government they use the following ceremony. Having laid down a bear-skin and an ax, and holding over it a piece of bread on a knife, they pronounce these words, 'In case I do not, to my life's end, prove true and faithful to the Supreme Government of the country; or if I knowingly and willingly break through my allegiance, or be wanting in the duty I owe to the said Supreme Government; may the Bear tear me to pieces in the wood; may the Bread I eat stick in my throat and choke me; may the knife stab me, and the ax cut off my head!' The like ceremony is used among them in the deposition of a witness.

V. The *Barabinzians*, who live on both sides of the river *Irtis*; some of whom pay tribute to the Empress of *Russia*, and others to the *Kan Taiska*. They subsist on the cattle which they feed, and by fishing; the lakes in the desert of *Baraba* abundantly supplying them with fish. They have plenty of all kind of game and wild fowl, particularly ducks and puffins. The *Barabinzians* are, for the most part heathens; but *Makometanism* daily gains ground among them. They, probably, derive their name from the *Barabaiian* desert.

VI. The *Tungusians*, or rather *Tingisians*. This populous nation is scattered far and wide in the provinces of *Yeniseisk* and *Irkutzk*. The *Chinese* call them *Solun*, and the *Ostiaks* give them the name of *Kellem*, or *Vellem*, i. e. 'the party-coloured;' but they term themselves *Oerwonki*. The *Tungusians* must not be confounded either with the *Tangutes*, nor with the *East-Mongaleans*, whom the *Calmuks* call by the nick-name of *Tungus*, i. e. 'swine.' As some of the *Tungusians*, when they became subject to

the



the *Russian* Empire, were observed to travel in sledges drawn by horses, others by rein-deer, and others again by dogs, they were divided accordingly into the following tribes.

1. The *Konnie Tungusi*, who live in *Dauria* and about the town of *Nertschinsk*, and are so called from the horses they use in travelling. These almost universally subsist by grazing or feeding of cattle. Their dress is like that of the *Mongaleans*, whom they pretty much resemble in other respects. They wear their hair like the *Calmuks* and *Mongaleans*, and use almost the same arms, except that they wear no sabre. They do not mind agriculture; contenting themselves with a kind of meal made of the roots of yellow lilies, which they use instead of flour. These *Tungusians* are good horsemen, strong built, and behave with great bravery in war.

2. The *Olenne Tungusi*, who are so called from their rein-deer, and live about the rivers *Lena*, *Nischnaia*, and *Tunguska*. They subsist by hunting and fishing; and also breed some cattle. They make their clothes of rein-deer-skins, and wear caps of fox-skins. Their usual oath is *Olinni*, which signifies, that they call God to witness the truth of what they assert. When they are accused, they clear themselves by an oath of purgation. And having first killed and burnt a dog, the defendant, after drinking some of its blood, wishes with an imprecation, that he may shrivel up and be burnt like that animal if the charge against him be true. The circumstances of this ceremony are differently related; but these are the principal and essential parts of it.

3. The *Sabatskie Tungusi*, who, for the most part, live in the province of *Jakutsk*; and are so called not only because they use dogs to draw their sledges, but also eat the flesh of those animals. They are likewise termed *Lamuts*, from the country about *Ocotzk*, which is also called *Lama*. Their winter-clothing is made of rein-deer-skins.

4. *Podkamenie Tungusi*, who inhabit the country that lies between the rivers *Ienisei* and *Lena*, or about *Ilimsk*. These people are poor, and live much in the same manner as their neighbours the *Ostiaks* and *Samoiedes* do.

If we compare these several nations with one another, we may easily conclude from their customs, &c. that they are descended from the same stock. Their complexion is not so yellow as that of the *Calmuks*, nor have they such flat noses, and large eyes as the latter. Most of them are also of a small stature; and, from a custom of plucking off the hair, very few have any beard. They mark the cheeks, forehead, and chin of their children when young with black or blue figures. This is done by mixing up the colour with their spittle, and dipping a needle and thread in it, with which they stitch the child's face; continually drawing the thread thus coloured under the skin, though the poor child, in the mean time, makes a lamentable outcry. If the face swells, they smear it over with fat by way  
of



of remedy. Anciently, a conqueror in war, or in single combat, was honoured with such figures; but in that case, the figures were not limited to the face only, but were made all over the body. Such marks, in those times, commanded universal respect; and this, probably, first brought them into such vogue, and induced this people to look upon them as highly ornamental. The religion of these nations is pretty much alike; and they stile their idols *Shewuki*. They obstinately adhere to their superstitions, and render any endeavours for their conversion abortive. Polygamy is allowed among them; but very few have more than two wives. The generality of them live in small tents or huts, which they remove from place to place. The *Tungusians* are active and sprightly; have a natural propensity to justice and equity, and are even inspired with a thirst after fame. They are all under the protection of the *Russian* government, excepting some few that belong to *China*. They are divided into tribes or families; and over a certain number of these presides a *Saissan* or Chief, who has a deputy under him who is stiled *Taiska*. Both these officers are appointed by, and receive a pension from the Empress of *Russia*. The *Tungusians* bring the very best furs to market.

VII. The *Buratts* or *Buradians*, whom the *Russians* call *Bratski*, differ from the *Tungusians* only in their language, which has a great affinity with that of the *Mongolians*. They formerly lived on the south-side of the *Baikal*-lake; but, towards the close of the last century, they gradually removed to the north of the province of *Irkutsk*. About the year 1644, a handful of *Cosaks* sent from *Krasnoiarsk* persuaded them by fair words, without striking a blow, to become subjects of *Russia*. They were formerly one people with the *Iakutians*. They are of a good shape and stature, and subsist by feeding cattle and sheep, and hunting. Instances are not wanting of a *Buratt's* being possessed of a thousand sheep, besides a great number of bullocks and horses. The men cut off their hair close to the head; but their dress differs very little from that of the common people in *Russia*. The greatest ornament of the females is their hair, which the elderly women plait into two locks, and the younger sort into three or four. They live in hexangular huts, built with logs of wood laid upon one another to the height of three or four feet; and upon these, poles are fixed which terminate almost in a point, leaving only an aperture at the top for the smoke. The entrance of these cottages always faces the East; and on each side of them stands a birch-tree. From one of these trees to the other a pole is laid, on which hang narrow slips of furs, the skins of ermines and weasels, and the fleeces of sheep; and before these trophies the *Buratt* makes several bows and prostrations night and morning, touching his forehead with two of his fingers, according to the oriental custom. They have a kind of priests or soothsayers, who, in their language, are called *Bo*, and dress themselves in a frightful manner. Great numbers of the poorer sort among the *Bu-*

*ratts*

*ratts* have been persuaded to be baptised, especially those who live about *Balaganskoï Ostrog*; and these, contrary to the custom of the rest of their nation, apply themselves to agriculture and trades, so that many of them are very skilful mechanics, particularly at inlaying iron with pewter or silver. They ride either on horses, oxen, or cows, taking the first that comes in the way; and seldom continue above a month or two in one place. For, whenever they observe that their flocks and herds have eat up the pasture, they immediately remove to another spot.

VIII. The *Iakutians*, who, as to their features, very much resemble the *Calmuks*; and, in their manner of living, are not very different from the other pagan nations we have been speaking of. It is, however, observable that they wear long hair, and short garments, contrary to the custom of their neighbours. They give themselves little trouble about bread; but live on several sorts of roots, garlick and onions, the flesh of horses and cows, milk, and all kinds of wild beasts that they happen to meet with; but mice, maramottos, and wild-fowl are their favourite dishes. They have both winter and summer cottages; and the cattle lie under the same roof with their owners. They use mortars of frozen cow or ox-dung, in which they bruise not only dried fish, roots, and berries, but the more wealthy among them pound pepper and salt. They have a great number of idols, which look like so many puppets, and are all made of rags; for wooden images they hold in contempt. They rub the mouths of these wretched figures with the fat or blood of animals. It is said that the *Iakutians* formerly either burnt their dead, or exposed them to the air on trees; or left them unburied in the hutts where they expired. But, at present, they generally bury their deceased friends, which custom they have probably learned from the *Russians*. Several of these are now baptised.

IX. The *Yukagirians*, who live near the *Ice-Sea*, and mostly among the mountains. These are a tribe of the *Iakutians*.

X. The *Tskukshians*, who live in the north-west part of *Siberia*, wear the tooth of a *Walrofs* in each cheek, which are inserted in the flesh from their childhood; and the *Oluterskians*, a savage fierce nation, which, as far as we can learn, are so far from submitting to the *Russian* yoke, that they commit all possible hostilities against them: This obliges the *Russian* traders to go from *Ocotzk* to *Kamtshatka* by water.

XI. The *Sbelatians*, *Kurilians*, and *Coriakians*, who also live in these parts, are little known.

XII. The *Kamtshadatiens*, or inhabitants of the peninsula of *Kamtshatka*, are more tractable and civilized than their northern neighbours. They are supposed to have been originally a *Japanese* colony: However, they pay the *Russians* a tribute in furs.

§. 11. The second principal class of inhabitants who live in this country, are the TARTARS. These are the most civilized of all the foreign nations in



*Siberia*; and those *Tartars* who are Mahometans are still more so, than the Pagan *Tartars*. The latter have their *Kamen* or priests and forcerers, who impose on the people by their juggling tricks in a most scandalous manner. They affect to appear as if they were possessed; and have their magic-drum, by which their deluded followers believe they can procure lost things, heal the sick, and predict future events. Their common dress is a coat of leather with a great many pieces of iron hanging to it, leather stockings with a vast number of ornaments, and a cap which is very well calculated to raise awe and terror in the ignorant people. These *Tartars* consist of several populous nations and less numerous tribes, and live under the protection of *Russia*; they also derive their names from the countries, towns, and rivers, near which they dwell. The *Tartars* houses and huts may be known by a broad low seat, and a hearth, with a chimney. We shall now proceed to give a particular account of these *Tartarian* nations.

In the province *Tobolsk* are the following tribes, *viz.*

1. Those who live in the city of *Tobolsk*. Of these I shall take further notice in my account of that city, and shall here only observe, that they are more cleanly than the *Tartars* of *Kasan*; but so poor that they seldom have above one wife, and drink water which is their only liquor.

2. The *Tartars* who live about *Tibyk-Aul*, or *Siniarskoi Prud*, as the *Russians* call it, near the river *Siniar*, pay no tribute whatever to the crown; but are obliged to perform *Cosak* service, and are termed *Moshtshiaraki*. They have fixed habitations, and live continually in one place.

3. The *Tartars* who live in the government of *Turinsk*. These are of a more savage disposition than the other *Tartars*. In 1720, they were baptized by *Philophei* Archbishop of *Tobolsk*; and great numbers of them who refused to comply, were driven by force into the river, which the *Russians* concluded would answer the purpose very well.

4. The *Mirow Tartars*. These, for the most part, are independent, and exempt from paying tribute; and live in a decent cleanly manner.

5. The *Tartars* who live about *Isk-misk* a town on the river *Irtis*. These have usually one village for the summer, and another for their winter habitation: however, this custom is not peculiar to them.

6. Those who live in the neighbourhood of the city of *Tara* are called *Yefashnie Tatari*, i. e. *Tartars* paying tribute to the crown.

7. Great numbers of these people, especially the *Theleuti Tartars*, live about the river *Iskumush*. These were formerly much more numerous; for great multitudes of them removed farther up into *Siberia*, to avoid the ravages of the *Kalmuks*; but they now begin gradually to return to their former habitations.

8. The *Tartars* who live in the province of *Ienifca*. These, with many of the *Theleuti* and *Kashtim Tartars*, who live near the river *Kaltirak* in the neighbourhood of *Ilinjskoi Pogost*, were baptized by the above-mentioned prelate;



prelate; but they are far from being Christians. They do not so much as wear the cross that is given them in baptism, which in these parts is accounted the essential part of Christianity: but publickly declare that they were compelled to be baptized against their inclination. However, they are very liberal in using the sign of the cross; are generally married by a *Russian* priest; and sometimes look into a *Russian* church.

9. The *Theleuti Tartars*, who live near *Kusnetsk*, are not *Mahometans*; nor have they any settled form of religion. They, indeed, believe the existence of a God; but almost the only worship they pay him is as follows. Every morning at the rising of the sun, they turn to the East, and say this Laconic prayer ‘Do not strike me dead.’ Near their villages are open places or areas called *Taulga*, where they perform the following ceremony once a year, or oftener. They first kill a horse and eat the flesh of it; then they stuff the skin, and turn the horse’s head towards the East. The *Taulga* is also built facing the East; and is only a square place inclosed with stakes of birch-tree: However, it is looked upon as a consecrated place. Here they leave the stuffed skin as an offering to the Deity, which they reckon an act of religious worship. They eat no pork; but when they can come at any brandy, they make no scruple of drinking it. They are so fond of tobacco, that they generally swallow the smoke of it. Some of these *Tartars* burn their dead, and others bury them.

10. The *Abintzi Tartars*, who also live near *Kusnetsk*, are said to be of the same religion with the *Theleuti*. Their huts are, for the most part, built only with earth; and their employment is agriculture.

11. The *Beltiri* are the only *Tartars* in the *Kusnetsk* Government, who, besides the tribute they pay to *Russia*, are also taxed by the *Kalmuks*, and are obliged to pay the latter in iron and *Russia*-leather. In this country are also the *Kabal* and *Saga* *Tartars*.

12. Farther up in the continent, near the river *Iom*, live the *Tuliberti* and *Kislimi Tartars*.

13. The *Tshulimzians*, who are also baptized, though they have but a very imperfect knowledge of a God. They eat dead horses, and offer up the skins to the devil. They, indeed, bury their dead; but every person present at the funeral leaps through a fire which is kindled on the spot, that the deceased may not follow him; for they are persuaded that the dead are very much afraid of fire. When Archbishop *Philophei* came to those parts, in order to baptize the inhabitants, he ordered those who shewed any backwardness or reluctance to be dragged by the dragoons who attended him, and driven by force into the river *Tshulum*; and upon their coming out of the water, crosses were hung about their necks, and then they were called *Baptized Tartars*. After this a church was built among them. They are void of all real knowledge of the essential part of Christianity; falsely imagining that it consists in carrying the cross about them, and making the sign of it; in

abstaining from eating the flesh of horses and squirrels; in going to church, and having their children baptized; in confining themselves to one wife, and observing the fasts of the *Greek* church.

14. The *Tartars* who live about *Krasnoiarsk* have very much the air of *Europeans*. They are generally lean, but brisk and sprightly. In their manners they are civil, conversible, just, and honest, and do not want a capacity for business. Some caution, indeed, must be used in trading with this people; but robberies and thefts are never heard of among them. They have generally two or three, and sometimes four wives. They are not very curious as to cleanliness, and neatness in their apparel, &c. They have a good breed of horned cattle and horses; and are no strangers to agriculture. Hitherto they have been so tenacious of Paganism, that neither the *Mabometans*, *Russians*, nor *Mongols*, have ever been able to make any impression on them in favour of another religion.

15. The *Arinzi* were formerly a principal tribe of *Tartars*; but at present the number of them is but inconsiderable.

16. The country lying between *Abakansk* and *Kansk* is inhabited by the *Kotozewi* and *Kamatshinzi*. The *Tartars* who live in the neighbourhood of *Kansk* are not very wealthy; and few of them have more than two wives. Both sexes among them wear no other garment but a coat; but those few, who have been baptized, wear shirts and shifts. But as they never wash them, they appear very slovenly and dirty. Like many of the other *Tartars*, they use the bulb of the Turkish *Bundes*, and other lilies instead of bread; for as yet, they have not applied themselves to agriculture, their only occupation being hunting of fables.

17. The *Affani Tartars*, who were a numerous tribe, are now almost extinct; the few that remain live near the rivers *Uffolka* and *Ona*.

18. In the province of *Irkutsk*, near *Tunkinsk Ostrog*, live the *Soieti*, a kind of roving Pagan *Tartars*. These speak the same language with the *Tartars* of *Krasnoiarsk*.

§. 12. The third principal class of inhabitants who live in *Siberia*, are the *RUSSIANS*, of whom great numbers have settled here since the conquest of this country; but most of them, from time to time, fled to *Siberia* from other provinces. Since their establishment they have founded a great many towns, *Ostrogs*, and villages, which, according to their custom, are built and fortified with timber. Most of the villages are called after the names of the peasants by whom they were first built, and but few from the rivulets on which they stand. The *Siberian* dialect in the villages is very different from the language commonly spoken in *Russia*, and is corrupted with abundance of words never used in that country. As for the nicknames which the inhabitants of the *Siberian* towns give to each other, we shall take notice of them in describing those particular places. Santering, drunkenness, and debauchery universally prevail throughout all *Siberia*, so that  
in



in many parts of it, one meets with few persons who are free from the venereal distemper. The notion believed and propagated by foreigners, that the criminals exiled by the *Russian* court to *Siberia* (whose number is very considerable) are obliged, daily or weekly to catch and deliver in a certain number of fables, is a vulgar error; for that is an exercise to which they are little accustomed. These unhappy exiles are disposed of in the following manner. Some, who are sent hither as state-prisoners, are strongly guarded in fortified houses, and maintained at the expence of the crown; others enjoy their liberty, but under some restrictions: others again are sent hither into slavery, to work in the mines, fortifications, &c. Several decayed merchants, who are exiled to *Siberia* as debtors to the Crown, meet with more favourable opportunities of getting money and gradually retrieving their affairs than if they had continued in *Russia*; and they are not debarred from embracing these opportunities when they offer. To such industrious persons, *Siberia* must be looked upon rather as a desirable and advantageous country, than a wretched place of banishment.

All these *Siberian* nations will be better known, when M. G. Muller, whom I have already mentioned with the respect due to so learned a man \*, publishes those excellent accounts which he collected in *Siberia*, and has long since digested. The first Volume of his History of *Siberia* was published, in the year 1750, in the *Russian* language; and it is to be hoped, that other nations will not be long without translations of that excellent work.

§. 13. A very considerable trade is carried on in *Siberia*, which is much facilitated by the many navigable rivers that water every part of this country. By means of their commerce with the *Chinese*, foreign *European* goods are often sold in the towns of *Siberia* nearly at the same rate as at *Petersburg* and *Moscow*. There is not a city in *Russia*, from which merchants do not travel to *Siberia* with foreign goods. These traders dispose of their commodities partly among the inhabitants of the *Siberian* towns, but mostly to the *Chinese* merchants who frequent the great yearly fairs in *Siberia*; and purchase some of their commodities in return. Such a merchant performs a very long and tedious journey before he sees his home again. For instance, he leaves *Moscow* in the spring; arrives at *Makar*, where a fair is held, in the summer; and is at *Irbitz* by the annual fair in the beginning of the ensuing year. In the former place he makes it his business to barter some of his goods for such as will turn to better account in the latter; which he does chiefly with an eye on the *Chinese* trade. If any goods remain upon his hands, which he apprehends he cannot dispose of to advantage in *Irkutsk*, he endeavours to procure a market for them at *Tobolsk*, where he arrives by winter. This place he leaves in the spring, and trading through all *Siberia*, comes about the end of the summer to *Irkutsk*; or if he be hindered by the ice, he never fails to reach it by the beginning of winter, and

\* See p. 395, 396.



trades with the *Chinese*. Afterwards, he bends his course to *Kiakta*; and, the following spring, arrives at *Iakutsk*: From thence he returns for six or seven hundred *Wersts* by water, and proceeds in sledges directly to *Kiakta*, in order to dispose of his *Iakutzkian* commodities. In the spring following he sets out for *Irkutzk*; and in autumn reaches *Tobolsk*. After that, he takes care to be present at the *Irbitz* fair in winter, and, in the following summer, at that of *Makar*. After travelling thus from place to place for four years and a half, at last he returns to *Moscow*; and in that time if he understands his business, and things have turned out well, his gains amount at least, to three hundred *per cent*. The only coin used in this country is the *Russian* money: But most of the traffick is carried on by bartering, or exchanging goods for goods.

§. 14. All *Siberia* is at present under the *Russian* dominion; and was reduced under that Government about the close of the sixteenth century in the following manner. In the reign of the Czar *Iwan Basilowitz II.* and *Feoder Iwanowitz* his successor, *Jermak Timiofowitz*, a *Don-Cosak*, at the head of some thousands of *Cosaks* terribly ravaged the countries which lie about the rivers *Oka* and *Wolga*, sacking and plundering the towns, and destroying every thing before him. But at last, he was driven to such extremities by the troops sent against him, that his retreat to the country of the *Cosaks* was cut off. After the loss of the greatest part of his army, he crossed the rivers *Kama* and *Tshufowaia*, and by the assistance of a certain *Strobinow*, who was sovereign of a vast tract of land near the *Tshufowaia*, he embarked with the eight hundred *Cosaks*, still remaining, and other auxiliaries, on the river *Tura*; laid siege to the town of *Onzigidin*, at present called *Tiumen*, and made himself master of it. He afterwards even took the city of *Tobolsk*, out of which he drove the *Kuzium-Kan*. These two were then the only towns in *Siberia*. *Iermak* had, indeed, got them into his power: But he very well perceived, that he should not be able to keep in awe the vast numbers of Mahometan *Tartars* who inhabited this country. This induced him to send to *Moscow*, *Altanai Sultan*, son to the *Kusum Kan* whom he had taken prisoner, with a tender of his conquest to the *Russian* court, on condition that the Czar should grant him a free pardon. This favour was easily obtained; and a good body of troops were sent to take possession of the country. From this epocha, the *Russians* have been continually extending their dominions in *Siberia*. Soon after, *Iermak*, being on an expedition with some ships on the river *Irtis*, was, in the night time, surprized by the *Tartars*, and, with most of his people, cut to pieces. His memory is, to this day, held in great veneration in *Siberia*. As the *Cosaks* had been the instruments of his conquest, his honour was conferred upon them; namely, that all troops kept up by the *Russians* in *Siberia* should be incorporated with the *Cosaks*, and bear their name: Hence the *Siberian* militia, to this day, are stiled *Cosaks*.

§. 15. *Siberia*,

§. 15. *Siberia*, at present, constitutes a very extensive Government, consisting of three considerable provinces, each of which includes several towns, with their respective Districts. Every town has its *Woiwode*, whose jurisdiction extends to the District belonging to it, without any *Uprawitel* or deputy under him. The *Statthalter* or General Governor of *Siberia* resides at *Tobolsk*; and the Deputy-*Statthalter* whose seat is in *Irkutzk*, and all the *Woiwodes*, are subordinate to him. However, he has not the power of appointing a *Woiwode*; for they are nominated by the Chancery or Office for the *Siberian* affairs at *Moscow*. In the Government-Chancery at *Tobolsk* are two Secretaries, who are not changed, like the governors, but continue in office during life, unless they forfeit it by male-practices. This procures them more respect than the General-Governor himself, and the *Siberians* of all ranks and degrees pay their court to the Secretaries. The principal officers of the garrison are also obliged to conform to their directions; and their power over the city of *Tobolsk* is almost unlimited. All ecclesiastical persons and affairs in *Siberia* are under the jurisdiction of the Metropolitan of *Tobolsk*. The *Siberian* provinces mentioned above are as follow.

## I. TOBOLSKAIA PROVINCIA,

OR THE PROVINCE OF TOBOLSK.

THE south part of this province includes proper *Siberia*, which was formerly called *Tura*; but the whole province belongs to *Tartary* properly so called, as it formerly made a part of the Kingdom of Great *Tartary*, and is peopled with *Tartarian* colonies. The Circles or Districts in this province are,

I. The Circle of WERCOTURIE, which is the first one enters on in going the usual road from *Russia*, from which it is separated by the *Wercoturian Uralian*, or *Ripbean* mountains. In this District are the following places of note.

*Wercoturie* is the first town you meet with in *Siberia* in travelling the common road from *Solkamsk*; and is also the first town built by the *Russians* in this country. It lies on the river *Tura*, and is so called, because the town with the territory belonging to it includes part of that river, and the country that lies near its source. On *Troitskoi Kamen*, or *Trinity Rock*, as it is called, stands a castle built with stone, in which are a church, the Town-Chancery, the *Woiwode's* house, and some other stone and wooden buildings. Facing the castle, and near the church, is a market-place, and on it an Exchange, on each side of which stands a church. Besides these buildings, there are in the town a convent of monks, a nunnery, four churches, two or three chapels, and about two hundred and fifty dwelling-houses. All the



the goods that are brought to, or carried out of *Siberia* are here narrowly searched. The situation of *Wercoturie* is pleasant; however, but little corn grows in its neighbourhood; agriculture being neglected for the more profitable employment of gathering pine-nuts, vast quantities of which grow in these parts.

*Lialinski Pogost* lies on the river *Liala*. Near this town is a copper mine; but a quintal of the ore yields no more than two pounds of pure copper.

*Kuskwinski*, or *Blagodat-Kuskwinski Sawod*, is an iron work on the small river *Kuskwa*, granted by the Empress *Elisabeth* to Count *Peter Shwalow* in 1754. In the mountain called *Blagodat*, which yields the iron-ore, good magnets are also found. Here is a copper-smelting house, which is supplied with ore from *Polowinnoi Rudnik*. Above one hundred houses are already built here. The forges in *Turinski* belong to these iron-works.

*Wuiskoi Sawod*, which are copper and iron-works with about two hundred houses, belonging to M. *Demidow*, a Counsellor of State. This place is famous for a writing-land of a golden colour, which is made of *Gold-talc*, as it is called.

*Nisbno-Tagilskoi Sawod*, a place consisting of about six hundred houses, with an iron work, belonging to the above-mentioned *Russian* nobleman, the iron found here is the most malleable of any in this country.

*Neiwianskoi*, a town on the river *Neiwa*, where M. *Demidow* has his principal iron-work, and resides, in order to superintend all his other works in the neighbourhood. It was built in the year 1701 at the expence of the the Crown, and in the following year was conferred on M. *Demidow's* father as his perpetual property. Besides these works, the town consists of a wooden fort and about eight hundred houses, most of which are built in direct lines and form straight broad streets. *Neiwianskoi* is plentifully provided with all the necessaries of life. Among the inhabitants of this town are great numbers of *Starowerzi* or old believers, as they stile themselves; but by the *Greek* church they are called schismatics. Very curious and serviceable copper and brass utensils are made here.

*Bynkowskoi*, an iron-work which belongs to the same counsellor, and also a brass manufacture on the river *Niewa*.

*Werkno-Tagilskoi Sawod*, and *Shuralinskoi Sawod*, other iron works belonging to M. *Demidow* on the river *Tagil*. On the east side of the river is a rock of asbestos; but few of the veins are an inch thick. On being scraped, the filaments are almost as soft as the finest silk.

2. The Circle of CATHRINENBURG, called in *Russian*, *Ekaterinburg-skoi Uiezd*.

This District is very rich in mines; and in it lies

*Catbrinenburg* or *Ekaterinburg*, a regular town, built in the *German* manner. It stands on the river *Isjet*, which runs through the middle of it; and was begun in the year 1723, by *Peter I.* and finished in 1726, by the *Czarina Catharine* his consort, from whom it derives its name. As

*Catbri-*



*Catbrinenburg* lies in the neighbourhood of the *Baskirians*, it is well fortified, and garrisoned with two companies of soldiers, besides a party of engineers and matrosses for the artillery. All the houses in this town were built at the expence of the government, and most of its inhabitants are officers belonging to the crown; the rest are artificers and head-miners who have the care of the works. *Catbrinenburg* consists of about four hundred and fifty houses, besides the suburbs without the walls, which are inhabited partly by exiled criminals, or others who voluntarily work at the fortifications or mines for daily pay. The public buildings of the town are, a wooden church, a stone edifice for the Public Offices, an Exchange with shops, an arsenal, and a toll or custom-house. The last is dependent on the Government of *Tobolsk*; and the goods of the merchants going to the annual fair at *Irbitz*, which is the only time they are allowed to pass through this town, are searched here. *Ekateringburg* may be accounted the centre of all the *Siberian* mine-works belonging to the crown; and on this account the director of the *Siberian* mines resides here, and issues his instructions to the other directors of the works, and passes their accounts. The water of the river *Iffet* is raised by a dam ninety-eight fathoms long, three fathoms high, and twenty broad, in order to supply a great number of mills and other engines belonging to the mines. All the forges and works about this town are kept in a good condition; and the miners and artificers work with a diligence and spirit far beyond what is seen in other countries. Their wages are punctually paid every four months; and all kinds of provisions are here sold very cheap. When any of the workmen fall sick, they are taken great care of in the hospital; to which patients are also brought from the neighbouring works. Adjoining to this hospital is a physic-garden for the use of the patients. This town is not subject to the *Siberian* Government-chancery, though belonging to the *Tobolsk*-government, but has its particular jurisdiction; and the Director-General when he sits in the chief Mine-Court has two mine-officers for Assistants. There is, besides, a Court of Justice in this District, and a Police peculiar to itself. A *German* school has been founded in this town.

There are a great many other iron and copper mines and works in this Circle; but we shall only mention the following which are the principal.

*Sbaitanskie, or Sbelesnie Sawod.*

*Werk-Isetzkoï.*

*Imperatrizi Anni Sawoni*, in the mines belonging to which a valuable iron-ore is dug up.

*Polewskoi Sawod*, a copper-work.

*Kamenskïe Sawodi*, where the best *Siberian* iron is made, especially for cannon.

*Sufanskoi Sawod.*

*Alapaewskoi Sawod.*

*Note.* The following forts have been erected to the south of this Circle, as a defence against the incursions of the *Bashkirians* and the *Casatshia-Horda*.

*Miaskaia Krepost*, a fort with a large *Slobode*. It stands on the river *Mias*, in a fruitful country, which is very proper for tillage.

*Tshiliabinskaia*, on the same river, is a larger fort than the foregoing, and garrisoned by dragoons: it stands in a pleasant situation.

*Itkulskaia Krepost*, a fort on the lake of *Itkul*, is garrisoned by two or three hundred men; and has a strong *Slobode* or Suburb. Near it are good meadows, arable land, and woods.

*Tshebarkulskaia Krepost* stands on the bank of the *Shebat*-lake, which is about seven *Wersts* in length from south-east to north-west, and contains twelve islands; its greatest breadth is also about seven *Wersts*. The fort is surrounded with a rampart and four bastions, all of earth. Within the largest is a citadel, which was erected before the former, namely in 1736, and was the first fortification that was ever built in the country of the *Bashkirians*. The situation of this fort, which is strongly built, is very pleasant; and the garrison consists only of sixty-six men. Not far from hence, near the river *Mias*, fine beavers, which are very black, are caught.

*Uiskaia Krepost*, a fort on the river *Ui*, which stands in a country extremely well adapted for tillage.

*Ukly-Karagaiskaia Krepost*, so called from a wood of pines and a lake that lies near it, is garrisoned with two hundred men; and is situated in the midst of a fine arable and verdant tract of land.

*Werkiaitzkaia-Krepost*, a fort on the river *Yaik*, which was built in the year 1735, and has a garrison of two hundred men. About fifty *Wersts* from this place, near the river *Yaik*, is a whole mountain of loadstone, which is three *Wersts* in length from north to south, and, on the west side, is divided into eight slopes of different depth resembling so many terraces. The seventh, which is the highest terrace, contains the best magnets. There are none found at the summit of the hill; but about eight fathoms below it, there is to be seen a heap of sixty or seventy *Puds* of ponderous stones, which at a distance look like large pebbles. These stones are overgrown with moss, and are found to have a magnetic virtue; for they attract a knife at the distance of an inch or more. One of these large magnets consists of a congeries of smaller stones, which operate in different directions. That part of the mountain where the load-stones are found consists chiefly of a fine steel ore, which lies in *strata* between the magnetic rocks.

### 3. The Circle of TURINSK, or *Turinskoi Uiezd*.

In this District lies

*Turinsk*, a town, which stands on the river *Tura*, and was formerly called *Yepantshin*, which name it also still retains. It contains a wooden fort, a mother church, with six subordinate churches, and above three-hundred

dred and fifty houses. Provisions are very good, and sold cheap in this town; so that a *Pud* of excellent beef may be bought for twenty or thirty *Copeiks* \*.

4. The Circle of TIUMEN, or *Tiumenskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are the following places of note.

*Tiumen*, formerly called *On-Zigibin*, is a town lying on the south side of the river *Tura*, where the bank is very high. This town is not built parallel to the river, but at right angles with it; and the little river *Tiumenka* runs through the town, and falls into the *Tura* at the extremity of it. Over the river is a bridge of eighty-three fathoms in length; and a little below it stands a fort built with stone, in which is a church of the same materials. Without this fortification, and towards the lower bank of the *Tura*, are six wooden churches, a convent of nuns with a church, and five hundred dwelling-houses. At the lower end of the town is an *Ostrog*. Beyond the *Tumenka* lies the *Yamskaia Sloboda*, consisting of two hundred and fifty houses, inhabited by people of all ranks and professions; and at the extremity of this suburb stands a monastery: it has likewise three churches built with stone. Another suburb lies opposite to *Tiumen*, on the north side of the *Tura*, which is inhabited by *Russians*, Mahometan *Tartars*, and *Bucharians*. The first-mentioned have a church, and the two last a *Metshad*, or mosque in this place.

*Krasnaia Sloboda*, or *Krasnoslobodskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Nisa*. The governor of this place is of equal dignity with the *Woiwodes* of the smaller towns in *Siberia*. Great plenty of excellent asparagus near an ell in height, grows wild in these parts.

*Irbitskaia Sloboda*, which stands on the river *Irbit*, is famous for its annual fair, which is kept in the month of *January*. On this occasion traders resort to this place almost from every town in the *Russian* dominions; and among the foreign merchants that frequent this fair, are *Greeks*, some of every *Tartarian* nation, and *Bucharians*. The merchants pay a duty of ten *per Cent.* for all the goods they have here for sale; but gold and silver bullion is free of all duty.

*Bielakouskaia Sloboda*, is situated on the river *Pyshma*, and has a wooden fort.

5. ISETSKAIA PROVINCIJA.

This District was erected into a province in 1737, and contains the following remarkable places.

*Dalmatow*, a stately convent, which stands on the river *Ifet* in a level, fertile, and pleasant country.

*Butkinskaia Sloboda*, which is defended by a wooden fort.

*Okunewskoi Ostrog*, situated on the river *Mias*.

*Tetshinskaia Sloboda* which stands on the river *Tetsha*, and is defended by a wooden fort.

\* i. e. Thirty-six pounds for about a shilling or fifteen pence.



*Isetzkoi Oshrog*, on the river *Iset*, includes within its circuit sixty houses; and about forty-six dwellings are built without the inclosure.

6. The Circle of TOBOLSK.

In this District the places of note are as follows; the principal of which is *Tobolsk*, in Latin *Tobolium*, the capital of all *Siberia*, and the residence of the Governor-General. It lies in Latitude  $58^{\circ}$ ,  $12'$  on the *Irtis*, not far from the influx of the *Tobol* into that river. This city is divided into the *Upper* and *Lower Town*. The *Upper Town* stands very high on the east side of the *Irtis*; and the *Lower Town* lies on a plain between the hill, on which the former is built, and the river. Both towns taken together are of a very large circumference; but the houses are all built with wood. In the *Upper Town*, which is properly called the city, stands the fort, which was built with stone by the late Governor *Gagarin*. In the fort are the Government-Court, as it is called, the Governor's house, the Archbishop's palace, the Exchange, and two of the principal churches, which are all stone buildings. The *Upper Town*, which stands on the east side of the fort, and is inclosed within an earthen rampart, affords nothing remarkable but a market for provisions and all kinds of small ware, three wooden churches, and a convent called *Roskdestwenskoi*. The *Lower Town* contains a market-place for all kinds of provisions, on which several shops are built; seven churches, and a stone convent called *Snamenskoi*; and several small brooks run through it into the *Irtis*. The *Upper Town* is out of the reach of inundations from the river, by its high situation; which, however, is attended with this inconveniency, that the inhabitants are under a necessity of going down the hill for water. Besides, large masses of earth fall from the side of the hill on which the town stands towards the river almost every year, which obliges the inhabitants to pull down and rebuild the houses that stand near the declivity. The *Lower Town*, indeed, has water at hand; but is exposed to inundations when the river overflows his banks; but such floods do not happen every year. There is a communication between the *Upper* and *Lower Town* by three different ways, one of which is most frequented in summer and spring, the second is very seldom used, and the third mostly in winter. The town is very populous; and almost the fourth part of its inhabitants are *Tartars*, who are partly descended from those that were settled there before the conquest of *Siberia*, and partly from the *Bucharians*. These *Tartars*, in general, behave very quietly, and carry on some commerce; but practise no mechanic trades. They are very sober, and averse to intemperance and all kind of riotous living. The rest of the inhabitants are *Russians* whose ancestors were banished hither for their crimes, or such as are exiles themselves. As every thing is sold here so exceeding cheap that a common man may live very well at *Tobolsk* for ten *Rubels* a year; indolence and sloth prevail to such a degree, that it is a hard matter to get the least utensil, &c. made, though the town  
abound

abounds with artificers, who want neither tools nor materials to carry on their respective trades. The inhabitants of *Tobolsk* have the nickname of *Iassowiki*, either from a kind of fish called *Iassi*, i. e. 'red eyes' of which there is great plenty here; or on some other account. Commerce is in a flourishing condition in this city; and the traffick which the *Bucbarian* and *Calmuk* merchants carry on in *Indian* goods, with which they supply all *Siberia* and part of *Russia*, is very considerable. All the *Chinese* caravans are obliged to pass through this town; and all the furs furnished by *Siberia* are brought into a ware-house in this city, and from hence are forwarded to the *Siberian* Chancery at *Moscow*. Several of the *Swedish* officers, who were taken prisoners at the battle of *Pultawa* and sent to *Tobolsk*, set up schools here in the year 1713, for teaching the children of *Swedes*, *Russians*, *Cosaks*, *Tartars*, &c. the *German*, *Latin*, and *French* languages, with *Geography*, *Geometry*, and *Drawing*. Many of them also took in boarders. These schools acquired great reputation; so that children were sent hither for education from a considerable distance, and the exemplary behaviour of these military pedagogues was attended with uncommon success. However, when the peace of *Nyfladt* was concluded, the *Swedish* officers returned into their own country; and then these beneficial seminaries of learning dropped of course. Some time after, a *German* school was founded here under the auspices of the *Russian* Empress.

*Abalack*, a small town about twenty *Wersfs* from *Tobolsk*, is famous for a picture\* of the *Virgin Mary*. Great numbers of pilgrims resort to pay their devotions to the *Virgin* at all times of the year; and several masses are said before it. This picture is every year brought to *Tobolsk* in a procession of the clergy, and is kept there about a fortnight.

*Korkina Sloboda*, which is the residence of the Governor of this Circle, and immediately depends on *Tobolsk*, containing above a hundred dwelling-houses, and fortified with *Ostroge* or palisadoes, &c. *Ischimskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Ischim*; *Abasbaia Sloboda*, on the same river, whose church, like all the rest in this country, is surrounded with *Ostroge*, which is garrisoned with thirty dragoons; and *Irouskoi Pass* which is garrisoned by fifty men and stands on the river *Ir* which falls into the *Ischim* below the *Ischim*-Circle lie in this District.

*Yalutorouskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Tobol*, was built in 1659 on the spot where a *Tartarian* fortification formerly stood, and is defended by six iron guns. It consists of more than two hundred houses. The inhabitants traffick very much in horses, and the country affords a sufficient quantity of corn for their subsistence. Eleven *Slobodes* lie within the circuit of this *Ostrog*.

\* I have rendered *Bild* a picture here, as the *Russians* have an aversion to images, though it commonly signifies an image.

*Note.* The desert of *Barraba* lies between the rivers *Irtis* and *Oby*, and extends itself between the city of *Tara* and *Tshawskoi Ostrog*. This yields but little wood; but has an excellent soil for tillage, and part of it may also be laid out in meadows and pastures: However, this place is, as yet, without inhabitants. *Barraba* is interspersed with a great number of lakes which yield plenty of *Karawfsken*, a species of carp; and abounds with elks, deer, foxes, ermines, and squirrels. Among its lakes *Tjhane* is the largest, and contains several islands. Some forts which are erected on this desert shall be taken notice of in the province of *Ienisea*.

*Tara*, a small town on the river *Irtis*. About thirty-two *Wersts* from hence the river *Tara* falls into the *Irtis*. *Tara* was first built on the former, from which it derives its name. Part of the town stands on an eminence; and it is defended by an *Ostrog* and *chevaux de frise*, and in the front with a rampart of earth. This part is embellished with the Government-Chancery and the *Wairwode's* house. The lower part joins to the *Tartar Slobode*, or Suburb, in which is a *Metsked*, or Mosque. Every thing is sold at a high price here, provisions excepted; a *Pud* of rye-meal being generally valued at five *Copeiks*. Here is but little trade stirring; for the richer sort engross all foreign goods into their own hands. The inhabitants of *Tara* have the nicknames of *Roskolshtshiki*, from the great number of sectaries among them, and *Kolowitshi*, because many of them were impaled in the year 1723, for refusing to take the oath relating to the succession to the crown of *Russia*.

*Bergamaskaia Sloboda* stands on the river *Tara*, and consists of fifty-two houses, and a fortification built with pieces of timber laid on one another, and surrounded with a deep moat.

*Omsk*, or *Omskaia krepost*, a fortification built in the year 1716, on the river *Om*, not far from its conflux with the *Irtis*. Without the fort, on both sides of the river, are several private houses called the *Omskoi Slobode*: that on the north side of the river is secured by an *Ostrog*, besides a garrison of one hundred and fifty soldiers, and two hundred *Cofaks*.

*Shelesinskaia Krepost*, or *Shelesinsk*, is a large fortification on the eastern bank of the river *Irtis*; and within it the small *Ostrog*, which was first built here, is inclosed. This fort is defended by four guns, and is garrisoned with seventy soldiers, and a hundred *Shushiwes*. The adjacent country is without inhabitants, and consequently lies uncultivated. The dwelling-houses at *Shelesinsk* have no roofs, being only huts raised with earth. Here is a vast number of a large kind of wild hogs, which for want of acorns, feed entirely on grass and roots.

*Yamushewa Krepost* is a fort on the *Irtis*, and stands in a disagreeable situation on the desert. The first fortification, which had been built here in the year 1715, was in the very same year demolished by the inroads of the *Calmuks*: But in 1717 the present fortification was erected in its place.

It



It is entirely built with wood, has bastions and battlements, and is defended by eleven pieces of cannon. A Major is Governor of it; and the forts of *Sblefinsk*, *Sempalat*, and *Ust-Gemeno-Korsk* are under his command. Near it is a *Slobode* surrounded by an *Ostroge*.

About six *Wersts* to the east of this place lies the famous salt-lake called *Iamusha*, which gives name to the fort, and may be looked upon as a prodigy in Nature. It is of a round form, and about nine *Wersts* in circumference. Its banks are so full of salt, that the ground is, as it were, crystalized with it. The water is saline to the highest degree; and the salt that it yields is excellent, surpassing all other salt in whiteness, and consisting entirely of cubic crystals. It is found here in such quantities, that several ships might be soon loaded with it; and the empty places, where the salt has been taken away, are filled up with it again in five or six days. The provinces of *Tobolsk* and *Ienisea* are supplied with salt from this lake; which yields a sufficient quantity for fifty such provinces. This salt-trade has been monopolized by the Crown. A *Pud* of salt is sold on the spot for twelve *Copeiks*; but at *Tobolsk*, *Tomsk*, and *Ieniseisk* it costs about twenty *Copeiks*.

*Sempalataia Krepost*, or *Sempalat* fort, was built in the year 1714 on the bank of the *Irtis*; but it was taken down and built on a new situation several times on account of the gradual encroachments which the water made on the land; so that now it stands in its fourth situation. This fort is easily commanded from the mountains that lie to the east of it; and the adjacent country is very pleasant and fertile, but lies uncultivated. The gardens at *Sempalat* yield a very fine species of melons. The fort has its name from *Sempalat*, a ruinous town lying about sixteen *Wersts* from it, on the river *Irtis*, where some remains of old stone buildings are still to be seen. The first *Russian* settlers here found seven of these houses, as the name of the place imports. The Learned are of opinion that some old inscriptions, which were found among these ruins, relate to the mythology of the *Kalmuks*; and that this place was deserted by that nation, agreeably to a maxim of their religion, that when any consecrated place is once profaned by war, it must be relinquished for ever.

*Ust-Kameno-Gorsk*, a small *Krepost* or fortress, stands in a spacious plain near a shallow branch of the *Irtis*, and is so called from the mountains which lie to the east of it. Its garrison consists of a hundred and fifty men. The neighbouring country abounds with wild animals.

Between the *Irtis* and the *Oby* are some rich copper-mines; and from the *Ploskaia Gora*, or the flat mountain, fine ore is carried to the copper-works at *Kolivan*. The copper-mines on the mountain *Pichtowa* (so called from the *Pichta*, or white firs, that grow on it) yield a vast produce: and there is no need of digging deep to come at the ore, as it lies near the surface of the ground. Every hundred weight of ore yields twelve pounds of pure copper. Not far from *Pichtowa* are two other hills near the surface of which ore is found.

found. The *Woskresenskian* mountains abound with ore ; but it lies mostly in *strata* or veins of a considerable depth. The *Koliwan* copper-works which belong to M. *Demiedow*, at first were built on a mountain called *Koliwano*, which is not far from the present structure. It is defended by a fort consisting of four bastions, and surrounded with a rampart of earth and a moat. Most of the miners are *Roskolsktschiki* or *Russian* separatists from the *Greek* church. These works have lately become extremely profitable. The ore is very rich in copper, and yields a great deal of silver ; besides the silver yields so much gold as makes rich returns for the trouble and expence of extracting it from the former. It is presumed that the whole country lying betwixt the *Irtis* and the *Oby* abounds in rich ore of various metals ; and that the ore generally lies near the surface of the earth.

To the North-east of the city of *Tobolsk* lie the following places of note.

*Demiansk*, a town which stands on a hill near the *Irtis*, and is mostly inhabited by *Iemshicks*, or carriers ; who in summer-time ply with vessels up and down the river, and in winter carry goods and passengers in sledges.

*Samarowskoi Yam*, or *Samarowsk*, a post-stage at the conflux of the *Irtis* and *Oby*. Here are about fifty houses and a church. The adjacent country lies uncultivated ; and all sorts of provisions are brought hither from *Tobolsk*. *Samarowsk* is famous for a large trading place.

*Karimkarsk* and *Atlimsk*, which are also post-stages.

7. The Circle of *SURGUT*, in Russian *Surgutskoi Uiezd*.

This District has its name from

*Surgut*, a pretty large town on the *Oby*. It is surrounded with pallisades and towers ; and the *Ostiaks* who live in this country annually pay tribute to the *Woirwode* of *Surgut*. The adjacent country abounds with fables ; black, white, and red foxes, and fine gray furs ; and has plenty of excellent fish, but produces no corn. The inhabitants of this city have the nick-name of *Griwiie* because most of them are observed to squint.

8. The Circle of *PELYM*, in Russian *Pelymskoi Uiezd*.

This District is large but contains no remarkable place, except the small town of *Pelym*, which stands on a river of the same name. To this place the famous Field Marshal Count *Munich* was banished, and still lives here in exile. There are several lakes, and some of a considerable extent, in this Circle.

9. The Circle of *BERESOW*, called by the Russians *Berezowskoi Uiezd*.

This District is bounded to the North by *Waigatz* straits, and to the East by a large bay of the *Frozen Ocean*, which runs into the land towards the south ; and at the sixty sixth degree of Latitude separates into two arms, one of which is called the *Obskaia Guba* or the *Oby-bay*, and the other *Tazowskaia Guba*, or the bay of *Tazow*. Into the former the river *Oby* empties itself, and the *Taz* into the latter ; and from these two rivers the bays derive their names. This District was under the *Russian* dominion long before the other parts of *Siberia* were conquered ; for it was added to the

Empire by the Czaar *Gabriel* so early as the year 1530. The most remarkable places in it are

*Liapinskoi*, from which the *Ostiaks*, who live in these parts, are called *Liapinians*.

*Berezow*, which stands on the river *Oby*, and is fortified with pallisades. Here the court-favourite, Prince *Menshikoff*, died in exile. The inhabitants of *Berezow* are called by way of ridicule *Bielkoiedi*, on account of their eating a great number of squirrels.

*Kuiskoi*, a *Slobode*, which stands on the river *Kuiskoi*, and gives name to the *Ostiaks* and *Samoiedes* who inhabit the adjacent country.

*Obdorskoi Ostrog*, which lies near the mouth of the *Oby*, is the place where the *Samoiedes* bring in their tribute.

*Nadymskoi Ostrog*, which stood by the mouth of the river *Nadym*, where it falls into the *Oby-bay*, was destroyed by the *Iuraki*. Not far from this place is a spacious deep cavern in a mountain, where the *Nadymian-Ostiaks* shelter themselves. They make use of ladders to ascend to, and descend from this cave.

*Note.* The island and straits of *Waigatz*, and *Novaia Semlia* or *New-land* which lies beyond them, and is erroneously written *Nova Zembla*, are but little known. This country was first discovered in the year 1566, by *Stephen Barrow* an *Englishman*. In 1596, two *Hollanders*, namely, *William Barentz* and *Jacob Heemskirk*, wintered here with their crew. The Sun disappeared on the third of *November*, and they never saw it till the twenty-fourth of *January* following. The *Russians* have not yet ventured to sail round the coast of *Novaia Semlia*; but as they go in small vessels between that country and the coast of *Asia*, and the *Dutch* navigators have discovered the northern coast of it, we may conclude that it is an island; and it is exhibited as such in the *Russian ATLAS*. The *Samoiedes*, who live in this neighbourhood on the coast of the *Ice-Sea*, sometimes cross over to *Novaia Semlia*, to hunt rein-deer, elks, and white bears. It is yet uncertain whether this island be inhabited or not: For granting that men have been seen on it, that does not absolutely prove that they always dwell there.

## II. IENISEISKAIA PROVINCIA,

Or the PROVINCE of YENISEI.

THE south part of this province must have been included in the kingdom of *Tartary*; but whether the north part ever belonged to it is a question. Some account has been given above \* of the *Tungusians*,

\* See p. 473.



*Ostia*s, and other *Tartarian* nations who inhabit this province: It consists of the following Circles or Districts.

1. The Circle of MANGASEA, in Russian *Mangafiskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are four bays, into one of which the *Yenisei* discharges itself, besides the large gulf of the *Frozen Ocean*, of which that of *Tazow* is only a bay. Though the climate of the country that lies near the mouth of the *Yenisei* be so excessively cold, yet it is very well peopled; the bountiful Creator having liberally bestowed many advantages on this country, which is generally represented in such dreadful colours. The white and blue foxes, and the white wolves and bears which are caught here, are said to surpass those of all other parts in largeness of size. Besides the hair is also finer and grows closer than common; accordingly the skins always bear a higher price, than those that are brought from the *Oby* and the *Lena*. For the sake of these profitable captures, more *Russians* settle on the banks of the *Yenisei* than near any other river in *Siberia*. From *Mangasea* to the sea, and along the coast to the river *Piasiga*, and from the *Piasiga* to the *Cantanga*, and along the banks of the last river, the country is full of *Russian* dwellings: Some of the inhabitants remove to end their days in other places, and some live and die in this country. People who want employment flock to these parts in great numbers; and a young fellow, though he be ever so poor at his first setting-out, soon makes his fortune in this country, if he is active, industrious, and a good economist, by catching those animals whose skins are so valuable, and with which it abounds. In summer, when no creatures but rein-deer are to be caught, here is the opportunity of fishing, in order to lay up a plentiful provision for winter. In the sixty-eighth degree and a half of North Latitude lies the *Russian* parish called *Katanskoi Pogost*, on the bank of the *Yenisei*; which is much frequented by the huntsmen who live in the neighbouring houses, of which there is no small number in the adjacent country. This place must not be confounded with *Catanskoi*, on the river *Catanga*, which lies also in this Circle in Latitude  $70^{\circ} 30'$ . The most remarkable place in this District is

*Mangasea*, or *Mangazeia*, the most northern town in *Siberia*, which lies in Latitude  $66^{\circ}$ . The exact time when *Mangasea* was discovered, and peopled by *Russian* colonies, cannot be well ascertained. According to an old tradition delivered down from father to son, a colony from *Archangel* built the old *Ostrog* of *Mangasea*, before there was such a thing as a *Russian* town known in *Siberia*. It derives its name from a *Samoiedean* tribe, who inhabited this country, and call themselves *Mangase*: For this people, by promising to pay tribute to the *Russians*, gave occasion to the building of this town. Old *Mangasea*, which stood on the river *Tax*, gradually fell to decay; and in the year 1600, the present town was built, and the inhabitants of the old *Ostrog* were removed hither. This new *Ostrog* was also called *Mangasea*; but as it lies at the mouth of the river

*Turukan*

*Turukan*, it had also the name of *Turukanfsk*, which it retains to this day among the common people. As this *Ostrog* proved the means of making several nations tributary to the *Russians*, it was, probably on that account, afterwards endowed with the privileges of a town. *Mangasea* stands at present on the north bank of the *Nikolskoi Shar*, which is a small branch of the *Ienisei*, and, about a *Werst* from this place, is augmented by the influx of the river *Turukan*. The houses in this town are not contiguous, and, at most, do not exceed one hundred. The greatest part of it is inclosed within a small wooden fortification, with four pieces of cannon; and in this stands the house of the Governor or Prefect, and the principal church; and without it are two other churches. Most of the inhabitants of *Mangasea* have always been *Cofaks*; who were placed here, in order to subdue, or at least to check, the Pagan nations of this country, particularly the *Tungusians* and *Samoiedes*. The *Mangaseans* are by way of ridicule called *Swietlobi* from their shining foreheads, and *Porfowiki* because they eat dried and putrified fish instead of bread. This town carries on a good trade in furs. In summer time the sun is seen here continually above the horizon; and during that season prodigious flocks of birds, especially water-fowl and several kinds of wild geese and ducks, plovers, snipes, &c. frequent the neighbouring country. Since the year 1721, this town and its District have been annexed to the province of *Ienisea*; whereas before that time it depended immediately on *Tobolsk*, and prior to that, was in the jurisdiction of *Tomsk*.

2. The Circle of NARYM, or *Narymskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are,

*Narym*, a small town, which stands on an island in the river *Oby*, and is fortified with pallisadoes and wooden towers. The tribute due from the neighbouring *Ostiaks* is paid here.

*Ketskoi Ostrog*, which lies on the river *Ket*.

3. The Circle of TOMSK, or *Tomskoi Uiezd*.

The following places of note lie in this District.

*Tomsk*, a town situated on the river *Tom*. A brook called *Usbaikka* runs through the town, and at the northern extremity of it falls into the *Tom*. The foundation of *Tomsk* was laid in the reign of the Czaar *Feodor Iwanowitz*, who built an *Ostrog* on this spot; and this happened about twenty years before the building of the town of *Kuznetsk*. Several nations of these countries having been reduced by force of arms, and others voluntarily submitting to the *Russians*, the *Ostrog* was by degrees converted into a fort; and the fort in time increased to a town; which, at present, contains above 2000 houses within its circuit. It was at first, next to *Tobolsk*, the second principal city in *Siberia*, and continued so for some years; but has since been included in the province of *Ienisei*. Some, indeed, are of opinion that the Circle of *Tomsk* at present belongs to the province of *Tobolsk*; but we rather follow the *Russian ATLAS* which places it in that of *Ienisei*. On

the highest part of the town stands a small wooden castle defended by fourteen pieces of cannon; and in it are a cathedral built with wood, the *Woiwode's* house, the Government-Chancery, and an arsenal. Near the fort stand several private houses and a church. The lower part of the town is the most populous; and is separated into two parts by the rivulet *Ujkaika*. In that part which lies to the left are a monastery, a nunnery, a church, and a Tartarain *Slobode*; and in that part on the right are three parish churches and an Exchange for merchants. This town is extremely well situated for commerce, and the inhabitants carry on a considerable trade. It lies in the great road from *Ieniseisk* and all the towns in the eastern and northern parts of *Siberia*; so that all caravans going to and from *China* pass every year through this town, besides a caravan or two from the country of the *Kalmuks*. Here are indeed all kinds of tradesmen and artificers; but they are extremely indolent and slothful; which is owing to the extraordinary cheapness of provisions in this town, and their brutish propensity to drinking and debauchery, there being scarce a family among the inhabitants which is entirely free from the *Lues Venerea*. The *Tonskians* have the nick-names of *Olionotshi*, from a woman called *Oliiona*, who was very famous for her strength, and *Buligi*, i. e. 'boasters.' The adjacent country is very fertile and produces all kinds of grain.

*Melesk* and *Atszinsk*, which are two *Ostrog*s.

*Bogorodskoi*, a town on the *Oby*. The church belonging to this town is famous for a celebrated picture of the Virgin *Mary*, which is distinguished by the name of *Oediitria*, and every year on the twenty-first of *May* is brought in procession to *Tomsk*. There are iron works in this place.

*Urtamask* and *Umrewinsk*, two *Ostrog*s near the *Oby*. The latter is one of the oldest in this country.

*Ijhauskoi Ostrog* and *Sloboda*, which stands on the river *Ijhaus*, was built in 1713, in order to check the incursions of the *Kasatshia Horda*, who, since that time, have never appeared in these parts. This *Ostrog* is advantageously situated, and has great plenty of all kinds of provisions: It is defended by five pieces of cannon. The *Slobode* belonging to it consists of eighty private houses. The inhabitants are, for the most part, people of wealth, which consists in herds of cattle.

In the desert of *Barraba* and on the borders of it are the following fortresses.

*Ubinskoi Pass* and *Kainskoi Pass*, which are not far from the lake *Uebu*. The former has a garrison of fifty men, and is dependent on the latter. *Kainskoi Pass* stands near the river *Om*, and is defended by brass guns, and a garrison of one hundred and fifty men.

*Tartaskoi Pass*, which likewise stands on the river *Om*, is but a mean place; However the situation is good, and the adjacent country very fertile.

4. The Circle of *KUTSNETSK*, or *Kutnetskoi Uiezd*.

In this District lies



*Kutsnetsk*, a large town on the river *Tom*, which was formerly inhabited by the *Kirgishian Tartars*, who gradually retreated towards the borders of the country of the *Kalmuks*, when the *Russians* settled in this place. This town has been built above a hundred years; and was peopled with colonies from the Districts of *Tomsk*, *Werkoturie*, and *Weliki-Novograd*. Before that time, the *Tartars* who lived in the place where the city now stands, used to smelt iron from the ore, and subsisted partly by that employment and partly by the iron which they wrought. Hence the town had its name; *Kusnetz* in the *Russian* language signifying a forge. In the year 1689, *Kutsnetsk* was declared a city. The upper and middle parts of this city stand on a high bank, and the lower part on a level between the river *Tom* and that eminence. In the upper part stands a small wooden citadel; in the middle is an *Ostrog* inclosing the *Woiwode's* house and the Government-Chancery; and in the lower part are most of the houses, which amount to about five hundred, and a church. No manner of trade is carried on in this town. The inhabitants are called by their neighbours by the nick-name of *Surki*, because they wear the skins of a small kind of marmottos called *Surki*.

*Bieliaskaia*, and *Bikatunaskaia*, are two frontier fortifications, which were built in this Circle to check the incursions of the *Kalmuks*.

5. The Circle of *KRASNOIARSK*, or *Krasnoiarskoi Uiezd*.

In this District lies

*Krasnoiarsk*, a town situated on the *Ienisei*; and at the lower end of it runs the river *Katsha*. It was first built in the year 1728, as an *Ostrog* to oppose the incursions of the neighbouring tribes, and to keep them in awe, and gradually rose to a town. It derives its name from the dark-red colour of the northwest bank of the *Katsha*. The original *Ostrog* lies on the north side of the town, and contains the great church, the Government-Chancery, the *Woiwode's* house, the arsenal, &c. In the town itself, which is surrounded with pallisadoes, towers, &c. are a church, the Town-house, and about three hundred and fifty houses. The inhabitants by way of contempt are called *Buntowshiki* on account of their frequent revolts. Most of them are *Slushiwie*, or a sort of irregular infantry: However, some of these are not without such wealth as the country affords; and this consists in horses and cattle, which feed both winter and summer on the *Steppe* or heaths. Such is the fertility of the adjacent country, that if it be only superficially plowed, without any manure, it will bear crops of corn five or six years successively; and when the land is impoverished, there is plenty of other waste ground which may soon be made fit for sowing. Many antiquities were formerly found in these parts, particularly in the town of *Krasnoiarsk*. These remains of antiquity were taken out of graves and old monuments, several of which are still to be seen near *Abalansk* and *Sagansk*. Even considerable quantities of gold and silver have formerly been found in them; and copper is now frequently dug up in such places. The great road from *Tomsk* to *Irkutsk* lies through this place.

In this country near the river *Ienisei*, are three large subterraneous caverns ; and in one of them the rock is painted with several figures.

In this Circle are also the following *Ostrog*s.

*Werkneikaraulnoi Ostrog*, which lies on the river *Ienisei*.

*Abakanskoi Ostrog*, which also stands on the *Ienisei*, was founded in the year 1707, and rebuilt in 1725. It is so called from the river *Abakan*, which falls into the *Ienisei* about sixty-two *Wersts* beyond this *Ostrog*. It is defended by several pieces of cannon, and has always a good garrison. The number of houses near this fortification is continually increasing.

*Sanianskoi Ostrog*, which is likewise on the river *Ienisei*, was built in the year 1709 to keep the *Kirgishians* in awe ; and has fully answered the purpose, as they are very quiet at present. On the river *Lukasa* near this *Ostrog* some copper-works are erected.

*Kanskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the bank of the river *Kan*. The surprising dexterity of the *Tartars* in catching fables near this *Ostrog* renders it one of the best places in *Siberia* for that trade ; on this account the merchants, who travel to the frontiers of *China*, generally make some stay here. It is also one of the most lucrative places in the jurisdiction of the *Woiwode* of *Krasnoiarsk* ; and the *Kanskoi*, or receiver of the tribute, pays a round sum for his office.

6. The Circle of *YENISEI*, or *Ieniseiskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are the following places of note.

*Yeniseisk*, the capital of this province, lies on the river *Yenisei*, which is here about a *Werst* and a half in breadth. This city is built along the side of the river, and is about six *Wersts* in circuit. In the year 1618 an *Ostrog* was founded in this place, which first depended on *Tobolsk*, and then was under the jurisdiction of *Tomsk* ; but it was afterwards raised to a town, and, in 1719, made the capital of the province. Within the old *Ostrog* are the great church, the *Woiwode*'s house, the Chancery or State-Offices, and an arsenal. The city contains three churches, a monastery, a nunnery, an Exchange for merchants, a powder magazine, and a magazine for provisions, (the two last inclosed by *Ostrog*s) and seven hundred private houses. The *Archimandrite*, who has the superintendency of the convent of *Troitz-Mangasea* which stands near the mouth of the river *Nishna-Tunguska*, and of the whole body of the *Yeniseian* Clergy, resides in the monastery at *Yeniseisk*. The commodious situation of the town causes a very brisk trade to be carried on here, especially in summer ; and most of the inhabitants are more or less concerned in commerce. Here is great plenty of corn, flesh, and fowl ; but the only fruit this country produces are two or three sorts of berries. Drunkenness, sloth, and debauchery prevail here, as in the other towns of *Siberia* ; and such diseases as are the consequence of those vices are very common in this city. The inhabitants are looked upon as a crafty, deceitful people, which has procured them the nickname of

*Skwofniki*,

*Skowfniki*, which signifies ‘sharp-sighted,’ or people that are not easily imposed upon.

*Maszkowskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Ket*.

*Markowo Gorodishkshke* is a pretty large village on the river *Yenisei*.

*Rubenskoi Ostrog*, a mean fortification.

*Ust-Tunguskoi*, which lies seven *Wersls* below the influx of the *Tunguska* into the *Yenisei*, and *Iesaulowo Sielo*, are two handsome villages, or small towns.

*Tasseovskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Ussolka*, was rebuilt and improved in the year 1723. The *Tartars* and *Tungusians* of this country are become so peaceable and submissive, that the *Ostrog* has no longer occasion to use the few guns with which it is provided. As the inhabitants have very little trade or intercourse with strangers, they may serve as a just specimen of the *Siberian* manner of living.

*Udinskoi Ostrog*, a small place, was built in the year 1644 on the river *Uda*; and brings a considerable income to the *Iemisean Woiwode*; for the neighbouring *Buradians* bring their tribute of furs to this *Ostrog*.

### III. IRKUTSKAIA PROVINCIJA,

Or the PROVINCE of IRKUTSK.

THIS Province also belongs to *Tartary* properly so called, at least as far as the Circle of *Yakutsk*, which cannot properly be included in it. It is governed by a *Deputy-Statthalter* under whose jurisdiction are the *Woiwodes* of *Ilimsk*, *Selenginsk*, *Nertsbinsk*, *Yakutzk*, and the officers who preside over *Okotsk* and *Kamshatka*: However, he is subject to the Governor of *Tobolsk*, though he has a large appointment; for his perquisites, exclusive of his salary, amount to no less than 30,000 *Rubels* a year. The *Buradians*, *Yakutians*, and other nations who live in these parts, have been spoken of above\*. This province includes the following Circles.

1. The Circle of *ILIMSK*, or *Ilimskoi Uiezd*.

Remarkable places in this District are,

*Ilimsk*, a mean little town on the river *Ilim*. It lies between high mountains, and contains but eighty houses and an *Ostrog*; however, it is the seat of a *Woiwode*. Great quantities of beautiful black fables are caught in the neighbourhood of this town.

*Bratskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Angara*, consists of fifty dwelling houses; and at the distance of five *Wersls* from it, stands a

\* See p. 494, & seq.



monastery called *Spaskoi*. Great numbers of *Tungusians* live in these parts; and about four *Wersls* from the *Ostrog* is a great distillery for spirits.

*Endinskoi Ostrog*, which lies on the bank of the *Angara*.

*Lenskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Lena*.

*Ust-Kutskoi Ostrog*, which is also on the *Lena*, is a very mean place. At a little distance from this *Ostrog*, near the river *Kuta*, are several saline springs, which furnish the whole Circle of *Ilimsk* with salt.

*Kirenskoi Ostrog*, which was built on the bank of the *Lena* in the year 1655, is now in a mean condition. The neighbouring country is very fertile; and, considering its Latitude which is  $57^{\circ} 47'$ , it has a surprising verdure, and produces various sorts of vegetables which are remarkably large in their kind. The sturgeons and sterleds caught in the rivers near this *Ostrog* are, for their exquisite relish, the finest that *Siberia* affords. Not far from this place, near the influx of the river *Kirenga* into the *Lena*, is a convent remarkable for its opulence and endowments. Many of the people who live in the neighbourhood of *Kirenskoi* have wens of an extraordinary bigness, which render their persons none of the most agreeable; and it is not uncommon to see their oxen and cows with these excrescences.

*Spoloshenskia Sloboda* stands near the *Lena* in a very fertile country, which consists both of meadow and arable land. The inhabitants of these parts are also disfigured with wens.

## 2. The Circle of IRKUTSK, or *Irkutskoi Uiezd*.

This District contains the following places of note.

*Irkutsk*, the capital of this Province, and the residence of its *Vice-Statthalter*, stands near the river *Angara*, in a fine plain, not far from the lake of *Baikal*. This city derives its name from the river *Irkutsk*, which runs into the *Angara* near this place; and is one of the most considerable and populous towns in all *Siberia*. It contains near 1000 good dwelling-houses, and is surrounded with pallisadoes, within which are fourteen small forts, a moat, and some *chevaux de frize*: It is also defended by a fort which stands near the *Angara* without the town, and is planted with sixteen pieces of cannon. There are two churches built with stone, and four with wood, within the city; and two other churches, one of which belongs to a nunnery, stand without it. All the clergy of the province are under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Irkutsk*. The inhabitants, who for the most part are traders, live in the *Siberian* manner, that is, in drunkenness, indolence, and debauchery, and the consequences of these vices are very common among them. The adjacent country is pleasant, and diversified with hills and vallies; but as it lies uncultivated, a great quantity of corn is brought hither from the neighbouring countries. Here is plenty of game, as elks, stags, wild boars, and roe-bucks; and also partridges, wood-cocks, moor-hens, and snipes. The lake of *Baikal* is an inexhaustible magazine of fish. Foreign goods may be bought here almost as cheap as at *Moscow* and *Petersburg*;

*Petersburg*; for merchants resort hither from every town of any note in *Russia*, and barter their commodities for *Chinese* goods.

About six *Wersts* from *Irkutsk*, is a distillery for spirits, consisting of thirty-seven Alembics; a little further is another of fifty-three, and beyond that is a third with sixty Alembics. These distilleries belong to the Czarina, and furnish the Circles of *Irkutsk*, *Ilimsk*, and *Selenginsk* with distilled spirits.

*Nikolskaia Sastawa*, or St. *Nicholas's* custom-house, stands at the mouth of the river *Angara*. The toll or duty, payable on commodities brought from *China*, is received here. The collector of these duties has so profitable a post, that he generally makes his fortune in one year. This country is frequented with prodigious flights of all kinds of wild ducks.

*Urik*, a *Slobode* or Suburb on a rivulet of the same name, consists of several well-built houses, which few towns in this country can equal.

On an island formed by the river *Angara* are two salt-works, which plentifully supply the whole District of *Irkutz* on this side the lake of *Baikal*, and part of that of *Ilimsk* with salt.

*Olonki*, a *Slobode* or village, which consists of two large villages, lies in a very pleasant situation; and the adjacent country yields plenty of corn.

*Beskoi* and *Idinskoi Ostrogs* are but inconsiderable places.

*Balaganskoi Ostrog*, on the *Angara*, was built before that of *Irkutz*, and is a place of some note. It is defended only by two pieces of brass cannon. Near this *Ostrog* are about sixty good dwelling-houses, which are partly inhabited by *Slushawies* or irregular troops, and partly by traders, who are all in very good circumstances.

*Wercolenskoi Ostrog*, which stands on the river *Lena*.

3. The Circle of SELENGINSK, or *Selengiskoi Uiezd*.

The following places of note lie in this District.

*Selenginsk*, a town situated on the river *Selenga*; was made an *Ostrog* in 1666; but about twenty years after that, the fort, which is now standing, was built; and to this the place owes its prosperity. The town lies parallel to the river, and contains two churches and one hundred and fifty houses, which are inclosed in the fortification. The latter is defended by five pieces of brass cannon, and as many iron guns; and the garrison consists of a regiment of soldiers. The inhabitants have the nickname of *Pesofsniki*, from the great quantities of sand found in these parts. The whole adjacent country is very mountainous and barren; but there is good arable land fifteen *Wersts* below it. The country about *Selengisk* yields a very great plenty of rhubarb; and all the rhubarb that is exported from *Russia* grows in these parts.

*Strielki*, a fort erected on a point of land between the rivers *Tshikoi* and *Selenga*, is also called *Petra i Pawolofkaia Krepost*, i. e. 'the fort of *Peter* and *Paul*.' It is a square inclosure, surrounded with pallisadoes, and includes the garrison church, and that of the *Chinese* caravans; and likewise the habitations and magazines belonging to the latter, the soldiers barracks,

&c.

&c. The houses of the commandant, soldiers, and other inhabitants are built without the pallisadoes. This place ought to be garrisoned with a whole regiment for the defence of the frontiers; but, at present, it is not complete. The adjacent country is fertile and pleasant.

*Troitzkaia Krepost*, on the small river *Kiakta*, is a fort lately built on the frontiers, and consists of an *Ostrog* with four bastions. All traders and merchants who pass through this place are obliged to pay duty for their goods, unless they quit the road, and go another way to avoid the fort.

*Kiakta*, or *Kiaktinskoi Krepost*, and *Kiaktinskaia Torgowaia Sloboda*, are the limits between *Russia* and *China* towards the South, as they were settled by Count *Sawa Wladislawitz Raguzinski*, according to a treaty concluded in 1727. Before that time the river *Bura*, which lies about eight *Wersts* further towards the south, was looked upon as the boundary between the *Russian* and *Chinese* Empire; and this was more conformable to the natural division of the countries, as well as more advantageous to *Russia*, than the present limits; which are arbitrarily laid out across deserts, and over mountains, and ascertained by pillars erected along the frontiers, and properly numbered. By this alteration of the frontier, the *Russians* have also lost the excellent iron-ore which the mountains near the river *Bura*, and no other place in these parts, afforded. Two *Slobodes*, one of which is inhabited by *Russians* and the other by *Chinese*, were erected on the banks of the little river called *Kiakta* in the year 1727: the former lies on the north, and the latter on the south side of the river. They lie about a hundred and twenty fathoms asunder, and are surrounded with an *Ostrog*; and the *Russian Slobode* is further defended by six bastions and a moat. Between these two *Slobodes* a barrier is erected, and a guard placed, who, on both sides, are very careful that no encroachments be made on the frontiers. As the *Slobodes* are situated in a barren waste, all sorts of provisions are very dear there. The *Chinese* traders are more numerous than the *Russian* merchants in these frontier towns.

*Tunkinskoi Ostrog* lies to the west of *Kiakta* in Latitude  $50^{\circ} 15'$ ; and, consequently, is placed too far to the north in the maps. In the neighbourhood of this *Ostrog* live the roving *Soictians*, who are pagan *Tartars*.

On the other side of *Selenginsk*, near the lake of *Baikal*, lie the following remarkable places.

*Udinsk*, which is a small town on the river *Uda* that runs into the *Selenga* not far from this place. In the year 1670, an *Ostrog* was erected on this spot; and in 1688, a fort was built here, which stands on the east side of the town upon a hill, and is defended by five brass guns. The town consists of one hundred and sixteen dwelling-houses, and round it are fine fields and meadows, with great plenty of wood. *Udinsk* also stands on a navigable river; and the road to the south and east frontiers of *China* lies through this town. Here is plenty of provisions, particularly garden fruit and



and fish; and about the latter end of *August* great numbers of *Omuli*, which are a species of whittings, are caught in the river *Selenga*.

*Iliinskoi Ostrog*, or *Bolsbaia Saimka*, which stands on the river *Selenga*.

*Troitskoi Monastir*, an ancient, stately, and rich convent.

*Kabanskoi Ostrog* is built near the brook *Kabana*, which, about half a *Werst* from this place, runs into a branch of the *Selenga*. The country hereabouts affords good arable land and excellent pastures.

*Pofolskoi Monastir*, a convent on the south side of the *Baikal*-lake.

*Itanzinskoi Ostrog* lies, indeed, in the District of *Selenginsk*; but properly belongs to *Nertshinsk*. This place is famous for *Bratski-work*, by which most of the *Russian* inhabitants get a subsistence.

*Barguzinskoi Ostrog* stands on the little river *Barguzin*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*.

4. The Circle of NERTSHINSK, or *Nertshinskoi Uiezd*.

In this District are,

*Nertshinsk*, a frontier town towards *China*, which was built on the river *Nertsha* in the year 1658. In the fort, which was the first beginning of the town, are thirty-two brass guns and one of iron. The town, besides some public edifices, contains one hundred and fifty houses, most of which are very meanly built. The inhabitants give themselves up entirely to sloth, drunkenness, and debauchery. The *Chinese* caravans formerly passed through this place; but now they take another road. However, the *Russian* Envoys are received and handsomely entertained by the *Chinese*, and the like compliment is paid to those of *China* by the *Russians*, in this town. A treaty of peace was concluded at *Nertshinsk* between *Russia* and *China* in the year 1689. This town seems to derive its name from the two small rivers called *Nertsha* and *Shinke*, between which it lies. The adjacent country is, indeed, very mountainous, but yields excellent pasture for cattle.

*Argunsk*, an *Ostrog* which lies on the west side of the *Argun*. It was first built in 1682, on the east bank of that river, for the conveniency of levying the tribute payable by the *Tungusians*, who inhabit these parts; but in 1689, *Argunsk* was built on its present situation. It is the furthest fort towards the East on the *Mungalian* frontiers; has a good garrison; and carries on a considerable trade with the *Mungals*. The adjacent country is very fertile, and the air salubrious, but so cold that in summer the earth, in many places, is not thawed above two or three feet below the surface. The territory of *Argunsk* is commonly subject to flight shocks of an earthquake in the spring, and about the beginning of winter. The diseases to which the inhabitants of the country about *Argunsk* are mostly subject, are Epilepsies, a distemper called *Woloffez*, and the *Lues Venerea*; and the last is so common here, that the young and old of both sexes are miserably afflicted with it. In these parts the *Chinese* erect every year new pillars, to mark the limits of their frontiers, on the eastern bank of the *Argun*.

Not far from *Argunsk* are the *Argunskian* silver-mines, which are also called the *Nertshinskian* mines. The smelting houses, which belong to

them, stand on the little river *Tufatki*, about fourteen *Wersts* from the river *Argun*, and six or seven from the rivulet *Serebrenka*. These works are built in a valley between two mountains, which extend a good way from West to East. The ore does not lie deep in the earth; though it is found in masses or *Strata*. The profit arising from these mines is not very great; however, it answers the expence of refining, &c. One pound of fine silver extracted from this ore contains the value of two ducats and a half of fine gold, which has a beautiful colour and is exceeding malleable. Twenty-six *Puds* and some odd pounds of pure silver, and twenty-seven pounds of fine gold, both which were the produce of this mine, were delivered in at *Petersburg* for the use of the crown in 1740 and 1741. Two leagues to the south-east of this place is a mountain of a beautiful green jasper, but not without a mixture of common stone; so that it is rare to meet with pieces weighing three pounds quite transparent and without flaws. In the neighbouring waste are several salt-lakes, one of which is above three *Wersts* in circumference; and on the surface of the water good common salt floats in great quantities.

*Sitanskoi Ostrog*, which stands at the influx of the river *Tshia* into the *Ingoda*.

*Terawinskoi Ostrog*, which lies on the bank of the lake *Terawna*.

5. The Circle of *YAKUTSK*, or *Iakutzkoi Uiezd*.

In this District are the following remarkable places.

*Yakutzk* lies near the river *Lena*, and consists of between five and six hundred houses meanly built; and a wooden fort stands near the town. It is supplied with plenty of several kinds of fish. The circumjacent country is, indeed, very fit for tillage; but the inhabitants choose to employ themselves in hunting.

*Olecminskoi Ostrog*, which also stands on the *Lena*, derives its name from the river *Olema*, which falls into the *Lena* about sixteen *Wersts* from this town. This is one of the oldest *Ostrog*s in these parts; but consists only of few mean houses, and has no more than forty-six peasants families in its territory. The country which lies between this place and *Witimsk* is level, and so fertile, that it might plentifully support a great number of inhabitants if they were industrious. The rye, barley, oats, and hemp which grow here, are very good in their kind; however, the country is but indifferently cultivated.

*Witimskaia Sloboda* is one of the oldest *Russian* settlements on the banks of the *Lena*, and is almost as ancient as the town of *Iakutzk*. It consists of few houses, a church, and a custom-house. Though this place lies in 59° 28' north Latitude, yet the harvest, when the weather proves favourable, is seldom later than the middle of *August* old stile.

Farther north towards the *Ice-Sea* is the river *Karaulac*, which runs into a bay of the *Frozen Ocean*. Near this river Lieutenant *Lassenius* wintered with his party in the year 1735, and from the sixth day of *November* to the eighteenth of *January* they never saw the sun above the *Horizon*.

6. The territory of *OcoTZK* lies on the coast of the sea of *Kamtshatka*, and takes its name from the *Ocotzkoi Ostrog*, which stands on the little river

river *Ocota*, and is the residence of a Governor, under whose jurisdiction are the *Ostrog*s of *Taviskoi*, *Udskoi*, and *Anadirskoi*. From the harbour of *Ocotzk*, which is three *Wersts* from the *Ostrog*, the *Russians* cross over into the peninsula of *Kamtshatka*. The soil about the *Ocotzkoi Ostrog* produces little or no grass; and provisions are brought hither from *Iakutzk*, both by land and water. The last method of conveyance is very tedious, and attended with some danger: nor is the land-carriage free from difficulties; for the distance is nine hundred and nineteen *Wersts*, and the road lies over mountains, and through morasses and thick woods of larch and birch-trees, so that the journey takes up near six weeks. Besides, every thing must be carried this way on horses or rein-deer, and the latter are furnished by the *Tungusians* who live in the neighbourhood of *Ocotzk*.

The north-east extremity of *Siberia* is still but very little known. The cape at the furthest north point of this country called *Tshuketzkoi*, [in the maps *Shalaginskoi Nofs*] is in *Siberia*, and consequently belongs to *Russia*. Near the promontory, or north-east point of the continent, is an island called *Diomedes*; and near the east point lies the island of *St. Laurence*.

7. The peninsula of *KAMTSHATKA* runs upwards of one hundred and fifty *German* miles into the sea towards the south-east; on the North it joins to the continent; to the West and South of it are the bay of *Penshinsk* and the sea of *Kamtshatka*; and towards the East it is bounded by the *Eastern Ocean*. From the extreme south-east point of this peninsula a chain of great and small islands extends as far as *Japan*. On some of these islands are *Volcano's*, or burning mountains; and several of them are subject to terrible earthquakes. On the peninsula of *Kamtshatka*, not far from the river of the same name, which runs into the *Eastern Ocean*, there is also a burning mountain, and violent shocks of an earthquake are often felt in the neighbourhood of it. Some species of plants that grow in *Lapland*, and others that were thought peculiar to *Canada* in *North America*, are found here, which is something remarkable.

Since the beginning of the present century some *Russian* colonies have settled in these parts, and built several forts and villages. The most remarkable among these are,

*Nishnei Kamtshatzkoi Ostrog*, which stands near the mouth of the river *Kamtshatka*.

*Werknei Kamtshatzkoi Ostrog*.

*St. Peter* and *St. Paul's Harbour*.

*Bolskeretzkoi Ostrog*.

I cannot pretend to say more of this country, which is so little known, with any certainty. Of *Kamtshadalen* I have given some account above.

*Note.* *KAMTSHATKA* has, of late, been rendered famous by the attempts made from thence, to discover whether *Siberia* be joined to *America* towards the North; or whether there be a north-east passage by sea between these two continents.



The Czaar *Peter the Great* gave orders, that Captain *Beering*, a *Dane*, who took along with him Lieutenant *Spangenberg*, who was also a *Dane*; and *M. Tshirikow*, a *Russian*, should sail from hence to make this discovery. After that Emperor's death, the same Gentlemen were actually sent out by his consort and successor the Czarina *Catharine* in the year 1725; but, after spending about five years in the voyage, they returned, without success, in the spring of the year 1730. They sailed as far as the sixty-seventh degree of North Latitude; and found that the land extended no farther towards the North.

In the year 1732, the very same sea-officers were sent out a second time in prosecution of this discovery. *Spangenberg* steered his course to the South-east, arrived at the northern coast of *Japan*, and from thence sailed back to *Ocotzk*.

Captain *Beering*, accompanied by one *M. Steller*, set sail from *St. Peter* and *St. Paul's* harbour, and steered towards the South-east; but meeting with no land after he had sailed about two hundred and fifty leagues, he directed his course to the North-east, and, at last, discovered land towards the North-west. On the twentieth of *July* 1741, he anchored near an island in  $59^{\circ} 40'$  North Latitude, to which he gave the name of *Elias-Island*. From thence he sailed betwixt the south and west points nearer to the continent of *America*, of which he also had sight. After this, he landed on an island in the fifty-third degree of North Latitude, and had some little traffick with the *Americans* who lived upon it: to this island Captain *Beering* gave the name of *Skumagin*. In the fifty-first degree and odd minutes of North Latitude, he discovered an island to the North-west-and-by-north, which he called *St. Martians Island*. Two days after, he saw several other islands to the North-north-west, to which he gave the name of *St. Stephen's Islands*; and the next day he discovered another island to the West, which he called *St. Abraham's Island*. The Captain, in his return, was shipwrecked on an island near the coast of *Katmskatka*, where he ended his days. In 1742, the rest of the crew arrived safe at the harbour of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, in a small bark which they had made out of the wreck of the ship.

*M. Tshirikow*, who was accompanied by Professor *De l' Isle de la Croyere*, set sail from *Kamtshatka*; continued his course till he came within fourteen degrees west of *California*, and sailed twelve degrees and a half to the north of that country where no voyager had been before. *M. Tshirikow*, on his return, saw land for several days together to the North of his course, and when he sailed near the coast, he could distinguish the inhabitants; and several of them rowed to him in small boats, like those used by the *Greenlanders* and *Esquimaux*. Perhaps, this land is a continuation of that near the *North Pole*, which joins to *America*. From these discoveries of the *Russians* it may be concluded, that *Asia* and *America*, about the sixty-sixth degree of North Latitude, are separated from each other only by a very narrow channel.

---

T H E

K I N G D O M

O F

P R U S S I A.

---





---



---

# INTRODUCTION

TO THE

## KINGDOM OF PRUSSIA\*.

§. 1. **M.** *Henneberger's* map of *Prussia*, which was first published in 1576, and afterwards in 1638 and 1656, is the first map of this country that is delineated with any accuracy. This was the ground work of the maps published by *Janſſon*, *Danckert*, *Witten*, *Viſcher*, *Schenk*, *Homann*, and *Seutter*. However, a truly correct and useful map of *Prussia* may be ſtill looked upon as one of the geographical *Deſiderata*. The map delineated by the King's order in 1703, by *M. Suckodoletz*, chief ſurveyor of the canals and dikes, has, indeed, the reputation of a very good performance, which makes me wiſh for the publication of it. *Prussia* is alſo ſometimes included in the maps of *Poland*. In the year 1733, a map of *Lithuania*, conſiſting of two ſheets of royal paper, was published: this has the name of every particular place; but, at the ſame time, is far from being accurate.

§. 2. *Prussia* is bounded partly by water, and partly by other countries. Towards the North it borders on part of *Samogitia*, towards the Eaſt on the *Lithuanian* Palatinates of *Trocko* and *Podolia*; to the South of it lie *Poland* and *Maſovia*; and to the Weſt it is bounded by *Polish Prussia* and the *Baltic*. The length of it, from the northern extremity near *Deuſch-Krottingen* to *Soldau*, is forty *German* or geographical miles, and the breadth, from the borders of the great Dutchy of *Lithuania* near *Schirwind* to the weſtern coaſt of *Samland*, is twenty-four *German* miles; but in other places it is much narrower.

\* By the Kingdom of *Prussia* the Author does not mean *Regal Prussia* or *Prussia Royal*, which is ſubject to *Poland*; but only that part which by other writers is called *Ducal Prussia*, and belongs to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*.

## INTRODUCTION TO

§. 3. As to the climate and temperature of the air, the two last months of the spring, and the two first summer months are temperate, warm, and pleasant; and the weather generally very favourable to bring the fruits of the earth to maturity: But before and after these months the air is cold and piercing; the autumns being often wet, and the winters severe. However, the air is well purified by frequent storms and high winds. As for the distempers peculiar to *Prussia*, the inhabitants are more subject to the gout and stone than to the scurvy.

§. 4. The soil produces plenty of corn, esculent herbs, fruit, and pasturage. *Prussia* also abounds with flocks and herds, and exceeding fine horses; its chief commodities are wool, honey, wax, pitch, pit-coal, flax, hemp, hops, and buckwheat.

This country also affords plenty of game, as white and common hares, elks, stags, deer; roebucks, and wild boars, but, at the same time, it is infested with beasts of prey as lynxes, wolves, foxes, and bears. As for wild asses and horses, they seem to have deserted *Prussia* of late; and the buffaloes that used to frequent this country have been extirpated by the poachers.

Woods, and especially those of oak, are said to be greatly diminishing in *Prussia*; particularly in the lesser *Lithuania*.

The *Prussian* Manna, called *Schwadengruffe*, is found in the meadows on the top of a kind of grass, and gathered in the morning whilst the dew lies on it. *Natangen* yields the best sort, and in the greatest plenty.

The beautiful red colour, called *St. Johns blood*, is made of the eggs of a small insect or worm frequent in this country.

Amber is found in vast quantities on the coasts of the *Baltic* in *Prussia*, especially on the *Samland* shore. It owes its origin to a sulphurous matter; and is pellucid, and generally of a yellow colour: But the white sort is accounted the best. If Amber be well rubbed, it attracts light substances: It is also inflammable; and when it is burnt, the odoriferous effluvia of it surpass those of frankincense or mastic. It likewise yields an acid spirit. That it was once in a fluid state, is manifest from the leaves, minerals, flies, spiders, gnats, ants, fishes, frogs, worms, drops of water, pieces of wood, and grains of sand, which are frequently seen inclosed in Amber. It is generally found on large trees, which are buried under ground in a vitriolic earth, and contain an oily substance. Hence some are of opinion that the oil, being coagulated by the acidity of the vitriol, becomes a solid body, which we call Amber; and that it is washed off the trees by the agitation of the waves in high westerly or northwest winds, and driven on shore. Amber was exceedingly valued by the ancient *Romans*. The profits arising from it is one of the *Prussian Regalia*, and amount annually to 26,000 dollars, or thereabouts. It is chiefly used by the turners, who make several sorts of toys of it.

This

This country yields neither salt, wine, nor minerals; however, it contains iron ore in some places. It is for the most part a level champaign country. Among the *Prussian* mountains that of *Goldap* near the town of the same name, and *Goldberg* near *Neidenburg*, are the highest.

§. 5. The lakes, rivers, and canals of this country, together with the neighbouring sea, afford a variety of excellent fish; as salmon, sturgeon, cod, turbot, soles, *muræna* (a kind of lampreys which are peculiar to *Pomerania* and *Prussia*) hallybuts, pikes, perch, plaice, eels, &c. &c.

The principal rivers in the Kingdom of *Prussia* are,

1. The *Weichsel*, or *Vistula*, of which an account will be given in our description of *Poland*. In 1734, his *Prussian* Majesty established a ferry over this river at a small distance from *Marienwerder*, which is the only place where it waters the Kingdom of *Prussia*; the *Poles* not admitting of it in any other part.

2. The *Pregel*, formerly called *Prigora* and *Pregolla*, is formed by the conflux of the *Angerappe* and the *Insler* near *Georgenburg*, from whence it is navigable for large boats. This river, in its course, receives the *Pisse* the *Alle*, and the *Deume*; and divides itself into two branches or channels about a *German* mile and a half above *Konigsberg*. The branch on the right hand is called the *Old*, and that on the left, the *New* or the *Natangian Pregel*. These two channels meet at *Konigsberg*; and, after surrounding the *Kneiphof*, unite again. About a *German* mile from that city, the *Pregel* runs through two channels into the bay called *Frische Haf*.

3. The *Memel* or *Mummel*, called by the Antients *Chronus*, and by the *Poles* *Niemen* or *Nemoin*, has its source near *Slonin* in *Lithuania*; and is joined by the *Schessupe*, the *Iubr*, and the *Tilse*. The banks of this river are high and fertile. About a *German* mile below *Tilsit* it loses its name, and runs through several channels, the principal of which are the *Gilge* and *Russe*, into the *Curische Haf*. In *Poland* it runs a course of near seventy *German* miles, and about thirteen in *Prussia*. The *Gilge* has a communication with *Fridericks Graben* and the *Deume* or *Deine*, a branch of the *Pregel*; which greatly facilitates the carriage of corn, flax, hemp, wood, pot-ash, and other *Polish* commodities to *Konigsberg*.

4. The *Passarge*, which rises near *Hochstein*, and empties itself into the *Trische Haf* a little beyond *Braunsberg*.

5. The *Alle*, which has its source in *Ermeland*, and runs into the *Pregel* near *Weblau*.

These rivers abound with fish and are partly navigable; but at certain times of the year, and in high winds, they are apt to overflow their banks and cause terrible inundations.

This country is also watered by several large bays, lakes, and canals, which yield great plenty of fish, and the conveniency of a communication by water between several towns for the carriage of merchandise, &c. the principal of these are,



## INTRODUCTION TO

1. The *Frische Haf*, in Latin *Sinus Venedicus*. This bay or lake is from one and a quarter to three *German* miles in breadth, and twelve in length: Near *Pillau* it has a communication with the *Baltic-Sea*, by a strait called the *Gatt*. In other places it is separated from the *Baltic* by a narrow slip of land called the *Frische Nerung*, which was thrown up by the waves, and a long continuance of stormy weather, in the year 1190. The *Gatt* is about an *English* mile in breadth, and twelve feet in depth: But the *Frische Haf* is not so deep as the river *Pregel*; so that no ships of burden can sail upon it, but are obliged to unload at *Pillau*.

2. The *Curische Haf*, in Latin *Lacus* or *Sinus Curonicus*. This bay, which derives its name from the Dutchy of *Courland*, is thirteen *German* miles in length and six in breadth. It is separated from the *Baltic* by a narrow ridge of land called *Curische Nerung*; but joins the sea near *Memel*, where it is about an *English* mile broad, and nineteen feet deep. This bay is full of dangerous shelves and sand-banks, and is agitated by frequent storms. The coasts of it on every side are inhabited by fishermen, who are all included under the general name of *Curen*.

As for the inland lakes, of which this country has a great number from one to eight *German* miles in length, and one or two in breadth, those of *Spirding*, *Angerburg*, *Rein*, and *Drausen* are the principal.

§. 6. The number of inhabitants in this Kingdom were computed, in the year 1755, at 635,998 persons capable of bearing arms. They consist of native *Prussians*, who by their language and manners appear to be genuine descendants of the *Germans*; *Lithuanians*, whose ancestors were the *Schalarvians* and *Nadravians*, and have their peculiar language; and *Poles* who are descended from the *Sudavians*. Here are also a great number of *French*, *English*, and *Hollanders*.

Since the year 1719, it is computed that about 34,000 Colonists have removed from *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Germany*, into the Kingdom of *Prussia* \*, 17,000 of whom were *Saltzburghers*; and that they have built four hundred small villages, eleven towns, eighty-six seats, fifty new churches, and founded 1000 village-schools, in this country. *Little Lithuania*, as it is called, is for the most part peopled by those colonies. But it is thought that *Prussia* can afford both room and subsistence for as many more emigrants.

The *Prussian* Nobility are mostly descended from the ancient *Germans*. Most of the peasants are vassals either to the King or the Nobles.

§. 7. As to their religion, the inhabitants of this country in general are Lutherans; but as great numbers of the colonists are Calvinists, they have also their churches not only in the cities and towns, namely, *Konigsberg*,

\* The author says *Royal Prussia*; which expression would mislead the reader, as that name is applied by other geographers to *Polish Prussia*.

*Memel, Insterburg, Gumbinnen, &c.* but likewise in some villages they have a particular church appropriated for their use, and in other places perform divine service in the Lutheran churches. The Papists have but one church at *Konigsberg*, and another near *Tilsit*; besides the *Holy-Marienlinde*, as it is called, and some few in the villages. Here are also *Mennonites*, who are settled in the District of *Tilsit*; and *Socinian* congregations at *Ruteu, Andrefwalde, and Natanger*.

The name of the first Bishop of *Prussia* was *Christian*, who was consecrated in the year 1215. Bishop *William* divided all *Prussia* into four dioceses; namely, those of *Culm, Ermeland, Samland, and Pomesan*, who were all suffragans to the Archbishop of *Riga*. When the Margrave *Albert* secularised this country, he committed the direction of Ecclesiastical affairs in the greatest part of *Prussia* to the Bishop of *Pomesan*, and invested the Bishop of *Samland* with the diocese of *Samland* and the territory of *Sehesten* in *Natangen*. In the year 1587, both these Bishopricks were suppressed, and in lieu of them, the Consistories \* of *Samland* and *Pomesan* were erected, the former of which is held at *Konigsberg*, and the latter at *Saalfeld*. To these consistories King *Frederick William* added the general Ecclesiastical and Scholastic Commission, which controuls all accounts, and gives proper vouchers, &c. for the ecclesiastical revenues. In subordination to this Commission, the churches within every *Haupt-Amt*, Government, or District, have their *Erz Prieſter*, i. e. 'Arch Presbyter, or inspector.' In matrimonial and ecclesiastical processes, there lies an appeal from the Consistory to the *Hofgericht*, or Supreme Court of Judicature.

§. 8. The University at *Konigsberg* is, at present, under good regulations, and in a flourishing condition. There are also three large schools at *Konigsberg*, besides the *Collegium Fredericianum*; and provincial schools are erected at *Saalfeld, Lik, and Tilsit*. The country schools have also been lately put on a tolerable good footing; and the masters are paid from particular funds appropriated for that laudable purpose, and from the *Mons Pietatis* founded by King *Frederick William*.

§. 9. The manufactures in *Prussia* are daily improving and increasing; particularly the glass and iron works; paper, powder, copper and brass mills; manufactures of cloth, camblet, linen, woven silk, stockings, &c. *Prussia* is also very conveniently situated for trade; and for the advancement of it, the College of Commerce and Navigation has been erected, which takes cognizance of all cases, and settles all disputes and proposals relating to trade and commerce.

The commodities of *Prussia* and *Great Lithuania*, which are vended to foreign merchants, and annually exported by shipping, are all kinds of grain to the amount of 20,000 Lasts a year, pine trees for masts, deal boards, and other timber, tar, wood ashes, pot-ash of which about

\* These are something like the *Presbyteries* in the *Kirk of Scotland*.



two tons and a half are annually exported; elks skins, leather, furs, amber, 12,500 stone of wax, honey, grass-manna, lin-feed oil, flax, hemp, lin-feed and hempseed, 4000 lasts of the former, and seven hundred of the latter being exported every year; also yarn, hogs bristles, stags horns and elks hoofs; oat-meal of all kinds, mead, dried fish, sturgeon, caviar, lampreys, saufages, butter, and tallow of which 3400 stone are exported every year. Most of these commodities, as grain, flax, hemp, lin-feed, &c. are brought in the spring from the *Great Dutchy of Lithuania* into *Prussia* by water.

The number of foreign ships, that resort hither to load with these goods, are supposed to amount to about five hundred and fifty, which also import such commodities as are wanted here, *viz.* wine, salt, spice, linen, cloth and other woollen-stuffs, herrings, tin, iron, copper, lead, tobacco, sugar, rice, coffee, tea, raisins, almonds, prunes, indigo, brasil wood, &c. *Konigsberg* is the great mart and magazine for all sorts of merchandise which are exported from the Kingdom of *Prussia* and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* to foreign countries. *Memel* carries on a considerable trade with *Samogitia*; and *Tilsit* deals largely with *Poland* for wood.

The *Prussian* coins are as follows:

Six *Pfennings* (which, however, are but imaginary pieces of money) make a *Prussian* or Polish *Schilling*.

Three *Schillings* make a *Prussian* or Polish *Groschen* \*.

A *Brandenburg* piece of six *Pfennings* contains two *Groschen*.

An *Ort* is eighteen *Groschen*, which is the highest *Groschen* piece.

A dollar † is equal to three *Guldens*, ninety *Groschen*, five *Achtzehners*, fifteen *Seschers*, thirty *Dutchens*, or two hundred and seventy *Schillings*. From *Dantzic*, bills of exchange are drawn on *Konigsberg*; and at the latter bills are drawn on *Amsterdam*. Ducats, Specie-Dollars, two-third Pieces, and other foreign gold and silver coin, are also current in *Prussia*.

§. 10. The ancient *Prussian* history is involved in obscurity. About three hundred years before the birth of Christ it is said that this country was possessed by the *Aestians*, a Gothic people; and after that, by the *Alanians*, *Vandals*, *Gallindians*, *Sudavians*, and *Sclavonians*. These different nations at last became one people; and were for a long time without any particular Chief or Sovereign. The common tradition concerning King *Widemut* and his twelve sons is a fabulous account supported only by *Stella*, an author who deserves but little credit; for none of the ancient historians of the greatest repute for veracity confirm that circumstance.

The amber, with which *Prussia* abounds, was the allurements which raised the curiosity of the ancient *Romans*; and induced them to penetrate into this country, and subdue it. That part of *Prussia* which lies beyond

\* A *Groschen* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of a penny sterling, and 18 *Groschen* is 8d.  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

† A Dollar, or ninety *Groschen*, &c. is equal to 3s. 6d. sterling.



the *Vistula*, and borders on *Germany*, submitted to the Emperor *Charles the Great*, and though some time after, it recovered its liberty, it was again reduced, and obliged to pay tribute.

The name of *Prussen* or *Prussians* was first known in the tenth century; but it was written several different ways by the old historians, viz. *Pruci*, *Prucci*, *Pruzi*, *Pruti*, *Bruti*, and *Bruchii*; so that its etymology is very uncertain. That which appears most probable to some writers is, that the former inhabitants, alluding to their proximity to the *Russians*, called themselves *Porrussi*, i. e. 'bordering on the *Russians*;' for *Po* in the old *Prussian* language signifies *near* or *hard by*.

From that æra the *Prussian* history begins to clear up; for the Kings of *Poland*, in that age, took great pains, and even made use of compulsion and force of arms, for the conversion of the Pagan *Prussians* to Christianity. *Boleslaus I.* began by chastizing the *Prussians* for the murder of St. *Adalbert* or *Albert*, who was desirous of being the Apostle of that nation. His successors, from time to time, had several quarrels with the inhabitants of *Prussia*; and *Boleslaus IV.* who committed dreadful ravages in their country, lost his life in an unsuccessful battle, which was fought in 1163.

In the thirteenth century, the *Prussians* laid waste *Culm*, *Cujavia*, and *Masovia*; upon which *Conrad*, Duke of *Masovia*, was obliged to solicit assistance from the Princes that were in alliance with him. All these wore the sign of the cross, which they also carried into the field against the *Prussians*, looking upon them as enemies to the Christian name. But all their efforts proving ineffectual, the Duke applied to the *German Knights* of the *Teutonic Order*, or the Cross-bearing Knights, and strongly represented to them the great importance of defending the frontiers. Accordingly, in the year 1230, they obtained the Palatinates of *Culm* and *Doberzin* for twenty years, and afterwards for ever; together with the absolute property of any future conquests in *Prussia*. These Knights \*, after long and bloody wars during the space of fifty-three years, by the assistance of the *Ensigneri*, or Sword-bearing Knights, subdued the whole country; and in 1309, the Grand-Master of the Order fixed his residence at *Marienburg*. After this, a war broke out between the *Teutonic Knights* and the *Lithuanians*, which was attended with the most dreadful outrages, and destruction of the human species. This Order was now become exceeding insolent and cruel; but its dignity received a terrible blow in the year 1410, when, after a most obstinate and bloody battle, they were totally defeated by the *Poles* near *Tannenberg* and *Grunwald*.

In the year 1454, one half of *Prussia* revolted from their obedience to the *Teutonic Order*, and declared for *Casimir III.* King of *Poland*. This

\* These *Teutonic Knights* made religion the cloke of their ambitious views, and committed the most inhuman barbarities, destroying all before them with fire and sword, under pretence of propagating the Gospel of Peace. It is agreed by all, that they quite extirpated the native *Prussians*, and planted the *Germans*, their countrymen, in their stead; though our author is silent on this head.

occasioned fresh effusions of blood ; till, at last, in the year 1466, it was concluded by treaty, that one part of *Prussia*, now called *Polish Prussia*, should continue a free province under the King's protection ; and that the Knights and the Grand-Master should retain the other part ; which, however, they were to hold as a fief, and acknowledge themselves vassals of *Poland*. The Knights, soon after, endeavoured to throw off this yoke ; but did not succeed in their attempt. In 1519 they stirred up new wars, which were terminated in 1525, by a treaty of peace concluded at *Cracow*. It was then agreed that the Margrave *Albert*, Grand-Master of the *Teutonic Order*, should be acknowledged Duke or Sovereign of the east part of *Prussia*, which he was to hold as a fief of *Poland*. These territories, however, were to descend to his male heirs ; and, upon failure of male issue, to his brothers and their male heirs. Thus ended the Sovereignty of the *Teutonic Order* in *Prussia*, after it had subsisted three hundred years. The new Duke favoured the introducing of the reformed religion into his dominions ; and in 1544, founded an University at *Konigsberg*.

The Elector *Joachim* added the Dutchy of *Prussia* \*, to the dominions of the Electoral house of *Brandenburg*, with which it had been closely connected for a long time before. The reign of the Elector *George William* was unfortunately distinguished by the disorders and calamities of the thirty years war ; in which *Prussia* suffered extremely from the ravages of the *Swedes*. His son, the powerful Elector *Frederic William*, at first, indeed, sided with the *Swedes*, but soon after went over to the *Poles* ; and in 1657, was, by the conventions of *Welau* and *Bromberg*, acknowledged by *Casimir* King of *Poland* to be free from the vassalage, and, together with his male descendants, declared independent and Sovereign Lord of his part of *Prussia*. He also obtained a grant of the Lordships of *Lauenburg* and *Butow*, to be held in the same manner as they had formerly been by the Dukes of *Pomerania*. He further increased the power of his electoral house by other acquisitions ; and was justly stiled *The Great*.

*Frederick William's* son and successor, the Elector *Frederick*, raised the Dutchy of *Prussia* † to a Kingdom ; and on the eighteenth of *January* 1701, with his own hands put the crown on his head and on that of his consort at *Konigsberg*. He was, soon after, acknowledged as King of *Prussia* by all the other Christian Powers.

King *Frederick William*, who came to the throne in the year 1713, peopled his country by the favourable reception he gave to the distressed *Saltzburghers* ; and rendered his reign glorious by a great number of useful and magnificent foundations.

\* Now called *Ducal Prussia*, or rather the Kingdom of *Prussia*, of which the author is here treating.

† i. e. 'Ducal *Prussia* which was then erected into a Kingdom ;' but Royal *Prussia*, as it is called, is still under the dominion of the *Poles*.

This monarch was succeeded in 1740 by King *Frederick II* \*, who has annexed to his dominions the greatest part of *Silesia* and *East-Friesland*, and promoted the happiness of his subjects by an amendment of the laws, the increase of commerce, and other wise and wholesom regulations.

§. 11. The royal Arms are, *Argent*, an eagle displayed *Sable*, crowned *Or*, for *Prussia*. *Azure*, the imperial sceptre *Or* for *Courland*. *Argent*, an eagle displayed *Gules* with semicircular wreaths, for the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*. To these are added the respective arms of the several provinces, that are subject to the *Prussian* crown.

§. 12. The Order of the *Black Eagle*, which was instituted by King *Frederick I.* on the day of his coronation at *Konigsberg*, is the chief *Prussian* Order of Knighthood. The ensign is a cross of gold, in the shape of that of *Malta*, enamelled with blue. In the middle of it on one side is a cypher of the King's name F. R. and at each of the four angles next the middle is a black eagle displayed. This cross the Knights wear appendent to a broad orange-coloured ribbon over the left shoulder, across the breast, to the right hip. On the left side of their breast a silver star is embroidered on the coat; and in the middle of it a black eagle *Volant*, with a laurel wreath in one of its talons, and in the other a thunder-bolt, with this motto *SUUM CUIQUE*. The Sovereign is always Grand Master of this Order; and the number of Knights, exclusive of the royal family, is limited to thirty.

Next to this is the order of *Merit*, instituted by his present Majesty; the Ensign of which is a golden star of eight rays enamelled with blue, which is worn appendent to a black ribbon edged with silver; and the motto is *POUR LE MERITE*.

§. 13. Instead of the ancient *Comtureyen* and *Land-comturen*, or provincial Divisions, the Margrave *Albert* instituted *Haupt-aemter*, i. e. Governments or Jurisdictions; and *Frederick II.* appointed nine Chambers of Justice for determining causes in trade, and even ecclesiastical affairs. These are subordinate to the *Hofgericht*, or High Court of Judicature, at *Konigsberg*, to which there lies an appeal from them. From the *Hofgericht* also, (except in criminal cases, when a report is made at Court) an appeal lies to the *Ober-Appellations-Gericht*, or the Supreme Court of Appeals, where the Chancellor sits as president. According to the nature of the cause, on depositing the *Succumbenz-Gelder*, or Court fees, it may be farther removed to the *Secret Chamber of Justice or Revisions* at *Berlin*, which is called the *Hoflager*. The Supreme College in *Prussia* is the *Koniglich Regierung*, or

\* This is the Monarch that now sits on the Throne, whose uncommon abilities have rendered him the admiration or envy of the other *European* powers. That this Heroic Prince may extricate himself from the difficulties, in which he is at present involved, must be the ardent wish of every Protestant and friend to Liberty.



Royal Court of Regency, which superintends all the affairs of the whole kingdom, whether they be political, civil, or ecclesiastical; and likewise all feudal and academical causes. Every member of this college is stiled a Privy Counsellor or Minister of State and War, and has his particular department. These are five in number, and have two Secretaries. *Prussia* has its own particular Digest of laws, which was published with amendments in the year 1721. There are, besides, two Chambers of War and the Demesnes, erected by King *Frederick-William*, one at *Konigsberg*, and the other at *Gumbinnen*; which have the direction of all matters relating to the Excise, the Revenue, Commerce, Manufactures, Magazines, Forage and whatever belongs to the Colonies. Every War and Demesne-Counsellor has his peculiar department. Subordinate to these are, the Counsellors of the Taxes, the Provincial Receivers of the Taxes, the Commissaries of War, the Officers of the Excise and Licences, the farmers of the Royal *Aemter* or Districts, and the Officers of the revenues in cities and towns.

§. 14. The chief sources of the Royal Revenue are the produce of the Excise, Customs, and Services; Stamp-paper, Almanacs, and News-papers; the Farm of the royal *Amts* and Demesnes; the corn-mills in large towns, with the several other kinds of mills; the timber trade; duties arising from venison, and the skins of stags, elks, and other beasts; mast in the royal forests; the King's studs of horses; the salt and iron-works; the post-houses; granaries; manufactures; the fiefes and Knights military service; the Chest of forfeitures, and the Recruit-Chest, into which the purchase-money of posts and employments is paid; amber; sturgeon fisheries, and all other kinds of fisheries. The taxes are certainly heavy in *Prussia*; and whoever would live independent either in town or country must be very careful and industrious; and, indeed, such persons seldom fail of getting a fortune here, when trade is brisk.

§. 15. The *Prussian* military forces, especially in the reign of his present Majesty, have been no less formidable for their discipline than by their number. And it may be asserted with great truth, that for a fine appearance, military discipline, and activity, the King of *Prussia's* army has not its equal in the whole world. The Corps of Cadets at *Berlin* is a nursery for good officers. Every regiment has its District or Canton, where the young men belonging to it are registered; and, in case of necessity, may be ordered to march. His *Prussian* Majesty has lately issued an Order, signifying, that all the regiments shall be recruited with volunteers and foreigners; and that the young peasants of *Prussia* shall remain unmolested.

§. 16. Formerly all *Prussia* consisted of the eleven following Districts; namely, *Samland*, *Sudauen*, *Nadrauen*, *Schalauen*, *Natangen*, *Barthenland*, *Galinderland*, *Hockerland* or *Pomesania*, and the territory of *Culm*. After that it was laid out in two principal divisions, *viz.* the Kingdom of *Prussia* and the Dutchy

Dutchy of *Prussia* \* : we shall speak of the latter in our description of *Poland*. The Kingdom of *Prussia* is divided into three parts, namely, *Samland*, *Natangen* and *Oberland*; and each of these is subdivided into certain *Haupt-aemter*, Jurisdictions or Governments. Subordinate to the latter were particular *Kammer-aemter*, or inferior jurisdictions; but these were superseded in the year 1751, by nine colleges, or Courts of Judicature, established in *Brandenburg*, *Insterburg*, *Lik*, *Memel*, *Mobringen*, *Neubausen* and *Klein-beyde*, *Neidenburg*, *Rastenburg*, and *Saalfeld*.

Next to these are the Chambers or Offices, of War, and the Royal Demefnes, mentioned in §. 13.

This Kingdom, at present, consists of two Departments; namely, the *German* and the *Lithuanian* Department. We shall, in the first place, treat of the former.

\* The author cannot mean here *Regal* and *Ducal Prussia*, which division he seems to take no notice of; for the former belongs to *Poland* and the latter to the King of *Prussia*. *Ducal Prussia* is at present a Kingdom, but *Polish Prussia* is seldom called a Dutchy.



---

T H E  
G E R M A N D E P A R T M E N T  
O F  
P R U S S I A

**I**NCLUDES forty-four towns, fifty-six *Amts* or Governments, and two hundred and eighty parishes, seven of which are inhabited by Papists, and seven by Calvinists; but the rest by *Lutherans*.

Before I proceed to describe the several *Amts* or Governments, I shall in the first place give some account of the capital of the whole Kingdom; namely,

KONIGSBERG, called in Latin *Regiomontum* or *Mons Regius*, and in the *Polish* language *Krolawies*, the metropolis of the Kingdom of *Prussia*, is seated on the river *Pregel*, over which it has seven bridges, and lies in  $54^{\circ} 43'$  North Latitude. This city was founded in the year 1255, when *Ottocarus*, or *Premislaus I.* King of *Bohemia*, came to the assistance of the *Teutonic* Knights against the Pagan *Samlanders*. For a castle was first built by his advice, and afterwards a town, which was named *Konigsberg* in honour of that Prince. In the year 1264, *Konigsberg* was rebuilt on another situation, and in 1286, obtained the Privileges of *Culm*, as they are called. It is a large beautiful city; and the rampart with which it was surrounded in the year 1626, is about seven *English* miles in circumference, and has thirty-two *Ravelins* and eight gates. This rampart incloses several gardens, the large castle moat, and some meadows and fields. The whole circuit of the city is above eight *English* miles. The number of houses is about 3800; and the inhabitants amount to 60,000 souls. *Konigsberg* properly consists of three towns joined together, namely, *Altstadt*, *Lobenicht*, and *Kneiphof*, (the two first lying in *Samland*, and the last in *Natangen*;) and of several suburbs.

*Altstadt*,



I. *Altstadt*, or the Old Town, was particularly called *Konigsberg* till the year 1455; but afterwards, to distinguish it from *Lobenicht*, was named *Altstadt*. It contains sixteen streets, and five hundred and fifty houses, above one hundred of which are malt-houses and brew-houses. It is embellished with six gates, besides four posterns; two strong built towers, and four bridges. Its public edifices are,

The parish-church of *St. Nicholas*, which is eighty-five ells long, forty-seven broad, and twenty-seven ells and a half high within the church.

The *Altstadt* Parish-school, which has five classes and nine masters. In this edifice the City-library is at present, which *Mr. Lilienthal*, besides his judicious arrangement of it, increased with a third part of the collection. Among other valuable books in this library are the following; viz. a large collection of Bibles, *Augustine Pfeifer's Rabbinical Library* entire, and a great number of genealogical books.

The *Pauper-haus* house, as it is called, for the maintenance of thirty poor scholars.

The *Rathhaus* or Town-house.

The *Funkerhof*, which was rebuilt in 1710, where weddings and other solemnities are celebrated, with the *Funker-garten* belonging to it. In the latter the *Altstadt* beer is sold; and the Burghers and others meet there to make merry: This garden was originally designed for the recreation of the Traders and Beer-brewers.

The *Gemeingarten*, or common garden, which is frequented by artizans, and others of the lower class; and lastly, the hot baths.

The suburbs of *Altstadt* are,

1. The *Steindamm*, which is extremely well built, and consists of the *Vorder-Steindamm*, and the *Hinter-Steindamm*. It contains eleven streets; and in it stands the oldest church belonging to *Konigsberg*: It was built in the year 1255, and belongs to the *Polish* congregation. Here is also the *Dinghaus*, an edifice in which formerly was held the Court of Judicature for the suburb of *Steindamm*.

2. The Suburb called the *New Ross-garten*, part of which was formerly reserved for pasture for the horses and cows belonging to the inhabitants of *Altstadt* and the suburb of *Steindamm*; and the rest was arable land. On an eminence in this suburb stands the *Ross-garten* church; and the Preacher belonging to it is a member of the *Altstadt*-clergy. The large Hospital for the Burghers widows, the Orphan-house and Pest-house which belong to *Altstadt*, and also the shooting ground, are in the *Ross-garten*.

3. The *Laacke*, in which are, the city timber-yard, the long pleasant walk called *Reifferbahn*, and the large town-meadow which lies between the old and new moats.

4. The *Lastadie*. In this suburb are the following public edifices, &c. the *Altstadt*-Merchants-magazine, the Weigh-houses, the Pack-houses, the

Herring-bridge, the *Krabnbof* or Crane-wharf, the *Weinbof* or Wine-wharf, the *Teerböf* or Tar-wharf, and the King's Licence-house, in which the Colleges of Admiralty and Licences, &c. meet every week on *Mondays* and *Thursdays* in the fore-noon. Without the wooden gate of *Altstadt* or the old town, lie the coal-magazines, many of which are now converted into dwellings; and opposite to it is the ox-market, with the slaughter-houses belonging to *Altstadt*. Farther on the right hand, is the *Lomse* or *Lanse*, as it is called, on which handfom houses with delightful gardens have lately been built.

Lastly, The *Damm*, on which manufactories for stockings, woollen cloth, and leather are erected, belong to *Altstadt* or the old town.

II. *Lobenicht*, which was built about the year 1300, was formerly called *Neustadt*, or the new town. It has four gates, and is divided into two parts. One of these, which stands on an eminence, is generally called *Der Berg*, and contains the city-church, the city-school, and the *Gemeingarten*, or public garden. In the other part, which lies lower, are the Town-house, the *Junkerbof*, and the Weigh-house; the large Hospital, which has a church, and was once a convent; and the *Munckenbof*, which was formerly a monastery, but since converted into a store-house.

Without the gate of *Lobenicht* are the suburbs called *Old* and *New Anger*, *Steegen*, and *Sackheim*.

*Sackheim* is the most ancient of all the suburbs belonging to *Konigsberg*, and is almost as old as the city itself. It consists of five long streets, which are intersected by several cross-streets or lanes. A Roman-Catholic church, an Evangelical or *German* Lutheran church, and a *Lithuanian* Lutheran church stand in this suburb. *Sackheim* also contains the royal Orphan-house with its chapel, founded in 1701, and consecrated in 1703; the King's *Great* and *Little* Timber-yard and the offices belonging to it.

III. *Kneipbof* is the most modern or the latest built of the three towns; for it was not founded until the year 1324. It stands on an island formed by the river *Pregel*; and, for want of a solid foundation, the buildings are erected on piles of Alder-tree, which by length of time are become as hard as iron. It has five large gates and thirteen streets; and among the latters the *Lange Gasse*, or Long street, is the finest in the city of *Konigsberg*. Among the public edifices in *Kneipbof* the following are the most remarkable.

1. The fine cathedral which formerly stood in *Altstadt*, or the old town, but in 1332, was built here by order of Duke *Luderus*. In this church stand the famous organ which consists of 5000 pipes, and was finished in the year 1721.

2. The *Wallenrod* library, which, contains above 5000 volumes; is above the cathedral.

3. The *Kneipbof* Grammar-school stands in the cathedral church-yard.

The *Pauper-haus* stands near the cathedral, in which thirty poor boys are decently provided with all kinds of necessaries. On

On the other side of the cathedral stands the Bishop's palace, which at present is taken up by the Court chaplains.

4. The University or college, as it is called, with the buildings appertaining to it, stands near the cathedral. This University, from the name of the city, is called *Academia Regiamontana*, and from its founder *Academia Albertina*, and *Academia Pregelana* from the river *Pregel*. It was founded in the year 1544 by the Margrave *Albert*, and has thirty-eight Professors exclusive of the *Magistri* or Tutors. In the refectory of the University are eight tables; and twelve persons sit at each of them. Twenty-eight of the students have their commons *gratis*, besides several exhibitions or pensions, which are bestowed according to merit, and the circumstances of the pupils.

5. The edifice where the Royal German Society meet stands near the University.

6. The Town-house is a very fine building, where the magistrates of the three towns, which were incorporated in 1724, meet every day.

7. The *Junkerhof* at *Kneiphof*, which is appointed for the same uses and under the same regulations as the *Junkerhof* in *Altstadt* mentioned above.

8. The *Junker-garten* and the *Gemein-garten*, which lie near the rampart and the river *Pregel*.

9. The stately Exchange for merchants, which stands near the *Green Bridge* built over the *Pregel*, was rebuilt in the year 1729, and is embellished with very curious paintings in sixty compartments. Not far from the Exchange is a foundation for students.

To *Kneiphof* belong the *Exterior* and *Interior Suburbs*, which consist of a broad street, and the *Schnurleinsdamm*, as it is called. On the *Lastadie* stand the merchants Ware-houses, the Wood-Magazine, and a house of correction.

The Exterior Suburb consists of a broad street, and several cross lanes. In this Suburb are, the *Old Garden*, the *Upper* and *Lower Haberberg*, and the *Nasse-garten*, which plentifully supplies the city with all kinds of culinary roots and esculent herbs.

In the Interior Suburb lies St. *George's* hospital, which belongs to *Altstadt*, where sixty poor persons are maintained, and have a chapel in which they perform their devotions. On the *Upper Haberberg* stands an alms-house for the widows of the Burgers of *Kneiphof*; and *Haberberg* church is one of the most elegant in all *Königsberg*.

We come, in the next place, to speak of the Palace with the suburbs belonging to it. This edifice is built in the form of a Parallelogram, or an oblong square; and the area within it is one hundred and thirty-six common paces in length, and seventy-five in breadth. The north side appears to be the most ancient, and even to have been built in the time when the Knight's of the *Teutonic Order* flourished. The east and south



wings were built by the Margrave *Albert* the elder; and the Margrave *George Frederic* added the west side of this structure. In the last arc, the *Lutheran* Court-church, the library which is open on *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays* from one of the clock till four in the afternoon; the Demesne-office, the Supreme Court of Justice, the Archives of the court, the *Samland* Consistory, which was removed hither in 1699; the *Muscovite* hall, as it is called, which is two hundred and seventy-four feet in length, and fifty-nine broad; the *Collegium Medicum*, or College of Physicians, who assemble by the direction of the consistory. In the east wing are the great palace-gate, with several apartments for the principal ministers of state, and the royal apartments; and in a pavillion the Chamber of War, the Demesne Chamber, the Accompt and Rent Chambers, the Excise-Office and other Colleges. The north wing contains the Amber-Office, the Private Chancery, with the Archives of the Prussian *Hofgericht*, or Supreme Court; the Fief Chamber; the *Officium fisci*, or Revenue-Office; the Privy-Council Chamber where the Lords of the Regency meet; the Accomptant's Office; the *Collegium Sanitatis*, or College of Health; the Archives relating to hunting; the High Tribunal; and the apartments in which the States of the country assemble, and the provincial chests are deposited, &c. In the south wing are several kitchens, and apartments for the Royal Family and foreign Princes; at one end of it stands the *Schloß-thurm*, or Palace-tower, which is ascended by two hundred and eighty-four steps, and yields a noble prospect of the whole city, with a great part of the adjacent country, and the *Frische Haf*. The stables, where the ward-robe is also kept; the pleasure-garden; the bear-garden; and the great and little park are great embellishments to the palace. The five following Suburbs, or Liberties, as they are called, also belong to the palace.

1. The *Burgfreyheit*, which includes the area about the Palace, and several streets. The most remarkable places in this Suburb are, the mint, where formerly a convent stood; the *German* Calvinists church, the new *French* church, and the place of worship for the *Polish* Protestant congregation, who assemble in the *German* school; the *Jews* school, in the street called *Kebrwieder-Gasse*; the canal or moat belonging to the Palace, with pleasant gardens adjoining to it; and lastly the *Collegium Fredericianum*. This College is pretty much on the same footing as the *Pædagogium Regium* at *Halle*. As many students as the College will contain have apartments in it; and when they exceed that number, they are recommended to lodge in creditable houses in the town.

2. The *Tragheim*, which is divided into three parts. Remarkable places in this Suburb are the *Tragheim* church, and several pleasant gardens; the Convent for ladies; and the *Scalichenhof*, famous for having been the residence of the celebrated *Dr. Paul Scalichius*.

3. The two *Rofs-gartens*, which consist of a long street, with some lanes running parallel to it, and two or three cross streets. This Suburb affords nothing remarkable but a church and school.

4. The *Neue-Sorge*, which is, at present, called *Konighadt*, contains a great many elegant houses.

5. A part of the Suburb called *Sackheim*, which has been described above in the account of *Lobenicht*.

The strong citadel called *Fredericksburg*, which was built in the year 1657, stands directly facing *Kneiphof* at the conflux of the two branches of the *Pregel*. This fort is a regular square surrounded with broad ditches and the river *Pregel*, which is there increased by the canal or dike called *Kupferteich*. A church and an arsenal stand in the citadel.

We shall farther take notice of the following particulars relating to *Konigsberg*. Ever since the year 1731 the streets of this city have been illuminated every evening with 1253 lanterns\*.

*Konigsberg* has always made a considerable figure in commerce and shipping, and was formerly a member of the *Hanse*-towns-association. Its trade is still in a flourishing condition; and the river *Pregel*, which is here navigable for the largest ships, and from one hundred and twenty to two hundred and forty feet in breadth, renders this city very fit for commerce. In the year 1752 four hundred and ninety-three ships arrived in this port, besides two hundred and ninety-eight *Strusen* and *Wittinen* †, and three hundred and seventy-three floats of timber.

Most of the inhabitants of *Konigsberg* are *Germans*, who are of the Evangelical or Lutheran profession; and a colony of *French* Calvinists consisting of about fifty families is settled here. Commerce has also introduced the *Polish* and *Lithuanian* languages into this city.

Above eight hundred indigent persons receive weekly pensions out of the general charitable fund, besides the poor who are provided for in almshouses and hospitals.

In the year 1724, *Altstadt*, *Lobenicht* and *Kneiphof* were united, and the courts of Judicature belonging to the three towns, Suburbs and Liberties were incorporated.

In the year 1701, *Frederick* I. crowned himself King of *Prussia* with his own hands at *Konigsberg*.

We shall now proceed to give an account of the several *Haut-aempter*, or Governments in this Department.

\* I suppose this city is illuminated, like *Paris*, with candles set in lanterns which hang to lines tied across the streets, and not with globular lamps.

† Smaller vessels so called, I presume.

## I. G E R M A N S A M L A N D,

Which contains the three following Governments, *viz.*

I. **T**HE *Haupt-Amt*, or Government of FISHHAUSEN, to which the *Kammer-Aemts* or inferior Jurisdictions of *Dirschkeim*, *Kragau*, *Palmniken* and *Lochsted*, are subject. It includes ten churches, which are under the inspection of the Arch-Presbyter of *Fischbausen*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Fischbausen*, a small town, which from the year 1289 to the Reformation was the residence of the Bishops of *Samland*. The castle is inclosed with a wall and a moat.

*Pillau*, the bulwark and key of *Prussia* towards the sea, is a city strong with a fine harbour: It is well fortified, and stands on a point of land that projects into the sea. The streets are broad and run in a straight line, and the houses are built and furnished in the *Dutch* taste. This city is frequented by people of various nations, some of whom are settled here, and others belong to the foreign ships in the harbour. Vessels of great burden are cleared and take in their lading here; for the *Frische-haf* has not a sufficient depth of water to carry them up to *Konigsberg*. The fort is nearly a regular pentagon. The bastions make a grand appearance; and all the buildings belonging to the fortifications are strong, handsome, and regular. It has also a magazine for military stores. Below the gate of the castle is a stone equestrian statue of *Frederick William the Great*; and over the gate a fine watch-tower is erected, where a centinel stands upon duty day and night. There is also a church in the fort, which serves both for the Lutherans and Calvinists. Over the gate, on one side of the entrance towards the outworks, stands the image of *Mars*, in a bold attitude, looking towards *Sweden*. The fort is well planted with cannon.

*Note.* The peninsula, along which the road from *Pillau* to *Fischbausen* lies, is called the 'Paradise of *Prussia*,' from its extreme pleasantness and fertility; for it yields not only the necessaries of life in great plenty, but also every thing that contributes to pleasure and entertainment. Near the fort is a fine plain, where the *Frische-Haf* forms a fine semicircular bay, which is frequented by great numbers of swans, sex-mews, wild ducks, and other water-fowl. On the other side of this bay lies *Alt-Pillau* or *Old Pillau* consisting of two contiguous villages, namely, *Alt Pillau* and *Wogram*, which are inhabited by fishermen. In *Alt-Pillau* is a public burying-ground, where all the dead belonging to *Pillau* are interred. Near the church on a steep hill stands the *Pfundbude*, which was formerly the Custom-house, when.



when the sea came up so far. This strong lofty edifice serves as a landmark for ships bound to *Pillau*; and accordingly they pay a small duty towards the support of it. Nothing can exceed the prospect which this place affords; for it extends to a part of *Samland*, *Nataugen*, *Ermland*, and several miles beyond *Pillau*, and is diversified with the view of the ships coming in and going out of the harbour, and the *Nerung* or narrow slip of land that lies between the haven and the sea. In *Wogram* near the *Frische-Haf* lies the *Storbude*, where the sturgeons are boiled and packed up, and likewise where Caviar is made of the roe of that fish; and most of these are exported to *England*. The fishermen in these parts catch no less than thirty different species of sea and fresh-water fish; in the *Drosselzeit*, or thrush-season here are astonishing flights of thrushes, black-birds, and magpies. A great number of kitchen-gardens and orchards are to be seen round these villages. After passing the delicious spot about *Alt Pillau*, you cross over a barren piece of ground to a well cultivated farm, and the *Pillau Krüge*, as it is called, which is a public house standing in a most delightful grove, consisting of various kinds of trees, which grow so close together as to afford a good shelter from the rain. It was, probably, from this charming grove that the adjacent country acquired the name of Paradise. Such, however, is the 'Paradise of *Prussia*.'

*Tenkitten*, or *St. Albrecht*, was formerly a village with a church; and the ruins of the latter are still to be seen. *Tenkitten* church was built in honour of *St. Adalbert*, who suffered martyrdom in this place on the twenty-fourth of *April* in the year of Christ 997. Here also formerly was a deep channel through which the ships used to pass. Amber is gathered along this whole coast, being left on shore by the sea; and the inhabitants also frequently dig and fish for it. Fine gray writing sand is likewise thrown up here by the waves.

*Locksted*, a small and mean town, where the marks of a channel are still plainly seen, which may now be safely crossed either on horse-back or in a carriage. Part of the ancient famous castle of *Locksted* is still remaining, in which is to be seen the dreadful prison or dungeon where criminals were confined by the ancient Sovereigns of this country.

*Galgarben*, formerly called *Geylgarben*, a village near which is the highest hill in *Prussia*, which is said to have been thrown up by the ancient Pagan inhabitants. This place was formerly fortified, and the Sovereigns of the country resided in it.

2. The Government of *SCHAAKEN*. In this *Haut-amt* are ten churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Schaaken*; and the following places of note,

*Schaaken*, an old castle with a small town, lies about half a *Gemau* mile from the bay called *Curische-Haf*. It was taken by King *Ottocar* from the Pagan inhabitants; but was afterwards rebuilt and improved by the

Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. It is the residence of the *Amts-baupt-man* or Governor ; though he generally lives in the neighbourhood of the town. The whole country hereabouts is quite level. Passengers usually embark at this place to cross to *Memel*.

*Rudau*, a church-village, which, on account of its situation in a defile, was formerly fortified with a castle, which now lies in ruins. This place is remarkable for the victory obtained by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in 1370, over *Kinstud* Great Duke of *Lithuania*, in memory of which a stone pillar was erected in a field near the village of *Tranzau*, which is still remaining. The miracle of the blood said to have been found in the chalice at the celebration of the Eucharist in this village, in the year 1615, may be explained by natural causes. A great many ancient monuments of the Pagan idolatry are still to be seen in the neighbourhood of *Rudau*.

The *Vier Bruderseule*, which monument, in all probability, was erected to the memory of four brothers or Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who about the year 1295 were attacked by surprise and killed on the spot by the Pagan *Sudavians*, stand in the middle of the road in the *Capornischen Heide*, or heath of *Caporn*, which is a royal forest stocked with elks and roe-bucks. The statues on the top of these four pillars or pedestals have a good attitude and are very well executed. These monumental statues have been repaired and kept up, from time to time, for the space of four hundred years, sometimes by the Prefecture of *Caporn*, sometimes by the society of hunters, in whose district it stands, and sometimes by the Governments of *Schaaken* and *Fischhausen*, according to the directions of the Sovereigns of the country.

*Kaymen*, a large church village and Prefecture, where the unhappy peasants made an insurrection in the year 1525; but were soon reduced to obedience.

The *Curische Nerung*, in Latin *Peninsula Curonensis*, may very properly be taken notice of here, though a part of it only belongs to this Government. This narrow slip of land reaches from the village of *Kranskrug* almost to *Memel*, and separates the *Baltic-sea* from the *Curische-Haf*. It is about sixty *English* miles in length, and in most parts one in breadth. This peninsula is a barren, sandy tract of land, where the high winds often make great ravages by blowing up the sand into ridges and hills, which obliges the poor inhabitants often to remove their dwellings, and tear up great numbers of pine-trees by the roots, which lie scattered about till they rot. Most of the trees, particularly on the *Baltic* side, are more or less blasted, and appear like bare trunks. This wood, however, affords shelter for stags, falcons, and thrushes. The bottom of the *Curische-Haf* is clayey and stony, which, with the many capes projecting from it, renders it very dangerous for mariners. There are several small, mean villages on the peninsula called *Nerung*, among which the following belong to the Government of *Schaak*, viz. *Sarkau*, which has a church; *Lattenwald*; *Kunzen*, which has  
also



also with a church; *Roffitten*, in which formerly a *Burgraf* resided, and where the ruins of an old castle are still to be seen; and *Pilkoppen*, where stands a high hill, on which the *Prussian* idol called *Pilkov* was formerly worshipped. The villages of *Nidden*, *Carwaiten*, *Negeln* and *Schwartzort*, the inhabitants of which subsist by fishing, and have very few cattle, belong to the Government of *Memel*.

3. The Government of *LABIAU*, including eleven churches, five of which are under the jurisdiction of the Senior Court-chaplain at *Konigsberg*, and the remaining under the Arch-Presbyter of *Labiau*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Neubausen*, an old castle, lying about six *English* miles from *Konigsberg*, which formerly served as a summer retirement for the Canons of *Konigsberg*. The Margrave *Albert* was so fond of this place that he often spent some time here, and diverted himself with hunting. Here is a Court of Justice for the Governments of *Fischbuaßen*, *Schaaken*, *Labiau*, and *Tapiau*.

*Kalthof*, and *Waldau*, are two Prefectures in this Government. The former remarkable for its fine situation, and an elegant house of entertainment, and the latter for several remains of antiquity.

*Klein Heyde*, a pleasant royal manor.

*Labiau*, a trading town on the river *Deine*, with an ancient castle.

*Rautenburg*, a good town belonging to Count *Keyserling*.

*Note.* In this Government are several navigable rivers abounding with fish, and canals or dikes lately cut. Among the latter are the following.

The *New Deim*, which begins at the royal manor of *Schmerberg*, and is carried in a direct line for two *German* miles and a half as far as *Tapiau*, where it joins the *Pregel*.

The new *Gilge* which reaches from the church-village of *Lappenen* to the village of *Skepen*, where it runs into the river *Gilge*.

Two new canals called the *Great* and *Little Frederick's Graben*, which join the river *Deim* with the *Wippe* and *Nemmonin*, and also joins the latter with the *Gilge*. This work, which is so convenient for the trade with *Poland*, was executed between the years 1688 and 1696 by order of the Countess dowager of *Waldburg*, who was born at *Rauter* in *Rautenburg*. The *Little Frederick's Graben* begins at the river *Gilge*, not far from *Rautenburg*, is about six *English* miles in length, and extends as far as the fishing village of *Petricken*, where it falls into the river *Nemmonin*. The *Great Frederick's Graben* commences at the *Wippe*, which is a branch of the river *Nemmonin*, is carried on for three *German* miles to *Labiau*, and then joins the river *Deim*. The Counts of *Waldenburg* received a toll from all vessels which passed by this canal, till the King purchased that right in the year 1713, and made it a part of the royal demesnes. The inhabitants on the banks of this canal are termed *Grabeninker*, and, at present constitute a distinct *Amt* or Government called the *Graben Amt*.



4. The Government of TAPIAU, containing eighteen churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Welau*. In this Government are the following towns, &c.

*Tapiau*, a regularly built, but mean little town, which had no privileges nor so much as a magistrate till the year 1722. It stands at the conflux of the *Pregel* and the *Deim*; and has a large castle, which is surrounded with a moat, where, formerly, the records of the Kingdom were kept. Duke *Albert* died here in the year 1568.

*Welau*, an ancient, well built town founded in 1336, stands on an island at the conflux of the *Alle* and the *Pregel*. It lies properly in *Natangen*, and yet belongs to this Government. This town consists of two principal and five cross streets, two suburbs, and two hundred and sixty-four houses. It has about one hundred and fifty burghers, besides the other inhabitants. After the fire, which broke out here in 1736, the buildings have been much improved; however, *Welau*, never recovered its former trade. This town is chiefly remarkable in history for the treaty concluded here with *Poland* on the nineteenth of *September* 1657, when the Elector *Frederick William* was invested with the Sovereignty of *Ducal Prussia*; and this investiture was also ratified at *Bidgost*, or *Bromberg*, in *Poland*.

*Sanditten*, a noble seat with a fine manor near the *Pregel*, belongs to Count *Schlieben*.

*Taplaken*, a seat and Prefecture. In the adjacent country were formerly *Buffaloes*, which the inhabitants in snowy-weather housed in their barns.

*Allenburg*, an obscure little town; but it is well situated on the river *Albe*.

*Wohnsdorf*, a castle pleasantly situated between *Allenburg* and *Friedland*. It is famous for its antiquity, and belongs to Baron *Schroder*.

## II. O L D N A T A N G E N.

THIS country is populous and well cultivated, and consists partly of arable and partly of meadow land; so that agriculture and grazing turn to good account here. Though the soil is in some parts very stony, yet it produces better corn than *Samland* or *Little Lithuania*. It is also well wooded and yields all sorts of game, and plenty of fish.

*Old Natangen* contains the following Governments.

1. The *Haupt-amt* or Government of BRANDENBURG, which includes the *Amts* or Prefectures of *Karschau Hobbeldude*, *Uderwangen*, and *Dollstadt*. It also contains twenty-nine churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the principal court chaplain at *Konigsberg*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Brandenburg*,

*Brandenburg*, an indifferent town, with some good houses in it, but mostly inhabited by fishermen. It lies at the mouth of the *Humtau* near the *Frische-Haf*. The large castle of *Brandenburg* was built in the year 1266 by *Otho*, Margrave of *Brandenburg*; and was destroyed by the *Prussians* in 1520, but afterwards rebuilt. This was formerly a *Comturey*, as it is called; but Duke *Frederick* abolished that privilege, and made it a Government, whose chief officers are stiled directors of the provincial council.

*Charlottenthal*, a fine seat in a pleasant situation, built by *Frederick Lewis*, Duke of *Holstein Beck*, who named it *Charlottenthal* from his Lady *Charlota*.

*Friderickstein*, a noble seat, is most delightfully situated, and belongs to Count *Donhof*, who is also proprietor of the manor of *Barten*.

*Kreutzburg*, a little town, which has an old castle built in 1252 by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*.

*Friedland*, a town on the river *Alle*, which has often suffered by sieges both from the *Poles* and *Swedes*; and also by frequent fires.

*Domnau*, a mean town with a castle. Several monuments of antiquity are to be seen in the neighbouring country.

*Gross-waldeck*, a seat of the Barons of *Kittlitz*, to whom it was granted in 1536 by the Margrave *Albert*. On the same spot formerly stood the convent of the Holy Trinity; and the inn which stands near this seat is still called the Convent-Inn. The city of *Romouwe*, which was the chief seat of the Pagan idolatry of these parts, stood in the same situation.

2. The Government of *BALGA*, containing fourteen churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the Senior Court-Chaplain of *Konigsberg*. In this Government are the following places of note.

*Balga*, a town seated on the *Frische-bef*, with a very old castle which was taken by the Knights of the *Teutonic* order so early as the year 1238. It was formerly a *Comturey*, which Duke *Frederick*, Grand-Master of the Order, converted into a *Haupt-amt* or Government.

*Bladiou*, or *Pladia*, a small town, or village.

*Zinten*, a small town, which has often suffered by fire. In the year 1520, the *Poles* were defeated near this place.

*Heiligenbeil*, in Latin *Sancta civitas*, and in the *Polish* language *Szwiate Sickierka*, is a small town seated on the *Jafte* or *Garft*, which, a little below this place, joins the *Banaw*, and falls into the *Frische-kaf*. This town is said to have been founded in the year 1301. It is famous for fine beer and excellent white bread; as also for being the seat of idolatry of the ancient *Prussians*, who used in a very solemn manner to worship the idol *Cyretro* under a large oak in this place. The Christians who founded the new town, seem to have altered the ancient name of *Heiligstadt* into that of

of *Heiligenbeil* from the city arms, which are two axes or bills placed cross-wise. On the suppression of pagan idolatry, the consecrated grove which had been long inclosed, was also desecrated and thrown open to the great advantage of the town. As for the miracle related by modern writers of an ax with which the sacred oaks are said to have been hewn down, the ancient historians are entirely silent on that head. This town was totally destroyed by fire in 1463, 1519, and 1677.

*Lindenu,* a seat with an elegant garden belonging to Count *Seeguth*.

3. The Government of BARTENSTEIN lies in *Bartenland*, as it was formerly called, and contains sixteen churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Bartenstein*. The remarkable places in this Government are,

*Prussian Elau*, in Latin *Gilavia Borussia*, so called to distinguish it from *German-Elaw*, is a small town which was built in the year 1528.

*Landberg*, a small town, which, at present belongs to Count *Schwerin*. The famous *Andrew Grunbeyde*, who used to swallow knives, was buried here in 1645. A knife which he had swallowed was taken out of him by incision, without the loss of his life.

*Bartenstein*, the most regular and best built town in *Natangen*. It stands in a pleasant country on the river *Alle*, and has the precedency of all the towns in *Prussia*. Its old castle, which was built by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order* about the middle of the thirteenth century, was in ancient times frequently besieged. An Arch-Presbyter resides in this town.

*Kirsitten*, a seat belonging to M. *Kunbeim*.

*Gaalingen*, a seat of Baron *Eulenburg*.

*Pesten* and *Bucholts* are two estates belonging to M. *Kreytzen*.

*Stablauken*, an estate, the income of which is appropriated for the King's privy purse.

4. The Governments of GARDAUEN and NORDENBURG are also part of the old province of *Barten*. These united Districts was by grant from the Grand Master, which was confirmed by the succeeding Sovereigns, conferred on the brave *George Schlieben*, a Knight of the *Teutonic Order*, for himself and his heirs, in consideration of the important assistance brought by that Knight against the *Poles* in 1460; though several other noble families live within this hereditary Prefecture. It contains seven churches, which are under the direction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Rastenburg* and the consistory of *Samland*. In this Government are the following remarkable places.

*Gerdauen*, a small town built in the year 1325. It is seated on the river *Omet*, and has two seats or castles belonging to the Count and Baron *Schlieben*: the new seat is magnificent and has an elegant garden. The town derives its name from *E. Gerdaw*, a *Prussian Nobleman*, near whose castle it was built in the above-mentioned year. In a lake near this town is a floating island, which is a plat of ground covered with verdure, and driven



driven to and fro from one bank of the lake to the other. It was formerly three hundred and fifty paces in length, and two hundred and fifty in breadth; so that it afforded pasture for a hundred head of cattle: but at present it is divided into several little pieces which are continually decreasing. This island is called the *Gerdauen Almanac*, because the inhabitants of the town prognosticate approaching storms by its motions.

*Nordenburg*, a small town and castle, built by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order* in the year 1305. It stands on the north side of the *Afchwin*-lake, and belongs to Count *Schlieben*.

*Berkenfeld*, a fine seat and gardens, and a very profitable glass-manufactory, which belong to the same Nobleman, and also the two following seats, viz.

*Dombrosken*, and

*Adams-beide*. *Wandlacken* was purchased of Count *Schlieben* by King *Frederick William* for the sum of 42,000 dollars.

*Great and Little Benubunen* are two estates belonging to Count *Donhof*, which he purchased of Count *Lobndorf* in the year 1702.

5. The Government of *BARTEN* is a very pleasant country, which has induced many families of distinction to have their principal seats here. It includes eight churches, which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Prefbyter of *Rastenburg*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Barten*, a small but well built town, with a stately castle or palace. It was erected on the *Liebe* in the middle of the fourteenth century; and was formerly the residence of the Bishop of *Pomesania*, and the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*.

*Drengfurth*, a little town which stands at the foot of a mountain, was built in the year 1403.

*Scandalack*, a seat of Baron *Buddenbrock*.

*Neubof*, a seat belonging to Baron *Heideck*.

*Steinort*, a fine seat with a good estate belonging to it, is the property of Count *Lobndorf*.

6. The Government of *RASTENBURG*. The Arch-Prefbytery of *Rastenburg* is very extensive, and comprehends not only the eighteen churches belonging to this *Haupt-amt*; but also those included in the Governments of *Barten*, *Sebestein*, *Rbain*, and *Gerdauen*. Places of note in this District are,

*Rastenburg*, a handsome town with a castle seated on the river *Guber*. It was founded in the year 1329; and though it was destroyed by the *Lithuanians* in 1348, it was soon rebuilt, together with its castle, and put in a more defensible state than before. It is inclosed with a wall, and, in the year 1669, it was also surrounded with a rampart. The *German* parish-church is the largest and handsomest structure of that kind in all the *Prussian* inland towns, except the cathedral of *Marienwerder*; and the senior of the three Ministers belonging to it has also the superintendency

of forty-six churches. The church of *St. Catharine* stands in the suburbs of *Rastenburg*, and is one of the most ancient in the Kingdom of *Prussia*; and in the middle of the great *Hospital* is the church of the *Holy Ghost*. This *Hospital* was founded in the year 1361, and consists of two wards, where twenty indigent persons are comfortably provided with food and a pension in money. In the second hospital twenty-five poor persons are maintained by the alms and donations of well-disposed benefactors. Here is a school under the direction of a Rector and three Assistants. The Burghers, most of whom are *Lutherans*, are about two hundred. The inhabitants of this town are supported by some little commerce, brewing, agriculture, and mechanic trades. This town is possessed of the largest territory of any inland town in all *Prussia* except *Fischhausen*; for it consists of two hundred and thirty-eight Hides of land. A post-house is also set up here. *Rastenburg* castle was the residence of forty Commanders and nine Grand Masters of the *Teutonic Order*, from the year 1356 to the secularization of the country. In the year 1531, a conference was held here betwixt the Lutherans and the Anabaptists.

*Die Heilige Linde*, called in the *Polish* language *Swiata Lipka*, is a rich convent, which stands in a large wood on the King's land. It lies about a *German* mile and a half from *Rastenburg*, between the Episcopal See of *Ressel* and the village of *Beistack*. The pretended miraculous image of the *Virgin Mary* in this convent is visited by the Papists from all parts, and even from *Rome*; so that 10,000 persons have communicated here on the feast of the *Annunciation*.

*Schuppenbeil*, a middling town seated on the *Alle* near the influx of the river *Guber*, was built in the year 1319, and has suffered extremely both by the ravages of war and by fire. In the year 1750, half of it was burnt down; but it is already rebuilt with improvements.

*Leuneburg*, *Luneburg*, or *Eulenburg*, a town and seat belonging to Baron *Eulenburg*.

*Gross-Wolfsdorf* is a town, where the Counts of *Donhof* have built an elegant seat called *Donhoffledt*, with a fine garden and park, and likewise a Calvinist-church. This seat is accounted one of the finest in all the kingdom of *Prussia*.

*Gross-Schwansfeld* is a seat belonging to Baron *Groben*.

7. The Government of *ANGERBURG*, which is famous for producing the best *Schwade*, or *Prussian Manna*. The Arch-Presbyter of *Angerburg* has twelve churches under his jurisdiction.

Places of note in this District are,

*Angerburg*, which is a modern well-built flourishing town, surrounded with pallisadoes. It is also defended by a strong castle built in the year 1335 on the bank of the lake where the river *Angerapp* has its source. This lake, which is seven *German* miles in length, and one and a half in breadth,

breadth, is of great service to the town and abounds with eels. *Angerburg* church is a large handsome structure. In the year 1725, an Arch-Presbytery was founded here; and in 1734 and 1736 King *Stanislaus* made some stay in this town.

*Steinort*, a noble seat of Count *Lebendorf* with one of the finest gardens in all the country. The island belonging to this seat in the *Angerburg*-lake, and the summer-house built on it are extremely pleasant.

*Engelstein*, a village, with a handsome church, which stands in a thick wood. Here are several remains of antiquity.

8. The Government of *SEBESTEN* lies in the province of *Galindien*. It contains six churches which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Raßenberg*.

*Bofen*, a town seated on the *Sallen*-lake.

*Sebesten*, a small town with a castle, stands on a lake. It was built, in the middle of the fourteenth century, in a very pleasant situation. In the year 1520, it was sacked and burnt by the *Poles*, and, in 1568, was laid in ashes by an accidental fire.

*Aweyden*, an estate belonging to Count *Finkenstein*.

### III. O B E R L A N D.

**T**HIS country is fertile, rich, and well cultivated; and was formerly called *Hockerland*. Before the Knight's of the *Teutonic* Order invaded Prussia, *Hockerland* was so populous, that it could bring into the field an army of 10,000 effective men, consisting of horse and foot. But the *Hockerlanders* having, on several occasions, exercised great cruelties towards the Christians, the *Teutonic* Knights in the year 1273 attacked the country, laid it waste, and made themselves masters of it.

*Oberland* contains the following *Haupt-amts* or Governments.

1. The Government of *GILGENBURG*, which is an hereditary fief belonging to Count *Finkenstein*'s family. The churches in this Government are under the direction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Saalfeld*. There is a Calvinist-church at *Roschlau*, and a Popish-chapel at *Thurau*.

The ancient town of *Gilgenburg* lies on the river *Gilge* near a lake; the castle belonging to it is very large and commodious. After the battle of *Tannenburg*, which was fought in 1410, this town was laid in ashes; and in the year 1520 it was sacked and plundered. In 1578 it was entirely destroyed in the *Swedish* wars; so that even to this time it has not quite recovered its former condition.

2. The Government of *ORTELSBURG* and *WILLENBERG* contains nine churches, which are subject to the Arch-Presbyter of *Saalfeld*. In this Government are the following places of note,

*Ortelsburg*, a little town which is well situated and carries on some trade, with a fine old seat. On the twenty-second of *May* 1629, the



Electors *George William* and *Uladislaus* had an interview in this place. The adjacent country is interspersed with several lakes; and between these are fine arable lands, meadows, and woods.

*Passenbeim*, a small town seated on a lake, which was built at the close of the fourteenth century. This town never arrived at any pitch of prosperity, on account of the frequent calamities of fire, war, and pestilence it has, from time to time, experienced.

*Willenberg*, a small town on the frontiers of *Poland*, which obtained its privileges in the year 1723.

*Kuttenberg*, a village, with a hunting-seat. The adjacent country abounds with iron-ore.

3. The Government of *NEIDENBURG*, which the Elector *Frederick William* annexed to *Soldau*. It contains fourteen churches which belong to a particular Presbytery. There are two Popish chapels on the frontiers; and the Calvinists perform Divine Service in the castle of *Soldau*.

The following remarkable places lie in this Government.

*Neidenburg*, a handsome town situated in a very pleasant country, with a castle and a court of Judicature.

*Soldau*, called in the *Polish* language *Dzialdowo*, is a free town with a castle, and stands on a lake near the frontiers of *Poland*. It was built in the year 1306, and has often suffered by fire; especially in 1733 and 1748. The Arch-Presbyter resides in this town; which is remarkable for being the head-quarters of *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden* in the year 1656.

4. The united Governments of *OSTERRODE* and *HOHENSTEIN*. The churches in this Government are under the inspection of the Arch-Presbyter of *Saalfeld*. The places most worthy of notice in this District are,

*Osterrode*, a well-situated trading town, which stands on the lake of *Dribentz*, and a river of the same, which plentifully supply it with fish. The soil of the adjacent country is sandy; but at the same time fertile. The inhabitants of this town formerly carried on some trade with *Great Poland*. The castle of *Osterrode* was built in 1270 or 1302; and had formerly a *Teutonic* convent, and a *Commanderie*. In the year 1400, it was laid in ashes; and in 1737 a salt-factory was set up here. In the year 1740, and 1134, some ancient *Roman* coins were found at a little distance from this town, on the estate of *Gorlitz*, which belongs to the King of *Prussia*.

*Hohenstein*, a small town with a castle, which was built in 1312 at the source of the *Passarge*.

*Tannenberg*, a church-village, lies between *Gilgenburg* and *Hohenstein*, and is famous for the obstinate battle fought there on the fourteenth of *July* 1410, between the *Poles* and the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, wherein the latter were totally defeated; and from that time the Order visibly declined.

5. The Government of *DEUTSCH* or *GERMAN EYLAU*. In this District are two Popish churches; but the two *Lutheran* churches are subject to the

the Arch-Prefbyter of *Saalfeld*. This Government contains the following places of note.

*Deutsch Eylau*, an open small town with an old castle. It was built about the beginning of the fourteenth century, and stands near a large lake in a very pleasant country.

*Seewald*, a stately seat with fine gardens, and a paper-mill belonging to Count *Finkenstein*.

6. The Government of *MARIENWERDER*, and that of *REISENBURG* are both under one Governor; but the former is a Presbytery by itself. *Marienwerder* contains 11,000 hides of land, and its Arch-Prefbyter has six churches under his jurisdiction. The Arch-Prefbyter of *Reisenburg* is also a member of the Consistory of *Saalfeld*; and has the superintendency of the churches of three towns and ten villages, besides those of *Schonberg* District. The most remarkable places in this division are,

*Marienwerder*, called in Latin *Insula Mariana*, and in the *Polish* language *Kwidzin*, a well-built town with a castle, which stands on the frontiers of *Pomerania*, not far from the *Vistula*. It was formerly the residence of the Bishops of *Pomesania*, and of some Grand Masters of the *Teutonic* Order. *Marienwerder* was at first built in the year 1233, on a *Werder*\* or small island called *Quidzin*; but was soon after rebuilt on its present situation. The cathedral, which was erected about the thirteenth century, is the largest church in the kingdom of *Prussia*, being three hundred and twenty feet long; and by its strong breast-works seems to have formerly served for a fortress. The palace at *Marienwerder* is spacious and built in the old *Gothic* taste. The adjacent country is very pleasant, and full of eminences and gentle declivities. The inhabitants carry on a considerable trade with their neighbours. In the year 1723 salt-works were set up here, and a magazine for corn and forage in 1728. This town has often been damaged by inundations, war, and fire. The famous league formed by the towns and country against the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order was concluded here in 1440. This town held out against a vigorous siege in 1520; and in the year 1613, it was for some time the residence of the Elector *John Sigismund*. In 1709 the Czar *Peter the Great* and *Frederick I.* King of *Prussia* had an interview at this place. King *Stanislaus* retired to this town from *Dantzick* in July 1734. Both the suburbs of *Marienwerder* are continually improving. The adjacent country is fertile and well-inhabited; and the great sluice on the *Vistula* is kept in repair by assessments on the Government, the town, and the neighbouring nobility.

*Gardensee* or *Garnsee*, by the *Poles* called *Shlenno*, is a small trading town on the frontiers, situated in a very pleasant country. Its castle is very old.

*Reisenburg*, a mean town with narrow streets, stands on an eminence near the river *Leibe*, and derives its name from the adjacent *Prussian* territory, which was anciently called *Resin*. The *Poles* call it *Prabutba*, which

\* *Werder* signifies an island formed by a river.

signifies a ruinous house. The castle, which is more ancient than the town, stands on a hill, and is extremely decayed. It was the residence of the Bishops of *Pomesania* till the year 1587; and a conference for peace was held here betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes* in 1628; but without success. The town was built in 1169, and contains a *German* and a *Polish* church. The Burghers, besides some little commerce, subsist by brewing, agriculture, and feeding of cattle. In 1323, 1414, and 1422, *Reisenburg* was burnt by the *Poles*. It was also consumed by fire in 1628, 1688, and 1728. In the year 1556, an ecclesiastical synod was held here. In the neighbourhood of the town are three lakes, and higher up in the country are the ruins of a labyrinth made by the ancient *Prussians*.

*Birchowswerder*, a small town on the river *Asse*, was founded in 1325; but since the fire which consumed it in 1730, it has been rebuilt with more regularity.

*Freystadt*, a mean little town, but conveniently situated on a lake.

*Leistenau*, a seat and lordship belonging to Count *Dobna*.

7. The Government of *SCHONBERG*. The churches in this District are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Riesenburg*. The places of note in this Government are,

*Schonberg*, a village with a castle, which was built at the close of the thirteenth century, and belongs to the Counts of *Finkenstein*.

*Rosenberg*, a small town, situated near two fresh water lakes. It was built in 1319; and was almost totally destroyed by fire in the year 1400.

*Finkenstein*, otherwise called *Habersdorf*, is a small village with a stately castle and fine gardens, and belongs to the *Finkenstein* family.

*Langenau*, a church-village and a noble manor belonging to the *Kalhein* family. The church is famous for its beautiful paintings.

8. The Government of *MOHRUNGEN*, which the Elector *Frederick William* incorporated with *LIEBSTADT*. In the former are seven churches, and six in the latter, which are all subject to the Arch-Presbyter of *Holland*.

In this Government lies

*Mohrungen*, a little town, where Count *Dobna* has a remarkable seat. This town is said to have been begun in 1302, and completed in 1328; but the old castle had been erected in 1280. It is well-built and surrounded with good walls and a double moat, and almost encompassed on all sides by the *Mohrung*-lake and a large mill-dam. Not far from this place is the lake of *Scherting*. As this little town lies in the road to *Poland*, it is much frequented by strangers. In the year 1697 it was entirely destroyed by fire; but has been since rebuilt to greater advantage. The old castle was formerly a convent belonging to the *Teutonic Order*, and, together with the town, must have suffered greatly in the many wars in which those Knights were concerned. In 1410 it was taken by the *Poles*, and in 1461, it was retaken by the *Teutonic Knights*; but in 1520 it was burnt by the former.

*Reichertsvalde*,



*Reichertswalde*, a church-village, where the Counts of *Dobna* have an elegant seat with fine gardens.

*Liebstadt*, a small town with a castle, built in the year 1329, which, besides several accidents by fire, has likewise suffered much in the *Swedish* wars.

9. The Government of *PREUSCHMARK*, which is united with *LIEBMUHL* and *DOLLSTADT* under one Governor. Seventeen churches belong to this *Haupt-amt*, which are subject to an Arch-Presbyter who resides at *Saalfeld*. The remarkable places in this Government are,

*Preuschmark*, a small village dependent on that of *Liebwalde*. It stands near a fresh-water lake; and has a very strong and spacious castle built in a quadrangular form, and surrounded with a deep moat.

*Saalfeld*, a well-built middling town, in which a famous convent of *Bernardines* formerly stood. When the episcopal see of *Pomesania* was abolished, the *Oberland* Consistory was instituted here in its stead in the year 1587. The *Erzpriester*, or Arch-Presbyters of *Saalfeld*, *Riesenburg*, and *Holland*, have a seat in this Consistory, from which an appeal lies to the *Prussian* High Court of Judicature. In the year 1588, *George Frederick* founded the third *Prussian* school in this town.

*Christburg*, or *Alt-Christburg*, an old mean town, with an ancient castle.

*Altstadt*, a village with an elegant seat belonging to the Counts of *Wallenrodt*.

*Liebmuhl*, a small town, with a castle built in 1337, in which the Bishop of *Pomesania* resided towards the close of the sixteenth century.

*Dollstadt*, a Prefecture which is near the *Drausen*-lake on the other side of the town of *Holland*; and makes part of the Government of *Preuschmark*.

10. The Government of *PREUSCH-HOLLAND*. This District contains twenty-one churches, which are under a particular Arch-Presbyter. The most remarkable places in this Government are as follows.

*Holland*, a handsome town seated on an eminence near the river *Weeske*, with a strong fortress. It is said to have been built by some *Hollanders* of distinction, who fled hither on account of the murder of Count *Florentius V.* from whom it had the name of *Holland*. Its situation renders it naturally strong; besides, it is surrounded with a wall and towers. The streets are long and broad, and the houses well-built. To this town belong two suburbs, some pleasant gardens, and several country seats; and the inhabitants have a free fishery, and the liberty of going out in their boats on the *Drausen*-lake. *St. Bartholomew's* church is a large handsome structure. The Calvinists celebrate Divine Service in a large hall belonging to the castle; and without the town stands *St. George's* church. Here is also a good hospital, and the present edifice was built in the year 1690. This town was formerly mortgaged to Baron *Czebmen*; but the Margrave *George Frederick* redeemed it in 1576 for 30,000 guilders. It was consumed by fire

fire in the years 1543, 1610, 1663 and 1695. *Holland* has undergone several vicissitudes in the frequent wars between the *Poles* and *Swedes*. In the year 1521 it was taken by the former. In 1722 salt-works were set up, and in 1728 a magazine for corn and forage was erected in this town. The present castle was begun by Duke *Albert*, and completed by *George Frederick*. It is surrounded by moats and walls, and has draw-bridges, and fine apartments which yield a noble prospect.

*Mublhausen*, a mean little town, which was built in 1365, and consumed by fire in 1455. Many ridiculous stories are told of its inhabitants; but they seem to be borrowed from fabulous books and idle traditions.

*Schlobitten*, a remarkable castle belonging to the Counts of *Dobna*. It has elegant apartments which are richly furnished, a fine library, and a handsome wardrobe. The water is conveyed hither by a curious aqueduct.

*Schledien* is also a castle belonging to the same noble family. It is remarkable for its pleasant situation, and elegant ornaments. In these parts are several seats belonging to Count *Dobna*, and other Noblemen, where no expence has been spared to improve the beauties of Nature with the embellishments of Art.

*Quittainen*, a castle and Lordship belonging to Count *Donhof*.

## The LITHUANIAN DEPARTMENT.

THIS division comprehends eighteen towns, sixty-two *Amts* or Districts, and one hundred and five parishes; and the *Haupt-amts* or Governments in this department I shall describe in the following order.

### I. The LITHUANIAN GOVERNMENTS.

LITTLE LITHUANIA is twenty-four *German* miles in length, and from eight to twelve in breadth. This country was anciently over-run with thickets and woods; and in the year 1710, it was almost depopulated by the pestilence. In 1720, King *Frederick William*, at the expence of five millions of Rix-dollars, induced 20,000 *Switzers*, *French* Protestants, *Palatines*, and *Franconians* to settle in this country; and in 1732, 350,000 dollars were also distributed among a fresh colony of 12,500 *Saltzbengers*. By the skill and industry of these emigrants this desolate country has been extremely well cultivated. The superfluous woods have been rooted up, the morasses drained, and a great number of towns, villages, farm-houses, and churches built; so that in few years the country has put on quite a new appearance, and now makes ample returns for the money which his  
*Prussian*

*Prussian* Majesty laid out upon it. The richness of the pastures, the many thousand Lasts of corn which are either laid up in the King's granaries, or exported; the fine horned cattle, excellent horses, and numerous flocks of sheep, with the excellent butter, cheese, &c. which this country affords, are incontestible proofs of its uncommon fertility. It likewise abounds with wood for fuel, and has plenty of fish and game. Several manufactures are also established here; particularly for coarse and fine cloth, leather, &c. The ancient inhabitants of this country have a peculiar language, into which the Bible, the Catechism and some books of devotion have lately been translated. The *Lithuanians* are by no means so simple and stupid as they are generally represented; but they have their good and ill qualities like other nations. Among the colonists, the *Switzers* are mostly employed in grazing and breeding cattle; the *French* are very well versed in trade, and skilful in the cultivation of tobacco, which they have introduced into this country; and the *Salzburgers* are remarkable for their skill in agriculture. The *Switzers*, *French*, and *Franconians* are all Calvinists; so that there are ten *German* and *French* Reformed parishes, as they are called, in *Little Lithuania*. The rest are *Lutherans*, with very few *Papists* among them.

The *Lithuanian* Governments or *Haupt-amts* are,

1. The Government of MEMEL. The soil is but indifferent, and the air something sharp in this District. It has nine churches which are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Memel*. In this Government lies

*Memel*, a trading town, fortress, and port seated on the bay called *Curische-Haf*. It was built in the year 1279, and fortified in 1312; and in the year 1328, it was given up by the Governor of *Livonia* to the Great-Master of the *Teutonic* Order settled in *Prussia*. This town on one side, has the *Baltic*, and on the other the *Curische-Haf*; besides these it is also watered by the river *Dange*. The harbour is deep, and has a very good entrance; and, within these few years, has been improved with two moles, which are carried above fifty rods into the *Haf* or bay, and were raised at the expence of 11,000 dollars. *Memel* lies under the guns of the fort, and is well inhabited: It consists of above four hundred houses. Besides the *German* town-church, here are a *Lithuanian* and a Calvinist church. The Burghers, who are divided into those of *Altstadt* or the *Old Town* and *Fredericksstadt*, are employed in commerce, brewing, soap-boiling, agriculture, fishing, &c. Great quantities of flax, lin-seed, thread, and hemp are annually exported from this town. In 1752, seventy ships arrived in this port, and sixty-nine sailed from hence to other ports. *Memel* is fortified with three whole and two half bastions, with other works, all in the modern way. It was formerly one of the *Hanse-towns*; and as such, its College of Justice in 1254 admitted the *Lubeck* law. A royal magazine, a salt-factory, and a post-house of a considerable revenue



are established in this town. The citadel consists of four bastions which are pretty regular, with ravelines and half-moons. The buildings and apartments in this citadel were much improved by the Elector *Frederick William* and King *Frederick I.* The most remarkable things in it are the two arsenals, the superb house of the Commandant, the garrison-church, and the powder-magazine. In 1323, 1379, 1457, 1540, and 1678 this town suffered greatly by fire.

To this Government also belong

*Rufs*, a small District at the mouth of a river of the same name, in which there is the finest salmon fishery in these parts.

*Heidekrug*, a small town of good business.

*Werden*, a large church-village, where a market is held, on the river *Schische*.

2. The Government of TILSIT, or TILSE, contains eleven churches which are under the direction of the Arch-Presbyter of *Tilsit*.

In this District lies

*Tilsit*, a city of considerable note, which, next to *Konigsberg*, is the largest and most opulent town in *Prussia*, and carries on the greatest trade. It obtained the privileges of a city in 1552; though the castle is said to have been standing so early as the year 1289. The river *Memel*, which runs along the north side of the town, opens to it a very advantageous trade with *Konigsberg* in corn, lin-seed, butter and other provisions. *Tilsit*, properly so called, consists of two long streets of a proportionate breadth, which are called the *German-street* and the *High-street*, contiguous to which is the suburbs called the *Liberty*. The number of houses in this city is about six hundred, and the inhabitants amount to 7000 souls. The ecclesiastical buildings are an Evangelical or Lutheran *German* church, a *Lithuanian* church and a Calvinist or Reformed church. Without the town stands a *Lutheran* chapel, and about an *English* mile from it a *Roman* catholic chapel. Near the *German* church is the royal provincial school. Here is an hospital where ninety indigent persons have a comfortable subsistence; and in the pest-house the sick and lame, as well as those who are infected with the plague, are carefully provided for. Here is also a *Pauperhaus*, as it is called, in which ten poor boys are maintained, and a charitable foundation for widows. A salt-factory is likewise established in this town. The flat country about *Tilsit* which is about four *German* miles in length, and as many in breadth is one of the most fertile spots in the whole kingdom. The inhabitants of it breed great numbers of horned cattle, and furnish not only *Prussia*, but likewise other provinces with excellent butter and cheese; and the fisheries in this place are also considerable. The horses are large and strong, but clumsy. Barley is almost the only grain sown in these parts; which afford little or no wood. The marsh-land is, in spring, exposed to inundations by the overflowing of the rivers, which often do great damages. In this level near the old *Gilge* is *Kaukenen* a royal manor and church-village with a market.

*Rautenburg*, a considerable and extensive estate, which, at present, belongs to the *Kaiserling* family; and

*Schnecken*, a hunting seat, which stands in the midst of a large forest frequented by great numbers of elks, and near the river *Schnecken*; are both in this Government.

3. The Government of RAGNIT, which is inhabited chiefly by *Saltzburg* colonies, who carry on a great trade in flax and lin-feed. This District includes nine churches which are under the Arch-Presbyter of *Ragnit*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Ragnit*, a small town on the river *Mummel* or *Memel*, which is surrounded with pallisadoes, and was endowed with the privileges of a town in 1722. Its castle is one of the most ancient in the country, and was famous even in the times of Paganism: It was rebuilt in the year 1255 with additional works by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; but being laid in ashes by the Pagans, it was rebuilt a second time in 1357, and called *Landskuth*; but afterwards it had the name of *Ragnit*, which it still retains, from the river which runs close by it. In this castle is a very large royal magazine for provisions, &c. and the prospect from that part of it which is called *Konigsberg* is hardly to be equalled.

*Absteinen* a District and farm-house on the other side of the *Memel*. It is a mountainous but very pleasant country, and from its extraordinary fertility in corn and pasturage is called the 'Larder of *Lithuania*.' Here are very extraordinary flocks of sheep, a great plenty of all kind of game, and excellent horses.

*Pilkallen*, which was formerly a village, but in 1724 it became a town, and continues in a flourishing condition.

*Schirwind*, a mean town, which, before the year 1725, was only a poor village.

4. The Government of INSTERBURG is the largest *Haupt-amt* in *Prussia*; for it contains thirty *Kammer-amts* or small Districts, forty-three parishes, five towns, five castles, and above eight hundred villages large and small. It also includes an area of above 20,000 Hides of land. The churches in this Government, are subject to the Arch-Presbyter of *Insterburg*; ten country churches excepted, which in 1726 were assigned to the newly erected Presbytery of *Staaluphen*.

In this Government are the following remarkable places.

*Insterburg*, a town of some note, seated on the *Angerap*, near its conflux with the *Inster* where it assumes the name of *Pregel*, a river famous for its commerce. This town was built in 1572, and surrounded with pallisadoes in 1727: It contains about three hundred and fifty houses and 3000 inhabitants. Besides the Lutheran churches, here is also a place of worship for the Calvinists. *Insterburg* carries on a considerable trade in corn and beer; and the latter is famous both for its wholesomeness and strength. Here is also a Court of Justice. The

castle was built in the middle of the fourteenth century, and much improved by King *Frederick William*: It has, at present a granary and salt-factory. In the year 1724, a Court of Judicature for the administration of justice in the *Lithuanian Governments* or *Haupt-amts* was erected here. In 1655, *Maria Eleanora*, Dowager of *Gustavus Adolphus*, died in this town.

*Georgenburg*, a castle, with a District and church-village.

*Gumbinnen*, a regular town built, since the year 1725, in a very pleasant and fertile country on the river *Pisse*. It consists of about two hundred houses; and the number of its inhabitants amounts to 3000. The ancient *Deputation-Chamber* and the present *War* and *Demefne-Chambers* have been removed to this place. The public buildings in this town are the *Conference-house*, the town-house, and the magazine, which was built in 1742 at the expence of 11,000 dollars; the Calvinist church in the *New-town*, the Lutheran church in the *Old-town*; and the *Saltzburg* alms-house, which has a particular chaplain. Here is a good cloth-manufacture.

*Darkehmen*, a mean town, which obtained its privileges in the year 1725, and in 1732 was rendered more populous by a colony of *Saltzburgers* who settled there. Here is a flourishing cloth and woollen manufacture; also tobacco and gunpowder are prepared in this town.

*Goldapp*, a place of some trade, but mean and dirty: it was built by the Margrave *Albert* in the year 1564, and is a frontier town on the borders of *Poland*.

*Kiauten*, a small District in a hilly country, where a flating mill, a smelting furnace, and a paper mill are set up.

*Stallupönen*, a newly built town, to which a charter was granted in the year 1722. The inhabitants trade considerably in cattle; and a good fair is held here. The late institution of an Arch-Presbytery in this town has been mentioned above. Fresh water and wood for fuel are very scarce here.

## II. The *POLISH* GOVERNMENTS.

These *Haupt-amts* are as follows.

I. **T**HE Government of OLETZKO, which contains the *amts* or small Districts of *Stradaunen*, *Polommen*, and *Czichen*. The eleven churches belonging to this Government are subject to the visitation of the Arch-Presbyter of *Lik*; and the most remarkable places in it are,

*Oletzko*, a castle, the inside of which was much embellished in the year 1640. The town of *Marggrabowa*, which stands near this castle, is both regular and large. It derives its name from the founder, Margave *Albert*,  
who



who built it in memory of the interview he had here with *Sigismund Augustus* King of *Poland*; and the latter, in 1560, built a town which he called *Augustowa* on the *Polish* frontiers, about eight *German* miles distant from *Marggrabowa*. The market place is the largest area in all the towns in *Prussia*, and on it stands the church quite detached from any other building. In the neighbourhood of *Marggrabowa* the *Swedish* and electoral troops defeated the *Tartars* in 1656, and released the Prince of *Radziwil*, who had been taken prisoner by them.

*Kalinowen*, a market-village on the frontiers of *Poland*.

*Widminnen*, a large church-village consisting of two congregations.

2. The Government of *LOTZEN*. The churches in this District are subordinate to the Arch-Prefbyter of *Angerburg*; and the most remarkable places in it are,

*Lotzen*, a small town, with a castle built in 1285. It is situated in a well watered delightful country which yields plenty of all sorts of game, and stands on a canal which joins the *Leventin* and *Angerburg* lakes. Some ancient *Roman* coins have been found near this town.

*Groß-Sturlack*, a seat belonging to Baron *Sbenk* of *Tautenburg*.

3. The Government of *LİK* in *Old Sudavia* derives its name from the river *Lik*. In this District are five churches, which together with the eleven churches in the Government of *Oletzko* are under the jurisdiction of the Arch-Prefbyter of *Lik*.

*Lik*, in Latin *Licca*, a trading town seated on the *Satrind*-lake. Here is nothing worthy of notice but the church, the provincial school, which was founded in 1588 and was formerly in a very flourishing condition, the castle, and the Arch-Prefbyter's mansion house. The castle belonging to *Lik*, which was built in 1272, stands very pleasantly on an island. This country suffered extremely by the inhuman ravages of the *Tartars* in 1656; till at last the famous battle of *Warsaw* drove those barbarians from the frontiers. In 1662 it was declared a town, and received its privileges. The adjacent country abounds with fish and other provisions, and yields plenty of wood.

*Goldap*, a small, but well built town.

*Ostrokolln*, a church-village, to which also the village of *Prostken* belongs. In the latter a pillar was erected in the year 1545 as a boundary on the side of *Great Lithuania*, with a *Latin* inscription in further confirmation of the treaty of peace concluded with *Poland* in 1525.

The villages of *Kuffinowen* and *Taluffen*, which are inhabited mostly by *Arians*, who behave in a very quiet inoffensive manner, and perform their devotions in private houses.

4. The Government of *RHEIN*, which lies in *Sudavia*, and was formerly well peopled. This District contains seven churches, four of which are under the Arch-Prefbyter of *Rastenburg*, and the other three belong to *Jobannesburg*.

*Rhein*, a small town on the *Spirding*-lake, but its castle which was built about the middle of the fourteenth century, is spacious and strong, and an inferior jurisdiction belongs to it.

*Aris*, a small town with a little District; King *Frederick William* granted it the privileges of a town, and it has continued to flourish ever since.

*Eichmedin*, a seat belonging to Baron *Hoverbeck*.

*Nicolayken* lies near the *Spirding-Sea* which is the largest lake in the country. It is but small, and was declared a town in the year 1722.

5. The Government of JOHANNESBURG contains five churches, which have their own Arch-Presbyter, who also has jurisdiction over three churches in the *Haupt-ant* of *Rhein*. The most remarkable places in this Government are,

*Johannesburg*, a small, but handsome town seated on a plain near the *Spirding*-lake, in which are four islands, and plenty of fish. Here is a castle which was once fortified; and an Arch-Presbyter resides in this town. In 1698, the Elector *Frederick* had an interview of four days with *Augustus II.* then newly elected King of *Poland*, at *Johannesburg*. A large granary, and a magazine for forage were erected here in 1728.

*Biala* a small town which received its privileges in 1722.

*Note.* Besides the *Haut-aempter* or Governments which we have been describing, his *Prussian* Majesty is also possessed of the following Lordships in the *Polish* territories.

1. TAUROGGEN, which is a large District near the river *Jubr* in *Samogitia*, and about three *German* miles from *Tilsit*. It consists of above three hundred hides of land, and has an excellent breed of horses: It also abounds with fish, and yields plenty of game. *Tauroggen* devolved to the house of *Brandenburg*, in 1691, on the demise of the Princess of *Radziwil*. The *Prussian* steward here is accountable to the Chamber of Revenues in *Lithuania*.

2. SERREY in the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* and the palatinate of *Trocko*. It lies not far from *Kauen*, and consists of near six hundred hides of land, on which are twenty-two villages, three manors, and twenty lakes and ponds. This lordship devolved to the house of *Brandenburg* by the marriage of the Princess *Ludovica Carolina* of *Radziwil* with *Lewis* Margrave of *Brandenburg*. In 1703, and 1734, it suffered several calamities. In the little town on this territory the Calvinists and Papists have each a church, and the Jews a synagogue.

---

POLAND, LITHUANIA,  
POLISH PRUSSIA,  
AND  
COURLAND,

---





---

# INTRODUCTION

T O T H E

## K I N G D O M O F P O L A N D.

§. 1. OMITTING the most ancient maps of the kingdom of *Poland*, I shall only take notice of the best among the modern, which are the following, viz. *Dahlberg's* map in *Puffendorf's Res Gestæ Caroli Gustavi*; that of *Vassour*; *Homann's* map, drawn *ad mentem Starobvolscii*, in the year 1739; *Allard's* and *De L'Isle's* maps; and that delineated by *M. Mayer* in 1750, entitled *Mappa Geographica regni Poloniae, ex novissimis quotquot sunt mappis specialibus composita, et ad leges stereographicæ projectionis revocatæ*, Printed by *Homann's* heirs. The last certainly exceeds all the preceding maps in accuracy, &c. however, the names of a great number of places are omitted in it. We are also in expectation of a complete collection of maps representing the particular provinces of *Poland*, or a *Polish Atlas*, which is to be published in that country. *Mayer* has also given us a beautiful map of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* from a draught by *Peter Nieprecki*, a Jesuit, which was published in 1749 by *Homann's* heirs.

§. 2. The word *Pole*, in the *Polish* language, signifies a flat, level country; but that the kingdom and the whole nation derive their name from that origin, cannot be affirmed with any certainty.

This large kingdom from East to West is two hundred *German* or geographical miles in length, and one hundred and forty in breadth. Towards the North it borders on *Prussia*, *Courland*, *Livonia*, and *Russia*, and towards the East on *Russia* and *Little Tartary*; to the South it is bounded by *Moldavia*, *Transylvania* and *Hungary*, and to the West by *Silesia*, *Brandenburg*, and *Pomerania*.

§. 3. The air is something cold, but salubrious; and the country is for the most part level, and has but few hills. On the *Carpathian* \* mountains,

\* These are called the *Krapack* mountains in the maps, and I know not with what propriety they are called *Carpathian* mountains; for *Carpathus* is an island in the *Mediterranean*, now called *Scarpanto*.

which

which separate *Poland* from *Hungary*, the air is very cold; for it snows there frequently in the midst of summer, and in some parts of them the snow never melts. The *Besciatian* mountains are a continuation of the *Carpathian* chain of hills.

The soil of this country is exceeding fertile, and yields plenty of grain, of which there cannot be a greater proof than that near 4000 vessels and floats, most of which are laden with corn, annually pass down the *Vistula* to *Dantzick*. In *Podolia*, *Volhynia*, the *Ukraine*, and the province of *Russia* corn grows in vast plenty, and with little culture or manure. In *Great* and *Little Poland* agriculture requires more attention and labour; but the harvests make ample amends for the pains of the industrious peasant. The soil of *Lithuania* is as fruitful as that of *Podolia*; and *Samogitia* produces abundance of grain, besides hemp and flax. *Polish Prussia* is also a very fertile country. Here are likewise excellent pastures; and in *Podolia* the grass grows to such a height, that sometimes a person cannot see the horns of the cattle when they are grazing in the meadows. The following is a remarkable instance of the fertility of the soil, and the plenty of all kinds of provisions in this country; namely, that from the year 1701 to 1718, during which time there were several armies in *Poland*, there was not the least scarcity of bread.

Travellers can seldom meet with any thing to eat in the country inns in *Poland*; but are obliged to buy provisions in the towns and carry them with their baggage. This inconveniency, however, is owing to a want of honesty in the natives when they travel; for the inn-keepers never make any extraordinary provision, because they find by experience, that their guests are seldom in the mind to make any returns for their entertainment.

Peat, oker of all kinds, chalk, *Belemnites*, agate, chalcedony, cornelians, onyxes, opals, jasper, fine rock crystal, amethysts, granite, topazes, sapphires, and even rubies and diamonds are found in *Poland*. This country likewise affords *Marienglas* or *Muscovy glass*, talc, alum, salt-petre, amber, pit-coal, and an inexhaustible quantity of salt which is hewn out of the rock in large blocks, and salt-springs; also spar, quicksilver, *Lapis calaminaris*, iron, lead, a small quantity of tin, gold and silver; but there are no mines of the two last metals wrought in *Poland*.

The *Polish Manna* is produced by an herb that grows in the meadows and fenny grounds; and it is gathered, in great quantities, from the twentieth of *June* to the end of *July*. The *Polish Kermes*-berries are always gathered in *May*, before they are quite ripe; for in the month of *July* they swarm with insects, which leave a kind of protuberances behind them; so that the berries are rendered unfit either for dying or medicine. Great quantities of these berries grow in the *Ukraine* and in the neighbourhood of *Warsaw* and *Crasow*; and were formerly exported to *Genoa* and *Florence*. Here are several woods of oak, beech, pine, and fir-trees.



*Poland* also yields abundance of honey and wax; and a great quantity of mead is made of the former, which liquor derives its name from the *Polish* word *Miod*, which signifies honey.

Horned cattle are bred in this country in such numbers, that 80, or 90,000 oxen are driven every year out of *Poland*. The *Polish* horses are very strong, swift, and beautiful. Of these there are great numbers in this country, and likewise of wild beasts; as the elk, called in the *Polish* language *Los*, or a wild ram with one horn; the *Bison*\* called *Zubr* by the *Poles*; the hyena, in the *Polish* language called *Rosomak*; the *Sukak*, which resembles a wild goat; and lastly, the *Aurrachs* are very common in *Poland*.

There are several lakes in *Great Poland*, some of which abound with fish. The most remarkable among these is the *Gopler*-lake in the *Woywodship* or Palatinate of *Brezesc* in *Cujavia*, which is five *German* miles in length, and half a mile in breadth. In the other provinces are several large fish ponds. As for the *Polish* rivers; the eight following are the most remarkable.

1. The *Duna* or *Dzwina*, in Latin *Duna* and in *Polish* *Kubo*, has its source in *Russia*, and after a long course through *Lithuania* empties itself into the *Baltic*.

2. The *Memel*, called in Latin *Chronus*, and in *Polish* *Niemen*, rises in the Palatinate of *Novogrodeck*, and runs through *Lithuania* and *Prussia* into the bay called *Curische-Haf*.

3. The *Weichsel*, called in Latin *Vistula*, and in *Polish* *Wisla*, i. e. 'water that runs down a declivity,' rises in *Hungary* among the *Carpathian* mountains, runs through *Poland*; and, after receiving several other streams in this kingdom, and in *Prussia*, it partly discharges itself into the *Baltic* near *Dantzick*, and by two other channels called the *Nogat* and the *Old Vistula*, runs into the bay of *Frische-Haf*. The *Vistula* is, indeed, very broad; but, at the same time, of no great depth.

4. The *Warta* has its source in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, and runs into the *Oder* a little above *Custrin*.

5. The *Niester* or *Dniester*, in Latin *Danaptris*, is the *Tyras* or *Tyres* of the Ancients. It rises in a lake among the *Carpathian* mountains, and, dividing *Poland* from *Moldavia* in its course, falls into the *Pontus Euxinus* or *Black Sea*.

6. The *Bog*, which has its source in *Podolia*, and runs into the *Dnieper*.

7. The *Nieper* or *Dnieper*, in Latin *Danaptris* or *Borysthenes*, rises in the mountains of *Budin* in *Russia*, and after a course of forty days journey, or two hundred *German* miles, discharges itself into the *Black-Sea*.

8. The *Przypiecz*, in Latin *Pripetius*, has its source in the Palatinate of *Chehm* in *Red Russia*, and runs into the *Dnieper*.

§. 4. The *Poles*, when considered as members of the community, are either Nobles; Citizens, in which class merchants, artists, and mechanics are included; or Peasants, who are mostly vassals to the Nobles.

\* The *Bisont* or *Bison* is an animal resembling a wild-bull, or buffalo.

## INTRODUCTION TO

The *Polish* towns are, for the most part, built with wood ; and the villages consist of mean cottages, or huts.

The Nobles of *Poland* have, from time immemorial, resided in the country. Every Nobleman lives in his own village, seat, or castle ; manages his estate by his vassals or hired servants ; and maintains himself and whole family by agriculture, breeding of bees, grazing, and hunting. Some of the Nobility also spend part of their time in the cities or towns. A Nobleman in the *Polish* language is called *Szlakcic* \*, and the dignity is termed *Szlakietstwo*. There are among the *Polish* Nobility certain *Gentes* or tribes ; and these again are divided into distinct families : This distinction, however, is not owing to the different places or provinces where they live ; but they are ranked according to the names and arms they bear. Though *Poland* has its Princes, Counts, and Barons ; yet the whole noblesse are naturally on a level, excepting the difference arising from the posts some of them enjoy. Hence all those who are of noble birth call one another brothers. However, Noblemen whose circumstances are low submit to enter into the service of the richer sort, especially if the latter are in any eminent post, either for a comfortable subsistence, or to learn politeness and address, and, perhaps, to raise their fortunes ; and this is accounted no disgrace. The *Polish* Nobility enjoy a great many considerable privileges ; and, indeed, the so much boasted *Polish* Liberty is properly limited to the Nobles only : for they have the power of life and death over their vassals, who, on that account, groan under an oppressive vassalage, or rather slavery. Every Nobleman is absolute Lord of his estates ; so that the King can require no subsidy from him ; nor is he obliged to maintain or find quarter for any soldiers. If a foreigner dies on a Nobleman's estate in *Poland* without leaving any heirs, his effects fall to the Lord of the manor as an escheat. But on the demise of a Nobleman without heirs, his estate does not escheat to the King, whilst there are any persons living who are related in the eighth degree to the deceased ; and if a Nobleman dies without heirs, or any such relations, the King cannot appropriate his estate to himself, but is obliged to bestow it on some other Nobleman of merit. The house of a Nobleman is a secure asylum for persons who have committed any crime ; for none must presume to take them from thence by force. The Judges in the towns dare not cause a Nobleman's vassal to be arrested, or his effects to be seized. Noblemen and their vassals pay no toll or duty for the cattle, corn, &c. which they send out of the kingdom for sale : They have also the liberty of working any mines or salt-works on their own estates. No magistrate, nor even the King himself, can cause a Nobleman to be arrested, without signifying the crime he is guilty of, and a previous citation ; unless he be a robber and have been three times impeached by his associates ;

\* The *German* way of writing *Polish* words make them still more difficult to be pronounced ; I have therefore kept as near the *English* orthography as I could.



or be surprized in any other crime *ipso facto*; or, lastly, when he cannot, or will not put in bail. A Nobleman is subject to none but the King: However, he is not obliged to appear before his Majesty out of the kingdom, when cited on any cause, unless it relate to the Royal treasury; but must be judged in *Poland*. All ecclesiastical dignities and civil posts in this kingdom are to be held only by the Nobility. None but Noblemen are qualified to be proprietors of estates, except the Burghers of the cities of *Tborn*, *Cracow*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Lublin*, who have the privilege of purchasing lands. Any Nobleman may purchase a house, and live in a city or town: but he must then submit to serve municipal offices; and if he is concerned in trade or commerce, he forfeits the privileges of a Noble *Pole*. Every Nobleman has a vote in the election of a King; and is even qualified to wear the crown, if he be raised to it by the free choice of the rest of the Nobility. The *Polish* Nobility has also some exclusive advantages in purchasing salt. These and other important privileges the Nobles of *Poland* enjoy partly by the indulgence of their Kings, and partly by ancient custom or prescription. A person descended from noble ancestors is much more honoured than one that is newly enobled. All civil causes relating to the Nobility are tried in the Provincial Courts of Judicature; but if a Nobleman commence a suit with the farmers of the royal demesnes, a Commissorial-Court is appointed to terminate the dispute. The *Polish* Burghers also enjoy some valuable privileges.

§. 5. The *Polish* language is derived from the old *Sclavonic*; however, it differs extremely from all the other languages which come from the same source.

The *High-Dutch* language is very much in vogue in *Poland*; and, indeed, the *Germans* have done the *Poles* some very considerable services; for they first introduced into *Poland* a taste for learning, opened the channels of commerce, and built several towns, which they also raised to a flourishing condition. *Casimir the Great* was very sensible of the great advantages which *Poland* might reap from *German* colonies. Accordingly that Prince invited them to settle in his kingdom by the greatest encouragements; for he granted them the most improvable spots in *Poland*, and even permitted them to be governed by their own laws.

The *Latin* tongue is also commonly spoken in *Poland* even by the lower class of people; but without any regard to accent, quantity, or purity of language\*.

§. 6. From the time of King *Sigismund I.* to the reign of *Wladislaus IV.* was the interval when Arts and Sciences flourished most in *Poland*. Since that *Æra* the *Polish* Muses seem to have drooped and languished: However, they now begin to revive again. For, at present, the purity and

\* The same may be said of *Germany*; the following sentence, as I have accented it, being generally fathered upon the inhabitants of that country: *Nos Germani non curamus quantitatem Syllabarum.*



elegance of the *Polish* and *Latin* languages are studied, the New Philosophy is introduced, the Mathematics are taught, and Natural Philosophy flourishes, in *Poland*. The Learned in this country also apply themselves to the study of the History of *Poland*, which they cultivate and improve; and endeavour to make the good Writers of former ages better known, and useful to the present; and for this end, the valuable library of Count *Zaluski* at *Warsaw* opens an inestimable treasure of ancient Authors. The *Greek* language also begins to be studied in *Poland*; and literary correspondences are carried on with learned foreigners. It is true, the press has not produced so many books in *Poland* as in other countries; but this may be imputed, in a great measure, to a want of able publishers, liberal patrons of learning, and well regulated printing-houses.

§. 7. There are no manufactures in *Poland*; but all the commodities of the country are exported unwrought out of the kingdom. Religious zeal, or rather bigotry, is of infinite detriment to the trade and commerce of *Poland*, which, notwithstanding all its natural advantages, is daily sinking deeper and deeper into poverty; so that the commerce of *Poland* seems on the brink of ruin. The *Poles*, indeed, export grain of all kinds, flax, hemp, lin-seed, hops, honey, wax, tallow, hides, leather dressed in the *Russian* manner, pitch, pot-ash, masts, deal-boards, ship and house timber, horned cattle, horses and other home commodities; but these are greatly over-balanced by the imports, namely, wine (that of *Hungary* alone carrying some millions annually out of the kingdom,) spices, cloths, rich silk stuffs, fine linen, pearls, precious stones, plate, copper, brass, steel, furs, &c.

§. 8. As for the religion professed in this country, it was decreed by the Constitutions of the Pacification Diet held in the year 1736, 'That no person should be elected King of *Poland* and Great Duke of *Lithuania*, without first making a solemn profession of the orthodox *Roman-Catholic* religion; and that the Queen must either have been brought up in that communion, or publicly declare herself a member of it.' Hence it appears that the Popish religion is looked upon as the established, and orthodox religion in this country.

The *Dissidentes*, i. e. the *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, and *Greeks*, by the treaties concluded with the ancient *Confederations*, and particularly the Constitution of the year 1717, are promised security as to their effects, and an equality with the other subjects as to their persons. Some few of the *Greek* profession have conformed to the *Romish* church, and are called *Unites*; but those *Greeks* who persist in their separation, are called *Dissunites*. The Archbishop of *Polecko*, and four other Bishops, are reckoned among the former.

*Arians*, by which name the *Socinians* are called here, *Quakers*, *Mennonites*, and *Anabaptists*, are not tolerated in *Poland*.

The Protestants, by virtue of the above-mentioned Constitutions, solicited for the free exercise of their religion on the foot of the treaty of *Oliva*; and

and for this end, several other Powers interested themselves in their behalf. This procured them many fair promises; which, however, have not been fulfilled. On the contrary, a great number of their churches have actually been taken from them, or demolished; and such open violations of the laws of justice and equity are of late become more frequent; so that the Protestants have now only twenty-two churches in the cities and towns, and sixty-five in the villages of *Poland*.

The *Greeks* are also no less oppressed in this Kingdom than the Protestants.

The *Jews* are indulged with great privileges, and are very numerous in *Poland*; hence this country is stiled the 'Paradise of the Jews.' In the second volume of the *Callenbergischen Nachrichten von der fortwährenden Bemühung um das Heil des Jüdischen Volks*, printed in the year 1752, is inserted a letter (p. 106, &c.) written by an old *Polish* General who was a native of *Germany*; by which it appears, that there are at least above two millions of *Jews* only in the villages of *Poland*: and here it must be observed that there are at least one, two, or three jewisl families in every village, exclusive of the great numbers of *Jews* in the towns and inns. Their annual capitation or poll-tax amounts to 220,000 *Polish* guilders in the kingdom of *Poland*, and 120,000 in *Lituania*, which makes, in the whole, the sum of 56,666 rix-dollars; and this over and above the general imposts and taxes.

It must be further observed with regard to the superiority of the Popish religion here, that the King is stiled *Orthodoxus*, as a title of honour; that *St. Florian* and *St. Adalbert* are worshipped as the Patron Saints of *Poland*; that the number of monasteries in this kingdom amounts to five hundred and seventy-six, and of nunneries to one hundred and seventeen, besides two hundred and forty-six seminaries or colleges, and thirty-one abbeys; and lastly, that the clergy are possessed of two thirds of the lands and revenues of the kingdom.

§. 9. All the Writers, who have treated of the ancient history of *Poland*, are of opinion, that the present inhabitants were not the original possessors of this country; but emigrated hither as colonies from other parts. It is also the general opinion, that they came from *Sarmatia*, and settled on the banks of the *Vistula*: But *Sarmatia* was a very extensive country, and inhabited by various nations; from what part of it, therefore, did the *Poles* remove to this country? This may be shewn by attending to the name by which, the *Poles* call themselves in their own language, viz. *Polacy*. It is well known, that among other nations in *Sarmatia* were a people called *Lazi*, of whom *Procopius* and *Agathias* have given an accurate description; and that they dwelt in the ancient *Colchis* near the *Pontus Euxinus* or *Black-sea*. From these, the learned *M. Lengnich* supposes the *Poles* to be descended; and that from hence they are called *Polacy*, i. e. the posterity or descendants of the *Lazi*. It further appears that the name of the *Lazi* was corrupted into that of *Lech*; hence it is pretended, that the *Poles* marched into foreign countries under the conduct of an imaginary Prince of that name.

These



## INTRODUCTION TO

These *Lazi*, who were united with their neighbours the *Zechi*, and perhaps also mingled with the other *Sarmatians*, crossed the rivers *Don*, *Nieper*, *Niefter*, and the *Danube*, into *Pannonia*; and extending themselves farther in their progress, the *Zechi* at last fixed their habitations near the *Elbe*, where *Bohemia* now lies, and the *Lazi* near the river *Warta*, in the country now called *Great Poland*. This appears to have happened a little before the 550th year of the Christian *Æra*. The *Lazi*, *Zechi*, and other *Sarmatians* were in time so intermixed together, that even their names were no longer heard of; and they were promiscuously called *Slavians* or *Sclavonians*, which name was first used in the sixth century. After this the *Slavian* nations were distinguished from each other; and a particular name was given to each of them. Among these were the *Licicavic Slavians*, who are first mentioned by *Witichind* of *Corvey*, an historian of the tenth century; and by this name, in all probability, he means the *Lazi*. Their King *Miska* is the *Miesko* or *Meska* of the *Poles*, who by the modern historians is called *Miecislav*, and was the first of the name that reigned over this nation. This is the account which *M. Lengnich* gives of the origin of the *Poles*; and a fuller detail of it is to be found in his dissertation at the end of the *Polish History*.

All the tradition about *Lech*, the pretended Founder of the *Polish* kingdom and nation, and of his successors down to *Piaſt*, is obscure, and entirely fabulous.

*Piaſt*, who, about the year of Christ 840 is said to have been raised from a peasant to be a Sovereign Prince, is remarkable as to these particulars; namely, that his family flourished for several ages after in *Poland* and *Silesia*; and that to this day all the Kings and even candidates for the crown, who are natives of *Poland*, are from him called *Piaſtes*.

*Miecislav* I. the fourth from *Piaſt*, and great grandson to that Prince, ascended the throne in the year 964. He became a convert to the Christian religion, and prevailed on his subjects to follow his example.

*Boleslav* I. His son and successor, assumed the title of King; which dignity was continued by his successor *Miecislav* II. *Casimir* I. and *Boleslav* II. But the regal title ceased at the death of the last mentioned Prince, and was not revived till the close of the thirteenth century, in the person of *Premislaus*.

*Boleslav* III. a most warlike Prince, divided his dominions among his four sons in 1138, to the prejudice of the fifth. This partition gave rise to many disputes and open quarrels. Before this, the above-mentioned *Premislaus*, Prince of *Great Poland*, had reassumed the title of King in 1295.

*Uladislaus* surnamed *the Little* made himself King of all *Poland* in the year 1309; and from that time it has been subject to one Sovereign.

*Uladislaus's* only son, *Casimir the Great*, laid claim to *Red Russia*, and made it a province of *Poland*; conferred great privileges on the Jews; and was the last Prince of the *Piaſtian*-line. To this excellent Prince  
Poland



*Poland* owes its Laws, Courts of Justice, and Polity; and likewise most of its towns, castles, and other useful edifices.

After this Prince, *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, was also crowned King of *Poland*; and on his demise, *Hedwig*, his second wife, was crowned Queen in the year 1384. *Jagello*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, embraced Christianity in 1386, and at his baptism had the name of *Uladislaus*. He married the Queen, shared the Throne with her, and was the founder of a new royal family, which was called the *Jagellonian*-line. This Prince sat on the Throne of *Poland* till the year 1572, and added the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* to the *Polish* dominions. He also reduced *Samogitia*, and in 1410, defeated the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order in the memorable battle of *Tannenberg*.

*Jagello's* second son, *Casimir* III. took that part of *Prussia*, which is, at present, called *Polish Prussia*, under his protection; and obliged the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order to hold the other part as a fief of *Poland*.

In the reign of *Sigismund* I. *Casimir's* youngest son, the Margrave *Albert* Grand-Master of the *Teutonic* Order was made Duke of *Prussia* in the year 1525; which, however, he held as a vassal of the King and kingdom of *Poland*.

*Sigismund Augustus* son to *Sigismund* I. obliged the new Duke of *Courland*, *Gothard Ketlern* to become his vassal; and, in the year 1569, completed the Union of the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* with the kingdom of *Poland*. *Livonia* gave itself up to the *Poles*; *Volhynia*, *Podolia*, *Polackia* and *Kiovia*, were also annexed to the *Polish* dominions in the same reign; and the male line of the *Jagellonian* family became extinct at his death, which happened in 1572. After this, the kingdom of *Poland* was governed by Kings of different families.

*Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, son of *Henry* II. of *France*, obtained the crown under certain restrictions in the year 1573; and some laws were instituted, which were to serve as fundamental rules of Government to the King and his successors. This Prince, after a reign of two years, withdrew clandestinely out of *Poland* into *France*.

Upon this, the Throne was declared vacant in the year 1575, and the Crown bestowed on *Stephen Bathori*, Prince of *Transylvania*. This monarch, in the year 1578, instituted the two great Tribunals or Courts of Judicature at *Peterkau* and *Lublin*; and had his life been prolonged, would certainly have greatly augmented the power, reputation, and prosperity of the kingdom; but this wise Prince was snatched away in the flower of his age.

*Sigismund* III. a *Swedish* Prince, the son of *Catharine*, sister to *Sigismund Augustus* King of *Poland*, lost the Great Dutchy of *Livonia*; of which he was dispossessed by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*.

*Uladislaus* IV. *Sigismund* the third's son, restored tranquility to the kingdom; and his wife Government deserved the highest praise. This Prince

intended to institute a new Order of knighthood under the title of the 'Knights of the Immaculate Virgin;' but this project was never carried into execution. He also set up post-houses throughout the kingdom, for the conveyance of letters, in the year 1647. This Monarch's death was followed by a tumultuous *Interregnum*, the calamities of which were greatly heightened by the incursions and ravages of the revolted *Cosaks*.

In the year 1649, *John Casimir*, brother to *Uladislaus IV.* was elected King. This Prince was unsuccessful in his war against *Sweden*, and by the peace of *Oliva*, concluded in 1660, was obliged to cede *Livonia* to that Crown. In 1668 he resigned the Government out of disgust, and retired into *France*. *John Casimir* was the last Prince of the female branch of the *Jagellonian-line* in *Poland*; and the Pope honoured him with the title of *Orthodoxus*, or 'True believer.'

*Casimir* was succeeded by *Michael Thomas Wisniowiecki*, a nobleman of great learning and parts; but without any post of honour or estate.

On the death of *Wisniowiecki*, which happened in the year 1674, the regal dignity was conferred on the heroic Prince *John III.* surnamed *Sobieski*, the High Marshal and General in chief to the Crown, who, by a signal victory gained over the *Turks* at *Chozim*, paved his way to the Throne, and greatly contributed to raise the siege of *Vienna*.

On the demise of King *John III.* which fell out in 1696, *Augustus II.* Elector of *Saxony*, was chose King of *Poland*, who by the treaty of *Carlowitz* re-annexed the fortrefs of *Caminiac* to his dominions.

By the peace of *Ransstadt* concluded in the year 1706, this Prince was obliged to give up the *Polish* crown to *Stanislaus Leszynski*; which, however, he reassumed after the defeat of the *Swedes* at *Pultowa*, when *Stanislaus* was obliged to yield it up, and withdraw. *Augustus* instituted the Order of the *White Eagle*; and ended his days in the year 1733.

*Frederick Augustus III.* *Augustus* the second's son, by the help of the *Russian* army, kept possession of the Crown of *Poland* against *Stanislaus*; and the latter had the Dutchy of *Lorraine* conferred upon him.

§. 10. *Poland* was formerly an hereditary kingdom; but afterwards, the accession of a new King to the Government was always preceded by a declaration of the Nobility. However, the Kings did not only stile themselves Sovereigns of *Poland* by the consent of the people; but also heirs to the kingdom, and its dependencies, by right of succession.

*Sigismund Augustus* was the last who assumed this title. After his decease it was enacted by a law, 'That no King should, in his life-time, appoint, or chuse a successor; nor convoke a Diet for the Election; nor, lastly, in any manner intermeddle with the succession to the Crown: but that, on the decease of a King, the choice should perpetually remain free and open to all the Nobles of the Kingdom.' This law has, accordingly, been hitherto observed. Thus *Poland* is become an elective Kingdom.

The

The place of election is in a common, or open field, near the village of *Wola*, not far from *Warsaw*: It is surrounded with a ditch and a rampart, and has three gates, one of which is towards the East for *Great Poland*; the second towards the South for *Little Poland*; and the third, which faces the West, is for *Lithuania*. The Senators, or Counsellors of State, are accommodated on this occasion with a wooden house built for that purpose, called *Szopa*. Without this edifice the representatives assemble in a place called *Kola*, i. e. a circle or crown; and those noblemen who attend the Election in person pitch their tents at a greater distance from it. The Sovereign is elected by the spiritual and temporal Counsellors of State; the Nobles who send their representatives or proxes, though every Nobleman may attend in person if he pleases; by the cities of *Cracow*, *Poznan*, *Vilna*, *Lemberg*, and *Warsaw*, whose choice always coincides with that of the Nobility; and likewise by *Tborn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzic*, the three principal cities of *Polish Prussia*. None but *Roman-catholics* dare appear at the Election. The King Elect is obliged either personally, or by his ambassador or proxy, to swear to the observance of the *Pacta Conventa*, which are drawn up in the *Polish* language, and administered by the States. After this he is proclaimed King, and crowned in the cathedral of *Cracow* by the Archbishop of *Gnesna*.

*Poland*, in conjunction with the Great Dutchy \* which is annexed to it, constitutes a Republic, of which, indeed, the King is considered as the head; but most of the power is lodged in the Senate, or Council of State, and the Noblesse. The King is not permitted to enter into a war, to assemble an army, conclude a peace, or to make any public alliances; neither is he invested with the power of sending envoys on important occasions, imposing taxes, contributions or customs, or of coining money without the consent of the States. He is to make no laws, determine no religious disputes, nor to alienate any of the royal demesnes; nor, lastly, is he to undertake and carry into execution any matters of importance that concern the kingdom, without the consent of the States duly convened. Among his royal prerogatives, the chief is, that the King has the disposal of the posts of honour, and the royal demesnes. But, without consent of the States, he is neither to diminish, or increase, the honorary posts; nor to confer above one office on one person; nor to deprive any one of his post.

As for the ecclesiastical preferments, the King nominates the Archbishops and Bishops, except the Archbishop of *Ermland*; and the Pope confirms the nomination. The King is patron only of twelve abbeys and one provostship. The rest of the abbots are elected by the monks, and confirmed by the Pope.

The King of *Poland* has, at present, little or no property in what is called the royal estates; but is obliged to bestow them on private persons; and the Consideration-money does not come into the King's coffers, but is applied to the service of the Republic. These estates consist of *Starosteys*,

\* *Lithuania*.



in Latin \* *Capitaneatus*, either with or without a jurisdiction annexed; *Tenutes*, in Latin *Tenutæ*, à *tenendo*, *quòd qui tenutam habent, tenent aliquid, seu possident*, to which belong lands and villages; and *Advocations*, which consist of some arable land, meadows, mills, &c. The other royal prerogatives are as follows. The chief care of the public welfare is committed to the King, who is to consult with the States about every thing relating to the kingdom: His Majesty summons the ordinary and extraordinary Diets or assemblies of the States, and presides in them: No law can be made without his concurrence; and they are all promulgated in his name. The King is also the chief Protector of the laws and subjects of the Kingdom. The Tribunals and Courts of Judicature are held in his name; and he confers new, and confirms former, privileges. The Sovereign can grant titles of Nobility, but not the privileges annexed to those titles, which require the consent of the States; and when no Diet is assembled, he can consult with the Counsellors and Ministers of his Court. The King also has power to send Envoys on affairs which are not of great consequence to the Republic; and when he is in the army, he has the chief Command, and can summon the Nobility on any emergency. These, and some other particulars of less consequence, make up the royal prerogatives of the Kings of *Poland*.

§. 11. The royal Revenues are in *Poland* termed ‘ Estates for the Kings table, Oeconomies, and Oecumenical revenues.’ These were formerly very considerable; but, at present, do not amount to a million of *Prussian* Guilders. The revenues arise from the salt-mines in the Palatinate of *Cracow*; the decayed lead and silver-mines of *Olkush* when they come to be wrought again; the ancient tolls and customs; the oeconomy or rents of *Marienburg* in *Prussia*, *Dirschbau* in *Pomerellia*, and *Rogenbus* in the District of *Culm*; those of the *Great*, but now small, Prefecture of *Cracow*, which brings in about 20,000 *Prussian* Guilders, and of the District of *Niepolomicz*, which are nearly the same with the preceding; and the tolls or customs of *Elbing* and *Dantzic*, with other annual sums paid by those cities. These revenues and lands the King can neither augment, diminish, nor farm for less than the real value. They must be farmed to none but Noblemen who are natives of *Poland* and resident in the country, and that at the highest rate possible. The only revenue particularly appropriated for the use of the Queen, is the sum of 2000 gold guilders annually paid to her Majesty out of the salt-mines of *Cracow*.

§. 12. The arms of the Republic are, *Gules* an eagle *Argent* for *Poland*, and *Gules* a cavalier *Argent* for *Lithuania*.

§. 13. The Order of the White Eagle was instituted by King *Augustus II.* in the year 1705. Its ensign is a cross of gold enamelled with red, with a white border and four flames between the points, appendent to a blue

\* i. e. *German Latin*. *Prefectura* would better express the *Polish* word *Starostey*.

ribbon. On one side of the badge is the *Polish* White Eagle, with a white cross and the Electoral sword, &c. on its breast. On the other side, the King's cypher A. R. and round it this motto: *Pro Fide Rege, et Lege*. The cross is surmounted with a crown set with diamonds.

§. 14. The *Polish* Senate, or Council of State, consists of one hundred and forty-four members, who are all stiled 'Senators of the kingdom, or Counsellors of State,' and have the title of *Excellency*; however, they have no appointments or pensions as Senators. The Senate consists

I. Of two Archbishops, namely, those of *Gnesen* or *Gnesna* in *Great Poland*, and *Lemberg* in *Russia*. The Archbishop of *Gnesna* is next in rank to the King, and sits on his right hand in the Senate. He is also *Legatus natus*, or perpetual legate of the See of *Rome*, Primate of the church, and *Primas regni* or *Primus Princeps*, i. e. 'the first Senator, and first Prince of kingdom.' In the King's absence, or during the vacancy of the throne, he may summon the Diet; assemble the Senate or Council of State; propose the articles to be debated, and carry them into execution; give audience to foreign ambassadors; and, at such times, is always the *Interrex*. This Prelate likewise crowns the King and Queen; and is stiled *Canonicus natus*, or canon born, of the cathedral of *Ploczko*. He resides at *Lowicz*, where he has his Marshal, Cross-bearer, and Chancellor. This high dignity is always enjoyed by a prelate; for the *Poles* are apprehensive least a layman should be tempted to set up for himself, and make his way to the throne.

Next to the Primate is the Archbishop of *Lemberg*, who sits on the King's left hand in the Senate.

II. Fifteen Bishops, who sit on both sides, next to the Archbishops, in the following order.

1. The Bishop of *Cracow*, who is Duke of *Severia*, and has ecclesiastical jurisdiction over the three Palatinates of *Lesser Poland* properly so called. This Prelate's revenues are larger than those of any other Bishop, or even the Archbishop of *Gnesna*; and six Bishops of *Cracow* are found in the list of cardinals. Though he is the first Bishop, he sits on the King's left hand, next to the Archbishop of *Lemberg*.

2. The Bishop of *Wladislaw* in *Cujavia*, who also stiles himself Bishop of *Pomerellia*, sits on the King's right hand, next to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. During a vacancy of the throne, and the absence of the Archbishop of *Gnesna* or vacancy of that See, this Prelate sits as *Interrex*.

3. The Bishop of *Posen* or *Posnan*, whose Diocese, besides the palatinate of *Posnia*, comprehends part of *Masovia* and *Warsaw*. In the absence of the Primate and the Bishop of *Cujavia*, he presides at the Election of a King.

4. The Bishop of *Wilna*, whose Diocese extends beyond *Lithuania* and *White Russia*, as far as the borders of *Masovia*. This Prelate and the preceding take place of each other alternately.

## INTRODUCTION TO

5. The Bishop of *Ploczko*, who is supreme and absolute Lord over the District of *Pultowa* in *Masovia*; so that there lies no appeal from his sentence even to the King. His ecclesiastical jurisdiction extends also to the District of *Drzwin*.

6. The Bishop of *Ermland* in *Prussia*, of whose Diocese we have given an account in our description of that kingdom. This Prelate depends immediately on the Pope.

7. The Bishop of *Luocko* in *Volhynia*, whose Diocese also includes a part of *Masovia* and *Podlachia*, and of the palatinate of *Brzeskie* in *Lithuania*.

8. The Bishop of *Premislaw*, or *Przemysl*, in *Little Russia*.

9. The Bishop of *Samoyten*, or *Samogitia*, who also styles himself 'Bishop of *Pilten* in *Courland*.'

10. The Bishop of *Culm* in *Prussia*, who has also the title of 'Bishop of *Pomerania*.'

11. The Bishop of *Chehm* in *Little Russia*.

12. The Bishop of *Kiow* and *Czernikow*.

13. The Bishop of *Cameniec* in *Podolia*.

14. The Bishop of *Livonia*.

15. The Bishop of *Smolensko*.

Two of these Prelates, namely, those of *Kiow* and *Smolensko* are only titular Bishops, those cities being now in the possession of the *Russians*; however, the titles are thought worth soliciting for, on account of the rank and seat in the Senate annexed to them. After these ecclesiastical members of the Council, are the lay Senators, namely,

III. Thirty-seven *Woiewodas* or Palatines, including the three Castellans and the *Starosta* of *Samogitia*, who rank with the Palatines. The office of a *Woiewoda* or Palatine is to march at the head of the Nobility of his *Woiewodzwo* or Palatinate in time of war; as his title implies, which is derived from *Woyna*, which signifies war, and *Wodz*, a leader: and in time of peace he is to assemble the Nobility, to preside in the Courts of Judicature and pronounce sentence; to settle the price of goods brought to market, except in war time, and during the sessions of a Diet; to examine weights and measures; and lastly, to protect and administer justice to the Jews. Some of the Palatines are merely titular *Woiewoda*'s, without any palatinates, as those of *Kiow*, *Smolensko*, and *Czernikow*. Every Palatine is a Prince by his office. The King has the nomination of all this class, except the *Starosta* of *Samogitia*, and the Palatines of *Polocko* and *Witepsk*, who are chosen by the Nobility of their respective Palatinates, and confirmed by the King. Some of the Palatines, especially those of the province of *Russia*, are fond of the title of General-*Woiewoda*. No Palatine is permitted to hold two palatinates at the same time; and every *Woiewoda* or Palatine has his Deputy-*Woiewoda*. The Palatines, and other Senators who rank with them, are in order of precedence as follows.

The



The Castellan of *Cracow*.

The Palatines of *Cracow* and *Pofnania*, who alternately change their places of refidence and order of voting.

The Palatines of *Wilna* and *Sandomir*.

The Castellan of *Wilna*.

The Palatines of *Kalifb*, *Trock*, and *Siradia*.

The Castellan of *Trock*.

The Palatine of *Leczycz*.

The chief *Starofa* of *Samogitia*.

The Palatines of

*Brzeft* in *Cujawia*.

*Kiow*.

*Jungeneflau*.

*Ruffia*.

*Volhynia*.

*Podolia*.

*Smolensko*.

*Lublin*.

*Polocko*.

*Belsk*.

*Novogrod*.

*Plocko*.

*Witepsk*.

*Mafowia*.

*Podlachia*.

*Rawa*.

*Brzefcz* in *Lithuania*.

*Culm*.

*Mfciflaw*.

*Marienburg*.

*Braclaw*.

*Pomerellia*.

*Minsk*.

*Livonia*.

*Czeruikow*.

IV. Eighty-two *Castellani*, or Castellans, who in time of peace are only Senators without any jurisdiction. But in time of war, by general fummons, they act as Palatines, whose Lieutenants they in fome measure are, and march at the head of the Nobility under the *Woiewoda*'s. In the *Polifb* language, a Castellan is ftiled *Pan* or Lord, and the termination *ki* or *ski* is added to the name of the place over which he is Castellan; as *Pan Pofnanfki*, 'Lord of *Pofnan*,' *Pan Plocki*, Lord of *Plocko*.' They are divided into *Great* and *Little* Castellans; the latter have been admitted into the Senate posterior to the former. The Great Castellans, together with the other fpiri- tual and temporal fenators are admitted into the moft fecret councils, from which the others are fometime excluded.

The Great Castellans are thofe of

*Pofnan*.

*Sandomir*.

*Kalifb*.

*Woynicz*.

*Gnefna*.

*Siradia*.

*Leczycz*.

*Samogitia*.

*Brzeft* in *Cujawia*.

*Kiow*.

*Jungeneflau*.

*Lemberg*.

*Volhynia*.

*Caminiac*.

*Smolensko*.

*Lublin*.

*Polocko*.

*Belsk*.

*Novogrod*.

*Plocko*.

*Witepsk*.

## INTRODUCTION TO

Witepsk.  
Czern.  
Podlachia.  
Rawa.  
Brześć in Lithuania.  
Culm.  
Mściław.

Elbing.  
Braclaw.  
Dantzick.  
Minsk.  
Livonia.  
Czernikow.

The Little Castellans are those of

Sandecz.  
Miedrziziecz.  
Wislicz.  
Biecz.  
Rogozno.  
Radom.  
Zawikost.  
Landen.  
Szrem.  
Zarnowo.  
Malogost.  
Wielun.  
Przemysl.  
Halicz.  
Sanock.  
Chelmno.  
Dobrzyu.  
Polaniec.  
Przemecz.  
Kriwino.  
Czekowo.  
Nakel.  
Rospirz.  
Biekowo.  
Bydgoszcz.

Brzezinin.  
Kruszewicz.  
Ofwiecim.  
Kamia.  
Spicimierz.  
Inowlodz.  
Kowal.  
Santok.  
Sokaciowo.  
Warsaw.  
Gostyn.  
Wisna.  
Raciaz.  
Sieprz.  
Wyszogrod.  
Rypin.  
Zakroczym.  
Ciekanowo.  
Liwa.  
Slon.  
Lubaczowo.  
Konar in Siradia.  
Konar in Leczycz.  
Konar in Cujavia.

V. Lastly, the Crown-Officers, in Latin *Officiales seu magistratus majores Ordinis senatorii*. These are

The Crown Great-Marshal.  
The Great-Marshal of *Lithuania*.  
The Crown Great-Chancellor.  
The Great-Chancellor of *Lithuania*.  
The Crown Vice-Chancellor.  
The Vice-Chancellor of *Lithuania*.

The Crown Great-Treasurer.  
The Great-Treasurer of *Lithuania*.  
The Crown Deputy-Treasurer.  
The Deputy-Treasurer of *Lithuania*.  
The Crown Court-Marshal.  
The Court-Marshal of *Lithuania*.

These

These State-Officers, though they are the last of the Senators in order, are persons of great power and dignity, and in a fair way of rising to the highest posts in the kingdom.

§. 15. The Diets are usually held on two accounts; namely, to consider on the resolutions of the Senate relating to the public welfare, and for the administration of Justice. They are divided into *Comitia togata*, which are the most usual Diets, when the States assemble in the city \* without any tumult or military attendants; and *Comitia paludata*, when they meet armed and in the field, which are generally held during an *Interregnum*. The Assemblies of the States are also commonly distinguished into *Ordinary* and *Extraordinary* Diets. The former, by the laws of the Republic, are summoned once in two years; but the latter are assembled on an exigency, before the expiration of that term; and to these *Extraordinary* Diets either all the States, or only the Senators, are summoned. The most usual place where the Diet assembles is the city of *Warsaw*; but every third Diet is held at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*.

The Diets are preceded by the *Lantage*, or Provincial assemblies of the Nobility, according to the King's appointment; and for these, particular places are fixed in every province and Palatinate. In these Provincial assemblies the Deputies or Representatives of the Nobility, and of the Provinces, who are stiled in Latin *Nuntii terrestres seu Delegati provinciales*, are chosen. These Deputies either receive particular instructions how to act in the Diet; or their conduct in the deliberations is left to their own judgment and probity.

After this, the General-Provincial-Diets were formerly held in the following places; namely, in *Great Poland* at *Kolo*; in *Little Poland* at *Korczyn*, which is also called *Neustadt*; in *Lithuania* at *Slonim*; and in *Prussia* at *Graudentz* or *Marienbourg* alternately. The principal State Officers, the new-elected Representatives, and such of the Nobility as were inclined, usually assisted at these assemblies, and from thence they proceeded to the Grand Diet. But these General-Provincial-Diets have been gradually disused, except in *Masovia*, where they still hold these assemblies, and from which they repair to the General Diet at *Warsaw*.

The *Prussians* also meet in the same manner at the places appointed, before they proceed to the Diet.

The resolutions of the Diet may be prevented by the opposition of any single Representative, whether it relate to the matter under deliberation, or some remote affair arbitrarily introduced; and such an opposition even annuls all the preceding acts of the Diet. Hence it comes to pass, that the *Polish* Diets so frequently terminate without doing any thing. But whatever is unanimously assented to by the Representatives, the Senators, and the King, has the force of a decree of the Diet, passes into a law, and is printed and

\* Either at *Warsaw* in *Poland*, or *Grodno* in *Lithuania*.



published accordingly. When the Noble *Poles* enter into an association either during an *Interregnum*, or while the King is living, it is called a *Confederation*.

§. 16. Among the Officers of State are two Generals; one of whom is stiled the Great General, and the other the Lieutenant-General. These Officers, as Generals, have no feat in the senate; however, they may be, and often are, Senators.

The principal Secretary of the Kingdom, and that of the Dutchy of *Lithuania*, are also admitted into the senate, after a solemn oath, as Assistants; and in the absence of the Chancellor, supply his place at court, and have the precedence of all provincial and court-officers, excepting the Court-Marshal. The Secretaries are always noble ecclesiastics.

The next to these in rank are the *Referendaries*. Of these there are two for the Kingdom, and two for *Lithuania*; and one of them is an ecclesiastic, the other a layman. At present, they have no power to hear and report the complaints of private persons; but their business is to decide, in their particular courts which are called *Referendariatus*, the disputes arising betwixt the farmers of the King's estates and *Oeconimies*, as they are called, and the peasants. They have also a feat in the *Assessorial* and *Relation* Court.

The other State-Officers of *Poland* and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* are, the Court-Treasurer; the Under-Chamberlain; the Standard-bearer; Sword-bearers; the Master of the horse and his Deputy; the Clerk of the kitchen; the Cup-bearer; the Carvers, Tasters, Huntsman, &c.

§. 17. In every Palatinate and District are the following officers, who are stiled *Dignitarii*; namely, a Vice-Treasurer, a Standard-bearer, a Judge, a Taster, a Cup-bearer, an inferior Judge, a Vice-Steward, an Under-Cup-bearer, a Huntsman, a Captain or Military Officer, a Secretary, a Sword-bearer, a Lieutenant-Captain, and a Cofferer. Some of these, *viz.* the Sword-bearer, Cup-bearers, and Treasurers, have only the title and dignity, without any actual employment; unless the king happens to take his residence in their palatinate: but the rest are in actual employment. The Vice-Treasurer only takes cognizance of affairs relating to the boundaries and the demesnes in his province; but the Vice-Treasurer of *Cracow* has also the inspection of the salt-mines in that country.

Here we must also take notice of the *Castellani* or Castellans whose office, &c. is described above.

Next to these are the *Starosta's*, in Latin *Capitanei judiciales*, who not only have the care of the royal castles, but are likewise to preserve the good order and tranquility of their respective *Starosties*, and not to suffer any violences or robberies to be committed in their Districts. They have power to judge and punish the inhabitants of the town or country, and even the Nobility, in their jurisdiction; and when no other magistrate is willing or able to do it, they put in execution the sentences passed by ecclesiastical or lay-judges. They also have an eye to the rights and profits of the Sovereign or proprietor, arising either from the occupiers of the lands, or the assessments and revenues paid by the Burghers and Peasants; and have jurisdiction over the

the castles, villages, and farms, and also of the royal towns and villages. Every *Starosta* has his Deputy, who is generally called *Under-Starosta*, and in his name superintends the whole *Starostey*; and also a *Burgrave*, who maintains the public tranquility, and executes the sentences passed by the Judges. In the ordinary courts of justice, a *Grod*, or castle-judge, and a Notary, who is also called the *Grod-clerk*, assist. The *Starosta's* are generally distinguished by the castles and extent of land in their jurisdiction, rather than by the palatinates to which they belong. Some of them preside over more than one District. There are also *Starosta's* who have no jurisdiction; and these indeed are more numerous than the former. Some Bishops, Princes, and wealthy Noblemen have also their castles and *Starostas*.

The towns in *Poland* are governed by Burgomasters and a Common Council; and the villages by Village-Judges, as they are called, and other inferior officers. Some of the plebeians in the cities, towns, and villages, are vassals to the King, others to Princes and Noblemen; and a good many are vassals to the Clergy. These are governed rather by the arbitrary will of their Lords, than by any fixed laws.

The Courts of Judicature in *Poland* are,

1. The Court-Tribunals, which are divided into *Assessorial* Courts, and Courts of Reports; and in these appeals may be lodged from the towns.
2. The Provincial Courts.
3. The Palatine Courts.
4. The *Starosta's* and Vice-Treasurer's Courts.

There is a particular Tribunal for the Nobility, which was first held at *Peterkau* for *Great Poland*, and afterwards in *Lublin* for *Little Poland*; and the judges of this Court consist both of ecclesiastics and laymen. The *Lithuanian* Tribunal is held at *Wilna*, *Novogrodek*, or *Minsk*.

§. 18. All the Clergy are subject to the Archbishops and Bishops. The Bishops have the principal direction of the ecclesiastical courts, where they are represented by their Commissaries, Vicars, Chancellors, and Officials. The principal Official is called the Official-General; and the rest are stiled Provincial-Officials. From the Bishops and their Commissaries an appeal lies to the Archbishops; and from the Archbishop of *Lemberg* to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*; and lastly, from him to the Pope. The ecclesiastical Judges punish the Clergy immediately; but the intervention of the civil power is necessary to put in execution their sentence passed on laymen. The Clergy assume an unlimited authority in every part of the kingdom, and are endeavouring to engross the power and wealth of the nation into their own hands.

§. 19. We are now, in the last place, to give an account of the military forces of *Poland*. No such thing as a standing army, kept in constant pay, was formerly known in this country; but all that were capable of bearing arms in the nation took the field on any emergency. In the year 1551 the *Lithuanians* first began, for the security of their frontiers, to keep on foot, and pay a certain number of troops. Their example was followed



## INTRODUCTION TO

by the *Poles*, who raised an army to defend their frontiers from the ravages of their roving, lawless neighbours, who live on plunder. The fourth part of the produce of the royal *Table-lands*, as they are called, are appropriated to maintain these troops; hence they are called *Quartians*; and the money appointed for the payment of them is deposited in the castle of *Rawa*. But as these *Quartians* were found not to be sufficient for the defence of the kingdom, the army was augmented, and divided into Cavalry and Infantry; but the former were more numerous than the foot. The troops are now divided into the Crown-army, and that of *Lithuania*; but some of the troops in both armies are clothed and exercised in the *Polish*, and others in the *German* manner.

1. The Crown-Army consists of  
 1000 Spear-men.  
 3940 Cuirassiers.  
 1000 light armed troops. All these are disciplined in the *Polish* manner.  
 4000 Dragoons.  
 6750 foot soldiers.  
 850 matrosses.  
 400 *Hungarians*. All these, except the *Hungarians*, are trained in the *German* discipline.

2. The *Lithuanian* army is composed of  
 400 men bearing lances or spears.  
 Above 1160 Cuirassiers.  
 460 *Tartars*.  
 240 *Cosaks*.  
 Four regiments of Dragoons.  
 Three regiments of foot.  
 150 matrosses; besides a corps of *Janizaries* and *Kuruks*.  
 Both these armies are paid twice a year. The charge of these troops in *Poland* is defrayed by a capitation or poll-tax; but in *Lithuania* other taxes are levied for this purpose: the soldiers also receive what is called Winter-Quarter-money besides their pay. The troops are mostly cantoned on the crown-lands.

Besides this standing-army, which receives constant pay, *Poland*, on any pressing exigency, is provided with another which can speedily be got together, and is of no charge to the Public. For on any sudden and imminent danger, the whole body of the Nobility are summoned to appear in the field on horse-back; and such a general summons of the Nobles is in the *Polish* language called *Pospolite Ruszenie*. This is concluded upon in a Diet, after having been previously proposed in the provincial meetings; and is done by royal Letters with the seals of the kingdom and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*. These, being fastened to poles by the summoners, are carried to the principal Noblemen, State-Officers, and persons of rank in every palatinate, and read in the Market-places of the cities and towns. When this has been three times repeated, the Nobility, after holding their assemblies.



assemblies in their Palatinates and Districts, appear in the field on horse-back, and, during the campaign provide subsistence for themselves. The following persons are exempt from obeying this summons, *viz.* the Ministers of the Senate or Council of State, and those who are about the King's person; Envoys at foreign courts, the Burgrave of *Cracow*, the Under-Starostas, and the Clerks of the revenue; thirty officers of the Queen's household; invalids, and some few others. The rest are obliged to appear, under forfeiture of their estates, &c. The King himself always marches at the head of this army. The cities and towns provide carriages and other military stores; and likewise a certain number of foot soldiers. After the Nobility have been a fortnight at the general rendezvous, if no enemy appear, they are at liberty to return to their respective homes. These troops are not obliged to go beyond the limits of the kingdom: but if this be resolved by the States, and the Nobility voluntarily conform, every horseman and foot-soldier previously receives five *Polish* marks\*, and the campaign is not to last above three months. Such a general summons has not been issued since the year 1672; so that it may be classed among the rare occurrences: Nor is it of any great advantage to the Republic, on account of the short duration of the campaign; the want of good discipline and obedience to their chiefs; of proper arms, sufficient supplies of provisions, and other important articles.

Foreign auxiliaries are not to be brought into the kingdom without the consent of the States. Few or no fortified places are to be seen in *Poland* or *Lithuania*: for the *Poles* alledge that the courage and bravery of the inhabitants is the best defence of their country. *Kameniec*, on the frontiers of *Podolia*, owes its strength more to Nature than art. The so much boasted fortifications of the City of *Zamosk*, if compared to fortified towns in other countries, must appear very inconsiderable; and all the towns, which formerly stood only one siege, are now open and defenceless. When a foreigner reads of fortified places in *Poland*, he must not suppose that such expressions signify any thing more than a ditch, a rampart, a wooden or a stone-wall, with which such places are surrounded. *Dantzick* is the only place that deserves the name of a fortress in the *Polish* dominions; but this is an independent city.

§. 20. The Kingdom of *Poland* consists of three principal Provinces, namely, *Great Poland*, *Little Poland*, and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*. This division is of great utility with regard to the public law of *Poland*, according to which the nation consists of three distinct people and three provinces; and the Marshal in the Diet is alternately chosen from these provinces. Of this the reader may see more in *Lengnick's Jus publicum Regni Poloni*, Tom. I. p. 18. In consequence of this division we shall begin with the first.

\* A *Polish* mark is about 4s. 6d. sterling.

## G R E A T P O L A N D;

O R

## WIELKOPOLSKA PROWINCYA.

**T**HIS name, taken in a more extensive sense, includes *Masovia* and *Polish Prussia*. *Great Poland* consists of the following Divisions.

I. *G R E A T P O L A N D* properly so called,  
Which is also termed *L O W E R P O L A N D*.

This Province contains five Palatinates or *Woiewodzo's*, which are,

I. The Palatinate of *POSNANIA* or *POZNAN*, in Latin *Palatinatus Posnaniensis*, with the three Districts of *Wschowa*, *Roscian*, and *Walecz*. The *Starosta* of *Posnania* is chief *Starosta* of *Great Poland*. The remarkable places in this Palatinate, &c. are,

*Posen* or *Posnan*, a handsome but not very large city on the river *Warta*. It is inclosed with a double wall and a deep moat; and on the other side of the *Warta* it has two suburbs, namely, *Szrodka* and *Waliszewo*, which are surrounded with a large morass. Both the city and suburbs are subject to frequent inundations by the overflowing of the river. The castle stands on an island in the *Warta*, and is a good structure. Besides several churches and convents, the public edifices of this town are the Jesuit's college, founded by Bishop *Adam Konarski*, and built according to the model of that at *Brunswick*; an academical *Gymnasium* instituted by Bishop *John Lubranski*, and from his name called *Athenæum Lubranscianum*, which stands in the suburbs; and an Episcopal Seminary. The Bishop's palace stands near the cathedral, which is a fine structure, and between the morasses. This is the first in rank, and the most ancient Bishop's See in *Poland*. It was founded by the Emperor *Otto I.* in the reign of *Mieczislaus I.* King of *Poland*, and made subordinate to the Archbishopric of *Magdeburg*; under which it continued a considerable time, till it was subjected to the Archbishopric of *Gnesna*. This city owes a great part of its prosperity to the trade  
with

with *Germany*: It is a staple-town, and enjoys several other privileges. A Court of Judicature is held in this city; and the Christian Religion first gained a footing in this part of *Poland*. In the year 1716, *Posnan* was garrisoned by *Saxons*; but taken by storm, and plundered by the *Poles*.

*Golan*, a small town which lies in one of the roads from *Posnan* to *Dantzick*. In this Palatinate also lie the towns of *Sroda*, *Lubien*, *Czarnkow*, *Gluszyn*, and *Obra*.

*Rogoszno*, *Szrzem*, *Przemecz*, *Krzywno*, and *Santok*, are small towns; and in each of these a *Castellan* resides.

*Bleser*, a stately abbey on the frontiers.

*Meseritz* or *Miedzyrzecz* a town on the borders of *Brandenburg*, where a *Castellan* resides. Here is an Evangelical or Lutheran church. This town was plundered in the year 1519.

*Paradyz*, an abbey in the neighbourhood of *Meseritz*.

*Fraustadt*, called in the *Polish* language *Ufkowa*, a handsome town on the frontiers of *Silesia*, was built by *Germans*, and a great part of its inhabitants are of that nation. There are three *Lutheran* churches in this town; and the inhabitants carry on a considerable trade in oxen and wool. A Court of Judicature is also held here. *Fraustadt* formerly belonged to *Silesia*; but King *Casimir* annexed it to the *Polish* dominions. However, that Prince promised to maintain it in its former privileges, among which was the right of coining money. In the year 1644, this town was almost entirely destroyed by fire; and in 1706 the combined armies of the *Saxons* and *Russians* were entirely defeated by the *Swedens* near this place.

*Lissa* or *Polish Lissa*, by the *Poles* called *Leczno*, a fine, populous town and lordship not far from the preceding, in the territory of which it lies. *Lissa* was formerly no more than a village. But when great numbers of Protestants from *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and *Austria* removed to this place, and obtained the free exercise of their religion, it considerably increased, and was raised to a town. The inhabitants carry on a good trade. Here is a Lutheran church, a *Gymnasium* or Seminary, and a Calvinist church; and the General-Senior of all the Evangelical or Lutheran churches in *Great Poland*, who was formerly styled the Superintendent, resides in this town. In the year 1656, the inhabitants quitted the town for fear of the *Polish* troops, who plundered and laid it in ashes. In 1707 it was also laid waste by the *Russians*; but after this, it was rebuilt with great improvements.

*Ridzin*, or *Reuffen*, which lies about a *German* mile from *Polish Lissa*, is a castle belonging to the *Leczynski* family. Before it was demolished by the *Saxons* in 1705, it was one of the finest structures in all *Poland*. It is very pleasantly situated on an island formed by a river, and near a wood, through which a vista is cut in a straight line that is terminated by a distant view of the town of *Lissa*.



*Ravitz*, a small town, but well planned and regularly built; so that the four gates of it may be seen from a certain point of view. It is surrounded with a rampart, which is but mean. The *German* is the only language spoken here. Most of the inhabitants are Lutherans; and among them are several woollen weavers: Hence cloth is the chief manufacture of the place, in which it drives a considerable trade. *Charles XII.* of *Sweden* took up his winter quarters in this town in 1704, and continued here till the *August* following.

*Krzebe*, formerly a rich and large village, well known under the name of *Sulcarva*, but now a small town.

*Kosten*, a little town situated in a marshy country, remarkable for a Court of Judicature held in it.

*Note.* To this Palatinate the *Starostey* of *Drabeim*, which was mortgaged to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, belongs.

2. The Palatinate of *KALISH*, called in the *Polish* language *Kalisz*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Calisiensis*, with the Districts of *Konin*, *Pyzdry*, *Gniezno*, *Krcenia*, and *Nakio*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

*Boreck*, a small town seated on a lake. Here is a famous image of the *Virgin Mary*, to which great numbers of pilgrims resort.

*Kalish* or *Kalisz*, a large town surrounded with morasses, a wall, and towers, lies on the river *Prosna*. The Jesuits college here, which is so highly extolled by the *Poles*, was founded by *Stanislaus Karnkowski* Archbishop of *Gnesna* at his own private charges. Here is held a Court of Justice; and this town is the residence of a Palatine and a Castellan. In the year 1655, *Kalish* was taken by the *Swedes*. In 1706, General *Mardefeld* and the *Swedish* army were totally defeated and taken prisoners by the confederate army, commanded by *Augustus II.* King of *Poland*, near this town.

*Grabau*; *Cosmin*, where is a Court of Judicature; *Plesrow*, *Kolo*, *Stawiszyn*, *Romi*, where also is a Court of Justice; *Landen*, *Pyzdry*, and *Slupcza* are all little towns. The Provincial Diet for *Great Poland* is held at *Kolo*.

*Olobok*, a rich nunnery, is a handsome structure, and lies between *Grabau* and *Kalish*, about two *German* miles from the latter.

*Razimierz*, a village lying betwixt *Slupcza* and *Posnan*, where the unfortunate Count *Patkul* was broke alive on the wheel and impaled, by order of *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*, in the year 1708.

*Gnesna* or *Gnesen*, in the *Polish* language *Gniezno*, the capital of *Great Poland*, and the most ancient city in the kingdom, lies in a plain. It is a large town, and the See of an Archbishop, whose power and grandeur have been described above\*. A Castellan resides, and a Court of Judicature is held in this town. *Boleslaus I.* bought the body of *St. Adalbert*

\* See p. 579.

or *Albert*, whom the *Prussians* had murdered, and had it conveyed to *Gnesna* and buried in the cathedral; and King *Sigismund III.* enclosed his remains in a silver shrine. But whether the Saint's bones are still preserved here, or whether they were carried away to *Prague* by the *Bobemians* in the year 1038, is the subject of an idle dispute between the *Poles* and *Bobemians*, that, probably, will never be cleared up. This city was erected into a Bishop's See by *Boleslaus I.* in the year 1000. There is a particular Chancellor belonging to this Chapter, and a *Gymnasium* or Seminary is founded here. The Kings of *Poland* were formerly crowned in this city. In 1613, almost the whole town was destroyed by fire.

*Naklo*, a small town, and the residence of a Castellan; a Court of Justice is also held here.

3. The Palatinate of *SIRADIA*, or *SIERADZ*, in Latin *Palatinatus Sira-diensis*, contains the Districts of *Szadek*, *Piotrkow*, and *Radomsk*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

*Sirad* or *Siradia*, in Polish *Sieradz*, a pretty good town on the river *Warta*. It has a castle, and a Court of Judicature. In the year 1290, the *Tartars* made themselves masters of this town, and in 1292 it was plundered by the *Bobemians*; and lastly, in 1331 it fell into the possession of the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*.

*Lask*, *Pabianice*, and *Szadek*, where a Court of Judicature is held; *Warte*, *Uniejow*, *Spicimierz*, *Widawa*, *Sulejow*, *Witow*, *Wolborz*, and *Konieczpol*, are all inconsiderable towns.

*Petrikow*, *Peterkau*, or *Piotrkow*, a commercial town, but not very large, in which formerly the Kings of *Poland* were elected, and the Diets held. At present, the High Tribunal of *Great Poland*, a Provincial Court, and likewise the Synod of the Clergy of the province, are held in this town. A college of Jesuits, and another of the *Patres piarum scholarum* are founded here. *Petrikow* was consumed by fire in 1640, and in 1731.

*Radomsk*, a small town, in which is held a Court of Judicature. It is also the seat of a *Starosta*.

The territory of *Wielun*, in which are the following towns, *viz.* *Wielun*, the seat of a *Starosta* and a Castellan, where a Provincial Diet, and a Court of Judicature are also held; *Boleslawiec*, *Dzialoszyn*, *Ojrzyszow*, *Grabow*, and *Wieruszow*.

4. The Palatinate of *LENČICZ* or *LECYZA*, in Latin *Palatinatus Lencitiensis*, contains a *Starostey* which includes three Districts, namely, *Brzeziny*, *Orlow*, and *Inowlodz*; and has four Castellans. The towns, &c. in this Palatinate are,

*Lenczicz*, a town lying in a morass near the river *Bsura*. It is surrounded with a wall and a moat, and is defended by a castle which stands on a rock. A Provincial Diet, a Court of Judicature, and Provincial Synods of the Clergy are held in this town. In the year 1462, it was

burnt



burnt by an accidental fire ; in 1294, it was laid in ashes by the *Lithuanians* ; and in 1656, when it was garrisoned by the *Swedes*, it was burnt by the *Poles*, who put most of the inhabitants, especially the *Jews*, to the sword.

*Piotek*, a small town belonging to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, and famous only for the excellent beer brewed there.

*Unienow*, a town seated on the *Warta*, which also belongs to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, with a handsome castle. This town was consumed by fire in the year 1331. The Clergy of *Poland* held a Synod here in 1376.

*Brzeziny*, a small town, in which a Court of Judicature is held ; *Kludawa*, *Kutno*, *Lodz*, *Orlow*, *Konarzew*, *Inowlodz*, and *Biekow*, are small inconsiderable towns.

5. The Palatinate of *RAWA*, in Latin *Palatinatus Ravenfis*, was formerly a part of *Masovia* ; and contains the three *Starosties* of *Rawa*, *Gostyn*, and *Sokaczow* ; each of which is the residence of a Castellan. The most remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

*Rawa* or *Rava*, a small, but populous town, where the Provincial Diet and a Court of Justice are held. Here is also a Jesuits college. In the castle of *Rawa* the fourth part of the monies arising from the royal demesnes is deposited, in order to pay the troops which serve for frontier guards ; and state-prisoners are also confined in it.

*Viasdum*, a small town, with a fine castle.

*Lowicz*, a populous town on the river *Bsura*, in which stands a palace belonging to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. This town lies in a morass ; and, besides a cathedral, has three other churches and some convents. Among the inhabitants are great numbers of artificers ; and the fairs held in this town are famous for a great variety of goods which are exposed to sale in it. The Provincial Synod of the Clergy is held here.

*Gostyn*, a small town and castle, where a Provincial Court of Judicature is held. A Castellan and a *Starosta* also reside here.

*Gombin*, *Gambin*, or *Gabin*, and *Sokaczow*, are small towns, in which Provincial Diets and Courts of Judicature are held.

*Mogilnica*, *Skierniewice*, and *Bolemow*, are small towns of little note.

## II. C U Ź A V I A.

THIS part of *Great Poland* is very fertile, and is watered by a great many lakes which abound with fish : the principal of these is the lake of *Goplo*, which is five *German* miles in length, and half a mile in breadth. The Bishop of *Cujavia* is a suffragan to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, and also styles himself Bishop of *Pomerellia*. This Bishopric was formerly



formerly called the diocese of *Kruszwica*, for the cathedral was in that city; but the See was afterwards removed to *Wladislaw*, so that it is now also called the diocese of *Wladislaw*. *Cujavia* contains two Palatinates, namely,

1. The Palatinate of BRZESC or KUJAWSKI, in Latin *Palatinatus Bresliensis*, which includes the Districts of *Kruszwica* and *Kowal*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are as follows.

*Brzesc*, a small town situated in a marshy country, and surrounded with a wall, a rampart, and a moat. A Provincial Court of Judicature is held in this town; and a Castellan and *Starosta* reside here.

*Kruszwica*, a small town, seated on the lake of *Goplo*, with a castle which stands on an island in the lake. St. *Peter's* church, which has a chapter of twenty-four Canons, lies without the city. The famous *King Piasl* was at first a Burgher of this town. It is the residence of a Castellan; and a Court of Judicature is held here. *Kruszwica* and its territory forms a particular District. The See of *Cujavia* was first founded in this town.

*Wolborz*, the residence of the Bishop of *Cujavia*.

*Kowal*, a small town with a District, where a Court of Judicature is held. A Castellan resides here.

*Wroclawek*, *Brdow*, *Nieszawa*, and *Wisla*, are small towns of little note.

*Radziejow*, a fine castle, where a Court of Judicature and a Provincial Diet are held.

2. The Palatinate of WLADISLAW or JUNGENSESLAU, in Latin *Palatinatus Wladislawiensis* or *Juniuladislawiensis*. To this Palatinate belongs the District of *Bydgoszcz*, as do likewise *Plowcewies*, *Labiszyn*, *Dybow*, and *Strzelno*. In the last place is a nunnery, which is said to be the richest in all *Poland*. In this Province are the following towns, &c.

*Wladislaw*, a handsome city seated on the *Vistula*. Here is a palace where the Bishop of *Cujavia* resides, which was built and decently furnished by Bishop *Stanislaus Karnkowski*. The See was removed hither in the year 1173 from *Kruszwica*. Some date the foundation of this town as early as the year 966, when *Mieczislaus I.* sat on the throne; but others date it only from the reign of *Mieczislaus II.* grandson to the former.

*Inowloczaw*, *Inowiadislaw*, or *Jungensestaw*, is a small place; in which, however, a Court of Justice is held, and a Castellan and *Starosta* reside.

In the territory of *Dobrzyn*, which has had several masters, and includes the District of *Rypin* and *Lipne*, are the following towns.

*Lipne*, a small place where a *Starosta* resides, and a Court of Justice and a Provincial Assembly is held.

*Rypin*, a little town in which a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are likewise held.

*Skompe*, a small town. Here is a convent of *Minims*, where a famous image of the Virgin *Mary* is kept.

*Gorzno*, a small town belonging to the Bishop of *Plocsk*. Near this place a skirmish happened between the *Swedes* and *Poles*, to the disadvantage of the latter.

*Bobrowniki*, a town of little note.

### III. *MASOVIA*, or *MASUREN*.

THIS country has, from the beginning of the *Polish* monarchy, been considered as a part of that kingdom. And though the inhabitants revolted on the decease of *Mieczeslaus II. Casimir I.* soon reduced them to obedience. In the partition which *Boleslaus III.* made of the *Polish* dominions between his four sons in 1138, *Masovia* was given to the second son, (afterwards *Boleslaus IV.*) who was succeeded by his son *Lesco*. The latter bequeathed it to *Casimir* his father's brother; and after this, it devolved by inheritance on *Casimir's* youngest son *Conrad*. Hence it appears, that this province had its own Dukes for a long time. Duke *Wenceslaus* became a vassal to *John* King of *Bohemia* in the year 1329 but *Charles*, that monarch's son; having transferred the sovereignty of *Masovia* to *Casimir the Great*, King of *Poland*, *Siemonit* Duke of *Masovia* was obliged to be invested with this country as a fief dependent on *Poland*. In the year 1526, the male line of the Dukes of *Masovia* being extinct, the Duchy became immediately subject to *Poland*. And though King *Sigismund I.* was strongly importuned to make his son *Sigismund Augustus* Duke of *Masovia*, he could not be prevailed on; but that Monarch having first confirmed the rights and laws of the inhabitants, annexed it to *Great Poland* in 1529. King *Stephen*, in the year 1576, endowed *Masovia* with the same rights and privileges as the rest of the kingdom; but permitted the inhabitants to retain some of their ancient customs. This province has been twice given to the Queens of *Poland* as a dowery; and for sometime was governed by a *Statthalter* appointed by the King. But in 1576, the *Woiewoda* of *Masovia* was placed on the same footing with the other Palatines. No other religion but Popery is tolerated in this province; those of other professions being treated with the greatest severity: For if a Lutheran or Calvinist Minister be found in *Masovia*, he is certainly punished with death. *Staravolscius* computed the number of noble families in this country to be, in his time, no less than 45,000. *Masovia* consists of two palatinates, which are,

1. The Palatinate of CZERSK, (in Latin *Palatinatus Czercensis*) or *Masovia* properly so called. This includes ten Districts, namely, *Czersk*, *Warszawa*, *Wizna*, *Wyszogrod*, *Zakroczim*, *Ciekancow*, *Nur*, *Lomza*, *Rozan*, and *Liw*. To the territory of *Warsaw* belong the Districts of *Blonsk* and *Tarczyn*, to that of *Liw* the District of *Pultusk*; and the territory of *Lomza* includes

includes the Districts of *Ostroleka*, *Kolno*, and *Zambrow*. As to ecclesiastical affairs, this palatinate is under the jurisdiction of the Bishops of *Poznan*, *Ploczk*, and *Luocko*. The most remarkable places in it are

*Czersk*, a fine city on the river *Vistula*, where a provincial Court of Judicature is held. In 1656, *Frederick*, Margrave of *Baden*, withdrew to this place, which the *Poles* besieged for two days: But happily for him, they drew off their forces on the third; upon which he made the best of his way to *Warsaw*.

*Warsaw*, or *Warszawa*, is the capital of *Masovia*, and the royal residence; it has also a stately castle. The general Diets of *Poland* are usually held in this city; which is seated on the *Weissel* or *Vistula*, and lies almost in the centre of the kingdom. It is surrounded with a moat and a double wall; and consists of the *Old* and the *New Town*, with two handsome suburbs, called *Krakau* and *Praga*. Here are several elegant stone buildings and palaces, a great number of beautiful churches and convents, a hospital, an arsenal, and a statue of King *Sigismund III.* erected to his memory by his son *Uladislaus IV.* The valuable library of Count *Zaluski*, which was opened in the year 1746, and is said to contain above 200,000 volumes, is both an advantage and ornament to the city. Some years since, an academy for military exercises and a literary society were instituted at *Warsaw*. When the general Diet is assembled there is such a vast concourse of people in this city, that great numbers of them are obliged to pitch tents without the town, where they live during the session. The provincial assembly or Diet, and a Court of Judicature are also held here. King *Sigismund III.* was the first who made this city the royal residence; and his successors have resided here ever since. In the year 1569, in order to gratify the *Lithuanians*, the Diet was removed to *Warsaw*. In 1655 this city had a *Swedish* garrison, who brought hither a considerable booty from several parts of *Poland*; and a great number of military and civil officers, with some ladies of distinction of that nation, resided here. But the *Poles* laid siege to it in 1656; and after a most vigorous defence, obliged the town to surrender. By the articles of capitulation, the *Swedes* were permitted to leave the place; but the best part of the plunder they had amassed together fell into the hands of the *Poles*. However, *Charles Gustavus* approaching with an army to the relief of the town, King *John Casimir* marched against him; and a battle was fought near the suburb of *Praga* which lasted three days. At last, the *Poles* were obliged to retreat, leaving behind them their baggage and artillery; upon which the *Swedes* placed a small garrison in the town, and destroyed the fortifications. In 1702 *Charles XII.* of *Sweden* made himself master of *Warsaw*, which happened to be then without a garrison; and fixed his head quarters at *Praga*.

*Wola*, a village which lies about half a *German* mile from *Warsaw*, on the plain where the King's of *Poland* are elected.]



*Viasdow*, a royal palace, pleasantly situated on the *Vistula* at the distance of a *German* mile from *Warsaw*.

*Villanow*, a royal palace, built by King *John* III. known by the name of *Sobieski*; who also ended his days in this place in the year 1696. In the month of *August* 1732, King *Augustus* II. exhibited near this palace a spectacle, which had never before been seen in *Poland*. For he ordered his army, which was disciplined in the *German* manner, to encamp close to the walls of *Villanow*, where he reviewed the troops, and caused them to perform all kinds of military exercises. This splendid encampment lasted for three weeks.

*Lomza*, a town on the river *Narew*, remarkable for a college of *Jesuits*. It is the residence of a *Starosta* and a court of justice; and provincial assemblies are held here.

*Pultusk*, a town on the same river, with a castle built on an island. This town together with its territory belongs to the Bishop of *Plocsk*, from whom lies no appeal even to the King himself. The public buildings are a stately cathedral with a chapter-house, and a college of *Jesuits*. In 1324 and 1364, *Pultusk* was laid in ashes by the *Lithuanians*; and in 1703, the *Saxons* were defeated here by *Charles* XII. of *Sweden*.

*Wiszogrod*, a small town and castle seated on the *Vistula*. It is the residence of a *Castellan* and a *Starosta*; and a court of justice is held in it.

*Wizna*, *Nur*, *Zakroczym*, *Ciekanow*, *Zambrow*, *Rozan*, and *Liw* are small towns. Courts of Judicature and Provincial Assemblies are held in all of them except *Zambrow*; and mention has been already made of them above.

*Warca*, *Garwolin*, *Blon*, *Tarczyn*, *Wonsosz*, *Radzielow*, *Kolno*, *Ostrolenka*, *Makow*, *Camencz*, and *Ostrow*, are likewise small places where courts of justice are held.

*Czermiensk*, *Grodzye*, and *Prasni*, are small towns of little note.

2. The Palatinate of *PŁOCZKO*, in Latin *Palatinatus Plocensis*, contains three Districts, namely, *Plonsk*, *Raciaz*, and the territory of *Zawskryn*. The most considerable places in this Palatinate are

*Ploczko*, a city which stands on an eminence by the *Vistula*, from which there is a very pleasant prospect. It is the See of a Bishop, who is suffragan to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, and sovereign of the territory of *Pultusk*. This city is also the residence of a Palatine, a *Castellan*, and a *Starosta*. Here are several churches richly ornamented; the principal among which are those which belong to the Nuns of *St. Mary Magdalen*, and the *Benedictine* Monks in the castle. The latter is the cathedral; and the revenues of the Chapter are almost equal to the Bishop's: The *Provost*, or *Dean*, is Lord of the District of *Sielun*, and sovereign of the Nobility who reside there; and accordingly is styled Prince of that territory. The *Jesuits* have a college here; and in the castle is a *Gymnasium* or Seminary. The provincial Court of Judicature is held in this city; and its inhabitants carry on a good trade.

*Bielskot*, and *Sbrimky* are small towns of little note.

*Sierpecz*,

*Sierpecz*, a little town, remarkable for a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*.

*Plonsk*, *Raciaz*, and *Zauskryzn*, are small places where courts of judicature are held. The provincial Diet also assembles in *Raciaz*.

*Mlawa*, and *Razanow* are small towns of little note.

#### IV. POLISH PRUSSIA.

THIS country has, probably, been added to the general province of *Great Poland*, and looked upon as a District of it, because it borders on that part of the *Polish* dominions. However, we shall not give a particular account of it here; but refer the description of *Polish Prussia* to another place in the sequel.

#### L I T T L E P O L A N D,

OR MALOPOLSKA. PROWINCYA.

THIS country is also called *Upper Poland*, and properly contains the palatinates of *Cracow*, *Sandomir*, and *Lublin*; but the provinces of *Russia*, *Volhynia*, *Kiowia*, and *Podlachia* are also annexed to *Little Poland*. We shall therefore describe

I. The Three *PALATINATES* which constitute *Little Poland* properly so called; and these are

I. THE Palatinate of *CRACOW*, in Latin *Palatinatus Cracoviensis*, which includes the Districts of *Szczerzyc*, *Proszow*, *Xiaz*, *Lelow*, *Sadecz*, *Czkow*, and *Biecz*; and also the three Dutchies of *Oswiecim*, *Zator*, and *Severia*, which formerly belonged to *Silesia*; and the County of *Scepus*. The Dutchies of *Oswiecim* and *Zator* are *Starosties*; but *Severia* is subject to the bishop of *Cracow*. Places of note in this Palatinate are

*Lelow*, a town with a territory belonging to the *Starostey* of *Cracow*. A Court of Judicature is held here, and likewise at *Xiaz* and *Czkow*.

*Miekow*, a little town whose situation is said to resemble that of *Jerusalem*; which city the founder, *Gryphius Jaxa*, took for his model when he built

this town in memory of his pilgrimage to *Jerusalem*. He afterwards granted this place to the *Knights of the Holy Sepulchre*.

*Mslow*, a small town on the river *Warta*.

*Czenstokowa*, a little town on the same river. This place is principally famous for a convent of Monks of the order of *St. Paul* the hermit, which stands a little without the town on the *Clarenberg* and is celebrated for a picture of the *Virgin Mary* pretended to be painted by *St. Luke*; so that it is much frequented by pilgrims. This convent is fortified, and maintains a garrison. In the year 1655, it stood out a siege when pressed by the *Swedes*. Near this town a battle was fought in 1665 between the King's forces and Prince *Lubomerski's* army, to the disadvantage of the former. The nuptials of King *Michael* with *Eleanor*, sister to the Emperor *Leopold*, were solemnised in this town in 1670.

*Olsztyn*, a small place with a castle, which stands on a rock near the *Warta*.

*Olkusz* or *Ilkush*, a small town, which was famous for its lead and silver mines, and belongs to the King. The produce of these mines was formerly very considerable; but they have not been wrought for many years, and are fallen to decay. However, they are capable of being restored.

CRACOW, the capital of the whole kingdom, and the fixed residence of the King, is seated in a fertile country at the conflux of the *Vistula* and the *Ridawa*.

*Cracow*, properly so called, is surrounded with walls, and contains a great number of convents and churches; and among the latter that of the *Virgin Mary* is the principal. On the west side of it is a suburb with beautiful gardens; and near it stands the King's Palace with elegant gardens and a canal, which are inclosed with a wall. On the south side of it, the royal castle stands on a high rock near the *Vistula*. This large structure is defended by walls, towers and bastions; and has the appearance of a town. It includes the King's palace, the cathedral, and two other churches, with several dwelling houses. The cathedral is dedicated to *St. Stanislaus*, formerly bishop of this See, whom *Boleslaus II.* killed at the altar with his own hands, because the good Bishop's admonitions were grown insupportable to him. The remains of *St. Stanislaus* are inclosed in a silver shrine; and masses are continually performed day and night in this church. In the treasury of the cathedral, among other things of great value, the *Regalia*, namely the crown, scepter and *Monde* are deposited; and on this account the Treasurer of the Kingdom has the care of it. The Kings of *Poland* are always crowned, and their remains are interred in this church. The Bishop of *Cracow* is also Duke of *Severia*; but an account of this Prelate's dignity, &c. has been given in the Introduction to *Poland*\*, The annual revenue of the bishopric of *Cracow* amounts to 40,000 dollars. The chapter consists of thirty-six canons, besides other priests, whose revenues are also very

\* See page 579.



considerable. Contiguous to the castle is the suburb of *Stradomo*, which includes several churches, convents, and hospitals; and from *Stradomo* a bridge over the *Vistula* leads to the town of

*Kazimircz*, which may be looked upon as the second division of the city of *Cracow*. It lies to the east of the latter, was built by *Casimir the Great*, and is inclosed with a wall. The chief edifice in this part of the city is the University; but *Casimir the Great* was prevented by death from completing it. However, it was quite finished by King *Uladislaus Jagello*, and his consort *Hedewig*, in the year 1401. It consists of eleven colleges, to which fourteen grammar schools, dispersed in several parts of the city, are subordinate. The Bishop of *Cracow* is perpetual Chancellor of the University. In the year 1549, it received a severe blow; for all the students quitted the University in one day, alledging, that sufficient satisfaction had not been made to their comrades, some of whom had been killed, and others wounded in a frivolous quarrel. The *Jews Town* joins to *Kazimierz*.

Lastly, to the north of it lies the small town or suburb of *Kleparz* or *Klepardia*, which has no walls; but contains several churches, particularly that of *St. Florian*, a very stately edifice, and the Bishop's palace.

The city of *Cracow* is large, and was formerly very opulent and flourishing; but by the removal of the Court, and the many calamities it sustained in both the *Swedish* wars, it has very much declined, and is far from being so populous as it formerly was. The *Germans* and *Italians* had once brought its commerce to a great height; but, at present, it is very inconsiderable.

The Burghers of *Cracow* have this particular privilege, namely, that no appeal lies from the City-Council, but to the King only; and his Majesty can judge no causes relating to the city, or to the towns of *Kasimierz* and *Kleparz* in any other place, but in *Cracow*. The *Woiewoda* or Palatine of *Cracow* has the power of choosing the council, but not of displacing any Counsellor when elected. The Castellan of this city has nothing in common with the other officers of that denomination; however, he has the same name and appointments, and by his post is entirely exempt from serving any other offices, except that he is obliged to appear in the Council. The inhabitants of *Cracow* are likewise allowed the privilege of purchasing and holding estates.

As to the historical particulars relating to this city; it is said, but with little certainty, to have been founded by a *Polish* or *Bohemian* Prince of the name of *Cracus* in the year of Christ 700. It was erected into a Bishop's See in the year 1000; and in the year 1257, it obtained the municipal rights of *Magdeburg*. It has often been consumed by fire, namely, in the years 1241, 1260, 1439, 1462, 1473, 1494, 1504, 1652, and 1702. *Cracow* was visited by the pestilence in 1707 and 1708, which swept away several thousands of the inhabitants. In the year 1655, it was besieged and taken by the *Swedes*; but in 1657, they were obliged to deliver it up again to the *Poles*.

*Tinieck*, a Benedictine convent, which stands on the *Vistula*, and is one of the principal monasteries in *Poland*, whose Abbot is always one of the canons

of *Cracow*. It was founded by *Casimir I.* in the year 1046. It is chiefly celebrated for the learning of the monks belonging to it, and their skill in the sciences. To this convent belong five towns and one hundred villages. The Abbot *Derflaw*, when this monastery began to decline, raised it to its former prosperity, and *Mielecki* made the monks a present of his library and mathematical *museum*.

*Claratumba*, or *Mogila*, a rich, beautiful, and fortified *Cistercian* convent: It lies about a *German* mile from *Cracow*, and is famous for being the burying-place of *Queen Vanda*.

*Profzowice*, a town with a territory; and in it are held the assemblies of the Nobility of *Cracow*, and also a Provincial Court of Judicature. The soil hereabouts is exceeding rich and fertile.

*Bocnia*, a town famous for its salt-mines, which were first discovered in 1251, when this place was only a village. The small river called *Raab*, that falls into the *Vistula*, runs near this town, which is surrounded with hills and eminences. The salt-mine of *Bocnia* is in a narrow slip of land of seventy-five *Lachter*\* in breadth from North to South; about one thousand in length from East to West; and the greatest depth of it is one hundred and twenty *Lachter* from the surface. The salt lies in veins, and is something finer than that of *Wieliczka*, especially at a certain depth. It is cut in small pieces and put up in casks. The number of labourers in this mine is about two or three hundred. Large pieces of black wood have been found in this mine, which are incrustated with salt; and likewise alabaster. Every part of these mines is very dry. They are under the direction of the magistrates of *Wieliczka*.

*Wieliczka*, a small town, but famous for its salt-mines, lies in a valley about a *German* mile from *Cracow*. The town is entirely undermined; and the mines extend for a considerable distance round it. The length of the mine from East to West is six hundred *Lachter*, the breadth from North to South is two hundred, and its greatest depth is eighty *Lachter*. But the veins of salt are not limited to this extent; for the depth and length of them from East to West are as yet unknown, and only the breadth has been hitherto determined. The number of shafts, at present, is ten; and within the whole salt-mine there is not so much as one spring. The subterraneous passages or galleries are very spacious; and in many of them altars or chapels are hewn out of the salt-rock. In these chapels Crucifixes, or the images of Saints, are set up; and a light is kept continually burning before them. The places where the salt is hewn out of the mine, and the empty cavities where it has been formerly hewn out, are called *Chambers*; and some of these are so spacious that a large church might be inclosed in one of them. Several of these *Chambers* are made use of as warehouses for the salt casks, or magazines for fodder for the horses;

\* A *Lachte* is five *Dresden* ells, or ten feet.



and others serve for stables, in which twenty or thirty horses stand, according to the number that the work requires. In some chambers, where formerly the water has stagnated, the bottoms and sides are covered with very thick incrustations of some thousands of salt crystals one upon another; many of which weigh half a pound, or more: and when any candles happen to be brought into these places, the numerous rays of light reflected by these crystals emit a surprizing lustre. In some parts of the mine huge columns of salt are left standing to support the rock. The number of miners employed in these mines are between four and five hundred; but the salt-works may be said to employ seven hundred men in all. The salt lies in large shapeless masses near the surface, out of which, blocks of sixty, eighty, or a hundred square feet may be hewn; but at a considerable depth it is found in smaller lumps. Above 600,000 quintals of salt are annually dug out of these mines. The worst and cheapest sort is called *Zielona*, i. e. 'green salt;' which is probably so called from its greenish colour, caused by a heterogenous mixture of a grayish mineral or clay. It consists entirely of salt-crystals of different dimensions; and a cask of this salt, which generally contains six quintals, sells for about twenty-two *Polish* Guilders. But a quintal of that in large masses or blocks is worth thirty-two or thirty three *Florins* \*. A finer sort of salt is called *Szybikowa*, which is sold for twenty-four *Florins per* cask, and in large blocks at four *Florins* the quintal. The third species of salt dug out of these mines is the crystal-salt, or *sal gemma*. This is found in small pieces interspersed in the rock, and when detached from it, always breaks into cubes, or rectangular prisms. This is usually sold unprepared. The colour of the salt-stone is a dark gray mixed with yellow. Salt was formerly boiled out of the *Sole*, as it is called, which is accumulated in the mines; but this has been discontinued since the year 1724, on account of the too great consumption of wood it occasioned. These salt-mines have always made a part of the King's board-revenues, as they are called, and are generally farmed. Sometimes, however, the King has kept them in his own hands, and appointed proper officers for the management of them. The office of Mine-master at *Wieliczka* is hereditary in the family of *Morsztain*; and a considerable salary arising from these mines is annexed to it; but as the salt-works are part of the King's table-revenues, the Mine-master has no other advantage from his office. The Nobility in *Great* and *Little Poland* are allowed a sufficient quantity of salt for their families and vassals, (which amounts annually to above 20,000 casks) on paying only four *Polish* Guilders *par* cask, though it stands the King in twelve Guilders a cask. These salt-mines are said to have been discovered in 1251; those at *Bochnia* being first wrought, and some time after those at *Wieliczka*. In 1444, and 1696, these mines accidentally took fire, and continued burning for a long time.

\* A *Polish* Florin is equal to 1s. 2d. sterling; and a *Polish* Guilder is about 6d.  $\frac{2}{3}$ .



*Lipowiec*, a small town on the *Vistula*, with a castle built upon a rock, which serves as a prison for ecclesiastical delinquents.

*Landskron*, a strong castle built on a high rock. In the neighbourhood of it is a convent, which stands on a mountain called *Calvary*, and is much frequented by pilgrims.

*Sandecz*, a small walled town on the river *Donaiecz*. It carries on a good trade, and is the seat of a Castellan. It is further remarkable for a college and a monastery of *Premonstratenses*. The causes belonging to the District of *Sandecz* are tried at *Czskow*. In *Old Sandecz*, which is about a *German* mile distant from this place, is another convent of *Premonstratenses*, which is reckoned the richest monastery in all *Poland*.

*Pienin*, a castle well fortified by Nature, which is accessible but by one avenue, and that very narrow.

*Tarnow*, a town and castle, in which are two convents, and a collegiate church.

*Biecz*, a small town, in which a Castellan resides, and a Court of Judicature is held.

*Andrzeiow*, or *Dederzeiow*, a town near the frontiers of *Hungary* and *Silesia*, in which is a *Cistercian* abbey. In the year 1576, an assembly of the Nobility was held here, when the election of King *Stephen Bathori* was confirmed; and in 1607 the *Rokossians*, or Noblemen engaged in the League, also assembled in this town.

The small towns of *Promink*, *Rudawa*, *Czerna*, *Teczyn*, *Oycow*, *Alwernia*, *Niepolomice*, *Skala*, *Olbrom*, *Pilica*, *Ogrodzieniec*, *Krzepice*, *Zarki*, *Klobucko*, *Nowytarg*, also lie in this Palatinate.

The Dutchy of OSWIECIM, which, in 1457, *Casimir III.* purchased from *Silesia*, and annexed to *Poland*, is, at present, a royal *Starostey*, and in it lie

*Oswiecim*, a small town on the *Vistula*, which consists of wooden houses, and has a castle of the same materials; and *Rety* and *Zywiec*, two other small towns.

The Dutchy of ZATOR, which was mortgaged to the republic of *Poland* in 1494; and actual possession was taken of it in 1513. It is, at present, a *Starostey* in the King's gift, and includes *Zator*; a town and castle on the *Vistula*, where a Provincial Assembly and Court of Judicature are held; and *Berwald*, a small town.

SEVERIEA, or SIEWEIRZ, a Dutchy, sold in 1543 by the Duke of *Tesken*, in *Silesia*, to the Bishop of *Cracow*, who, about three years after, took possession of it. The Bishop of *Cracow* is still the Sovereign of it, is also styled Duke of *Severia*, with full power even in civil cases. In this Dutchy lie the towns of

*Sieweirz*, or *Severia*, the capital, which has a strong castle built on an island in a large lake.

*Slawkow*, a small town, near which is a silver-mine.

The county of SCEPUS or ZIPS, the greatest part of which was mortgaged in the year 1412, by *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, to *Uladislaus Jagello*, King of *Poland*, and has not yet been redeemed. The mortgaged towns and castles are,

<i>Lublyo,</i>	<i>Durandsdorf,</i>	<i>Fulek,</i>
<i>Padolin,</i>	<i>Deutschendorf,</i>	<i>Kirchdorf,</i>
<i>Kniefen,</i>	<i>Mickelsdorf,</i>	<i>Matzdorf,</i>
<i>Bela,</i>	<i>Neudorf,</i>	and
<i>Laibitz,</i>	<i>Ristsdorf,</i>	<i>Georgenberg,</i>
<i>Menbardsdorf,</i>	<i>Vallendorf,</i>	

with all their dependencies. For a description of these places, and of the other part of the county *Zips*, the reader is referred to *Hungary*; and particularly to the account of *Upper Hungary*.

2. The Palatinate of SANDOMIR or SENDOMIR, called in Polish *Sandomirz*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Sandomiriensis*, includes the Districts of *Radom*, *Stezyca*, *Wislica*, *Cbeciny*, *Opoczno*, and *Pilsno*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

*Sandomir*, *Sendomir*, or *Sandomirz*, the capital of this Palatinate. It stands on an eminence near the *Vistula*, not far from the influx of the river *San* into the former. Its delightful situation rendered it the favourite residence of *Casimir the Great*, and other Kings of *Poland*. This city is well fortified both by Nature and Art; and in it are a college of Jesuits and other Orders, and a rich foundation called *Collegium Canonicorum*. The castle, which stands on a steep rock, was blown up by the *Swedes* in 1656. A Provincial Court of Justice is also held here. The *Sandomirian Starostey* is the only one in *Poland* that can neither be mortgaged, nor let on a perpetual lease. In the year 1259, the *Tartars* and *Russians* committed terrible ravages in this city, and put the inhabitants to the sword. On the twenty-second of *August* 1702, the Nobility entered into a confederacy at *Sendomir*, and engaged by a solemn vow, to defend their religion, their liberty, and their lawful King *Augustus II*.

*Pilsno*, a small town, in which a *Starosta* resides, and a Court of Justice is held. Within its territory lie *Sendisow*, *Zarnowecz*, *Socolow*, *Pracclaw*, *Zaclyn*, and *Lazakisko*, all places of little note; but in the last is a celebrated image of the *Virgin Mary*. The castles of *Rzemient*, *Vieviork*, *Christypher*, and *Baranow*, are also in this District.

*Olesnicz*, *Stobnica*, *Paczanow*, *Polanecz*, *Stasow*, and *Osieco*, are small towns in this Palatinate.

*Korczyn*, or *Neustadt*, is a town and castle seated on the *Vistula*, where a *Starosta* resides, and the Provincial Diet for *Little Poland* is held.

*Wislica*, a small town, which stands near the river *Niba* in the middle of a morass. It is the residence of a *Castellan*; and a Court of Judicature

cature is held here. In 1136, the *Russians* having taken this town by treachery, sacked and plundered it. *Wislica* is frequently mentioned in the history of *Poland*.

*Sborow*, and *Chrobers*, two castles of little note.

*Pinczow*, a Marquisate, belonging to Count *Wiolopolski*. Its chief town is *Pinczow*, remarkable for a *Gymnasium* or Seminary.

*Szydlow*, an old town, in which a great number of Jews is found amongst the inhabitants.

*Rakow*, which was formerly a populous town; and the *Socinians*, or, as they are called in *Poland*, the *Arians*, had a college and printing-house here; but in 1643, they were expelled from this place. The *Rakovian* catechism takes its name from this town.

*Checiny*, a small town, remarkable for its lead and silver mines, and marble quarries. It has a castle, which stands on a high rock, and a *Starosta*. An inferior Court of Judicature is also held here. The mines of *Checiny* belong to the King.

*Malogocz*, a small town, where a Castellan resides.

*Sulow*, a small town, with an abbey of *Cistercian* monks, to which some of the neighbouring towns belong.

*Setzini*, a good town, with a castle built on a rock. Near it are silver mines, in which *Lapis lazuli* is also found.

*Kielce*, a small town, in which are a cathedral and an episcopal palace. The mines which are wrought near this place belong to the Bishop of *Cracow*.

*Radoskiczs*, *Opoczno*, *Inowlod*, *Drevitz*, and *Zarnowo*, are small towns; but the last is the residence of a Castellan.

*Stezycz*, a small town on the *Wisłula*, rendered famous by the Diet held there in 1575, and by the assembly of the Nobility in 1606. A Castellan also resides in this town.

*Radom*, a walled town, and the residence of a Castellan and a *Starosta*. A Provincial Diet, a Court of Judicature, and the *Polish* Court of the Treasury, which lasts six weeks every year, are held here.

*Iedlinsk*, which is remarkable for an academical *Gymnasium*. *Tarnow* and *Szydlowiec* are small towns.

*Vonkocz*, a rich convent of *Cistercian* monks. In the neighbourhood of this monastery are fine stone quarries, and iron-works.

*Kunow*, a small town belonging to the Bishop of *Cracow*, near which are quarries of fine marble.

*Ilza*, a pretty town, which likewise belongs to the Bishop of *Cracow*. It has a castle, and is remarkable for a good earthen-ware manufacture.

*Kaleberg*, in Latin *Mons calvus*, is the highest mountain in all *Poland*. The abbey of the holy cross, which is famed for many pretended miracles and the crowds of pilgrims who resort to it, stands upon this mountain.



There is not so much as a tree growing on this hill; hence it derives its name of *Kaleberg*, 'or the bare mountain.'

*Bozentin*, a town surrounded with a wall and a rampart, which belongs to the Bishop of *Cracow* who has a palace here. It lies just at the foot of *Kaleberg*.

*Lagow* a small town, in which earthen ware is made. It belongs to the Bishop of *Cujavia*.

*Slupcz*, a small town belonging to the abbey of the holy cross.

*Opatow*, a considerable town, situated in a pleasant and fruitful country. Here is a large collegiate church; and a Diet is held in this town.

*Iwanfiz*, a small town of little note.

*Zawikost*, a small town and castle on the *Vistula*, governed by a Castellan. Here is a nunnery; and in the year 1205, the *Russians* were defeated near this place.

The towns of *Lysagora*, *Szydlowiec*, *Sieciokw*, *Piotrowin*, *Borzecin*, *Skrzynno*, *Studziana*, *Dzikow*, *Baranow*, *Dambrowa*, *Choretnik*, and *Polowiec*, lie in this Palatinate.

3. The Palatinate of *LUBLIN*, in Latin *Palatinatus Lublinensis*, contains the Districts of *Lukow*, and *Urzedow*. In ecclesiastical matters, it is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Cracow*. The following are the most remarkable places in this Palatinate.

*Urzedow*, a town situated on a lake, in which a Court of Judicature is held.

The towns of *Kock*, *Krasnik*, *Lewartow*, *Piaski*, *Lacza*, *Parczow*, and *Palawy*.

*Kazimierz*, a well-built town, situated among rocks near the *Vistula*. It is a place of considerable trade; and is one of the towns which constitute the jurisdiction of the *Six Towns*, as it is called. In the year 1656, *Charles Gustavus* passed the *Vistula* at this place, and defeated *Czarniecki* the Castellan of *Kiow*.

*Lublin*, a city surrounded with a wall and a ditch, and a place of good trade but not very large. It has a castle built on a high rock, and stands on the little river *Bystrzna* in a very pleasant and fertile country. Here are several churches and convents, and a college of Jesuits. Great numbers of Jews live in the suburbs of *Lublin*, and have a spacious synagogue there. Three annual fairs are held here (and each of them lasts a month) which are frequented by great numbers of *German*, *Greek*, *Armenian*, *Arabian*, *Russian*, *Turkish*, and other traders and merchants. The chief Tribunal for *Little Poland* is held here, besides a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature. In the year 1240, *Lublin* was set on fire by the *Tartars*; and after that continued for a long time in the possession of the *Russians*. In 1447, and 1606, this town also suffered greatly by fire; and in 1656, it was laid in ashes by the *Swedes*. In 1703, an extraordinary Diet was held here.

*Lukow*,

*Lukow*, a small town, in which a *Starosta* resides; and a Court of Justice is held.

*Rakow*, a small town of little note.

## II. P O D L A C H I A,

Or the PALATINATE of BIELSK,

In Latin *Palitatus Bielsensis*.

THE *Poles* took this country from the Pagan *Jaczvingians* in the reign of *Boleslaus V.* and in 1596, it was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland*. This province was formerly the occasion of many disputes and quarrels between the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*. In ecclesiastical affairs, all *Podlachia* is subject to the Bishop of *Lucko*. This Palatinate contains the three Districts of *Drogiczyn*, *Mielnik*, and *Bielsk*. The most remarkable places in this Palatinate are,

*Augustow*, a beautiful town seated on a lake, and so called from its founder King *Sigismund Augustus*.

*Knyszyn*, a small town, where King *Sigismund Augustus* ended his days on the seventh of *July* 1572.

*Bialystok*, a city which is divided into the *Old* and *New town*. In 1753, the greatest part of this city was destroyed by fire. Count *Braniki's* seat and gardens in the *New town*, for their elegance, may be called the *Versailles* of *Poland*.

*Tykoczin*, a town of some note on the river *Narew*, with a handsome castle, situated amidst inaccessible morasses. A Court of Judicature is held here. In the year 1705, King *Augustus II.* instituted the Order of the *White-Eagle* in this town, which he conferred as a reward of courage and loyalty.

*Suraz*, *Vizfokie*, and *Branfsk*, small towns; but in the first and the last, Courts of Judicature are held.

*Bielsk*, a large town, which is all built with wood; but is a place of great trade, which is carried on by the Jews. It is situated on the river *Biala* which runs into the *Narew*.

*Grodeck*, a little town on the river *Bug*.

*Drogiczyn*, a small town on the same river, in which a Court of Justice and a provincial Diet are held.

*Miedzyles*, a small town where a Court of Judicature is likewise held.

*Mielnik*, a small town situated on the river *Bug*. A Court of Judicature and a provincial Diet are held in this little town.

*Bocki*, *Wegrow*, *Ciekanowicz*, *Narew*, *Siemiatycze*, and *Wasilkow*, are small towns in this Palatinate.

III. *LITTLE* or *RED RUSSIA*.

In Latin *Russia Parva* or *Russia Rubra*.

**T**HIS country was formerly governed by its own Dukes; but on the decease of the last Duke which happened in 1340, King *Casimir*, by right of consanguinity, laid claim to *Red Russia*, and rendered it a province of *Poland*. King *Lewis* divided the territories of *Red Russia* among the *Hungarians*; however, they were again driven out of them in 1396. And though *Uladislaus Jagello*, by a treaty of alliance concluded with *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, by an oversight relinquished all right and claim to *Russia* and *Podolia*, the country still remained under the dominion of *Poland*. *Red Russia* includes the following Palatinates.

1. The Palatinate of *CHELM*, in Latin *Palatinatus Chelmenfis*, which has one Castellan and two *Starostas*. Remarkable places in this Palatinate are, *Chelm*, a city and episcopal See; but the Bishop resides at *Krasnostaw*, and is a suffragan of the Archbishop of *Lemberg*. Here is also a *Greek* Bishop, who has his cathedral, and is subject to the metropolitan of *Kiow*. In this city a Castellan and *Starosta* reside, and a provincial Diet and Court of Justice are held.

*Krasnostaw*, a city where the Bishop of *Chelm* and a *Starosta* reside, lies on the river *Vieprz*. Here is also held a Court of Judicature. *Maximilian* Archduke of *Austria*, after he had been defeated by *Zamoyfski* at *Byczyn* on the borders of *Silesia*, where he was obliged to surrender himself prisoner, was confined in this town in 1588. The following year he was set at liberty, on renouncing all claim to the crown of *Poland*.

*Ulodaw*, a small town on the river *Bug*.

*Lasczow*, a small place of little note.

2. The Palatinate of *BELZ*, in Latin *Palatinatus Belcensis*, which includes three Districts, namely, *Busk*, *Horodla* and *Hrabowiec*. In this Palatinate are the following places of note.

*Horodla*, a town on the river *Bug*, where a provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held, and a *Starosta* resides. At a Diet held here in 1413, the *Lithuanians* were placed on a level with the *Polish* subjects, with regard to offices, rights and privileges. Several families of the former were admitted among the latter; their arms were quartered; and many other ordinances were made in favour of the *Lithuanians*.

*Rubieskow*, a small town of little note.

*Zamoscia*, *Zamoszcia*, or *Zamosk*, is a city and fortification, built by the famous Great Chancellor *John Zamoyfski*. It has a stately cathedral and several other churches; a decayed University, of which the Bishop of *Chelm* is perpetual Chan-



Chancellor; a charitable foundation called *Mons Pietatis*, and several valuable privileges: But the fortifications are now in a bad condition. The proprietor of this town, &c. stiles himself Prince *Zamoski*. In the year 1656, *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, made a fruitless attempt upon this place: But on the twenty-ninth of *December 1715*, it was surprized by the *Saxons*.

*Sezerbzeszin*, *Turobin*, *Tamogrod*, *Tomassow*, *Tyszowicze*, &c. are small towns; and for the most part, belong to the territory of *Samoskia*.

*Belz*, a large town, and the residence of a *Palatine*, a *Castellan*, and a *Starosta*. A provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are also held here.

*Grabowiec*, *Sokal*, *Busk*, *Olesko*, *Brody*, *Podkamenie*, *Toporow*, are all towns of little note.

*Rawa*, a small town, where King *Augustus II.* entertained the Czaar *Peter the Great* for three days successively, in the year 1698. A Conference was also held here between the Deputies of the Confederates and the *Saxon* army in 1716.

3. The Palatinate of *LEMBERG* or *Lwow*, in Latin *Palatinatus Lembergenfis* or *Leopoliensis*, consists of four Districts; and each of these is governed by a *Castellan* and a *Starosta*, and deserves a particular description.

1. The District of *Lemberg*, in which are the following towns, &c.

*Lemberg*, called in Latin *Leopolis*, and in Polish *Lwow*, is the capital of this Palatinate. It is a large opulent city, and pretty well fortified in the *Polish* manner, that is, only with timber; and lies low on the banks of the river *Peltew*, being surrounded with hills and mountains which command the town. *Lemberg* is the See of a *Popish* Archbishop, and likewise of a *Russian* and *Armenian* Bishop. It carries on a considerable trade, and has two castles, one within, and another without its walls. The latter stands on a high hill, and the *Carmelite* monastery, which is fortified, may serve for a citadel to this castle. Here is a magnificent cathedral, and likewise several other churches, among which is a *Russian*, and an *Armenian* church. Here are some rich convents, particularly that of the *Dominicans*, which is said not to have its equal in *Poland*, a college of *Jesuits*, a *Gymnasium* or seminary, an arsenal, a public granary, two *Jewish* schools, &c. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature also are held in this town. The inhabitants of this city are a mixture of several nations; but no Protestants are tolerated amongst them. *Lemberg* was erected into an Archbishop's See in 1361, or 1362. In the year 1375 the See was removed to *Halicz*; but in 1416, it was restored to this city. In the year 1656 *Lemberg* held out two months, when besieged by the *Russians* and *Cosaks*; and in 1672, it also baffled the attempts of the *Turks*; who, at last, purchased it for 80,000 dollars. But in 1704, it was taken sword in hand by *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden*.

*Jaworow*, a small town remarkable for its warm baths.

*Bialykamien*,

*Bialykamien*, a small place, near which the river *Bug* has its source.

*Gliniany*, a town rendered famous by the assembly of the *Russian* Nobility on the death of *Sigismund Augustus*; and in 1648, the *Polish* troops made this town their place of rendezvous.

*Zborow*, a town near which an obstinate battle was fought between the *Poles* on one side, and the combined army of the *Cossaks* and *Tartars* on the other. In this engagement the latter were defeated and left 10,000 men dead on the spot: But the day after, a treaty of peace was concluded.

*Zloczow*, *Danilow*, *Grodeck*, *Komorna*, *Stry* and *Zolkiew*, are all inconsiderable places; but the last has a fine church, and a castle.

2. The District of *Przemysl*, in which are,

*Jaroslaw*, a handsome town with a castle on the river *San*. It carries on a good trade; and within the town stands a college of *Jesuits*, and without it is another foundation belonging to the same Order. In the year 1625, this place was consumed by fire.

*Przemysl*, a good town with a castle built on a rock. It lies in a fertile country near the river *San*; and is the residence of a *Polish* and a *Greek* Bishop, the former of whom is a suffragan of the Archbishop of *Lemberg*. It has also a *Jesuits* college, a *Castellan* and a *Starosta*; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Justice are held here.

*Resow*, a town with a castle, which carries on a considerable trade, especially in linen. In the neighbouring country live a great many *Germans*, whose ancestors emigrated hither by the invitation and encouragement of *Casimir the Great*.

*Przeworsk* (which has a Court of Judicature) *Lancut*, *Felstin*, *Kreszezyn*, *Rzeszow*, *Dombromil*, *Drobobycz*, *Lezcysk*, *Wisnia*, *Dubiecz*, *Samborz*, &c. are small towns in this District. *Samborz* is a royal table-revenue as it is called, with part of the salt-works in this Palatinate which belong to it.

3. The District of *Sanock* is, for the most part a mountainous country. The principal places in this District are

*Sanock*, a town with a castle, seated on the river *San*, in which a Court of Judicature and a Provincial Diet are held; and likewise a *Castellan* and *Starosta* reside.

*Krosna*, a better town than the foregoing, which has a flourishing trade, and is the staple for the wine and other commodities of *Hungary*. Here is a college of *Jesuits*.

*Brozow*, *Dinow*, *Lesko*, and *Iasiska* are small towns of little note.

4. The District of *Halicz*. The south-east part of this District, which lies between the *Niester* and the *Moldau*, is called *Pocutia*, and in it is the source of the river *Niester*. Remarkable places in this District are

*Halicz*, a town with a castle seated on the *Niester*, which was formerly a large populous city, and the capital of the kingdom of *Halicz*: but now extremely declined from its ancient grandeur. In the year 1375, the Archi-

episcopal See of *Lemberg* was translated hither; but in 1416, it was removed again to *Lemberg*. This city has a *Castellan* and a *Starosta*; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Justice are held here. It is also remarkable for its salt-works.

*Iurow*, *Zydaczow*, *Kobatin*, *Kaczowce*, *Martinow*, *Oucze* or *Uscie*, *Monaster*, *Zawalow*, *Kakolnic*, and *Buczaw* or *Boczowce*, are small towns of little note.

*Brezan* a well built town, with a castle. In 1698, the *Poles* had an encampment near this place.

*Sniatyn*, a city of good trade situated on the *Pruth*, and the chief town in *Pecutia*.

*Stanislawow*, *Zablutow*, *Kolomyja*, *Dobrilow*, *Morcza*, *Ticzemenicze*, *Plomacze*, *Jesupol*, *Kaluszka*, *Woinlow*, and *Zarnowno*, are all little towns in this District.

#### IV. P O D O L I A.

THIS is a very fertile country, but has, in all ages, been exposed to the inroads of barbarous nations, who live on plunder, and have often ravaged it in the most cruel manner. *Podolia* abounds with a fine breed of horses, and horned cattle. The inhabitants are of a warlike disposition, and were formerly governed by their own Dukes or sovereigns. In the fifteenth century this country was the subject of violent contests between the *Lituanians* and *Poles*; till at length by a Diet held at *Lublin*, it was annexed to *Poland* in the year 1569. *Podolia* consists of two Palatinates, namely, that of *Podolia*, and the Palatinate of *Braclaw*.

1. The Palatinate of *PODOLIA*, in Latin *Palatinatus Podoliæ*, containing the Districts of *Kaminiec*, *Latyczew*, and *Czerwonograd*. In this Palatinate lies

*Kaminiec Podolski*, the capital, which has a castle built on a rock. The latter owes its strength more to Nature than to art; however, it is the best fortification in *Poland*. A little below it runs the river *Smetricz*, which falls into the *Niester*. A *Popish* and an *Armenian* Bishop, and a *Castellan* reside in this city; and a Court of Justice and Provincial Diet are also held here. This episcopal See was founded in the year 1375. Here is also a college of *Jesuits*. In 1651, the *Cosaks* laid siege to the castle of *Kaminiec*, but without success. In 1672, the *Turks* obliged it to surrender, and held it till the peace of *Carlewitz*, which was concluded in 1699.

*Paniowce*, is a fortress near *Kaminiec*. The *Turks* attempted, in vain, to make themselves master of this fort in the year 1621.

The following small towns also lie in this Palatinate, *viz.*

*Grodeck.*  
*Smoftric.*  
*Domajofce.*

*Tornawa.*  
*Kitaigrod.*  
*Sludzienicza.*

*Sarafka.*  
*Werbky.*  
*Zinkow.*

*Proczenskow.*



*Proczenskow.*  
*Krasnopol.*  
*Wonbofcze.*  
*Kalus.* Here the *Tar-*  
*tars* were defeated in  
 1672.  
*Kurilowcze.*  
*Jultokow.*  
*Marianow.*  
*Barkow.*  
*Berlinetz.*  
*Jarowzow.*  
*Mokylow.*  
*Czerniowcze.*  
*Flezce.*  
*Suliaki.*  
*Lucczinice.*  
*Szarigrod.*  
*Mezerof.*

*Bar,* remarkable for a  
 college of *Jesuits.*  
*Chmielnick.*  
*Constantinowe.*  
*Laticzew.*  
*Deraznie.*  
*Mikutince.*  
*Medzibocce.*  
*Plokyrof.*  
*Czarne Ofiro.*  
*Satanow.*  
*Ufatin.*  
*Scala.*  
*Zwaniec.*  
*Chorostow.*  
*Probozin.*  
*Borowk.*  
*Kribecz.*  
*Grudec.*

*Zbaraz.* Here the  
*Poles* encamped in the  
 year 1649, and stood  
 out a very close siege,  
 being pressed by the  
*Cofaks* and *Tartars.*  
*Tramblow.*  
*Tarnopol.*  
*Nickulincze.*  
*Secrucze.*  
*Ianow.*  
*Czartekow.*  
*Czerwonogrod.*  
*Iaslowice.*  
*Potok.*  
*Dobrawodi.*  
*Wiczeniecz* or *Wisus-*  
*viecz.*

2. The Palatinate of *BRACLAW*, in Latin *Palantinus Braclawiensis*, consists of the Districts of *Winnica* and *Zwinogrod*. In this Palatinate lies

*Braclaw*, a city consisting of two towns, seated on the river *Bog*. It is the residence of the *Woiewoda* or *Palatine*; and is also called *St. Peter's* town, its arms being the picture of that Saint. This city was taken from the *Cofaks* in the year 1654.

*Winnica* is another town on the river *Bog*. Here is a college of *Jesuits*; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held in this town. In 1650, the *Cofaks* were totally routed near this place.

In this Palatinate lie also the following towns:

*Felsztyn.*  
*Samaellowka.*  
*Chmielnick.*  
*Brailow.*  
*Krasna.*  
*Copigowka.*  
*Muracwa.*  
*Tulezin.*  
*Ladicin.*  
*Kormagrod.*  
*Thomaspol.*  
*Langrod.*

*Gruska.*  
*Busza.*  
*Jaruga.*  
*Jampol.*  
*Kowzeniecz.*  
*Kamiencza.*  
*Raskow.*  
*Czaczanic.*  
*Nowe Koniecpole.*  
*Nowogrod.*  
*Obedowka.*  
*Balanowka.*

*Bercad.*  
*Alexandrow.*  
*Troczeniecz.*  
*Uman.*  
*Iwangrod.*  
*Sokowlowka.*  
*Woronowka.*  
*Zileke.*  
*Sobrick.*  
*Mmaftericz.*  
*Grudeck.*  
*Kahik.*

*Babin.*  
*Elius.*  
*Piaczefne.*

*Lipowe.*  
*Zibotow.*  
*Spicinea.*

*Poberwicze.*  
*Sbaraz.*  
*Priluka and Kokanow.*

## V. The PALATINATE of K I O W.

OF this Palatinate, which makes part of the *Ukraine*, and is inhabited by the *Cofaks*, a fuller account has been given in our Description of *Russia*. In the year 1569, *Kiowia* was annexed to the kingdom of *Poland*. In 1667, that part of it which lies on the other side of the *Dnieper*, together with the *Cofaks* who were settled on the premises, was ceded for ever to *Russia*; which cession was ratified, and the city of *Kiow* entirely given up, in the year 1693.

*Polish Kiowia*, includes the Districts of *Zytomierz* and *Owrucz*; in which are the following towns.

*Kyrlow*, a town seated on the river *Tazmin* near its influx into the *Dnieper*.  
*Czebrin*, *Woronowka* and *Smila*, small towns of little note.

*Borowicz*, a town on the *Dnieper*, where the *Cofaks* were besieged by the *Poles* in 1638, and were obliged to deliver up their General *Paolucco*, and four of their principal commanders to the latter.

*Czyrkassy*, a town with a castle, situated on the *Dnieper*.

*Korsun*, a town on the river *Rofs*, which was founded by King *Stephen* about the year 1581.

The following little towns also lie in this province.

*Bognslaw.*

*Wolodarka.*

*Harmonowka.*

*Mofzna.*

*Tabarowka.*

*Chwasztow.*

*Olzanka.*

*Pawolocz.*

*Bialagrodko.*

*Stawiocza.*

*Bialacerkiew.*

*Wyzgrad.*

*Strzybowka.*

Here the *Tartars* were

*Czernobyl.*

*Rokitna.*

entirely defeated in 1626.

## VI. V O L H I N I A,

Called in the *Polish* language *Wolynien*.

THIS country is so fertile as to supply the inhabitants with a large surplus of grain. Rosemary, asparagus, &c. grow wild in the woods, which can hardly be distinguished from those cultivated in the gardens. *Volhinia* was annexed to *Poland* in a Diet held at *Lublin* in 1569. The *Tartars*,

*Tartars*, besides a great booty, carried off 30,000 persons out of this country, to be sold as slaves, in the year 1618.

This Palatinate consists of the two following Districts.

1. The District of KRZEMIENEC, in which the places of note are,

*Krzeminiac*, a town on the river *Irwa*, with a castle standing on a high rock. Here is a Court of Judicature.

*Wisniowiecz*, a town with a castle, which bears the name of a Dutchy.

*Basilia*, *Kraslow*, and *Constantinow*, are towns situated on the river *Slucz*.

*Olanow*, a small town.

*Berdiczow* and *Rodnia*, two old decayed towns.

*Zytomiers*, a fortress.

*Korczec*, *Kzwiabel*, *Ostrozek*, *Baranowka*, and *Miropel* are small towns on the river *Slucz*.

*Zaslaw*, a town on the river *Horin*, which, including its territory, bears the name of a Dutchy. The Jesuits have a college here; and a considerable District, which is a royal demesne, belongs to this town.

*Miedezynzek*, a small fortified town on the river *Horin*, where *John*, the last Duke of *Ostrog*, built a handsome convent for *Franciscan* monks, and a church.

*Dubno* a fortified town on the river *Irwa*.

2. The District of LUCK or LUCEORIEN, in which are the following towns.

*Luck*, *Luzk*, or *Luceorien*, the capital of *Volbinia*, stands on the river *Styr* or *Ster*, and has a castle, where the Bishop of *Volbinia* resides, and the Jesuits have a college. This city is also the residence of a *Russian* bishop; and has a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature. In the year 1429, a remarkable conference was held here, at which the Emperor *Sigismund*, two Kings, and several Princes, were present. In 1752, the greatest part of this city was destroyed by fire.

*Wlodecimierz*, a city on the river *Bug*, is the See of a *Russian* Bishop, who has a very large diocese. A Court of Justice is held here; and the See of *Luck* was first erected in this town.

*Beretsko*, a town seated on a small river.

*Olika*, a handsome town and castle belonging to the *Radzivil* family, and the capital of a Dutchy. A school and seminary are founded in this town. About one hundred and eleven houses were consumed by a fire, which happened in 1752.

*Sokal*, a town and fortress on the river *Bug*. This place is remarkable for a celebrated image of the *Virgin Mary*, for the greater security of which the *Bernardine* Monks have built a fine church and convent, with suitable fortifications, on an island in the river *Bug*. In 1651, the *Poles* encamped in this place.

*Czartorysk*, a town with a castle.



The GREAT DUTCHY  
 O F  
 L I T H U A N I A.

§. 1. THIS country, which is called by the natives *Litwa*, was formerly very woody, and the greatest part of it lay uncultivated. But by the tranquillity it enjoyed under *Sigismund* I. and his successors, *Lithuania* was greatly improved by cutting down the woods; and agriculture was duly encouraged. Great quantities of pot-ash and wood-ashes are made here; and the country produces a great deal of buck-wheat and other corn. Here is also great plenty of honey, with which are made those palatable liquors called *Lip-pitz*, *Mallinieck*, and mead. The meadows and pastures in this province are very fertile, and afford nourishment to numerous flocks and herds. The sheep yield fleeces of very fine wool. Here are also several lakes in which are profitable fisheries. In the forests of *Lithuania* are bears, wolves, wild-boars, buffaloes, deer, and prodigious flights of wood-cocks. But notwithstanding the soil is so fertile, agriculture is extremely neglected, and the finest spots of land in the country lie waste. The luxuriant pastures in the meadows lie neglected till the grass rots on the ground; and for want of care, the woods in *Lithuania* are often consumed by accidental fires. All sorts of provisions are sold at a very low rate; but cash is so scarce, that ten *per cent.* is the common interest for money in this country.

§. 2. All the common people, excepting the burghers of the royal towns and the *Germans*, are vassals. The Nobility are very numerous, and for the most part, indigent and poor; and those who are in low circumstances serve the richer sort as pages, valets, bailiffs, treasurers, stewards, &c. Those noble families who are in a better condition, endeavour to mend their fortunes by farming a large estate. There is scarce a nobleman of any tolerable circumstances in *Lithuania* without a title, which they are all very fond of; and these titles descend to their children. The principal Nobility are exceeding rich, and have estates equal to the revenues of some Princes; so that they generally retain some hundreds of the poor Nobility in their service. They are also invested with the highest posts of the kingdom, and live in great pomp and splendor; but with so little œconomy, that their expences generally exceed their income.

§. 3. Popery

§. 3. Popery is the established religion in *Lithuania*. Here are also many *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Jews*, *Turks* and *Socinians*; but the *Greeks* are on a much better footing than any of the other *Dissidentes* or dissenters. Notwithstanding this country is so closely connected with *Poland*, it still retains its own peculiar laws, offices, and troops.

§. 4. The ancient history of *Lithuania* is obscure and fabulous. It was formerly governed by its own Dukes, who were frequently at war with their neighbours the *Poles* and *Russians*. *Ringold*, who lived in the thirteenth century, was the first who took upon himself the title of Great Duke of *Lithuania*; and *Wolfinik* was the last of the ancient Ducal family. Towards the close of the thirteenth century, *Vitencs*, a *Samogitian*, was promoted to the dignity of Great Duke.

*Iagello*, *Vitencs's* great grandson, in order to accomplish his desired marriage with *Hedwig* the dowager of *Lewis* King of *Poland* and *Hungary*, who had been crowned Queen of those kingdoms, promised that he and all his subjects would embrace the Christian religion; that *Lithuania* should be united to *Poland*; and that he would recover the countries which had been dismembered from the kingdom. These advantageous offers pleased the *Poles* so well, that the Great Duke of *Lithuania* was invited into the kingdom by a solemn embassy; and arrived at *Cracow* in 1386, where he was baptised by the name of *Uladislaus*; and, after he had espoused the Queen, was advanced to the throne. In the following year, he made a progress into *Lithuania*, where he abolished the old superstitious rites and customs; prevailed on many thousands to embrace Christianity; founded the episcopal See of *Vilna*; and settled the ecclesiastical ceremonies and discipline. In the year 1392, *Iagello*, created his cousin *Alexander*, or *Vitold*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*; but without prejudice to the union with the kingdom of *Poland*; the sovereignty or supreme authority being lodged in the King. In 1401, the union of *Lithuania* with *Poland* was ratified in the Diet of *Vilna* by a formal Instrument. In 1408, the Great Duke took *Samogitia* from the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order.

In 1413, in a Diet held at *Hrodlo*, the *Lithuanians* were placed on an equality with the *Poles*, with regard to public employments, and the protection of the laws; and several *Lithuanian* families were registered among the *Polish* Nobility, and their arms were quartered together. It was also enacted that the Great Duke of *Lithuania* should be nominated by the King of *Poland*; and that if the King should die without issue or rightful heir, the *Lithuanians* should have the privilege of voting at the election of the new King. Christianity was also introduced into *Samogitia*, where a Bishop's See was founded and other inferior ecclesiastical offices.

In the year 1499, the union, concluded with the *Lithuanians* in 1413, was renewed with this additional clause, That the *Lithuanians* should not elect a Great Duke without the previous knowledge of the *Poles*; and that

that the latter should not choose a King without the concurrence of the *Lithuanians*.

In 1561, the *Ensseri*, or Sword-bearing Knights, submitted themselves, and the part of *Livonia* which still remained in their possession, to the King of *Poland*, as Great Duke of *Lithuania*; and the new Duke of *Courland* held it as a *Lithuanian* fief.

In a Diet held at *Lublin* in the year 1569, it was agreed between the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, That the Great Duchy of *Lithuania* and Kingdom of *Poland* should be for the future so united, as to form but one State under one Prince; that the Sovereign should be elected in *Poland* by both nations; that the general Diet should be always held at *Warsaw*; that the two nations should have a Senate or Council, and a house of provincial representatives, in common; that the coin in the Kingdom and Duchy should be of the same value; and that they should be equally concerned in treaties, alliances, &c. It was also further enacted, that the *Lithuanian* State-counsellors and noble Representatives should have a seat among the States of *Poland*; and at the same time *Livonia*, which, hitherto, *Lithuania* claimed as its distinct property, should be entirely united to the Kingdom.

By the Acts of 1673, 1677, and 1685, it was decreed, that every third general Diet should be held at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*, except the Diets of the Convocation, Election, and Coronation.

In the year 1697, the *Polish* and *Lithuanian* laws were reduced to a conformity with each other.

§. 5. *Lithuania* is, at present, divided into nine Palatinates, which, according to precedence, are in the following order, viz. *Wilna*, *Trock*, *Polocz*, *Nowogrodeck*, *Witepsk*, *Brzesk*, *Msczislaw*, *Minsk*, and *Livonia*.

The Palatinates of *Wilna* and *Trock* constitute proper *Lithuania*, called by the *Poles* *Litwa Sama*, and the six following make *Lithuanian Russia*, or *Rus Litewska*. The latter is subdivided into

1. *White Russia*, or *Rus Biala*, including the Palatinates of *Polock*, *Witepsk*, *Msczislaw*, and *Minsk*.
2. *Black Russia*, or *Rus Czarna*, which includes the Palatinate of *Nowogrodeck*, and the Districts of *Rzeczyki* and *Mozyrski*.
3. *Polesia*, or *Polesie*, to which the Palatinate of *Brzeskie* belongs.

Besides these Palatinates, *Lithuania* also includes the Principality of *Samogitia*, called in the *Polish* language *Zmuydz*, or *Xiestwo Zmudskie*; and the Duchy of *Courland* which is a fief of *Poland*.

Every Palatinate is divided into *Powiat*s or Districts; and a parcel of land is always reserved as the proper Palatinate, which generally lies about the principal town.

There are also particular Principalities, governed by their own Princes, in *Lithuania*; as *Sluck*, *Niefwicz*, &c. In describing this country we shall begin with



I. *LITHUANIA* properly so called,In Polish *Litwa sama*.

**T**HIS country includes the Palatinates of *Wilno* and *Trockie*.

The Palatinate of *WILNO*, called in the *Polish* language *Woiewodztwo Wilenskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Vilnensis*, contains the following Districts.

I. The Palatine-District, in which lies

*Vilna*, *Wilda*, or *Wilno*, the capital of the Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, which stands on the river *Wilia* near the influx of the *Wilika*. This city lies in a mountainous country on several little eminences: It is very large, and has two considerable suburbs called *Antokolla* and *Rudaiszka*. In the old ruinous royal palace is the arsenal and the hall where the Court of Justice is held; and over against it is the magnificent church belonging to the castle, which was built in the year 1386. The treasury belonging to this church is very rich; and it is also remarkable for the elegant marble chapel of St. *Casimir*, whose silver shrine is said to weigh thirty quintals. There are upwards of forty churches in this city, and among these are, one Lutheran and one Calvinists church, a Jewish synagogue, a Tartarian church, and a Greek church; but all the rest are Popish churches.

Not to mention the devastations which *Wilna* formerly suffered from the *Russians* in 1610 and 1655, and from fire in the year 1737; it was destroyed by a dreadful conflagration in 1748, when thirteen churches, the Jewish synagogue, twenty-five palaces, four hundred and sixty-nine stone edifices consisting of private houses, hospitals, inns, baths, convents, and mills, with one hundred and forty-six tradesmens shops and dispensaries, besides a great number of granaries and warehouses, were consumed to ashes. In 1749, another fire happened by lightning, which consumed six churches, the council-house, eight palaces, and two hundred and seventy-seven other stone-buildings. The chapel of St. *Casimir* was also burnt, and the loss sustained by the destruction of this edifice only amounted to some millions. The churches have been since rebuilt at a very great expence, and some of them in a more elegant manner than before; but the city has not recovered its former grandeur.

This Bishop's See was founded in the year 1387; and the Chapter consists of a great number of secular and regular clergy. The University, founded in 1570 by Bishop *Valerian Szuskowski*, and confirmed by King *Stephen* in 1579, is in the Jesuits college.

The Tribunal, or High Court of Judicature, which is held here, begins in the second week after *Easter*, and continues sitting for twenty weeks; after which the Judges proceed to *Novogrodeck* or *Minsk*. Besides this Tribunal, a Provincial Diet and Court of Justice are held in this city. The magistrates of *Wilna* were, by a particular privilege granted them by King *Sigismund Augustus*, created noble in the year 1568; so that their children may purchase and enjoy estates. As there are great numbers of *Jews* and *Mahometans* in this city, three different Sabbaths are observed every week. The inhabitants carry on a considerable trade, and send their commodities as far as *Konigsberg*. *Wilna* was built by the Great Duke *Gedimin* in the year 1305.

The following towns also lie in this District.

*Dubinki*, a town belonging to Prince *Radziwil*.

*Rudniki*, a small town with a beautiful castle.

2. *Powiat Lidzki*, or the District of *Lida*, in which are,

*Lida*, a town and castle, where a Provincial Diet and a Court of Judicature are held.

*Bielica*, a small town on the river *Niemen*.

*Sczucyn*, *Jelna*, *Bialgorod*, *Zermony*, *Blotno*, and *Gieranony*, are small places of little note.

3. *Powiat Oszmianski*, or the District of *Osmiana*, in which lies

*Oszmiana*, the chief town, where a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

*Olsiany*, *Surwiliszki*, *Dory*, *Dolbinow*, *Serwecz*, *Zodziski*, *Smorgonie*, *Miedzial*, and *Hlybokie* or *Glebokie*, are small places in this District.

4. *Powiat Braslawski*, or the District of *Braslaw*, in which lies

*Braslaw*, the capital. It is a large town and is situated near a lake. Here is a *Greek* abbey; and a Provincial Diet is held in this town.

*Jezioroszcze*, *Dryswiaty*, *Polikany*, *Daugeliszki*, and *Koltyniany*, are also small places in this District.

5. *Powiat Wilkomirski*, or the District of *Wilkomierz*, in which lies

The town of *Wilkomierz*, on the river *Szwienta*, where a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

The Palatinate of *TROCKIE*, or *WOIEWODZTWO TROKIE*, in Latin *Palatinatus Trocensis*, includes the following Districts.

1. The *Palatine Territory*, which contains the following towns, &c.

*Trocki*, a large town situated among lakes, and built with wood. It has two castles; and in the parish-church is a famous image of the Virgin *Mary*. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held here. This town was built by the Great Duke *Gedimin* in the year 1321. It was destroyed by fire in 1390, and demolished by the *Russians* in 1655. It was formerly the residence of the Dukes of *Lithuania*, who, afterwards, removed their seat to *Wilna*.

*Poporcie, Olita*, a royal demefne, *Przeroff*, and *Wisbiten*, are small places of little note.

*Calvarie*, a little town, lies in a forest on the river *Szefzupe*, about five German miles from the Prussian frontiers. The inhabitants consist of one hundred and twenty Christian, and three hundred Jewish families; and the latter carry on an extensive trade. This town belongs to the *Sapieban* family, who are also proprietors of the Lordship of *Kirfna*, which lies about three German miles from it.

2. *Powiat Upitski*, or the District of *Upitski*, in which lie

*Birze*, a town belonging to the Prince of *Radziwil*. It was taken in 1625 by King *Gustavus Adolphus*.

*Salaty, Pokroje, Ponienumy*, and *Poniewicz*, are small places, in the last of which a Diet is held.

3. *Powiat Kowienski*, or the District of *Kowno*, which contains

*Kowno* or *Cauen*, a pretty trading town, situated at the influx of the river *Wilia* into the *Niemen*. It is famous for its excellent liquor called *Lippitz*, and mead. There are several German inhabitants in this town, which has a college of Jesuits with an elegant church, besides ten Popish churches, and one Lutheran.

*Pozoyfcie*, a small place of little note.

A hill called *Friedensberg* lies about a German mile and a half from *Kowno*, in a wood near the *Wilia*. On this hill stands a famous convent inhabited by twenty-four *Eremitical* monks of the Order of *Camaldoli*. It was founded in 1674, by *Christopher Paz*, Great Chancellor of *Lithuania*, and cost eight Tons of Gold\*: It has abundance of marble ornaments. The cieling and cupola of the church are finely painted in *fresco*, and the walls are adorned with original pieces by the most celebrated masters. A District consisting of three hundred peasants dwellings belongs to this convent. The founder and his wife lie buried in the church.

4. *Powiat Grodzienski*, or the District of *Grodno*, in which are the following places of note.

*Grodno*, a handsome large city, and, next to *Wilna*, the best in *Lithuania*. It stands on the river *Niemen*, partly on an eminence, and partly on a level, and is surrounded with hills. The old castle, which is surrounded with a deep moat, is now fallen to decay; so that only one wing of it is inhabited. The new palace, built by the present King of *Poland*, is a large, regular, and beautiful structure consisting of two stories. The great hall, the Senate-house, and the chapel, are the finest apartments in this palace. In the court stands the Chancery or State-office, an elegant edifice. In the town are nine Popish and two *Greek* churches, and a

\* *A Ton of Gold*, improperly so called, to which the Author sometimes adds *silver money* by way of distinction, is nearly equal to 7775 pounds sterling: However, a *Ton of Gold, silver money*, is a kind of *Hibernism*. See p. 260.



synagogue for the *Jews*, which is built with stone. The Jesuits college in this city has a splendid church; and that belonging to the *Carmelite* nuns is also very magnificent. The palace of Prince *Radziwil* is a very large structure and that of the *Sapiekan* family is a superb edifice. Both of them stand on the market-place, which, together with the *Castle-Street* and the area before the palace, are very clean and well paved; but the other streets are not paved, on which account they are generally very dirty.

In the year 1673, it was enacted, That every third general Diet should be held here for the future. During the Session of the Diet, four apartments, and the stables adjoining to them, in a certain part of the town, have been let for two hundred and sixty ducats a month. A Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are also held in this city. Near *Grodno* lies a well-built royal manor-house. In the year 1753, almost the whole town was consumed by fire.

*Merecz*, a royal little town, which stands on a river of the same name. King *Uladislaus IV.* was so taken with the delightful situation of this town, as to make it his favourite residence. That Prince ended his days in this place on the twentieth of *May* 1648. *Merecz* has a wooden castle, and three churches.

*Douspouda*, *Wafilkow*, and *Grodek*, are small places of little note.

*Suprass*, a very opulent convent of *Greek* monks of the Order of *St. Basil*. It is a place of great antiquity, and is much frequented by pilgrims on account of some pretended miracles wrought here. This convent is immediately subject to the Pope\*.

## II. LITHUANIAN RUSSIA.

THIS country consists of the following Provinces.

I. POLESIA, or POLESIE, which is also called the Palatinate of BRZESKIE, in Polish *Woiewodztwo Brescianskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Bresciensis*. The morasses in this Palatinate are very large, and, according to *M. Adlerfeld*, appear like so many extensive lakes. This Palatinate includes two Districts, namely, those of *Brzesk* and *Pinski*.

1. The Territory of *Brzesk*, which contains the following towns, &c.

*Brzesk*, a strong town but not very large, with a castle built on a rock. The town stands on the river *Bug*, in a marshy situation; and near it is a royal palace with a good garden. There is a famous *Jewish* synagogue in this town, to which the *Jews* resort from all the countries of *Europe*, both on account of study, and preferment among their own people. A *Greek* Bishop resides, and a Provincial Diet is held in this town.

\* It seems a little strange that monks of the *Greek* or *Russian* church should be subject to the Pope.

*Biälla*, a small town belonging to Prince *Radziwil*, remarkable for its *Gymnasium* or Seminary.

*Wisokie*, *Kaminiec*, *Kerezew*, *Janow*, *Miedzyrzecze*, *Rosofze*, *Dukudow*, *Slawaticze*, *Koden*, *Ratno*, *Kobryu*, *Bereza* (where the *Carthusians* have a convent) *Cbomsk*, *Motol*, and *Zukowicze*, are small places of little note.

*Ibras*, a small fortress almost surrounded with a lake and morafs; to which there is but one avenue.

2. *Powiat Pinski*, or the District of *Pinski*, in which lies

*Pinsk*, a handsome, large, trading town on the river *Pina*, which belongs to the royal Table-estates, as they are called. It lies in the middle of extensive morasses; and is inhabited not only by *Jews*, who have a school here, but also by people of all religions; especially by those of the *Greek* religion, who have a Bishop here. The leather dressed in this town after the *Russian* manner is looked upon as the best in the whole kingdom. A Provincial Diet is held here.

*Wyboniec*, *Pobost*, *Labiszyn*, *Kozangrodek*, *Wielicze*, *Turow*, *Dawidow*, *Wyfok*, *Dubrowica*, *Robitno*, *Olewsko*, and *Zablowicze*, are small places in this District.

II. BLACK RUSSIA, called by the Poles *Rus Czarna*, includes

The Palatinate of *Nowogrodeck*, in Polish *Woiewodztwo Nowogrodskie*, which contains the following Districts.

1. The Territory of *Nowogrodek*, in which the places of note are,

*Nowogrodek*, a town situated on a hill. It is not very large; but includes several Popish and *Russian* convents, with a college of *Jesuits*. Besides a Provincial Diet and inferior Court of Judicature, a High Tribunal, after the model of that of *Wilna*, is held alternately here and at *Minsk*, which continues sitting for five months every year. This town was demolished in 1314, and 1390.

*Nieswicz*, a town and seat belonging to the *Radziwil*-family, which is also the capital of a Duchy. It stands on the river *Ufza*, and has a college of *Jesuits*. This beautiful palace was demolished by the *Swedes* in 1706.

*Mir*, a castle from which Prince *Radziwil* has one of his titles.

*Naliboki*, *Stoupcze*, *Swierzno*, *Turzec*, *Lubcz*, *Koralicze*, *Sielut*, *Cyryn*, *Ijkoldz*, *Kleck*, *Darew*, *Slwolowicze*, *Mysz* (with a county,) *Polonka*, and *Lipsk*, are small towns in this District.

*Lukowicze*, a fortified town with a county. Near this place the *Cosaks* and *Russians* were defeated in 1660. This town was taken and destroyed by the *Swedes* in the year 1706.

2. *Powiat Wolkowyski*, or the District of *Wolkowysk*, in which are,

*Wolkowysk*, a small town, where a Provincial Diet is held; *Mscibow*, *Porozow*, and *Nowidwor*, which are inconsiderable places.

3. *Powiat Slonimski*, or the District of *Slonim*, in which lies

*Slonim*, a town seated on the river *Sczara*, where a Provincial Diet, and the general assembly of the States of *Lithuania* are held. *Bytyn*,

*Bytyn, Zyrowice, Lyskow, Kossow, Zelvia, and Mossy,* are small places in this District. *Rozana* is the chief feat of the *Sapieban* family, and is much frequented on account of a famous image of the *Virgin Mary*.

4. *Xieſtwo Sluckie*, or the Dutchy of *Sluckia*, in Latin *Ducatus Slucensis*, belongs to Prince *Radziwil*, and in it lies

*Sluck*, a large town built with timber. It has three castles, and stands on the river *Slucz*.

*Romanow, Hrozow, Kopyl* (with a Dutchy,) *Cimkowicze, Kyewicze, Sie-miczow, Luban, Wielczyuy, and Petrikow*, are small places of little note in this District.

MOZYRSKI and RZECZYKI POWIAT belong indeed to *Black Russia*, but are included in the Palatinate of *Minski*.

III. WHITE RUSSIA, called in the *Polish* language *Rus Biala*, and in Latin *Russia alba*.

This Province contains the following Palatinates.

The Palatinate of MINSKY, in Polish *Woiewodztwo Minskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Minscensis*, which includes

1. The Territory of *Minsk*. In this District lies

*Minsk*, a town seated on the river *Swislocz* with two castles. There are several *Jews* among its inhabitants; and a Provincial Diet is held here, besides a High-Tribunal once in two years. [See *Wilna* and *Novogrodeck*.] This town was taken by the *Russians* in 1656.

The following are small towns in this District, *viz*.

<i>Horodek,</i>	<i>Horodyszcz,</i>	<i>Oczyce,</i>
<i>Berezyna,</i>	<i>Bobuszowicze,</i>	<i>Brodziec,</i>
<i>Dokszyc,</i>	<i>Koydanow,</i>	<i>Lubaszyn,</i>
<i>Radziwilow,</i>	<i>Hrebnia,</i>	<i>Swislocz,</i>
<i>Boryfow,</i>	<i>Szack,</i>	<i>Sloboda krolowska.</i>
<i>Zabyn,</i>	<i>Dukora,</i>	

2. *Powiat Kzeczyki* or the District of *Kzeczy*, contains the following small towns; *viz*.

*Bobruysk, Hlusko Dubrywickie, Horwal, Rzeczyca, and Chelmicz.*

3. *Powiat Mozyrski*, or the District of *Mozyr*, in which are,

*Mozyr*, the chief town on the river *Prypec*, where a Provincial Diet is held; and *Kimborowka, Babica Sloboda, and Kuzmilock*, which are small places of little note.

4. The Territory of *Robaczow*, or *Ziemia Robaczowska*, in which lie

*Robaczow*, a town which stands on the river *Dnieper* near the influx of the *Druce*, where a Provincial Diet is held; and

*Jurzec, Pabolowo, Czeczersk, Hanuta, and Hieronimow*, which are small places.



The Palatinate of Mscislaw, called in the *Polish* language *Woiewodztwo Mscislawskie*, and in Latin *Palatinatus Mscislaviensis*, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Mscislaw*, a well built frontier town, which was besieged by the Duke of *Smolensk* in 1386; but without success. A Provincial Diet is held here.

*Mobilow*, a handsome commercial town on the river *Dnieper*, where the *Russians* carry on a considerable trade. Prince *Uladislaus*, son to *Sigismund IV.* in 1616, drew together an army of *Poles* in this town, and penetrated into *Russia*. In the year 1654, *Mobilow* was taken by the *Russians*; and though the *Poles* sat before it in 1660, they were obliged to raise the siege and retire. However, it was taken from the *Russians* in 1662 by the inhabitants, who sent off part of the garrison by stratagem, and made the rest prisoners of war.

Between *Czauszy* and *Szyzowoo*, in this Palatinate, the *Russians* were entirely defeated in the year 1514.

*Horki*, *Czauszy*, *Dryssin*, *Chwaszczowka*, *Wrakalobow nowy* and *Wrakalow stary* on the *Nieper*, *Bychow nowy* and *Bychow stary*, *Propoyisk* and *Radziwilowa*, are small places in this Palatinate.

The Palatinate of WITEPSK, called by the *Poles* *Woiewodztwo Witepskie* and in Latin *Palatinatus Witepcensis* contains two Districts; namely,

1. The Territory of *Witepsk*, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Witepsk*, a fortified trading town on the river *Duna* or *Duina*, which has two strong castles and a college of *Jesuits*. A Provincial Diet is held in this town. It was taken by the *Russians* in the year 1654.

*Newel*, a fortified town, which was taken by the *Russians* in 1653; but fell again into the hands of the *Poles* in 1678.

*Uswiatez*, a fortified town situated on a lake, which was taken from the *Poles* in the year 1580.

*Wielisz*, a small fortified town on the river *Dzwina*, of which the *Poles* made themselves masters in 1580. The *Russians*, who had taken this town from the *Poles*, restored it to the latter in 1580.

*Ozieryzefze*, *Gorczysslaw*, *Surcz*, *Markowo*, and *Ostrowo*, are small towns in this territory.

2. *Powiat Orszanski*, or the District of *Orsza*, which contains the following towns, &c.

*Orsza*, a town and castle on the river *Nieper*, in which is a *Jesuits* college. Also a Provincial Diet is held here.

*Dubrowna* and *Kopys* are small towns on the *Nieper*; the latter is a Dutchy.

*Szklow* a strong town, and a County, on the banks of the *Neiper*, near which the *Lithuanian* General *Radziwil* was defeated by the *Russians* in 1653; but when they laid siege to the town, they were obliged to raise it with a considerable loss.

*Holowczyn*,

*Holowczyn*, a small place, where the *Russians* were defeated by the *Swedes* in 1708, after an obstinate engagement.

*Radzyn*, *Bialymse*, and *Krubla* are small towns in this District.

*Note.* That part of the Palatinate of *Smolensk*, which borders on this *Powiat* or District, and belongs to the *Poles*, consists only of the District of *Stadorubcz*; and the Diet for this District is held at *Wilna*.

The Palatinate of *POLOCK*, or *Woiewodztwo Polokie*, in Latin *Palatinatus Polocensis*, contains the following towns.

*Polock*, a fortified town on the river *Dzwina*, with two strong castles. It carries on a considerable trade; and a Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held here. The *Jesuits* have a college, and the *Greeks* an academy for the study of philosophy, in this town. A *Popish Greek Bishop* also resides here. In the year 1563, *Polock* was taken by the *Russians*; but retaken by the *Poles* in 1579.

*Krasne* and *Kostany*, two small towns.

*Ula*, a fortress on the river *Dzwina*. Near this place the *Russians* were defeated in 1564.

*Wiazyszeze* and *Boczeykowo*, two small towns of little note.

*Czafzniki*, a small town, where the *Russians* were defeated in the year 1567.

*Lepel*, *Lukomla*, *Krasnystaw*, *Czereia*, *Pyszne*, *Waron*, *Sufza*, *Kamien*, *Kublicze*, *Sielizeze*, *Uzacz*, *Turowla*, *Bobynicze*, *Pliszan*, *Machbirowo*, *Dzesna*, *Dryssa*, *Sokol*, and *Nieszczzerda*, are small towns in this Palatinate, of which mention is made in history.

### III. The *LIVONIAN* PALATINATE,

Called in the *Polish* language

#### *WOIEWODZTWO INFLANTSKIE.*

THIS country, which is a part of *Livonia*, is also called the *Palatinate of Wend*. When the *Poles* by the treaty of *Oliwa* delivered up *Livonia* to *Sweden*, they reserved this part, which had been subject to *Poland* since the year 1655. There are a *Bishop*, a *Palatine*, and a *Castellan* in this Palatinate; which belongs to *Poland* and *Lithuania*, and sends six deputies to the general Diet. The principal places in this country are,

*Marienkawes.*

*Rofften.*

*Krentzburg.*

*Ludzen.*

*Duneberg.*

The Provincial Diet, and Court of Judicature, from which an appeal lies only to the *Affessorial Tribunal*, are held at *Duneberg*.

IV. *SAMOGITIA* or *SAMOYTEN*,Called in the *Polish* language*ZMUYDS* or *XIESTWO ZMUDSKIE*.

**T**HIS country is a Dutchy, which anciently belonged to *Lithuania*, and together with that province, was governed either by one Duke or Sovereign, or formed an oligarchy. In the year 1404, *Samogitia* was ceded to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; but about four years afterwards, it was taken from them. In 1411, the Knights had a promise that this Dutchy should again revert to the Order after the death of King *Uladislaus Jagello*, and the Great Duke *Alexander*. In 1413, the *Samogitians* embraced the Christian religion; and a Bishops See, and other small ecclesiastical offices were erected in this Dutchy. The country is woody, and has many fertile spots: It also yields a prodigious quantity of honey.

*Samogitia* has a Bishop, an *Upper-starosta*, who has the authority of a *Woiewoda* or *Palatine*; and a Castellan who sits in the General Diet, and has the power of appointing Provincial Diets at pleasure.

In this Dutchy lies

*Wornie* or *Miedniki*, a town where the Bishop of *Samogitia* resides; and

*Rosienie*, a town on the river *Dubista*, where the Provincial Diet and Court of Judicature are held.

The following small towns also lie in *Samogitia*, viz.

<i>Novavola.</i>	<i>Pottagien.</i>	<i>Uzwieda.</i>
<i>Wileia.</i>	<i>Garden.</i>	<i>Sboden.</i>
<i>Srzednik.</i>	<i>Koltyniany.</i>	<i>Lukinga.</i>
<i>Wielona.</i>	<i>Kroze</i> , in which is a	<i>Ambote.</i>
<i>Kicydany.</i>	college of Jesuits.	<i>Plotele.</i>
<i>Jurborg</i> or <i>Georgen-</i>	<i>Piatek.</i>	<i>Polangen.</i>
<i>burg.</i>	<i>Szawle.</i>	<i>Kretynga.</i>
<i>Widukle.</i>	<i>Kurszany.</i>	<i>Korczany.</i>
<i>Szydlow.</i>	<i>Okmiany.</i>	<i>Gorzdy.</i>
<i>Taurogi.</i>		



---

T H E

# DUTCHY OF PRUSSIA\*,

Which is also called

## POLISH PRUSSIA.

§. 1. **T**HIS country borders on the kingdom of *Prussia*, *Poland*, *Pomerania*, and the *Wessel* or *Vistula*; and is thirteen *German* miles in length, and twelve in its greatest breadth; but in some places the latter does not exceed four *German* miles and a half. The face of this country is diversified with mountains, woods, and lakes; but in the south part of it there is but little pasture ground, and consequently but few cattle; and not much arable land, if we except the four fruitful *Werder*, as they are called, near *Dantzick*. The fisheries are of great advantage to this country; which also yields a vast quantity of honey and wax. The woods abound with wild boars, roe-bucks, and wild fowl. A good deal of lime is also burnt in some parts of this country.

The most remarkable heaths in *Polish Prussia* are those of *Skal*, *Masura* and *Nicholait*, and the desert of *Johannesberg*, which is seven *German* miles in length, and four in breadth.

§. 2. The inhabitants consist partly of *Poles*, and partly of *Germans*. As to their religion, the Reformation was introduced here early in the sixteenth century; and in few years, the professors of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion increased to such a degree, that in a short time their number far exceeded that of the Papists in the principal cities and towns. They had almost as great a superiority also in the smaller towns and villages. But in this particular, succeeding times have introduced considerable alterations. The Kings of *Poland* have, indeed, granted the inhabitants the free exer-

\* This country is termed *Regal Prussia*, or *Prussia Royal*, in the maps, to distinguish it from *Ducal Prussia*, which is now a kingdom and belongs to his *Prussian Majesty*.

cise of the Lutheran religion in the cities of *Prussia*; but, at present there are but few towns in which the Lutherans have churches; and in other towns they have been compelled to give them up to the Papists. Besides, the Protestants, or *Dissidentes*, as they are called, are continually oppressed; and promises of preferment and other means are employed with too much success, in order to seduce the *Prussian* Nobility from the Evangelical or Lutheran church. The *Arians* are not allowed the free exercise of their religion in this country.

§. 3. The Dutchy of *Prussia* or *Polish Prussia* is a proper, and distinct political body or state, which has nothing in common with *Poland*, except that it has the same Sovereign, and is connected with that Crown by a perpetual alliance. For when the inhabitants of this country put themselves under the protection of King *Casimir IV.* in 1466, it was expressly stipulated, that the Dutchy of *Prussia* should have nothing to do with the Republic of *Poland*: but that the King should alone, and personally, order and determine all matters relating to the former; and to this end should often come among them and summon general Diets. Hence this free State enjoys the same right as *Poland* and *Lithuania* of voting at the election of a King; who, after his coronation, is obliged to swear that he will maintain the *Prussians* in their rites and privileges; after which, and not before, homage is paid to the new Sovereign.

The King, in matters of public concern, can determine nothing without the concurrence of the States; who are divided into Spiritual and Temporal Members, and the latter consist of Nobles and Burghers. Of these the Senate, or Council of State, is at present, composed. This Council consists

1. Of two BISHOPS, namely the Bishop of *Ermland* and the Bishop of *Culm*.

The Bishop of *Ermland* is the president and chief among the Nobility; and is not under any subordination to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, but holds immediately of the Pope. His diocese, in which he has the supreme authority in all causes, as well civil as ecclesiastical, is of a very large extent. The revenues of it are divided into three parts, one of which belongs to the Chapter; but the other two, which are computed at 64,000 dollars are assigned for the episcopal table. The King nominates four canons, one of whom is to be elected Bishop by the Chapter; and the latter always choose the person who is most strongly recommended by his Majesty. The oath which the Bishop takes is something singular, as is the form of administering it, which is done at the cathedral of *Marienbourg*. He styles himself Prince of the holy *Roman* Empire, not only in public instruments, but also in private letters, by virtue of the dignity conferred on Bishop *John II.* by the Emperor *Charles IV.* who created that prelate a Prince of the Empire; and accordingly his successors assume the title of Highness; but they are never addressed so by the Royal Chancery or State offices. This Prelate also styles himself Bishop of *Sammund*; for that place was annexed to the Diocese

formerly erected in *Brandenburg Prussia*, and the Popish churches in it are still subject to this Bishop in ecclesiastical matters. This title, however, is not given him by the Electoral house of *Brandenburg*.

The Bishop of *Culm's* Diocese is not near so extensive, and consequently the revenue of it is very much short of that of the Bishop of *Ermland*. This Bishopric the King absolutely disposes of without calling a Chapter; and the Bishop of *Culm* is a suffragan to the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, whom he is to look upon as his Metropolitan. This Prelate styles himself Bishop of *Pomesan*, partly because some Districts formerly belonging to the Diocese of *Pomesan* were, by the peace concluded in 1466, ceded to *Poland*, and the spiritual jurisdiction of them assigned to the Bishop of *Culm*; and partly to keep up the remembrance of the Bishopric of *Pomesan* in *Brandenburg Prussia*, which has been long since suppressed. The *Wciewodztwos* or Palatinates of *Culm* and *Marienburg* are under the Bishop of *Culm's* jurisdiction. By the *Polish* laws, this Prelate is qualified to be Chancellor.

2. Three PALATINATES or *Wciewodes*, who are of equal dignity to those of *Poland*, the first of these is the Palatine of *Culm*, the second that of *Marienburg*, and the third the Palatine of *Pomerellia*. The only difference, between these Palatines and those of *Poland*, is that a certain *Starosty* is always annexed to their post; for instance, the *Starosty* of *Kowalewo* belongs to the Palatinate of *Culm*, that of *Christburg* to the Palatinate of *Marienburg*, and that of *Schoneck* to the Palatinate of *Pomerellia*. From these *Starosties*, and the fees of the *Grods*, or courts, their income arises. They hold their Courts of Judicature, which are called Castle-Courts, and in the *Polish* language *Grods*. In the Palatinate of *Culm* the Court is held at *Kowalewo*; in that of *Marienburg* at *Christburg*; and in the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* at *Schoneck*. They generally leave the management of these courts to the under *Wciewoda's*. However, they see the sentences passed by the courts put in execution, and when it is necessary, make use of force; and in such cases may summon the Nobility in their respective jurisdictions to assist them.

3. Three CASTELLANS, who are not invested with any particular office or employment; but on a general summons of the Nobility, they may be looked upon as the Palatine's lieutenants. They are subordinate to the great *Polish* Castellans; and their appointments accrue from the *Starosties*, over which they also preside.

4. Three VICE-TREASURERS, who have only a bare title; however, as they are Counsellors of State, they take place of the rest of the Nobility. These are not members of the *Polish* Senate; but appear only as provincial representatives in the Diet.

5. Two COUNSELLORS from each of the three Great Cities, as they are called, namely, *Tborn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzick*; and every one of these representatives have a vote. Formerly seven Great Cities had this privilege.

Of these Members the Senate, or Council of State, is composed. All the State Counsellors, according to the laws of the country, ought to be native *Prussians*;



*Prussians*; but they seldom have this qualification. They are nominated by the King of *Poland*, and take a particular oath at their admission. The Bishops, Palatines, and Castellans, are also members of the Senate of the kingdom of *Poland*; and particular seats were set apart for them in that Senate in the year 1569. They are also qualified to fill the Crown-offices or posts at Court. The Bishop of *Ermland* sits as president in the *Prussian* Diet; but in his absence, his place is supplied by the principal person among the Nobility that are present. These members are stiled 'the two States of the Dutchy of *Prussia*,' and likewise Royal Counsellors. They may be also called the *Superior-States* to distinguish them from the *Inferior-States* composed of the lower Nobility and the deputies of the small towns. Those Noblemen that hold of the Bishop of *Ermland* are not reckoned among the States; but the rest send their representatives to the General Diet. The small towns also formerly sent representatives to the *Prussian* Diet; but the Nobility have deprived them of that privilege, by forcibly excluding them from the public deliberations.

King *Casimir* IV. engaged, for himself and successors, not to deliberate on, or determine any affair of consequence relating to this country, without the previous concurrence of the above-mentioned States of *Prussia*. By these *Affairs of Consequence* were understood the *Regalia*, as they are called, or matters relating to the Royal Prerogatives, and those public acts, which the King, when occasion requires, resolves upon in conjunction with the States; as declaring war, imposing taxes, concluding a peace, making laws, &c. To this end, the *Prussian* Diets were introduced, which, formerly had no connection with the *Polish* Diets. But in the year 1569, by the ordinance of *Lublin*, part of the Senate or Council of *Prussia* was united with the Senate of *Poland*; and the States of the former were compelled to appear at the general Diet of the kingdom. From that time, the political constitution of *Prussia* has undergone great alterations: However, it is not quite interwoven with that of *Poland*, and this country still enjoys its particular rights and privileges.

§. 4. Having treated of the States of *Polish Prussia*, we now proceed to give a short account of the Diets of this country. These were formerly of two kinds; namely the *Ordinary* and *Extraordinary* Diets. The former have been discontinued for these last hundred years and above; but the latter are still in being and are summoned by the King; who also appoints the time and place of their meeting. As for the place, they are always held alternately at *Marienburg* and *Graudenz*.

At the summoning of the *Prussian* General Diet \*, the King also specifies the time for holding the lesser Diets, where the representatives for the

\* I have added the word *Prussian* to distinguish this from the General Diet held for the whole *Polish* Dominions.

former are chosen, and receive their instructions. These provincial Diets are held in every Palatinate; viz. in that of *Culm* at *Schonsee*; in that of *Marienburg* at *Stum*; and in the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* at *Stargard*. But before the Diet for the Palatinate of *Pomerellia* meets at *Stargard*, the Districts of *Dirschau*, (which includes that of *Dantzick*,) *Schwetz*, *Tuchel*, *Schlochau*, *Mirchau*, and *Putzig*, hold their respective assemblies. The happy conclusion of these inferior Diets is a presage of the prosperous issue of the general Diet. But if only one of these assemblies rises abruptly, the general Diet is seldom expected to assemble. The number of representatives for every Palatinate is not fixed; but they have of late been more numerous than heretofore. *Pomerellia* generally sends the greatest number of representatives, and *Marienburg* the fewest. The instructions which are given them are written in the *Polish* language; and during the session of the Diet, their expences are defrayed.

The representatives of the Palatinates, and the King's Commissioner, are obliged to attend at the opening of the *Prussian* General Diet; but the presence of the State Counsellors and the representatives of the large cities is not requisite. The Diet is generally held in the Town-house, and sometimes in the church, or some other convenient place. It does not always continue sitting till its proper period; but, on the contrary, is often dissolved, or prorogued. The Instruments, &c. published in the name of all the States of the country are rendered into *Latin* by the Secretaries of *Thorn*, according to the sense of the States assembled; and, at the close of the Diet, are publicly read, and sealed with the seal of the Dutchy. All documents, and decrees brought to the Diet, or published by it, are deposited in the archives of the State at *Thorn*.

The *Prussian* Diets are divided into *Conventus Ante-Comitiales* and *Conventus Post-Comitiales*. In the former, the King orders the matters to be deliberated, which must be determined in the general Diet of *Poland*, and the representatives are chosen, and receive the money to defray their expences. In the latter, new taxes are imposed, and the accounts of the former taxes are passed; and if any thing detrimental to the Public has been transacted at the general Diet of *Poland*, it is verbally censured, or a protest is entered against it in writing.

The *Prussians*, besides their own General Diet, assist at the General Diet of *Poland*. The three large cities and inferior Nobility are also summoned to the *Polish* General Diet; but as their representatives have no particular place assigned them either in the Senate or among the provincial representatives, their particular concerns are generally inserted in the provincial instructions, and recommended to the Senators and representatives.

§. 5. We have already observed, that the *Prussians* agree to the taxes to be imposed on them, not in the General Diets of *Poland*, but in their own general Diet. The cities and towns pay the Malt-Excise, as it is called, which



is two shillings for every bushel of malt which they brew; but the Nobility have introduced a kind of land-tax called *Hufengeld*, or *Poborren*. A *Pobor*\* is rated at a *Polish* guilder. Besides this land-tax and the Excise, other contributions and taxes have sometimes been imposed on the *Prussians*.

The castle of *Marienburg* is appointed for the public Treasury, which is under the direction of a Treasurer. The Treasurer of *Prussia* has a Secretary under him, and is not subject to the Treasurer of the kingdom, but to the *Prussian* States only.

The *Prussians* pay no toll or custom; and when they are in *Poland*, they only pay those of the frontiers which are of long standing. They are not obliged to go upon any military expedition out of the province: however, the Nobility of the country are always ready to appear in arms for their own defence. The Burghers are exempt from this service; only the citizens of *Thorn*, in consideration of their privilege of purchasing and holding estates like the Nobility, send about thirty-two horsemen, &c. into the field.

§. 6. Causes are tried in *Prussia* by the Noble-laws of the country, and those of *Culm*. In *Elbing*, and some other places, causes are determined by the *Lubeck* law. The Nobility in every Palatinate use the Provincial and the Castle-law. Of the latter notice has been taken above in our account of the *Woiwodas* or Palatines. The Tribunal at *Peterkau* is the last resort for the Nobility in the country; but from the towns appeals are lodged in the royal *Assessorial-Court*.

§. 7. *Prussia* had formerly its own coin, which was afterwards reduced to the standard of the *Polish* money. The three principal cities of *Prussia*, by virtue of their particular privileges, are allowed to coin gold and silver pieces of various sorts, impressed with the King's head on one side, and their respective arms on the reverse, which, after receiving the royal sanction, are to pass as the current money of *Prussia*.

§. 8. Besides the Senators, or Counsellors of State, mentioned above, there are several other public officers in *Prussia*; namely,

The Treasurer, who is the principal, and even the only one who has an annual appointment and some other perquisites already specified.

The Sword-bearer, who has nothing but the bare title.

The Standard-bearer, who carries the standard of the Province when all the Nobility of the country take the field.

The Judges of the land, who are seven in number, and their *Assesores*, or Assistants.

§. 9. It is to be observed of the towns in *Prussia*, that they were formerly divided into Great Cities and Small Towns. The Great Cities are, *Thorn*, *Elbing*, and *Dantzick*; and the Small Towns, which are also called Royal Towns, amount to seven-and-twenty: but those belonging to the Bishops of

\* i. e. A Hide of land.



*Ermland* and *Culm* are not included in this number. An association was formed among these small towns under the government of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. By this union, which continues to this day, they are to unite in behalf of their common privileges; to consult their interest as a community in their particular assemblies; and to recommend their common concerns in the general Diets of *Prussia* to the representatives of the Great Cities. With regard to their deliberations, *Marienburg*, which is the most considerable among these towns, has the Directory; and this town, together with *Graudenz*, *Dirschau*, *Stargard*, and *Konitz*, are called the Plenipotentiary towns; for, besides their own concerns, they are charged with the affairs of all the other towns, which they lay before the Directory. The latter represents them to the Deputies of the Great Cities, who, on account of the care they take of the affairs of the towns in their Palatinates, are called *Quarterstadte*. The twenty-seven Small Towns are,

<i>Stum,</i>	<i>Rbeden,</i>	STARGARD,
<i>Neuteich,</i>	<i>Golub,</i>	<i>Schoneck,</i>
<i>Tolkemit,</i>	<i>Lautenberg,</i>	<i>Berend,</i>
GRAUDENZ *,	<i>Schonsee,</i>	KONITZ,
MARIENBURG,	DIRSCHAU,	<i>Baldenburg,</i>
<i>Christburg,</i>	<i>Mewe,</i>	<i>Friedland,</i>
<i>Straßburg,</i>	<i>Neuburg,</i>	<i>Tuchel,</i>
<i>Lessen,</i>	<i>Schwetz,</i>	<i>Hammerstein,</i>
<i>Neumark,</i>	<i>Putzig,</i>	<i>Schlochau.</i>

These towns, at present, are far from being in a flourishing condition. From the sentences of the magistrates of these towns an appeal lies to the *Starosta's*, and from the latter to the King. For an account of their rights and privileges, see a *Latin* Treatise entitled, *Privilegium civitatum minorum Prussiae occidentalis, commentariolo illustratum*.

The Dutchy of *Prussia*, or *Polish Prussia*, consists of four Provinces, which are as follows.

## I. LITTLE POMERANIA,

### Or POMERELLIA.

THIS country was formerly a part of the Dutchy of *Pomerania*, and was governed by its own Princes, of the *Pomeranian* line. The last of these, who was called *Mestowyn*, dying without children in 1295, left

\* Those distinguished by capitals are the Plenipotentiary Towns mentioned above.

his dominions to *Premislaus II.* Prince of *Great Poland*. But the Margrave of *Brandenburg* attacked this country, assisted by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*; who afterwards united it to their dominions, and kept possession of it from the year 1310 to 1466. After this, it fell under the dominion of *Poland*. The natives of *Pomerellia*, in order to distinguish them from the other inhabitants of that country, were formerly called *Pommerinken*.

This Province has its own Palatine, who is the third among the *Prussian Woiwodas* and likewise a Vice-Treasurer, and a Sword-bearer.

There are five *Starosties* in *Pomerellia*, namely, those of *Schlochau*, *Schwetzw*, *Tuchel*, *Dirschbau*, and *Putzig*.

This Palatinate contains five Circles, and has four Provincial Judges: for the Districts of *Dantzick* and *Dirschbau* have one each; the third is for *Tuchel*, and the fourth for *Putzig* and *Mirchau*.

The Bishop of *Cujavia* has a very large estate in this Palatinate; and, indeed, almost the whole Province is under his jurisdiction, as to ecclesiastical affairs: Hence he is also stiled Bishop of *Pomerellia*; but has no seat in the *Prussian Senate* or Council of State. Some part of *Pomerellia* is under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*. The most remarkable places in this Province are,

1. *Dantzick*, called in Latin *Dantiscum* or *Gedanum*, and in the *Polish* language *Gdantzk*, a famous commercial city and fortress, situated on the *Wessel* or *Vistula*, about a *German* mile from the *Baltic*. Two small rivers called *Radaune* and *Motlau* run through the city. The *Motlau* divides itself into two channels, which run between the *Old* and *New Town*, and afterwards unite again below the city, and with the *Radaune*, fall into the *Vistula*. It is a large, populous, and beautiful city, and built according to the ancient manner of the *Hanse-towns*; but most of the streets are narrow. This is partly occasioned by the *Beyschlage*, or Galleries, which project a good way into the streets. These *Beyschlage*, to which there is an ascent by a few steps, are even with the houses; and under most of them are good vaults or cellars.

*Dantzick* properly consists of two parts, namely, the *Old Town* and the *New Town*, with their suburbs. This city has a beautiful harbour, and the inhabitants carry on a considerable trade, especially in corn. The ships belonging to this port are very numerous; and the privileges of the city are of great importance. As the third Great City, it sends representatives to the *Prussian Senate*, or Council of State; who have likewise a seat in the General Diet of *Poland*, and vote at the election of a King. The *Dantzickers* have also the privilege of coining money, gathering amber, &c.

In the year 1567, King *Casimir* conferred the title of Noble on the Magistrates, *Schoppen* or Judges, and the hundred Burghers of *Dantzick*; so that since that time they have been stiled *Nobiles*.

In this city are twelve Lutheran churches, exclusive of those in the House of Correction and in the alms-house, two Calvinistical churches, and one Popish church, with a college of Jesuits. The Cathedral, or large Lutheran church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is the most magnificent, and the principal parish-church in *Dantzick*; but is subject to pay pecuniary impositions to the Bishop upon any frivolous pretence. The first Preacher or Minister of this church is called *Senior Ministerii*: the rest are equal as to dignity, and two of them must always be Doctors in Divinity. There is a Lutheran *Gymnasium* or Academy in the Gray Fryars convent, in which are seven Professors, and one Teacher of the *Polish* language. The city Library stands in this convent; and the collection of books, with which it is furnished, was not only properly arranged, but also greatly improved and augmented by M. *Adrian Engelke*. Other public buildings in this city are,

The Council-houses in the *Old* and *New Town*. In the tower of the latter are very musical chimes; and under the Council-house is the *Pfund-kammer*, as it is called, where the duty upon merchandise is paid.

The public Weigh-house, the Arsenal, and the Exchange, which are very old structures.

The fine mill erected on the river *Radaune*, which has eighteen wheels, is the largest in all the city, and is said to have formerly brought in a ducat every hour to the proprietors; but, at present, it does not yield near so much.

This city was anciently the principal of the *Hanse-towns*; being one of the first that entered into the *Hanseatic* Association. The *German* is almost the only language spoken here; the *Polish* being but little used by the inhabitants. This city has its own garrison; and the fortifications make a good appearance, especially towards the South and the West; for those parts of the town are surrounded with mountains and eminences. Some of these hills are higher than the city-towers; and those called *Bischofsberg* and *Hagelsberg* are the most remarkable among them. On the latter a castle formerly stood, which, like the mountain, derived its name from a Nobleman called *Hagel*, who, for his tyrannical behaviour, was slain there, after which his castle was laid in ashes. This was also the burying-place of the Sovereigns of the country, as is evident from the arms and statues found on this hill about the year 1664. Hard by is shewn the place where the *Russians* attacked this city in the year 1734, but without success; and likewise the large tomb in which a 1000 men, who were killed on this occasion, are interred.

According to the Bills of Mortality 1846 persons died in this city in 1752. In the same year 1288 *Polish* vessels, small and great, from the *Vistula*, and 1014 ships from the sea, arrived in this port; and 58,060 Lasts and 40 bushels of corn was brought into this city for exportation, &c.

As for historical particulars relating to this city, it appears from the ancient records, that *Dantzick*, so early as the year of Christ 997, was  
a large



a large commercial city, and not a village or inconsiderable town, as some pretend. The *New Town* was founded by the Cross-bearing Knights \* in the year 1311; and was first surrounded with a wall and moat in the year 1343. This city shook off the yoke of the *Teutonic* Knights in 1454, and the inhabitants, under certain restrictions, submitted to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, who among other privileges granted them the right of coining their own money. They afterwards refused to do homage to *Stephen* King of *Poland*, without a previous confirmation of their rights and privileges. Upon this, the city was put under the *Ban*, and besieged by that Prince: However, matters were adjusted, and, on a public acknowledgment of their error, and paying a large fine to the King, he received the city into favour, confirmed its privileges, and granted the inhabitants the free exercise of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion. In 1734, *Stanislaus* King of *Poland* took refuge in this city; but this occasioned a hot siege and bombardment from the *Saxons* and *Russians*. At length, when there was no hopes of relief from the *French* by sea, and King *Stanislaus* had found a way to make his escape, *Dantzick* submitted to *Augustus* III. Elector of *Saxony*, as its rightful Sovereign. Some violent dissentions, not long since, arose betwixt the Magistrates and Burghers; but, after great disputes and animosities, and a vast expence to the city, they were brought to an accommodation in the year 1752, by the *Ordinatio regia civitati Gedanensi præscripta*, in which may be seen the form of government, laws, and privileges of this city.

*Dantzick* is in the diocese of *Cujavia*; and the inhabitants pay the Popish Bishop all the regard that is consistent with the difference of their religion, and the privileges and immunities of the city. Without the walls lie the following places, which belong to the city of *Dantzick*.

The *Dantziger Werder* †, as it is called, which is surrounded by the *Vistula*, the *Motlau*, and the morasses caused by these rivers. It contains about 1400 Hides ‡ of land, and about thirty-three villages. It is entirely under the government of the magistrates of *Dantzick*; and the senior Burgomaster and two of the Senators are the Directors and Superintendents of it. The church-villages in this island are twelve in number; and among these is one Calvinistical church and two chapels. The church-village of *Stieblau* or *Stublau*, gives name to *Stiebla-Werder*. In war time, batteries are erected at the church-village of *Gutland*. The inhabitants of the village of *Schmerenblocke* are all *Hollanders*.

The *Frische Nebrung*, which is a long narrow slip of land lying between the sea and the harbour, and extending almost to *Pillau*. There are five church-villages on the *Frische Nerung*: But the most remarkable

\* These were the *Teutonic* Knights, who had a black cross in their standards and colours.

† *Werder* signifies an island formed by a river, and drained by art.

‡ A Hide of land in *England* was as much as one plough could cultivate in a year.

place in it is the fort called *Munde* or *Weichselmunde*, in Latin *Vistulæmunda*\*, which stands in the *Baltic* at the mouth of the *Vistula*; and opposite to it on the other side of the water stands a fort called *Westerſchanze*. The *Munde* is a strong place, and has a church and a commodious harbour. It belongs to the city; and was taken by the *Saxons* in 1734. The fort called *Haupt* also deserves notice.

The *Hoke*, as it is called, on which are eight church-villages and the little town of *Hela* or *Heel*, which also belongs to *Dantzick*, is on a point of land, which projects with a curve into the *Baltic*, and forms the *Pautzkerwick* bay. Here ships usually cast anchor. In 1572, this little town was consumed by fire.

2. *Oliva*, a celebrated convent, which lies about a *German* mile from *Dantzick*, was founded by Duke *Subislaus* in 1170; or, according to others, in the year 1178 by *Samborius* Duke of *Pomerania*, for a fraternity of *Benedictine* monks. In 1224, and 1234 or 1236, it was laid in ashes by the *Pagans* of *Prussia*; and in 1432 or 1433, it was burnt by the *Bohemian* soldiers, who were in the service of *Poland*. In 1577, it was demolished by the *Dantzickers*, who were afterwards obliged to pay above 20,000 guilders towards rebuilding it. On the third of *May* 1660, a peace was concluded in this convent between the *Poles* and *Swedes*; and, in the following year, the treaty was registered among the public records and transactions of the Kingdom of *Poland*.

This convent is, at present, inhabited by *Cistercian* monks, who are about fifty in number. The inside of the convent-church is exceeding splendid; particularly the high altar and the pulpit, which are finely gilt, and appear extremely beautiful. It has forty altars, which are all embellished with the richest ornaments. It has also several chapels, among which that of the blessed *Virgin* is the most magnificent. In the choir, the remains of the founder of the monastery and his sons are deposited under a marble tomb-stone; and the walls are ornamented with the statues of the principal benefactors of the convent. Near the entrance of the church a marble table is set up in the wall, in commemoration of the treaty of *Oleva* mentioned above. The dispensary belonging to the convent is very elegant, and well contrived. This monastery has the privilege of gathering amber on the sea-coast. A pretty village has been gradually built round this convent.

3. *Pautzke*, or *Putzig*, a little town with a strong castle, which is a royal demesne. On one side of it lies a morass. It was taken by the *Danes* in 1464, after a long siege. In 1626, the *Swedes* made themselves masters of it; and in the following year it was recovered by the *Poles*. Between *Dantzick* and *Putzig*, the *Baltic* forms a bay called *Pautzkerwick*.

\* This is *Teutonic* Latin: It should rather be called *Vistulæ ostium*; for the *German* word *Munde* signifies a month.

4. *Zernowitz*, a handsome nunnery belonging to the order of *Præmonstratentes*, which was founded in the year 1213.

5. *Sluckau*, a convent belonging to the *Bernardine* nuns.

6. *Marien Paradies*, a *Carthusian* convent which lies between two lakes not far from *Mirchau*. This is the only monastery belonging to that Order in all *Prussia*.

7. *Dirschbau*, or *Derfau*, a strong little town seated on the *Vistula*. It is said to have been built in the year 1209, and was formerly called *Sau*. It is, at present the capital of a county. In 1288, *Msczugius* founded a convent for a fraternity of *Predicant* monks in this town. In 1310, and 1432 or 1433, *Dirschbau* was laid in ashes; and in 1577 it was consumed by an accidental fire. In 1626 and 1655, it was taken by the *Swedes*. A Provincial Court of Judicature, and the royal Court for the *Oeconomie* of *Dirschbau* are held here. There is a Lutheran church in this town.

8. *Schoeneck*, a small town and castle on the river *Fers*. It is supposed to have been built in the year 1180, and to have been destroyed by the *Prussians* about the year 1186. But it was rebuilt soon after; and, either by purchase or exchange was given up by the Knight's of St. *John* to those of the *Teutonic* Order. Here is a royal *Polish* Chancery; and every month an Assembly or Diet is held in this town, in which the Under *Woiwoda* determines small differences; but causes of greater consequence are decided by the *Woiwoda* or Palatine himself. Appeals lie from hence to *Peterkau*.

9. *Stargurd*, a small town, which likewise stands on the *Fers*. When this place was little more than a village, *Subislaus*, Prince of *Pomerania*, granted it to the Knights of St. *John*, who founded St. *John's* church in this town. *Stargard* was rebuilt by the *Teutonic* Knights, in the year 1339, on the spot where it now stands; but the Knights of St. *John* were not pleased with the removal of the town. In 1456, it was taken by the *Poles*, and in 1654, it surrendered to the *Swedes*. The Diet for this Palatinate is held in this town.

10. *Meve*, or *Gniew*, a town and castle at the conflux of the *Fers* and the *Vistula*. In the year 1283, it devolved to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, who built a fortress here. In 1463, this place capitulated to the *Poles*; and in 1626 and 1655, it surrendered to the *Swedes*. The Papists took possession of the principal church at *Meve* in the year 1696. Not long since, *John Gertz*, a Lutheran preacher, was obliged to erect a statue in this town to St. *Nepomuc*, against whom, it was pretended, he had spoke some disrespectful words.

11. *Neuburg*, or *Neuenburg*, a little town which has the *Vistula* on one side, and a morass on the other. Mention is made of this town as a place of some note in the year 1310. The Burghers drove out the *Polish* garrison



garrison in 1458; upon which the *Teutonic* Knights of the Cross made themselves masters of the place: However, it was retaken by the *Poles* in 1364 or 1465. In 1626, and 1655, the *Swedes* took this town, and put a garrison in it.

12. *Bisckmark*, a small town, which has been several times consumed by fire.

13. *Hammerstein*, a small town near the source of the river *Bro*, which, in the year 1466, submitted to *Poland*. This town was reduced to ashes in 1719 by an accidental fire.

14. *Landeck* and *Friedland*, which are small towns. In the latter is a Lutheran church.

15. *Schwetz*, a town and castle on the *Vistula*. The castle was built in 1244 by Duke *Suantopolk*, as a defence against the attacks of the *Teutonic* Knights. After this, the town was gradually built; and, in 1340, it was fortified. In 1310, it fell under the dominion of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. In 1454, it was taken by the *Poles*; in the following year the *Teutonic* Knights made themselves masters of it; and in 1466, it was taken again by the *Poles*. In the year 1655 the *Swedes* took this place; and the year ensuing it was taken a third time by the *Poles*.

16. *Tauckel*, a little town with a castle, situated on the river *Bro*. It was famous in the former wars between *Poland* and *Prussia*; and a Court of Judicature is held in it.

*Bromberg*, called in the *Polish* language *Bedgotzi*, *Bigodsez*, or *Bidgost*, is a small town on the river *Bro*. That river entirely environs the castle, which stands without the town. In 1613, some *Schillings* of base metal were coined in this town; which is also famous for the treaty which was concluded here in 1657 between the King of *Poland* and the Elector of *Brandenburg*. A Court of Judicature is held here.

18. *Verdon*, *Krone*, *Conitz* and *Shuckau*, four small towns on the river *Bro*.

## II. C U L M E R L A N D;

Or the P A L A T I N A T E of C U L M.

In Latin *Palatinatus seu Præfectura Calmiensis*.

**T**HIS Province has a *Woiewoda*, who is the first of the three *Prussian* Palatines, a Castellan, a Vice-Treasurer, a Sword-bearer, a Judge, and the eight following *Starosties*; namely, those of *Strasburg*, *Graudenz*, *Rbeden*, *Golub*, *Roggenhausen*, *Bretchen*, *Schonsee*, and *Engelburg*. The bishop-

bishopric of *Culm* is the most ancient See in *Polish Prussia*, and was founded about the year 1215, or 1222, by *Conrad* Duke of *Masovia*. The College, or Chapter, of the churches of *Culm* consists only of four canons who are chosen by the Bishop and the rest of the Chapter. A fuller account of the Diocese and Bishop of *Culm* has been given above §. 3.

The principal places in the Palatinate of *Culm* are,

1. *Culm* or *Cbelmno*, which is the capital of this province, and stands on an eminence on the banks of the *Vistula*. This city was founded in 1239; and was bequeathed by one of the Dukes of *Masovia* to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. The inhabitants afterwards withdrew themselves from the obedience of the latter, and submitted to *Poland*. While the *Teutonic* Knights had the Sovereignty of *Culm*, the High Tribunal of *Prussia* was held in this city. Hence the *Culmean* law was in such reputation, that there were few places in *Prussia*, or *Masovia*, where it was not received. *Culm* is a large city, though but thinly inhabited. It was formerly one of the *Hanse*-towns, and, under the Kings of *Poland*, was reckoned one of the Great Cities, as they are called; and consequently had representatives in the Senate, or *Prussian* Council: but it is at present subject to the Bishop. The *Teutonic* Knights granted this city the privilege of coining money. Here are two monasteries and a nunnery. In the year 1457, the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, from whom this city had revolted, made themselves masters of it again; but in few years after, it was taken by the *Poles*. In 1544, *Culm* suffered greatly by fire.

2. *Altbaus*, a castle on an eminence near the *Vistula*, with a village or small town. It is called *Starigrod* in the *Polish* language.

3. *Culmensee*, or *Cbelmza*, is a small town about a *German* mile from *Culm*, and the residence of the Bishop of *Culm*; who is also stiled the Bishop of *Lobau*, where he has a seat. This town was built in the year 1251.

4. *Frideck*, in *Polish Wambrissa*, a small town, which was founded in the year 1331.

5. *Thorn*, which is the most ancient city in either of the two *Prussia*'s, and the chief of the three Great Cities of *Polish Prussia*, stands on the *Vistula*. The magistrates and representatives of *Thorn* have the precedence of those of the other Cities; and the records of *Polish Prussia* are kept in this town. *Thorn* was founded by *Herman Balck*, first Grand-master of the *Teutonic* Order, who built the castle of *Thorn* in 1231. In the following year, the foundation of the town was laid; but the building was discontinued in 1235 on account of the inconvenient situation, and *Thorn* was built about a *German* mile farther up the river, on the spot where it now stands. It is supposed to have been called *Thorn*, because the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order by building this city opened to themselves a *Thor* or door into *Prussia*. This is further confirmed by the maps, and the seal of the city which represents

presents a gate thrown open. *Thorn*, soon after it was built, became distinguished above the other towns of *Prussia* by several valuable privileges; particularly the *Culmische Handveste*, as it was called. These privileges, which were not granted to other cities till a long time after, consisted in the choice of their judges and magistrates from among the Burghers; the punishment of offenders; the free and independent possession of estates; and exemption from all taxes. However, an officer stiled *Comthur* was appointed by the *Teutonic* Knights, who resided in a castle near the *Vistula*, and had power over the magistracy and Burghers in matters of general concern, till the year 1454.

But when the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order enormously abused their power throughout all *Prussia*, *Thorn* was the first city which formed the noble scheme of shaking off their oppressive yoke. The inhabitants, having concerted with the other towns, entered into an alliance for that purpose; and the original Instrument of that association is still to be seen among the records of this city. This happened in the year 1454, when at once the country now called *Polish Prussia* expelled the *Teutonic* Knights by force of arms, and asserted their freedom. On this occasion the inhabitants of *Thorn*, having made themselves masters of the castle, demolished it; and nothing but its magnificent ruins are now to be seen. The confederates put themselves under the protection of *Casimir the Great*, King of *Poland*; but upon the following advantageous conditions: Their rights, privileges and immunities were to remain entire. They were to honour his *Polish* Majesty as their sovereign, but without any farther connexion with *Poland* than a close harmony and alliance, by which they engaged to have the same allies and enemies, to assist each other on all occasions, and reciprocally to promote the welfare and prosperity of both parties. The magistrates of the cities acquired great esteem and authority by this alliance, &c. and particularly many privileges were conferred on *Thorn*, *Elbing* and *Dantzick* the three Great Cities, as they are called. But as *Thorn* had most signally distinguished itself in shaking off the *Teutonic* yoke, it more eminently deserved those immunities which the two other Great Cities shared with it, and had some exclusive privileges on that account.

The privileges granted in common to these three cities were as follows: They were declared free cities. They were to be governed by their own magistrates, which consist of the Council, the chief persons of which are the *Burgrave* and President; the *Schoppen* or Judges; and a third class as representatives of the Burghers. The members of the Council, in regard to their dignity, were to be accounted Noble; and even to be stiled *Nobiles* in the instruments issued by the Royal Chancery and other offices. The Burgomasters were termed *Præconsules*, and the Counsellors had the title of *Consules* or consuls. They were further allowed to hold a Supreme Court of Judicature, and, in criminal cases, to punish capitally even those who were



not inhabitants of the city, if they were taken in the fact; to have their own garrison; to coin money; but not to submit to the determination of any foreign court; to have their law-suits decided only in *Prussia*. They were to pay no other customs in *Poland* but those usually demanded at the first barrier on the frontiers. Lastly, they were to be members of the State-Council of *Polish Prussia*; and to have a seat and vote in the *Polish Diet*, and at the election of a King. The third Jubilee of this happy event was very justly commemorated with great rejoicings in the schools of all the three great Cities in *February 1754*, when *Thorn* and *Dantzick* even caused medals to be struck on the occasion.

The exclusive privileges, which *Thorn* in particular obtained, are also very important; namely, The Recorder of that city is to write down the decrees of the Diet of *Prussia*, in the name of the whole country, which are drawn up in the *Latin* tongue according to the intent and meaning of the Counsellors; to read them publicly; and afterwards to deposit them in the Archives or chamber of records in this city. Two members of the Council of *Thorn* always assist at the sessions of the *Culmean* Judicature, which is annually held here by the Nobility in the month of *October*. As *Thorn*, for some centuries, had been the Staple city, it was confirmed in the inviolable possession of that advantageous privilege; and as the *Vislula* waters its territory, the islands and fisheries in that river were made the property of the city. Lastly, the Burghers of *Thorn* were rendered capable of purchasing and enjoying fiefs or estates, which privilege none but the Nobility enjoy in this country.

This city has ten gates, and is divided into the *Old* and *New-Town*, each of which had formerly its respective Council, Magistracy, and Police. But, in 1454, they were incorporated into one city. They are, however, separated from each other by a wall and moat within the town; and without, they are defended in common by a fine double wall and moats. *Thorn* was formerly strongly fortified; and it gradually improved its advantageous situation, so as to become a place of very considerable trade, and one of the principal of the *Hanse-towns*. It likewise carried on an extensive commerce in the *Baltic*, independently of the other cities of that confederacy; for before the river widened so much, and consequently became shallower, ships of the greatest burden could come up to the very city. From this cause, and other subsequent misfortunes which followed close upon one another, in little more than half a century *Thorn* greatly declined from its flourishing condition. For it surrendered by capitulation in 1655 to *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*; and in 1658, after a vigorous siege, it was taken by the *Poles* and *Brandenburghers*. In 1703, it was bombarded and taken by *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden*, who not only exhausted it by the heaviest contributions; but also demolished all the fortifications contrary to the articles of capitulation. Between the years 1708 and 1710, great numbers

of its inhabitants were swept away by the plague. In the following years, the revenues of the city suffered considerably by the *Confederations* in *Poland*, and no less by the late commotions occasioned by the competitors for the Crown of that kingdom. In the year 1734, it also sustained great damages by fire; not to mention the immense charges of the Royal *Polish* Commission in 1718, for determining the differences betwixt the Magistrates and Burghers; and particularly that memorable Commission sent hither in 1724. Besides, there is no place in *Prussia* so exposed to molestations and vexatious suits from the Nobility as the city of *Tborn*; for it is separated from *Poland* only by the river, and on the *Prussian* side is surrounded by the estates of the Nobility. However, *Tborn* might still have such a share of commerce as would prove a fund of wealth and affluence to the inhabitants, if there were merchants of fortune among them; since all the commodities with which *Dantzick* carries on such a great trade are conveyed on the *Vistula* by *Tborn*. It was also accounted the handsomest city in *Polish Prussia*, and may still claim that honour; for its streets are broad and regular, and, for the most part, planted with rows of trees: The houses are also remarkable for their elegant appearance and cleanliness.

The inhabitants of *Tborn* are universally commended by foreigners for their civility and politeness, beyond those of any other town in *Prussia*. It is also observable, that the *German* language is spoken here in the greatest purity; so that even the inhabitants of *Upper Saxony*, candidly acknowledge, that they are at least equalled, if not excelled, in this particular by the commonalty and Burghers of *Tborn*. What is still more remarkable is, that not only the *German*, but even the *Polish* language, which is so necessary for carrying on trade, is also spoken here in such perfection, that several *Poles* send their children hither, merely to learn their native tongue in its purity and elegance.

The territory belonging to this city is of a considerable extent, including above twenty-five villages, among which are several noble estates; on this account, the city is obliged to furnish a small body of horse in case of an expedition for the defence of the country. In one of its dependencies called *Przyszeccz*, where a great quantity of beer is brewed, and abundance of spirits are distilled, an odd custom prevails; namely, that all persons of whatever rank they be (though their number be ever so great and it be repeated every day) that come into the place, must be desired to drink as much beer as they please gratis\*. Not a single drop of the beer brewed in this village is allowed to be sold here; and the public houses are obliged to fetch liquor for sale from other places. As this village lies at a moderate distance from the city, it being about two hours walk along a pleasant road, great numbers resort to it on foot and on horseback; and there is a particular building with several spacious rooms erected here for the entertainment of company.

\* This is a genuine *Teutonic* custom. *Quere* who finds the beer?



*Thorn* has its own garrison which generally consists only of one company. The soap, gingerbread, &c. of *Thorn* are every where in great request, and accordingly great quantities of them are exported. The asparagus that grow wild on some of the city lands, are not inferior to those which are cultivated with so much care in other countries.

The wooden-bridge over the *Vistula* in this city may justly be esteemed the longest, the most extraordinary and expensive bridge in *Europe*, and the city, in order to carry on the trade with *Poland* by land, is obliged to keep it in repair at a great expence. It is unquestionably the longest bridge in *Europe*; but consists properly of two bridges, the island of *Bazar* dividing it in the middle. That part of the bridge which is next to *Thorn* is called the *German-bridge*, and the channel over which it lies the *German Vistula*; but the other part towards *Poland* is distinguished by the name of the *Polish-bridge*, which is laid over the channel called the *Polish Vistula*. As the river continually grows wider and wider, the bridge must of necessity be lengthened; so that at present it takes up half an hour to walk over it from one bank of the river to the other. It is also the most singular, as to its construction, of any bridge in *Europe*, on account of the quick-sand into which the piles are driven; for the whole bridge shakes and totters whenever any carriages or horses are upon it, or even when any considerable number of foot-passengers go over it; so that a stranger, who is unacquainted with its construction, apprehends himself in great danger in passing over it. The ice on the *Vistula*, which is often two or three feet thick, and the rapidity of the current, carry away every year at least one third of this unstable bridge, and it would be nothing extraordinary if the whole were demolished: Hence we may form an idea of the vast expence the city of *Thorn* is at, in keeping it in repair; for the *Poles* contribute nothing towards keeping up the bridge, notwithstanding the heavy loads they bring over it.

As to the religion of the inhabitants of *Thorn*, by the Reformation in 1520, the Evangelical or Lutheran Profession was successfully propagated here, and, in a short time, became the established religion; so that as early as the year 1557, King *Sigismund Augustus* granted this city very considerable privileges in matters of religion, which have been ratified and confirmed by all his successors the Kings of *Poland*. By these privileges, the Lutherans got possession of St. *John's* church and St. *Mary's* in the *Old-town*, and St. *James's* in the *New-town*, besides St. *George's* and St. *Catharine's* in the suburbs. On the other hand, the Papists were allowed a chapel near St. *John's*, and the church of St. *Lawrence* in the suburbs. The *Dominicans* were also to retain their church of St. *Nicholas*, and their convent in the *New-town*; and the Benedictine Nuns their church of the Holy Ghost, and their nunnery which stands on the *Vistula*. In the above-mentioned churches, the Lutherans are also allowed to administer the sacrament of the



Lord's Supper in both kinds; and the Council are impowered to nominate and appoint the ministers of their religion who are to perform every part of the Lutheran religious worship. But in the year 1593, St. *John's* church was transferred to the Papists, and Jesuits were appointed to officiate in it; who, notwithstanding all the efforts of the magistrates to prevent it, continually increased in number. In 1605 the Jesuits built a college at *Thorn*, which has always been much frequented by strangers, and has likewise been the occasion of many calamities and misfortunes to the city; particularly in the year 1724. However, the city has hitherto maintained its right of patronage of the said church, and alternately with the King of *Poland*, nominates the *Roman Catholic* Priest who officiates in it. In this church is to be seen the epitaph of the celebrated astronomer *Nicholas Copernicus*, who was born in this city on the nineteenth of *January* 1472; and another on the tomb of *Alexander*, King of *Poland*.

In the year 1645, King *Uladislaus IV.* being desirous of uniting the three principal Christian sects, assembled the famous *Colloquium Charitativum*, or charitable conference, betwixt the Papists, Lutherans, and Calvinists; which, however, proved entirely fruitless.

In the year 1660, it was agreed at the treaty of *Oliwa*, that all public institutions, both religious and civil, should remain in *Poland* and *Prussia* on the same footing as before the war. But in 1667, St. *James's* church in the *New-town*, together with the hospital appertaining to it, was taken away from the Lutherans and given to the *Benedictine* Nuns, whose church on the *Vistula* had been demolished during the siege; and the Lutherans of the *New-town* were obliged to convert their town-house, which stands in the middle of the market, into a place of worship, as it has continued to be ever since. Lastly, the Protestants were deprived in the same unjust manner of St. *Mary's*, the only remaining Lutheran church, and the old adjacent convent, with the celebrated *Gymnasium* or seminary, which was then removed to another edifice, after having flourished there since the year 1568. The celebrated *Mecenas* of literature *Henry Stroband* has been a great benefactor of the seminary as well as of the whole city, by the fine library, printing house, and college where the students are now maintained, which he erected at *Thorn* in 1594. The Rectors and Professors of this college have always been persons of great learning and abilities, among whom were *Christopher Hartknoch*, and *Peter Zorn*. The celebrated *Abraham Calov* was also educated in this college. It has five professors and one teacher of the *Polish* language. But the calamity to which it gave rise from a trivial circumstance, on the sixteenth of *July* 1724, is too well known: and an account of it may be read at large in pamphlets written on the subject in several languages. The substance of the relation is, that in a procession, a Jesuit scholar furiously attacked some Lutheran students, who were standing by, and endeavoured to force them to kneel to the Host. This occasioned a tumultuous concourse, which the next day broke out into a most unhappy

unhappy quarrel; so that the populace being provoked from the Jesuits college by insulting language, and even by firing of muskets, forced their way into the college, where in their rage they did a great deal of damage. Upon this, in pursuance of an unheard of and precipitate sentence, without hearing the parties accused, President *Rosner* and nine Burghers were beheaded on the seventh of *December* following. The church of *St. Mary* and the adjoining convent were given to the Bare-footed monks; on the eighth of the same month, a heavy mulct was laid on the city; a statue was erected in *St. John's* church-yard in order to atone for the pretended affront offered to the *Virgin Mary*; and *M. Geret*, the senior minister of the Protestant church, was banished and outlawed. This extremely disgusted all the Protestant powers in *Europe*, especially those who were guarantees of the treaty of *Oliwa*: And even the Czar *Peter the Great* who had been at *Thorn* in 1706 along with King *Augustus II.* made very serious remonstrances to the Court of *Poland* against this iniquitous and cruel proceeding. But notwithstanding all this, the Jesuits obtained leave in the *Polish* Diet for the speedy execution of this scandalous sentence, as to the most important articles of it; yet the pressing solicitations of those powers were so far of service to the city, as to preserve its rights and privileges from being taken away: And *Augustus II.* King of *Poland* solemnly restored to the inhabitants all their privileges both religious and civil in their former extent, which they have ever since bravely maintained. However, the Papists remain in possession of *St. Mary's* church with the adjoining convent. In the former is a superb monument of Princess *Anne*, sister to *Sigismund III.*

The Lutherans of the *Old-town* continued for several years to perform divine service publicly in the exchange, which stands in the market place: But that edifice was too small for the congregation; for the Burghers, who amount at least to a thousand men, are all Lutherans except about thirty persons. On this account they have, since the year 1755, built on one side of the market place a new church one hundred and sixty feet long and eighty broad, to which the King of *Prussia* granted his Protection, and gave Permission to collect money in all his dominions towards defraying the expences of building it; and the exchange is applied to its former use. There are also four Lutheran churches in the villages belonging to *Thorn*. The clergy consist of a *Senior*, who is generally a Doctor in Divinity, and seven Preachers. Here are also some Calvinists who have a pastor, and perform their religious worship in a private house. The Jews have likewise a small synagogue in this city.

About a *German* mile from *Thorn* is a Popish chapel dedicated to *St. Barbara*, and distinguished by many pretended miracles; there is an annual and very solemn procession every *Whitsun-Tuesday* from the city to this chapel, for obtaining public indulgences.

Among the public edifices of the city, the Town-house in the *Old-town* is well worth seeing: It stands in the market place, on every side of which very  
handsom

handsom houses are erected, and forms an elegant quadrangular square structure built in a such a magnificent manner, that, for the beauty of its architecture, foreigners give it the preference to most edifices of that kind in *Europe*. The Exchange which also stands on the market-place, is a very superb structure, and is adorned with towers; and the front of it is embellished with gilded busto's of the King's of *Poland*. The Popish churches in this city, both for their spaciousness and ornaments, deserve particular notice, as does the Jesuits college. The *Junkerhof*, which stands on the bank of the *Vistula* and belongs to the Exchange, is a delightful place intended for festivity, and the entertainment of the principal merchants and other citizens of note. The artisans and lower class of people, both in the *Old* and *New-town*, have also a house and garden adapted for their recreation and merry meetings. Betwixt the *Old* and *New-town* there is a shooting-ground, and the marksmen who frequent this place have considerable privileges. Connoisseurs look upon the *Leaning tower*, as it is called, as an extraordinary piece of architecture; for as its outside is built obliquely from the ground, it seems as if it was ready to fall: but on the inside, the floors and ciplings are perfectly horizontal, and the walls perpendicular to the horizon.

6. *Schonsee*, called in the *Polish* language *Kowalewo*, is a small town where the Cass'e-court of the Palatine, and the Provincial Diet of this Palatinate are held. Near this place, the *Saxon* General *Bose* defeated the confederate *Poles* in 1716.

7. *Golup* or *Golub*, a town and castle on the river *Drebnitz*, was the favourite residence of *Anne* Sister to King *Sigismund III.* to whom the territory round it also belonged.

8. *Strasburg*, called in the *Polish* language *Brodnitz*, a strong castle and town in a good situation near the river *Drebnitz*, also belonged to the above-mentioned Princess, who died here in 1525. It was built in 1285, and has been often besieged and taken. There is a Lutheran church in this town.

9. *Reden*, called by the *Poles* *Radzyn*, a town with a castle, which has often suffered by fire and the ravages of war. A Court of Justice is held here.

10. *Engelsburg*, a small town of little note.

11. *Graudenz*, formerly called *Grodeck*, and in the *Polish* language *Grudziandz*, is a handsom town pleasantly situated on an island formed by the river *Offa*, which here runs through two channels into the *Vistula*. There is a church in the castle, which stands on an eminence, and another in the town. The Lutherans were deprived of the latter in 1598; so that they are now obliged to perform Divine Service in the Town-house, where they have also their school. In 1645, the Jesuits erected a college here, which received the sanction of a general Diet in 1647. This town was founded in 1299; and the *Prussian* Diet is held here and at *Marienburg* alternately.



12. *Lessen*, called in the *Polish* language *Laszin*, a small town built in 1328, which is almost surrounded with water.
13. *Neumarkt*, in *Polish* *Novomiasto*, a small town on the *Drebnitz*, built in the year 1254.
14. *Bretchem* or *Bretchen*, in *Polish* *Gratban*, a small town and castle on the same river, which was built in 1254.
15. *Lavernick*, a small town, which stands on the same river.
16. *Lobau*, a town and castle where the Bishops of *Culm* sometimes reside. This place was consumed by fire in 1545.
17. *Lautenburg*, a small town of little note.
18. *Rogenhausen*, a royal *Oeconomie*, or *Demefne*.
19. *Michelau*, a small District which lies between *Masovia*, the territory of *Dobrin*, and the river *Drebnitz*. This District was mortgaged in 1304 by Duke *Leszko* to the *Teutonic* Knights, and confirmed to that Order in 1343, 1411, and 1436. *Michelau* has its own Judge; but he is subordinate to the jurisdiction of *Culm*.

### III. The PREFECTURE of *MARIENBURG*,

In Latin *Prefectura seu Palatinatus Marieburgensis*.

THIS Province has a Palatine, who formerly had the title of *Woiewoda* of *Elbing*; and is the second in rank among those of *Prussia*. Here are also a Vice-Treasurer, and a Provincial Judge; and the *Starostey* of *Marienburg* is the principal in all *Prussia*. This Palatinate contains three *Werders*; of which we shall, in the first place, give some account.

*Werder* is a fen or morass surrounded with water, and improved for tillage and habitation\*. These *Werders* produce plenty of grass and corn; but woods or hills are seldom found in them. That called the wood of *Elbing* is the most considerable in this District. In many parts of it the only fuel is turf, or even straw and stubble. The woods afford very little game except hares, woodcocks and other wild fowl; but they harbour very fierce wolves. The fresh water in the *Werders* is very good; and great numbers of cattle are bred here: the horses are also much esteemed. The air is tolerably healthful. The inhabitants of the *Werders* have, from time immemorial, been free peasants, and are stiled the *Royal Vassals* and *Werderers*. They also obtained from the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order both the *Culm-lands* and the privileges of *Culm*: However, those

\* It properly signifies an island formed by a river; for which reason I have added the words 'surrounded with water.'

who are subject to the jurisdiction of the cities are under greater restrictions, than the royal peasants who live in the *Marienburg Werders*. They talk the *German* and *Polish* languages; and as to their religion, they are for the most part Lutherans or Papists. There are, however, some Calvinists, and a considerable number of *Mennonites*\*, among them.

I. The GREAT MARIENBURG-WERDER, in Latin *Insula major*.

This *Werder* is environed by the *Vistula*, the *Nogat*, and the bay called *Frische-baf*; and contains above 2130 Hides of land. The latter are divided into

*Zins-Hufen*, or 'Taxable Hides,' and

*Scharwerks-Hufen*, or 'Hides that maintain troops;' and likewise into

*Schulzen-Hufen*, or 'Hides under village-jurisdiction,' and

*Kirchen-Hufen*, or 'Ecclesiastical Hides,' which are under Popish jurisdiction in ecclesiastical affairs.

This *Werder* also includes the forty Hides of land which belong to the city of *Marienburg*, and twenty Hides about the small town of *Neuteich*. Besides the *Vistula*, this *Werder* is also watered by the river *Tye* or *Tyge*, which rises in the forest of *Montau*, traverses the *Werder*, divides into two branches which environ the little town of *Neuteich*, and runs into the bay called *Frische-baf* near *Haberborst*. This river is called *Suente* by the inhabitants of the *Upper-Werder*. Two channels also run towards the west from the *Great Werder* into the *Frische-baf*, one of which is called *Jungfern-Laacke*, and runs into the bay through the *Werder* of *Elbing*, near the village of *Jungfer*; and the other is called *Stobsche-Laacke* and runs by *Stobe*, a village belonging to *Elbing*, opposite to *Marienburg*. The *Great* and *Little Marienburg-Werder* fell under the dominion of *Poland* in the year 1525; and from that time a *Palatine* or *Starosta* is always nominated here as supreme *Oeconomus*, or *Steward*, who is, as it were, the royal Governor in *Polish Prussia*: Hence he takes place of all other *Starostas*. Under this officer is a deputy *Oeconomus*, who is also a *Polish Nobleman*; and both these are assisted in law matters by a *Notarius juratus*, or *Notary public*. Here are also a *Vogt*, or *Collector*, and a *Secretary*; who receive all the revenues, and take care of the King's interest. The lawsuits between the inhabitants are tried at the castle according to the laws of *Poland*, *Culm*, &c. The *Prussian* law made in 1620, which is the same with the old law of *Culm*, is the standard whereby the *Werderers* are usually tried in the castle at *Marienburg*, and also in the territories of *Dantzick* and *Elbing*. The *Teichgrafe*, and other officers belonging to the *Dikes*, govern according to the laws imposed on them by the *Teutonic Knights*, and confirmed by the Kings of *Poland* and the officers appointed by him: The number of these laws are also increased from time to time.

\* These are a sort of Anabaptists.

The *Great Marienburg-Werder* consists of five *Winkels*, as they are called; namely,

1. The *Winkel* of *Montau*.
2. The *Winkel* of *Schonau*.
3. The *Winkel* of *Leichtenau*.
4. The *Winkel* of *Neuteich*.
5. The *Winkel* of *Leswitz*.

It also includes thirteen Evangelical or Lutheran parishes.

In the first *Winkel* are five village-jurisdictions, and two church-villages; in the second are seven village-jurisdictions, and two church-villages; and in the third are seven village-jurisdictions, and four church-villages. In the fourth *Winkel*, besides the little town of *Neuteich*, are eight village-jurisdictions, and three church-villages; and in the fifth are fourteen village-jurisdictions, and only three villages with churches. These *Winkels* also include four considerable manors, namely, *Klein-Muntau*, *Leske*, *Kaminke*, and *Calten-bos*. To this part also belong

The District of *Tiegenbos*, which contains above six hundred and thirty-two Hides of land, in which, besides the seat and town of *Weyersbos*, are twenty villages: Three of the latter are inhabited by Lutherans.

The District of *Barwald*, which is contiguous to the foregoing and contains one hundred and ninety-five Hides and fifteen acres, and five villages, two of which are church-villages, and inhabited by Lutherans.

Lastly, the *Great Marienburg-Werder* includes the *Winkel* of *Scharpau*, which comprehends ninety-six Hides of land, and about fourteen villages; and also some village-jurisdictions in the territory of *Elbing*.

## II. THE FISCHAU-WERDER.

This *Werder* derives its name from the village of *Fischbau* which stands in the centre of it; but it is at present known by the name of the LITTLE *MARIENBURG-WERDER*; and in it is the conflux of the rivers *Elbing*, *Drausen*, and *Nogat*. The *Elbing* has its source in the *Drausen*-lake; runs close by the city of that name; and, after uniting with the *Pfiel* and the *Nogat*, falls into the *Frische-bas*. Several new rivers or canals discharge themselves into the *Elbing* and the *Drausen*; and among these is the *Fischbau*, over which there is a ferry near the city of *Elbing*. Part of this *Werder* is under the jurisdiction of the castle of *Marienburg*; and in that part are four Lutheran parishes. The *Prussian* and *Holland* Hides, as they are called, together with the Meadows or pasture-lands in this *Werder*, are computed at nine hundred and sixty-six Hides and twelve acres three quarters of land. On the *Prussian* Hides stand twenty-one villages; and sixteen on those of *Holland* and the Meadows.

## III. THE ELBING-WERDER.

Part of this *Werder* is included in that of *Fischbau*. The church-villages of *Furstenau*, and *Groß-Mausdorf* with their dependencies, and the



village of *Jungfer* on the *Frische-baf*; in the *Great Marienburg-Werder*; and also the church-villages of *Neubeyde*, *Zeyr*, with which seven other villages are incorporated, belong to the *Elbing-Werder*.

The Lutheran congregations in both the *Marienburg-Werders*, have suffered many infringements in their civil and religious liberties from the Papists. The number of the Lutheran ministers amount in all to twenty-six. These are not united into a body or society, under the government of a *Senior*: but every minister is absolutely independent of all the rest; which occasions too many irregularities. Every congregation appoints their own preacher.

The principal places in the Prefecture of *Marienburg* are,

1. *Marienburg*, a well-built town, which stands on an eminence near the river *Nogat*, in a pleasant and fertile country. Opposite to this town is the *Werder-fluice*, which checks the stream of the *Nogat*, but is detrimental to the works of the castle. The wooden-bridge which is here laid over the *Nogat*, and is five hundred and thirty-nine feet in length, is a very great charge and burden to the city; the fund appropriated for the building and repairing of it being far from sufficient for that purpose. The castle was built before the town; for the former is said to have been erected in 1281; whereas the latter was not built till the year 1304, on the spot where a village called *Czantrin* stood before. In this castle is the treasury in which the revenues of *Polish Prussia* are kept. The streets of this town are very dirty. Most of the inhabitants of *Marienburg* are Roman-catholics. Here, formerly, resided the Grand Master of the *Teutonic Order*; and the *Prussian Diets* are held alternately at *Marienburg* and at *Graudenz*. In the year 1460, this town was taken by the *Poles*. In 1626 and 1655, the *Swedes* made themselves masters of it. In 1644, the castle of *Marienburg* was entirely consumed by fire. There is but one Lutheran church in this town.

2. *Stum*, a small town and castle, where the Diet of this Palatinate and a court of Judicature are held. It was built in the year 1249, or, according to others, in 1278. In the years 1410, 1454, and 1416, the *Poles* wrested this town out of the hands of the *Teutonic Knights*; and in 1626 and 1656, it was taken by the *Swedes*.

3. *Stumdorf*, a village well known for the peace concluded here betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden* in 1635. It does not lie far from the foregoing town.

4. *Christburg*, a considerable town, with an old castle built on an eminence in 1247. It stands on the river *Sirgunen*, which falls into the *Drausen* over against *Elbing*. Here is held the Palatine's Castle-court, as it is called. This town was destroyed by fire in the year 1400; and the *Swedes* got possession of it in 1626.

5. *Neuteich*, a small town situated in the *Great Werder* on the river *Suente*. It was built in the year 1329; and suffered much by a fire in the year 1400, and likewise in the several wars, in which this country has been involved.

6. *Elbing*,

6. *Elbing*, a handsome, large city, which is fortified after the old way, and stands on a river of the same name, which has its source in the *Drausjin*-lake. It was built in 1239, and is a place of considerable trade. This city dates its first privilege from the year 1246, when the right of coinage was granted to it. The *Newstadt*, or *New Town*, received its privileges in 1347. Between the *Altstadt*, or *Old Town*, and the suburbs, where the store-houses of the merchants are erected, runs the river *Elbing*; and the *Old Town* is separated from the *New Town* by a wall and moat. The houses are high, narrow in front, and built in the old taste, almost like those at *Dantzick*. The streets are also very narrow, occasioned by the *Beyshlage* or Galleries which project into them; and before these are placed receptacles for all the dust and filth thrown out of the houses. Here are ten churches in which Divine Service is performed. That of *St. Nicholas*, which is the handsomest and largest structure of that kind in *Prussia*, was given up to the Papists in 1616. The Calvinists perform Divine Service in a large hall, and the *Menmonites* in a private house, in this city. The *Gymnasium* or School belongs to the Lutherans. *Elbing* is one of the *Hanse-towns*; and as it was inhabited by a colony from *Lubeck*, it is governed by the laws of that city; however, the Burghers have their particular rights and privileges. The castle, which had been built in 1237, was demolished by the Burghers in the year 1454. The fortifications towards the *Werder* are very slight; but, on the opposite side, they are in a much better condition: However, this town is looked upon as one of the strongest in *Polish Prussia*. Some companies of the crown army of *Poland* are cantoned in this town; but the Burghers keep guard at the gates, and the suburbs have a *Prussian* garrison.

*Elbing*, in ecclesiastical matters, is under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Ermeland*, as far as is consistent with the difference of religion, and without prejudice to the rights and privileges of the city; but, in civil affairs, it is subject to the King only.

In the year 1454, the inhabitants revolted from the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*; and put themselves under the protection of *Poland*. In 1626 and 1656, they voluntarily surrendered the town to the *Swedes*.

In the year 1658, *Elbing*, indeed, by the convention of *Bromberg*, was promised as a mortgage to *Frederick William* Elector of *Brandenburg*, to be held by him as a security for the payment of 400,000 rix-dollars, and in 1660, it was confirmed to that Prince by a new instrument; but he never got possession of the town: and though he remitted a fourth part of the sum, he never received the money. That Elector's son, however, took it in 1698; but he restored it to *Poland* in the year 1700; and gave up his right to the mortgage, in consideration of which he was promised 300,000 rix-dollars, and, as a security for the payment of the money, some jewels out of the royal treasury were put into his hands. The town was obliged to enter into an engagement to furnish 50,000 dollars towards



this sum; to maintain a garrison of 300 foot and 50 horse under the command of an experienced officer, and, in case of necessity, to augment this number to a corps of 2000 men; never to transfer its sovereignty without the privity of the King and Republic of *Poland*, and the States of *Prussia*; and to shew the greatest respect to the Roman-catholic religion. But as the Elector did not receive the sum stipulated, he took possession of the District belonging to this city by virtue of the above agreement.

In 1703, *Elbing* fell into the possession of the *Swedes*, who laid it under contribution; but the *Russians* took it from them by storm in 1710. This town is likewise called *Urbs Drusiana* from its vicinity to the *Drausen-lake*; and is the second of the three *Prussian* Great Cities.

#### IV. E R M E L A N D.

In Latin *Varmia*, or *Episcopatus Varmiensis*.

THIS Province is entirely surrounded by *Brandenburg-Prussia*\*, and belongs to no Palatinate; but is entirely subject to the Bishop and Chapter; so that neither the Nobility nor the other inhabitants of *Ermeland* can appeal to any other judicature. I have given some account of the Bishop of *Ermeland* above in p. 627, §. 3. Two thirds of this Province belong to the Bishop, and the remaining third part to the Chapter. Their subjects have recourse to the same Courts of Judicature as the rest of the *Prussians*; however, they have particular laws among them which are stiled *Landes-Ordnungen*. They have also a Provincial Diet in common, to which the Nobility, the Burghers, and country Judges, together with the freemen (who being under no vassalage, are in some measure of a middle rank between the Nobility and the peasants) are summoned. The *Ermelanders* do not assist at the *Prussian* Diets; but the Bishop is always present there, and proposes whatever is deliberated and determined concerning his diocese; particularly in relation to the taxes, according as they have been previously agreed upon in a provincial meeting held for that purpose, where the *Erme-landers* seldom dissent from their Bishop and the *Prussian* States.

The towns and other remarkable places in *Ermeland* are the following.

1. *Frauenburg*, a town of a moderate extent on the *Frische-baf*. It was founded in the year 1279; and is governed by the *Lubeck* law. This town is the seat of the Chapter. The Cathedral stands on an eminence: The celebrated mathematician *Nicholas Copernicus* was a canon of it, and died at *Frauenburg* on the twenty-fourth of *May* 1543.

2. *Braunsberg*, a pretty large and good trading town, situated on the *Passarge*, which, at a little distance from hence, discharges itself into the

\* This is also called *Ducal Prussia*, and belongs to his *Prussian* Majesty.



bay called *Frische-baf*. It was built in the year 1255, and derives its name from *Bruno* Bishop of *Prague*. *Braunsberg* is divided into the *Old* and the *New Town*, and is very populous: the inhabitants use the *Lubeck* law. The celebrated Jesuits college in this town was formerly a *Franciscan* convent, which was founded by the learned and famous Cardinal *Stanislaus Hofius*, who was Bishop of *Ermeland*, and from his name called *Hofianum*. There is also a nunnery in this town. In the year 1260, the cathedral of *Ermeland* was endowed with sixteen prebends, for as many prebendaries or canons.

In 1461; the inhabitants expelled the *Polish* garrison out of the city, and afforded an *Affylum* to the Bishop of *Ermeland*, who had declared for the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order. In 1637, King *Uladislaus*, by a public instrument, created the first *Patricians* of this city. *Braunsberg* was formerly one of the *Prussian* Great Cities, as they are called, and sent representatives to the Senate or Council of State; but is now under the jurisdiction of the Bishop.

3. *Tolkemit*, or *Tolmit*, a little town on the *Frische-baf*, which was built in 1365. It was consumed by fire in 1456, and has since undergone many other calamities.

4. *Melfack*, a small town and castle on the river *Walsche*, which runs into the *Passarge*.

5. *Warnstadt*, or *Wormit*, a town and castle on the *Passarge*. It was built in the year 1316.

6. *Heilsberg*, a beautiful town on the *Alle*, in which stands an elegant seat belonging to the Bishop of *Ermeland*. This town is said to have been built in 1240, and was destroyed by fire in the year 1521. *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden* had his head quarters here in 1703. There is a college of Jesuits in this town.

7. *Kessel*, an elegant little town with a castle. It is well supplied with provisions, and carries on a good trade. Here is a college of Jesuits, to which the church of the Holy Linden-tree in *Brandenburg Prussia* belongs.

8. *Bischofsstein*, or *Bistein*, a small town, which was built in the year 1325, taken by the *Teutonic* Knights in 1455, and destroyed by fire in 1589.

9. *St. Mary in the Wilderness*, which lies between *Heilsberg* and *Bistein*, is reckoned a sacred place, and much frequented by pilgrims.

10. *Seeburg*, a small town of little note.

11. *Wartenburg*, a little town with a castle on the river *Pisse*, which was built in 1325. In the year 1455, the inhabitants surrendered this town to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order; and in 1494 it was consumed by fire.

12. *Gutstadt*, a small town, which stands on the river *Alle*. It was built in the year 1325, and has been since considerably enlarged.

13. *Allerstein*, called in the *Polish* language *Olstineck*, is a small town with a castle on the same river. It was built in 1367; and belongs to the Chapter of *Ermeland* who keep a *Landvogt* here.

14. *Bischburg*, or *Bischofsburg*, a little town which has several times been destroyed by fire. The

---

T H E  
D U T C H Y  
O F  
C O U R L A N D,

In Latin *Curlandia*, or *Curonia*.

§. 1. **M.** *Barnikel*, chief architect of *Courland*, has favoured the Public with a map of this Dutchy, which is drawn with tolerable accuracy, and was engraven on two sheets at *Nuremberg* by *Homan's* heirs.

§. 2. The word *Courland*, or as this Dutchy is called in the language of the country, *Kur*, or *Cur-Semme*, is of the same import with *Jubr-Semme*, and signifies a maritime country, or a tract of land that projects into the sea. *Courland* is bounded on the West by the *Baltic*, and on the North by the gulf of *Riga* and *Livonia*: It borders on *Lithuania*, properly so called, towards the East, and on *Samogitia* towards the South. It extends fifty *German* miles in length, and the breadth is in some places twenty, in others hardly ten *German* miles; and towards the South-west it gradually terminates in a cape, or point of land.

§. 3. The soil, *Golding*, *Windaw*, *Alschwang*, and some other Districts excepted, is heavy, fat, and clayey, and the country abounds with woods and swamps: Hence the *Courland* roads are remarkably bad. In spring and autumn the meadows and low grounds are under water; but this serves to improve the land. Some skilful farmers have drained several of the fenny or swampy parts of *Courland*, by means of dikes or canals, and converted them into what they call *Staungen*. These *Staungen* are sown three years successively with summer seeds; and then they are left

left uncultivated for the like term, being laid under water, and stocked with fish.

*Courland*, however, contains good arable land, fine pastures, and produces great quantities of excellent flax. Here is also plenty of sea-fish; and the woods abound with bears, wolves, and elks. Amber is found here on the coast of the *Baltic*; and *Courland* has its mines of iron-ore and minerals, its quarries of stone, chalk, and stucco, and its mineral springs.

The principal rivers in this country are,

The *Windau*, in Latin *Veta*, which rises in *Samogitia*, and empties itself into the *Baltic* near the town of *Windau*.

The *Aa*, which also has its source in *Samogitia*, and falls into the gulf of *Riga*.

The smaller rivers are,

The *Abau*.

The *Berše*.

The *Bartau*.

The *Mussa*,

The *Anger*, &c.

§. 4. The inhabitants of this country are composed of *Germans* and *Lettonians*. The latter are not only vassals and tenants to the former; but are, in a manner, slaves to them. There are two languages usually spoken in *Courland*, viz. the *German* and the *Lettonian*. The Reformation or Lutheran religion took place in this Dutchy in the year 1522; and in 1532, *Courland* joined with *Riga* in a particular religious league; so that when this country fell under the dominion of *Poland*, the inhabitants were altogether Lutherans, without any Papists among them. But the subsequent misunderstandings between the Dukes and the Noblesse of *Courland* having occasioned several orders to be issued by the court of *Poland*, and Judiciary Commissions to be deputed from that crown, a fatal gap was opened for Popery. The Roman-catholics were, at first, only permitted to have churches in this country; but they soon raised themselves to a level with the Lutherans. In 1717, and 1727, the Papists of *Courland* received some additional privileges. Several of the *Courlandish* Nobility, who had embraced the Popish religion, signally exerted their zeal to introduce it into the churches within their respective jurisdictions; which greatly contributed to the spreading of that superstition. The marriages of the Dukes of *Courland* with Princesses who were Calvinists, also introduced that religion into the Dutchy; however, the Calvinists are excluded from all public employments in this country.

§. 5. The Nobility of *Courland* have great privileges and immunities; and the *old* Nobility are carefully distinguished from the *new*: but when *Ritterbanke* or assemblies of the Nobles were held in 1620, 1631, and



1634, many of the new families, who are not entered in the registers of the *Ritterbank*, assisted at those meetings. However, by an ancient law which has been frequently confirmed, the old Nobility alone are capable of filling the posts of honour. The Noblemen in this country generally embrace a military life. A Noble *Courlander* enjoys in *Poland* the same rights and privileges as a native, and a *Polish* Nobleman has the same indulgence in *Courland*. However, neither of them enjoy that privilege, until they are fixed and settled in those countries: and, indeed, at present a *Courlandish* Nobleman very seldom holds any eminent post in *Poland*, those of the law excepted, unless he be a Papist. The Nobility of *Courland* have no seat in the general Diet of *Poland*.

A Nobleman in this country is by law proprietor of whatever mines are discovered on his estate; and if it be near the sea, he has also the privilege of *Jetson*. By an ordinance passed in the year 1588, a Nobleman's house both in town and country is an *asylum*, from which no person can be forcibly taken; and by an Ordinance of the year 1454, a noble *Courlander* is not to be taken into custody, or his effects confiscated, till he has been previously summoned, and legally convicted before a Court of Judicature. By other ordinances passed in 1569, 1576, 1587, 1588, and 1650, their tenants, vassals, and domestics, are exempt from paying any toll, custom, or excise, for any goods, &c. that belong to them; and no soldiers are to be quartered on their estates. By an Act of *Ritterbanke* in 1634, and an Ordinance of the year 1676, no new-created noble family, till the third generation, is qualified to hold a post of honour, or to be a magistrate; nor can he be sent as an Envoy, unless he has distinguished himself in the service of his country, or is recommended by some of the ancient noble families.

Among other privileges, the Nobility here have an unlimited power over their vassals, which extends even to life and death; but before they can punish a vassal with death, they are obliged to hold a regular court under a penalty of one hundred florins\*. Hence the respect the peasants shew their Lords rises almost to adoration; and whatever property these arbitrary Lords require, the wretched vassals are obliged to give up, and immediately obey their commands without making any remonstrances. The Nobility of *Courland* are all on a level, and have, in conjunction with the Duke, the patronage of the parish-churches, but the Duke alone is patron of some, and the Nobility of other churches. In these parishes, at the desire of the Nobility, the Superintendent, assisted by some Provofts, ordains and collates the new incumbents.

The noble *Courlanders* may hunt wherever they please; and in war time, or when the Union with the Republic of *Poland* requires it, they

\* A *Polish* florin is equal to 1 s. 2 d. sterling.

appear on horseback according to the compact, and the service they owe to the Duke as vassals. But when such a general military appearance is required, the Duke in person is obliged to march at the head of them. They indeed choose their own colonels and other officers; but these are all under the Duke's command: Nor are they obliged to march beyond the frontiers of *Courland*, unless the Duke, out of regard to the King and Republic of *Poland*, voluntarily agrees to pass beyond the boundaries.

They pay a great respect to their Duke; but in order to keep up a due harmony between the Duke and the Nobles, the former must carefully avoid giving the least suspicion to the latter of any design on their privileges, of which they are extremely jealous.

§. 6. *Courland* formerly belonged to *Livonia*, and, till the thirteenth century, underwent the same vicissitudes with that country; both being mastered by the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, who were in possession of them till the year 1561. About that time the *Russians* invaded the country; and as the Order was then much declined from its former power and greatness, *Gotbard Ketler*, the last Great Master, yielded up *Livonia* to the King of *Poland*, as Great Duke of *Lithuania*. In return for this cession, *Courland* and *Semgallia* were erected into a temporal Duchy; and *Ketler* was invested with it as an hereditary fief in 1561. Such was the origin of the Duchy of *Courland*; and the new Duke being under the protection of the Kingdom of *Poland*, as united with *Lithuania*, introduced and established the reformed religion in his Duchy.

In the beginning of the eighteenth century, under *Frederick William* the sixth Duke, *Courland* was harrassed both by the *Swedes* and *Russians*. But in 1710, that Prince married *Anne* a Princess of *Russia*; who, after his disease, which happened in 1711, remained in possession of the sovereignty under the protection of her uncle Czar *Peter I.* though *Ferdinand*, brother to the late Duke's father, to whom the succession belonged, was still living.

The Nobility and *Ferdinand* were, indeed, at variance, not so much on account of his changing his religion; but because he generally lived out of the Duchy, and was for holding the reins of sovereignty though absent; and on account of his forcible ejection of the mortgagees out of the ducal estates. This dispute brought a *Polish* Commission into *Courland* in 1717; and a marriage was proposed between *Anne*, the Dutchess Dowager, and Duke *John Adolphus* of *Weissenfels*, but to as little purpose as another proposal of marriage with the Margrave of *Brandenburg Schwed*. This put the *Polish* States on devising the means of incorporating *Courland* with the Kingdom of *Poland* on the demise of Duke *Ferdinand*, and of dividing it into Palatinates. This project raised such apprehensions for their religion and liberties in the States of *Courland*, that, notwithstanding a royal inhibition which was issued out, they held an extraordinary Diet



at *Mittau*, about the latter end of *June* 1726, in which the succession, on the decease of *Ferdinand*, was settled on Count *Maurice* of *Saxony*, as natural son to the King of *Poland*, and his male heirs. This election was not only opposed by Duke *Ferdinand*; but the *Poles*, in a Diet held at *Grodno* in 1727, voted it null and void; and by a new law confirmed the intended union of this country with *Poland* at the death of *Ferdinand*. Against this incroachment on their liberties, the *Courland* patriots strenuously protested, and maintained, ‘That the States of the Dutchy derived from their ancestors the right of electing their Duke; and that they had not forfeited that right, notwithstanding all the attempts of the Diet.’ They appealed to the compact of subjection, wherein it was acknowledged and declared, that *Courland* should for ever be accounted a mediate *German* Government, and consequently was impowered in a case of necessity to elect its own Duke.

But to proceed in our history of *Courland*. *Anne Iwanowna*, having, on the demise of *Peter* II. in 1730, ascended the throne of *Russia*, Duke *Ferdinand*, who was then in the seventy-fifth year of his age, married *Johanna Magdalena* princess of *Saxe-Weissenfels*; and this Prince is still living. *Ferdinand*, in the person of his envoy *Frederick Gothard von Bulow*, received the usual investiture from the King of *Poland* at *Warsaw* in 1731: But, being unwilling to trust himself in a country which he knew to be irritated against him, he never took actual possession of *Courland*. In the mean time, on the death of *Augustus* II. King of *Poland*, the Czarina *Anne* ordered her troops to march into *Courland*, which she looked upon as very convenient for erecting a place of arms and forming part of the magazines. That Princess had before, in the year 1732, signified to the Court of *Poland*, that she could never consent to the absolute incorporation of the Dutchy with that kingdom; but would protect it in its rights to remain as a fief of the Republic under its own Dukes. The Republic of *Poland*, at length, conformed to this proposal, and in the Pacification Diet held at *Warsaw* in 1736, it was decreed that, on the failure of the *Ketler* line in Duke *Ferdinand*, the Dutchy of *Courland* should have its own Dukes by the free election of the States.

In the following year, on the decease of *Ferdinand*, the States, at the recommendation of the Empress of *Russia*, chose for their Duke *Jehn Ernest Biron*, Count of the Holy Roman Empire, and High Chamberlain to her Czarish Majesty, whose election was accordingly confirmed in 1737, in a *Senatus Consilium* at *Frauenstadt*; and this was followed in 1739 by the usual investiture of the new Duke in the person of his Envoy or representative. But this Prince’s dignity was but of a short continuance; for the Czarina *Anne*, in 1740, caused him and all his family to be taken into custody, and sent them into exile in 1741. He is still living at *Iaroslaw*, where he resides in a small stone house consisting of three rooms, with a wooden house adjoining



joining to it for his lady and two sons. He is allowed to hunt within thirty *wersts* of *Iaroffaw*, and very frequently makes use of that indulgence. He has also a *German* domestic chaplain, who is paid by the Crown. He openly corresponds with some of his few friends; and the Regency of *Mittau* every year send him a congratulating letter, which he answers in the stile of Duke, and affixes the seal of the Dutchy to it.

In 1741, the States of *Courland* chose for their Duke *Lewis Ernest* Duke of *Brunfwic Wolfenbuttle*, brother to the Regent of *Russia's* husband; but as this election was not compassed without force, it has not yet taken its proper effect.

§. 7. The present state of *Courland* is very much confused and perplexed. The Burghers and Peasants in general are extremely oppressed; but the greatest part of the Nobility are in very flourishing circumstances. The latter reap vast emoluments by farming the Ducal lands and manors at a very low rate; and consequently are so far from having the Duke's releasment at heart, that it is greatly for their interest that this confusion, under the false pretence of the vacancy of the ducal chair, should continue: The selfish *Majorists*, or the *Great Party*, as they are called, have, together with their chief, hitherto fomented the distractions of the state, virulently inveighed against the Supreme Council and Burghers of the towns, and so far embroiled the inhabitants that the real good of the country was no longer thought of. The King of *Poland* has, indeed from time to time, endeavoured to assuage these dissentions, by letters written in the most persuasive and pressing manner, nor have the High Council and the honest part of the Nobility been wanting in seconding his Majesty's exhortations; but the opposite party by violent and illegal measures have always frustrated their good intentions. At length, two severe royal rescripts were sent hither in the year 1752, in which the King of *Poland* threatened them, in case of any further opposition, with a judicial enquiry, and consequently with a *Polish* commission. This so far humbled the *Majorists*, that in a Diet held in the month of *July* \* they readily united with the High-Council and the other part of the Nobility. But it is apprehended, that as this union is the effect of fear, it will hardly reconcile the jarring tempers and inclinations of the two parties; and on the very first opportunity, the former animosities will probably revive.

The court of *Russia* keeps in this country 6000 men, and a plenipotentiary who resides at *Mittau*; but his only employment is to care take of the revenues. During the banishment of Duke *Ernest John*, that court lays claim to the Ducal revenues, and those lands which the said Duke had either purchased, or redeemed from the Nobles, to whom they had been mortgaged; alledging, that all this was done by imbezzlements of monies belonging to that Crown, and accordingly near 100,000 rixdollars arising from

\* In the year 1752, I suppose.

the farms are paid every year out of the Ducal revenues into the hands of this *Russian* Minister. Another demand the court of *Russia* makes on *Courland*, is for the dowery of Princess *Anne*, and the jointure of 40,000 rubels settled on her by her deceased husband. Nor will its vicinity to *Russia* permit the Czarina to be indifferent with regard to the election of a Duke of *Courland*.

These, and other circumstances, obstruct the election of a new Duke, which indeed would be otherwise invalid; as *Ernest John* does not cease to be Duke, though, by his exile, he be deprived of the exercise of his power. Be this as it will, the Ducal chair having been declared vacant by the High-Council, all public instruments are issued out in the name of the King of *Poland*, who at present personates the Duke, and are signed by the four lords of the Regency; and these Regents, by virtue of the instrument of government, have the disposal of public employments.

§. 8. The arms of *Courland* are quarterly, the first and fourth *Argent*, a lion *Gules*, crowned *Or*, for *Courland*; the second and third *Azure*, a demi-elk crowned proper, for *Semigallia*. In the centre is a small inescutcheon *party per pale* which is reserved for the particular coat of the Ducal family. The arms are within a Ducal mantle of purple and ermine, and supported by two lions crowned *Or*; and the whole is surmounted with a Ducal coronet.

§. 9. The revenues of the Duke of *Courland* are said to be very considerable, and the Ducal demesnes make above a third part of the whole country: If to these we add the convenient situation of the country for a maritime trade, the Duke of *Courland* cannot fail of being very rich if he is a good oeconomist. We may form some judgment of the wealth of this Dutchy if we consider, that *James* Duke of *Courland* was master of forty-four ships of war and seventy-five merchant-ships; and endeavoured to settle colonies in other parts of the world, especially in *America*, at a vast expence.

In war time, when this country was oppressed by the exactions of foreigners, the Ducal house has always furnished one third of the contributions: But the Nobility have been so far from thinking this sufficient for his quota, that they proposed to appoint a court of enquiry to inspect into the affair, and called it by the name of *Haaken-Revision*. However, the Dukes have always found means to set aside such an inquisition.

§. 10. By virtue of the instrument, or form, of Government for the Dutchies of *Courland* and *Semigallia*, which was drawn up in 1670 by a commission from the King of *Poland*, the following officers of State are appointed in *Courland*.

1. Four High-Counsellors, namely, a Steward, a Chancellor, a Burggrave, and a Marshal.

2. Two

2. Two Civilians, or Doctors, as they are called ; and these are the Duke's Council. The High Council, during the absence, minority, or sickness, and upon the demise of the Duke, administer justice, issue orders, pass decrees, and transact all other State-affairs in his name.

3. Four Superior Prefects ; namely, two for *Semigallia*, who reside at *Mittau* and *Scelburg*, and two for *Courland*, at *Goldingen* and *Tuckum*. These administer justice in the *first Instance* both to the Nobles and Commonalty within their respective jurisdictions. From these the vacancies in the High Council are filled up ; and under each of them are two inferior Prefects, who, upon occasion, are promoted by the Duke to the office of Superior Prefects. From the court of the latter appeals lie to the Ducal Supreme court, where the Duke assists in person together with the High Council. This is held twice a year, and from it, in causes amounting to above six hundred Florins, an appeal lies to the King of *Poland*.

The criminal causes of the Nobility are decided in the Ducal Supreme Court to which the four superior Prefects are summoned as Assessors. However an appeal lies to the King, except in cases of wilful murder, burning of houses, robbery, rapes, or open violence. Ecclesiastical causes are tried by the Chancellor, assisted by the Superintendent and four Provosts. If any disputes happen to arise between the Duke and Nobility, they are decided only by the King in person. The administration of justice in the towns belongs either to the magistrate, or the Prefect of the District in which the Defendant lives, according to the nature of the cause ; and the second and last *Instance*, or hearing, is at the Ducal Court. Suits relating to debts are heard by officers called *Executoriales*.

Every two years a Diet is held at *Mittau*, to which every parish sends a representative with full powers.

§. 11. This Dutchy consists of three Parts or Divisions, namely, *Courland* properly so called, *Semigallia*, and the District of *Pilten*. The last has a particular form of government ; but the two first Parts are divided into *Ober-hauptmannschaften* or Prefectures ; and these into certain Circles, or Districts, called *Kirchspiele* or Parishes. There are *Great* and *Little Towns*, large and small Seats ; and likewise castles, farm houses, inns, and single houses of accommodation in this country : But, as for such villages as are seen in *Germany* and other countries, here are none. The number of towns, castles, seats, &c. is about nine hundred. We shall now proceed to describe the above-mentioned Divisions.



## C O U R L A N D, properly so called.

THIS is the first Division and includes,

I. The Prefecture of GOLDINGEN, which consists of nine parishes; and these are as follows.

1. The Parish of *Goldingen*, in which the places of note are,

*Goldingen*, a small town with an old castle on the river *Windau*, which forms a water-fall in this place. It was formerly a town of good trade; and as the Dukes sometimes reside here, it is a place of good entertainment. There is a Lutheran and a *Polish* church in this town. It was built by *Diterich* of *Groningen*, third Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order. Here is a Ducal manor.

*Eden*, an iron-work, with a copper flattening-mill:

2. The Parish of *Windau*. In this parish lies

The town of *Windau*, on a river of the same name, which here falls into the *Baltic*. It is of a moderate extent, and has a good harbour; here was formerly also a dock for building men of war. This town was for sometime the residence of the Grand Master of the *Teutonic* Order; and the Diets and other public assemblies were held here.

*Robtbof* is a Ducal manor in this parish.

3. The Parish of *Alschwang*, in which is *Alschwangen* a castle with a town near it.

4. The Parish of *Hafenpoh*, in which lies,

*Hafenpoh*, a market-town, with an old castle which stands on a hill, opposite to another castle of the same name in the District of *Pilten*.

5. The Parish of *Durben*, in which are the following places of note.

*Durben*, a small mean town with an old castle and a church.

*Libau*, a Ducal city, and a port of good trade on the *Baltic*, which is of a middling bigness, and consists entirely of wooden houses but one story high. It was built by the *Lettonians*; and is said to derive its name from the *Lettonian* word *Leepaja*, i. e. a piece of ground planted with linden trees; for a great number of those trees formerly grew here: and, to this day, the *Lettonians* call the town *Leepaja*. So early as the thirteenth century, there were some *Germans* among the inhabitants of this town; and at the close of the fifteenth, and the beginning of the sixteenth century, it greatly flourished, when a great number of *Germans* resorted hither; and it obtained the privileges of a city in 1625. The old Lutheran city-church falling to decay in 1742, a foundation was laid in another place for the new-church, which is built in the modern *Italian* taste with a flat roof and a balustrade. The town school consists of three classes, and has a master for writing and

arithmetic.

arithmetic. The Papists are also allowed a church at *Libau*. As the harbour has not a sufficient depth of water for ships of burden, they are unloaded in the road ; but since Duke *Ernest John*, in 1737, caused it to be cleared, and the future accumulation of mud and sand to be prevented by a water-work, it is rendered very commodious for light vessels. Above one hundred and fifty ships usually arrive in this port in a twelve-month, to load with hemp, lin-seed, &c. A *Strandvogtey* or court of admiralty is held here. Near the town is a fresh water-lake which derives its name from it.

6. The Parish of *Gramsden*. In this parish the only place of note is *Gramsden* church, of which the Nobility are the patrons.

7. The Parish of *Grobin*, in which lies *Grobin*, a small town, with a castle.

The place called *Heiligen Aa*, or *Holy Aa*, with a church and Court of Admiralty, lies on a river of the same name, which is also the boundary betwixt *Courland* and *Samogitia*.

8. The Parish of *Schrunden*, in which lies *Schrunden*, with a ruinous castle and a church.

9. The Parish of *Frauenburg*. In this Parish lies *Frauenburg*, which has a decayed castle and a church, and is a Ducal manor.

*Note.* To this Prefecture belong two ecclesiastical Provostships, *viz.*

*Golding*, containing twelve churches of which the Duke is patron, and nine in the gift of the Nobility ; and

*Grubin*, which contains seven churches of which the Duke is patron, and nine belonging to the Nobility.

II. The Prefecture of *TUCKUM*, containing the following parishes.

1. The Parish of *Tuckum*, in which lies a small town of the same name, with a ruinous castle.

2. The Parish of *Candau*, which contains *Candau*, a small town on the river *Abau*, with a ruined castle and a Ducal manor.

*Angern*, a small place with a church and iron-works.

3. The Parish of *Zobeln*, in which lies *Zobeln* on the river *Abau*, with some remains of a castle.

4. The Parish of *Talsen*, in which lies *Talsen*, with a church.

5. The Parish of *Autzi*.

*Note.* To this Prefecture belongs the Provostship of *Candau*, which has ecclesiastical jurisdiction over nine Ducal churches, and fourteen in the gift of the Nobility.

## SEMIGALLIA or SEMGALLEN.

THIS is the second principal Division, and includes the following Prefectures.

- I. The Prefecture of MITTAU, consisting of nine Parishes; and these are,
  1. The Parish of *Mittau*, in which lies

*Mittau*, in Latin *Mitovia*, the capital of *Courland* and residence of the Duke. It stands on the river *Aa*, and is an extensive town, but within its circuit contains a great many gardens and open places or areas. The houses, for the most part, have no particular elegance to attract the eye; and the walls and moats of the town are decayed: However, it is pretty well inhabited. Here are two Lutheran churches, a beautiful Calvinistical church, completed in the year 1740, and a Popish church. This city is also the seat of the Regency and Superintendant of both Dutchies. The town-school, though it is the principal in the whole country, is at present far from being in a flourishing condition.

Just without the city stands a palace begun by the unfortunate Duke *Ernest John*; but of this edifice only the façade of one wing is completed, the rest is hardly carried up as high as the roof. It is built in a most delightful situation, on the same spot where the old castle stood, and is two stories high. This palace, according to the plan of it, would probably have been one of the most magnificent structures in all *Europe*, had not the building of it been interrupted by the disgrace and exile of its unhappy founder. It is, at present, a desolate place, and is gradually falling to decay. The ciplings and floors of some of the apartments were of a most exquisite workmanship; but these have been taken away, and the rooms converted into granaries. There is a handsome vault under one wing of this building, in which the remains of the deceased Dukes are deposited. Most of them lie in coffins of fine pewter, curiously decorated; and among these Princes lies a peasant also in a pewter coffin, as a recompence for his heroic fidelity in voluntarily suffering himself to be shot instead of Duke *Ferdinand* by some noblemen, who had conspired against the life of that Prince.

*Annenburg*, a town with a castle, lies also in this Parish.

2. The Parish of *Ekau*. The principal place in this Parish is *Ekau*, which stands on a river of the same name, and has a church.

3. The Parish of *Baldonen*, in which lies *Baldonen*, a church-town.

4. The Parish of *Neugut*, in which lies *Neugut*, a small town with a church.

5. The Parish of *Sessau*, in which the only place of note is *Sessau*, which stands on a river of the same name, and has a church.

6. The



6. The Parish of *Bauske*, in which lies *Bauske*, betwixt the rivers *Maus* and *Mummel*. It has a castle built on a rock, which is called *Bauskenburg*, and a Ducal manor.

Near *Great* and *Little Barbern* is a spring of mineral water.

7. The Parish of *Greushof*, in which the principal place is *Greushof*, which has a church.

8. The Parish of *Doblebn*. The principal place in this parish is *Doblebn*, an old castle, with a Ducal manor and a church.

9. The Parish of *Neuenburg*, in which lies

*Neuenburg*, a castle, with a church of which the Nobility are the patrons.

*Note.* To this Prefecture belong three Provostships; namely, that of *Mittau*, containing eight churches of which the Duke is Patron, and one in the gift of the Nobility; that of *Bauske* with eleven *Ducal* and five *Noble* churches; and the Provostship of *Doblebn* with nine churches in the gift of the Duke; and fifteen of which the Nobility are patrons.

II. The Prefecture of SEELBURG, which includes the four following parishes.

1. The Parish of *Ascheraden*, in which lies

*Ascheraden*, an old palace on the river *Dwina*.

2. The Parish of *Seelburg*, in which the only place of note is

*Seelburg*, a small town and castle on the river *Dwina*, where the Bishops of *Semigallia* formerly resided: Hence they were stiled Bishops of *Seelburg*. It appears from an ancient instrument dated in the year 1245, that when the Archbishoprick of *Riga* was founded, all *Semigallia*, except the third part which belonged to the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, was assigned to the said Archbishoprick; and that the bishopric of *Semigallia* or *Seelburg* was abolished.

3. The Parish of *Nerften*, in which are,

The castle and church of *Nerften*. The Nobility are patrons of the latter.

4. The Parish of *Dunaburg*, in which lies

*Danaburg*, a castle on the river *Dwina*.

*Note.* To the Provostship of *Seelburg* belong ten churches in the gift of the Duke, and twenty-three in that of the Nobility.

## The DISTRICT of P I L T E N.

THIS is the third division, which was anciently called the Diocese of *Courland*, and lies in *Courland* properly so called. It derives its name from the ancient castle or palace of *Pilten*, built by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark*, about the year 1220, when he founded a Bishop's See in this country for the more effectual conversion of its Pagan inhabitants. For when that Prince asked the Bishop, whose residence it was designed to be, Where the palace should stand? the latter made answer, 'Where *Pilten*, i. e. the boy, stands;' and this name was given to the palace.

The diocese of *Pilten*, some years after, together with all *Courland* fell into the hands of the *Germans*, who continued in possession of it till the year 1559; when the last Bishop, from a dread of the incursions of the *Russians*, sold both the dioceses of *Pilten* and *Oesel* to *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark*. That Monarch exchanged *Pilten* and *Oesel* with his brother *Magnus* for his share of *Holstein*; who took possession of it in 1560, secularized the bishoprick, and distributed very considerable parcels of its lands to his friends and followers. *Gotbard Ketler*, having in the following year rendered *Livonia* subject to the crown of *Poland*, it was agreed that Duke *Magnus*, instead of the diocese of *Courland*, should have the castle of *Sonneburg* in *Oesel*; but that the former should be resigned to *Ketler*, the new Duke. However, at the demise of Duke *Magnus*, which happened in the year 1583, the inhabitants of the District of *Pilten*, instead of submitting again to the Duke of *Courland*, or the King of *Poland*, put themselves under the protection of *Denmark*.

These contests at last subsided; and matters were adjusted by *Poland's* buying off the claim of King *Frederick II.* to this country, for 30,000 rix-dollars. This sum was advanced by *George Frederick*, Duke of *Prussia* and Margrave of *Brandenburg*, to whom this country was mortgaged by *Poland* in 1585. The inhabitants, at the same time, were allowed the free exercise of the Evangelical or Lutheran religion. In 1617, *Herman Maydel*, a *Courlandish* Nobleman, paid off the mortgage; and *Pilten* was granted to him by the King of *Poland*, with the title of a *Starosta*. In 1556, Duke *Jacob* redeemed it from *Maydel*, and in the same year purchased it also of the *Swedes*, who had possessed themselves of this District. Upon this, the Nobility of *Pilten* acknowledged him for their Lord, but soon after revolted, and continued refractory till the year 1661; when, at the convention of *Grobin* concluded on the twenty-fifth of *February* in that year, they again submitted upon very advantageous conditions to *Frederick Casimir*. The completion of this agreement was a work of twenty years. By this compact the District of *Pilten* had a particular Pre-

fect appointed for it, who resided at *Hasenpoth*; and under him are six Counsellors and the Under-Prefect of *Neubausen*. By virtue of the Instrument of Regency drawn up for this District in the year 1717, the Government is lodged in seven *Polish* Senators or Counsellors, from whom an appeal lies only to the King. The Bishop of *Samogitia* styles himself also Bishop of *Piltten*.

This District includes the seven following Parishes.

1. The Parish of *HASENPOTH*, in which are, *Hasenpoth*, a small town with a ruinous castle, a convent, and a ducal manor.

2. The Parish of *NEUHAUSEN*.

3. The Parish of *SACKENHAUSEN*, in which stands a castle of the same name.

4. The Parish of *AMBOTEN*, in which stands *Amboten*, a castle built on a mountain.

5. The Parish of *PILTEN*, in which are, *Piltten*, a small town on the river *Windau*. It has a castle, and is a *Starostey*.

*Angermund*, which has an old decayed castle.

6. The Parish of *DONDANGEN*, in which are the following remarkable places.

*Dondangen*, a castle, the revenues of which were formerly assigned for the Archbishop of *Riga*'s table. It was afterwards purchased by one of the Bishops of *Piltten*. In the year 1561, it came into the hands of *Magnus* Duke of *Holstein*, who mortgaged it together with several other estates; and, after a long train of vicissitudes, it lately devolved to Lieutenant-Colonel *John Ulrick von Sacken*, whose son is the present proprietor of it. Ten villages belong to this estate, among which is *Anstruppen*, remarkable for an excellent medicinal spring.

*Domesness*, a promontory, called by the *Dutch* sailors *de cursche Vorst van de blaue berg*, i. e. 'the Courland Prince of the blue mountain', projects northward into the gulf of *Livonia*. From this cape a sand-bank runs four *German* miles further into the sea, the extreme half of which lies under water and cannot be discerned. To the east of this promontory is an unfathomable abyss, which is never observed to be agitated. For the safety of vessels bound to *Livonia*, two square beacons have been erected on the coast, near *Domesness* church, opposite to the sand-bank and facing each other. One of these is twelve fathoms high; but the other is only eight fathoms and a half. A large fire is kept burning all night on those beacons from the first of *August* to the first of *January*, old stile. When the mariners see these two fires appear as one in a direct line, they may conclude that they are clear of the extremity of the sand-bank, and consequently out of danger; but if they have a sight of both beacons, they are in danger of  
running



running upon it. The quantity of wood burnt on these beacons amounts annually to betwixt eight and nine hundred cords of billets, and one hundred cords of brush wood. They belong to *Dondangen*, a Nobleman's estate, which lies about six *German* miles from the beacons; and he receives every year from the city of *Riga* 2500 rix-dollars in specie for keeping them up and supplying them with fuel. The large wood that grows in this neighbourhood is very convenient for furnishing a sufficient quantity of fuel for this purpose. The inhabitants are allowed to trade with the *Hollanders*; and the strand belonging to the manor of *Dondangen* is eleven *German* miles in length.

7. The Parish of ERWAHLEN, which is annexed to that of *Pilten*. This *Erwhalen* is called *Great Erwhalen* by way of distinction from another place of the same name in the Parish of *Tuckum*.

*End of the FIRST VOLUME.*











UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388  
Return this material to the library  
from which it was borrowed.

LI

LIBRARY  
JAN 13 1997  
OCT 07 1996

Form I

Stack  
Annex

\*G  
114  
L86nL  
v.1



PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
THIS BOOK CARD



3

University Research Library

Stack  
.. nex

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59

CALL NUMBER	114
VOL	1
PT	
COP	
AUTHOR	



